Scottish History
Bibliography
Scott
Political Effigies
First Editions
Dickens
Ex libris
Wallace Hugh Cathcart
No.
M.J. Rowe del. et sculp. '02

DENISON UNIVERSITY
GRANVILLE OHIO
WITHDRAWN
LIBRARY OF
DENISON
UNIVERSITY
THIS BOOK THE GIFT OF
Wallace H. Cathcart

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2024

https://archive.org/details/sevengreatmonarc0002unse_d1k9

93
M19a
v.1

TROW'S
PRINTING AND BOOKBINDING COMPANY,
NEW YORK.

PENNSYLVANIA

CONTENTS.

THE THIRD MONARCHY.

MEDIA.

CHAPTER I. PAGE

DESCRIPTION OF THE COUNTRY..... 1

CHAPTER II.

CLIMATE AND PRODUCTIONS..... 22

CHAPTER III.

CHARACTER, MANNERS AND CUSTOMS, ARTS, ETC., OF THE PEOPLE..... 36

CHAPTER IV.

RELIGION..... 45

CHAPTER V.

LANGUAGE AND WRITING..... 67

CHAPTER VI.

CHRONOLOGY AND HISTORY..... 77

THE FOURTH MONARCHY.

BABYLONIA.

CHAPTER I.

EXTENT OF THE EMPIRE..... 122

CHAPTER II.

CLIMATE AND PRODUCTIONS..... 151

CHAPTER III.

THE PEOPLE..... 162

CHAPTER IV.

THE CAPITAL..... 170

CHAPTER V. PAGE
ARTS AND SCIENCES..... 188

CHAPTER VI.
MANNERS AND CUSTOMS..... 211

CHAPTER VII.
RELIGION..... 224

CHAPTER VIII.
HISTORY AND CHRONOLOGY..... 230

APPENDIX.
A. STANDARD INSCRIPTION OF NEBUCHADNEZZER..... 260
B. ON THE MEANINGS OF BABYLONIAN NAMES..... 262

THE FIFTH MONARCHY.

PERSIA.

CHAPTER I.
EXTENT OF THE EMPIRE..... 266

CHAPTER II.
CLIMATE AND PRODUCTIONS..... 298

CHAPTER III.
CHARACTER, MANNERS AND CUSTOMS, DRESS, ETC., OF THE PEOPLE..... 315

CHAPTER IV.
LANGUAGE AND WRITING..... 365

CHAPTER V.
ARCHITECTURE AND OTHER ARTS..... 379

CHAPTER VI.
RELIGION..... 420

CHAPTER VII.
CHRONOLOGY AND HISTORY..... 429

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS—VOL. II.

Map of Persian Empire in time of Darius Hystaspis.....*To face title.*
Map of Modern Persia and Adjacent Regions.....*At the end.*

PLATE

1. Stone base of a pillar at Hamadan (after Morier)..... 1
2. Plan of the country about Hamadan (after Flandin)..... 1
3. Plan of Takht-i-Suleïman, perhaps the Northern Ecbatana (Sir H. Rawlinson)..... 1
4. View of the great Rock of Behistun (after Ker Porter)..... 2
5. View in Mazanderan—the Caspian Sea in the distance (after Fraser)..... 2
6. Pigeon-towèrs near Isfahan (after Morier)..... 3
7. The destructive locust (*Acridium peregrinum*)..... 3
8. The scorpion (*Scorpio crassicauda*)..... 3
9. Persepolitan horse, perhaps Nisæan (after Ker Porter)..... 3
10. Arian physiognomy, from Persepolis (after Prichard)..... 4
11. Mede or Persian carrying a bow in its case, from Persepolis (after Ker Porter)..... 5
12. Bow and Quiver, from Persepolis (after Flandin)..... 5
13. Persian or Median spear, from Persepolis (after Ker Porter)..... 4
14. Shield of a warrior, from Persepolis (after Flandin)..... 4
15. Median robe, from Persepolis (after Ker Porter)..... 5
16. Median shoe, from Persepolis (after Flandin)..... 4
17. Median head-dress, from Persepolis (ditto)..... 6
18. A Mede or Persian wearing a collar and earrings, from Persepolis (after Ker Porter)..... 6
19. Colossal lion, from Ecbatana (after Flandin)..... 6
20. Fire-temples near Nakhsh-i-Rustam (ditto)..... 6
21. Lydian coins (after Humphreys)..... 7
22. View of the Lebanon range..... 7
23. The Sea of Antioch, from the east (after Ainsworth)..... 8
24. Hares, from Babylonian cylinders (after Lajard)..... 7
25. Babylonian fish, from the sculptures..... 8
26. Locusts, from a cylinder..... 8
27. Susianian mule, Koyunjik (drawn by the author from a slab in the British Museum)..... 8
28. Susianian horses, Koyunjik (after Layard)..... 9
29. Babylonian dog, from a gem (after Lajard)..... 9
30. Oxen, from Babylonian cylinders (ditto)..... 3
31. Heads of Babylonian men (drawn by the author from the Assyrian sculptures in the British Museum)..... 9
32. Head of a Babylonian woman (ditto)..... 9

PLATE

33. Heads of Susianians, Koyunjik (ditto) 9
34. Heads of Babylonians, from the cylinders (after Lajard) 10
35. Head of an Elamitic chief, Koyunjik (drawn by the author from a relief in the British Museum) 10
36. Chart of the country round Babylon, with the limits of the ancient city (reduced from the map of M. Oppert) 11
37. View of the Babil mound from the Kasr (after Oppert) 10
38. Ground-plan of the Babil mound, with its rampart, and traces of an old canal (after Oppert and Selby) 12
39. Ground-plan of the Kasr mound (after Oppert) 12
40. Ground-plan of the Amran mound (ditto) 12
41. General chart of the ruins of Babylon 13
42. Chart of ancient Babylon 13
43. Birs-i-Nimrud, near Babylon 15
44. Elevation of the Birs, restored 16
45. Part of a stone frieze, from the Kasr mound, Babylon (after Layard) 15
46. Pier of bridge at Babylon, restored 15
47. Babylonian brick (after Birch) 17
48. Lion standing over a prostrate man, Babylon (from a sketch drawn on the spot by Claude Clerk, Esq.) 17
49. Statuette of a mother and child, found at Babylon (after Ker Porter) 18
50. Figure of a Babylonian king, probably Merodach-iddin-akhi (drawn for the present work from an engraved figure in the British Museum) 18
51. Figure of a dog, from a black stone of the time of Merodach-iddin-akhi, found at Babylon (drawn by the author from the original in the British Museum) 18
52. Figure of a bird, from the same stone (ditto) 18
53. Animal forms, from the cylinders (after Lajard) 19
54. Grotesque figures of men and animals, from a cylinder (ditto) 18
55. Men and monsters, from a cylinder (ditto) 19
56. Serio-comic drawing, from a cylinder (ditto) 19
57. Gate and gateway, from a cylinder (ditto) 19
58. Bronze ornament found at Babylon (after Ker Porter) 20
59. Vases and jug, from the cylinders (after Lajard) 20
60. Vases in a stand, from a cylinder (ditto) 20
61. Vase with handles, found in Babylonia (after Birch) 20
62. Babylonian glass bottles (after Layard) 20
63. Conical top of an engraved black stone, bearing figures of constellations (drawn for the present work from the original in the British Museum) 20
64. Babylonian zodiac (ditto) 21
65. Babylonian of the lower ranks, presenting an offering, from a cylinder (after Lajard) 22
66. Babylonian of the upper class in the ordinary costume, from a cylinder (ditto) 22
67. Babylonian wearing a long under-garment, from a cylinder (ditto) 22
68. Babylonian soldier conducting prisoners, from a cylinder (after Layard) 22
69. Patterned tunic, from a cylinder (after Lajard) 22
70. Babylonian wearing a short open coat, from a cylinder (ditto) 23
71. Costume of a Susianian chief, Koyunjik (drawn by the author from a bas-relief in the British Museum) 23
72. Costumes of the Babylonian priests, from the cylinders (after Lajard) 23
73. Priest wearing a peculiar mitre 23
74. Priest-vizier presenting captives to a king (drawn by Sir H. Rawlinson from a rock-tablet near Sir-i-Zohab) 24
75. Babylonian bow, from a black stone in the British Museum 23
76. Babylonian quiver and dagger 23

PLATE

77. Lion attacked with spear and axe, from a cylinder (after Lajard)..... 23
78. Axes, Chaldæan and Babylonian, from the monuments 23
79. Babylonian four-horse chariot, from a cylinder (after Lajard)..... 24
80. Men ploughing, from a cylinder (ditto)..... 24
81. Milking the goat, from a cylinder (ditto)..... 25
82. Babylonian harp and harper, from a cylinder (ditto)..... 25
83. Babylonian women making an offering to a goddess, from a cylinder (ditto) 25
84. Babylonian women gathering dates in a garden, from a cylinder (ditto) ... 25
85. Babylonian saw and hatchet, from the cylinders..... 25
86. Religious emblems of the Babylonians, from the cylinders (wood-cut)..... 26
87. View in the mountain pass between Bushire and Shiraz (after Flandin)..... 26
88. Chart of the country between Pasargadæ (Murgab) and Persepolis (from Fergusson) 27
89. Ancient Shadoof (after Wilkinson) 27
90. View of Mount Demavend, in the Elburz (after Morier)..... 27
91. Gecko, and feet of Gecko magnified..... 28
92. The Egyptian asp, or *Coluber haje*..... 28
93. The Cerastes, or horned snake..... 28
94. The Chameleon, from an engraving in the *Description de l'Egypte*)..... 28
95. Figure of an Ethiopian, Persepolis (after Ker Porter)..... 29
96. Persian foot-soldier in the ordinary costume (ditto)..... 28
97. Persian stabbing a bull (after Lajard)..... 29
98. Persian foot-soldiers, Persepolis (after Ker Porter) 29
99. Persian guardsman, carrying a bow and quiver, Persepolis (ditto)..... 30
100. Persian spear-head and arrow-heads (after Morier)..... 30
101. Persian soldier with battle-axe (after Ker Porter)..... 30
102. "Gerrhum," or large wicker shield, Persepolis (ditto)..... 30
103. Persian chariot, from Persepolis (ditto)..... 31
104. "Tribulus," or spiked ball (after Caylus)..... 30
105. Beak of a Persian war-galley, enlarged from a coin (after Mionnet)..... 31
106. Greek triaconter (after Montfaucon)..... 31
107. Persian penteconter, enlarged from a coin (after Lajard)..... 31
108. Persian king seated on his throne, Persepolis (after Ker Porter)..... 32
109. Head of Persian king, Persepolis (after Flandin)..... 32
110. Head of Persian king, from a daric (ditto) 31
111. Heads of Persian kings, from cylinders (ditto)..... 32
112. Royal parasol, Persepolis (after Ker Porter)..... 32
113. King wearing a bracelet and earrings, Nakhsh-i-Rustam (ditto)..... 33
114. Royal sword, Persepolis (ditto)..... 33
115. Persian king in his chariot, from a daric (after Mionnet)..... 33
116. The royal bow and quiver bearer, Behistun (after Ker Porter)..... 33
117. Head-dress of an attendant, Persepolis (ditto)..... 34
118. Persian fan, or fly-chaser, Persepolis (ditto)..... 33
119. Royal scent-bottle, Persepolis (ditto) 34
120. Censer, Persepolis (after Flandin and Ker Porter)..... 34
121. Vase of Caylus (after Caylus)..... 34
122. Canopy of Persian throne, Persepolis (after Ker Porter)..... 35
123. Persian sleeved cloak, Persepolis (ditto) 36
124. Front view of the same, showing strings, Persepolis (ditto)..... 36
125. Persian king hunting the lion, from the signet-cylinder of Darius Hystaspis (after Lajard)..... 36
126. Persian king killing an antelope, from a cylinder (ditto) 36
127. Tomb of a Persian king, Nakhsh-i-Rustam (from a photograph)..... 37
128. Ordinary Persian costume (after Ker Porter)..... 38
129. Fragment of two-horse chariot, from Persepolis (after Morier) 38
130. Persian chasing the antelope, from a gem (after Lajard)..... 37

PLATE
131. Persian killing a wild boar, from a cylinder (ditto) ... 37
132. General plan of Persepolis (after Flandin) ... 38
133. Plan of the ruins of Persepolis (ditto) ... 39
134. Masonry of great platform, Persepolis (ditto) ... 40
135. General plan of the same (ditto) ... 41
136. Ground-plan of great staircase (ditto) ... 40
137. Front view of same. ... 41
138. Propylæa, Chehl Minar, and Palace of Darius, from top of Great Stairs, Persepolis (from Fergusson) ... 42
139. Parapet wall of staircase, Persepolis (restored); interior view (from Flandin) ... 43
140. Parapet wall of the same (restored); exterior view (from Flandin) ... 43
141. East stairs of Palace of Xerxes (from Fergusson) ... 44
142. Staircase of Artaxerxes, Persepolis; existing condition (after Flandin) ... 45
143. Façade of the Palace of Darius, Persepolis (from Fergusson) ... 46
144. Ground-plan of the same (ditto) ... 45
145. King and atteddants, Persepolis (after Flandin) ... 45
146. South front of the Palace of Darius, Persepolis, restored (ditto) ... 46
147. Great Propylæa of Xerxes, Persepolis (from a photograph) ... 47
148. Ornament over windows, Persepolis (after Flandin) ... 47
149. Gateway to Hall of a Hundred Columns, Persepolis (from a photograph) ... 48
150. Double griffin capital, Persepolis (after Flandin) ... 48
151. Double bull capital, Persepolis (ditto) ... 48
152. Single volute capital, Persepolis (after Ker Porter) ... 49
153. Base of pillars forming central clusters ... 49
154. Complex capital and base of pillars in Great Hall of Xerxes, Persepolis (after Flandin) ... 49
155. Another pillar-base in the same (after Ker Porter) ... 49
156. Ground-plan of the Hall of Xerxes (after Fergusson) ... 50
157. Plan of palace, Pasargadæ (after Flandin) ... 49
158. Pillar-base, Pasargadæ (ditto) ... 50
159. Masonry of great platform, Pasargadæ (from Fergusson) ... 50
160. General view of platform (after Flandin) ... 50
161. Plan of Palace, Istakr (ditto) ... 51
162. Tomb of Cyrus, Pasargadæ (from Fergusson) ... 51
163. Moulding and cornice of tomb (after Flandin) ... 51
164. External appearance of tomb of Darius Hystaspis, Nakhsh-i-Rustam (from Fergusson) ... 52
165. Section and ground-plan of tomb, Persepolis (after Flandin) ... 53
166. Ground-plan of tomb of Darius, Nakhsh-i-Rustam (ditto) ... 52
167. Ground-plan of another royal tomb (ditto) ... 52
168. Entrance to a royal tomb, Persepolis (ditto) ... 53
169. Section and roof of tower, Nakhsh-i-Rustam (ditto) ... 53
170. Front view of the same tower, showing excavations (ditto) ... 54
171. Massive gateway, Istakr (ditto) ... 54
172. King killing a monster, Persepolis (from a photograph) ... 55
173. Attendant bringing a kid to the palace, Persepolis (after Flandin) ... 56
174. Persian subjects bringing tribute to the king, Persepolis (from a photograph) ... 55
175. Wild ass, Persepolis (after Ker Porter) ... 56
176. Horned sheep, Persepolis (after Flandin) ... 56
177. Lion devouring a bull, Persepolis (from a photograph) ... 56
178. Fragment of a sitting lion, Persepolis (after Flandin) ... 57
179. Persian cylinders (after Lajard) ... 57
180. Palm-tree, from the cylinder of Darius Hystaspis (ditto) ... 58
181. Persian portrait, from a gem (after King) ... 57

PLATE
182. Persian coins (after Mionnet and Lajard) 57
183. Incense vessel, Persepolis (after Flandin) 58
184. Covered dishes, from the sculptures, Persepolis (after Ker Porter) 58
185. Bowls or basons, from the same (after Ker Porter) 58
186. Altar, from a rock-sculpture, Nakhsh-i-Rustam (after Flandin) 58
187. Portable altar, from a gem (after Lajard) 58
188. Symbols of Ormazd (after Ker Porter and Lajard) 58
189. Figure of a good genius, Pasargadæ (after Texier) 59
190. Egyptian figure, with curious head-dress (after Wilkinson) 60
191. Persian cylinders (after Layard) 60
192. King contending with a lion, Persepolis (after Flandin) 60
193. King contending with a monster, Persepolis (ditto) 60
194. Monsters, probably representing evil spirits, from Persian gems or cylinders (after Lajard) 60
195. Plan of Canal of Athos (after Capt. Spratt's survey) 61
196. Plan of Thermopylæ and the adjacent country (after Leake) 62

THE THIRD MONARCHY.

MEDIA.

CHAPTER I.

DESCRIPTION OF THE COUNTRY.

Χώρην ναιετάοντες ἀπείριτον, οἱ μὲν ἐπ' αὐτὰς
Πέτρας αἱ φύουσιν ἀφεγγέα ναρκισσίτην,
Οἱ δ' ἑκὰς ἐν λασίῃσι νενασμένοι εἰαμενῇσι,
Πώεα καλὰ νέμοντες ἄδην βεβριθότα μαλλοῖς.

Dionys. *Perieg.* 1030–1033.

Along the eastern flank of the great Mesopotamian lowland, curving round it on the north, and stretching beyond it to the south and the south-east, lies a vast elevated region, or highland, no portion of which appears to be less than 3000 feet above the sea-level.[1] This region may be divided, broadly, into two tracts, one consisting of lofty mountainous ridges, which form its outskirts on the north and on the west; the other, in the main a high flat table-land, extending from the foot of the mountain-chains, southward to the Indian Ocean, and eastward to the country of the Afghans. The western mountain-country consists, as has been already observed,[2] of six or seven parallel ridges, having a direction nearly from the north-west to the south-east, enclosing between them valleys of great fertility, and well watered by a large number of plentiful and refreshing streams. This district was known to the ancients as Zagros,[3] while in modern geography it bears the names of Kurdistan and Luristan. It has always been inhabited by a multitude of warlike tribes,[4] and has rarely formed for any long period a portion of any settled monarchy. Full of torrents, of deep ravines, or rocky summits, abrupt and almost inaccessible; containing but few passes, and those narrow and easily defensible; secure, moreover, owing to the rigor of its

climate, from hostile invasion during more than half the year; it has defied all attempts to effect its permanent subjugation, whether made by Assyrians, Persians, Greeks, Parthians, or Turks, and remains to this day as independent of the great powers in its neighborhood as it was when the Assyrian armies first penetrated its recesses. Nature seems to have constructed it to be a nursery of hardy and vigorous men, a stumbling-block to conquerors, a thorn in the side of every powerful empire which arises in this part of the great eastern continent.

The northern mountain country—known to modern geographers as Elburz—is a tract of far less importance. It is not composed, like Zagros, of a number of parallel chains, but consists of a single lofty ridge, furrowed by ravines and valleys,[5] from which spurs are thrown out, running in general at right angles to its axis. Its width is comparatively slight; and instead of giving birth to numerous large rivers, it forms only a small number of insignificant streams, often dry in summer, which have short courses, being soon absorbed either by the Caspian or the Desert. Its most striking feature is the snowy peak of Demavend,[6] which impends over Teheran, and appears to be the highest summit in the part of Asia west of the Himalayas.

The elevated plateau which stretches from the foot of those two mountain regions to the south and east is, for the most part, a flat sandy desert, incapable of sustaining more than a sparse and scanty population. The northern and western portions are, however, less arid than the east and south, being watered to some distance by the streams that descend from Zagros and Elburz, and deriving fertility also from the spring rains. Some of the rivers which flow from Zagros on this side are large and strong. One, the Kizil-Uzen, reaches the Caspian. Another, the Zenderud, fertilizes a large district near Isfahan. A third, the Bendamir, flows by Persepolis and terminates in a sheet of water of some size—lake Bakhtigan. A tract thus intervenes between the mountain regions and the desert which, though it cannot be called fertile, is fairly productive, and can support a large settled population. This forms the chief portion of the region which the ancients called Media, as being the country inhabited by the race on whose history we are about to enter.

Media, however, included, besides this, another tract of considerable size and importance. At the north-western angle of the region above described, in the corner whence the two great chains branch out to the south and to the east, is a tract com-

posed almost entirely of mountains, which the Greeks called Atropatênê,[7] and which is now known as Azerbijan. This district lies further to the north than the rest of Media, being in the same parallels with the lower part of the Caspian Sea. It comprises the entire basin of Lake Urumiyeh, together with the country intervening between that basin and the high mountain chain which curves round the south-western corner of the Caspian. It is a region generally somewhat sterile, but containing a certain quantity of very fertile territory, more particularly in the Urumiyeh basin, and towards the mouth of the river Araxes.

The boundaries of Media are given somewhat differently by different writers,[8] and no doubt they actually varied at different periods; but the variations were not great, and the natural limits, on three sides at any rate, may be laid down with tolerable precision. Towards the north the boundary was at first the mountain chain closing in on that side the Urumiyeh basin, after which it seems to have been held that the true limit was the Araxes, to its entrance on the low country, and then the mountain chain west and south of the Caspian. Westward, the line of demarcation may be best regarded as, towards the south, running along the centre of the Zagros region; and, above this, as formed by that continuation of the Zagros chain which separates the Urumiyeh from the Van basin. Eastward, the boundary was marked by the spur from the Elburz, across which lay the pass known as the Pylæ Caspiæ, and below this by the great salt desert, whose western limit is nearly in the same longitude.[9] Towards the south there was no marked line or natural boundary; and it is difficult to say with any exactness how much of the great plateau belonged to Media and how much to Persia. Having regard, however, to the situation of Hamadan, which, as the capital, should have been tolerably central, and to the general account which historians and geographers give of the size of Media, we may place the southern limit with much probability about the line of the thirty-second parallel, which is nearly the present boundary between Irak and Fars.

The shape of Media has been called a square;[10] but it is rather a long parallelogram, whose two principal sides face respectively the north-east and the south-west, while the ends or shorter sides front to the south-east and to the northwest. Its length in its greater direction is about 600 miles, and its width about 250 miles. It must thus contain nearly 150,000 square miles,

an area considerably larger than that of Assyria and Chaldæa put together,[11] and quite sufficient to constitute a state of the first class,[12] even according to the ideas of modern Europe. It is nearly one-fifth more than the area of the British Islands, and half as much again as that of Prussia, or of peninsular Italy. It equals three fourths of France, or three fifths of Germany. It has, moreover, the great advantage of compactness, forming a single solid mass, with no straggling or outlying portions; and it is strongly defended on almost every side by natural barriers offering great difficulties to an invader.[13]

In comparison with the countries which formed the seats of the two monarchies already described, the general character of the Median territory is undoubtedly one of sterility. The high table-land is everywhere intersected by rocky ranges, spurs from Zagros, which have a general direction from west to east,[14] and separate the country into a number of parallel broad valleys, or long plains, opening out into the desert. The appearance of these ranges is almost everywhere bare, arid, and forbidding. Above, they present to the eye huge masses of gray rock piled one upon another; below, a slope of detritus, destitute of trees or shrubs, and only occasionally nourishing a dry and scanty herbage. The appearance of the plains is little superior; they are flat and without undulations, composed in general of gravel or hard clay, and rarely enlivened by any show of water; except for two months in the spring, they exhibit to the eye a uniform brown expanse, almost treeless, which impresses the traveller with a feeling of sadness and weariness. Even in Azerbijan, which is one of the least arid portions of the territory, vast tracks consist of open undulating downs,[15] desolate and sterile, bearing only a coarse withered grass and a few stunted bushes.

Still there are considerable exceptions to this general aspect of desolation. In the worst parts of the region there is a time after the spring rains when nature puts on a holiday dress, and the country becomes gay and cheerful. The slopes at the base of the rocky ranges are tinged with an emerald green:[16] a richer vegetation springs up over the plains,[17] which are covered with a fine herbage or with a variety of crops; the fruit trees which surround the villages burst out into the most luxuriant blossom; the roses come into bloom, and their perfume everywhere fills the air.[18] For the two months of April and May the whole face of the country is changed, and a lovely verdure replaces the ordinary dull sterility.

In a certain number of more favored spots beauty and fertility are found during nearly the whole of the year. All round the shores of Lake Urumiyeh,[19] more especially in the rich plain of Miyandab at its southern extremity, along the valleys of the Aras,[20] the Kizil-uzen,[21] and the Jaghetu,[22] in the great *ballook* of Linjan,[23] fertilized by irrigation from the Zenderud, in the Zagros valleys,[24] and in various other places, there is an excellent soil which produces abundantly with very slight cultivation.

The general sterility of Media arises from the scantiness of the water supply. It has but few rivers, and the streams that it possesses run for the most part in deep and narrow valleys sunk below the general level of the country, so that they cannot be applied at all widely to purposes of irrigation. Moreover, some of them are, unfortunately, impregnated with salt to such an extent that they are altogether useless for this purpose;[25] and indeed, instead of fertilizing, spread around them desolation and barrenness. The only Median streams which are of sufficient importance to require description are the Aras, the Kizil-Uzen, the Jaghetu, the Aji-Su and the Zenderud, or river of Isfahan.

The Aras is only very partially a Median stream.[26] It rises from several sources in the mountain tract between Kars and Erzeroum,[27] and runs with a generally eastern direction through Armenia to the longitude of Mount Ararat, where it crosses the fortieth parallel and begins to trend southward, flowing along the eastern side of Ararat in a south-easterly direction, nearly to the Julfa ferry on the high road from Erivan to Tabriz. From this point it runs only a little south of east to long. 46° 30′ E. from Greenwich, when it makes almost a right angle and runs directly north-east to its junction with the Kur at Djavat. Soon after this it curves to the south, and enters the Caspian by several mouths in lat. 39° 10′ nearly. The Aras is a considerable stream almost from its source. At Hassan-Kaleh, less than twenty miles from Erzeroum, where the river is forded in several branches, the water reaches to the saddle-girths.[28] At Keupri-Kieui, not much lower, the stream is crossed by a bridge of seven arches.[29] At the Julfa ferry it is fifty yards wide, and runs with a strong current.[30] At Megree, thirty miles further down, its width is eighty yards.[31] In spring and early summer the stream receives enormous accessions from the spring rains and the melting of the snows, which produce floods that often cause

great damage to the lands and villages along the valley. Hence the difficulty of maintaining bridges over the Aras, which was noted as early as the time of Augustus,[32] and is attested by the ruins of many such structures remaining along its course.[33] Still, there are at the present day at least three bridges over the stream—one, which has been already mentioned, at Keupri-Kieui, another a little above Nakshivan, and the third at Khudoperinski, a little below Megree.[34] The length of the Aras, including only main windings, is 500 miles.[35]

The Kizil-Uzen, or (as it is called in the lower part of its course) the Sefid-Rud, is a stream of less size than the Aras, but more important to Media, within which lies almost the whole of its basin. It drains a tract of 180 miles long by 150 broad before bursting through the Elburz mountain chain, and descending upon the low country which skirts the Caspian. Rising in Persian Kurdistan almost from the foot of Zagros, it runs in a meandering course with a general direction of north-east through that province into the district of Khamseh, where it suddenly sweeps round and flows in a bold curve at the foot of lofty and precipitous rocks,[36] first north-west and then north, nearly to Miana, when it doubles back upon itself, and turning the flank of the Zenjan range runs with a course nearly south-east to Menjil, after which it resumes its original direction of north-east, and, rushing down the pass of Rudbar,[37] crosses Ghilan to the Caspian. Though its source is in direct distance no more than 220 miles from its mouth, its entire length, owing to its numerous curves and meanders, is estimated at 490 miles.[38] It is a considerable stream, forded with difficulty, even in the dry season, as high up as Karagul,[39] and crossed by a bridge of three wide arches before its junction with the Garongu river near Miana.[40] In spring and early summer it is an impetuous torrent, and can only be forded within a short distance of its source.

The Jaghetu and the Aji-Su are the two chief rivers of the Urumiyeh basin. The Jaghetu rises from the foot of the Zagros chain, at a very little distance from the source of the Kizil-Uzen. It collects the streams from the range of hills which divides the Kizil-Uzen basin from that of Lake Urumiyeh, and flows in a tolerably straight course first north and then north-west to the south-eastern shore of the lake. Side by side with it for some distance flows the smaller stream of the Tatau, formed by torrents from Zagros; and between them,

towards their mouths, is the rich plain of Miyandab, easily irrigated from the two streams, the level of whose beds is above that of the plain,[41] and abundantly productive even under the present system of cultivation. The Aji-Su reaches the lake from the north-east. It rises from Mount Sevilan, within sixty miles of the Caspian, and flows with a course which is at first nearly due south, then north-west, and finally south-west, past the city of Tabriz, to the eastern shore of the lake, which it enters in lat. 37° 50′. The waters of the Aji-Su are, unfortunately, salt,[42] and it is therefore valueless for purposes of irrigation.

The Zenderud or river of Isfahan rises from the eastern flank of the Kuh-i-Zerd (Yellow Mountain), a portion of the Bakhtiyari chain, and, receiving a number of tributaries from the same mountain district, flows with a course which is generally east or somewhat north of east, past the great city of Isfahan—so long the capital of Persia—into the desert country beyond, where it is absorbed in irrigation.[43] Its entire course is perhaps not more than 120 or 130 miles; but running chiefly through a plain region, and being naturally a stream of large size, it is among the most valuable of the Median rivers, its waters being capable of spreading fertility, by means of a proper arrangement of canals, over a vast extent of country,[44] and giving to this part of Iran a sylvan character,[45] scarcely found elsewhere on the plateau.

It will be observed that of these streams there is not one which reaches the ocean. All the rivers of the great Iranic plateau terminate in lakes or inland seas, or else lose themselves in the desert. In general the thirsty sand absorbs, within a short distance of their source, the various brooks and streams which flow south and east into the desert from the northern and western mountain chains, without allowing them to collect into rivers or to carry fertility far into the plain region. The the river of Isfahan forms the only exception to this rule within the limits of the ancient Media. All its other important streams, as has been seen, flow either into the Caspian or into the great lake of Urumiyeh.

That lake itself now requires our attention. It is an oblong basin, stretching in its greater direction from N.N.W. to S.S.E., a distance of above eighty miles, with an average width of about twenty-five miles.[46] On its eastern side a remarkable peninsula, projecting far into its waters, divides it into two portions of very unequal size—a northern and a southern.

The southern one, which is the largest of the two, is diversified towards its centre by a group of islands, some of which are of a considerable size. The lake, like others in this part of Asia,[47] is several thousand feet above the sea level. Its waters are heavily impregnated with salt, resembling those of the Dead Sea. No fish can live in them. When a storm sweeps over their surface it only raises the waves a few feet; and no sooner is it passed than they rapidly subside again into a deep, heavy, death-like sleep.[48] The lake is shallow, nowhere exceeding four fathoms, and averaging about two fathoms—a depth which, however, is rarely attained within two miles of the land. The water is pellucid. To the eye it has the deep blue color of some of the northern Italian lakes, whence it was called by the Armenians the Kapotan Zow or "Blue Sea."[49]

According to the Armenian geography, Media contained eleven districts;[50] Ptolemy makes the number eight;[51] but the classical geographers in general are contented with the twofold division already indicated,[52] and recognized at the constituent parts of Media only Atropatêné (now Azerbijan) and Media Magna, a tract which nearly corresponds with the two provinces of Irak Ajemi and Ardelan. Of the minor subdivisions there are but two or three which seem to deserve any special notice. One of these is Rhagiana, or the tract skirting the Elburz Mountains from the vicinity of the Kizil-Uzen (or Sefid-Rud) to the Caspian Gates, a long and narrow slip, fairly productive, but excessively hot in summer, which took its name from the important city of Rhages. Another is Nisæa, a name which the Medes seem to have carried with them from their early eastern abodes,[53] and to have applied to some high upland plains west of the main chain of Zagros, which were peculiarly favorable to the breeding of horses. As Alexander visited these pastures on his way from Susa to Ecbatana,[54] they must necessarily have lain to the south of the latter city. Most probably they are to be identified with the modern plains of Khawah and Alishtar, between Behistun and Khorramabad, which are even now considered to afford the best summer pasturage in Persia.[55]

It is uncertain whether any of these divisions were known in the time of the great Median Empire. They are not constituted in any case by marked natural lines or features. On the whole it is perhaps most probable that the main division—that into Media Magna and Media Atropatêné—was ancient, Atropatêné being the old home of the Medes,[56] and Media Magna

a later conquest; but the early political geography of the country is too obscure to justify us in laying down even this as certain. The minor political divisions are still less distinguishable in the darkness of those ancient times.

From the consideration of the districts which composed the Median territory, we may pass to that of their principal cities, some of which deservedly obtained a very great celebrity. The most important of all were the two Ecbatanas—the northern and the southern—which seem to have stood respectively in the position of metropolis to the northern and the southern province. Next to these may be named Rhages, which was probably from early times a very considerable place; while in the third rank may be mentioned Bagistan—rather perhaps a palace than a town—Concobar, Adrapan, Aspadan, Charax, Kudrus, Hyspaostes, Urakagabarna, etc.

The southern Ecbatana or Agbatana—which the Medes and Persians themselves knew as Hagmatán[57]—was situated, as we learn from Polybius[58] and Diodorus,[59] on a plan at the foot of Mont Orontes, a little to the east of the Zagros range. The notices of these authors, combined with those of Eratosthenes,[60] Isidore,[61] Pliny,[62] Arrian,[63] and others, render it as nearly certain as possible that the site was that of the modern town of Hamadan,[64] the name of which is clearly but a slight corruption of the true ancient appellation. [Pl. I., Fig. 2.] Mount Orontes is to be recognized in the modern Elwend or Erwend—a word etymologically identical with *Oront-es*—which is a long and lofty mountains standing out like a buttress from the Zagros range,[65] with which it is connected towards the north-west, while on every other side it stands isolated, sweeping boldly down upon the flat country at its base. Copious streams descend from the mountain on every side, more particularly to the north-east, where the plain is covered with a carpet of the most luxuriant verdure, diversified with rills, and ornamented with numerous groves of large and handsome forest trees. It is here, on ground sloping slightly away from the roots of the mountain,[66] that the modern town, which lies directly at its foot, is built. The ancient city, if we may believe Diodorus, did not approach the mountain within a mile or a mile and a half.[67] At any rate, if it began where Hamadan now stands, it most certainly extended very much further into the plain. We need not suppose indeed that it had the circumference, or even half the circumference, which the Sicilian romancer assigns to it, since his two hundred and fifty

stades[68] would give a probable area of fifty square miles, more than double that of London! Ecbatana is not likely to have been at its most flourishing period a larger city than Nineveh: and we have already seen that Nineveh covered a space, within the walls, of not more than 1800 English acres.[69]

The character of the city and of its chief edifices has, unfortunately, to be gathered almost entirely from unsatisfactory authorities. Hitherto it has been found possible in these volumes to check and correct the statements of ancient writers, which are almost always exaggerated, by an appeal to the incontrovertible evidence of modern surveys and explorations. But the Median capital has never yet attracted a scientific expedition. The travellers by whom it has been visited have reported so unfavorably of its character as a field of antiquarian research that scarcely a spadeful of soil has been dug, either in the city or in its vicinity, with a view to recover traces of the ancient buildings. Scarcely any remains of antiquity are apparent. As the site has never been deserted, and the town has thus been subjected for nearly twenty-two centuries to the destructive ravages of foreign conquerors, and the still more injurious plunderings of native builders, anxious to obtain materials for new edifices at the least possible cost and trouble, the ancient structures have everywhere disappeared from sight, and are not even indicated by mounds of a sufficient size to attract the attention of common observers. Scientific explorers have consequently been deterred from turning their energies in this direction; more promising sites have offered and still offer themselves; and it is as yet uncertain whether the plan of the old town might not be traced and the position of its chief edifices fixed by the means of careful researches conducted by fully competent persons. In this dearth of modern materials we have to depend entirely upon the classical writers, who are rarely trustworthy in their descriptions or measurements, and who, in this instance, labor under the peculiar disadvantage of being mere reporters of the accounts given by others.

Ecbatana was chiefly celebrated for the magnificence of its palace, a structure ascribed by Diodorus to Semiramis,[70] but most probably constructed originally by Cyaxares, and improved, enlarged, and embellished by the Achæmenian monarchs. According to the judicious and moderate Polybius, who prefaces his account by a protest against exaggeration and over-coloring, the circumference of the building was seven

stades,[71] or 1420 yards, somewhat more than four fifths of an English mile. This size, which a little exceeds that of the palace mound at Susa, while it is in its turn a little exceeded by the palatial platform at Persepolis,[72] may well be accepted as probably close to the truth. Judging, however, from the analogy of the above-mentioned palaces, we must conclude that the area thus assigned to the royal residence was far from being entirely covered with buildings. One half of the space, perhaps more, would be occupied by large open courts, paved probably with marble, surrounding the various blocks of buildings and separating them from one another. The buildings themselves may be conjectured to have resembled those of the Achæmenian monarchs at Susa and Persepolis, with the exception, apparently, that the pillars, which formed their most striking characteristic, were for the most part of wood rather than of stone. Polybius distinguishes the pillars into two classes,[73] those of the main buildings (*οἱ ἐν ταῖς στοαῖς*), and those which skirted the courts (*οἱ ἐν τοῖς περιστύλοις*), from which it would appear that at Ecbatana the courts were surrounded by colonnades, as they were commonly in Greek and Roman houses.[74] These wooden pillars, all either of cedar or of cypress,[75] supported beams of a similar material, which crossed each other at right angles, leaving square spaces (*φατνώματα*) between, which were then filled in with woodwork. Above the whole a roof was placed, sloping at an angle,[76] and composed (as we are told) of silver plates in the shape of tiles. The pillars, beams, and the rest of the woodwork were likewise coated with thin laminæ of the precious metals, even gold being used for this purpose to a certain extent.[77]

Such seems to have been the character of the true ancient Median palace, which served probably as a model to Darius and Xerxes when they designed their great palatial edifices at the more southern capitals. In the additions which the palace received under the Achæmenian kings, stone pillars may have been introduced; and hence probably the broken shafts and bases, so nearly resembling the Persepolitan, one of which Sir R. Ker Porter[78] saw in the immediate neighborhood of Hamadan on his visit to that place in 1818. [Pl. I., Fig. 1.] But, to judge from the description of Polybius, an older and ruder style of architecture prevailed in the main building, which depended for its effect not on the beauty of architectural forms, but on the richness and costliness of the material. A pillar

architecture, so far as appears, began in this part of Asia with the Medes,[79] who, however, were content to use the more readily obtained and more easily worked material of wood; while the Persians afterwards conceived the idea of substituting for these inartificial props the slender and elegant stone shafts which formed the glory of their grand edifices.

At a short distance from the palace was the "Acra," or citadel, an artificial structure, if we may believe Polybius, and a place of very remarkable strength.[80] Here probably was the treasury, from which Darius Codomanus carried off 7000 talents of silver, when he fled towards Bactria for fear of Alexander.[81] And here, too, may have been the Record Office, in which were deposited the royal decrees and other public documents under the earlier Persian kings.[82] Some travellers[83] are of opinion that a portion of the ancient structure still exists; and there is certainly a ruin on the outskirts of the modern town towards the south, which is known to the natives as "the inner fortress," and which may not improbably occupy some portion of the site whereon the original citadel stood. But the remains of building which now exist are certainly not of an earlier date than the era of Parthian supremacy,[84] and they can therefore throw no light on the character of the old Median stronghold. It may be thought perhaps that the description which Herodotus gives of the building called by him "the palace of Deïoces" should be here applied, and that by its means we might obtain an exact notion of the original structure. But the account of this author is wholly at variance with the natural features of the neighborhood, where there is no such conical hill as he describes, but only a plain surrounded by mountains. It seems, therefore, to be certain that either his description is a pure myth, or that it applies to another city, the Ecbatana of the northern province.

It is doubtful whether the Median capital was at any time surrounded with walls. Polybius expressly declares that it was an unwalled place in his day;[85] and there is some reason to suspect that it had always been in this condition. The Medes and Persians appear to have been in general content to establish in each town a fortified citadel or stronghold, round which the houses were clustered, without superadding the further defence of a town wall.[86] Ecbatana accordingly seems never to have stood a siege.[87] When the nation which held it was defeated in the open field, the city (unlike Babylon and Nineveh) submitted to the conqueror without a struggle. Thus

the marvellous description in the book of Judith,[88] which is internally very improbable, would appear to be entirely destitute of any, even the slightest, foundation in fact.

The chief city of northern Media, which bore in later times the names of Gaza, Gazaca, or Canzaca,[89] is thought to have also been called Ecbatana, and to have been occasionally mistaken by the Greeks for the southern or real capital.[90] The description of Herodotus, which is irreconcilably at variance with the local features of the Hamadan site, accords sufficiently with the existing remains of a considerable city in the province of Azerbijan; and it seems certainly to have been a city in these parts which was called by Moses of Chorêné "the *second* Ecbatana, the seven-walled town."[91] The peculiarity of this place was its situation on and about a conical hill which sloped gently down from its summit to its base, and allowed of the interposition of seven circuits of wall between the plain and the hill's crest. At the top of the hill, within the innermost circle of the defences, were the Royal Palace and the treasuries; the sides of the hill were occupied solely by the fortifications; and at the base, outside the circuit of the outermost wall, were the domestic and other buildings which constituted the town. According to the information received by Herodotus, the battlements which crowned the walls were variously colored. Those of the outer circle were white, of the next black, of the third scarlet, of the fourth blue, of the fifth orange, of the sixth silver, and of the seventh gold.[92] A pleasing or at any rate a striking effect was thus produced—the citadel, which towered above the town, presenting to the eye seven distinct rows of colors.[93]

If there was really a northern as well as a southern Ecbatana,[94] and if the account of Herodotus, which cannot possibly apply to the southern capital, may be regarded as truly describing the great city of the north, we may with much probability fix the site of the northern town at the modern Takht-i-Suleïman, in the upper valley of the Saruk, a tributary of the Jaghetu. [Pl. I., Fig. 3.] Here alone in northern Media are there important ruins occupying such a position as that which Herodotus describes.[95] Near the head of a valley in which runs the main branch of the Saruk, at the edge of the hills which skirt it to the north, there stands a conical mound projecting into the vale and rising above its surface to the height of 150 feet. The geological formation of the mound is curious in the extreme.[96] It seems to owe its origin

entirely to a small lake, the waters of which are so strongly impregnated with calcareous matter that wherever they overflow they rapidly form a deposit which is as hard and firm as natural rock. If the lake was originally on a level with the valley, it would soon have formed incrustations round its edge, which every casual or permanent overflow would have tended to raise; and thus, in the course of ages, the entire hill may have been formed by a mere accumulation of petrefactions.[97] The formation would progress more or less rapidly according to the tendency of the lake to overflow its bounds; which tendency must have been strong until the water reached its present natural level—the level, probably, of some other sheet of water in the hills, with which it is connected by an underground siphon.[98] The lake, which is of an irregular shape, is about 300 paces in circumference. Its water, notwithstanding the quantity of mineral matter held in solution, is exquisitely clear, and not unpleasing to the taste.[99] Formerly it was believed by the natives to be unfathomable; but experiments made in 1837 showed the depth to be no more than 156 feet.

The ruins which at present occupy this remarkable site consist of a strong wall, guarded by numerous bastions and pierced by four gateways, which runs round the brow of the hill in a slightly irregular ellipse, of some interesting remains of buildings within this walled space, and of a few insignificant traces of inferior edifices on the slope between the plain and the summit. As it is not thought that any of these remains are of a date anterior to the Sassanian kingdom,[100] no description will be given of them here. We are only concerned with the Median city, and that has entirely disappeared. Of the seven walls, one alone is to be traced;[101] and even here the Median structure has perished, and been replaced by masonry of a far later age. Excavations may hereafter bring to light some remnants of the original town, but at present research has done no more than recover for us a forgotten site.

The Median city next in importance to the two Ecbatanas was Raga or Rhages, near the Caspian Gates, almost at the extreme eastern limits of the territory possessed by the Medes.

The great antiquity of this place is marked by its occurrence in the Zendavesta among the primitive settlements of the Arians.[102] Its celebrity during the time of the Empire is indicated by the position which it occupies in the romances of Tobit[103] and Judith.[104] It maintained its rank under the Persians, and is mentioned by Darius Hystaspis as the scene of

the struggle which terminated the great Median revolt.[105] The last Darius seems to have sent thither his heavy baggage and the ladies of his court,[106] when he resolved to quit Ecbatana and fly eastward. It has been already noticed that Rhages gave name to a district;[107] and this district may be certainly identified with the long narrow tract of fertile territory intervening between the Elburz mountain-range and the desert,[108] from about Kasvin to Khaar, or from long. 50° to 52° 30'. The exact site of the city of Rhages within this territory is somewhat doubtful. All accounts place it near the eastern extremity; and as there are in this direction ruins of a town called Rhei or Rhey, it has been usual to assume that they positively fix the locality.[109] But similarity, or even identity, of name is an insufficient proof of a site;[110] and, in the present instance, there are grounds for placing Rhages very much nearer to the Caspian Gates than the position of Rhei. Arrian, whose accuracy is notorious, distinctly states that from the Gates to Rhages was only a single day's march, and that Alexander accomplished the distance in that time.[111] Now from Rhei to the Girduni Surdurrah pass, which undoubtedly represents the Pylæ Caspiæ of Arrian,[112] is at least fifty miles, a distance which no army could accomplish in less time than two days.[113] Rhages consequently must have been considerably to the east of Rhei, about half-way between it and the celebrated pass which it was considered to guard. Its probable position is the modern Kaleh Erij, near Veramin, about 23 miles from the commencement of the Surdurrah pass, where there are considerable remains of an ancient town.[114]

In the same neighborhood with Rhages, but closer to the Straits, perhaps on the site now occupied by the ruins known as Uewanukif, or possibly even nearer to the foot of the pass,[115] was the Median city of Charax, a place not to be confounded with the more celebrated city called Charax Spasini, the birthplace of Dionysius the geographer, which was on the Persian Gulf, at the mouth of the Tigris.[116]

The other Median cities, whose position can be determined with an approach to certainty, were in the western portion of the country, in the range of Zagros, or in the fertile tract between that range and the desert. The most important of these are Bagistan, Adrapan, Concobar, and Aspadan.

Bagistan is described by Isidore[117] as a "city situated on a hill, where there was a pillar and a statue of Semiramis." Diodorus has an account of the arrival of Semiramis at the

place, of her establishing a royal park or paradise in the plain below the mountain, which was watered by an abundant spring, of her smoothing the face of the rock where it descended precipitously upon the low ground, and of her carving on the surface thus obtained her own effigy, with an inscription in Assyrian characters.[118] The position assigned to Bagistan by both writers, and the description of Diodorus,[119] identify the place beyond a doubt with the now famous Behistun, where the plain, the fountain, the precipitous rock, and the scarped surface are still to be seen,[120] through the supposed figure of Semiramis, her pillar, and her inscription have disappeared.[121] [Pl. II., Fig. 1.] This remarkable spot, lying on the direct route between Babylon and Ecbatana, and presenting the unusual combination of a copious fountain, a rich plain, and a rock suitable for sculptures, must have early attracted the attention of the great monarchs who marched their armies through the Zagros range, as a place where they might conveniently set up memorials of their exploits. The works of this kind ascribed by the ancient writers to Semiramis were probably either Assyrian or Babylonian, and (it is most likely) resembled the ordinary monuments which the kings of Babylon and Nineveh delighted to erect in countries newly conquered.[122] The example set by the Mesopotamians was followed by their Arian neighbors, when the supremacy passed into their hands; and the famous mountain, invested by them with a sacred character,[123] was made to subserve and perpetuate their glory by receiving sculptures and inscriptions[124] which showed them to have become the lords of Asia. The practice did not even stop here. When the Parthian kingdom of the Arsacidæ had established itself in these parts at the expense of the Seleucidæ, the rock was once more called upon to commemorate the warlike triumphs of a new race. Gotarzes, the contemporary of the Emperor Claudius, after defeating his rival Meherdates in the plain between Behistun and Kermanshah, inscribed upon the mountain, which already bore the impress of the great monarchs of Assyria and Persia, a record of his recent victory.[125]

The name of Adrapan occurs only in Isidore,[126] who places it between Bagistan and Ecbatana, at the distance of twelve schœni—36 Roman or 34 British miles from the latter. It was, he says, the site of an ancient palace belonging to Ecbatana, which Tigranes the Armenian had destroyed. The name and situation sufficiently identify Adrapan with the modern vil-

Fig 2.

Plan of the Country about Hamadan.

A. Ancient citadel. B. Figure of lion. C. Remains of buildings. D. Cuneiform inscriptions.

Fig 1

Stone base of a pillar. (Hamadan.)

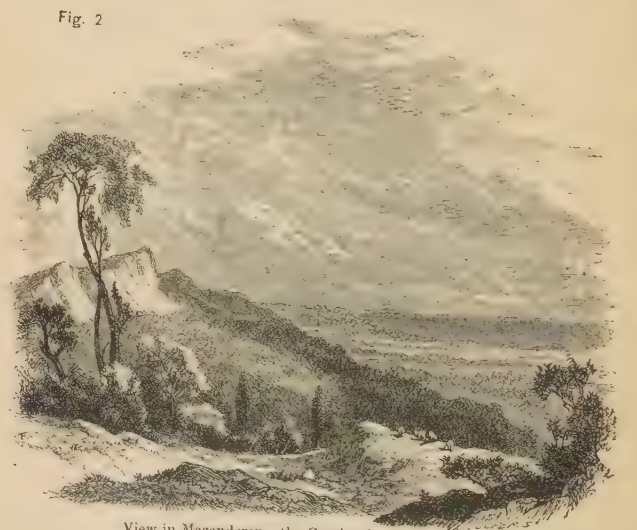
Fig 3

Plan of Takht-i-Suleïman (perhaps the Northern Ecbatana).

Fig. 1

View of the Rock of Behistun.

Fig. 2



View in Mazanderan—the Caspian Sea in the distance.

lage of Arteman,[127] which lies on the southern face of Elwend near its base, and is well adapted for a royal residence. Here, "during the severest winter, when Hamadan and the surrounding country are buried in snow, a warm and sunny climate is to be found; whilst in the summer a thousand rills descending from Elwend diffuse around fertility and fragrance."[128] Groves of trees grow up in rich luxuriance from the well-irrigated soil, whose thick foliage affords a welcome shelter from the heat of the noonday sun. The climate, the gardens, and the manifold blessings of the place are proverbial throughout Persia; and naturally caused the choice of the site for a retired palace, to which the court of Ecbatana might adjourn when either the summer heat and dust or the winter cold made residence in the capital irksome.

In the neighborhood of Adrapan, on the road leading to Bagistan, stood Concobar,[129] which is undoubtedly the modern Kungawar, and perhaps the Chavon of Diodorus.[130] Here, according to the Sicilian historian, Semiramis built a palace and laid out a paradise; and here, in the time of Isidore, was a famous temple of Artemis. Colossal ruins crown the summit of the acclivity on which the town of Kungawar stands,[131] which may be the remains of this latter building; but no trace has been found that can be regarded as either Median or Assyrian.

The Median town of Aspadan, which is mentioned by no writer but Ptolemy,[132] would scarcely deserve notice here, if it were not for its modern celebrity. Aspadan, corrupted into Isfahan, became the capital of Persia, under the Sefi kings, who rendered it one of the most magnificent cities of Asia. It is uncertain whether it existed at all in the time of the great Median empire. If so, it was, at best, an outlying town of little consequence on the extreme southern confines of the territory, where it abutted upon Persia proper.[133] The district wherein it lay was inhabited by the Median tribe of the Parætaceni.[134]

Upon the whole it must be allowed that the towns of Media were few and of no great account. The Medes did not love to congregate in large cities, but preferred to scatter themselves in villages over their broad and varied territory. The protection of walls, necessary for the inhabitants of the low Mesopotamian regions, was not required by a people whose country was full of natural fastnesses to which they could readily remove on the approach of danger. Excepting the capital and

the two important cities of Gazaca and Rhages, the Median towns were insignificant. Even those cities themselves were probably of moderate dimensions, and had little of the architectural splendor which gives so peculiar an interest to the towns of Mesopotamia. Their principal buildings were in a frail and perishable material,[135] unsuited to bear the ravages of time; they have consequently altogether disappeared, and in the whole of Media modern researches have failed to bring to light a single edifice which can be assigned with any show of probability to the period of the Empire.

The plan adopted in former portions of this work[136] makes it necessary, before concluding this chapter, to glance briefly at the character of the various countries and districts by which Media was bordered—the Caspian district upon the north, Armenia upon the north-west, the Zagros region and Assyria upon the west, Persia proper upon the south, and upon the east Sagartia and Parthia.

North and north-east of the mountain range which under different names skirts the southern shores of the Caspian Sea and curves round its south-western corner, lies a narrow but important strip of territory—the modern Ghilan and Mazanderan. [Pl. II., Fig. 2.] This is a most fertile region, well watered and richly wooded, and forms one of the most valuable portions of the modern kingdom of Persia. At first it is a low flat tract of deep alluvial soil, but little raised above the level of the Caspian; gradually however it rises into swelling hills which form the supports of the high mountains that shut in this sheltered region, a region only to be reached by a very few passes over or through them.[137] The mountains are clothed on this side nearly to their summit with dwarf oaks, or with shrubs and brushwood; while, lower down, their flanks are covered with forests of elms, cedars, chestnuts, beeches, and cypress trees. The gardens and orchards of the natives are of the most superb character; the vegetation is luxuriant; lemons, oranges, peaches, pomegranates, besides other fruits, abound; rice, hemp, sugar-canes, mulberries are cultivated with success; vines grow wild; and the valleys are strewn with flowers of rare fragrance, among which may be noted the rose, the honeysuckle, and the sweetbrier.[138] Nature, however, with her usual justice, has balanced these extraordinary advantages with peculiar drawbacks; the tiger, unknown in any other part of Western Asia,[139] here lurks in the thickets, ready to spring at any moment on the unwary trav-

eller; inundations are frequent, and carry desolation far and wide; the waters, which thus escape from the river beds, stagnate in marshes, and during the summer and autumn heats pestilential exhalations arise, which destroy the stranger, and bring even the acclimatized native to the brink of the grave.[140] The Persian monarch chooses the southern rather than the northern side of the mountains for the site of his capital, preferring the keen winter cold and dry summer heat of the high and almost waterless plateau to the damp and stifling air of the low Caspian region.

The narrow tract of which this is a description can at no time have sheltered a very numerous or powerful people. During the Median period, and for many ages afterwards, it seems to have been inhabited by various petty tribes of predatory habits—Cadusians, Mardi, Tapyri, etc.,—who passed their time in petty quarrels among themselves, and in plundering raids upon their great southern neighbor.[141] Of these tribes the Cadusians alone enjoyed any considerable reputation. They were celebrated for their skill with the javelin[142]—a skill probably represented by the modern Persian use of the *djereed*. According to Diodorus, they were engaged in frequent wars with the Median kings, and were able to bring into the field a force of 200,000 men![143] Under the Persians they seem to have been considered good soldiers,[144] and to have sometimes made a struggle for independence.[145] But there is no real reason to believe that they were of such strength as to have formed at any time a danger to the Median kingdom, to which it is more probable that they generally acknowledged a qualified subjection.

The great country of Armenia, which lay north-west and partly north of Media, has been generally described in the first volume;[146] but a few words will be here added with respect to the more eastern portion, which immediately bordered upon the Median territory. This consisted of two outlying districts, separated from the rest of the country, the triangular basin of Lake Van, and the tract between the Kur and Aras rivers—the modern Karabagh and Erivan. The basin of Lake Van, surrounded by high ranges, and forming the very heart of the mountain system of this part of Asia, is an isolated region, a sort of natural citadel, where a strong military power would be likely to establish itself. Accordingly it is here, and here alone in all Armenia, that we find signs of the existence, during the Assyrian and Median periods, of a great organized monarchy.

The Van inscriptions indicate to us a line of kings who bore sway in the eastern Armenia—the true Ararat—and who were both in civilization and in military strength far in advance of any of the other princes who divided among them the Armenian territory. The Van monarchs may have been at times formidable enemies of the Medes. They have left traces of their dominion, not only on the tops of the mountain passes[147] which lead into the basin of Lake Urumiyeh, but even in the comparatively low plain of Miyandab on the southern shore of that inland sea.[148] It is probable from this that they were at one time masters of a large portion of Media Atropatêné, and the very name of Urumiyeh, which still attaches to the lake, may have been given to it from one of their tribes.[149] In the tract between the Kur and Aras, on the other hand, there is no sign of the early existence of any formidable power. Here the mountains are comparatively low, the soil is fertile, and the climate temperate.[150] The character of the region would lead its inhabitants to cultivate the arts of peace rather than those of war, and would thus tend to prevent them from being formidable or troublesome to their neighbors.

The Zagros region, which in the more ancient times separated between Media and Assyria, being inhabited by a number of independent tribes, but which was ultimately absorbed into the more powerful country, requires no notice here, having been sufficiently described among the tracts by which Assyria was bordered.[151] At first a serviceable shield to the weak Arian tribes which were establishing themselves along its eastern base upon the high plateau, it gradually passed into their possession as they increased in strength, and ultimately became a main nursery of their power, furnishing to their armies vast numbers both of men and horses. The great horse pastures, from which the Medes first and the Persians afterwards, supplied their numerous and excellent cavalry, were in this quarter;[152] and the troops which it furnished—hardy mountaineers accustomed to brave the severity of a most rigorous climate—must have been among the most effective of the Median forces.[153]

On the south Media was bounded by Persia proper—a tract which corresponded nearly with the modern province of Farsistan. The complete description of this territory, the original seat of the Persian nation, belongs to a future volume of this work, which will contain an account of the "Fifth Monarchy." For the present it is sufficient to observe that the Persian terri-

tory was for the most part a highland, very similar to Media, from which it was divided by no strongly marked line or natural boundary. The Persian mountains are a continuation of the Zagros chain, and Northern Persia is a portion—the southern portion—of the same great plateau, whose western and north-western skirts formed the great mass of the Median territory. Thus upon this side Media was placed in the closest connection with an important country, a country similar in character to her own, where a hardy race was likely to grow up, with which she might expect to have difficult contests.

Finally, towards the east lay the great salt desert, sparsely inhabited by various nomadic races, among which the most important were the Cossæans and the Sagartians. To the latter people Herodotus seems to assign almost the whole of the sandy region, since he unites them with the Sarangians and Thamanæans on the one hand, with the Utians and Mycians upon the other.[154] They were a wild race, probably of Arian origin,[155] who hunted with the *lasso* over the great desert mounted on horses,[156] and could bring into the field a force of eight or ten thousand men.[157] Their country, a waste of sand and gravel, in parts thickly encrusted with salt, was impassable to an army, and formed a barrier which effectively protected Media along the greater portion of her eastern frontier. Towards the extreme north-east the Sagartians were replaced by the Cossæans and the Parthians, the former probably the people of the Siah-Koh mountain,[158] the latter the inhabitants of the tract known now as the *Atak*,[159] or "skirt," which extends along the southern flank of the Elburz range from the Caspian Gates nearly to Herat, and is capable of sustaining a very considerable population. The Cossæans were plunderers,[160] from whose raids Media suffered constant annoyance; but they were at no time of sufficient strength to cause any serious fear. The Parthians, as we learn from the course of events, had in them the materials of a mighty people; but the hour for their elevation and expansion was not yet come, and the keenest observer of Median times could scarcely have perceived in them the future lords of Western Asia. From Parthia, moreover, Media was divided by the strong rocky spur[161] which runs out from the Elburz into the desert in long. 52° 10′ nearly, over which is the narrow pass already mentioned as the Caspian Gates.[162] Thus Media on most sides was guarded by the strong natural barriers of seas,[163] mountains, and deserts lying open only on the south, where she adjoined

upon a kindred people. Her neighbors were for the most part weak in numbers, though warlike. Armenia, however, to the north-west, Assyria to the west, and Persia to the south, were all more or less formidable. A prescient eye might have foreseen that the great struggles of Media would be with these powers, and that if she attained imperial proportions it must be by their subjugation or absorption.

CHAPTER II.

CLIMATE AND PRODUCTIONS.

Ἡ πολλὴ μὲν ὑψηλὴ ἐστι καὶ ψυχρά· ἡ δ' ἐν ταπεινοῖς ἐδάφεσι καὶ κοίλοις οὖσα εὐδαίμων σφόδρα ἐστί καὶ πάμφορος.—Strab. xi. 13.

MEDIA, like Assyria, is a country of such extent and variety that, in order to give a correct description of its climate, we must divide it into regions. Azerbijan, or Atropatêné, the most northern portion, has a climate altogether cooler than the rest of Media; while in the more southern division of the country there is a marked difference between the climate of the east and of the west, of the tracts lying on the high plateau and skirting the Great Salt Desert, and of those contained within or closely abutting upon the Zagros mountain range. The difference here is due to the difference of physical conformation, which is as great as possible, the broad mountainous plains about Kasvin, Koum, and Kashan, divided from each other by low rocky ridges, offering the strongest conceivable contrast to the perpetual alternations of mountain and valley, precipitous height and deep wooded glen, which compose the greater part of the Zagros region.

The climate of Azerbijan is temperate and pleasant, though perhaps somewhat overwarm,[1] in summer; while in winter it is bitterly severe, colder than that of almost any other region in the same latitude.[2] This extreme rigor seems to be mainly owing to elevation, the very valleys and valley plains of the tract being at a height of from 4000 to 5000 feet above the sea level. Frost commonly sets in towards the end of November, or at latest early in December; snow soon covers the ground to the depth of several feet; the thermometer falls below zero; the sun shines brightly except when from time to time fresh

deposits of snow occur; but a keen and strong wind usually prevails, which is represented as "cutting like a sword,"[3] and being a very "assassin of life."[4] Deaths from cold are of daily occurrence;[5] and it is impossible to travel without the greatest risk. Whole companies or caravans occasionally perish beneath the drift, when the wind is violent, especially if a heavy fall happen to coincide with one of the frequent easterly gales. The severe weather commonly continues till March, when travelling becomes possible, but the snow remains on much of the ground till May, and on the mountains still longer.[6] The spring, which begins in April, is temperate and delightful; a sudden burst of vegetation succeeds to the long winter lethargy; the air is fresh and balmy, the sun pleasantly warm, the sky generally cloudless. In the month of May the heat increases—thunder hangs in the air—and the valleys are often close and sultry.[7] Frequent showers occur, and the hail-storms are sometimes so violent as to kill the cattle in the fields.[8] As the summer advances the heats increase, but the thermometer rarely reaches 90° in the shade, and except in the narrow valleys the air is never oppressive. The autumn is generally very fine. Foggy mornings are common; but they are succeeded by bright pleasant days, without wind or rain.[9] On the whole the climate is pronounced healthy,[10] though somewhat trying to Europeans, who do not readily adapt themselves to a country where the range of the thermometer is as much as 90° or 100°.

In the part of Media situated on the great plateau—the modern Irak Ajemi—in which are the important towns of Teheran, Isfahan, Hamadan, Kashan, Kasvin, and Koum, the climate is altogether warmer than in Azerbijan, the summers being hotter, and the winters shorter and much less cold. Snow indeed covers the ground for about three months, from early in December till March; but the thermometer rarely shows more than ten or twelve degrees of frost, and death from cold is uncommon.[11] The spring sets in about the beginning of March, and is at first somewhat cool, owing to the prevalence of the *baude caucasan* or north wind,[12] which blows from districts where the snow still lies. But after a little time the weather becomes delicious; the orchards are a mass of blossom; the rose gardens come into bloom; the cultivated lands are covered with springing crops; the desert itself wears a light livery of green. Every sense is gratified; the nightingale bursts out with a full gush of song; the air plays softly upon the cheek, and comes loaded with fragrance. Too soon, how-

ever, this charming time passes away, and the summer heats begin, in some places as early as June.[13] The thermometer at midday rises to 90 or 100 degrees. Hot gusts blow from the desert, sometimes with great violence. The atmosphere is described as choking;[14] and in parts of the plateau it is usual for the inhabitants to quit their towns almost in a body, and retire for several months into the mountains.[15] This extreme heat is, however, exceptional: in most parts of the plateau the summer warmth is tempered by cool breezes from the surrounding mountains, on which there is always a good deal of snow. At Hamadan, which, though on the plain, is close to the mountains, the thermometer seems scarcely ever to rise above 90°, and that degree of heat is attained only for a few hours in the day. The mornings and evenings are cool and refreshing; and altogether the climate quite justifies the choice of the Persian monarchs, who selected Ecbatana for their place of residence during the hottest portion of the year.[16] Even at Isfahan, which is on the edge of the desert, the heat is neither extreme nor prolonged. The hot gusts which blow from the east and from the south raise the temperature at times nearly to a hundred degrees; but these oppressive winds alternate with cooler breezes from the west, often accompanied by rain; and the average highest temperature during the day in the hottest month, which is August, does not exceed 90°.

A peculiarity in the climate of the plateau which deserves to be noticed is the extreme dryness of the atmosphere.[17] In summer the rains which fall are slight, and they are soon absorbed by the thirsty soil. There is a little dew at nights,[18] especially in the vicinity of the few streams; but it disappears with the first hour of sunshine, and the air is left without a particle of moisture. In winter the dryness is equally great; frost taking the place of heat, with the same effect upon the atmosphere. Unhealthy exhalations are thus avoided, and the salubrity of the climate is increased;[19] but the European will sometimes sigh for the soft, balmy airs of his own land, which have come flying over the sea, and seem to bring their wings still dank with the ocean spray.

Another peculiarity of this region, produced by the unequal rarefaction of the air over its different portions, is the occurrence, especially in spring and summer, of sudden gusts, hot or cold,[20] which blow with great violence. These gusts are sometimes accompanied with whirlwinds,[21] which sweep the country in different directions, carrying away with them leaves,

branches, stubble, sand, and other light substances, and causing great annoyance to the traveller. They occur chiefly in connection with a change of wind, and are no doubt consequent on the meeting of two opposite currents. Their violence, however, is moderate, compared with that of tropical tornadoes, and it is not often that they do any considerable damage to the crops over which they sweep.

One further characteristic of the flat region may be noticed. The intense heat of the summer sun striking on the dry sand or the saline efflorescence of the desert throws the air over them into such a state of quivering undulation as produces the most wonderful and varying effects, distorting the forms of objects, and rendering the most familiar strange and hard to be recognized. A mud bank furrowed by the rain will exhibit the appearance of a magnificent city, with columns, domes, minarets, and pyramids; a few stunted bushes will be transformed into a forest of stately trees; a distant mountain will, in the space of a minute, assume first the appearance of a lofty peak, then swell out at the top, and resemble a mighty mushroom, next split into several parts, and finally settle down into a flat tableland.[23] Occasionally, though not very often, that semblance of water is produced[23] which Europeans are are apt to suppose the usual effect of mirage. The images of objects are reflected at their base in an inverted position; the desert seems converted into a vast lake; and the thirsty traveller, advancing towards it, finds himself the victim of an illusion, which is none the less successful because he has been a thousand times forewarned of its deceptive power.

In the mountain range of Zagros and the tracts adjacent to it, the climate, owing to the great differences of elevation, is more varied than in the other parts of the ancient Media. Severe cold[24] prevails in the higher mountain regions for seven months out of the twelve, while during the remaining five the heat is never more than moderate.[25] In the low valleys, on the contrary, and in other favored situations,[26] the winters are often milder than on the plateau; while in the summers, if the heat is not greater, at any rate it is more oppressive. Owing to the abundance of the streams and proximity of the melting snows, the air is moist; and the damp heat, which stagnates in the valleys, breeds fever and ague.[27] Between these extremes of climate and elevation, every variety is to be found; and, except in winter, a few hours' journey will almost always bring the traveller into a temperate region.

In respect of natural productiveness, Media (as already observed)[28] differs exceedingly in different, and even in adjacent, districts. The rocky ridges of the great plateau, destitute of all vegetable mold, are wholly bare and arid, admitting not the slightest degree of cultivation. Many of the mountains of Azerbijan, naked, rigid, and furrowed,[29] may compare even with these desert ranges for sterility. The higher parts of Zagros and Elburz are sometimes of the same character; but more often they are thickly clothed with forests, affording excellent timber and other valuable commodities. In the Elburz pines are found near the summit,[30] while lower down there occur, first the wild almond and the dwarf oak, and then the usual timber-trees of the country, the Oriental plane, the willow, the poplar, and the walnut.[31] The walnut grows to a large size both here and in Azerbijan, but the poplar is the wood most commonly used for building purposes.[32] In Zagros, besides most of these trees, the ash and the terebinth or turpentine-tree are common; the oak bears gall-nuts of a large size: and the gum-tragacanth plant frequently clothes the mountain-sides.[33] The valleys of this region are full of magnificent orchards, as are the low grounds and more sheltered nooks of Azerbijan. The fruit-trees comprise, besides vines and mulberries, the apple, the pear, the quince, the plum, the cherry, the almond, the nut, the chestnut, the olive, the peach, the nectarine, and the apricot.[34]

On the plains of the high plateau there is a great scarcity of vegetation. Trees of a large size grow only in the few places which are well watered, as in the neighborhood of Hamadan, Isfahan, and in a less degree of Kashan.[35] The principal tree is the Oriental plane, which flourishes together with poplars and willows along the water-courses; cypresses also grow freely; elms and cedars are found,[36] and the orchards and gardens contain not only the fruit-trees mentioned above, but also the jujube, the cornel, the filbert, the medlar, the pistachio nut, the pomegranate, and the fig.[37] Away from the immediate vicinity of the rivers and the towns, not a tree, scarcely a bush, is to be seen. The common thorn is indeed tolerably abundant[38] in a few places; but elsewhere the tamarisk and a few other sapless shrubs[39] are the only natural products of this bare and arid region.

In remarkable contrast with the natural barrenness of this wide tract are certain favored districts in Zagros and Azerbijan, where the herbage is constant throughout the summer,

and sometimes only too luxuriant. Such are the rich and extensive grazing grounds of Khawah and Alishtar, near Kermanshah,[41] the pastures near Ojan[41] and Marand,[42] and the celebrated Chowal Moghan or plain of Moghan, on the lower course of the Araxes river, where the grass is said to grow sufficiently high to cover a man on horseback.[43] These, however, are rare exceptions to the general character of the country, which is by nature unproductive, and scarcely deserving even of the qualified encomium of Strabo.[44]

Still Media, though deficient in natural products, is not ill adapted for cultivation. The Zagros valleys and hill-sides produce under a very rude system of agriculture, besides the fruits already noticed, rice, wheat, barley, millet, sesame, Indian corn, cotton, tobacco, mulberries, cucumbers, melons, pumpkins, and the castor-oil plant.[45] In Azerbijan the soil is almost all cultivable, and if ploughed and sown will bring good crops of the ordinary kinds of grain.[46] Even on the side of the desert, where Nature has shown herself most niggardly, and may seem perhaps to deserve the reproach of Cicero, that she behaves as a step mother to a man rather than as a mother,[47] a certain amount of care and scientific labor may render considerable tracts fairly productive. The only want of this region is water; and if the natural deficiency of this necessary fluid can be anyhow supplied, all parts of the plateau will bear crops, except those which form the actual Salt Desert. In modern, and still more in ancient times, this fact has been clearly perceived, and an elaborate system of artifical irrigation, suitable to the peculiar circumstances of the country, has been very widely established. The system of *kanats*, as they are called at the present day, aims at utilizing to the uttermost all the small streams and rills which descend towards the desert from the surrounding mountains, and at conveying as far as possible into the plain the spring water, which is the indispensable[48] condition of cultivation in a country where—except for a few days in the spring and autumn—rain scarcely ever falls. As the precious element would rapidly evaporate if exposed to the rays of the summer sun, the Iranian husbandman carries his conduit underground, laboriously tunnelling through the stiff argillaceous soil, at a depth of many feet below the surface. The mode in which he proceeds is as follows. At intervals along the line of his intended conduit he first sinks shafts, which he then connects with one another by galleries, seven or eight feet in height, giving his galleries a slight in-

cline, so that the water may run down them freely, and continuing them till he reaches a point where he wishes to bring the water out upon the surface of the plain.[47] Here and there, at the foot of his shafts, he digs wells, from which the fluid can readily be raised by means of a bucket and a windlass; and he thus brings under cultivation a considerable belt of land along the whole line of the *kanat*, as well as a large tract at its termination. These conduits, on which the cultivation of the plateau depends, were established at so remote a date that they were popularly ascribed to the mythic Semiramis,[50] the supposed wife of Ninus. It is thought that in ancient times they were longer and more numerous than at present,[51] when they occur only occasionally, and seldom extend more than a few miles from the base of the hills.

By help of the irrigation thus contrived, the great plateau of Iran will produce good crops of grain, rice, wheat, barley, Indian corn, *doura*, millet, and sesame.[52] It will also bear cotton, tobacco, saffron, rhubarb, madder, poppies which give a good opium, senna, and assafœtida.[53] Its garden vegetables are excellent, and include potatoes, cabbages, lentils, kidney-beans, peas, turnips, carrots, spinach, beetroot, and cucumbers.[54] The variety of its fruit-trees has been already noticed.[55] The flavor of their produce is in general good, and in some cases surpassingly excellent. No quinces are so fine as those of Isfahan,[56] and no melons have a more delicate flavor.[57] The grapes of Kasvin are celebrated, and make a remarkably good wine.[58]

Among the flowers of the country must be noted, first of all, its roses, which flourish in the most luxuriant abundance, and are of every variety of hue.[59] The size to which the tree will grow is extraordinary, standards sometimes exceeding the height of fourteen or fifteen feet.[60] Lilacs, jasmines, and many other flowering shrubs are common in the gardens, while among wild flowers may be noticed hollyhocks, lilies, tulips, crocuses, anemones, lilies of the valley, fritillaries, gentians, primroses, convolvuluses, chrysanthemums, heliotropes, pinks, water-lilies, ranunculuses, jonquils, narcissuses, hyacinths, mallows, stocks, violets, a fine campanula (*Michauxia levigata*), a mint (*Nepeta longiflora*), several sages, salsolas, and fagonias.[61] In many places the wild flowers during the spring months cover the ground, painting it with a thousand dazzling or delicate hues.[62]

The mineral products of Media are numerous and valuable. Excellent stone of many kinds abounds in almost every part of

the country, the most important and valuable being the famous Tabriz-marble. This curious substance appears to be a petrifaction formed by natural springs, which deposit carbonate of lime in large quantities. It is found only in one place, on the flanks of the hills, not far from the Urumiyeh lake. The slabs are used for tombstones, for the skirting of rooms, and for the pavements of baths and palaces; when cut thin they often take the place of glass in windows, being semi-transparent. The marble is commonly of a pale yellow color, but occasionally it is streaked with red, green, or copper-colored veins.[64]

In metals the country is thought to be rich, but no satisfactory examination of it has been as yet made. Iron, copper, and native steel are derived from mines actually at work; while Europeans have observed indications of lead, arsenic, and antimony in Azerbijan, in Kurdistan, and in the rocky ridges which intersect the desert.[65] Tradition speaks of a time when gold and silver were procured from mountains near Takht-i-Sule-man,[66] and it is not unlikely that they may exist both there and in the Zagros range. Quartz, the well-known matrix of the precious metal, abounds in Kurdistan.[67]

Of all the mineral products, none is more abundant than salt.[68] On the side of the desert, and again near Tabriz at the mouth of the Aji Su, are vast plains which glisten with the substance, and yield it readily to all who care to gather it up. Saline springs and streams are also numerous,[69] from which salt can be obtained by evaporation. But, besides these sources of supply, rock salt is found in places,[70] and this is largely quarried, and is preferred by the natives.[71]

Other important products of the earth are saltpetre, which is found in the Elburz,[72] and in Azerbijan;[73] sulphur, which abounds in the same regions, and likewise on the high plateau;[74] alum,[75] which is quarried near Tabriz; naphtha and gypsum, which are found in Kurdistan;[76] and talc, which exists in the mountains near Koum,[77] in the vicinity of Tabriz,[78] and probably in other places.

The chief wild animals which have been observed within the limits of the ancient Media are the lion, the tiger, the leopard, the bear, the beaver, the jackal, the wolf, the wild ass, the ibex or wild goat, the wild sheep, the stag, the antelope, the wild boar, the fox, the hare, the rabbit, the ferret, the rat, the jerboa, the porcupine, the mole, and the marmot. The lion and tiger are exceedingly rare; they seem to be found only in

Azerbijan,[79] and we may perhaps best account for their presence there by considering that a few of these animals occasionally stray out of Mazanderan, which is their only proper locality in this part of Asia. Of all the beasts, the most abundant are the stag and the wild goat, which are numerous in the Elburz, and in parts of Azerbijan,[80] the wild boar, which abounds both in Azerbijan, and in the country about Hamadan,[81] and the jackal, which is found everywhere. Bears flourish in Zagros, antelopes in Azerbijan, in the Elburz, and on the plains near Sultaniyeh.[82] The wild ass is found only in the desert parts of the high plateau;[83] the beaver only in Lake Zeribar, near Suleïmaniyeh.[84]

The Iranian wild ass differs in some respects from the Mesopotamian. His skin is smooth, like that of a deer, and of a reddish color, the belly and hinder parts partaking of a silvery gray; his head and ears are large and somewhat clumsy; but his neck is fine, and his legs are beautifully slender. His mane is short and black, and he has a black tuft at the end of his tail, but no dark line runs along his back or crosses his shoulders.[85] The Persians call him the *gur-khur*, and chase him with occasional success, regarding his flesh as a great delicacy. He appears to be the *Asinus onager* of naturalists, a distinct species from the *Asinus hemippus* of Mesopotamia, and the *Asinus hemionus* of Thibet and Tartary.[86]

It is doubtful whether some kind of wild cattle does not still inhabit the more remote tracts of Kurdistan. The natives mention among the animals of their country "the mountain ox;" and though it has been suggested that the beast intended is the elk,[87] it is perhaps as likely to be the Aurochs, which seems certainly to have been a native of the adjacent country of Mesopotamia in ancient times.[88] At any rate, until Zagros has been thoroughly explored by Europeans, it must remain uncertain what animal is meant. Meanwhile we may be tolerably sure that, besides the species enumerated, Mount Zagros contains within its folds some large and rare ruminant.

Among the birds the most remarkable are the eagle, the bustard, the pelican, the stork, the pheasant, several kinds of partridges, the quail, the woodpecker, the bee-eater, the hoopoe, and the nightingale. Besides these, doves and pigeons, both wild and tame,[89] are common; as are swallows, goldfinches, sparrows, larks, blackbirds, thrushes, linnets, magpies, crows, hawks, falcons, teal, snipe, wild ducks, and many other kinds of waterfowl. The most common partridge is a red-legged

species (*Caccabis chukar* of naturalists), which is unable to fly far, and is hunted until it drops.[90] Another kind, common both in Azerbijan and in the Elburz,[91] is the black-breasted partridge (*Perdix nigra*)—a bird not known in many countries. Besides these, there is a small gray partridge in the Zagros range, which the Kurds call *seska*.[92] The bee-eater (*Merops Persicus*) is rare. It is a bird of passage, and only visits Media in the autumn, preparatory to retreating into the warm district of Mazanderan for the winter months.[93] The hoopoe (*Upupa*) is probably still rarer, since very few travellers mention it.[94] The woodpecker is found in Zagros, and is a beautiful bird, red and gray in color.[95]

Media is, on the whole, but scantily provided with fish. Lake Urumiyeh produces none, as its waters are so salt that they even destroy all the river-fish which enter them.[96] Salt streams, like the Aji Su, are equally unproductive, and the fresh-water rivers of the plateau fall so low in summer that fish cannot become numerous in them. Thus it is only in Zagros, in Azerbijan, and in the Elburz, that the streams furnish any considerable quantity. The kinds most common are barbel, carp, dace, bleak, and gudgeon.[97] In a comparatively few streams, more especially those of Zagros, trout are found, which are handsome and of excellent quality.[98] The river of Isfahan produces a kind of cray-fish, which is taken in the bushes along its banks, and is very delicate eating.[99]

It is remarkable that fish are caught not only in the open streams of Media, but also in the *kanats* or underground conduits, from which the light of day is very nearly excluded. They appear to be of one sort only, viz., barbel, but are abundant, and often grow to a considerable size. Chardin supposed them to be unfit for food;[100] but a later observer declares that, though of no great delicacy, they are "perfectly sweet and wholesome."[101]

Of reptiles, the most common are snakes, lizards, and tortoises. In the long grass of the Moghan district, on the lower course of the Araxes, the snakes are so numerous and venomous that many parts of the plain are thereby rendered impassable in the summer-time.[102] A similar abundance of this reptile near the western entrance of the Girduni Siyaluk pass[103] induces the natives to abstain from using it except in winter.[104] Lizards of many forms and hues[105] disport themselves about the rocks and stones, some quite small, others two feet or more in length.[106] They are quite harmless, and

appear to be in general very tame. Land tortoises are also common in the sandy regions.[107] In Kurdistan there is a remarkable frog, with a smooth skin and of an apple-green color, which lives chiefly in trees, roosting in them at night, and during the day employing itself in catching flies and locusts, which it strikes with its fore paw, as a cat strikes a bird or a mouse.[108]

Among insects, travellers chiefly notice the mosquito,[109] which is in many places a cruel torment; the centipede, which grows to an unusual size;[110] the locust, of which there is more than one variety; and the scorpion, whose sting is sometimes fatal.

The destructive locust (the *Acridium peregrinum*, probably) comes suddenly into Kurdistan[111] and southern Media[112] in clouds that obscure the air, moving with a slow and steady flight and with a sound like that of heavy rain, and settling in myriads on the fields, the gardens, the trees, the terraces of the houses, and even the streets, which they sometimes cover completely. Where they fall, vegetation presently disappears; the leaves, and even the stems of the plants, are devoured; the labors of the husbandman through many a weary month perish in a day; and the curse of famine is brought upon the land which but now enjoyed the prospect of an abundant harvest. It is true that the devourers are themselves devoured to some extent by the poorer sort of people;[113] but the compensation is slight and temporary; in a few days, when all verdure is gone, either the swarms move to fresh pastures, or they perish and cover the fields with their dead bodies, while the desolation which they have created continues. [Pl. III., Fig. 2.]

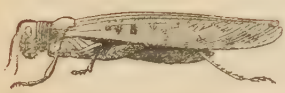
Another kind of locust, observed by Mr. Rich in Kurdistan, is called by the natives *shira-kulla*, a name seemingly identical with the *chargól* of the Jews,[114] and perhaps the best clue which we possess to the identification of that species. Mr. Rich describes it as "a large insect, about four inches long, with no wings, but a kind of sword projecting from the tail. It bites," he says, "pretty severely, but does no harm to the cultivation."[115] We may recognize in this description a variety of the great green grasshopper (*Locusta viridissima*), many species of which are destitute of wings, or have wing-covers only, and those of a very small size."[116]

The scorpion of the country (*Scorpio crassicauda*) has been represented as peculiarly venomous,[117] more especially that

Fig 1

Pigeon towers near Isfahan.

Fig 2.

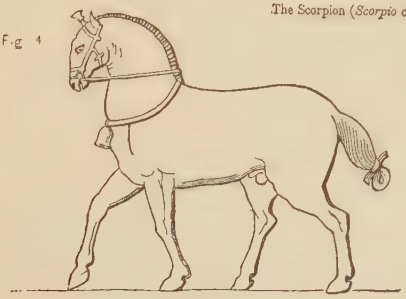


The destructive Locust (*Acridium peregrinum*).

Fig 3.

The Scorpion (*Scorpio crassicauda*).

Fig 4



Persepolitan horse, perhaps Nisæan.

Fig. 1.

Arian physiognomy (Persepolis).

Fig. 2

Persian or Median spear (Persepolis).

Fig. 3.

Shield of a Warrior (Persepolis).

Fig. 4.

Median shoe (Persepolis).

which abounds in the city and neighborhood of Kashan;[118] but the most judicious observers deny that there is any difference between the Kashan scorpion and that of other parts of the plateau,[119] while at the same time they maintain that if the sting be properly treated, no danger need be apprehended from it. The scorpion infests houses, hiding itself under cushions and coverlets, and stings the moment it is pressed upon; some caution is thus requisite in avoiding it; but it hurts no one unless molested, and many Europeans have resided for years in the country without having ever been stung by it.[120] [Pl. III., Fig. 3.]

The domestic animals existing at present within the limits of the ancient Media are the camel, the horse, the mule, the ass, the cow, the goat, the sheep, the dog, the cat, and the buffalo. The camel is the ordinary beast of burden in the flat country, and can carry an enormous weight. Three kinds are employed—the Bactrian or two-humped camel, which is coarse and low; the taller and lighter Arabian breed; and a cross between the two, which is called *ner*, and is valued very highly.[121] The ordinary burden of the Arabian camel is from seven to eight hundredweight; while the Bactrian variety is said to be capable of bearing a load nearly twice as heavy.[122]

Next to the camel, as a beast of burden, must be placed the mule. The mules of the country are small, but finely proportioned, and carry a considerable weight.[123] They travel thirty miles a day with ease,[124] and are preferred for journeys on which it is necessary to cross the mountains. The ass is very inferior, and is only used by the poorer classes.[125]

Two distinct breeds of horses are now found in Media, both of which seem to be foreign—the Turkoman and the Arabian. The Turkoman is a large, powerful, enduring animal, with long legs, a light body, and a big head.[126] The Arab is much smaller, but perfectly shaped, and sometimes not greatly inferior to the very best produce of Nejd.[127] A third breed is obtained by an intermixture of these two, which is called the *bid-paï*, or "wind footed," and is the most prized of all.[128]

The dogs are of various breeds, but the most esteemed is a large kind of grayhound, which some suppose to have been introduced into this part of Asia by the Macedonians, and which is chiefly employed in the chase of the antelope.[129] The animal is about the height of a full sized English grayhound, but rather stouter; he is deep-chested, has long, smooth hair, and the tail considerably feathered.[130] His pace is inferior to

that of our grayhounds, but in strength and sagacity he far surpasses them.[131]

We do not find many of the products of Media celebrated by ancient writers. Of its animals, those which had the highest reputation were its horses, distinguished into two breeds, an ordinary kind, of which Media produced annually many thousands,[132] and a kind of rare size and excellence, known under the name of Nisæan. These last are celebrated by Herodotus,[133] Strabo,[134] Arrian,[135] Ammianus Marcellinus,[136] Suidas,[137] and others. They are said to have been of a peculiar shape:[138] and they were equally famous for size, speed, and stoutness.[139] Strabo remarks that they resemble the horses known in his own time as Parthian;[140] and this observation seems distinctly to connect them with the Turkoman breed mentioned above, which is derived exactly from the old Parthian country. In color they were often, if not always, white. We have no representation on the monuments which we can regard as certainly intended for a Nisæan horse, but perhaps the figure from Persepolis may be a Persian sketch of the animal.[141] [Pl. III., Fig. 4.]

The mules and small cattle (sheep and goats) were in sufficient repute to be required, together with horses, in the annual tribute paid to the Persian king.[142]

Of vegetable products assigned to Media by ancient writers, the most remarkable is the "Median apple," or citron.[143] Pliny says it was the sole tree for which Media was famous,[144] and that it would only grow there and in Persia.[145] Theophrastus,[146] Dioscorides,[147] Virgil,[148] and other writers, celebrate its wonderful qualities, distinctly assigning it to the same region. The citron, however, will not grow in the country which has been here termed Media.[149] It flourishes only in the warm tract between Shiraz and the Persian Gulf, and in the low sheltered region, south of the Caspian, the modern Ghilan and Mazanderan. No doubt it was the inclusion of this latter region within the limits of Media by many of the later geographers that gave to this product of the Caspian country an appellation which is really a misnomer.

Another product whereto Media gave name, and probably with more reason, was a kind of clover or lucerne, which was said to have been introduced into Greece by the Persians in the reign of Darius,[150] and which was afterwards cultivated largely in Italy.[151] Strabo considers this plant to have been the chief food of the Median horses,[152] while Dioscorides assigns

it certain medicinal qualities.[153] Clover is still cultivated in the Elburz region,[154] but horses are now fed almost entirely on straw and barley.

Media was also famous for its silphium, or assafœtida, a plant which the country still produces,[155] though not in any large quantity. No drug was in higher repute with the ancients for medicinal purposes; and though the Median variety was a coarse kind, inferior in repute, not only to the Cyrenaic, but also to the Parthian and the Syrian,[156] it seems to have been exported both to Greece and Rome,[157] and to have been largely used by druggists, however little esteemed by physicians.[158]

The other vegetable products which Media furnished, or was believed to furnish, to the ancient world, were bdellium, amomum, cardamomum, gum tragacanth, wild-vine oil, and sagapenum, or the *Ferula persica*.[159] Of these, gum tragacanth is still largely produced, and is an important article of commerce.[160] Wild vines abound in Zagros[161] and Elburz, but no oil is at present made from them. Bdellium, if it is benzoin, amomum, and cardamomum were perhaps rather imported through Media[162] than the actual produce of the country, which is too cold in the winter to grow any good spices.

The mineral products of Media noted by the ancient writers are nitre, salt, and certain gems, as emeralds, lapis lazuli, and the following obscurer kinds, the *zathene*, the *gassinades*, and the *narcissitis*. The nitre of Media is noticed by Pliny, who says it was procured in small quantities, and was called "halmyraga."[163] It was found in certain dry-looking glens, where the ground was white with it, and was obtained there purer than in other places. Saltpetre is still derived from the Elburz range, and also from Azerbijan.[164]

The salt of Lake Urumiyeh is mentioned by Strabo, who says that it forms naturally on the surface,[165] which would imply a far more complete saturation of the water than at present exists, even in the driest seasons. The gems above mentioned are assigned to Media chiefly by Pliny. The Median emeralds, according to him, were of the largest size; they varied considerably, sometimes approaching to the character of the sapphire, in which case they were apt to be veiny, and to have flaws in them.[166] They were far less esteemed than the emeralds of many other countries. The Median lapis lazuli,[167] on the other hand, was the best of its kind. It was of three colors —light blue, dark blue, and purple. The golden specks, how-

ever, with which it was sprinkled—really spots of yellow pyrites—rendered it useless to the gem-engravers of Pliny's time.[168] The *zathene*, the *gassinades*, and the *narcissitis* were gems of inferior value.[169] As they have not yet been identified with any known species, it will be unnecessary to prolong the present chapter by a consideration of them.

CHAPTER III.

CHARACTER, MANNERS AND CUSTOMS, ARTS, ETC., OF THE PEOPLE.

"Pugnatrix natio et formidanda."—Amm. Marc. xxiii. 6.

THE ethnic character of the Median people is at the present day scarcely a matter of doubt. The close connection which all history, sacred and profane, establishes between them and the Persians,[1] the evidence of their proper names[2] and of their language,[3] so far as it is known to us, together with the express statements of Herodotus[4] and Strabo,[5] combine to prove that they belonged to that branch of the human family known to us as the Arian or Iranic, a leading subdivision of the great Indo-European race. The tie of a common language, common manners and customs, and to a great extent a common belief, united in ancient times all the dominant tribes of the great plateau, extending even beyond the plateau in one direction to the Jaxartes (Syhun) and in another to the Hyphasis (Sutlej). Persians, Medes, Sagartians, Chorasmians, Bactrians, Sogdians, Hyrcanians, Sarangians, Gandarians, and Sanskritic Indians belonged all to a single stock, differing from one another probably not much more than now differ the various subdivisions of the Teutonic or the Slavonic race.[6] Between the tribes at the two extremities of the Arian territory the divergence was no doubt considerable; but between any two neighboring tribes the difference was probably in most cases exceedingly slight. At any rate this was the case towards the west, where the Medes and Persians, the two principal sections of the Arian body in that quarter, are scarcely distinguishable from one another in any of the features which constitute ethnic type.

The general physical character of the ancient Arian race is best gathered from the sculptures of the Achæmenian kings,[7] which exhibit to us a very noble variety of the human species—a form tall, graceful, and stately; a physiognomy handsome and pleasing, often somewhat resembling the Greek;[8] the forehead high and straight, the nose nearly in the same line, long and well formed, sometimes markedly aquiline, the upper lip short, commonly shaded by a moustache, the chin rounded and generally covered with a curly beard. The hair evidently grew in great plenty, and the race was proud of it. On the top of the head it was worn smooth, but it was drawn back from the forehead and twisted into a row or two of crisp curls, while at the same time it was arranged into a large mass of similar small close ringlets at the back of the head and over the ears. [2 Pl. IV., Fig. 1.]

Of the Median women we have no representations upon the sculptures; but we are informed by Xenophon that they were remarkable for their stature and their beauty.[9] The same qualities were observable in the women of Persia, as we learn from Plutarch,[10] Ammianus Marcellinus,[11] and others. The Arian races seem in old times to have treated women with a certain chivalry, which allowed the full development of their physical powers, and rendered them specially attractive alike to their own husbands and to the men of other nations.

The modern Persian is a very degenerate representative of the ancient Arian stock. Slight and supple in person, with quick, glancing eyes, delicate features, and a vivacious manner, he lacks the dignity and strength, the calm repose and simple grace of the race from which he is sprung. Fourteen centuries of subjection to despotic sway have left their stamp upon his countenance and his frame, which, though still retaining some traces of the original type, have been sadly weakened and lowered by so long a term of subservience. Probably the wild Kurd or Lur of the present day more nearly corresponds in physique to the ancient Mede than do the softer inhabitants of the great plateau.

Among the moral characteristics of the Medes the one most obvious is their bravery. "Pugnatrix natio et formidanda," says Ammianus Marcellinus in the fourth century of our era, summing up in a few words the general judgment of Antiquity.[12] Originally equal, if not superior, to their close kindred, the Persians, they were throughout the whole period of Persian supremacy only second to them in courage and warlike qual-

ities. Mardonius, when allowed to take his choice out of the entire host of Xerxes, selected the Median troops in immediate succession to the Persians.[13] Similarly, when the time for battle came he kept the Medes near himself, giving them their place in the line close to that of the Persian contingent.[14] It was no doubt on account of their valor, as Diodorus suggests,[15] that the Medes were chosen to make the first attack upon the Greek position at Thermopylæ, where, though unsuccessful, they evidently showed abundant courage.[16] In the earlier times, before riches and luxury had eaten out the strength of the race, their valor and military prowess must have been even more conspicuous. It was then especially that Media deserved to be called, as she is in Scripture, "*the* mighty one of the heathen"[17]—"*the* terrible of the nations."[18]

Her valor, undoubtedly, was of the merciless kind. There was no tenderness, no hesitancy about it. Not only did her armies "dash to pieces" the fighting men of the nations opposed to her, allowing apparently no quarter,[19] but the women and the children suffered indignities and cruelties at the hands of her savage warriors, which the pen unwillingly records. The Median conquests were accompanied by the worst atrocities which lust and hate combined are wont to commit when they obtain their full swing. Neither the virtue of women nor the innocence of children were a protection to them. The infant was slain before the very eye of the parent. The sanctity of the hearth was invaded, and the matron ravished beneath her own roof-tree.[20] Spoil, it would seem, was disregarded in comparison with insult and vengeance; and the brutal soldiery cared little either for silver or gold,[21] provided they could indulge freely in that thirst for blood which man shares with the hyena and the tiger.

The habits of the Medes in the early part of their career were undoubtedly simple and manly. It has been observed with justice that the same general features have at all times distinguished the rise and fall of Oriental kingdoms and dynasties. A brave and adventurous prince, at the head of a population at once poor, warlike, and greedy, overruns a vast tract, and acquires extensive dominion, while his successors, abandoning themselves to sensuality and sloth, probably also to oppressive and irascible dispositions, become in process of time victims to those same qualities in another prince and people which had enabled their own predecessor to establish their power.[22] It was as being braver, simpler, and so stronger than the Assyr-

ians that the Medes were able to dispossess them of their sovereignty over western Asia. But in this, as in most other cases of conquest throughout the East, success was followed almost immediately by degeneracy. As captive Greece captured her fierce conqueror,[23] so the subdued Assyrians began at once to corrupt their subduers. Without condescending to a close imitation of Assyrian manners and customs, the Medes proceeded directly after their conquest to relax the severity of their old habits and to indulge in the delights of soft and luxurious living. The historical romance of Xenophon presents us probably with a true picture when it describes the strong contrast which existed towards the close of the Median period between the luxury and magnificence which prevailed at Ecbatana, and the primitive simplicity of Persia Proper,[24] where the old Arian habits, which had once been common to the two races, were still maintained in all their original severity. Xenophon's authority in this work is, it must be admitted, weak, and little trust can be placed in the historical accuracy of his details; but his general statement is both in itself probable, and is also borne out to a considerable extent by other authors. Herodotus and Strabo note the luxury of the Median dress,[25] while the latter author goes so far as to derive the whole of the later Persian splendor from an imitation of Median practices.[26] We must hold then that towards the latter part of their empire the Medes became a comparatively luxurious people, not indeed laying aside altogether their manly habits, nor ceasing to be both brave men and good soldiers, but adopting an amount of pomp and magnificence to which they were previously strangers, affecting splendor in their dress and apparel, grandeur and rich ornament in their buildings,[27] variety in their banquets,[28] and attaining on the whole a degree of civilization not very greatly inferior to that of the Assyrians. In taste and real refinement they seem indeed to have fallen considerably below their teachers. A barbaric magnificence predominated in their ornamentation over artistic effort, richness in the material being preferred to skill in the manipulation. Literature, and even letters, were very sparingly cultivated.[29] But little originality was developed. A stately dress, and a new style of architecture, are almost the only inventions to which the Medes can lay claim. They were brave, energetic, enterprising, fond of display, capable of appreciating to some extent the advantages of civilized life; but they had little genius, and the world is scarcely indebted

to them for a single important addition to the general stock of its ideas.

Of the Median customs in war we know but little. Herodotus tells us that in the army of Xerxes the Medes were armed exactly as the Persians, carrying on their heads a soft felt cap, on their bodies a sleeved tunic, and on their legs trousers. Their offensive arms, he says, were the spear, the bow, and the dagger. They had large wicker shields, and bore their quivers suspended at their backs. Sometimes their tunic was made into a coat of mail by the addition to it on the outside of a number of small iron plates arranged so as to overlap each other, like the scales of a fish.[30] They served both on horseback and on foot, with the same equipment in both cases.[31]

There is no reason to doubt the correctness of this description of the Median military dress under the early Persian kings. The only question is how far the equipment was really the ancient warlike custom of the people. It seems in some respects too elaborate to be the armature of a simple and primitive race. We may reasonably suppose that at least the scale armor and the unwieldy wicker shields (γέρρα), which required to be rested on the ground,[32] were adopted at a somewhat late date from the Assyrians. At any rate the original character of the Median armies, as set before us in Scripture,[33] and as indicated both by Strabo[34] and Xenophon,[35] is simpler than the Herodotean description. The primitive Medes seem to have been a nation of horse-archers.[36] Trained from their early boyhood to a variety of equestrian exercises,[37] and well practised in the use of the bow, they appear to have proceeded against their enemies with clouds of horse, almost in Scythian fashion, and to have gained their victories chiefly by the skill with which they shot their arrows as they advanced, retreated, or manœuvred about their foe. No doubt they also used the sword and the spear. The employment of these weapons has been almost universal throughout the East from a very remote antiquity, and there is some mention of them in connection with the Medes and their kindred, the Persians, in Scripture;[38] but it is evident that the terror which the Medes inspired arose mainly from their dexterity as archers.[39]

No representation of weapons which can be distinctly recognized as Median has come down to us. The general character of the military dress and of the arms appears, probably, in the Persepolitan sculptures; but as these reliefs are in most cases representations, not of Medes, but of Persians, and as they

must be hereafter adduced in illustration of the military customs of the latter people, only a very sparing use of them can be made in the present chapter. It would seem that the bow employed was short, and very much curved, and that, like the Assyrian,[40] it was usually carried in a bow-case, which might either be slung at the back, or hung from the girdle. [Pl. V., Fig. 1.] The arrows, which were borne in a quiver slung behind the right shoulder, must have been short, certainly not exceeding the length of three feet. The quiver appears to have been round; it was covered at the top, and was fastened by means of a flap and strap, which last passed over a button. [Pl., V. Fig. 1.] The Median spear or lance was from six to seven feet in length. Its head was lozenge-shaped and flattish, but strengthened by a bar or line down the middle.[41] It is uncertain whether the head was inserted into the top of the shaft, or whether it did not rather terminate in a ring or socket into which the upper end of the shaft was itself inserted. The shaft tapered gradually from bottom to top, and terminated below in a knob or ball, which was perhaps sometimes carved into the shape of some natural object.[42] [Pl. IV., Fig. 2.]

The sword was short, being in fact little more than a dagger.[43] It depended at the right thigh from a belt which encircled the waist, and was further secured by a strap attached to the bottom of the sheath, and passing round the soldier's right leg a little above the knee.

Median shields were probably either round or oval. The oval specimens bore a resemblance to the shield of the Bœotians, having a small oval aperture at either side, apparently for the sake of greater lightness. They were strengthened at the centre by a circular boss or disk, ornamented with knobs or circles. They would seem to have been made either of metal or wood. [Pl. IV., Fig. 3.]

The favorite dress of the Medes in peace is well known to us from the sculptures. There can be no reasonable doubt that the long flowing robe so remarkable for its graceful folds, which is the garb of the kings, the chief nobles, and the officers of the court in all the Persian bas-reliefs, and which is seen also upon the darics and the gems, is the famous "Median garment" of Herodotus, Xenophon, and Strabo.[44] [Pl. V., Fig. 2.] This garment fits the chest and shoulders closely, but falls over the arms in two large loose sleeves, open at the bottom. At the waist it is confined by a cincture. Below it is re-

markably full and ample, drooping in two clusters of perpendicular folds at the two sides, and between these hanging in festoons like a curtain. It extends down to the ankles, where it is met by a high shoe or low boot, opening in front, and secured by buttons. [Pl. IV., Fig. 4.]

These Median robes were of many colors. Sometimes they were purple, sometimes scarlet, occasionally a dark gray, or a deep crimson.[45] Procopius says that they were made of silk,[46] and this statement is confirmed to some extent by Justin, who speaks of their transparency.[47] It may be doubted, however, whether the material was always the same: probably it varied with the season, and also with the wealth of the wearer.

Besides this upper robe, which is the only garment shown in the sculptures, the Medes wore as under garments a sleeved shirt or tunic of a purple color,[48] and embroidered drawers or trousers.[49] They covered the head, not only out of doors, but in their houses,[50] wearing either felt caps (πίλοι) like the Persians, or a head-dress of a more elaborate character, which bore the name of *tiara* or *cidaris*.[51] This appears to have been, not a turban, but rather a kind of high-crowned hat, either stiff or flexible, made probably of felt or cloth, and dyed of different hues, according to the fancy of the owner. [Pl. VI., Fig. 1.]

The Medes took a particular delight in the ornamentation of their persons. According to Xenophon, they were acquainted with most of the expedients by the help of which vanity attempts to conceal the ravages of time and to create an artificial beauty. They employed cosmetics, which they rubbed into the skin, for the sake of improving the complexion.[52] They made use of an abundance of false hair.[53] Like many other Oriental nations, both ancient and modern, they applied dyes to enhance the brilliancy of the eyes,[54] and give them a greater apparent size and softness. They were also fond of wearing golden ornaments. Chains or collars of gold usually adorned their necks, bracelets of the same precious metal encircled their wrists,[55] and earrings were inserted into their ears.[56] [Pl. VI., Fig. 2.] Gold was also used in the caparisons of their horses, the bit and other parts of the harness being often of this valuable material.[57]

We are told that the Medes were very luxurious at their banquets. Besides plain meat and game of different kinds, with the ordinary accompaniments of wine and bread, they were accustomed to place before their guests a vast number of

side-dishes, together with a great variety of sauces.[58] They ate with the hand, as is still the fashion in the East, and were sufficiently refined to make use of napkins.[59] Each guest had his own dishes, and it was a mark of special honor to augment their number.[60] Wine was drunk both at the meal and afterwards, often in an undue quantity; and the close of the feast was apt to be a scene of general turmoil and confusion.[61] At the Court it was customary for the king to receive his wine at the hands of a cupbearer, who first tasted the draught, that the king might be sure that it was not poisoned, and then presented it to his master with much pomp and ceremony.[62]

The whole ceremonial of the court seems to have been imposing. Under ordinary circumstances the monarch kept himself secluded, and no one could obtain admission to him unless he formally requested an audience, and was introduced into the royal presence by the proper officer.[63] On his admission he prostrated himself upon the ground with the same signs of adoration which were made on entering a temple.[64] The king, surrounded by his attendants, eunuchs, and others, maintained a haughty reserve, and the stranger only beheld him from a distance. Business was transacted in a great measure by writing. The monarch rarely quitted his palace, contenting himself with such reports of the state of his empire as were transmitted to him from time to time by his officers.[65]

The chief amusement of the court, in which however the king rarely partook,[66] was hunting. Media always abounded in beasts of chase;[67] and lions, bears, leopards, wild boars, stags, gazelles, wild sheep, and wild asses are mentioned among the animals hunted by the Median nobles.[68] Of these the first four were reckoned dangerous, the others harmless.[69] It was customary to pursue these animals on horseback, and to aim at them with the bow or the javelin. We may gather a lively idea of some of these hunts from the sculptures of the Parthians, who some centuries later inhabited the same region. We see in these the rush of great troops of boars through marshes dense with water-plants, the bands of beaters urging them on, the sportsmen aiming at them with their bows, and the game falling transfixed with two or three well-aimed shafts.[70] Again we see herds of deer driven within enclosures, and there slain by archers who shoot from horseback, the monarch under his parasol looking on the while, pleased with the dexterity of his servants.[71] It is thus exactly that Xeno-

phon portrays Astyages as contemplating the sport of his courtiers, complacently viewing their enjoyment, but taking no active part in the work himself.[72]

Like other Oriental sovereigns, the Median monarch maintained a seraglio of wives and concubines:[73] and polygamy was commonly practised among the more wealthy classes. Strabo speaks of a strange law as obtaining with some of the Median tribes—a law which required that no man should be content with fewer wives than five.[74] It is very unlikely that such a burden was really made obligatory on any: most probably five legitimate wives, and no more, were allowed by the law referred to, just as four wives, and no more, are lawful for Mohammedans. Polygamy, as usual, brought in its train the cruel practice of castration; and the court swarmed with eunuchs, chiefly foreigners purchased in their infancy.[75] Towards the close of the Empire this despicable class appears to have been all-powerful with the monarch.[76]

Thus the tide of corruption gradually advanced: and there is reason to believe that both court and people had in a great measure laid aside the hardy and simple customs of their forefathers, and become enervated through luxury, when the revolt of the Persians came to test the quality of their courage, and their ability to maintain their empire. It would be improper in this place to anticipate the account of this struggle, which must be reserved for the historical chapter: but the well-known result—the speedy and complete success of the Persians—must be adduced among the proofs of a rapid deterioration in the Median character between the accession of Cyaxares and the capture—less than a century later—of Astyages.

We have but little information with respect to the state of the arts among the Medes. A barbaric magnificence characterized, as has been already observed, their architecture, which differed from the Assyrian in being dependent for its effect on groups of pillars rather than on painting or sculpture. Still sculpture was, it is probable, practised to some extent by the Medes, who, it is almost certain, conveyed on to the Persians those modifications of Assyrian types which meet us everywhere in the remains of the Achæmenian monarchs. The carving of winged genii, of massive forms of bulls and lions, of various grotesque monsters, and of certain clumsy representations of actual life, imitated from the bas-reliefs of the Assyrians, may be safely ascribed to the Medes; since, had

they not carried on the traditions of their predecessors, Persian art could not have borne the resemblance that it does to Assyrian. But these first mimetic efforts of the Arian race have almost wholly perished, and there scarcely seems to remain more than a single fragment which can be assigned on even plausible grounds to the Median period. A portion of a colossal lion, greatly injured by time, is still to be seen at Hamadan, the site of the great Median capital, which the best judges regard as anterior to the Persian period, and as therefore most probably Median.[1] It consists of the head and body of the animal, from which the four legs and the tail have been broken off, and measures between eleven and twelve feet from the crown of the head to the point from which the tail sprang. By the position of the head and what remains of the shoulders and thighs, it is evident that the animal was represented in a sitting posture, with the fore legs straight and the hind legs gathered up under it. To judge of the feeling and general character of the sculpture is difficult, owing to the worn and mutilated condition of the work; but we seem to trace in it the same air of calm and serene majesty that characterizes the colossal bulls and lions of Assyria, together with somewhat more of expression and of softness than are seen in the productions of that people. Its posture, which is unlike that of any Assyrian specimen, indicates a certain amount of originality as belonging to the Median artists, while its colossal size seems to show that the effect on the spectator was still to be produced, not so much by expression, finish, or truth to nature, as by mere grandeur of dimension. [Pl. VI., Fig. 3.]

CHAPTER IV.

RELIGION.

Ἀριστοτέλης φησὶ δύο κατ' αὐτοὺς εἶναι ἀρχὰς, ἀγαθὸν δαίμονα καὶ κακὸν δαίμονα · καὶ τῷ μὲν ὄνομα εἶναι Ζεὺς καὶ Ὡρομάσδης, τῷ δὲ Ἅιδης καὶ Ἀρειμάνιος.—Diog. Laert. *Proœm.* p. 2.

THE earliest form of the Median religion is to be found in those sections of the Zendavesta[1] which have been pronounced on internal evidence to be the most ancient portions[2] of that venerable compilation; as, for instance, the first Fargard of

the Vendidad, and the Gâthâs, or "Songs,"[3] which occur here and there in the Yaçna, or Book on Sacrifice.[4] In the Gâthâs, which belong to a very remote era indeed,[5] we seem to have the first beginnings of the Religion. We may indeed go back by their aid to a time anterior to themselves—a time when the Arian race was not yet separated into two branches, and the Easterns and Westerns, the Indians and Iranians, had not yet adopted the conflicting creeds of Zoroastrianism and Brahminism. At that remote period we seem to see prevailing a polytheistic nature-worship—a recognition of various divine beings, called indifferently *Asuras* (*Ahuras*)[6] or *Devas*,[7] each independent of the rest, and all seemingly nature-powers rather than persons, whereof the chief are Indra, Storm or Thunder; Mithra, Sunlight; Aramati (Armaiti),[8] Earth; Vayu, Wind; Agni, Fire; and Soma (Homa), Intoxication. Worship is conducted by priests, who are called *kavi*, "seers;" *karapani*, "sacrificers," or *riçikhs*, "wise men."[9] It consists of hymns in honor of the gods; sacrifices, bloody and unbloody, some portion of which is burnt upon an altar; and a peculiar ceremony, called that of Soma, in which an intoxicating liquor is offered to the gods, and then consumed by the priests, who drink till they are drunken.

Such, in outline, is the earliest phase of Arian religion, and it is common to both branches of the stock, and anterior to the rise of the Iranic, Median, or Persian system. That system is a revolt from this sensuous and superficial nature-worship. It begins with a distinct recognition of spiritual intelligences—real persons—with whom alone, and not with powers, religion is concerned. It divides these intelligences into good and bad, pure and impure, benignant and malevolent. To the former it applies the term *Asuras* (*Ahuras*), "living" or "spiritual beings," in a good sense; to the latter, the term *Devas*, in a bad one. It regards the "powers" hitherto worshipped as chiefly Devas; but it excepts from this unfavorable view a certain number, and, recognizing them as Asuras, places them above the Izeds, or "angels." Thus far it has made two advances, each of great importance, the substitution of real "persons" for "powers," as objects of the religious faculty, and the separation of the persons into good and bad, pure and impure, righteous and wicked. But it does not stop here. It proceeds to assert, in a certain sense, monotheism against polytheism. It boldly declares that, at the head of the good intelligences, is a single great Intelli-

gence. Ahurô-Mazdâo,[10] the highest object of adoration, the true Creator, Preserver, and Governor of the universe. This is its great glory. It sets before the soul a single Being as the source of all good and the proper object of the highest worship. Ahurô-Mazdâo is "the creator of life, the earthly and the spiritual;"[11] he has made "the celestial bodies,"[12] "earth, water, and trees,"[13] "all good creatures,"[14] and "all good, true things."[15] He is "good,"[16] "holy,"[17] "pure,"[18] "true,"[19] "the Holy God,"[20] "the Holiest,"[21] "the essence of truth,"[22] "the father of all truth,"[23] "the best being of all,"[24] "the master of purity."[25] He is supremely "happy,"[26] possessing every blessing, "health, wealth, virtue, wisdom, immortality."[27] From him comes all good to man; on the pious and the righteous he bestows not only earthly advantages, but precious spiritual gifts, truth, devotion, "the good mind," and everlasting happiness;[28] and as he rewards the good, so he punishes the bad, though this is an aspect in which he is but seldom represented.[29]

It has been said[30] that this conception of Ahura-mazda as the Supreme Being is "*perfectly identical* with the notion of Elohim, or Jehovah, which we find in the books of the Old Testament." This is, no doubt, an over-statement. Ahura-mazda is less spiritual and less awful than Jehovah. He is less remote from the nature of man. The very ascription to him of health (*haurvât*) is an indication that he is conceived of as possessing a sort of physical nature.[31] Lucidity and brilliancy are assigned to him, not (as it would seem) in a mere metaphorical sense.[32] Again, he is so predominantly the author of good things, the source of blessing and prosperity, that he could scarcely inspire his votaries with any feeling of fear. Still, considering the general failure of unassisted reason to mount up to the true notion of a spiritual God, this doctrine of the early Arians is very remarkable; and its approximation to the truth sufficiently explains at once the favorable light in which its professors are viewed by the Jewish prophets,[33] and the favorable opinion which they form of the Jewish system.[34] Evidently, the Jews and Arians, when they became known to one another, recognized mutually the fact that they were worshippers of the same great Being.[35] Hence the favor of the Persians towards the Jews, and the fidelity of the Jews towards the Persians. The Lord God of the Jews being recognized as identical with Ormazd, a sympathetic feeling united the peoples. The Jews, so impatient generally

of a foreign yoke, never revolted from the Persians; and the Persians, so intolerant, for the most part, of religions other than their own,[36] respected and protected Judaism.

The sympathy was increased by the fact that the religion of Ormazd was anti-idolatrous. In the early nature-worship idolatry had been allowed; but the Iranic system pronounced against it from the first.[37] No images of Ahura-mazda, or of the Izeds, profaned the severe simplicity of an Iranic temple. It was only after a long lapse of ages that, in connection with a foreign worship, idolatry crept in.[38] The old Zoroastrianism was in this respect as pure as the religion of the Jews, and thus a double bond of religious sympathy united the Hebrews and the Arians.

Under the supreme God, Ahura-mazda or Ormazd, the ancient Iranic system placed (as has been already observed) a number of angels.[39] Some of these, as *Vohu-manô*, "the Good Mind;" *Mazda*, "the Wise" (?); and *Asha*, "the True," are scarcely distinguishable from attributes of the Divinity. Armaiti, however, the genius of the Earth, and Sraosha or Serosh, an angel, are very clearly and distinctly personified.[40] Sraosha is Ormazd's messenger. He delivers revelations,[41] shows men the paths of happiness,[42] and brings them the blessings which Ormazd has assigned to their share.[43] Another of his functions is to protect the true faith.[44] He is called, in a very special sense, "the friend of Ormazd,"[45] and is employed by Ormazd not only to distribute his gifts, but also to conduct to him the souls of the faithful, when this life is over, and they enter on the celestial scene.[46]

Armaiti is at once the genius of the Earth, and the goddess of Piety. The early Ormazd worshippers were agriculturists, and viewed the cultivation of the soil as a religious duty enjoined upon them by God.[47] Hence they connected the notion of piety with earth culture: and it was but a step from this to make a single goddess preside over the two. It is as the angel of Earth that Armaiti has most distinctly a personal character. She is regarded as wandering from spot to spot, and laboring to convert deserts and wildernesses into fruitful fields and gardens.[48] She has the agriculturist under her immediate protection,[49] while she endeavors to persuade the shepherd, who persists in the nomadic life, to give up his old habits and commence the cultivation of the soil. She is of course the giver of fertility, and rewards her votaries by bestowing upon them abundant harvests.[50] She alone causes all growth.[51] In a cer-

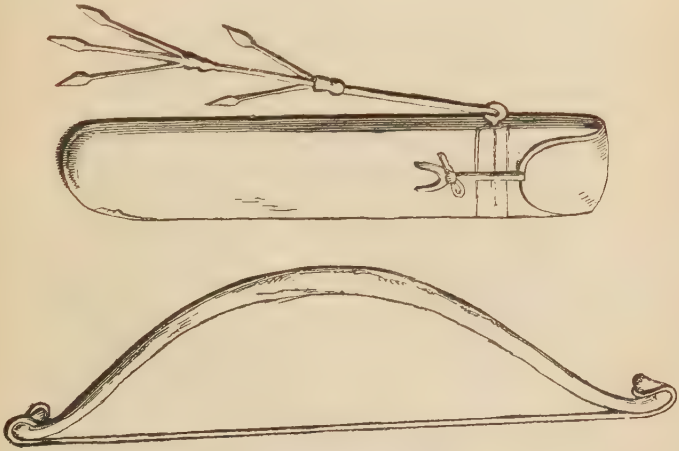
Fig 1.

Mede or Persian carrying a bow in its case (Persepolis).

Fig. 2.

Median Robe (Persepolis).

Fig. 3.



Bow and Quiver (Persepolis).

Fig. 1

Median head-dress (Persepolis).

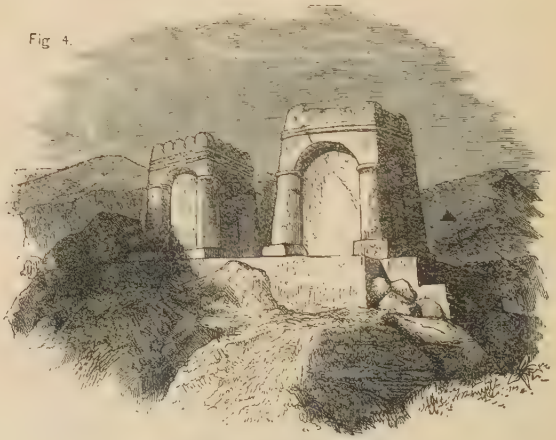
Fig. 2.

A Mede or Persian wearing a Collar and Earrings (Persepolis.)

Fig 3.

Colossal lion (Ecbatana).

Fig 4.



Fire-temples near Nakhsh-i-Rustem.

tain sense she pervades the whole material creation, mankind included, in whom she is even sometimes said to "reside."[52]

Armaiti, further "tells men the everlasting laws, which no one may abolish"[53]—laws which she has learnt from converse with Ahura-mazda himself. She is thus naturally the second object of worship to the old Zoroastrian; and converts to the religion were required to profess their faith in her in direct succession to Ahura-mazda.[54]

From Armaiti must be carefully distinguished the *gêus urvâ*, or "soul of the earth"[55]—a being who nearly resembles the "anima mundi" of the Greek and Roman philosophers. This spirit dwells in the earth itself, animating it as a man's soul animates his body. In old times, when man first began to plough the soil, *gêus urvâ* cried aloud, thinking that his life was threatened, and implored the assistance of the archangels. They however were deaf to his entreaties (since Ormazd had decreed that there should be cultivation), and left him to bear his pains as he best could.[56] It is to be hoped that in course of time he became callous to them, and made the discovery that mere scratches, though they may be painful, are not dangerous.

It is uncertain whether in the most ancient form of the Iranic worship the cult of Mithra was included or no. On the one hand, the fact that Mithra is common to both forms of the Arian creed—the Indian and Iranic—would induce the belief that his worship was adopted from the first by the Zoroastrians; on the other, the entire absence of all mention of Mithra from the Gâthâs would lead us to the conclusion that in the time when they were composed his cult had not yet begun. Perhaps we may distinguish between two forms of early Iranic worship—one that of the more intelligent and spiritual—the leaders of the secession—in whose creed Mithra had no place; the other that of the great mass of followers, a coarser and more material system, in which many points of the old religion were retained, and among them the worship of the Sun-god. This lower and more materialistic school of thought probably conveyed on into the Iranic system other points also common to the Zendavesta with the Vedas, as the recognition of Airyaman (Aryaman) as a genius presiding over marriages,[57] of Vitrahâ as a very high angel,[58] and the like.

Vayu, "the Wind," seems to have been regarded as a god from the first. He appears, not only in the later portions of the Zendavesta, like Mithra and Aryaman, but in the Gâthâs them-

selves.[59] His name is clearly identical with that of the Vedic Wind-god, Vâyu,[60] and is apparently a sister form to the *ventus*, or *wind*, of the more western Arians. The root is probably *vi*, "to go," which may be traced in *vis*, *via*, *vado*, *venio*, *etc.*

The ancient Iranians did not adopt into their system either Agni, "Fire" (Lat. *ignis*), or Soma (Homa), "Intoxication." Fire was indeed retained for sacrifice;[61] but it was regarded as a mere material agent, and not as a mysterious Power, the proper object of prayer and worship. The Soma worship,[62] which formed a main element of the old religion, and which was retained in Brahminism, was at the first altogether discarded by the Zoroastrians; indeed, it seems to have been one of the main causes of that disgust which split the Arian body in two, and gave rise to the new religion.[63] A ceremony in which it was implied that the intoxication of their worshippers was pleasing to the gods, and not obscurely hinted that they themselves indulged in similar excesses, was revolting to the religious temper of those who made the Zoaroastrian reformation; and it is plain from the Gâthâs that the new system was intended at first to be entirely free from the pollution of so disgusting a practice. But the zeal of religious reformers outgoes in most cases the strength and patience of their people, whose spirit is too gross and earthly to keep pace with the more lofty flights of the purer and higher intelligence. The Iranian section of the Arians could not be weaned wholly from their beloved Soma feasts; and the leaders of the movement were obliged to be content ultimately with so far reforming and refining the ancient ceremony as to render it comparatively innocuous. The portion of the rite which implied that the gods themselves indulged in intoxication was omitted;[64] and for the intoxication of the priests was substituted a moderate use of the liquor, which, instead of giving a religious sanction to drunkenness, merely implied that the Soma juice was a good gift of God, one of the many blessings for which men had to be thankful.[65]

With respect to the evil spirits or intelligences, which, in the Zoroastrian system, stood over against the good ones, the teaching of the early reformers seems to have been less clear. The old divinities, except where adopted into the new creed, were in a general way called *Devas*, "fiends" or "devils,"[66] in contrast with the *Ahuras*, or "gods." These devas were represented as many in number, as artful, malicious, deceivers and injurers of mankind, more especially of the Zoroastrians or

Ormazd-worshippers,[67] as inventors of spells[68] and lovers of the intoxicating Soma draught.[69] Their leading characteristics were "destroying" and "lying." They were seldom or never called by distinct names. No account was given of their creation, nor of the origin of their wickedness. No single superior intelligence, no great Principle of Evil, was placed at their head. Ahriman (Angrô-mainyus) does not occur in the Gâthâs as a proper name. Far less is there any graduated hierarchy of evil, surrounding a Prince of Darkness, with a sort of court, antagonistic to the angelic host of Ormazd, as in the latter portions of the Zendavesta and in the modern Parsee system.

Thus Dualism proper, or a belief in two uncreated and independent principles, one a principle of good and the other a principal of evil, was no part of the original Zoroastrianism. At the same time we find, even in the Gâthâs, the earliest portions of the Zendavesta, the germ out of which Dualism sprung. The contrast between good and evil is strongly and sharply marked in the Gâthâs; the writers continually harp upon it, their minds are evidently struck with this sad antithesis which colors the whole moral world to them; they see everywhere a struggle between right and wrong, truth and falsehood, purity and impurity; apparently they are blind to the evidence of harmony and agreement in the universe, discerning nothing anywhere but strife, conflict, antagonism. Nor is this all. They go a step further, and personify the two parties to the struggle. One is a "white" or holy "Spirit" (*çpento mainyus*), and the other a "dark spirit" (*angro mainyus*).[70] But this personification is merely poetical or metaphorical, not real. The "white spirit" is not Ahura-mazda, and the "dark spirit" is not a hostile intelligence. Both resolve themselves on examination into mere figures of speech—phantoms of poetic imagery—abstract notions, clothed by language with an apparent, not a real, personality.

It was natural that, as time went on, Dualism should develop itself out of the primitive Zoroastrianism. Language exercises a tyranny over thought, and abstractions in the ancient world were ever becoming persons.[71] The Iranian mind, moreover, had been struck, when it first turned to contemplate the world, with a certain antagonism; and, having once entered this track, it would be compelled to go on, and seek to discover the origin of the antagonism, the cause (or causes) to which it was to be ascribed. Evil seemed most easily accounted for by the supposition of an evil Person; and the continuance of an

93940

equal struggle, without advantage to either side, which was what the Iranians thought they beheld in the world that lay around them, appeared to them to imply the equality of that evil Person with the Being whom they rightly regarded as the author of all good. Thus Dualism had its birth. The Iranians came to believe in the existence of two co-eternal and co-equal Persons, one good and the other evil, between whom there had been from all eternity a perpetual and never-ceasing conflict, and between whom the same conflict would continue to rage through all coming time.

It is impossible to say how this development took place.[72] We have evidence, however, that at a period considerably anterior to the commencement of the Median Empire, Dualism, not perhaps in its ultimate extravagant form, but certainly in a very decided and positive shape, had already been thought out and become the recognized creed of the Iranians. In the first Fargard, or chapter, of the Vendidad—the historical chapter, in which are traced the only movements of the Iranic peoples, and which from the geographical point whereat it stops must belong to a time when the Arians had not yet reached Media Magna[73]—the Dualistic belief clearly shows itself. The term Angrô-mainyus has now become a proper name, and designates the great spirit of evil as definitely and determinately as Ahura-mazda designates the good spirit. The antagonism between Ahura-mazda and Angrô-mainyus is depicted in the strongest colors: it is direct, constant and successful. Whatever good work Ahura-mazda in his benevolence creates, Angrô-mainyus steps forward to mar and blast it. If Ahura-mazda forms a "delicious spot" in a world previously desert and uninhabitable to become the first home of his favorites, the Arians, Angrô-mainyus ruins it by sending into it a poisonous serpent,[74] and at the same time rendering the climate one of the bitterest severity. If Ahura-mazda provides, instead of this blasted region, another charming habitation, "the second best of regions and countries,"[75] Angrô-mainyus sends there the curse of murrain, fatal to all cattle. To every land which Ahura-mazda creates for his worshippers, Angrô-mainyus immediately assigns some plague or other. War, ravages, sickness, fever, poverty, hail, earthquakes, buzzing insects, poisonous plants, unbelief, witchcraft, and other inexpiable sins, are introduced by him into the various happy regions created without any such drawbacks by the good spirit; and a world, which should have been "very good,"

is by these means converted into a scene of trial and suffering.

The Dualistic principle being thus fully adopted, and the world looked on as the battle-ground between two independent and equal powers engaged in perpetual strife, it was natural that the imagination should complete the picture by ascribing to these superhuman rivals the circumstantials that accompany a great struggle between human adversaries. The two kings required, in the first place, to have their councils, which were accordingly assigned them, and were respectively composed of six councillors. The councillors of Ahura-mazda – called *Amesha Spentas*, or "Immortal Saints," afterwards corrupted into Amshashpands[76]—were Vohu-manô (Bahman), Asha-vahista (Ardibehesht), Khshathra-vairya (Shahravar), Çpenta-Armaiti (Isfand-armat), Haurvatât (Khordâd), and Ameretat (Amerdât). Those of Angrô-mainyus were Ako-manô, Indra, Çaurva, Naonhaitya, and two others whose names are interpreted as "Darkness" and "Poison."[77]

Vohu-manô (Bahman) means "the Good Mind." Originally a mere attribute of Ahura-mazda,[78] Vohu-manô came to be considered, first as one of the high angels attendant on him, and then formally as one of his six councillors. He had a distinct sphere or province assigned to him in Ahura-mazda's kingdom, which was the maintenance of life in animals and of goodness in man.

Asha-vahista (Ardibehesht) means "the Highest Truth"—"Veritas optima," or rather perhaps "Veritas lucidissima."[79] He was the "Light" of the universe, subtle, all-pervading, omnipresent. His special business was to maintain the splendor of the various luminaries, and thereby to preserve all those things whose existence and growth depend on light.

Khshathra-vairya (Shahravar), whose name means simply "possessions," "wealth," was regarded as presiding over metals and as the dispenser of riches.

Çpenta-Armaiti (Isfand-armat) –the "white or "holy Armaiti," represented the Earth. She had from the first, as we have already seen, a distinct position in the system of the Zoroastrians, where she was at once the Earth goddess and the genius of piety.[80]

Haurvatât (Khordâd) means "health"—"sanitas"[81]—and was originally one of the great and precious gifts which Ahura-mazda possessed himself and kindly bestowed on his creatures.[82] When personification, and the needs of the theology, had made

Haurvatât an archangel, he, together with Ameretât (Amerdât), "Immortality," took the presidency of the vegetable world, which it was the business of the pair to keep in good condition.

In the council of Angrô-mainyus, Ako-manô stands in direct antithesis to Vohu-manô, as "the bad mind," or more literally, "the naught mind"[83]—for the Zoroastrians, like Plato, regarded good and evil as identical with reality and unreality—τὸ ὄν, and τὸ μὴ ὄν. Ako-manô's special sphere is the mind of man, where he suggests evil thoughts and prompts to bad words and wicked deeds. He holds the first place in the infernal council, as Vohu-manô does in the heavenly one.

Indra, who holds the second place in the infernal council, is evidently the Vedic god whom the Zoroastrians regarded as a powerful demon, and therefore made one of Angrô-mainyus's chief councillors. He probably retained his character as the god of the storm and of war, the destroyer of crops and cities, the inspirer of armies and the wielder of the thunder-bolt. The Zoroastrians, however, ascribed to him only destructive actions; while the more logical Hindoos, observing that the same storm which hurt the crops and struck down trees and buildings was also the means of fertilizing the lands and purifying the air, viewed him under a double aspect, as at once terrible in his wrath and the bestower of numerous blessings.[84]

Çaurva, who stands next to Indra, is thought to be the Hindoo Shiva,[85] who has the epithet *çarva* in one of the Vedas.[86] But the late appearance of Shiva in the Hindoo system[87] makes this highly uncertain.

Naonhaitya, the fourth member of the infernal council, corresponds apparently to the Vedic Nâsatyas, a collective name given to the two Aswins, the Dioscuri of Indian mythology. These were favorite gods of the early Hindoos,[88] to whose protection they very mainly ascribed their prosperity. It was natural that the Iranians, in their aversion to their Indian brethren, should give the Aswins a seat at Angrô-mainyus's council-table; but it is curious that they should represent the twin deities by only a single councillor.

Taric and Zaric, "Darkness" and "Poison," the occupants of the fifth and sixth places, are evidently personifications made for the occasion, to complete the infernal council to its full complement of six members.

As the two Principles of Good and Evil have their respective councils, so have they likewise their armies. The Good Spirit has created thousands of angelic beings, who everywhere per-

form his will and fight on his side against the Evil One; and the Evil One has equally on his part called into being thousands of malignant spirits who are his emissaries in the world, doing his work continually, and fighting his battles. These are the Devas or Dives, so famous in Persian fairy mythology. They are "wicked, bad, false, untrue, the originators of mischief, most baneful, destructive, the basest of all beings."[90] The whole universe is full of them. They aim primarily at destroying all the good creations of Ahura-mazda; but if unable to destroy they content themselves with perverting and corrupting. They dog the steps of men, tempting them to sin; and, as soon as sin, obtaining a fearful power over them."[91]

At the head of Ahura-mazda's army is the angel Sraosha (Serosh). Serosh is "the sincere, the beautiful, the victorious, the true, the master of truth."[91] He protects the territories of the Iranians, wounds, and sometimes even slays the demons, and is engaged in a perpetual struggle against them, never slumbering night or day, but guarding the world with his drawn sword, more particularly after sunset, when the demons have the greatest power.

Angrô-mainyus appears not to possess any such general-in-chief. Besides the six councillors above mentioned, there are indeed various demons of importance, as Drukhs, "destruction;" Aêshemô, "rapine;" Daivis, "deceit;" Driwis, "poverty," etc.; but no one of these seems to occupy a parallel place in the evil world to that which is assigned to Serosh in the good. Perhaps we have here a recognition of the anarchic character of evil, whose attacks are like those of a huge undisciplined host — casual, fitful, irregular - destitute wholly of that principle of law and order which gives to the resisting power of good a great portion of its efficacy.

To the belief in a spiritual world composed of all these various intelligences—one half of whom were good, and the other half evil—the early Zoroastrians added notions with respect to human duties and human prospects far more enlightened than those which have usually prevailed among heathen nations. In their system truth, purity, piety, and industry were the virtues chiefly valued and inculcated. Evil was traced up to its root in the heart of man; and it was distinctly taught that no virtue deserved the name but such as was co-extensive with the whole sphere of human activity, including the thought, as well as the word and deed.[92] The purity required was inward as well as outward, mental as well as bodily. The industry

was to be of a peculiar character. Man was placed upon the earth to preserve the good creation; and this could only be done by careful tilling of the soil, eradication of thorns and weeds, and reclamation of the tracts over which Angrô-mainyus had spread the curse of barrenness. To cultivate the soil was thus a religious duty; the whole community was required to be agricultural; and either as proprietor, as farmer, or as laboring man, each Zoroastrian must "further the works of life" by advancing tillage.[93] Piety consisted in the acknowledgment of the One True God, Ahura-mazda, and of his holy angels, the Amesha Spentas or Amshashpands, in the frequent offering of prayers, praises, and thanksgivings, in the recitation of hymns, the performance of the reformed Soma ceremony, and the occasional sacrifice of animals. Of the hymns we have abundant examples in the Gâthâs of the Zendavesta, and in the *Yaçna haptanhaiti*, or "Yaâna of seven chapters," which belongs to the second period of the religion. A specimen from the latter source is subjoined below.[4] The Soma or Homa ceremony consisted in the extraction of the juice of the Homa plant by the priests during the recitation of prayers, the formal presentation of the liquid extracted to the sacrificial fire, the consumption of a small portion of it by one of the officiating priests, and the division of the remainder among the worshippers. As the juice was drunk immediately after extraction and before fermentation had set in, it was not intoxicating. The ceremony seems to have been regarded, in part, as having a mystic force, securing the favor of heaven;[95] in part, as exerting a beneficial influence upon the body of the worshipper through the curative power inherent in the Homa plant.

The sacrifices of the Zoroastrians were never human. The ordinary victim was the horse;[96] and we hear of occasions on which a single individual sacrificed as many as ten of these animals.[97] Mares seem to have been regarded as the most pleasing offerings, probably on account of their superior value; and if it was desired to draw down the special favor of the Deity, those mares were selected which were already heavy in foal. Oxen, sheep, and goats were probably also used as victims. A priest always performed the sacrifice, slaying the animal, and showing the flesh to the sacred fire by way of consecration, after which it was eaten at a solemn feast by the priest and worshippers.

The Zoroastrians were devout believers in the immortality of

the soul and a conscious future existence. They taught that immediately after death the souls of men, both good and bad, proceeded together along an appointed path to "the bridge of the gatherer" (*chinvat peretu*).[97] This was a narrow road conducting to heaven or paradise, over which the souls of the pious alone could pass, while the wicked fell from it into the gulf below, where they found themselves in the place of punishment. The good soul was assisted across the bridge by the angel Serosh "the happy, well-formed, swift, tall Serosh"[98]—who met the weary wayfarer and sustained his steps as he effected the difficult passage. The prayers of his friends in this world were of much avail to the deceased, and greatly helped him on his journey.[99] As he entered, the archangel Vohu-mano or Bahman rose from his throne and greeted him with the words, "How happy art thou who hast come here to us from the mortality to the immortality!" Then the pious soul went joyfully onward to Ahura-mazda, to the immortal saints, to the golden throne, to Paradise.[100] As for the wicked, when they fell into the gulf, they found themselves in outer darkness, in the kingdom of Angrô-mainyus, where they were forced to remain and to feed upon poisoned banquets.

It is believed by some that the doctrine of the resurrection of the body was also part of the Zoroastrian creed.[101] Theopompus assigned this doctrine to the Magi;[102] and there is no reason to doubt that it was held by the priestly caste of the Arian nations in his day. We find it plainly stated in portions of the Zendavesta, which, if not among the earliest, are at any rate of very considerable antiquity, as in the eighteenth chapter of the Vendidad.[103] It is argued that even in the Gâthâs there is an expression used which shows the doctrine to have been already held when they were composed; but the phrase adduced is so obscure that its true meaning must be pronounced in the highest degree uncertain.[104] The absence of any plain allusion to the resurrection from the earlier portions of the sacred volume is a strong argument against its having formed any part of the original Arian creed—an argument which is far from outweighed by the occurrence of a more possible reference to it in a single ambiguous passage.

Around and about this nucleus of religious belief there grew up in course of time a number of legends, some of which possess considerable interest. Like other thoughtful races, the Iranians speculated upon the early condition of mankind, and conceived a golden age, and a king then reigning over a per-

fectly happy people, whom they called King Yima—Yima-khshaêta[106]—the modern Persian Jemshid. Yima, according to the legend, had dwelt originally in *Aryanem vaêjo*—the primitive seat of the Arians—and had there reigned gloriously and peacefully for awhile; but the evils of winter having come upon his country, he had removed from it with his subjects, and had retired to a secluded spot where he and his people enjoyed uninterrupted happiness.[107] In this place was "neither overbearing nor mean-spiritedness, neither stupidity nor violence, neither poverty nor deceit, neither puniness nor deformity, neither huge teeth nor bodies beyond the usual measure."[108] The inhabitants suffered no defilement from the evil spirit. They dwelt amid odoriferous trees and golden pillars; their cattle were the largest, best, and most beautiful on the earth; they were themselves a tall and beautiful race; their food was ambrosial, and never failed them. No wonder that time sped fast with them, and that they, not noting its flight, thought often that what was really a year had been no more than a single day.[109] Yima was the great hero of the early Iranians. His titles, besides "the king" (*khshaêta*), are "the brilliant," "the happy," "the greatly wealthy," "the leader of the peoples," "the renowned in Aryanem vaêjo." He is most probably identical with the Yama of the Vedas,[110] who was originally the first man, the progenitor of mankind and the ruler of the blessed in Paradise, but who was afterwards transformed into "the god of death, the inexorable judge of men's doings, and the punisher of the wicked."[111]

Next in importance to Yima among the heroes is Thraêtona—the modern Persian Feridun. He was born in Varena—[112] which is perhaps Atropatêné, or Azerbijan[113]—and was the son of a distinguished father, Athwyô. His chief exploit was the destruction of Ajis-dahaka (Zohak), who is sometimes represented as a cruel tyrant, the bitter enemy of the Iranian race,[114] sometimes as a monstrous dragon, with three mouths, three tails, six eyes, and a thousand scaly rings, who threatened to ruin the whole of the good creation.[115] The traditional scene of the destruction was the mountain of Demavend, the highest peak of the Elburz range south of the Caspian. Thraêtona, like Yima, appears to be also a Vedic hero. He may be recognized in Traitana,[116] who is said in the Rig-Veda to have slain a mighty giant by severing his head from his shoulders.

A third heroic personage known in the early times[117] was Keresaspa, of the noble Sâma family. He was the son of Thrita

—a distinct personage from Tarâêtona—and brother of Urvakhshaya the Just [120] and was bred up in the arid country of Vehkeret (Khorassan). The "glory" which had rested upon Yima so many years became his in his day. [121] He was the mightiest among the mighty, and was guarded from all danger by the fairy (*pairika*) Knathaiti, [122] who followed him whithersoever he went. He slew Çpayara, the queen and venomous serpent, who swallowed up men and horses. [123] He killed Gandarewa with the golden Leel, and also Châvidhaka, who had boasted that, when he grew up, he would make the earth his wheel and heaven his chariot, that he would carry off Ahura-mazda from heaven and Angrô-mainyus from hell, and yoke them both as horses to his car. Keresaspa appears as Gershasp in the modern Persian legends, [124] where, however, but little is said of his exploits. In the Hindoo books [125] he appears as Kriçâçva, the son of Samyama, and is called king of Vâiçâli, or Bengal!

From these specimens the general character of the early Iranic legends appears sufficiently. Without affording any very close resemblances in particular cases, they present certain general features which are common to the legendary lore of all the Western Arians. They are romantic tales, not allegories; they relate with exaggerations the deeds of men, not the processes of nature. [126] Combining some beauty with a good deal that is *bizarre* and grotesque, they are lively and graphic, but somewhat childish, having in no case any deep meaning, and rarely teaching a moral lesson. In their earliest shape they appear, so far as we can judge, [127] to have been brief, disconnected, and fragmentary. They owe the full and closely interconnected form which they assume in the Shahnameh and other modern Persian writings, [128] partly to a gradual accretion during the course of centuries, partly to the inventive genius of Firdausi, who wove the various and often isolated legends into a pseudo-history, and amplified them at his own pleasure. How much of the substance of Firdausi's poems belongs to ready primitive myth is uncertain. We find in the Zend texts the names of Gayo-maratan, who corresponds to Kaiomars; of Haoshyanha, or Hosheng; of Yima-shaêta, or Jemshid; of Ajis-dahâka, or Zohak; of Athwya, or Abtin; of Thraêtona, or Feridun; of Keresaspa, or Gershasp; of Kava Uç, or Kai Kavus; of Kava Haêrava, or Kai Khosroo; and of Kava Vistaspa, or Gushtasp. But we have no mention of Tahomars; of Gava (or Gau) the blacksmith; of Feridun's

sons, Selm, Tur, and Irij; of Zal, or Mino'chihr, or Rustem; of Afrasiab, or Kai Kobad; of Sohrab, or Isfendiar. And of the heroic names which actually occur in the Zendavesta, several, as Gayo-maratban, Haoshyanha, Kava Uç, and Kava Huçrava, are met with only in the later portions, which belong probably to about the fourth century before our era.[127] The only legends which we know to be primitive are those above related, which are found in portions of the Zendavesta, whereto the best critics ascribe a high antiquity. The negative argument is not, however, conclusive: and it is quite possible that a very large proportion of Firdausi's tale may consist of ancient legends dressed up in a garb comparatively modern.

Two phases of the early Iranic religion have been now briefly described; the first a simple and highly spiritual creed, remarkable for its distinct assertion of monotheism, its hatred of idolatry, and the strongly marked antithesis which it maintained between good and evil; the second, a natural corruption of the first, Dualistic, complicated by the importance which it ascribed to angelic beings verging upon polytheism. It remains to give an account of a third phase into which the religion passed in consequence of an influence exercised upon it from without by an alien system.

When the Iranic nations, cramped for space in the countries east and south of the Caspian began to push themselves further to the west, and then to the south, they were brought into contact with various Scythic tribes[128] inhabiting the mountain regions of Armenia, Azerbijan, Kurdistan, and Luristan, whose religion appears to have been Magism. It was here, in these elevated tracts, where the mountains almost seem to reach the skies, that the most venerated and ancient of the fire-temples (*ατρσβεια*) were established, some of which remain, seemingly in their primitive condition, at the present day.[129] [Pl. VI., Fig. 4.] Here tradition placed the original seat of the fire-worship;[130] and from hence many taught that Zoroaster, whom they regarded as the founder of Magism, had sprung.[131] Magism was, essentially, the worship of the elements, the recognition of fire, air, earth, and water as the only proper objects of human reverence.[132] The Magi held no personal gods, and therefore naturally rejected temples, shrines, and images, as tending to encourage the notion that gods existed of a like nature with man,[133] *i.e.*, possessing personality—living and intelligent beings. Theirs was a

nature worship, but a nature worship of a very peculiar kind. They did not place gods over the different parts of nature, like the Greeks: they did not even personify the powers of nature, like the Hindoos: they paid their devotion to the actual material things themselves. Fire, as the most subtle and ethereal principle, and again as the most powerful agent, attracted their highest regards;[134] and on their fire-altars the sacred flame, generally said to have been kindled from heaven,[135] was kept burning uninterruptedly from year to year and from age to age by bands of priests, whose special duty it was to see that the sacred spark was never extinguished.[136] To defile the altar by blowing the flame with one's breath was a capital offence:[137] and to burn a corpse was regarded as an act equally odious.[138] When victims were offered to fire, nothing but a small portion of the fat was consumed in the flame.[139] Next to fire, water was reverenced. Sacrifice was offered to rivers, lakes, and fountains, the victim being brought near to them and then slain, while great care was taken that no drop of their blood should touch the water and pollute it.[140] No refuse was allowed to be cast into a river, nor was it even lawful to wash one's hands in one.[141] Reverence for earth was shown by sacrifice,[142] and by abstention from the usual mode of burying the dead.[143]

The Magian religion was of a highly sacerdotal type. No worshipper could perform any religious act except by the intervention of a priest, or Magus, who stood between him and the divinity as a Mediator.[144] The Magus prepared the victim and slew it, chanted the mystic strain which gave the sacrifice all its force, poured on the ground the propitiatory libation of oil, milk, and honey, held the bundle of thin tamarisk twigs —the Zendic barsom (*barẽçma*) —the employment of which was essential to every sacrificial ceremony.[145] The Magi were a priest-caste, apparently holding their office by hereditary succession.[146] They claimed to possess, not only a sacred and mediatorial character, but also supernatural prophetic powers. They explained omens,[147] expounded dreams,[148] and by means of a certain mysterious manipulation of the barsom, or bundle of twigs, arrived at a knowledge of future events, which they communicated to the pious inquirer.[149]

With such pretensions it was natural that the caste should assume a lofty air, a stately dress, and an *entourage* of ceremonial magnificence. Clad in white robes,[150] and bearing upon their heads tall felt caps, with long lappets at the sides,

which concealed the jaw and even the lips, each with his barsom in his hand, they marched in procession to their *pyræthéia*, or fire altars, and standing around them performed for an hour at a time their magical incantations.[151] The credulous multitude, impressed by sights of this kind, and imposed on by the claims to supernatural power which the Magi advanced, paid them a willing homage: the kings and chiefs consulted them; and when the Arian tribes, pressing westward, came into contact with the races professing the Magian religion, they found a sacerdotal caste all-powerful in most of the Scythic nations.

The original spirit of Zoroastrianism was fierce and exclusive. The early Iranians looked with contempt and hatred on the creed of their Indian brethren: they abhorred idolatry; and were disinclined to tolerate any religion except that which they had themselves worked out. But with the lapse of ages this spirit became softened. Polytheistic creeds are far less jealous than monotheism; and the development of Zoroastrianism had been in a polytheistic direction. By the time that the Zoroastrians were brought into contact with Magism, the first fervor of their religious zeal had abated, and they were in that intermediate condition of religious faith which at once impresses and is impressed, acts upon other systems, and allows itself to be acted upon in return. The result which supervened upon contact with Magism seems to have been a fusion, an absorption into Zoroastrianism of all the chief points of the Magian belief, and all the more remarkable of the Magian religious usages. This absorption appears to have taken place in Media. It was there that the Arian tribes first associated with themselves, and formally adopted into their body, the priest-caste of the Magi,[152] which thenceforth was recognized as one of the six Median tribes.[153] It is there that Magi are first found acting in the capacity of Arian priests.[154] According to all the accounts which have come down to us, they soon acquired a predominating influence, which they no doubt used to impress their own religious doctrines more and more upon the nation at large, and to thrust into the background, so far as they dared, the peculiar features of the old Arian belief. It is not necessary to suppose that the Medes ever apostatized altogether from the worship of Ormazd, or formally surrendered their Dualistic faith.[154] But, practically, the Magian doctrines and the Magian usages —elemental worship, divination with the sacred rods, dream

expounding, incantations at the fire-altars, sacrifices whereat a Magus officiated—seem to have prevailed; the new predominated over the old; backed by the power of an organized hierarchy, Magism over-laid the primitive Arian creed, and, as time went on, tended more and more to become the real religion of the nation.

Among the religious customs introduced by the Magi into Media there are one or two which seem to require especial notice. The attribution of a sacred character to the four so-called elements—earth, air, fire and water—renders it extremely difficult to know what is to be done with the dead. They cannot be burnt, for that is a pollution of fire; or buried, for that is a pollution of earth; or thrown into a river, for that is a defilement of water. If they are deposited in sarcophagi, or exposed, they really pollute the air; but in this case the guilt of the pollution, it may be argued, does not rest on man, since the dead body is merely left in the element in which nature placed it. The only mode of disposal which completely avoids the defilement of every element is consumption of the dead by living beings: and the worship of the elements leads on naturally to this treatment of corpses. At present the Guebres, or Fire-worshippers, the descendants of the ancient Persians, expose all their dead, with the intention that they shall be devoured by birds of prey.[156] In ancient times, it appears certain that the Magi adopted this practice with respect to their own dead;[157] but, apparently, they did not insist upon having their example followed universally by the laity.[158] Probably a natural instinct made the Arians averse to this coarse and revolting custom; and their spiritual guides, compassionating their weakness, or fearful of losing their own influence over them if they were too stiff in enforcing compliance, winked at the employment by the people of an entirely different practice. The dead bodies were first covered completely with a coating of wax, and were then deposited in the ground.[159] It was held, probably, that the coating of wax prevented the pollution which would have necessarily resulted had the earth come into direct contact with the corpse.

The custom of divining by means of a number of rods appears to have been purely Magian. There is no trace of it in the Gâthâs, in the *Yaçna haptanhaiti*, or in the older portions of the Vendidad. It was a Scythic practice;[160] and probably the best extant account of it is that which Herodotus gives of the mode wherein it was managed by the Scyths of Europe.

"Scythia," he says, "has an abundance of soothsayers, who foretell the future by means of a number of willow wands. A large bundle of these rods is brought and laid on the ground. The soothsayer unties the bundle, and places each wand by itself, at the same time uttering his prophecy: then, while he is still speaking, he gathers the rods together again, and makes them up once more into a bundle."[162] A divine power seems to have been regarded as resting in the wands; and they were supposed to be "consulted"[163] on the matter in hand, both severally and collectively. The bundle of wands thus imbued with supernatural wisdom became naturally part of the regular priestly costume,[163] and was carried by the Magi on all occasions of ceremony. The wands were of different lengths; and the number of wands in the bundle varied. Sometimes there were three, sometimes five, sometimes as many as seven or nine; but in every case, as it would seem, an odd number.[164]

Another implement which the priests commonly bore must be regarded, not as Magian, but as Zoroastrian. This is the *khrafçthraghna*, or instrument for killing bad animals,[165] frogs, toads, snakes, mice, lizards, flies, etc., which belonged to the bad creation, or that which derived its origin from Angrô-mainyus. These it was the general duty of all men, and the more especial duty of the Zoroastrian priests, to put to death, whenever they had the opportunity. The Magi, it appears, adopted this Arian usage, added the *khrafçthraghna* to the *barsom*, and were so zealous in their performance of the cruel work expected from them as to excite the attention, and even draw upon themselves the rebuke, of foreigners.[166]

A practice is assigned to the Magi by many classical and ecclesiastical writers,[167] which, if it were truly charged on them, would leave a very dark stain on the character of their ethical system. It is said that they allowed and even practised incest of the most horrible kind—such incest as we are accustomed to associate with the names of Lot, Œdipus, and Herod Agrippa. The charge seems to have been first made either by Xanthus the Lydian, or by Ctesias. It was accepted, probably without much inquiry, by the Greeks generally, and then by the Romans, was repeated by writer after writer as a certain fact, and became finally a stock topic with the early Christian apologists. Whether it had any real foundation in fact is very uncertain. Herodotus, who collects with so much pains the strange and unusual customs of the various nations whom he visits, is evidently quite ignorant of any such mon-

Fig 1.

No. 1.

No. 2.

Lydian Coins.

Fig 2

View of the Lebanon range.

Fig. 3.

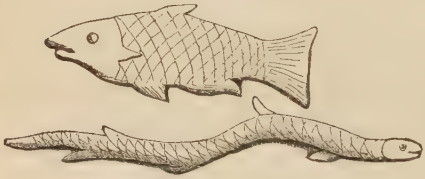
Hare sitting, from a Babylonian cylinder.

Hare carried in the hands, from a Babylonian cylinder.

Fig. 1.

The Sea of Antioch, from the East.

Fig 2.



Babylonian fish, from the Sculptures.

Fig 3

Locusts, from a Cylinder.

Fig. 4

Susianian Mule (Koyunjik).

strous practice. He regards the Magian religion as established in Persia, yet he holds the incestuous marriage of Cambyses with his sister to have been contrary to existing Persian laws.[168] At the still worst forms of incest of which the Magi and those under their influence are accused, Herodotus does not even glance. No doubt, if Xanthus Lydus really made the statement which Clemens of Alexandria assigns to him, it is an important piece of evidence, though scarcely sufficient to prove the Magi guilty. Xanthus was a man of little judgment, apt to relate extravagant tales;[169] and, as a Lydian, he may have been disinclined to cast an aspersion on the religion of his country's oppressors. The passage in question, however, probably did not come from Xanthus Lydus, but from a much later writer who assumed his name, as has been well shown by a living critic.[170] The true original author of the accusation against the Magi and their co-religionists seems to have been Ctesias,[171] whose authority is far too weak to establish a charge intrinsically so improbable. Its only historical foundation seems to have been the fact that incestuous marriages were occasionally contracted by the Persian kings; not, however, in consequence of any law, or religious usage, but because in the plenitude of their power they could set all law at defiance, and trample upon the most sacred principles of morality and religion.[172]

A minor charge preferred against the Magian morality by Xanthus, or rather by the pseudo-Xanthus, has possibly a more solid foundation. "The Magi," this writer said, "hold their wives in common: at least they often marry the wives of others with the free consent of their husbands." This is really to say that among the Magians divorce was over-facile; that wives were often put away, merely with a view to their forming a fresh marriage, by husbands who understood and approved of the transaction. Judging by the existing practice of the Persians,[173] we must admit that such laxity is in accordance with Iranic notions on the subject of marriage – notions far less strict than those which have commonly prevailed among civilized nations. There is, however, no other evidence, besides this, that divorce was very common where the Magian system prevailed; and the mere assertion of the writer who personated Xanthus Lydus will scarcely justify us in affixing even this stigma on the religion.

Upon the whole, Magism, though less elevated and less pure than the old Zoroastrian creed, must be pronounced to have

possessed a certain loftiness and picturesqueness which suited it to become the religion of a great and splendid monarchy. The mysterious fire-altars on the mountain-tops, with their prestige of a remote antiquity—the ever-burning flame believed to have been kindled from on high—the worship in the open air under the blue canopy of heaven the long troops of Magians in their white robes, with their strange caps, and their mystic wands—the frequent prayers—the abundant sacrifices[174]—the long incantations—the supposed prophetic powers of the priest-caste—all this together constituted an imposing whole at once to the eye and to the mind, and was calculated to give additional grandeur to the civil system that should be allied with it. Pure Zoroastrianism was too spiritual to coalesce readily with Oriental luxury and magnificence, or to lend strength to a government based on the ordinary principles of Asiatic despotism. Magism furnished a hierarchy to support the throne, and add splendor and dignity to the court, while they overawed the subject-class by their supposed possession of supernatural powers, and of the right of mediating between heaven and man. It supplied a picturesque worship which at once gratified the senses and excited the fancy It gave scope to man's passion for the marvellous by its incantations, its divining-rods, its omen-reading, and its dream-expounding. It gratified the religious scrupulosity which finds a pleasure in making to itself difficulties, by the disallowance of a thousand natural acts, and the imposition of numberless rules for external purity.[175] At the same time it gave no offence to the anti-idolatrous spirit in which the Arians had hitherto gloried, but rather encouraged the iconoclasm which they always upheld and practised. It thus blended easily with the previous creed of the people, awaking no prejudices, clashing with no interests; winning its way by an apparent meekness and unpresumingness, while it was quite prepared, when the fitting time came, to be as fierce and exclusive as if it had never worn the mask of humility and moderation.[176]

CHAPTER V.

LANGUAGE AND WRITING.

Ὁμόγλωττοι παρὰ μικρὸν οἱ Πέρσαι καὶ οἱ Μῆδοι.—Strab. xv. 2, § 8.

On the language of the ancient Medes a very few observations will be here made. It has been noticed already[1] that the Median form of speech was closely allied to that of the Persians. The remark of Strabo quoted above, and another remark which he cites from Nearchus,[2] imply at once this fact, and also the further fact of a dialectic difference between the two tongues. Did we possess, as some imagine that we do, materials for tracing out this diversity, it would be proper in the present place to enter fully on the subject, and instead of contenting ourselves with asserting, or even proving, the substantial oneness of the languages, it would be our duty to proceed to the far more difficult and more complicated task of comparing together the sister dialects, and noting their various differences. The supposition that there exist means for such a comparison is based upon a theory that in the language of the Zendavesta we have the true speech of the ancient people of Media, while in the cuneiform inscriptions of the Achæmenian kings it is beyond controversy that we possess the ancient language of Persia. It becomes necessary, therefore, to examine this theory, in order to justify our abstention from an inquiry on which, if the theory were sound, we should be now called upon to enter.

The notion that the Zend language was the idiom of ancient Media originated with Anquetil du Perron. He looked on Zoroaster as a native of Azerbijan, contemporary with Darius Hystaspis. His opinion was embraced by Kleuker, Herder, and Rask;[3] and again, with certain modifications, by Tychsen[4] and Heeren.[5] These latter writers even gave a more completely Median character to the Zendavesta, by regarding it as composed in Media Magna, during the reign of the great Cyaxares. The main foundation of these views was the identification of Zoroastrianism with the Magian fire-worship, which was really ancient in Azerbijan, and flourished in Media under the great Median monarch. But we have seen that Magianism and Zorcastrianism were originally entirely distinct, and that

the Zendavesta in all its earlier portions belongs wholly to the latter system. Nothing therefore is proved concerning the Zend dialect by establishing a connection between the Medes and Magism, which was a corrupting influence thrown in upon Zoroastrianism long after the composition of the great bulk of the sacred writings.

These writings themselves sufficiently indicate the place of their composition. It was not Media, but Bactria, or at any rate the north-eastern Iranic country, between the Bolor range and the Caspian. This conclusion, which follows from a consideration of the various geographical notices contained in the Zend books, had been accepted of late years by all the more profound Zend scholars. Originated by Rhode,[6] it has also in its favor the names of Burnouf, Lassen, Westergaard, and Haug.[7] If then the Zend is to be regarded as really a local dialect, the idiom of a particular branch of the Iranic people, there is far more reason for considering it to be the ancient speech of Bactria than of any other Arian country. Possibly the view is correct which recognizes two nearly-allied dialects as existing side by side in Iran during its flourishing period—one prevailing towards the west, the other towards the east—one Medo-Persic, the other Sogdo-Bactrian—the former represented to us by the cuneiform inscriptions, the latter by the Zend texts.[8] Or it may be closer to the truth to recognize in the Zendic and Achæmenian forms of speech, not so much two contemporary idioms, as two stages of one and the same language, which seems to be at present the opinion of the best comparative philologists.[9] In either case Media can claim no special interest in Zend, which, if local, is Sogdo-Bactrian, and if not local is no more closely connected with Media than with Persia.

It appears then that we do not at present possess any means of distinguishing the shades of difference which separated the Median from the Persian speech.[10] We have in fact no specimens of the former beyond a certain number of words, and those chiefly proper names, whereas we know the latter tolerably completely from the inscriptions. It is proposed under the head of the "Fifth Monarchy" to consider at some length the general character of the Persian language as exhibited to us in these documents. From the discussion then to be raised may be gathered the general character of the speech of the Medes. In the present place all that will be attempted is to show how far the remnants left us of Median speech bear out

the statement that, substantially, one and the same tongue was spoken by both peoples.

Many Median names are absolutely identical with Persian; *e.g.*, Ariobarzanes,[11] Artabazus,[12] Artæus,[13] Artembares,[14] Harpagus, Arbaces, Tiridates, etc.[15] Others which are not absolutely identical approach to the Persian form so closely as to be plainly mere variants, like Theodorus and Theodosius, Adelbert and Ethelbert, Miriam, Mariam, and Mariamné. Of this kind are Intaphres,[16] another form of Intaphernes, Artynes, another form of Artanes,[17] Parmises, another form of Parmys,[18] and the like. A third class, neither identical with any known Persian names, nor so nearly approaching to them as to be properly considered mere variants, are made up of known Persian roots, and may be explained on exactly the same principles as Persian names. Such are Ophernes, Sitraphernes, Mitraphernes, Megabernes, Aspadas, Mazares, Tachmaspates, Xathrites, Spitaces, Spitamas, Rhambacas, and others. In O-phernes, Sitra-phernes, Mitra-phernes, and Mega-bernes, the second element is manifestly the *pharna* or *frana* which is found in Arta-phernes and Inta-phernes (*Vida-frana*),[19] an active participial form from *pri*, "to protect." The initial element in O-phernes represents the Zend *hu*, Sans. *su*, Greek *εὖ*, as the same letter does in O-manes, O-martes, etc.[20] The *Sitra* of Sitra-phernes has been explained as probably *khshatra*, "the crown,"[21] which is similarly represented in the *Satro*-pates of Curtius, a name standing to Sitra-phernes exactly as Artapatas to Arta-phernes.[22] In Mega-bernes the first element is the well-known *baga*, "God,"[23] under the form commonly preferred by the Greeks;[24] and the name is exactly equivalent to Curtius's *Bago*-phanes,[25] which only differs from it by taking the participle of *pa*, "to protect," instead of the participle of *pri*, which has the same meaning. In Aspa-das it is easy to recognize *aspa*, "horse" (a common root in Persian names, *e.g.*, *Aspa*-thines, *Aspa*-mitras, Prex-*aspes*, and the like[26]), followed by the same element which terminates the name of Oromaz-*des*, and which means either "knowing" or "giving."[27] Ma-zares presents us with the root *meh*, "much" or "great," which is found in the name of the *M*-aspii, or "Big Horses," a Persian tribe,[28] followed by *zara*, "gold," which appears in Ctesias's Arto-*xares*,[29] and perhaps also in *Zoro*-aster.[30] In Tachmaspates,[31] the first element is *takhma*, "strong," a root found in the Persian names Ar-*tochmes* and Tritan-*tæchmes*,[32] while the second is the frequently used *pati*, "lord," which

occurs as the initial element in *Pati*-zeithes,[35] *Pati*-ramphes, etc.,[34] and as the terminal in Pharna-*pates*,[36] Ario-*peithes*, and the like. In Xathrites[37] we have clearly *khshatra* (Zend *khshathra*), "crown" or "king," with a participial suffix *-ita*, corresponding to the Sanscrit participle in *-it*. Spita-ces[37] and Spita-mas[38] contain the root *spita*, equivalent to *spenta*, "holy,"[39] which is found in *Spitho*-bates, *Spita*-menes, *Spita*-des, etc. This, in Spita-ces, is followed by a guttural ending, which is either a diminutive corresponding to the modern Persian *-ek*, or perhaps a suffixed article.[40] In Spit-amas, the suffix *-mas* is the common form of the superlative, and may be compared with the Latin *-mus* in opti*mus*, inti*mus*, supre*mus*, and the like. Rhambacas[41] contains the root *rafno*, "joy, pleasure," which we find in Pati-*ramphes*, followed by the guttural suffix.

There remains, finally, a class of Median names, containing roots not found in any known names of Persians, but easily explicable from Zend, Sanscrit, or other cognate tongues, and therefore not antagonistic to the view that Median and Persian were two closely connected dialects. Such, for instance, are the royal names mentioned by Herodotus, Deïoces, Phraortes, Astyages, and Cyaxares; and such also are the following, which come to us from various sources: Amytis, Astibaras, Armamithres or Harmamithres, Mandauces, Parsondas, Ramates, Susiscanes, Tithæus, and Zanasanes.

In Deïoces, or (as the Latins write it) Dejoces, there can be little doubt that we have the name given as Djohak or Zohak in the Shahnameh and other modern Persian writings, which is itself an abbreviation of the Ajis-dahaka of the Zendavesta.[42] *Dahaka* means in Zend "biting," or "the biter," and is etymologically connected with the Greek δάκνω, δάκος, ὀδάξ, κ. τ. λ.

Phraortes, which in old Persian was Fravartish,[43] seems to be a mere variant of the word which appears in the Zendavesta as *fravashi*, and designates each man's *tutelary* genius.[44] The derivation is certainly from *fra* (= Gk. προ-), and probably from a root akin to the German *wahren*, French *garder*, English "ward, watch," etc. The meaning is "a protector."

Cyaxares, the Persian form of which was 'Uvakhshatara,[45] seems to be formed from the two elements *'u* or *hu* (Gk. εὖ), "well, good," and *akhsha* (Zend *arsna*), "the eye," which is the final element of the name Cyav*arsna* in the Zendavesta. Cyavarsna is "dark-eyed;"[46] 'Uvakhsha (= Zend *Huvarsna*) would be "beautiful-eyed." 'Uvakhshatara appears to be the

comparative of this adjective, and would mean "more beautiful-eyed (than others)."

Astyages, which, according to Moses of Chorêné,[47] meant "a dragon" or "serpent," is almost certainly Ajis-dahaka, the full name whereof Dejoces (or Zohak) is the abbreviation. It means "the biting snake," from *aji* or *azi*, "a snake" or "serpent," and *dahaka*, "biting."

Amytis is probably *ama*, "active, great," with the ordinary feminine suffix *-iti*, found in Armaïti, Khnathaïti, and the like.[48] Astibaras is perhaps "great of bone,"[49] from Zend *açta* (Sans. *asthi*), "bone," and *bereza*, "tall, great." Harmamithres,[50] if that is the true reading, would be "mountain-lover" (*monticolus*), from *harâm*, acc. of *hara*, "a mountain," and *mithra* or *mitra* (=Gk. φίλος), "fond of." If, however, the name should be read as Armamithres, the probable derivation will be from *râma*, acc. of *râman*, "pleasure," which is also the root of *Rama*-tes.[51] Armamithres may then be compared with Rheomithres, Siromitras, and Sysimithres,[52] which are respectively "fond of splendor," "fond of beauty," and "fond of light." Mandauces[53] is perhaps "biting spirit—*esprit mordant*," from *manô*, "cœur, esprit," and *dahaka*, "biting."[54] Parsondas can scarcely be the original form, from the occurrence in it of the nasal before the dental.[55] In the original it must have been Parsodas, which would mean "liberal, much giving," from *pouru*, "much," and *da* (= Gk. δίδωμι), "to give." Ramates, as already observed, is from *rama*, "pleasure." It is an adjectival form, like Datis,[56] and means probably "pleasant, agreeable." Susiscanes[57] may be explained as "splendidus juvenis," from *çuc*, "splendere," pres. part. *çaocat*, and *kainîn*, "adolescens, juvenis." Tithæus[58] is probably for Tathæus, which would be readily formed from *tatka*, "one who makes."[59] Finally, Zanasanes[60] may be referred to the root *zan* or *jan*, "to kill," which is perhaps simply followed by the common appellative suffix *-ana* (Gk. *-άνης*).

From these names of persons we may pass to those of places in Media, which equally admit of explanation from roots known to have existed either in Zend or in old Persian. Of these, Ecbatana, Bagistana, and Aspadana may be taken as convenient specimens. Ecbatana (or Agbatana, according to the orthography of the older Greeks[61]) was in the native dialect Hagmatana, as appears from the Behistun inscription.[62] This form, Hagmatana, is in all probability derived from the three words *ham*, "with" (Sans. *sam*, Gk. σύν, Latin *cum*),

gam, "to go" (Zend *gâ*, Sans. *gam*), and *çtana* (Mod. Pers. *-stan*) "a place." The initial *ham* has dropped the *m* and become *ha*, just as σύν becomes *συ-* in Greek, and *cum* becomes *co-* in Latin; *gam* has become *gma* by metathesis; and *çtan* has passed into *-tan* by phonetic corruption. Ha-gma-tana would be "the place for assembly," or for "coming together" (Lat. *comitium*); the place, *i.e.*, where the tribes met, and where, consequently, the capital grew up.

Bagistan, which was "a hill sacred to Jupiter" according to Diodorus,[64] is clearly a name corresponding to the Beth-el of the Hebrews and the Allahabad of the Mahometans. It is simply "the house, or place, of God"—from *baga*, "God," and *çtana*, "place, abode," the common modern Persian terminal (compare Farsi-*stan*, Khuzi-*stan*, Afghani-*stan*, Belochi-*stan*, Hindu-*stan*, etc.), which has here not suffered any corruption.

Aspadana contains certainly as its first element the root *açpa*, "horse."[64] The suffix *dan* may perhaps be a corruption of *çtana*, analogous to that which has produced Hama-*dan* from Hagma-çtan; or it may be a contracted form of *danhu*, or *dainhu*, "a province," Aspadana having been originally the name of a district where horses were bred, and having thence become the name of its chief town.

The Median words known to us, other than names of persons or places, are confined to some three or four. Herodotus tells us that the Median word for "dog" was *spaka*;[65] Xenophon implies, if he does not expressly state, that the native name for the famous Median robe was *candys*;[66] Nicolas of Damascus[67] informs us that the Median couriers were called *Angari* (ἄγγαροι); and Hesychius says that the *artabé* (ἀρτάβη) was a Median measure.[68] The last-named writer also states that *artades* and *devas* were *Magian* words,[69] which perhaps implies that they were common to the Medes with the Persians. Here, again, the evidence, such as it is, favors a close connection between the languages of Media and Persia.

That *artabé* and *angarus* were Persian words no less than Median, we have the evidence of Herodotus.[70] *Artades*, "just men" (according to Hesychius), is probably akin to *ars*, "true, just," and may represent the *ars-dâta*, "made just," of the Zendavesta.[71] *Devas* (δεύας), which Hesychius translates "the evil gods" (τοὺς κακοὺς θεούς),[72] is clearly the Zendic *daêva*, Mod. Pers. *div*. (Sans. *deva*, Lat. *divus*). In *candys* we have most probably a formation from *qan*, "to dress, to adorn." *Spaka* is the Zendic *çpâ*, with the Scythic guttural suffix, of

which the Medes were so fond,[73] *cpâ* itself being akin to the Sanscrit *çvan*, and so to *κύων* and *canis*.[74] Thus we may connect all the few words which are known as Median with forms contained in the Zend, which was either the mother or the elder sister of the ancient Persian.

That the Medes were acquainted with the art of writing, and practised it—at least from the time that they succeeded to the dominion of the Assyrians—scarcely admits of a doubt. An illiterate nation, which conquers one in possession of a literature, however it may despise learning and look down upon the mere literary life, is almost sure to adopt writing to some extent on account of its practical utility. It is true the Medes have left us no written monuments; and we may fairly conclude from that fact that they used writing sparingly; but besides the antecedent probability, there is respectable evidence that letters were known to them, and that, at any rate, their upper classes could both read and write their native tongue. The story of the letter sent by Harpagus the Mede to Cyrus in the belly of a hare,[75] though probably apocryphal, is important as showing the belief of Herodotus on the subject. The still more doubtful story of a despatch written on parchment by a Median king, Arteus, and sent to Nanarus, a provincial governor, related by Nicolas of Damascus,[76] has a value, as indicating that writer's conviction that the Median monarchs habitually conveyed their commands to their subordinates in a written form. With these statements of profane writers agree certain notices which we find in Scripture. Darius the Mede, shortly after the destruction of the Median empire, "signs" a decree, which his chief nobles have presented to him in writing.[77] He also himself "writes" another decree addressed to his subjects generally.[78] In later times we find that there existed at the Persian court a "book of the chronicles of the kings of Media and Persia,"[79] which was probably a work begun under the Medians and continued under the Persian sovereigns.

If then writing was practised by the Medes, it becomes interesting to consider whence they obtained their knowledge of it, and what was the system which they employed. Did they bring an alphabet with them from the far East, or did they derive their first knowledge of letters from the nations with whom they came into contact after their great migration? In the latter case, did they adopt, with or without modifications, a foreign system, or did they merely borrow the idea of

written symbols from their new neighbors, and set to work to invent for themselves an alphabet suited to the genius of their own tongue? These are some of the questions which present themselves to the mind as deserving of attention, when this subject is brought before it. Unfortunately we possess but very scanty data for determining, and can do little more than conjecture, the proper answers to be given to them.

The early composition of certain portions of the Zendavesta, which has been asserted in this work,[1] may seem at first sight to imply the use of a written character in Bactria and the adjacent countries at a very remote era. But such a conclusion is not necessary. Nations have often had an oral literature, existing only in the memories of men, and have handed down such a literature from generation to generation, through a long succession of ages.[2] The sacred lore of Zoroaster may have been brought by the Medes from the East-Caspian country in an unwritten shape, and may not have been reduced to writing till many centuries later. On the whole it is perhaps most probable that the Medes were unacquainted with letters when they made their great migration, and that they acquired their first knowledge of them from the races with whom they came into collision when they settled along the Zagros chain. In these regions they were brought into contact with at least two forms of written speech, one that of the old Armenians,[3] a Turanian dialect, the other that of the Assyrians, a language of the Semitic type. These two nations used the same alphabetic system, though their languages were utterly unlike; and it would apparently have been the easiest plan for the new comers to have adopted the established forms, and to have applied them, so far as was possible, to the representation of their own speech. But the extreme complication of a system which employed between three and four hundred written signs, and composed signs sometimes of fourteen or fifteen wedges, seems to have shocked the simplicity of the Medes, who recognized the fact that the varieties of their articulations fell far short of this excessive luxuriance. The Arian races, so far as appears, declined to follow the example set them by the Turanians of Armenia, who had adopted the Assyrian alphabet, and preferred to invent a new system for themselves, which they determined to make far more simple. It is possible that they found an example already set them. In Achæmenian times we observe two alphabets used through Media and Persia, both of which are simpler than the Assyrian: one is

employed to express the Turanian dialect of the people whom the Arians conquered and dispossessed;[3] the other, to express the tongue of the conquerors. It is possible—though we have no direct evidence of the fact—that the Turanians of Zagros and the neighborhood had already formed for themselves the alphabet which is found in the second columns of the Achæmenian tablets, when the Arian invaders conquered them. This alphabet, which in respect of complexity holds an intermediate position between the luxuriance of the Assyrian and the simplicity of the Medo-Persic system, would seem in all probability to have intervened in order of time between the two. It consists of no more than about a hundred characters,[4] and these are for the most part far less complicated than those of Assyria. If the Medes found this form of writing already existing in Zagros when they arrived, it may have assisted to give them the idea of making for themselves an alphabet so far on the old model that the wedge should be the sole element used in the formation of letters, but otherwise wholly new, and much more simple than those previously in use.

Discarding then the Assyrian notion of a syllabarium, with the enormous complication which it involves,[5] the Medes[6] strove to reduce sounds to their ultimate elements, and to represent these last alone by symbols. Contenting themselves with the three main vowel sounds, *a*, *i*, and *u*,[7] and with one breathing, a simple *h*, they recognized twenty consonants, which were the following, *b*, *d*, *f*, *g*, *j*, *k*, *kh*, *m*, *n*, *ñ* (sound doubtful), *p*, *r*, *s*, *sh*, *t*, *v*, *y*, *z*, *ch* (as in *much*), and *tr*, an unnecessary compound. Had they stopped here, their characters should have been but twenty-four, the number which is found in Greek. To their ears, however, it would seem, each consonant appeared to carry with it a short *a*, and as this, occurring before *i* and *u*, produced the diphthongs *ai* and *au*, sounded nearly as *ê* and *ô*,[8] it seemed necessary, where a consonant was to be directly followed by the sounds *i* or *u*, to have special forms to which the sound of *a* should not attach. This system, carried out completely, would have raised the forms of consonants to sixty, a multiplication that was feared as inconvenient. In order to keep down the number, it seems to have been resolved, (1.) that one form should suffice for the aspirated letters and the sibilants (viz., *h*, *kh*, *ch*, *ph* or *f*, *s*, *sh*, and *z*), and also for *b*, *y*, and *tr*; (2.) that two forms should suffice for the *tenues*, *k*, *p*, *t*, for the liquids *n* and *r*, and for *v*; and consequently (3.) that the full number of three forms should be

limited to some three or four letters, as *d*, *m*, *j*, and perhaps *g*. The result is that the known alphabet of the Persians, which is assumed here to have been the invention of the Medes, consists of some thirty-six or thirty-seven forms, which are really representative of no more than twenty-three distinct sounds."[89]

It appears then that, compared with the phonetic systems in vogue among their neighbors, the alphabet of the Medes and Persians was marked by a great simplicity. The forms of the letters were also very much simplified. Instead of conglomerations of fifteen or sixteen wedges in a single character, we have in the Medo-Persic letters a maximum of five wedges. The most ordinary number is four, which is sometimes reduced to three or even two. The direction of the wedges is uniformly either perpendicular or horizontal, except of course in the case of the double wedge or arrow-head, 𒁹, where the component elements are placed obliquely. The arrow-head has but one position, the perpendicular, with the angle facing towards the left hand. The only diagonal sign used is a simple wedge, placed obliquely with the point towards the right, 𒁶, which is a mere mark of separation between the words.

The direction of the writing was, as with the Arian nations generally, from left to right. Words were frequently divided, and part carried on to the next line. The characters were inscribed between straight lines drawn from end to end of the tablet on which they were written. Like the Hebrew, they often closely resembled one another, and a slight defect in the stone will cause one to be mistaken for another. The resemblance is not between letters of the same class or kind; on the contrary, it is often between those which are most remote from one another. Thus *g* nearly resembles *u*; *ch* is like *d*; *tr* like *p*; and so on: while *k* and *kh*, *s* and *sh*, *p* and *ph* (or *f*) are forms quite dissimilar.

It is supposed that a cuneiform alphabet can never have been employed for ordinary writing purposes,[90] but must have been confined to documents of some importance, which it was desirable to preserve, and which were therefore either inscribed on stone, or impressed on moist clay afterwards baked. A cursive character, it is therefore imagined, must always have been in use, parallel with a cuneiform one;[91] and as the Babylonians and Assyrians are known to have used a character of this kind from a very high antiquity, synchronously with their lapidary cuneiform, so it is supposed that the Arian races must have possessed, besides the method which has been

described as a cursive system of writing. Of this, however, there is at present no direct evidence. No cursive writing of the Arian nations at this time, either Median or Persian, has been found: and it is therefore uncertain what form of character they employed on common occasions.

The material used for ordinary purposes, according to Nicolas of Damascus[93] and Ctesias,[94] was parchment. On this the kings wrote the despatches which conveyed their orders to the officers who administered the government of provinces; and on this were inscribed the memorials which each monarch was careful to have composed giving an account of the chief events of his reign. The cost of land carriage probably prevented papyrus from superseding this material in Western Asia, as it did in Greece at a tolerably early date.[94] Clay, so much used for writing on both in Babylonia and Assyria,[95] appears never to have approved itself as a convenient substance to the Iranians. For public documents the chisel and the rock, for private the pen and the prepared skin, seem to have been preferred by them; and in the earlier times, at any rate, they employed no other materials.

CHAPTER VI.

CHRONOLOGY AND HISTORY.

Media . . . quam ante regnum Cyri superioris et incrementa Persidos legimus Asiæ reginam totius.—Amm. Marc. xxiii. 6.

THE origin of the Median nation is wrapt in a profound obscurity. Following the traces which the Zendavesta offers, taking into consideration its minute account of the earlier Arian migrations,[1] its entire omission of any mention of the Medes, and the undoubted fact that it was nevertheless by the Medes and Persians that the document itself was preserved and transmitted to us, we should be naturally led to suppose that the race was one which in the earlier times of Arian development was weak and insignificant, and that it first pushed itself into notice after the ethnological portions of the Zendavesta were composed, which is thought to have been about B.C. 1000.[2] Quite in accordance with this view is the further fact that in the native Assyrian annals, so far as they have been

recovered, the Medes do not make their appearance till the middle of the ninth century B.C., and when they appear are weak and unimportant, only capable of opposing a very slight resistance to the attacks of the Ninevite kings.[3] The natural conclusion from these data would appear to be that until about B.C. 850 the Median name was unknown in the world, and that previously, if Medes existed at all, it was either as a sub-tribe of some other Arian race, or at any rate as a tribe too petty and insignificant to obtain mention either on the part of native or of foreign historians. Such early insignificance and late development of what ultimately becomes the dominant tribe of a race is no strange or unprecedented phenomenon to the historical inquirer: on the contrary, it is among the facts with which he is most familiar, and would admit of ample illustration, were the point worth pursuing, alike from the history of the ancient and the modern world.[4]

But, against the conclusion to which we could not fail to be led by the Arian and Assyrian records, which agree together so remarkably, two startling notices in works of great authority but of a widely different character have to be set. In the Toldoth Beni Noah, or "Book of the Generation of the Sons of Noah," which forms the tenth chapter of Genesis, and which, if the work of Moses, was probably composed at least as early as B.C. 1500,[5] we find the MADAI—a word elsewhere always signifying "the Medes"—in the genealogy of the sons of Japhet.[6] The word is there conjoined with several other important ethnic titles, as Gomer, Magog, Javan, Tubal, and Meshech; and there can be no reasonable doubt that it is intended to designate the Median people.[7] If so, the people must have had already a separate and independent existence in the fifteenth century B.C., and not only so, but they must have by that time attained so much distinction as to be thought worthy of mention by a writer who was only bent on affiliating the more important of the nations known to him.

The other notice is furnished by Berosus. That remarkable historian, in his account of the early dynasties of his native Chaldæa, declared that, at a date anterior to B.C. 2000, the Medes had conquered Babylon by a sudden inroad, had established a monarchy there, and had held possession of the city and neighboring territory for a period of 224 years.[8] Eight kings of their race had during that interval occupied the Babylonian throne. It has been already observed that this nar-

rative must represent a fact." Berosus would not have gratuitously invented a foreign conquest of his native land; nor would the earlier Babylonians, from whom he derived his materials, have forged a tale which was so little flattering to their national vanity. *Some* foreign conquest of Babylon must have taken place about the period named; and it is certainly a most important fact that Berosus should call the conquerors Medes. He may no doubt have been mistaken about an event so ancient: he may have misread his authorities, or he may have described as Medes a people of which he really knew nothing except that they had issued from the tract which in his own time bore the name of Media. But, while these are mere possibilities, hypotheses to which the mind resorts in order to escape a difficulty, the hard fact remains that he has used the word; and this fact, coupled with the mention of the Medes in the book of Genesis, does certainly raise a presumption of no inconsiderable strength against the view which it would be natural to take if the Zendavesta and the Assyrian annals were our sole authorities on the subject. It lends a substantial basis to the theories of those who regard the Medes as one of the principal primeval races;[10] who believe that they were well known to the Semitic inhabitants of the Mesopotamian valley as early as the twenty-third century before Christ—long ere Abraham left Ur for Harran; and that they actually formed the dominant power in Western Asia for more than two centuries, prior to the establishment of the first Chaldæan kingdom.

And if there are thus distinct historical grounds for the notion of an early Median development, there are not wanting these obscurer but to many minds more satisfactory proofs wherewith comparative philology and ethnology are wont to illustrate and confirm the darker passages of ancient history. Recent linguistic research has clearly traced among the *Arba Lisun*, or, "Four Tongues" of ancient Chaldæa, which are so often mentioned on the ancient monuments,[11] an Arian formation, such as would naturally have been left in the country, if it had been occupied for some considerable period by a dominant Arian power. The early Chaldæan ideographs have often several distinct values: and when this is the case, one of the powers is almost always an Arian name of the object represented.[12] Words like *nir*, "man" (compare Greek ἄνηρ), *ar*, "river," (compare the names *Aras*, *Araxes*, *Eri*danus, Rha, Rhodanus, etc., and the Greek ῥέειν, the

Slavonic *rika*, "river," etc.), *san*, "sun." (compare German *Sonne*, Slavonic *solnce*, English "sun." Dutch *zon*, etc.), are seemingly Arian roots: and the very term "Arian" (*Ariya*, "noble") is perhaps contained in the name of a primitive Chaldæan monarch, "*Arioch*, king of Ellasar."[13] There is nothing perhaps in these scattered traces of Arian influence in in Lower Mesopotamia at a remote era that points very particularly to the Medes:[14] but at any rate they harmonize with the historical account that has reached us of early Arian power in these parts, and it is important that they should not be ignored when we are engaged in considering the degree of credence that is to be awarded to the account in question.

Again, there are traces of a vast expansion, apparently at a very early date, of the Median race, such as seems to imply that they must have been a great nation in Western Asia long previously to the time of the Iranic movements in Bactria and the adjoining regions. In the *Mat*-ieni of Zagros and Cappadocia,[15] in the Sauro-*matæ* (or Northern Medes) of the country between the Palus Mæotis and the Caspian,[16] in the *Mætæ* or Mæotæ of the tract about the mouth of the Don,[17] and in the *Mædi* of Thrace,[18] we have seemingly remnants of a great migratory host which, starting from the mountains that overhang Mesopotamia, spread itself into the regions of the north and the north-west at a time which does not admit of being definitely stated, but which is clearly anti-historic. Whether these races generally retained any tradition of their origin, we do not know; but a tribe which in the time of Herodotus dwelt still further to the west than even the Mædi—to wit, the Sigynnæ, who occupied the tract between the Adriatic and the Danube—had a very distinct belief in their Median descent, a belief confirmed by the resemblance which their national dress bore to that of the Medes.[19] Herodotus, who relates these facts concerning them, appends an expression of his astonishment at the circumstance that emigrants from Media should have proceeded to such a distance from their original home; how it had been brought about he could not conceive. "Still," he sagaciously remarks, "nothing is impossible in the long lapse of ages."[20]

A further argument in favor of the early development of Median power, and the great importance of the nation in Western Asia at a period anterior to the ninth century, is derivable from the ancient legends of the Greeks, which seem to have designated the Medes under the two eponyms of

Fig. 1

Susianian horses (Koyunjik).

Fig. 2

Babylonian Dog,
from a gem.

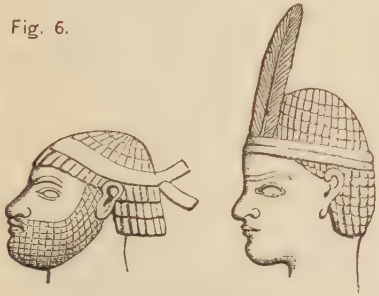
Fig. 3.

Babylonian men,
from the Assyrian sculptures.

Fig. 4.

Oxen, from Babylonian Cylinders.

Fig. 6.



Susianians (Koyunjik).

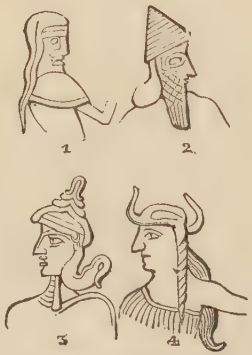
Fig. 5.

Babylonian woman,
from the same.

Fig. 3.

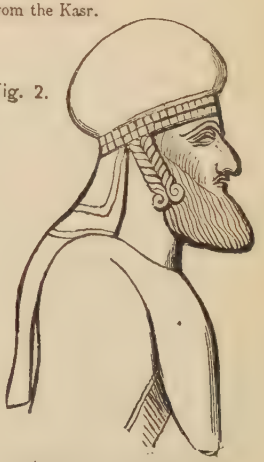
View of the Babil mound from the Kasr.

Fig. 1.



Heads of Babylonians, from the cylinders.

Fig. 2.



Head of an Elamitic Chief (Koyunjik.)

Medea and Andromeda. These legends indeed do not admit of being dated with any accuracy; but as they are of a primitive type, and probably older than Homer,[1] we cannot well assign them to an age later than B.C. 1000. Now they connect the Median name with the two countries of Syria and Colchis, countries remote from each other, and neither of them sufficiently near the true Median territory to be held from it, unless at a time when the Medes were in possession of something like an empire. And, even apart from any inferences to be drawn from the localities which the Greek Myths connect with the Medes, the very fact that the race was known to the Greeks at this early date—long before the movements which brought them into contact with the Assyrians—would seem to show that there was some remote period prior to the Assyrian domination—when the fame of the Medes was great in the part of Asia known to the Hellenes, and that they did not first attract Hellenic notice as, but for the Myths,[2] we might have imagined by the conquests of Cyaxares. Thus, on the whole it would appear that we must acknowledge two periods of Median prosperity, separated from each other by a lengthy interval, one anterior to the rise of the Cushite empire in Lower Babylonia, the other parallel with the decline and subsequently to the fall of Assyria.

Of the first period it cannot be said that we possess any distinct historical knowledge. The Median dynasty of Berosus at Babylon appears, by recent discoveries, to have represented those Susianian monarchs who bore sway there from B.C. 2286 to 2052.[3] The early Median preponderance in Western Asia, if it is a fact, must have been anterior to this, and is an event which has only left traces in ethnological names and in mythological speculations.

Our historical knowledge of the Medes as a nation commences in the latter half of the ninth century before our era. Shalmaneser II.—probably the "Shalim" of Hosea,[4]—who reigned from B.C. 859 to B.C. 824—relates that in his twenty-fourth year (B.C. 835), after having reduced to subjection the Zimri, who held the Zagros mountain range immediately to the east of Assyria, and received tribute from the Persians, he led an expedition into Media and Arazias, where he took and destroyed a number of the towns, slaying the men, and carrying off the spoil.[5] He does not mention any pitched battle; and indeed it would seem that he met with no serious resistance. The Medes whom he attacks are evidently a weak and insig-

nificant people, whom he holds in small esteem, and regards as only deserving of a hurried mention. They seem to occupy the tract now known as Ardelan, a varied region containing several lofty ridges, with broad plains lying between them.

It is remarkable that the time of this first contact of Media with Assyria—a contact taking place when Assyria was in her prime, and Media was only just emerging from a long period of weakness and obscurity—is almost exactly that which Ctesias selects as a day of the great revolution whereby the Empire of the East passed from the hands of the Shemites into those of the Arians.[26] The long residence of Ctesias among the Persians gave him a bias toward that people, which even extended to their close kin, the Medes. Bent on glorifying these two Arian races, he determined to throw back the commencement of their empire to a period long anterior to the true date; and, feeling specially anxious to cover up their early humiliation, he assigned their most glorious conquests to the very century, and almost to the very time, when they were in fact suffering reverses at the hands of the people over whom he represented them as triumphant. There was a boldness in the notion of thus inverting history which almost deserved, and to a considerable extent obtained, success. The "long chronology" of Ctesias kept its ground until recently, not indeed meeting with universal acceptance,[27] but on the whole predominating over the "short chronology" of Herodotus; and it may be doubted whether anything less than the discovery that the native records of Assyria entirely contradicted Ctesias would have sufficed to drive from the field his figment of early Median dominion.[28]

The second occasion upon which we hear of the Medes in the Assyrian annals is in the reign of Shalmaneser's son and successor, Shamas-Vul. Here again, as on the former occasion, the Assyrians were the aggressors. Shamas-Vul invaded Media and Arazias in his third year, and committed ravages similar to those of his father, wasting the country with fire and sword, but not (it would seem) reducing the Medes to subjection, or even attempting to occupy their territory. Again the attack is a mere raid, which produces no permanent impression.[29]

It is in the reign of the son and successor of Shamas-Vul that the Medes appear for the first time to have made their submission and accepted the position of Assyrian tributaries. A people which was unable to offer effectual resistance when the Assyrian levies invaded their country, and which had no

means of retaliating upon their foe or making him suffer the evils that he inflicted, was naturally tempted to save itself from molestation by the payment of an annual tribute, so purchasing quiet at the expense of honor and independence. Towards the close of the ninth century B.C. the Medes seem to have followed the example set them very much earlier by their kindred and neighbors, the Persians,[31] and to have made arrangements for an annual payment which should exempt their territory from ravage.[32] It is doubtful whether the arrangement was made by the whole people. The Median tribes at this time hung so loosely together that a policy adopted by one portion of them might be entirely repudiated by another. Most probably the tribute was paid by those tribes only which boarded on Zagros, and not by those further to the east or to the north, into whose territories the Assyrian arms has not yet penetrated.

No further change in the condition of the Medes is known to have occurred[33] until about a hundred years later, when the Assyrians ceased to be content with the semi-independent position which had been hitherto allowed them, and determined on their more complete subjugation. The great Sargon, the assailant of Egypt and conqueror of Babylon, towards the middle of his reign, invaded Media with a large army, and having rapidly overrun the country, seized several of the towns, and "annexed them to Assyria," while at the same time he also established in new situations a number of fortified posts.[33] The object was evidently to incorporate Media into the empire: and the posts were stations in which a standing army was placed, to overawe the natives and prevent them from offering an effectual resistance. With the same view deportation of the people on a large scale seems to have been practised;[34] and the gaps thus made in the population were filled up—wholly or in part—by the settlement in the Median cities of Samaritan captives.[35] On the country thus re-organized and re-arranged a tribute of a new character was laid. In lieu of the money payment hitherto exacted, the Medes were required to furnish annually to the royal stud a number of horses.[36] It is probable that Media was already famous for the remarkable breed which is so celebrated in later times;[37] and that the horses now required of her by the Assyrians were to be of the large and highly valued kind known as "Nisæan."

The date of this subjugation is about B.C. 710. And here, if we compare the Greek accounts of Median history with those

far more authentic ones which have reached us through the Assyrian contemporary records, we are struck by a repetition of the same device which came under our notice more than a century earlier—the device of covering up the nation's disgraces at a particular period by assigning to that very date certain great and striking successes. As Ctesias's revolt of the Medes under Arbaces and conquest of Nineveh synchronizes nearly with the first known ravages of Assyria within the territories of the Medes, so Herodotus's revolt of the same people and commencement of their monarchy under Deïoces falls almost exactly at the date when they entirely lose their independence.[38] As there is no reason to suspect Herodotus either of partiality toward the Medes or of any wilful departure from the truth, we must regard him as imposed upon by his informants, who were probably either Medes or Persians.[39] These mendacious patriots found little difficulty in palming their false tale upon the simple Halicarnassian, thereby at once extending the antiquity of their empire and concealing its shame behind a halo of fictitious glory.

After their subjugation by Sargon the Medes of Media Magna appear to have remained the faithful subjects of Assyria for sixty or seventy years. During this period we find no notices of the great mass of the nation in the Assyrian records: only here and there indications occur that Assyria is stretching out her arms towards the more distant and outlying tribes, especially those of Azerbijan, and compelling them to acknowledge her as mistress. Sennacherib boasts that early in his reign, about B.C. 702, he received an embassy from the remoter parts of Media—"parts of which the kings his fathers had not even heard"[40]—which brought him presents in sign of submission, and patiently accepted his yoke. His son, Esarhaddon, relates that, about his tenth year (B.C. 671) he invaded Bikni or Bikan,[41] a distant province of Media, "whereof the kings his fathers had never heard the name;" and, attacking the cities of the region one after another, forced them to acknowledge his authority.[42] The country was held by a number of independent chiefs, each bearing sway in his own city and adjacent territory. These chiefs have unmistakably Arian names, as Sitriparna or Sitraphernes, Eparna or Orphernes, Zanasana or Zanasanes, and Ramatiya or Ramates.[43] Esarhaddon says that, having entered the country with his army, he seized two of the chiefs and carried them off to Assyria, together with a vast spoil and numerous other captives. Here-

upon the remaining chiefs, alarmed for their safety, made their submission, consenting to pay an annual tribute, and admitting Assyrian officers into their territories, who watched, if they did not even control, the government.

We are now approaching the time when Media seems to have been first consolidated into a monarchy by the genius of an individual. Sober history is forced to discard the shadowy forms of kings with which Greek writers of more fancy than judgment have peopled the darkness that rests upon the "origines" of the Medes. Arbaces, Mandaces,[1] Sosarmus, Artycas, Arbianes,[2] Artæus, Deïoces—Median monarchs, according to Ctesias or Herodotus, during the space of time comprised within the years B.C. 875 and 655—have to be dismissed by the modern writer without a word, since there is reason to believe that they are mere creatures of the imagination, inventions of unscrupulous romancers, not men who once walked the earth. The list of Median kings in Ctesias, so far as it differs from the list in Herodotus, seems to be a pure forgery—an extension of the period of the monarchy by the conscious use of a system of duplication. Each king, or period, in Herodotus occurs in the list of Ctesias twice[3]—a transparent device, clumsily cloaked by the cheap expedient of a liberal invention of names.[4] Even the list of Herodotus requires curtailment. His Deïoces, whose whole history reads more like romance than truth[5]—the organizer of a powerful monarchy in Media just at the time when Sargon was building his fortified posts in the country and peopling with his Israelite captives the old "cities of the Medes"—the prince who reigned for above half a century in perfect peace with his neighbors,[6] and who, although contemporary with Sargon, Sennacherib, Esar-haddon, and Asshur-bani-pal—all kings more or less connected with Media—is never heard of in any of their annals,[7] must be relegated to the historical limbo in which repose so many "shades of mighty names;" and the Herodotean list of Median kings must at any rate, be thus far reduced. Nothing is more evident than that during the flourishing period of Assyria under the great Sargonidæ above named there was no grand Median kingdom upon the eastern flank of the empire. Such a kingdom had certainly not been formed up to B.C. 671, when Esar-haddon reduced the *more distant* Medes, finding them still under the government of a number of petty chiefs.[8] The earliest time at which we can imagine the consolidation to have taken place consistently with what we know of Assyria is about

B.C. 760, or nearly half a century later than the date given by Herodotus.

The cause of the sudden growth of Media in power about this period, and of the consolidation which followed rapidly upon that growth, is to be sought, apparently, in fresh migratory movements from the Arian head-quarters, the countries east and south-east of the Caspian. The Cyaxares who about the year B.C. 632 led an invading host of Medes against Nineveh, was so well known to the Arian tribes of the north-east that, when in the reign of Darius Hystaspis a Sagartian raised the standard of revolt in that region he stated the ground of his claim to the Sagartian throne to be descent from Cyaxares.[52] This great chief, it is probable, either alone, or in conjunction with his father (whom Herodotus calls Phraortes),[53] led a fresh emigration of Arians from the Bactrian and Sagartian country to the regions directly east of the Zagros mountain chain; and having thus vastly increased the strength of the Arian race in that quarter, set himself to consolidate a mountain kingdom capable of resisting the great monarchy of the plain. Accepted, it would seem, as chief by the former Arian inhabitants of the tract, he proceeded to reduce the scattered Scythic tribes which had hitherto held possession of the high mountain region. The Zimri, Minni, Hupuska, etc., who divided among them the country lying between Media Proper and Assyria, were attacked and subdued without any great difficulty;[54] and the conqueror, finding himself thus at the head of a considerable kingdom, and no longer in any danger of subjugation at the hands of Assyria, began to contemplate the audacious enterprise of himself attacking the Great Power which had been for so many hundred years the terror of Western Asia. The supineness of Asshur-bani-pal, the Assyrian king, who must at this time have been advanced in years, encouraged his aspirations; and about B.C. 634, when that monarch had held the throne for thirty-four years, suddenly, without warning, the Median troops debouched from the passes of Zagros, and spread themselves over the rich country at its base. Alarmed by the nearness and greatness of the peril, the Assyrian king aroused himself, and putting himself at the head of his troops, marched out to confront the invader. A great battle was fought, probably somewhere in Adiabêné, in which the Medes were completely defeated: their whole army was cut to pieces; and the father of Cyaxares was among the slain.[55]

Such was the result of the first Median expedition against

Nineveh. The assailants had miscalculated their strength. In their own mountain country, and so long as they should be called upon to act only on the defensive, they might be right in regarding themselves as a match for the Assyrians; but when they descended into the plain, and allowed their enemy the opportunity of manœuvering and of using his war chariots,[56] their inferiority was marked. Cyaxares, now, if not previously, actual king, withdrew awhile from the war, and, convinced that all the valor of his Medes would be unavailing without discipline, set himself to organize the army on a new system, taking a pattern from the enemy, who had long possessed some knowledge of tactics.[57] Hitherto, it would seem, each Median chief had brought into the field his band of followers, some mounted, some on foot, foot and horse alike armed variously as their means allowed them, some with bows and arrows, some with spears, some perhaps with slings or darts;[58] and the army had been composed of a number of such bodies, each chief keeping his band close about him. Cyaxares broke up these bands, and formed the soldiers who composed them into distinct corps, according as they were horsemen or footmen, archers, slingers, or lancers. He then, having completed his arrangements at his ease, without disturbance (so far as appears) from the Assyrians, felt himself strong enough to renew the war with a good prospect of success. Collecting as large an army as he could, both from his Arian and his Scythic subjects, he marched into Assyria, met the troops of Asshur-bani-pal in the field, defeated them signally, and forced them to take refuge behind the strong works which defended their capital. He even ventured to follow up the flying foe and commence the siege of the capital itself; but at this point he was suddenly checked in his career of victory, and forced to assume a defensive attitude, by a danger of a novel kind, which recalled him from Nineveh to his own country.

The vast tracts, chiefly consisting of grassy plains, which lie north of the Black Sea, the Caucasus, the Caspian, and the Jaxartes Syhun river, were inhabited in ancient times by a race or races known to the Asiatics as *Saka*[59] to the Greeks as Σκύθαι, "Scythians." These people appear to have been allied ethnically with many of the more southern races, as with the Parthians, the Iberians, the Alarodians, the tribes of the Zagros chain, the Susianians, and others.[60] It is just possible that they may have taken an interest in the warfare of their southern brethren, and that, when Cyaxares brought the tribes of Zagros

under his yoke, the Scyths of the north may have felt resentment or compassion. If this view seem too improbable, considering the distance, the physical obstacles, and the little communication that there was between nations in those early times, we must suppose that by a mere coincidence it happened that the subjugation of the southern Scyths by Cyaxares was followed within a few years by a great irruption of Scyths from the trans-Caucasian region. In that case we shall have to regard the invasion as a mere example of that ever-recurring law by which the poor and hardy races of Upper Asia or Europe are from time to time directed upon the effete kingdoms of the south, to shake, ravage, or overturn them, as the case may be, and prevent them from stagnating into corruption.

The character of the Scythians, and the general nature of their ravages, have been described in a former portion of this work.[61] If they entered Southern Asia, as seems probable,[62] by the Daghestan route, they would then have been able to pass on without much difficulty,[63] through Georgia into Azerbijan, and from Azerbijan into Media Magna, where the Medes had now established their southern capital. Four roads lead from Azerbijan to Hamadan or the Greater Ecbatana, one through Menjil and Kasvin, and across the Caraghan Hills; a second through Miana, Zenjan, and the province of Khamseh; a third by the valley of the Jaghetu, through Chukli and Tikan-Teppeh; and a fourth through Sefer-Khaneh and Sennah. We cannot say which of the four the invaders selected; but, as they were passing southwards, they met the army of Cyaxares, which had quitted Nineveh on the first news of their invasion, and had marched in hot haste to meet and engage them.[64] The two enemies were not ill-matched. Both were hardy and warlike, both active and full of energy; with both the cavalry was the chief arm, and the bow the weapon on which they depended mainly for victory. The Medes were no doubt the better disciplined; they had a greater variety of weapons and of soldiers; and individually they were probably more powerful men than the Scythians:[65] but these last had the advantage of numbers, of reckless daring, and of tactics that it was difficult to encounter. Moreover, the necessity of their situation in the midst of an enemy's country made it imperative on them to succeed, while their adversaries might be defeated without any very grievous consequences. The Scyths had not come into Asia to conquer so much as to ravage; defeat at their hands involved damage rather than destruction; and

the Medes must have felt that, if they lost the battle, they might still hope to maintain a stout defence behind the strong walls of some of their towns.[66] The result was such as might have been expected under these circumstances. Madyes,[67] the Scythian leader, obtained the victory, Cyaxares was defeated, and compelled to make terms with the invader. Retaining his royal name, and the actual government of his country, he admitted the suzerainty of the Scyths, and agreed to pay them an annual tribute. Whether Media suffered very seriously from their ravages, we cannot say. Neither its wealth nor its fertility was such as to tempt marauders to remain in it very long. The main complaint made against the Scythian conquerors is that, not content with the fixed tribute which they had agreed to receive, and which was paid them regularly, they levied contributions at their pleasure on the various states under their sway, which were oppressed by repeated exactions.[68] The injuries suffered from their marauding habits form only a subordinate charge against them, as though it had not been practically felt to be so great a grievance. We can well imagine that the bulk of the invaders would prefer the warmer and richer lands of Assyria, Mesopotamia, and Syria;[69] and that, pouring into them, they would leave the colder and less wealthy Media comparatively free from ravage.

The condition of Media and the adjacent countries under the Scythians must have nearly resembled that of almost the same regions under the Seljukian Turks during the early times of their domination.[70] The conquerors made no fixed settlements, but pitched their tents in any portion of the territory that they chose. Their horses and cattle were free to pasture on all lands equally. They were recognized as the dominant race, were feared and shunned, but did not greatly interfere with the bulk of their subjects. It was impossible that they should occupy at any given time more than a comparatively few spots in the wide tract which they had overrun and subjugated; and, consequently, there was not much contact between them and the peoples whom they had conquered. Such contact as there was must no doubt have been galling and oppressive. The right of free pasture in the lands of others is always irksome to those who have to endure it,[71] and, even where it is exercised with strict fairness, naturally leads to quarrels. The barbarous Scythians are not likely to have cared very much about fairness. They would press heavily upon the more fertile tracts, paying over-frequent visits to such spots, and remaining in

them till the region was exhausted. The chiefs would not be able to restrain their followers from acts of pillage; redress would be obtained with difficulty: and sometimes even the chiefs themselves may have been sharers in the injuries committed. The insolence, moreover, of a dominant race so coarse and rude as the Scyths must have been very hard to bear: and we can well understand that the various nations which had to endure the yoke must have looked anxiously for an opportunity of shaking it off, and recovering their independence.

Among these various nations, there was probably none that fretted and winced under its subjection more than the Medes. Naturally brave and high-spirited, with the love of independence inherent in mountaineers, and with a well-grounded pride in their recent great successes, they must have chafed daily and hourly at the ignominy of their position, the postponement of their hopes, and the wrongs which they continually suffered. At first it seemed necessary to endure. They had tried the chances of a battle, and had been defeated in fair fight—what reason was there to hope that, if they drew the sword again, they would be more successful? Accordingly they remained quiet; but, as time went on, and the Scythians dispersed themselves continually over a wider and a wider space, invading Assyria, Mesopotamia, Syria, Palestine,[72] and again Armenia and Cappadocia,[73] everywhere plundering and marauding, conducting sieges, fighting battles, losing men from the sword, from sickness, from excesses,[74] becoming weaker instead of stronger, as each year went by, owing to the drain of constant wars—the Medes by degrees took heart. Not trusting, however, entirely to the strength of their right arms, a trust which had failed them once, they resolved to prepare the way for an outbreak by a stratagem which they regarded as justifiable. Cyaxares and his court invited a number of the Scythian chiefs to a grand banquet, and, having induced them to drink till they were completely drunk, set upon them when they were in this helpless condition, and remorselessly slew them all.[75]

This deed was the signal for a general revolt of the nation. The Medes everywhere took arms, and, turning upon their conquerors, assailed them with a fury the more terrible because it had been for years repressed. A war followed, the duration and circumstances of which are unknown;[76] for the stories with which Ctesias enlivened this portion of his history can scarcely be accepted as having any foundation in fact. According to him, the Parthians made common cause with the

Scythians on the occasion, and the war lasted many years; numerous battles were fought with great loss to both sides; and peace was finally concluded without either party having gained the upper hand.[77] The Scyths were commanded by a queen, Zarina or Zarinæa,[78] a woman of rare beauty, and as brave as she was fair; who won the hearts, when she could not resist the swords, of her adversaries. A strangely romantic love-tale is told of this beauteous Amazon.[79] It is not at all clear what region Ctesias supposes her to govern. It has a capital city, called Roxanacé (a name entirely unknown to any other historian or geographer), and it contains many other towns of which Zarina was the foundress. Its chief architectural monument was the tomb of Zarina, a triangular pyramid, six hundred feet high, and more than a mile round the base, crowned by a colossal figure of the queen made of solid gold.[80] But—to leave these fables and return to fact—we can only say with certainty that the result of the war was the complete defeat of the Scythians, who not only lost their position of pre-eminence in Media and the adjacent countries, but were driven across the Caucasus into their own proper territory.[81] Their expulsion was so complete that they scarcely left a trace of their power or their presence in the geography or ethnography of the country. One Palestine city only, as already observed,[82] and one Armenian province [83] retained in their names a lingering memory of the great inroad which but for them would have passed away without making any more permanent mark on the region than a hurricane or a snowstorm.

How long the dominion of the Scyths endured is a matter of great uncertainty. It was no doubt the belief of Herodotus that from their defeat of Cyaxares to his treacherous murder of their chiefs was a period of exactly twenty-eight years.[84] During the whole of this space he regarded them as the undisputed lords of Asia. It was not till the twenty-eight years were over that the Medes were able, according to him, to renew their attacks on the Assyrians, and once more to besiege Nineveh. But this chronology is open to great objections. There is strong reason for believing that Nineveh fell about B.C. 625 or 624;[85] but according to the numbers of Herodotus the fall would, at the earliest, have taken place in B.C. 602.[86] There is great unlikelihood that the Scyths, if they had maintained their rule for a generation, should not have attracted some distinct notice from the Jewish writers.[87] Again, if twenty-eight out of the forty years assigned to Cyaxares are

to be regarded as years of inaction, all his great exploits, his two sieges of Nineveh, his capture of that capital, his conquest of the countries north and west of Media as far as the Halys,[87] his six years' war in Asia Minor beyond that river, and his joint expedition with Nebuchadnezzar into Syria, will have to be crowded most improbably into the space of twelve years, two or three preceding and ten or nine following the Scythian domination.[89] These and other reasons lead to the conclusion, which has the support of Eusebius,[90] that the Scythian domination was of much shorter duration than Herodotus imagined. It may have been twenty-eight years from the original attack on Media to the final expulsion of the last of the invaders from Asia—and this may have been what the informants of Herodotus really intended—but it cannot have been very long after the first attack before the Medes began to recover themselves, to shake off the fear which had possessed them and clear their territories of the invaders. If the invasion really took place in the reign of Cyaxares, and not in the lifetime of his father, where Eusebius places it,[91] we must suppose that within eight years of its occurrence Cyaxares found himself sufficiently strong, and his hands sufficiently free, to resume his old projects, and for the second time to march an army into Assyria.

The weakness of Assyria was such as to offer strong temptations to an invader. As the famous inroad of the Gauls into Italy in the year of Rome 365 paved the way for the Roman conquests in the peninsula by breaking the power of the Etruscans, the Umbrians, and various other races, so the Scythic incursion may have really benefited, rather than injured, Media, by weakening the great power to whose empire she aspired to succeed. The exhaustion of Assyria's resources at the time is remarkably illustrated by the poverty and meanness of the palace which the last king, Saracus, built for himself at Calah.[92] She lay, apparently, at the mercy of the first bold assailant, her prestige lost, her army dispirited or disorganized, her defences injured, her high spirit broken and subdued.

Cyaxares, ere proceeding to the attack, sent, it is probable, to make an alliance with the Susianians and Chaldæans.[93] Susiana was the last country which Assyria had conquered, and could remember the pleasures of independence. Chaldæa, though it had been now for above half a century an Assyrian fief, and had borne the yoke with scarcely a murmur during that period, could never wholly forget its old glories, or the long resistance which it had made before submitting to its northern

neighbor. The overtures of the Median monarch seem to have been favorably received: and it was agreed that an army from the south should march up the Tigris and threaten Assyria from that quarter, while Cyaxares led his Medes from the east, through the passes of Zagros against the capital. Rumor soon conveyed the tidings of his enemies' intentions to the Assyrian monarch, who immediately made such a disposition of the forces at his command as seemed best calculated to meet the double danger which threatened him. Selecting from among his generals the one in whom he placed most confidence—a man named Nabopolassar, most probably an Assyrian—he put him at the head of a portion of his troops, and sent him to Babylon to resist the enemy who was advancing from the sea.[94] The command of his main army he reserved for himself, intending to undertake in person the defence of his territory against the Medes. This plan of campaign was not badly conceived: but it was frustrated by an unexpected calamity. Nabopolassar, seeing his sovereign's danger, and calculating astutely that he might gain more by an opportune defection from a falling cause than he could look to receive as the reward of fidelity, resolved to turn traitor and join the enemies of Assyria. Accordingly he sent an embassy to Cyaxares, with proposals for a close alliance to be cemented by a marriage. If the Median monarch would give his daughter Amuhia (or Amyitis) to be the wife of his son Nebuchadnezzar, the forces under his command should march against Nineveh[95] and assist Cyaxares to capture it. Such a proposition arriving at such a time was not likely to meet with a refusal. Cyaxares gladly came into the terms; the marriage took place; and Nabopolassar, who had now practically assumed the sovereignty of Babylon,[96] either led or sent[97] a Babylonian contingent to the aid of the Medes.

The siege of Nineveh by the combined Medes and Babylonians was narrated by Ctesias[98] at some length. He called the Assyrian king Sardanapalus, the Median commander Arbaces, the Babylonian Belesis. Though he thus disguised the real names, and threw back the event to a period a century and a half earlier than its true date, there can be no doubt that he intended to relate the last siege of the city, that which immediately preceded its complete destruction.[99] He told how the combined army, consisting of Persians and Arabs as well as of Medes and Babylonians, and amounting to four hundred thousand men, was twice defeated with great loss by the Assyrian

monarch, and compelled to take refuge in the Zagros chain—how after losing a third battle it retreated to Babylonia—how it was there joined by strong reinforcements from Bactria, surprised the Assyrian camp by night, and drove the whole host in confusion to Nineveh—how then, after two more victories, it advanced and invested the city, which was well provisioned for a siege and strongly fortified. The siege, Ctesias said, had lasted two full years, and the third year had commenced—success seemed still far off—when an unusually rainy season so swelled the waters of the Tigris that they burst into the city, sweeping away more than two miles (?) of the wall. This vast breach it was impossible to repair; and the Assyrian monarch, seeing that further resistance was vain, brought the struggle to an end by burning himself, with his concubines and eunuchs and all his chief wealth, in his palace.

Such, in outline, was the story of Ctesias. If we except the extent of the breach which the river is declared to have made, it contains no glaring improbabilities.[1] On the contrary, it is a narrative that hangs well together, and that suits both the relations of the parties[61] and the localities. Moreover, it is confirmed in one or two points by authorities of the highest order. Still, as Ctesias is a writer who delights in fiction, and as it seems very unlikely that he would find a detailed account of the siege, such as he has given us, in the Persian archives, from whence he professed to derive his history,[62] no confidence can be placed in those points of his narrative which have not any further sanction. All that we *know* on the subject of the last siege of Nineveh is that it was conducted by a combined army of Medes and Babylonians,[63] the former commanded by Cyaxares, the latter by Nabopolassar or Nebuchadnezzar,[64] and that it was terminated, when all hope was lost, by the suicide of the Assyrian monarch. The self-immolation of Saracus is related by Abydenus,[65] who almost certainly follows Berosus in this part of his history. We may therefore accept it as a fact about which there ought to be no question. Actuated by a feeling which has more than once caused a vanquished monarch to die rather than fall into the power of his enemies, Saracus made a funeral pyre of his ancestral palace, and lighted it with his own hand.[66]

One further point in the narrative of Ctesias we may *suspect* to contain a true representation. Ctesias declared the cause of the capture to have been the destruction of the city wall by an unexpected rise of the river. Now, the prophet Nahum, in his

announcement of the fate coming on Nineveh, has a very remarkable expression, which seems most naturally to point to some destruction of a portion of the fortifications by means of water. After relating the steps that would be taken for the defence of the place, he turns to remark on their fruitlessness, and says: "The *gates of the rivers are opened*, and the palace is *dissolved;* and Huzzab is led away captive; she is led up, with her maidens, sighing as with the voice of doves, smiting upon their breasts."[167] Now, we have already seen that at the north-west angle of Nineveh there was a sluice or floodgate,[168] intended mainly to keep the water of the Khosr-su, which ordinarily filled the city moat, from flowing off too rapidly into the Tigris, but probably intended also to keep back the water of the Tigris, when that stream rose above its common level. A sudden and great rise of the Tigris would necessarily endanger this gate, and if it gave way beneath the pressure, a vast torrent of water would rush up the moat along and against the northern wall, which may have been undermined by its force, and have fallen in. The stream would then pour into the city; and it may perhaps have reached the palace platform, which being made of sun dried bricks, and probably not cased with stone *inside* the city, would begin to be "dissolved."[169] Such seems the simplest and best interpretation of this passage, which, though it is not historical, but only prophetical, must be regarded as giving an importance that it would not otherwise have possessed to the statement of Ctesias with regard to the part played by the Tigris in the destruction of Nineveh.

The fall of the city was followed by a division of the spoil between the two principal conquerors. While Cyaxares took to his own share the land of the conquered people, Assyria Proper, and the countries dependent on Assyria towards the north and north-west, Nabopolassar was allowed, not merely Babylonia, Chaldæa, and Susiana,[170] but the valley of the Euphrates and the countries to which that valley conducted. Thus two considerable empires arose at the same time out of the ashes of Assyria—the Babylonian towards the south and the south-west, stretching from Luristan to the borders of Egypt, the Median towards the north, reaching from the salt desert of Iran to Amanus and the Upper Euphrates. These empires were established by mutual consent; they were connected together, not merely by treaties, but by the ties of affinity which united their rulers; and, instead of cherishing,

as might have been expected, a mutual suspicion and distrust, they seem to have really entertained the most friendly feelings towards one another, and to have been ready on all emergencies to lend each other important assistance.[111] For once in the history of the world two powerful monarchies were seen to stand side by side, not only without collision, but without jealousy or rancor. Babylonia and Media were content to share between them the empire of Western Asia: the world was, they thought, wide enough for both: and so, though they could not but have had in some respects conflicting interests, they remained close friends and allies for more than half a century.

To the Median monarch the conquest of Assyria did not bring a time of repose. Wandering bands of Scythians were still, it is probable, committing ravages in many parts of Western Asia. The subjects of Assyria, set free by her downfall, were likely to use the occasion for the assertion of their independence, if they were not immediately shown that a power of at least equal strength had taken her place, and was prepared to claim her inheritance. War begets war; and the successes of Cyaxares up to the present point in his career did but whet his appetite for power, and stimulate him to attempt further conquests. In brief but pregnant words Herodotus informs us that Cyaxares "subdued to himself all Asia above the Halys."[112] How much he may include in this expression, it is impossible to determine: but, *primâ facie*, it would seem at least to imply that he engaged in a series of wars with the various tribes and nations which intervened between Media and Assyria on the one side and the river Halys on the other, and that he succeeded in bringing them under his dominion. The most important countries in this direction were Armenia and Cappadocia. Armenia, strong in its lofty mountains, its deep gorges, and its numerous rapid rivers—the head-streams of the Tigris, Euphrates, Kur, and Aras—had for centuries resisted with unconquered spirit the perpetual efforts of the Assyrian kings to bring it under their yoke, and had only at last consented under the latest king but one to a mere nominal allegiance.[113] Cappadocia had not even been brought to this degree of dependence. It had lain beyond the furthest limit whereto the Assyrian arms had ever reached, and had not as yet come into collision with any of the great powers of Asia. Other minor tribes in this region, neighbors of the Armenians and Cappadocians, but more remote from Media, were the

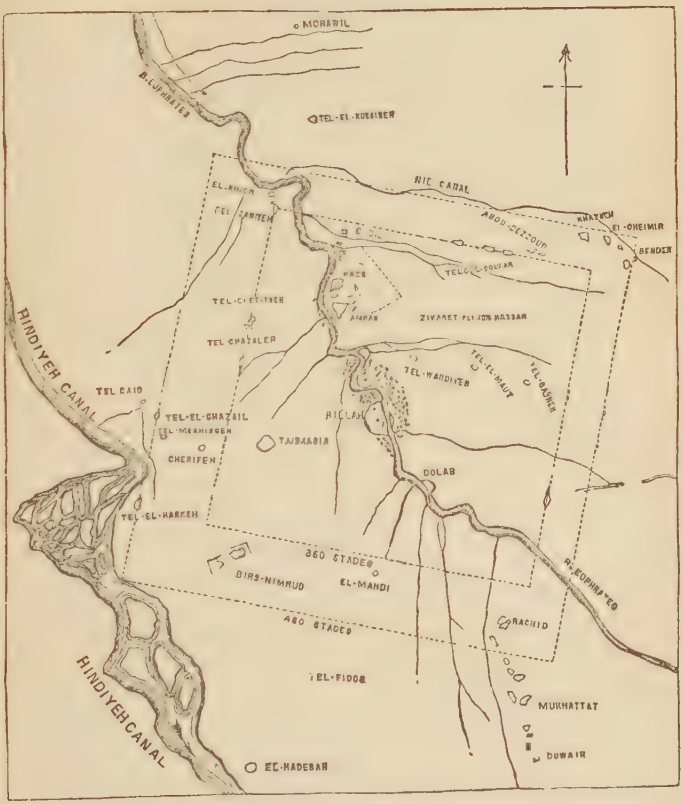
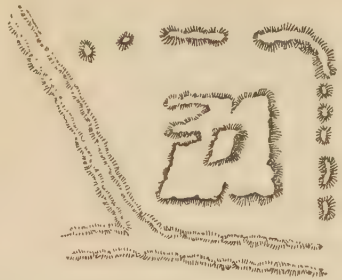


Chart of the Country round Babylon, with the limits of the ancient City, according to Oppert.

Fig. 1.



Ground-plan of the Babil Mound, with its Rampart, and traces of an old Canal.

Fig. 3.

Plan of the Mound of Amran, according to M. Oppert.

Fig 2

Ground-plan of the Kasr mound, according to M. Oppert.

A. Ruins of Palace. B. Solitary tree. C. Colossal lion.

Iberians,[114] the Colchians, the Moschi, the Tibareni, the Mares, the Macrones, and the Mosynœci.[115] Herodotus appears to have been of opinion that all these tribes, or at any rate all but the Colchians, were at this time brought under by Cyaxares,[116] who thus extended his dominions to the Caucasus and the Black Sea upon the north, and upon the east to the Kizil Irmak or Halys.

It is possible that the reduction of these countries under the Median yoke was not so much a conquest as a voluntary submission of the inhabitants to the power which alone seemed strong enough to save them from the hated domination of the Scyths. According to Strabo, Armenia and Cappadocia were the regions where the Scythic ravages had been most severely felt.[117] Cappadocia had been devastated from the mountains down to the coast; and in Armenia the most fertile portion of the whole territory had been seized and occupied by the invaders, from whom it thenceforth took the name of Sacassêné. The Armenians and Cappadocians may have found the yoke of the Scyths so intolerable as to have gladly exchanged it for dependence on a comparatively civilized people. In the neighboring territory of Asia Minor a similar cause had recently exercised a unifying influence, the necessity of combining to resist Cimmeriani immigrants having tended to establish a hegemony of Lydia over the various tribes which divided among them the tract west of the Halys.[118] It is evidently not improbable that the sufferings endured at the hands of the Scyths may have disposed the nations east of the river to adopt the same remedy, and that, so soon as Media had proved her strength, first by shaking herself free of the Scythic invaders, and then by conquering Assyria, the tribes of these parts accepted her as at once their mistress and their deliverer.[119]

Another quite distinct cause may also have helped to bring about the result above indicated. Parallel with the great Median migration from the East under Cyaxares, or Phraortes (?), his father, an Arian influx had taken place into the countries between the Caspian and the Halys. In Armenia and Cappadocia, during the flourishing period of Assyria, Turanian tribes had been predominant.[120] Between the middle and the end of the seventh century B.C. these tribes appear to have yielded the supremacy to Arians. In Armenia, the present language, which is predominantly Arian, ousted the former Turanian tongue, which appears in the cuneiform inscriptions of Van and the adjacent regions. In Cappadocia, the Moschi

and Tibareni had to yield their seats to a new race—the Katapatuka, who were not only Arian but distinctly Medo-Persic, as is plain from their proper names,[121] and from the close connection of their royal house with that of the kings of Persia.[122] This spread of the Arians into the countries lying between the Caspian and the Halys must have done much to pave the way for Median supremacy over those regions. The weaker Arian tribes of the north would have been proud of their southern brethren, to whose arms the queen of Western Asia had been forced to yield, and would have felt comparatively little repugnance in surrendering their independence into the hands of a friendly and kindred people.

Thus Cyaxares, in his triumphant progress to the north and the north-west, made war, it is probable, chiefly upon the Scyths, or upon them and the old Turanian inhabitants of the countries, while by the Arians he was welcomed as a champion come to deliver them from a grievous oppression. Ranging themselves under his standard, they probably helped him to expel from Asia the barbarian hordes which had now for many years tyrannized over them; and when the expulsion was completed, gratitude or habit made them willing to continue in the subject position which they had assumed in order to effect it. Cyaxares within less than ten years[123] from his capture of Nineveh had added to his empire the fertile and valuable tracts of Armenia and Cappadocia—never really subject to Assyria—and may perhaps have further mastered the entire region between Armenia and the Caucasus and Euxine.

The advance of their western frontier to the river Halys, which was involved in the absorption of Cappadocia into the Empire, brought the Medes into contact with a new power—a power which, like Media, had been recently increasing in greatness, and which was not likely to submit to a foreign yoke without a struggle. The LYDIAN kingdom was one of great antiquity in this part of Asia. According to traditions current among its people, it had been established more than seven hundred years[124] at the time when Cyaxares pushed his conquests to its borders. Three dynasties of native kings—Atyadæ, Heraclidæ, and Mermnadæ—had successively held the throne during that period.[125] The Lydians could repeat the names of at least thirty monarchs[126] who had borne sway in Sardis, their capital city, since its foundation. They had never been conquered. In the old times, indeed, Lydus, the son of Atys, had changed the name of the people inhabiting the

country from Mæonians to Lydians[127]—a change which to the keen sense of an historical critic implies a conquest of one race by another. But to the people themselves this tradition conveyed no such meaning: or, if it did to any, their self-complacency was not disturbed thereby, since they would hug the notion that *they* belonged not to the conquered race but to the conquerors. If a Rameses or a Sesostris had ever penetrated to their country, he had met with a brave resistance, and had left monuments indicating his respect for their courage.[128] Neither Babylon nor Assyria had ever given a king to the Lydians—on the contrary, the Lydian tradition was, that they had themselves sent forth Belus and Ninus from their own country to found dynasties and cities in Mesopotamia.[129] In a still more remote age they had seen their colonists embark upon the western waters,[130] and start for the distant Hesperia, where they had arrived in safety, and had founded the great Etruscan nation. On another occasion they had carried their arms beyond the limits of Asia Minor, and had marched southward to the very extremity of Syria, where their general, Ascalus, had founded a great city and called it after his name.[131]

Such were the Lydian traditions with respect to the more remote times. Of their real history they seem to have known but little, and that little did not extend further back than about two hundred years before Cyaxares.[132] Within this space it was certain that they had had a change of dynasty, a change preceded by a long feud between their two greatest houses,[133] which were perhaps really two branches of the royal family.[134] The Heraclidæ had grown jealous of the Mermnadæ, and had treated them with injustice; the Mermnadæ had at first sought their safety in flight, and afterwards, when they felt themselves strong enough, had returned, murdered the Heraclide monarch, and placed their chief, Gyges, upon the throne. With Gyges, who had commenced his reign about B.C. 700,[135] the prosperity of the Lydians had greatly increased, and they had begun to assume an aggressive attitude towards their neighbors. Gyges' revenue was so great that his wealth became proverbial,[136] and he could afford to spread his fame by sending from his superfluity to the distant temple of Delphi presents of such magnificence that they were the admiration of later ages.[137] The relations of his predecessors with the Greeks of the Asiatic coast had been friendly. Gyges changed this policy, and, desirous of enlarging his sea-

board, made war upon the Greek maritime towns, attacking Miletus and Smyrna without result, but succeeding in capturing the Ionic city of Colophon.[135] He also picked a quarrel with the inland town of Magnesia, and after many invasions of its territory compelled it to submission.[136] According to some, he made himself master of the whole territory of the Troad, and the Milesians had to obtain his permission before they could establish their colony of Abydos upon the Hellespont.[140] At any rate he was a rich and puissant monarch in the eyes of the Greeks of Asia and the islands, who were never tired of celebrating his wealth, his wars, and his romantic history.[141]

The shadow of calamity had, however, fallen upon Lydia towards the close of Gyges' long reign. About thirty years[142] before the Scythians from the Steppe country crossed the Caucasus and fell upon Media, the same barrier was passed by another great horde of nomads. The Cimmerians, probably a Celtic people,[143] who had dwelt hitherto in the Tauric Chersonese and the country adjoining upon it, pressed on by Scythic invaders from the East, had sought a vent in this direction. Passing the great mountain barrier either by the route of Mozdok[144]—the Pylæ Caucasiæ—or by some still more difficult track towards the Euxine, they had entered Asia Minor by way of Cappadocia and had spread terror and devastation in every direction. Gyges, alarmed at their advance, had placed himself under the protection of Assyria, and had then confidently given them battle, defeated them, and captured several of their chiefs.[145] It is uncertain whether the Assyrians gave him any material aid, but evident that he ascribed his success to his alliance with them. In his gratitude he sent an embassy to Asshur-bani-pal, king of Assyria, and courted his favor by presents and by sending him his Cimmerian captives.[146] Later in his reign, however, he changed his policy, and, breaking with Assyria, gave aid to the Egyptian rebel, Psammetichus, and helped him to establish his independence. The result followed which was to be expected. Assyria withdrew her protection; and Lydia was left to fight her own battles when the great crisis came. Carrying all before them, the fierce hordes swarmed in full force into the more western districts of Asia Minor: Paphlagonia, Phrygia, Bithynia, Lydia, and Ionia were overrun;[147] Gyges, venturing on an engagement, perished; the frightened inhabitants generally shut themselves up in their walled towns, and hoped that the tide of invasion might sweep by them quickly and roll else-

where: but the Cimmerians, impatient and undisciplined as they might be, could sometimes bring themselves to endure the weary work of a siege, and they saw in the Lydian capital a prize well worth an effort. The hordes besieged Sardis, and took it, except the citadel, which was commandingly placed and defied all their attempts. A terrible scene of carnage must have followed. How Lydia withstood the blow, and rapidly recovered from it, is hard to understand; but it seems certain that within a generation she was so far restored to vigor as to venture on resuming her attacks upon the Greeks of the coast, which had been suspended during her period of prostration. Sadyattes, the son of Ardys, and grandson of Gyges, following the example of his father and grandfather, made war upon Miletus:[147] and Alyattes, his son and successor, pursued the same policy of aggression. Besides pressing Miletus, he besieged and took Smyrna,[148] and ravaged the territory of Clazomenæ.[149]

But the great work of Alyattes' reign, and the one which seems to have had the most important consequences for Lydia, was the war which he undertook for the purpose of expelling the Cimmerians from Asia Minor. The hordes had been greatly weakened by time, by their losses in war, and probably by their excesses: they had long ceased to be formidable; but they were still strong enough to be an annoyance. Alyattes is said to have "driven them *out of Asia*,[151] by which we can scarcely understand less than that he expelled them from his own dominions and those of his neighbors—or, in other words, from the countries which had been the scenes of their chief ravages—Paphlagonia, Bithynia, Lydia, Phrygia, and Cilicia.[152] But, to do this, he must have entered into a league with his neighbors, who must have consented to act under him for the purposes of war, if they did not even admit the permanent hegemony of his country. Alyattes' success appears to have been complete, or nearly so;[153] he cleared Asia Minor of the Cimmerians; and having thus conferred a benefit on all the nations of the region and exhibited before their eyes his great military capacity, if he had not actually constructed an empire, he had at any rate done much to pave the way for one.

Such was the political position in the regions west and south of the Halys, when Cyaxares completed his absorption of Cappadocia, and looking across the river that divided the Cappadocians from the Phrygians, saw stretched before him a region

of great fertile plains, which seemed to invite an invader. A pretext for an attack was all that he wanted, and this was soon forthcoming. A body of the nomad Scyths—probably belonging to the great invasion, though Herodotus thought otherwise[154]—had taken service under Cyaxares, and for some time served him faithfully, being employed chiefly as hunters. A cause of quarrel, however, arose after a while; and the Scyths, disliking their position or distrusting the intentions of their lords towards them, quitted the Median territory, and, marching through a great part of Asia Minor, sought and found a refuge with Alyattes, the Lydian king. Cyaxares, upon learning their flight, sent an embassy to the court of Sardis to demand the surrender of the fugitives: but the Lydian monarch met the demand with a refusal, and, fully understanding the probable consequences, immediately prepared for war.

Though Lydia, compared to Media, was but a small state, yet her resources were by no means inconsiderable. In fertility she surpassed almost every other country of Asia Minor,[155] which is altogether one of the richest regions in the world. At this time she was producing large quantities of gold, which was found in great abundance in the Pactolus, and probably in the other small streams that flowed down on all sides from the Tmolus mountain-chain.[156] Her people were at once warlike and ingenious. They had invented the art of coining money,[157] and showed considerable taste in their devices.[158] [Pl. VII., Fig. 1]. They claimed also to have been the inventors of a number of games, which were common to them with the Greeks.[159] According to Herodotus, they were the first who made a livelihood by shop-keeping.[160] They were skilful in the use of musical instruments,[161] and had their own peculiar musical mode or style, which was in much favor among the Greeks, though condemned as effeminate by some of the philosophers.[162] At the same time the Lydians were not wanting in courage or manliness.[163] They fought chiefly on horseback, and were excellent riders, carrying long spears, which they managed with great skill.[164] Nicolas of Damascus tells us that even under the Heraclide kings, they could muster for service cavalry to the number of 30,000.[165] In peace they pursued with ardor the sports of the field,[166] and found in the chase of the wild boar a pastime which called forth and exercised every manly quality. Thus Lydia, even by herself, was no contemptible enemy; though it can hardly be supposed that, with-

out help from others, she would have proved a match for the Great Median Empire.

But such help as she needed was not wanting to her. The rapid strides with which Media had advanced towards the west had no doubt alarmed the numerous princes of Asia Minor, who must have felt that they had a power to deal with as full of schemes of conquest as Assyria, and more capable of carrying her designs into execution. It has been already observed that the long course of Assyrian aggressions developed gradually among the Asiatic tribes a tendency to unite in leagues for purposes of resistance.[167] The circumstances of the time called now imperatively for such a league to be formed, unless the princes of Asia Minor were content to have their several territories absorbed one after another into the growing Median Empire. These princes appear to have seen their danger. Cyaxares may perhaps have declared war specially against the Lydians, and have crossed the Halys professedly in order to chastise them; but he could only reach Lydia through the territories of other nations, which he was evidently intending to conquer on his way; and it was thus apparent that he was actuated, not by anger against a particular power, but by a general design of extending his dominions in this direction. A league seems therefore to have been determined on. We have not indeed any positive evidence of its existence till the close of the war;[168] but the probabilities are wholly in favor of its having taken effect from the first. Prudence would have dictated such a course; and it seems almost implied in the fact that a successful resistance was made to the Median attack from the very commencement. We may conclude therefore that the princes of Asia Minor, having either met in conclave or communicated by embassies, resolved to make common cause, if the Medes crossed the Halys; and that, having already acted under Lydia in the expulsion of the Cimmerians from their territories, they naturally placed her at their head when they coalesced for the second time.

Cyaxares on his part, was not content to bring against the confederates merely the power of Media. He requested and obtained a contingent from the Babylonian monarch, Nabopolassar, and may not improbably have had the assistance of other allies also. With a vast army drawn from various parts of inner Asia, he invaded the territory of the Western Powers, and began his attempt at subjugation. We have no detailed account of the war; but we learn from the general expressions

of Herodotus that the Median monarch met with a most stubborn resistance; numerous engagements were fought with varied results; sometimes the Medes succeeded in defeating their adversaries in pitched battles; but sometimes, and apparently as often, the Lydians and their allies gained decided victories over the Medes.[169] It is noted that one of the engagements took place by night, a rare occurrence in ancient (as in modern) times.[170] The war had continued six years, and the Medes had evidently made no serious impression,[171] when a remarkable circumstance brought it suddenly to a termination.

The two armies had once more met and were engaged in conflict, when, in the midst of the struggle, an ominous darkness fell upon the combatants and filled them with superstitious awe. The sun was eclipsed, either totally or at any rate considerably,[172] so that the attention of the two armies was attracted to it; and, discontinuing the fight, they stood to gaze at the phenomenon. In most parts of the East such an occurrence is even now seen with dread—the ignorant mass believe that the orb of day is actually being devoured or destroyed, and that the end of all things is at hand—even the chiefs, who may have some notion that the phenomenon is a recurrent one, do not understand its cause, and participate in the alarm of their followers. On the present occasion it is said that, amid the general fear, a desire for reconciliation seized both armies.[173] Of this spontaneous movement two chiefs, the foremost of the allies on either side, took advantage. Syennesis, king of Cilicia, the first known monarch of his name,[174] on the part of Lydia, and a prince whom Herodotus calls "Labynetus of Babylon"—probably either Nabopolassar[175] or Nebuchadnezzar—on the part of Media, came forward to propose an immediate armistice; and, when the proposal was accepted on either side, proceeded to the more difficult task of arranging terms of peace between the contending parties. Since nothing is said of the Scythians, who had been put forward as the ostensible grounds of quarrel, we may presume that Alyattes retained them. It is further clear that both he and his allies preserved undiminished both their territories and their independence. The territorial basis of the treaty was thus what in modern diplomatic language is called the *status quo;* matters, in other words, returned to the position in which they had stood before the war broke out. The only difference was that Cyaxares gained a friend and an ally where he had previously had a jealous enemy; since it was agreed that the two kings

of Media and Lydia should swear a friendship, and that, to cement the alliance, Alyattes should give his daughter Aryenis in marriage to Astyages, the son of Cyaxares. The marriage thus arranged took place soon afterwards, while the oath of friendship was sworn at once. According to the barbarous usages of the time and place, the two monarchs, having met and repeated the words of the formula, punctured their own arms, and then sealed their contract by each sucking from the wound a portion of the other's blood.[176]

By this peace the three great monarchies of the time—the Median, the Lydian, and the Babylonian—were placed on terms, not only of amity, but of intimacy and (if the word may be used) of blood relationship. The Crown Princes of the three kingdoms had become brothers.[177] From the shores of the Egean to those of the Persian Gulf, Western Asia was now ruled by interconnected dynasties, bound by treaties to respect each other's rights, and perhaps to lend each other aid in important conjunctures, and animated, it would seem, by a real spirit of mutual friendliness and attachment. After more than five centuries of almost constant war and ravage, after fifty years of fearful strife and convulsion, during which the old monarchy of Assyria had gone down and a new Empire—the Median—had risen up in its place, this part of Asia entered upon a period of repose which stands out in strong contrast with the long term of struggle. From the date of the peace between Alyattes and Cyaxares (probably B.C. 610),[178] for nearly half a century, the three kingdoms of Media, Lydia, and Babylonia remained fast friends, pursuing their separate courses without quarrel or collision, and thus giving to the nations within their borders a rest and a refreshment which they must have greatly needed and desired.

In one quarter only was this rest for a short time disturbed. During the troublous period the neighboring country of Egypt, which had recovered its freedom,[179] and witnessed a revival of its ancient prosperity, under the Psamatik family, began once more to aspire to the possession of those provinces which, being divided off from the rest of the Asiatic continent by the impassable Syrian desert, seems politically to belong to Africa almost more than to Asia. Psamatik I., the Psammetichus of Herodotus, had commenced an aggressive war in this quarter, probably about the time that Assyria was suffering from the Median and then from the Scythian inroads. He had besieged for several years the strong Philistine town of Ashdod,[180]

which commands the coast-route from Egypt to Palestine, and was at this time a most important city. Despite a resistance which would have wearied out any less pertinacious assailant, he had persevered in his attempt, and had finally succeeded in taking the place. He had thus obtained a firm footing in Syria; and his successor was able, starting from this vantage-ground, to overrun and conquer the whole territory. About the year B.C. 608, Neco, son of Psamatik I., having recently ascended the throne, invaded Palestine with a large army, met and defeated Josiah,[181] king of Judah, near Megiddo in the great plain of Esdraelon, and, pressing forward through Syria to the Euphrates, attacked and took Carchemish, the strong city which guarded the ordinary passage of the river. Idumea, Palestine, Phœnicia, and Syria submitted to him, and for three years he remained in undisturbed possession of his conquest.[182] Then, however, the Babylonians, who had received these provinces at the division of the Assyrian Empire, began to bestir themselves. Nebuchadnezzar marched to Carchemish, defeated the army of Neco, recovered all the territory to the border of Egypt, and even ravaged a portion of that country.[183] It is probable that in this expedition he was assisted by the Medes. At any rate, seven or eight years afterwards, when the intrigues of Egypt had again created disturbances in this quarter, and Jehoiakim, the Jewish king, broke into open insurrection, the Median monarch sent a contingent,[184] which accompanied Nebuchadnezzar into Judæa, and assisted him to establish his power firmly in South-Western Asia.

This is the last act that we can ascribe to the great Median king. He can scarcely have been much less than seventy years old at this time; and his life was prolonged at the utmost three years longer.[185] According to Herodotus, he died B.C. 593, after a reign of exactly forty years,[186] leaving his crown to his son Astyages, whose marriage with a Lydian princess was above related,

We have no sufficient materials from which to draw out a complete character of Cyaxares. He appears to have possessed great ambition, considerable military ability, and a rare tenacity of purpose, which gained him his chief successes. At the same time he was not wanting in good sense, and could bring himself to withdraw from an enterprise, when he had misjudged the fitting time for it, or greatly miscalculated its difficulties. He was faithful to his friends, but thought

treachery allowable towards his enemies. He knew how to conquer, but not how to organize, an empire; and, if we except his establishment of Magism, as the religion of the state, we may say that he did nothing to give permanency to the monarchy which he founded. He was a conqueror altogether after the Asiatic model, able to wield the sword, but not to guide the pen, to subdue his contemporaries to his will by his personal ascendency over them, but not to influence posterity by the establishment of a kingdom, or of institutions, on deep and stable foundations. The Empire, which owed to him its foundation, was the most shortlived of all the great Oriental monarchies, having begun and ended within the narrow space of three score and ten years[187]—the natural lifetime of an individual.

Astyages, who succeeded to the Median throne about B.C. 593,[188] had neither his father's enterprise nor his ability. Born to an empire, and bred up in all the luxury of an Oriental Court, he seems to have been quite content with the lot which fortune appeared to have assigned him, and to have coveted no grander position. Tradition says that he was remarkably handsome,[189] cautious,[190] and of an easy and generous temper.[191] Although the anecdotes related of his mode of life at Ecbatana by Herodotus, Xenophon, and Nicolas of Damascus, seem to be for the most part apocryphal, and at any rate come to us upon authority too weak to entitle them to a place in history, we may perhaps gather from the concurrent descriptions of these three writers something of the general character of the Court over which he presided. Its leading features do not seem to have differed greatly from those of the Court of Assyria. The monarch lived secluded, and could only be seen by those who asked and obtained an audience.[192] He was surrounded by guards and eunuchs, the latter of whom held most of the offices near the royal person.[193] The Court was magnificent in its apparel, in its banquets, and in the number and organization of its attendants. The courtiers wore long flowing robes of many different colors, amongst which red and purple predominated,[194] and adorned their necks with chains or collars of gold, and their wrists with bracelets of the same precious metal.[195] Even the horses on which they rode had sometimes golden bits to their bridles.[196] One officer of the Court was especially called "the King's Eye;"[197] another had the privilege of introducing strangers to him;[198] a third was his cupbearer;[199] a fourth his messenger.[200] Guards

torch-bearers, serving-men, ushers, and sweepers, were among the orders into which the lower sort of attendants were divided;[201] while among the courtiers of the highest rank was a privileged class known as "the King's table-companions" (ὁμοτράπεζοι). The chief pastime in which the Court indulged was hunting. Generally this took place in a park or "paradise" near the capital;[202] but sometimes the King and Court went out on a grand hunt into the open country, where lions, leopards, bears, wild boars, wild asses, antelopes, stags, and wild sheep abounded, and, when the beasts had been driven by beaters into a confined space, despatched them with arrows and javelins.[203]

Prominent at the Court, according to Herodotus,[204] was the priestly caste of the Magi. Held in the highest honor by both King and people, they were in constant attendance, ready to expound omens or dreams, and to give their advice on all matters of state policy. The religious ceremonial was, as a matter of course, under their charge; and it is probable that high state offices were often conferred upon them. Of all classes of the people they were the only one that could feel they had a real influence over the monarch, and might claim to share in his sovereignty.[205]

The long reign of Astyages seems to have been almost undisturbed, until just before its close, by wars or rebellions. Eusebius indeed relates that he, and not Cyaxares, carried on the great Lydian contest;[206] and Moses of Chorêné declares that he was engaged in a long struggle with Tigranes, an Armenian king.[207] But little credit can be attached to these statements, the former of which contradicts Herodotus, while the latter is wholly unsupported by any other writer. The character which Cyaxares bore among the Greeks was evidently that of an unwarlike king.[208] If he had really carried his arms into the heart of Asia Minor, and threatened the whole of that extensive region with subjugation, we can scarcely suppose that he would have been considered so peaceful a ruler. Neither is it easy to imagine that in that case no classical writer—not even Ctesias—would have taxed Herodotus with an error that must have been so flagrant. With respect to the war with Tigranes, it is just possible that it may have a basis of truth; there may have been a revolt of Armenia from Astyages under a certain Tigranes, followed by an attempt at subjugation. But the slender authority of Moses is insufficient to establish the truth of his story, which is internally improba-

ble, and quite incompatible with the narrative of Herodotus.[209]

There are some grounds for believing[210] that in one direction Astyages succeeded in slightly extending the limits of his empire. But he owed his success to prudent management, and not to courage or military skill. On the north-eastern frontier, occupying the low country now known as Talish and Ghilan, was a powerful tribe called Cadusians, probably of Arian origin,[211] which had hitherto maintained its independence. This would not be surprising, if we could accept the statement of Diodorus that they were able to bring into the field 200,000 men.[212] But this account, which probably came from Ctesias, and is wholly without corroboration from other writers, has the air of a gross exaggeration; and we may conclude from the general tenor of ancient history that the Cadusians were more indebted to the strength of their country, than to either their numbers or their prowess, for the freedom and independence which they were still enjoying. It seems that they were at this time under the government of a certain king, or chief, named Aphernes, or Onaphernes.[213] This ruler was, it appears, doubtful of his position, and, thinking it could not be long maintained, made overtures of surrender to Astyages, which were gladly entertained by that monarch. A secret treaty was concluded to the satisfaction of both parties; and the Cadusians, it would seem, passed under the Medes by this arrangement, without any hostile struggle, though armed resistance on the part of the people, who were ignorant of the intentions of their chieftain, was for some time apprehended.

The domestic relations of Astyages seem to have been unhappy. His "mariage de convenance" with the Lydian princess Aryênis, if not wholly unfruitful, at any rate brought him no son;[214] and, as he grew to old age, the absence of such a support to the throne must have been felt very sensibly, and have caused great uneasiness. The want of an heir perhaps led him to contract those other marriages of which we hear in the Armenian History of Moses—one with a certain Anusia, of whom nothing more is known; and another with an Armenian princess, the loveliest of her sex, Tigrania, sister of the Armenian king, Tigranes.[215] The blessing of male offspring was still, however, denied him; and it is even doubtful whether he was really the father of any daughter or daughters. Herodotus,[216] and Xenophon,[217] indeed give him a daughter Mandané, whom they make the mother of Cyrus; and Ctesias, who de-

nied in the most positive terms the truth of this statement,[218] gave him a daughter, Amytis, whom he made the wife, first of Spitaces the Mede,[219] and afterwards of Cyrus the Persian. But these stories, which seem intended to gratify the vanity of the Persians by tracing the descent of their kings to the great Median conqueror, while at the same time they flattered the Medes by showing them that the issue of their old monarchs was still seated on the Arian throne, are entitled to little more credit than the narrative of the Shah-nameh, which declares that Iskander (Alexander) was the son of Darab (Darius) and of a daughter of Failakus (Philip of Macedon).[220] When an oriental crown passes from one dynasty to another, however foreign and unconnected, the natives are wont to invent a relationship between the two houses,[221] which both parties are commonly quite ready to accept; as it suits the rising house to be provided with a royal ancestry, and it pleases the fallen one and its partisans to see in the occupants of the throne a branch of the ancient stock—a continuation of the legitimate family. Tales therefore of the above-mentioned kind are, historically speaking, valueless; and it must remain uncertain whether the second Median monarch had any child at all, either male or female.

Old age was now creeping upon the sonless king. If he was sixteen or seventeen years old at the time of his contract of marriage with Aryênis, he must have been nearly seventy in B.C. 558, when the revolt occurred which terminated both his reign and his kingdom. It appears that the Persian branch of the Arian race, which had made itself a home in the country lying south and south-east of Media, between the 32nd parallel and the Persian gulf, had acknowledged some subjection to the Median kings during the time of their greatness. Dwelling in their rugged mountains and high upland plains, they had however maintained the simplicity of their primitive manners, and had mixed but little with the Medes, being governed by their own native princes of the Achæmenian house, the descendants, real or supposed, of a certain Achæmenes.[222] These princes were connected by marriage with the Cappadocian kings;[223] and their house was regarded as one of the noblest in Western Asia. What the exact terms were upon which they stood with the Median monarch is uncertain. Herodotus regards Persia as absorbed into Media at this time, and the Achæmenidæ as merely a good Persian family;[224] Nicolas of Damascus makes Persia a Median satrapy, of which Atradates,

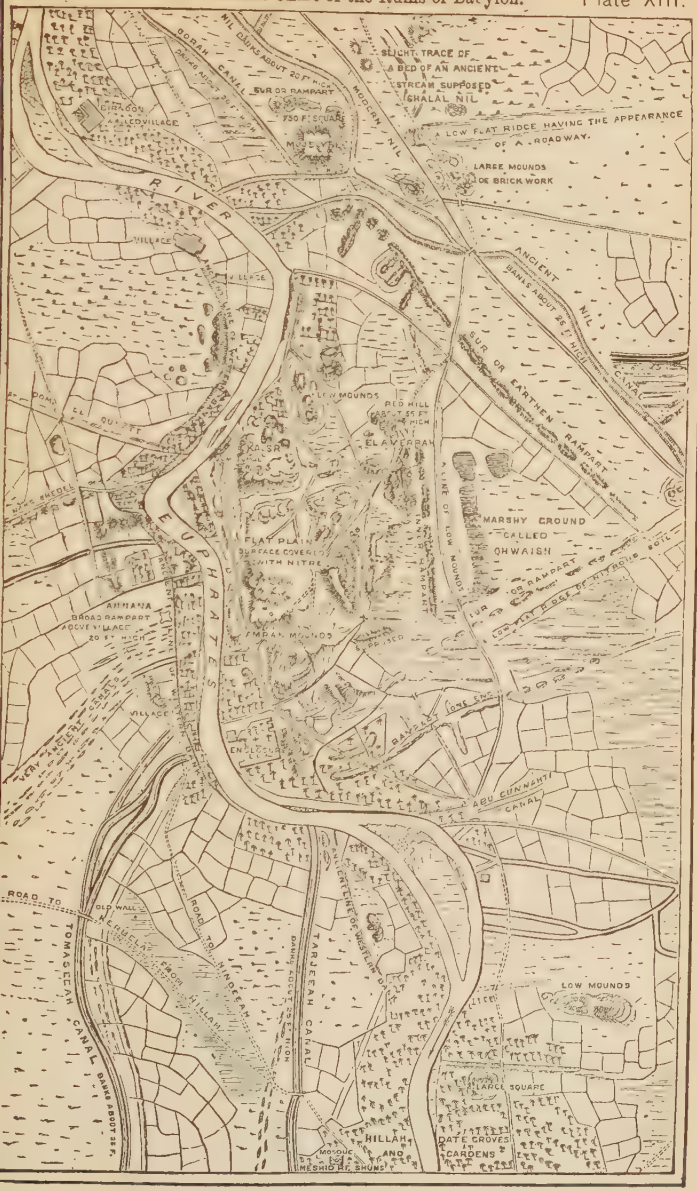
the father of Cyrus, is satrap.[225] Xenophon, on the contrary, not only gives the Achæmenidæ their royal rank,[226] but seems to consider Persia as completely independent of Media;[227] Moses of Chorénè takes the same view, regarding Cyrus as a great and powerful sovereign during the reign of Astyages.[228] The native records lean towards the view of Xenophon and Moses. Darius declares that eight of his race had been kings before himself, and makes no difference between his own royalty and theirs.[229] Cyrus calls himself in one inscription "the son of Cambyses, *the powerful king*."[230] It is certain therefore that Persia continued to be ruled by her own native monarchs during the whole of the Median period, and that Cyrus led the attack upon Astyages as hereditary Persian king. The Persian records seem rather to imply actual independence of Media: but as national vanity would prompt to dissimulation in such a case, we may perhaps accord so much weight to the statement of Herodotus, and to the general tradition on the subject,[231] as to believe that there was some kind of acknowledgment of Median supremacy on the part of the Persian kings anterior to Cyrus, though the acknowledgment may have been not much more than a formality and have imposed no onerous obligations. The residence of Cyrus at the Median Court, which is asserted in almost every narrative of his life before he became king, inexplicable if Persia was independent,[232] becomes thoroughly intelligible on the supposition that she was a great Median feudatory. In such cases the residence of the Crown Prince at the capital of the suzerain is constantly desired, or even required by the superior Power,[233] which sees in the presence of the son and heir the best security against disaffection or rebellion on the part of the father.

It appears that Cyrus, while at the Median Court, observing the unwarlike temper of the existing generation of the Medes, who had not seen any actual service, and despising the personal character of the monarch,[234] who led a luxurious life, chiefly at Ecbatana, amid eunuchs, concubines, and dancing-girls,[235] resolved on raising the standard of rebellion, and seeking at any rate to free his own country. It may be suspected that the Persian prince was not actuated solely by political motives. To earnest Zoroastrians, such as the Achæmenians are shown to have been by their inscriptions, the yoke of a Power which had so greatly corrupted, if it had not wholly laid aside, the worship of Ormazd,[236] must have been extremely distasteful; and Cyrus may have wished by his rebellion as much to vindi-

cate the honor of his religion[237] as to obtain a loftier position for his nation. If the Magi occupied really the position at the Median Court which Herodotus assigns to them—if they "were held in high honor by the king, and shared in his sovereignty"[238]—if the priest-ridden monarch was perpetually dreaming and perpetually referring his dreams to the Magian seers for exposition, and then guiding his actions by the advice they tendered him,[239] the religious zeal of the young Zoroastrian may very naturally have been aroused, and the contest into which he plunged may have been, in his eyes, not so much a national struggle as a crusade against the infidels. It will be found hereafter that religious fervor animated the Persians in most of those wars by which they spread their dominion. We may suspect, therefore, though it must be admitted we cannot prove, that a religious motive was among those which led them to make their first efforts after independence.

According to the account of the struggle[240] which is most circumstantial, and on the whole most probable, the first difficulty which the would-be rebel had to meet and vanquish was that of quitting the Court. Alleging that his father was in weak health, and required his care, he requested leave of absence for a short time; but his petition was refused on the flattering ground that the Great King was too much attached to him to lose sight of him even for a day.[241] A second application, however, made through a favorite eunuch after a certain interval of time, was more successful; Cyrus received permission to absent himself from Court for the next five months; whereupon, with a few attendants, he left Ecbatana by night, and took the road leading to his native country.

The next evening Astyages, enjoying himself as usual over his wine, surrounded by a crowd of his concubines, singing-girls, and dancing-girls, called on one of them for a song. The girl took her lyre and sang as follows:[242] "The lion had the wild boar in his power, but let him depart to his own lair; in his lair he will wax in strength, and will cause the lion a world of toil; till at length, although the weaker, he will overcome the stronger." The words of the song greatly disquieted the king, who had been already made aware that a Chaldæan prophecy designated Cyrus as future king of the Persians.[243] Repenting of the indulgence which he had granted him, Astyages forthwith summoned an officer into his presence, and ordered him to take a body of horsemen, pursue the Persian prince, and


SLIGHT TRACE OF A BED OF AN ANCIENT STREAM SUPPOSED GHALAL NIL
A LOW FLAT RIDGE HAVING THE APPEARANCE OF A ROADWAY.
LARGE MOUNDS OF BRICK WORK
RIVER EUPHRATES
ANCIENT BANKS ABOUT 25 FT HIGH
SUR OR EARTHEN RAMPART
MARSHY GROUND CALLED OHWAISH
FLAT PLAIN SURFACE COVERED WITH NITRE
LINE OF LOW MOUNDS
EMBAN MOUNDS
ABU GHUNAIH CANAL
ROAD TO TOWAGEEAH CANAL
TARJEEAH CANAL
LOW MOUNDS
DATE GROVES & GARDENS
HILLAH AND MEDJID
MUSEUM
VILLAGE

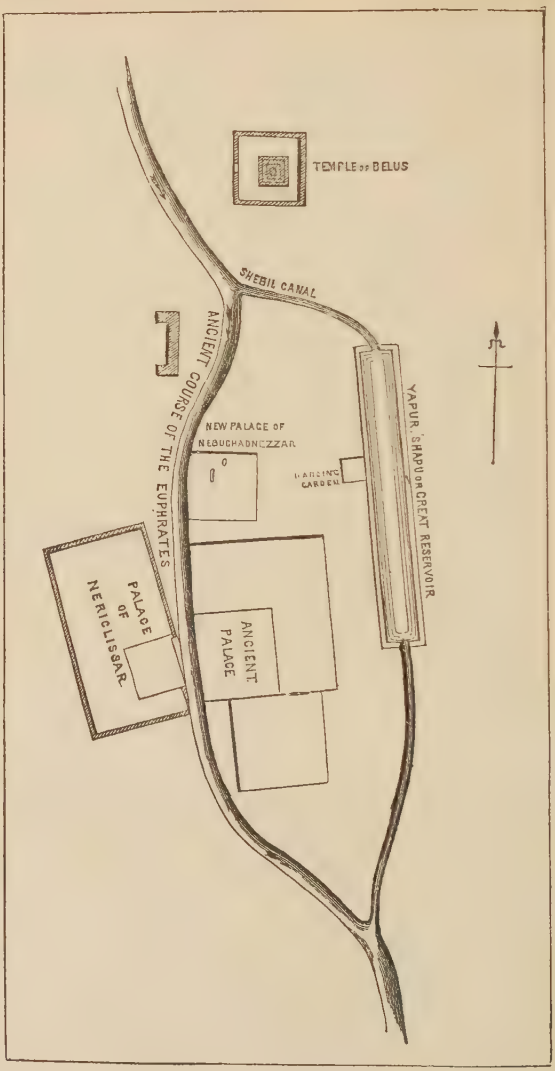


Chart of Ancient Babylon.

bring him back, either alive or dead. The officer obeyed, overtook Cyrus, and announced his errand: upon which Cyrus expressed his perfect willingness to return, but proposed, that, as it was late, they should defer their start till the next day. The Medes consenting, Cyrus feasted them, and succeeded in making them all drunk: then mounting his horse, he rode off at full speed with his attendants, and reached a Persian outpost, where he had arranged with his father that he should find a body of Persian troops. When the Medes had slept off their drunkenness, and found their prisoner gone, they pursued, and again overtaking Cyrus, who was now at the head of an armed force, engaged him. They were, however, defeated with great loss, and forced to retreat, while Cyrus, having beaten them off, made good his escape into Persia.

When Astyages heard what had happened, he was greatly vexed; and, smiting his thigh,[44] he exclaimed, "Ah! fool, thou knewest well that it boots not to heap favors on the vile; yet didst thou suffer thyself to be guiled by smooth words; and so thou hast brought upon thyself this mischief. But even now he shall not get off scot-free." And instantly he sent for his generals, and commanded them to collect his host, and proceed to reduce Persia to obedience. Three thousand chariots, two hundred thousand horse, and a million footmen (!) were soon brought together;[45] and with these Astyages in person invaded the revolted province, and engaged the army which Cyrus and his father Cambyses[46] had collected for defence. This consisted of a hundred chariots,[47] fifty thousand horsemen, and three hundred thousand light-armed foot,[48] who were drawn up in front of a fortified town near the frontier. The first day's battle was long and bloody, terminating without any decisive advantage to either side; but on the second day Astyages, making skilful use of his superior numbers, gained a great victory. Having detached one hundred thousand men with orders to make a circuit and get into the rear of the town, he renewed the attack; and when the Persians were all intent on the battle in their front, the troops detached fell on the city and took it, almost before its defenders were aware. Cambyses, who commanded in the town, was mortally wounded and fell into the enemy's hands. The army in the field, finding itself between two fires, broke and fled towards the interior, bent on defending Pasargadæ, the capital. Meanwhile Astyages, having given Cambyses honorable burial, pressed on in pursuit.

The country had now become rugged and difficult. Between Pasargadæ and the place where the two days' battle was fought lay a barrier of lofty hills, only penetrated by a single narrow pass. On either side were two smooth surfaces of rock, while the mountain towered above, lofty and precipitous. The pass was guarded by ten thousand Persians. Recognizing the impossibility of forcing it, Astyages again detached a body of troops, who marched along the foot of the range till they found a place where it could be ascended, when they climbed it and seized the heights directly over the defile. The Persians upon this had to evacuate their strong position, and to retire to a lower range of hills very near to Pasargadæ. Here again there was a two days' fight. On the first day all the efforts of the Medes to ascend the range (which, though low, was steep, and covered with thickets of wild olive[118]) were fruitless. Their enemy met them, not merely with the ordinary weapons, but with great masses of stone,[119] which they hurled down with crushing force upon their ascending columns. On the second day, however, the resistance was weaker or less effective. Astyages had placed at the foot of the range, below his attacking columns, a body of troops with orders to kill all who refused to ascend, or who, having ascended, attempted to quit the heights and return to the valley.[120] Thus compelled to advance, his men fought with desperation, and drove the Persians before them up the slopes of the hill to its very summit, where the women and children had been placed for the sake of security. There, however, the tide of success turned. The taunts and upbraidings of their mothers and wives restored the courage of the Persians; and, turning upon their foe, they made a sudden furious charge. The Medes, astonished and overborne, were driven headlong down the hill, and fell into such confusion that the Persians slew sixty thousand of them.

Still Astyages did not desist from his attack. The authority whom we have been following here to a great extent fails us, and we have only a few scattered notices[121] from which to reconstruct the closing scenes of the war. It would seem from these that Astyages still maintained the offensive, and that there was a fifth battle in the immediate neighborhood of Pasargadæ, wherein he was completely defeated by Cyrus, who routed the Median army, and pressing upon them in their flight, took their camp. All the insignia of Median royalty fell into his hands; and, amid the acclamations of his army, he assumed them, and was saluted by his soldiers "King of Media

and Persia." Meanwhile Astyages had sought for safety in flight; the greater part of his army had dispersed, and he was left with only a few friends, who still adhered to his fortunes.[253] Could he have reached Ecbatana, he might have greatly prolonged the struggle; but his enemy pressed him close; and, being compelled to an engagement, he not only suffered a complete defeat, but was made prisoner by his fortunate adversary.[254]

By this capture the Median monarchy was brought abruptly to an end. Astyages had no son to take his place and continue the struggle. Even had it been otherwise, the capture of the monarch would probably have involved his people's submission. In the East the king is so identified with his kingdom that the possession of the royal person is regarded as conveying to the possessor all regal rights. Cyrus, apparently, had no need even to besiege Ecbatana: the whole Median state, together with its dependencies, at once submitted to him, on learning what had happened. This ready submission was no doubt partly owing to the general recognition of a close connection between Media and Persia, which made the transfer of empire from the one to the other but slightly galling to the subjected power, and a matter of complete indifference to the dependent countries. Except in so far as religion was concerned, the change from one Iranic race to the other would make scarcely a perceptible difference to the subjects of either kingdom. The law of the state would still be "the law of the Medes and Persians."[255] Official employments would be open to the people of both countries.[256] Even the fame and glory of empire would attach, in the minds of men, almost as much to the one nation as the other.[257] If Media descended from her pre-eminent rank, it was to occupy a station only a little below the highest, and one which left her a very distinct superiority over all the subject races.

If it be asked how Media, in her hour of peril, came to receive no assistance from the great Powers with which she had made such close alliances—Babylonia and Lydia[258]—the answer would seem to be that Lydia was too remote from the scene of strife to lend her effective aid, while circumstances had occurred in Babylonia to detach that state from her and render it unfriendly. The great king, Nebuchadnezzar, had he been on the throne, would undoubtedly have come to the assistance of his brother-in-law, when the fortune of war changed, and it became evident that his crown was in danger. But Nebuchadnezzar had died in B.C. 561, three years before the Persian re-

volt broke out. His son, Evil-Merodach, who would probably have maintained his father's alliances, had survived him but two years: he had been murdered in B.C. 559 by a brother-in-law, Nergalshar-ezer or Neriglissar, who ascended the throne in that year and reigned till B.C. 555. This prince was consequently on the throne at the time of Astyages' revolt. As he had supplanted the house of Nebuchadnezzar, he would naturally be on bad terms with that monarch's Median connections; and we may suppose that he saw with pleasure the fall of a power to which pretenders from the Nebuchadnezzar family would have looked for support and countenance.

In conclusion, a few words may be said on the general character of the Median Empire, and the causes of its early extinction.

The Median Empire was in extent and fertility of territory equal if not superior to the Assyrian. It stretched from Rhages and the Carmanian desert on the east[259] to the river Halys upon the west, a distance of above twenty degrees, or about 1,300 miles. From north to south it was comparatively narrow, being confined between the Black Sea, the Caucasus, and the Caspian, on the one side, and the Euphrates and Persian Gulf on the other. Its greatest width, which was towards the east, was about nine, and its least, which was towards the west, was about four degrees. Its area was probably not much short of 500,000 square miles. Thus it was as large as Great Britain, France, Spain, and Portugal put together.

In fertility its various parts were very unequal. Portions of both Medias, of Persia, of Armenia, Iberia, and Cappadocia, were rich and productive; but in all these countries there was a large quantity of barren mountain, and in Media Magna and Persia there were tracts of desert. If we estimate the resources of Media from the data furnished by Herodotus in his account of the Persian revenue, and compare them with those of the Assyrian Empire, as indicated by the same document,[260] we shall find reason to conclude, that except during the few years when Egypt was a province of Assyria, the resources of the Third exceeded those of the Second Monarchy.[261]

The weakness of the Empire arose chiefly from its want of organization. Nicolas of Damascus, indeed, in the long passage from which our account of the struggle between Cyrus and Astyages has been taken, represents the Median Empire as divided, like the Persian, into a number of *satrapies*;[262] but there is no real ground for believing that any such organization

was practised in Median times, or to doubt that Darius Hystaspis was the originator of the satrapial system.[263] The Median Empire, like the Assyrian,[264] was a congeries of kingdoms, each ruled by its own native prince, as is evident from the case of Persia, where Cambyses was not satrap, but monarch.[265] Such organization as was attempted appears to have been clumsy in the extreme. The Medes (we are told) only claimed direct suzerainty over the nations immediately upon their borders; remoter tribes they placed under these, and looked to them to collect and remit the tribute of the outlying countries.[266] It is doubtful if they called on the subject nations for any contingents of troops. We never hear of their doing so. Probably, like the Assyrians,[267] they made their conquests with armies composed entirely of native soldiers, or of those combined with such forces as were sent to their aid by princes in alliance with them.

The weakness arising from this lack of organization was increased by a corruption of manners, which caused the Medes speedily to decline in energy and warlike spirit. The conquest of a great and luxurious empire by a hardy and simple race is followed, almost of necessity, by a deterioration in the character of the conquerors, who lose the warlike virtues, and too often do not replace them by the less splendid virtues of peace. This tendency, which is fixed in the nature of things, admits of being checked for a while, or rapidly developed, according to the policy and character of the monarchs who happen to occupy the throne. If the original conqueror is succeeded by two or three ambitious and energetic princes, who engage in important wars and labor to extend their dominions at the expense of their neighbors,[268] it will be some time before the degeneracy becomes marked. If, on the other hand, a prince of a quiet temper, self-indulgent, and studious of ease, come to the throne within a short time of the original conquests, the deterioration will be very rapid. In the present instance it happened that the immediate successor of the first conqueror was of a peaceful disposition, unambitious, and luxurious in his habits. During a reign which lasted at least thirty-five years he abstained almost wholly from military enterprises; and thus an entire generation of Medes grew up without seeing actual service, which alone makes the soldier. At the same time there was a general softening of manners. The luxury of the Court corrupted the nobles, who from hardy mountain chieftains, simple if not even savage in their dress

and mode of life, became polite courtiers, magnificent in their apparel, choice in their diet, and averse to all unnecessary exertion. The example of the upper classes would tell on the lower, though not perhaps to any very large extent. The ordinary Mede, no doubt, lost something of his old daring and savagery; from disuse he became inexpert in the management of arms; and he was thus no longer greatly to be dreaded as a soldier. But he was really not very much less brave, nor less capable of bearing hardships, than before;[276] and it only required a few years of training to enable him to recover himself and to be once more as good a soldier as any in Asia.

But in the affairs of nations, as in those of men, negligence often proves fatal before it can be repaired. Cyrus saw his opportunity, pressed his advantage, and established the supremacy of his nation, before the unhappy effects of Astyages' peace policy could be removed. He knew that his own Persians possessed the military spirit in its fullest vigor: he felt that he himself had all the qualities of a successful leader; he may have had faith in his cause, which he would view as the cause of Ormazd against Ahriman,[277] of pure religion against a corrupt and debasing nature-worship. His revolt was sudden, unexpected, and well-timed. He waited till Astyages was advanced in years, and so disqualified for command; till the veterans of Cyaxares were almost all in their graves; and till the Babylonian throne was occupied by a king who was not likely to afford Astyages any aid. He may not at first have aspired to do more than establish the independence of his own country. But when the opportunity of effecting a transfer of empire offered itself, he seized it promptly; rapidly repeating his blows, and allowing his enemy no time to recover and renew the struggle. The substitution of Persia for Media as the ruling power in Western Asia was due less to general causes than to the personal character of two men. Had Astyages been a prince of ordinary vigor, the military training of the Medes would have been kept up; and in that case they might easily have held their own against all comers. Had their training been kept up, or had Cyrus possessed no more than ordinary ambition and ability, either he would not have thought of revolting, or he would have revolted unsuccessfully. The fall of the Median Empire was due immediately to the genius of the Persian Prince; but its ruin was prepared, and its destruction was really caused, by the shortsightedness of the Median monarch.

APPENDIX.

NOTE A

TRANSLATION OF THE FIRST FARGARD OF THE VENDIDAD.

§ 1. AHURA-MAZDA said to the holy Zoroaster: I made, most holy Zoroaster, into a delicious spot what was previously quite uninhabitable. For had not I, most holy Zoroaster, converted into a delicious spot what was previously quite uninhabitable, all earthly life would have been poured forth after Aryanem Vaejo.

[§ 2. "Into a charming region (I converted) one which did not enjoy prosperity, the second (region) into the first: in opposition to it is great destruction of the living cultivation.]

§ 3. "As the first best of regions and countries, I, who am Ahura-mazda, created Aryanem Vaejo of good capability. Thereupon, in opposition to it, Angro-mainyus, the Death-dealing, created a mighty serpent, and snow, the work of the Devas.

§ 4. "Ten months of winter are there—two months of summer [seven months of summer are there—five months of winter; the latter are cold as to water, cold as to earth, cold as to trees; there is mid winter, the heart of winter; there all around falls deep snow; there is the direst of plagues.]

§ 5. "As the second best of regions and countries, I, who am Ahura-mazda, created Gâu, in which Sughda is situated. Thereupon, in opposition to it, Angro-mainyus, the Death-dealing, created pestilence, which is fatal to cattle, both small and great.

§ 6. "As the third best of regions and countries, I, Ahura-mazda, created the strong, the pious Mouru. Thereupon Angro-mainyus, the Death-dealing, created, in opposition to it, war and pillage.

§ 7. "As the fourth best of regions and countries, I, Ahura-

mazda, created the happy Bakhdi with the tall banner. Thereupon Angro-mainyus, the Death-dealing, created, in opposition to it, buzzing insects and poisonous plants.

§ 8. "As the fifth best of regions and countries, I, Ahura-mazda, created Nisai [between Mouru and Bakhdi]. Thereupon Angro-mainyus created, in opposition to it, the curse of unbelief.

§ 9. "As the sixth best of regions and countries, I, Ahura-mazda, created Haroyu, the dispenser of water. Thereupon Angro-mainyus, the Death-dealing, created, in opposition to it, hail and poverty.

§ 10. "As the seventh best of regions and countries, I, Ahura-mazda, created Vaekerat, in which Duzhaka is situated. Thereupon Angro-mainyus, the Death-dealing, created, in opposition to it, the fairy Khnathaiti, who attached herself to Keresaspa.

§ 11. "As the eighth best of regions and countries, I, Ahura-mazda, created Urva, abounding in rivers. Thereupon Angro-mainyus created, in opposition to it, the curse of devastation.

§ 12. "As the ninth best of regions and countries, I, Ahura-mazda, created Khnenta, in which Vehrkana is situated. Thereupon Angro-mainyus created, in opposition to it, the evil of inexpiable sins, pæderastism.

§ 13. "As the tenth best of regions and countries, I, Ahura-mazda, created the happy Haraqaiti. Thereupon Angro-mainyus, the Death-dealing, created the evil of inexpiable acts, preserving the dead.

§ 14. "As the eleventh best of regions and countries, I, Ahura-mazda, created Haetumat, the wealthy and brilliant. Thereupon Angro-mainyus, the Death-dealing, created, in opposition to it, the sin of witchcraft.

[§ 15. "And he, Angro-mainyus, is endowed with various powers and various forms. Wherever these come, on being invoked by one who is a wizard, then the most horrible witchcraft sins arise: then spring up those which tend to murder and the deadening of the heart: powerful are they by dint of concealing their hideousness and by their enchanted potions.]

§ 16. "As the twelfth best of regions and countries, I, Ahura-mazda, created Ragha with the three races. Thereupon Angro-mainyus, the Death-dealing, created, in opposition to it, the evil of unbelief in the Supreme.

§ 17. "As the thirteenth best of regions and countries, I, Ahura-mazda, created Kakra the strong, the pious. There-

upon Angro-mainyus, the Death-dealing, created the curse of inexpiable acts, cooking the dead.

§ 18. "As the fourteenth best of regions and countries, I, Ahura-mazda, created Varena with the four corners. There was born Thraetona, the slayer of the destructive serpent. Thereupon Angro-mainyus, the Death-dealing, created, in opposition to it, irregularly recurring evils (*i.e.* sicknesses) and un-Arian plagues of the country.

§ 19. "As the fifteenth best of regions and countries, I, Ahura-mazda, created Hapta Hindu, from the eastern Hindu to the western. Thereupon Angro-mainyus, the Death-dealing, created, in opposition to it, untimely evils and irregular fevers.

§ 20. "As the sixteenth best of regions and countries, I, Ahura-mazda, created those who dwell without ramparts on the sea-coast. Thereupon Angro-mainyus, the Death-dealing, created, in opposition, snow, the work of the Devas, and earthquakes which make the earth to tremble.

§ 21. "There are also other regions and countries, happy, renowned, high, prosperous, and brilliant."

[I have followed, except in a few doubtful phrases, the translation of Dr. Martin Haug, as given in Chevalier Bunsen's *Egypt*, vol. iii. pp. 488–490.]

THE FOURTH MONARCHY

BABYLONIA.

CHAPTER I.

EXTENT OF THE EMPIRE.

"Behold, a tree in the midst of the earth, and the height thereof was great: the tree grew and was strong: and the height thereof reached unto heaven, and the sight thereof to the end of all the earth."—Dan. iv. 10, 11.

THE limits of Babylonia Proper, the tract in which the dominant power of the Fourth Monarchy had its abode, being almost identical with those which have been already described under the head of Chaldæa,[1] will not require in this place to be treated afresh at any length. It needs only to remind the reader that Babylonia Proper is that *alluvial* tract towards the mouth of the two great rivers of Western Asia—the Tigris and the Euphrates which intervenes between the Arabian Desert on the one side, and the more eastern of the two streams on the other. Across the Tigris the country is no longer Babylonia, but Cissia, or Susiana—a distinct region, known to the Jews as Elam—the *habitat* of a distinct people.[2] Babylonia lies westward of the Tigris, and consists of two vast plains or flats, one situated between the two rivers, and thus forming the lower portion of the "Mesopotamia" of the Greeks and Romans—the other interposed between the Euphrates and Arabia, a long but narrow strip along the right bank of that abounding river. The former of these two districts is shaped like an ancient *amphora*, the mouth extending from Hit to Samarah, the neck lying between Baghdad and Ctesiphon on the Tigris, Mohammed and Mosaib on the Euphrates, the full expansion of the body occurring between Serut and El Khithr, and the pointed base reaching down to Kornah at the junction

of the two streams. This tract, the main region of the ancient Babylonia, is about 320 miles long, and from 20 to 100 broad. It may be estimated to contain about 18,000 square miles. The tract west of the Euphrates is smaller than this. Its length, in the time of the Babylonian Empire, may be regarded as about 350 miles,[3] its average width is from 25 to 30 miles, which would give an area of about 9000 square miles. Thus the Babylonia of Nabopolassar and Nebuchadnezzar may be regarded as covering a space of 27,000 square miles—a space a little exceeding the area of the Low countries.

The small province included within these limits—smaller than Scotland or Ireland, or Portugal or Bavaria—became suddenly, in the latter half of the seventh century B.C., the mistress of an extensive empire. On the fall of Assyria, about B. C. 625, or a little later, Media and Babylonia, as already observed,[4] divided between them her extensive territory. It is with the acquisitions thus made that we have now to deal. We have to inquire what portion exactly of the previous dominions of Assyria fell to the lot of the adventurous Nabopolassar, when Nineveh ceased to be—what was the extent of the territory which was ruled from Babylon in the latter portion of the seventh and the earlier portion of the sixth century before our era?

Now the evidence which we possess on this point is threefold. It consists of certain notices in the Hebrew Scriptures, contemporary records of first-rate historical value; of an account which strangely mingles truth with fable in one of the books of the Apocrypha; and of a passage of Berosus preserved by Josephus in his work against Apion. The Scriptural notices are contained in Jeremiah, in Daniel, and in the books of Kings and Chronicles.[5] From these sources we learn that the Babylonian Empire of this time embraced on the one hand the important country of Susiana[6] or Elymais (Elam), while on the other it ran up the Euphrates at least as high as Carchemish,[7] from thence extending westward to the Mediterranean,[8] and southward to, or rather perhaps into, Egypt.[9] The Apocryphal book of Judith enlarges these limits in every direction. That the Nabuchodonosor of that work is a reminiscence of the real Nebuchadnezzar there can be no doubt.[10] The territories of that monarch are made to extend eastward, beyond Susiana, into Persia;[11] northward to Nineveh;[12] westward to Cilicia in Asia Minor;[13] and southward to the very borders of Ethiopia.[14] Among the countries under his sway are enumerated Elam,

Persia, Assyria, Cilicia, Cœle-Syria, Syria of Damascus, Phœnicia, Galilee, Gilead, Bashan, Judæa, Philistia, Goshen, and Egypt generally.[15] The passage of Berosus is of a more partial character. It has no bearing on the general question of the extent of the Babylonian Empire, but, incidentally, it confirms the statements of our other authorities as to the influence of Babylon in the West. It tells us that Cœle-Syria, Phœnicia, and Egypt, were subject to Nabopolassar,[16] and that Nebuchadnezzar ruled, not only over these countries, but also over some portion of Arabia.[17]

From these statements, which, on the whole, are tolerably accordant, we may gather that the great Babylonian Empire of the seventh century B.C. inherited from Assyria all the southern and western portion of her territory, while the more northern and eastern provinces fell to the share of Media. Setting aside the statement of the book of Judith (wholly unconfirmed as it is by any other authority), that Persia was at this time subject to Babylon, we may regard as the most eastern portion of the Empire the district of Susiana, which corresponded nearly with the modern Khuzistan and Luristan. This acquisition advanced the eastern frontier of the Empire from the Tigris to the Bakhtiyari Mountains, a distance of 100 or 120 miles. It gave to Babylon an extensive tract of very productive territory, and an excellent strategic boundary. Khuzistan is one of the most valuable provinces of modern Persia.[18] It consists of a broad tract of fertile alluvium, intervening between the Tigris and the mountains,[19] well watered by numerous large streams, which are capable of giving an abundant irrigation to the whole of the low region. Above this is Luristan, a still more pleasant district, composed of alternate mountain, valley, and upland plain, abounding in beautiful glens, richly wooded, and full of gushing brooks and clear rapid rivers.[20] Much of this region is of course uncultivable mountain, range succeeding range, in six or eight parallel lines,[21] as the traveller advances to the north-east; and most of the ranges exhibiting vast tracts of bare and often precipitous rock, in the clefts of which snow rests till midsummer.[22] Still the lower flanks of the mountains are in general cultivable, while the valleys teem with orchards and gardens, and the plains furnish excellent pasture. The region closely resembles Zagros, of which it is a continuation. As we follow it, however, towards the south-east into the Bakhtiyari country, where it adjoins upon the ancient Persia, it deteriorates in

character: the mountains becoming barer and more arid, and the valleys narrower and less fertile.[23]

All the other acquisitions of Babylonia at this period lay towards the west. They consisted of the Euphrates valley, above Hit; of Mesopotamia Proper, or the country about the two streams of the Bilik and the Khabour; of Syria, Phœnicia, Palestine, Idumæa, Northern Arabia, and part of Egypt. The Euphrates valley from Hit to Balis is a tract of no great value, except as a line of communication. The Mesopotamian Desert presses it closely upon the one side, and the Arabian upon the other. The river flows mostly in a deep bed between cliffs of marl, gypsum, and limestone,[24] or else between bare hills producing only a few dry sapless shrubs and a coarse grass;[25] and there are but rare places where, except by great efforts,[26] the water can be raised so as to irrigate, to any extent, the land along either bank. The course of the stream is fringed by date-palms as high as Anah,[27] and above is dotted occasionally with willows, poplars, sumachs, and the untrained palm-tree. Cultivation is possible in places along both banks, and the undulating country on either side affords patches of good pasture.[28] The land improves as we ascend. Above the junction of the Khabour with the main stream, the left bank is mostly cultivable. Much of the land is flat and well-wooded,[29] while often there are broad stretches of open ground, well adapted for pasturage. A considerable population seems in ancient times to have peopled the valley, which did not depend wholly or even mainly on its own products, but was enriched by the important traffic which was always passing up and down the great river.[30]

Mesopotamia Proper,[31] or the tract extending from the head streams of the Khabour about Mardin and Nisibin to the Euphrates at Bir, and thence southwards to Karkesiyeh or Circesium, is not certainly known to have belonged to the kingdom of Babylon, but may be assigned to it on grounds of probability. Divided by a desert or by high mountains from the valley of the Tigris, and attached by means of its streams to that of the Euphrates, it almost necessarily falls to that power which holds the Euphrates under its dominion. The tract is one of considerable extent and importance. Bounded on the north by the range of hills which Strabo calls Mons Masius,[32] and on the east by the waterless upland which lies directly west of the middle Tigris, it comprises within it all the numerous affluents of the Khabour and Bilik, and is thus better sup-

plied with water than almost any country in these regions. The borders of the streams afford the richest pasture,[33] and the whole tract along the flank of Masius is fairly fertile.[34] Towards the west, the tract between the Khabour and the Bilik, which is diversified by the Abd-el-Aziz hills, is a land of fountains. "Such," says Ibn Haukal, "are not to be found elsewhere in all the land of the Moslems, for there are more than three hundred pure running brooks."[35] Irrigation is quite possible in this region; and many remains of ancient watercourses show that large tracts, at some distance from the main streams, were formerly brought under cultivation.[36]

Opposite to Mesopotamia Proper, on the west or right bank of the Euphrates, lay Northern Syria, with its important fortress of Carchemish, which was undoubtedly included in the Empire.[37] This tract is not one of much value. Towards the north it is mountainous, consisting of spurs from Amanus and Taurus, which gradually subside into the desert a little to the south of Aleppo. The bare, round-backed, chalky or rocky ranges, which here continually succeed one another, are divided only by narrow tortuous valleys, which run chiefly towards the Euphrates or the lake of Antioch.[38] This mountain tract is succeeded by a region of extensive plains, separated from each other by low hills, both equally desolate.[39] The soil is shallow and stony; the streams are few and of little volume; irrigation is thus difficult, and, except where it can be applied, the crops are scanty. The pistachio-nut grows wild in places; vines and olives are cultivated with some success; and some grain is raised by the inhabitants: but the country has few natural advantages, and it has always depended more upon its possession of a carrying trade than on its home products for prosperity.

West and south-west of this region, between it and the Mediterranean, and extending southwards from Mount Amanus to the latitude of Tyre, lies Syria Proper, the Cœle-Syria of many writers,[40] a long but comparatively narrow tract of great fertility and value. Here two parallel ranges of mountains intervene between the coast and the desert, prolific parents of a numerous progeny of small streams. First, along the line of the coast, is the range known as Libanus in the south, from lat. 33° 20′ to lat. 34° 40′, and as Bargylus[41] in the north, from lat. 34° 45′ to the Orontes at Antioch, a range of great beauty, richly wooded in places, and abounding in deep glens, foaming brooks, and precipices of a fantastic form.[42] [Pl. VII., Fig 2.]

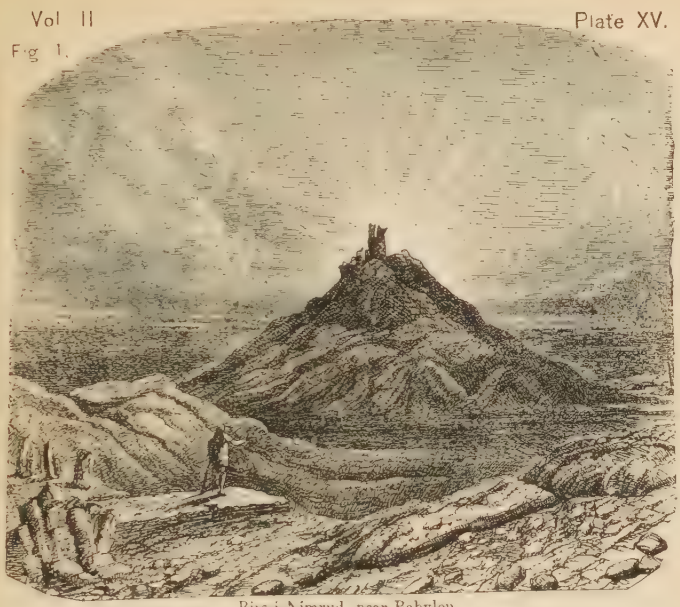
More inland is Antilibanus, culminating towards the south in Hermon, and prolonged northward in the Jebel Shashabu, Jebel Riha, and Jebel-el-Aka,[42] which extends from near Hems to the latitude of Aleppo. More striking than even Lebanon at its lower extremity, where Hermon lifts a snowy peak into the air during most of the year, it is on the whole inferior in beauty to the coast range, being bleaker, more stony, and less broken up by dells and valleys towards the south, and tamer, barer, and less well supplied with streams in its more northern portion. Between the two parallel ranges lies the "Hollow Syria," a long and broadish valley, watered by the two streams of the Orontes and the Litany[43] which, rising at no great distance from one another, flow in opposite directions, one hurrying northwards nearly to the flanks of Amanus, the other southwards to the hills of Galilee. Few places in the world are more remarkable, or have a more stirring history, than this wonderful vale. Extending for above two hundred miles from north to south, almost in a direct line[44] and without further break than an occasional screen of low hills,[45] it furnishes the most convenient line of passage between Asia and Africa, alike for the journeys of merchants and for the march of armies. Along this line passed Thothmes and Rameses, Sargon, and Sennacherib, Neco and Nebuchadnezzar, Alexander and his warlike successors, Pompey, Antony, Kaled, Godfrey of Bouillon; along this must pass every great army which, starting from the general seats of power in Western Asia, seeks conquests in Africa, or which, proceeding from Africa, aims at the acquisition of an Asiatic dominion. Few richer tracts are to be found even in these most favored portions of the earth's surface. Towards the south the famous El-Bukaa is a land of cornfields and vineyards, watered by numerous small streams which fall into the Litany.[47] Towards the north El-Ghab is even more splendidly fertile,[48] with a dark rich soil, luxuriant vegetation, and water in the utmost abundance, though at present it is cultivated only in patches immediately about the towns, from fear of the Nusairiyeh and the Bedouins.[49]

Parallel with the southern part of the Cœle-Syrian valley, to the west and to the east, were two small but important tracts, usually regarded as distinct states. Westward, between the heights of Lebanon and the sea, and extending somewhat beyond Lebanon, both up and down the coast, was Phœnicia, a narrow strip of territory lying along the shore, in length from 150 to 180 miles,[50] and in breadth varying from one mile to

twenty.[51] This tract consisted of a mere belt of sandy land along the sea, where the smiling palm groves grew from which the country derived its name,[52] of a broader upland region along the flanks of the hills, which was cultivated in grain,[53] and of the higher slopes of the mountains which furnished excellent timber.[54] Small harbors, sheltered by rocky projections, were frequent along the coast. Wood cut in Lebanon was readily floated down the many streams to the shore, and then conveyed by sea to the ports. A narrow and scanty land made commerce almost a necessity. Here accordingly the first great maritime nation of antiquity grew up. The Phœnician fleets explored the Mediterranean at a time anterior to Homer, and conveyed to the Greeks and the other inhabitants of Europe, and of Northern and Western Africa, the wares of Assyria, Babylon, and Egypt.[55] Industry and enterprise reaped their usual harvest of success; the Phœnicians grew in wealth, and their towns became great and magnificent cities. In the time when the Babylonian Empire came into being, the narrow tract of Phœnicia — smaller than many an English county — was among the most valuable countries of Asia: and its possession was far more to be coveted than that of many a land whose area was ten or twenty times as great.

Eastward of Antilibanus, in the tract between that range and the great Syrian desert, was another very important district — the district which the Jews called "Aram-Dammesek, and which now forms the chief part of the Pashalik of Damascus. From the eastern flanks of the Antilibanus two great and numerous smaller streams flow down into the Damascene plain, and, carrying with them that strange fertilizing power which water always has in hot climates, convert the arid sterility of the desert into a garden of the most wonderful beauty. The Barada and Awaaj, bursting by narrow gorges from the mountain chain, scatter themselves in numerous channels over the great flat, intermingling their waters, and spreading them out so widely that for a circle of thirty miles the deep verdure of Oriental vegetation replaces the red hue of the Hauran. Walnuts, planes, poplars, cypresses, apricots, orange-trees, citrons, pomegranates, olives, wave above; corn and grass of the most luxuriant growth, below.[56] In the midst of this great mass of foliage the city of Damascus "strikes out the white arms of its streets hither and thither"[57] among the trees, now hid among them, now overtopping them with its domes and minarets, the most beautiful of all those beautiful towns which delight

Fig 1.



Birs-i-Nimrud, near Babylon.

Fig 2.

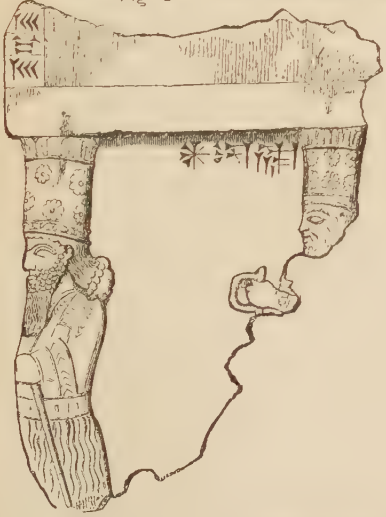
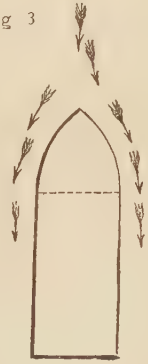
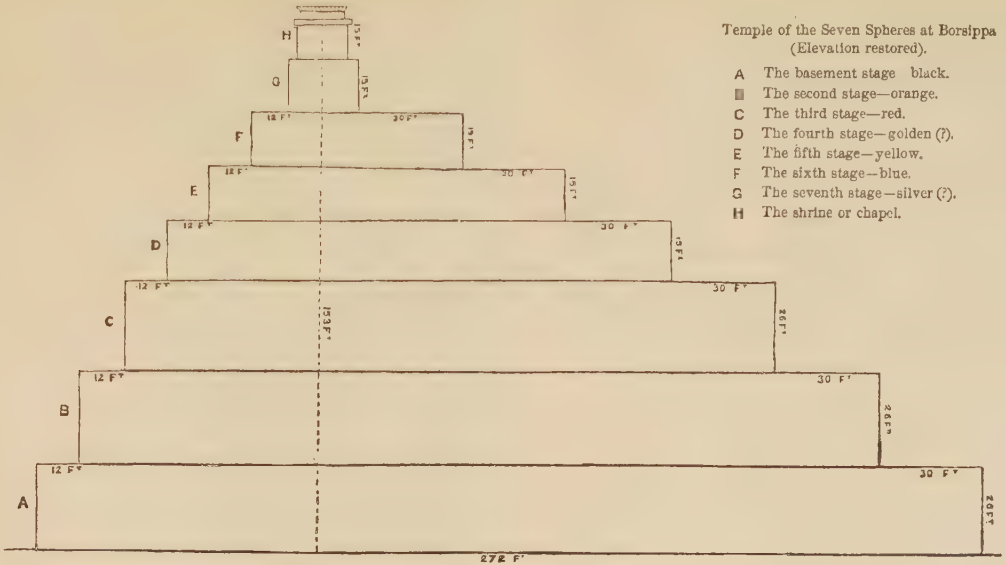


Fig 3



Part of a stone frieze, from the Kasr mound, Babylon.



Temple of the Seven Spheres at Borsippa
(Elevation restored).

A The basement stage black.
B The second stage—orange.
C The third stage—red.
D The fourth stage—golden (?).
E The fifth stage—yellow.
F The sixth stage—blue.
G The seventh stage—silver (?).
H The shrine or chapel.

the eye of the artist in the East. In the south-west towers the snow-clad peak of Hermon, visible from every part of the Damascene plain. West, north-west, and north, stretches the long Antilibanus range, bare, gray, and flat-topped,[58] except where about midway in its course, the rounded summit of Jebel Tiniyen breaks the uniformity of the line.[59] Outside the circle of deep verdure, known to the Orientals as *El Merj* ("the Meadow"), is a setting or framework of partially cultivable land, dotted with clumps of trees and groves, which extend for many miles over the plain.[60] To the Damascus country must also be reckoned those many charming valleys of Hermon and Antilibanus which open out into it, sending their waters to increase its beauty and luxuriance, the most remarkable of which are the long ravine of the Barada,[61] and the romantic Wady Halbôn,[62] whose vines produced the famous beverage which Damascus anciently supplied at once to the Tyrian merchant-princes[63] and to the voluptuous Persian kings.[64]

Below the Cœle-Syrian valley, towards the south, came PALESTINE, the Land of Lands to the Christian, the country which even the philosopher must acknowledge to have had a greater influence on the world's history than any other tract which can be brought under a single ethnic designation. Palestine—etymologically the country of the Philistines[65]—was somewhat unfortunately named. Philistine influence may possibly have extended at a very remote period over the whole of it; but in historical times that warlike people did but possess a corner of the tract, less than one tenth of the whole—the low coast region from Jamnia to Gaza. Palestine contained, besides this, the regions of Galilee, Samaria, and Judæa, to the west of the Jordan, and those of Ituræa, Trachonitis, Bashan, and Gilead, east of that river. It was a tract 140 miles long, by from 70 to 100 broad, containing probably about 11,000 square miles. It was thus about equal in size to Belgium, while it was less than Holland or Hanover, and not much larger than the principality of Wales, with which it has been compared by a recent writer.[66]

The great natural division of the country is the Jordan valley. This remarkable depression, commencing on the west flank of Hermon, runs with a course which is almost due south from lat. 33° 25′ to lat. 31° 47′, where it is merged in the Dead Sea, which may be viewed, however, as a continuation of the valley, prolonging it to lat. 31° 8′. This valley is quite unlike any other in the whole world. It is a volcanic rent in the earth's sur-

face, a broad chasm which has gaped and never closed up.[67] Naturally, it should terminate at Merom, where the level of the Mediterranean is nearly reached.[68] By some wonderful convulsion, or at any rate by some unusual freak of Nature, there is a channel (*ghôr*) opened out from Merom, which rapidly sinks below the sea level, and allows the stream to flow hastily, down and still down, from Merom to Gennesareth, and from Gennesareth to the Dead Sea, where the depression reaches its lowest point,[69] and the land, rising into a ridge, separates the Jordan valley from the upper end of the Gulf of Akabah. The Jordan valley divides Palestine, strongly and sharply, into two regions. Its depth, its inaccessibility (for it can only be entered from the highlands on either side down a few steep watercourses), and the difficulty of passing across it (for the Jordan has but few fords), give it a separating power almost equal to that of an arm of the sea.[70] In length above a hundred miles, in width varying from one mile to ten, and averaging some five miles, or perhaps six, it must have been valuable as a territory, possessing, as it does, a rich soil, abundant water, and in its lower portion a tropical climate.[71]

On either side of the deep Jordan cleft lies a highland of moderate elevation, on the right that of Galilee, Samaria, and Judæa, on the left that of Ituræa, Bashan, and Gilead. The right or western highland consists of a mass of undulating hills, with rounded tops, composed of coarse gray stone, covered, or scarcely covered, with a scanty soil, but capable of cultivation in corn, olives, and figs. This region is most productive towards the north, barer and more arid as we proceed southwards towards the desert. The lowest portion, Judæa, is unpicturesque, ill-watered, and almost treeless;[72] the central, Samaria, has numerous springs, some rich plains, many wooded heights, and in places quite a sylvan appearance;[73] the highest, Galilee, is a land of water-brooks, abounding in timber, fertile and beautiful.[74] The average height of the whole district is from 1500 to 1800 feet above the Mediterranean. Main elevations within it vary from 2500 to 4000 feet.[75] The axis of the range is towards the East, nearer, that is, to the Jordan valley than to the sea. It is a peculiarity of the highland that there is one important break in it. As the Lowland mountains of Scotland are wholly separated from the mountains of the Highlands by the low tract which stretches across from the Frith of Forth to the Frith of Clyde, or as the ranges of St. Gall and Appenzell are divided off from the rest of the Swiss

mountains by the flat which extends from the Rhine at Ragatz to the same river at Waldshut, so the western highland of Palestine is broken in twain by the famous "plain of Esdraelon," which runs from the Bay of Acre to the Jordan valley at Beth-Shean or Scythopolis.

East of the Jordan no such depression occurs, the highland there being continuous. It differs from the western highland chiefly in this—that its surface, instead of being broken up into a confused mass of rounded hills, is a table-land, consisting of a long succession of slightly undulating plains.[76] Except in Trachonitis and southern Ituræa, where the basaltic rock everywhere crops out,[77] the soil is rich and productive, the country in places wooded with fine trees, and the herbage luxuriant. On the west the mountains rise almost precipitously from the Jordan valley, above which they tower to the height of 3000 or 4000 feet. The outline is singularly uniform; and the effect is that of a huge wall guarding Palestine on this side from the wild tribes of the desert. Eastward the table-land slopes gradually, and melts into the sands of Arabia. Here water and wood are scarce; but the soil is still good, and bears the most abundant crops.[78]

Finally, Palestine contains the tract from which it derives its name, the low country of the Philistines, which the Jews called the *Shephélah*,[79] together with a continuation of this tract northwards to the roots of Carmel, the district known to the Jews as "Sharon," or "the *smooth* place."[80] From Carmel to the Wady Sheriah, where the Philistine country ended, is a distance of about one hundred miles, which gives the length of the region in question. Its breadth between the shore and the highland varies from about twenty-five miles, in the south, between Gaza and the hills of Dan, to three miles, or less, in the north, between Dor and the border of Manasseh. Its area is probably from 1400 to 1500 square miles. This low strip is along its whole course divided into two parallel belts or bands—the first a flat sandy tract along the shore, the *Ramleh* of the modern Arabs; the second, more undulating, a region of broad rolling plains rich in corn, and anciently clothed in part with thick woods,[81] watered by reedy streams,[82] which flow down from the great highland. A valuable tract is this entire plain, but greatly exposed to ravage. Even the sandy belt will grow fruit-trees; and the towns which stand on it, as Gaza, Jaffa, and Ashdod, are surrounded with huge groves of olives, sycamores, and palms,[83] or buried in orchards and gar-

dens, bright with pomegranates and orange-trees.[84] The more inland region is of marvellous fertility. Its soil is a rich loam, containing scarcely a pebble, which yields year after year prodigious crops of grain[85]—chiefly wheat—without manure or irrigation, or other cultivation than a light ploughing. Philistia was the granary of Syria,[86] and was important doubly, first, as yielding inexhaustible supplies to its conqueror, and secondly as affording the readiest passage to the great armies which contended in these regions for the mastery of the Eastern World.[87]

South of the region to which we have given the name of Palestine, intervening between it and Egypt, lay a tract to which it is difficult to assign any political designation. Herodotus regarded it as a portion of Arabia, which he carried across the valley of the Arabah and made abut on the Mediterranean.[88] To the Jews it was "the land of the south"[89]—the special country of the Amalekites. By Strabo's time it had come to be known as Idumæa,[90] or the Edomite country; and under this appellation it will perhaps be most convenient to describe it here. Idumæa, then, was the tract south and south-west of Palestine from about lat. 31° 10'. It reached westward to the borders of Egypt, which were at this time marked by the Wady-el-Arish,[91] southward to the range of Sinai and the Elanitic Gulf, and eastward to the Great Desert. Its chief town was Petra, in the mountains east of the Arabah valley. The character of the tract is for the most part a hard gravelly and rocky desert; but occasionally there is good herbage, and soil that admits of cultivation; brilliant flowers and luxuriantly growing shrubs bedeck the glens and terraces of the Petra range; and most of the tract produces plants and bushes on which camels, goats, and even sheep will browse, while occasional palm groves furnish a grateful shade and an important fruit.[92] The tract divides itself into four regions—first, a region of sand, low and flat, along the Mediterranean, the *Shephêlah* without its fertility; next, a region of hard gravelly plain intersected by limestone ridges, and raised considerably above the sea level, the Desert of El-Tih, or of "the Wanderings;" then the long, broad, low valley of the Arabah, which rises gradually from the Dead Sea to an imperceptible watershed,[93] and then falls gently to the head of the Gulf of Akabah, a region of hard sand thickly dotted with bushes, and intersected by numerous torrent courses; finally a long narrow region of mountains and hills parallel with the Arabah,[94] con-

stituting Idumæa Proper, or the original Edom, which, though rocky and rugged, is full of fertile glens, ornamented with trees and shrubs, and in places cultivated in terraces.[95] In shape the tract was a rude square or oblong, with its sides nearly facing the four cardinal points, its length from the Mediterranean to the Gulf of Akabah being 130 miles, and its width from the Wady-el-Arish to the eastern side of the Petra mountains 120 miles. The area is thus about 1560 square miles.

Beyond the Wady-el-Arish was Egypt, stretching from the Mediterranean southwards a distance of nearly eight degrees, or more than 550 miles. As this country was not, however, so much a part of the Babylonian Empire as a dependency lying upon its borders, it will not be necessary to describe it in this place.

One region, however, remains still unnoticed which seems to have been an integral portion of the Empire. This is Palmyrêné, or the Syrian Desert—the tract lying between Cœle-Syria on the one hand and the valley of the middle Euphrates on the other, and abutting towards the south on the great Arabian Desert, to which it is sometimes regarded as belonging.[96] It is for the most part a hard sandy or gravelly plain, intersected by low rocky ranges, and either barren or productive only of some sapless shrubs and of a low thin grass. Occasionally, however, there are oases, where the fertility is considerable. Such an oasis is the region about Palmyra itself, which derived its name from the palm groves in the vicinity;[97] here the soil is good, and a large tract is even now under cultivation. Another oasis is that of Karyateïn, which is watered by an abundant stream, and is well wooded, and productive of grain.[98] The Palmyrêné, however, as a whole possesses but little value, except as a passage country. Though large armies can never have traversed the desert even in this upper region, where it is comparatively narrow, trade in ancient times found it expedient to avoid the long *détour* by the Orontes Valley, Aleppo, and Bambuk, and to proceed directly from Damascus by way of Palymra to Thapsaeus on the Euphrates. Small bands of light troops also occasionally took the same course; and the great saving of distance thus effected made it important to the Babylonians to possess an authority[99] over the region in question.

Such, then, in its geographical extent, was the great Babylonian Empire. Reaching from Luristan on the one side to the borders of Egypt on the other, its direct length from east

to west was nearly sixteen degrees, or about 980 miles, while its length for all practical purposes, owing to the interposition of the desert between its western and its eastern provinces, was perhaps not less than 1400 miles. Its width was very disproportionate to this. Between Zagros and the Arabian Desert, where the width was the greatest, it amounted to about 280 miles; between Amanus and Palmyra it was 250; between the Mons Masius and the middle Euphrates it may have been 200; in Syria and Idumæa it cannot have been more than 100 or 160. The entire area of the Empire was probably from 240,000 to 250,000 square miles—which is about the present size of Austria. Its shape may be compared roughly to a gnomon, with one longer and one shorter arm.

It added to the inconvenience of this long straggling form, which made a rapid concentration of the forces of the Empire impossible, that the capital, instead of occupying a central position, was placed somewhat low in the longer of the two arms of the gnomon, and was thus nearly 1000 miles removed from the frontier province of the west. Though in direct distance, as the crow flies, Babylon is not more than 450 miles from Damascus, or more than 520 from Jerusalem, yet the necessary *détour* by Aleppo is so great that it lengthens the distance, in the one case by 250, in the other by 380 miles. From so remote a centre it was impossible for the life-blood to circulate very vigorously to the extremities.

The Empire was on the whole fertile and well-watered. The two great streams of Western Asia—the Tigris and the Euphrates—which afforded an abundant supply of the invaluable fluid to the most important of the provinces, those of the south-east, have already been described at length;[100] as have also the chief streams of the Mesopotamian district, the Belik and the Khabour.[101] But as yet in this work no account has been given of a number of important rivers in the extreme east and the extreme west, on which the fertility, and so the prosperity, of the Empire very greatly depended. It is proposed in the present place to supply this deficiency.

The principle rivers of the extreme east were the Choaspes, or modern Kerkhah, the Pasitigris or Eulæus, now the Kuran, the Hedyphon or Hedypnus, now the Jerahi, and the Oroatis, at present the Tab or Hindyan. Of these, the Oroatis, which is the most eastern, belongs perhaps more to Persia than to Babylon; but its lower course probably fell within the Susianian territory. It rises in the mountains between Shiraz and

Persepolis,[102] about lat. 29° 45′, long. 52° 35′ E.; and flows towards the Persian Gulf with a course which is north-west to Failiyun, then nearly W. to Zohitun, after which it becomes somewhat south of west to Hindyan, and then S.W. by S. to the sea. The length of the stream, without counting lesser windings, is 200 miles: its width at Hindyan, sixteen miles above its mouth, is eighty yards,[103] and to this distance it is navigable for boats of twenty tons burthen.[104] At first its waters are pure and sweet, but they gradually become corrupted, and at Hindyan they are so brackish as not to be fit for use.[105]

The Jerahi rises from several sources in the Kuh Margun,[106] a lofty and precipitous range, forming the continuation of the chain of Zagros, about long. 50° to 51°, and lat. 31° 30′. These head-streams have a general direction from N.E. to S.W. The principal of them is the Kurdistan river, which rises about fifty miles to the north east of Babahan and flowing south-west to that point, then bends round to the north, and runs north-west nearly to the fort of Mungasht, where it resumes its original direction, and receiving from the north-east the Abi Zard, or "Yellow River"—a delightful stream of the coldest and purest water possible[107]—becomes known as the Jerahi,[108] and carries a large body of water as far as Fellahiyeh or Dorak. Near Dorak the waters of the Jerahi are drawn off into a number of canals, and the river is thus greatly diminished;[109] but still the stream struggles on, and proceeds by a southerly course towards the Persian Gulf, which it enters near Gadi in long. 48° 52′. The course of the Jerahi, exclusively of the smaller windings, is about equal in length to that of the Tab or Hindyan. In volume, before its dispersion, it is considerably greater than that river. It has a breadth of about a hundred yards[110] before it reaches Babahan, and is navigable for boats almost from its junction with the Abi Zard. Its size is, however, greatly reduced in its lower course, and travellers who skirt the coast regard the Tab as the more important river.[111]

The Kuran is a river very much exceeding in size both the Tab and the Jerahi.[112] It is formed by the junction of two large streams—the Dizful river and the Kuran proper, or river of Shuster. Of these the Shuster stream is the more eastern. It rises in the Zarduh Kuh, or "Yellow Mountain,"[113] in lat. 32°, long. 51°, almost opposite to the river Isfahan. From its source it is a large stream. Its direction is at first to the south-east, but after a while it sweeps round and runs considerably

north of west; and this course it pursues through the mountains, receiving tributaries of importance from both sides, till, near Akhili, it turns round to the south, and, cutting at a right angle the outermost of the Zagros ranges, flows down with a course S.W. by S. nearly to Shuster, where, in consequence of a bund or dam[114] thrown across it, it bifurcates, and passes in two streams to the right and to the left of the town. The right branch, which carried commonly about two thirds of the water,[115] proceeds by a tortuous course of nearly forty miles, in a direction a very little west of south, to its junction with the Dizful stream, which takes place about two miles north of the little town of Bandi-kir. Just below that town the left branch, called at present Abi-Gargar,[116] which has made a considerable bend to the east, rejoins the main stream, which thenceforth flows in a single channel. The course of the Kuran from its source to its junction with the Dizful branch, including main windings, is about 210 miles. The Dizful branch rises from two sources, nearly a degree apart,[117] in lat. 33° 50'. These streams run respectively south-east and south-west, a distance of forty miles, to their junction near Bahrein,[118] whence their united waters flow in a tortuous course, with a general direction of south, for above a hundred miles to the outer barrier of Zagros, which they penetrate near the Diz fort, through a succession of chasms and gorges.[119] The course of the stream from this point is south-west through the hills and across the plain, past Dizful, to the place where it receives the Belad-rud from the west, when it changes and becomes first south and then south-east to its junction with the Shuster river near Bandi-kir.[120] The entire course of the Dizful stream to this point is probably not less than 280 miles.[121] Below Bandi-kir, the Kuran, now become "a noble river, exceeding in size the Tigris and Euphrates,"[122] meanders across the plain in a general direction of S.S.W., past the towns of Uris, Ahwaz, and Ismaili, to Sablah, when it turns more to the west, and passing Mohammerah, empties itself into the Shat-el-Arab,[123] about 22 miles below Busra. The entire course of the Kuran from its most remote source, exclusive of the lesser windings, is not less than 430 miles.

The Kerkhah (anciently the Choaspes[124]) is formed by three streams of almost equal magnitude, all of them rising in the most eastern portion of the Zagros range. The central of the three flows from the southern flank of Mount Elwand (Orontes), the mountain behind Hamadan (Ecbatana), and receives on

the right, after a course of about thirty miles, the northern or Singur branch, and ten miles further on the southern or Guran branch, which is known by the name of the Gamas-ab. The river thus formed flows westward to Behistun, after which it bends to the south-west, and then to the south, receiving tributaries on both hands, and winding among the mountains as far as the ruined city of Rudbar. Here it bursts through the outer barrier of the great range, and, receiving the large stream of the Kirrind from the north-west, flows S.S.E. and S.E. along the foot of the range, between it and the Kebir Kuh, till it meets the stream of the Abi-Zal, when it finally leaves the hills and flows through the plain, pursuing a S.S.E. direction to the ruins of Susa, which lie upon its left bank, and then turning to the S.S.W., and running in that direction to the Shat-el-Arab, which it reaches about five miles below Kurnur. Its length is estimated at above 500 miles; its width, at some distance above its junction with the Abi-Zal, is from eighty to a hundred yards.[125]

The course of the Kerkhah was not always exactly such as is here described. Anciently it appears to have bifurcated at Pai Pul, 18 or 20 miles N.W. of Susa, and to have sent a branch east of the Susa ruins, which absorbed the Shapur, a small tributary of the Dizful stream, and ran into the Kuran a little above Ahwaz.[126] The remains of the old channel are still to be traced;[127] and its existence explains the confusion, observable in ancient times, between the Kerkhah and the Kuran, to each of which streams, in certain parts of their course, we find the name Eulæus applied.[128] The proper Eulæus (Ulai) was the eastern branch of the Kerkhah (Choaspes) from Pai Pul to Ahwaz; but the name was naturally extended both northwards to the Choaspes above Pai Pul[129] and southwards to the Kuran below Ahwaz.[130] The latter stream was, however, known also, both in its upper and its lower course, as the Pasitigris.

On the opposite side of the Empire the rivers were less considerable. Among the most important may be mentioned the Sajur, a tributary of the Euphrates, the Koweik, or river of Aleppo, the Orontes, or river of Antioch, the Litany, or river of Tyre, the Barada, or river of Damascus, and the Jordan, with its tributaries, the Jabbok and the Hieromax.

The Sajur rises from two principle sources on the southern flanks of Amanus, which, after running a short distance, unite a little to the east of Ain-Tab.[131] The course of the stream from the point of junction is south-east. In this direction it

flows in a somewhat tortuous channel between two ranges of hills for a distance of about 30 miles to Tel Khalid, a remarkable conical hill crowned by ruins. Here it receives an important affluent—the Keraskat—from the west, and becomes suitable for boat navigation. At the same time its course changes, and runs eastward for about 12 miles; after which the stream again inclines to the south, and keeping an E.S.E. direction for 14 or 15 miles, enters the Euphrates by five mouths in about lat. 36° 37′. The course of the river measures probably about 65 miles.

The Koweik, or river of Aleppo (the Chalus of Xenophon [132]), rises in the hills south of Ain-Tab. Springing from two sources, one of which is known as the Baloklu-Su, or "Fish River," [133] it flows at first eastward, as if intending to join the Euphrates. On reaching the plain of Aleppo, however, near Sayyadok-Koï, it receives a tributary from the north, which gives its course a southern inclination; and from this point it proceeds in a south and south-westerly direction, winding along the shallow bed which it has scooped in the Aleppo plain, a distance of 60 miles, past Aleppo to Kinnisrin, near the foot of the Jebel-el-Sis. [134] Here its further progress southward is barred, and it is forced to turn to the east along the foot of the mountain, which it skirts for eight or ten miles, finally entering the small lake or marsh of El Melak, in which it loses itself after a source of about 80 miles.

The Orontes, the great river of Assyria, rises in the Buka'a—the deep valley known to the ancients as Cœle-Syria Proper—springing from a number of small brooks, [135] which flow down from the Antilibanus range between lat. 34° 5 and lat. 34° 12′. Its most remote source is near Yunin, about seven miles N.N.E. of Baalbek. The stream flows at first N.W. by W. into the plain, on reaching which it turns at a right-angle to the north-east, and skirts the foot of the Antilibanus range as far as Lebweh, where, being joined by a larger stream from the south-east, [136] it takes its direction and flows N.W. and then N. across the plain to the foot of Lebanon. Here it receives the waters of a much more abundant fountain, which wells out from the roots of that range, [137] and is regarded by the Orientals as the true "head of the stream." [138] Thus increased the river flows northwards for a short space, after which it turns to the north-east, and runs in a deep cleft [139] along the base of Lebanon, pursuing this direction for 15 or 16 miles to a point beyond Ribleh, nearly in lat. 34° 30′. Here the course of the river again

changes, becoming slightly west of north to the Lake of Hems (Buheiret-Hems), which is nine or ten miles below Ribleh. Issuing from the Lake of Hems about lat. 34° 43', the Orontes once more flows to the north east, and in five or six miles reaches Hems itself, which it leaves on its right bank. It then flows for twenty miles nearly due north, after which, on approaching Hama (Hamath), it makes a slight bend to the east round the foot of Jebel Erbayn,[144] and then entering the rich pasture country of El-Ghab, runs north-west and north to the "Iron Bridge" (Jisr Hadid), in lat. 36° 11'. Its course thus far has been nearly parallel with the coast of the Mediterranean, and has lain between two ranges of mountains, the more western of which has shut it out from the sea. At Jisr Hadid the western mountains come to an end, and the Orontes, sweeping round their base, runs first west and then south-west down the broad valley of Antioch, in the midst of the most lovely scenery,[145] to the coast, which it reaches a little above the 36th parallel, in long. 35° 55'. The course of the Orontes, exclusive of lesser windings, is about 200 miles. It is a considerable stream almost from its source.[146] At Hamah, more than a hundred miles from its mouth, it is crossed by a bridge of thirteen arches.[147] At Antioch it is fifty yards in width,[148] and runs rapidly. The natives now call it the Nahr el-Asy, or "Rebel River," either from its running in an opposite direction to all other streams of the country,[149] or (more probably) from its violence and impetuosity.[150]

There is one tributary of the Orontes which deserves a cursory mention. This is the Kara Su, or "Black River," which reaches it from the Aga Denghis, or Bahr-el-Abiyad, about five miles below Jisr Hadid and four or five above Antioch. This stream brings into the Orontes the greater part of the water that is drained from the southern side of Amanus. It is formed by a union of two rivers, the upper Kara Su and the Afrin, which flow into the Aga Denghis (White Sea), or Lake of Antioch, from the north-west, the one entering it at its northern, the other at its eastern extremity. Both are considerable streams; and the Kara Su on issuing from the lake carries a greater body of water than the Orontes itself,[151] and thus adds largely to the volume of that stream in its lower course from the point of junction to the Mediterranean.

The Litany, or river of Tyre, rises from a source at no great distance from the head springs of the Orontes. The almost imperceptible watershed of the Buka'a runs between Yunin

and Baalbek, a few miles north of the latter;[148] and when it is once passed, the drainage of the water is southwards. The highest permanent fountain of the southern stream seems to be a small lake near Tel Hushben,[149] which lies about six miles to the south-west of the Baalbek ruins. Springing from this source the Litany flows along the lower Buka'a in a direction which is generally a little west of south, receiving on either side a number of streamlets and rills from Libanus and Antilibanus, and giving out in its turn numerous canals for irrigation, which fertilize the thirsty soil. As the stream descends with numerous windings, but still with the same general course, the valley of the Buka'a contracts more and more, till finally it terminates in a gorge, down which thunders the Litany—a gorge a thousand feet or more in depth, and so narrow that in one place it is actually bridged over by masses of rock which have fallen from the jagged sides.[150] Narrower and deeper grows the gorge, and the river chafes and foams through it,[151] gradually working itself round to the west, and so clearing a way through the very roots of Lebanon to the low coast tract, across which it meanders slowly,[152] as if wearied with its long struggle, before finally emptying itself into the sea. The course of the Litany may be roughly estimated at from 70 to 75 miles.

The Barada, or river of Damascus, rises in the plain of Zebdany—the very centre of the Antilibanus. It has its real permanent source in a small nameless lake[153] in the lower part of the plain, about lat. 33° 41′; but in winter it is fed by streams flowing from the valley above, especially by one which rises in lat. 33° 46′, near the small hamlet of Ain Hawar.[154] The course of the Barada from the small lake is at first towards the east; but it soon sweeps round and flows southward for about four miles to the lower end of the plain, after which it again turns to the east and enters a romantic glen, running between high cliffs,[155] and cutting through the main ridge of the Antilibanus between the Zebdany plain and Suk, the Abila of the ancients.[156] From Suk the river flows through a narrow but lovely valley, in a course which has a general direction of south-east, past Ain Fijeh (where its waters are greatly increased),[157] through a series of gorges and glens, to the point where the roots of the Antilibanus sink down upon the plain, when it bursts forth from the mountains and scatters.[158] Channels are drawn from it on either side, and its waters are spread far and wide over the Merj, which it covers with fine trees and splendid herbage.

One branch passes right through the city, cutting it in half. Others irrigate the gardens and orchards both to the north and to the south. Beyond the town the tendency to division still continues. The river, weakened greatly through the irrigation, separates into three main channels, which flow with divergent courses towards the east, and terminate in two large swamps or lakes, the Bahret-esh-Shurkiyeh and the Bahret-el-Kibliyeh,[98] at a distance of sixteen or seventeen miles from the city. The Barada is a short stream, its entire course from the plain of Zebdany not much exceeding forty miles.[99]

The Jordan is commonly regarded as flowing from two sources in the Huleh or plain immediately above Lake Merom, one at Banias (the ancient Paneas), the other at Tel-el-Kady, which marks the site of Laish or Dan.[100] But the true highest present source of the river is the spring near Hasbeiya, called Nebaes-Hasbany, or Ras-en-Neba.[101] This spring rises in the torrent-course known as the Wady-el-Teim, which descends from the north-western flank of Hermon, and runs nearly parallel with the great gorge of the Litany, having a direction from north-east to south-west. The water wells forth in abundance from the foot of a volcanic bluff, called Ras-el-Anjah, lying directly north of Hasbeiya, and is immediately used to turn a mill. The course of the streamlet is very slightly west of south down the Wady to the Huleh plain, where it is joined, and multiplied sevenfold,[102] by the streams from Banais and Tel-el-Kady, becoming at once worthy of the name of river. Hence it runs almost due south to the Merom lake, which it enters in lat. 33° 7′, through a reedy and marshy tract which it is difficult to penetrate.[103] Issuing from Merom in lat. 33° 3′, the Jordan flows at first sluggishly[104] southward to "Jacob's Bridge," passing which, it proceeds in the same direction, with a much swifter current down the depressed and narrow cleft between Merom and Tiberias, descending at the rate of fifty feet in a mile,[105] and becoming (as has been said) a sort of "continuous waterfall."[106] Before reaching Tiberias its course bends slightly to the west of south for about two miles, and it pours itself into that "sea" in about lat. 32° 53′. Quitting the sea in lat. 32° 42′, it finally enters the track called the Ghor, the still lower chasm or cleft which intervenes between Tiberias and the upper end of the Dead Sea. Here the descent of the stream becomes comparatively gentle, not much exceeding three feet per mile; for though the direct distance between the two lakes is less than seventy miles, and the entire fall above

600 feet, which would seem to give a descent of nine or ten feet a mile, yet, as the course of the river throughout this part of its career is tortuous in the extreme,[169] the fall is really not greater than above indicated. Still it is sufficient to produce as many as twenty-seven rapids,[170] or at the rate of one to every seven miles. In this part of its course the Jordan receives two important tributaries, each of which seems to deserve a few words.

The Jarmuk, or Sheriat-el-Mandhur, anciently the Hieromax, drains the water, not only from Gaulonitis or Jaulan, the country immediately east and south-east of the sea of Tiberias, but also from almost the whole of the Hauran.[171] At its mouth it is 130 feet wide,[172] and in the winter it brings down a great body of water into the Jordan. In summer, however, it shrinks up into an inconsiderable brook, having no more remote sources than the perennial springs at Mazarib, Dilly, and one or two other places on the plateau of Jaulan. It runs through a fertile country, and has generally a deep course far below the surface of the plain; ere falling into the Jordan it makes its way through a wild ravine, between rugged cliffs of basalt, which are in places upwards of a hundred feet in height.

The Zurka, or Jabbok, is a stream of the same character with the Hieromax, but of inferior dimensions and importance. It drains a considerable portion of the land of Gilead, but has no very remote sources, and in summer only carries water through a few miles of its lower course.[173] In winter, on the contrary, it is a roaring stream with a strong current, and sometimes cannot be forded. The ravine through which it flows is narrow, deep, and in some places wild. Throughout nearly its whole course it is fringed by thickets of cane and oleander, while above, its banks are clothed with forests of oak.

The Jordan receives the Hieromax about four or five miles below the point where it issues from the Sea of Tiberias, and the Jabbok about half-way between that lake and the Dead Sea. Augmented by these streams, and others of less importance from the mountains on either side, it becomes a river of considerable size, being opposite Beth-shan (*Beisan*) 140 feet wide, and three feet deep,[174] and averaging, in its lower course, a width of ninety with a depth of eight or nine feet.[174] Its entire course, from the fountain near Hasbeiya to the Dead Sea, including the passage of the two lakes through which it

flows, is, if we exclude meanders, about 130, if we include them, 230 miles. It is calculated to pour into the Dead Sea 6,090,000 tons of water daily.[175]

Besides these rivers the Babylonian territory comprised a number of important lakes. Of these some of the more eastern have been described in a former volume: as the Bahr-i-Nedjif in Lower Chaldæa,[176] and the Lake of Khatouniyeh in the tract between the Sinjar and the Khabour.[177] It was chiefly, however, towards the west that sheets of water abounded: the principal of these were the Sabakhah, the Bahr-el-Melak, and the Lake of Antioch in Upper Syria; the Bahr-el-Kades, or Lake of Hems, in the central region; and the Damascus lakes, the Lake of Merom, the Sea of Galilee or Tiberias, and the Dead Sea, in the regions lying furthest to the south. Of these the greater number were salt, and of little value, except as furnishing the salt of commerce; but four—the Lake of Antioch, the Bahr-el-Kades, the Lake Merom, and the Sea of Galilee—were fresh-water basins lying upon the courses of streams which ran through them; and these not only diversified the scenery by their clear bright aspect, but were of considerable value to the inhabitants, as furnishing them with many excellent sorts of fish.

Of the salt lakes the most eastern was the Sabakhah. This is a basin of long and narrow form, lying on and just below the 36th parallel. It is situated on the southern route from Balis to Aleppo, and is nearly equally distant between the two places. Its length is from twelve to thirteen miles; and its width, where it is broadest, is about five miles. It receives from the north the waters of the Nahr-el-Dhahab, or "Golden River" (which has by some been identified with the Daradax of Xenophon[178]), and from the west two or three insignificant streams, which empty themselves into its western extremity. The lake produces a large quantity of salt, especially after wet seasons, which is collected and sold by the inhabitants of the surrounding country.[179]

The Bahr-el-Melak, the lake which absorbs the Koweik, or river of Aleppo, is less than twenty miles distant from Lake Sabakhah, which it very much resembles in its general character. Its ordinary length is about nine miles, and its width three or four; but in winter it is greatly swollen by the rains, and at that time it spreads out so widely that its circumference sometimes exceeds fifty miles.[180] Much salt is drawn from its bed in the dry season, and a large part of Syria is hence sup-

plied with the commodity. The lake is covered with small islands, and greatly frequented by aquatic birds—geese, ducks, flamingoes, and the like.

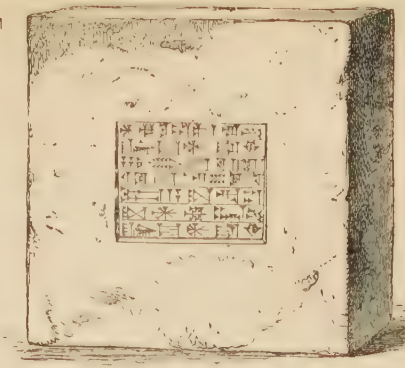
The lakes in the neighborhood of Damascus are three in number, and are all of a very similiar type. They are indeterminate in size and shape, changing with the wetness or dryness of the season; and it is possible that sometimes they may be all united in one.[154] The most northern, which is called the Bahret-esh-Shurkiyeh, receives about half the surplus water of the Barada, together with some streamlets from the outlying ranges of Antilibanus towards the north.[155] The central one, called the Bahret-el-Kibliyeh, receives the rest of the Barada water, which enters it by three or four branches on its northern and western sides. The most southern, known as Bahret-Hijaneh, is the receptacle for the stream of the Awaaj, and takes also the water from the northern parts of the Ledjah, or region of Argob. The three lakes are in the same line—a line which runs from N.N.E. to S.S.W. They are, or at least were recently, separated by tracts of dry land from two to four miles broad.[156] Dense thickets of tall reeds surround them, and in summer almost cover their surface.[157] Like the Bahr-el-Melak, they are a home for water-fowl, which flock to them in enormous numbers.[158]

By far the largest and most important of the salt lakes is the Great Lake of the South—the Bahr Lut ("Sea of Lot"), or Dead Sea. This sheet of water, which has always attracted the special notice and observation of travellers, has of late years been scientifically surveyed by officers of the American navy; and its shape, its size, and even its depth, are thus known with accuracy.[159] The Dead Sea is of an oblong form, and would be of a very regular contour, were it not for a remarkable projection from its eastern shore near its southern extremity. In this place, a long and low peninsula, shaped like a human foot,[160] projects into the lake, filling up two thirds of its width, and thus dividing the expanse of water into two portions, which are connected by a long and somewhat narrow passage.[161] The entire length of the sea, from north to south, is 46 miles: its greatest width, between its eastern and its western shores, is 10½ miles. The whole area is estimated at 250 geographical square miles.[162] Of this space 174 square miles belong to the northern portion of the lake (the true "Sea"), 29 to the narrow channel, and 46 to the southern portion, which has been called "the back-water,"[163] or "the la-

Fig 2.

Mother and child (found at Babylon).

Fig 1



Babylonian brick.

Fig. 3

Lion, standing over a prostrate man (Babylon).

Fig 1.

Figure of a dog (from a black stone of the time of Merodach-iddin-akhi, found at Babylon).

Fig 2

Figure of a Babylonian King, probably Merodach-iddin-akhi.

Fig 3

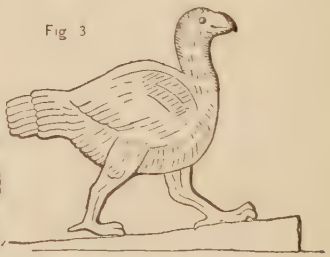


Figure of a bird (from the same stone).

Fig. 4

Grotesque Figures of Men and Animals (from a cylinder).

goon."[191] The most remarkable difference between the two portions of the lake is the contrast they present as to depth. While the depth of the northern portion is from 600 feet, at a short distance from the mouth of the Jordan, to 800, 1000, 1200, and even 1300 feet, further down, the depth of the lagoon is nowhere more than 12 or 13 feet; and in places it is so shallow that it has been found possible, in some seasons, to ford the whole way across from one side to the other.[192] The peculiarities of the Dead Sea, as compared with other lakes, are its depression below the sea level, its buoyancy, and its extreme saltness. The degree of the depression is not yet certainly known; but there is reason to believe that it is at least as much as 1300 feet, whereas no other lake is known to be depressed more than 570 feet.[193] The buoyancy and the saltness are not so wholly unparalleled. The waters of Lake Urumiyeh are probably as salt and as buoyant;[194] those of Lake Elton in the steppe east of the Wolga, and of certain other Russian lakes, appear to be even salter.[195] But with these few exceptions (if they are exceptions), the Dead Sea water must be pronounced to be the heaviest and saltest water known to us. More than one fourth of its weight is solid matter held in solution. Of this solid matter nearly one third is common salt, which is more than twice as much as is contained in the waters of the ocean.

Of the fresh water lakes the largest and most important is the Sea of Tiberias. This sheet of water is of an oval shape, with an axis, like that of the Dead Sea, very nearly due north and south. Its greatest length is about thirteen and its greatest width about six miles.[196] Its extreme depth, so far as has been ascertained, is 27½ fathoms, or 165 feet.[197] The Jordan flows into its upper end turbid and muddy, and issues forth at its southern extremity clear and pellucid. It receives also the waters of a considerable number of small streams and springs, some of which are warm and brackish; yet its own water is always sweet, cool, and transparent, and, laving everywhere a shelving pebbly beach, has a bright sparkling appearance.[199] The banks are lofty, and in general destitute of verdure. What exactly is the amount of depression below the level of the Mediterranean remains still, to some extent, uncertain; but it is probably not much less than 700 feet.[200] Now, as formerly, the lake produces an abundance of fish, which are pronounced, by those who have partaken of them, to be "delicious."[201]

Nine miles above the Sea of Tiberias, on the course of the same stream, is the far smaller basin known now as the Bahr-el Huleh, and anciently (perhaps) as Merom.[202] This is a mountain tarn, varying in size as the season is wet or dry,[203] but never apparently more than about seven miles long, by five or six broad.[204] It is situated at the lower extremity of the plain called Huleh, and is almost entirely surrounded by flat marshy ground, thickly set with reeds and canes, which make the lake itself almost unapproachable.[205] The depth of the Huleh is not known. It is a favorite resort of aquatic birds, and is said to contain an abundant supply of fish.[206]

The Bahr-el-Kades, or Lake of Hems, lies on the course of the Orontes, about 139 miles N.N.E. of Merom, and nearly the same distance south of the Lake of Antioch. It is a small sheet of water, not more than six or eight miles long, and only two or three wide,[207] running in the same direction with the course of the river, which here turns from north to north-east. According to Abulfeda[208] and some other writers, it is mainly, if not wholly, artificial, owing its origin to a dam or embankment across the stream, which is from four to five hundred yards in length, and about twelve or fourteen feet high.[209] In Abulfeda's time the construction of the embankment was ascribed to Alexander the Great, and the lake consequently was not regarded as having had any existence in Babylonian times; but traditions of this kind are little to be trusted, and it is quite possible that the work above mentioned, constructed apparently with a view to irrigation, may really belong to a very much earlier age.

Finally, in Northern Syria, 115 miles north of the Bahr el-Kades, and about 60 miles N.W.W. of the Bahr-el-Melak, is the Bahr-el-Abyad (White Lake), or Sea of Antioch. [Pl. VIII., Fig. 1.] This sheet of water is a parallelogram,[210] the angles of which face the cardinal points: in its greater diameter it extends somewhat more than ten miles, while it is about seven miles across.[211] Its depth on the western side, where it approaches the mountains, is six or eight feet; but elsewhere it is generally more shallow, not exceeding three or four feet.[212] It lies in a marshy plain called El-Umk, and is thickly fringed with reeds round the whole of its circumference. From the silence of antiquity, some writers have imagined that it did not exist in ancient times;[213] but the observations of scientific travellers are opposed to this theory.[214] The lake abounds with fish of several kinds, and the fishery attracts and employs a considerable number of the natives who dwell near it.[215]

Besides these lakes, there were contained within the limits of the Empire a number of petty tarns, which do not merit particular description. Such were the Bahr-el-Taka,[216] and other small lakes on the right bank of the middle Orontes, the Birket-el-Limum in the Lebanon,[217] and the Birket-er-Ram[218] on the southern flank of Hermon. It is unnecessary, however, to pursue this subject any further. But a few words must be added on the chief cities of the Empire, before this chapter is brought to a conclusion.

The cities of the Empire may be divided into those of the dominant country and those of the provinces. Those of the dominant country were, for the most part, identical with the towns already described as belonging to the ancient Chaldæa. Besides Babylon itself, there flourished in the Babylonian period the cities of Borsippa, Duraba, Sippara or Sepharvaim, Opis, Psittacé, Cutha, Orchoë or Erech, and Diridotis or Teredon. The sites of most of those have been described in the first volume;[219] but it remains to state briefly the positions of some few which were either new creations or comparatively undistinguished in the earlier times.

Opis, a town of sufficient magnitude to attract the attention of Herodotus,[220] was situated on the left or east bank of the Tigris, near the point where the Diyaleh or Gyndes joined the main river. Its position was south of the Gyndes embouchure, and it might be reckoned as lying upon either river.[221] The true name of the place - that which it bears in the cuneiform inscriptions - was Hupiya; and its site is probably marked by the ruins at Khafaji, near Baghdad, which place is thought to retain, in a corrupted form, the original appellation.[222] Psittacé or Sitacé,[223] the town which gave name to the province of Sittacêné,[224] was in the near neighborhood of Opis, lying on the same side of the Tigris, but lower down, at least as low as the modern fort of the Zobeid chief. Its exact site has not been as yet discovered. Teredon, or Diriaotis, appears to have been first founded by Nebuchadnezzar.[225] It lay on the coast of the Persian Gulf, a little west of the mouth of the Euphrates, and protected by a quay, or a breakwater, from the high tides that rolled in from the Indian Ocean. There is great difficulty in identifying its site, owing to the extreme uncertainty as to the exact position of the coast-line, and the course of the river, in the time of Nebuchadnezzar. Probably it should be sought about Zobair, or a little further inland.

The chief provincial cities were Susa and Badaca in Susiana;

Anat, Sirki, and Carchemish, on the Middle Euphrates: Sidikan on the Khabour; Harran on the Bilik: Hamath, Damascus,[226] and Jerusalem, in Inner Syria: Tyre, Sidon, Ashdod, Ascalon, and Gaza, upon the coast. Of these, Susa was undoubtedly the most important; indeed, it deserves to be regarded as the second city of the Empire. Here, between the two arms of the Choaspes, on a noble and well watered plain, backed at the distance of twenty-five miles by a lofty mountain range, the fresh breezes from which tempered the summer heats, was the ancient palace of the Kissian kings, proudly placed upon a lofty platform or mound, and commanding a wide prospect of the rich pastures at its base, which extended northwards to the roots of the hills, and in every other direction as far as the eye could reach.[227] Clustered at the foot of the palace mound, more especially on its eastern side, lay the ancient town, the foundation of the traditional Memnon[228] who led an army to the defence of Troy.[229] The pure and sparkling water of the Choaspes[230]—a drink fit for kings[231]—flowed near, while around grew palms, konars, and lemon-trees,[232] the plain beyond waving with green grass and golden corn. It may be suspected that the Babylonian kings, who certainly maintained a palace at this place,[233] and sent high officers of their court to "do their business" there,[234] made it their occasional residence, exchanging, in summer and early autumn, the heats and swamps of Babylon for the comparatively dry and cool region at the base of the Lurish hills. But, however, this may have been, at any rate Susa, long the capital of a kingdom little inferior to Babylon itself, must have been the first of the provincial cities, surpassing all the rest at once in size and in magnificence.

Among the other cities, Carchemish on the Upper Euphrates, Tyre upon the Syrian coast, and Ashdod on the borders of Egypt, held the highest place. Carchemish, which has been wrongly identified with Circesium,[235] lay certainly high up the river,[236] and most likely occupied a site some distance to the north of Balis, which is in lat. 36° nearly. It was the key of Syria on the east, commanding the ordinary passage of the Euphrates, and being the only great city in this quarter. Tyre, which had by this time surpassed its rival, Sidon,[237] was the chief of all the maritime towns; and its possession gave the mastery of the Eastern Mediterranean to the power which could acquire and maintain it. Ashdod was the key of Syria upon the south, being a place of great strength,[238] and commanding the coast route between Palestine and Egypt, which

was usually pursued by armies. It is scarcely too much to say that the possession of Ashdod, Tyre, and Carchemish, involved the lordship of Syria, which could not be permanently retained except by the occupation of those cities.

The countries by which the Babylonian Empire was bounded were Persia on the east, Media and her dependencies on the north, Arabia on the south, and Egypt at the extreme south-west. Directly to the west she had no neighbor, her territory being on that side washed by the Mediterranean.

Of Persia, which must be described at length in the next volume, since it was the seat of Empire during the Fifth Monarchy, no more need be said here than that it was for the most part a rugged and sterile country, apt to produce a brave and hardy race, but incapable of sustaining a large population. A strong barrier separated it from the great Mesopotamian lowland; and the Babylonians, by occupying a few easily defensible passes, could readily prevent a Persian army from debouching on their fertile plains. On the other hand, the natural strength of the region is so great that in the hands of brave and active men its defence is easy; and the Babylonians were not likely, if an aggressive spirit led to their pressing eastward, to make any serious impression in this quarter, or ever greatly to advance their frontier.

To Media, the power which bordered her upon the north, Babylonia, on the contrary, lay wholly open. The Medes, possessing Assyria and Armenia, with the Upper Tigris valley, and probably the Mons Masius, could at any time, with the greatest ease, have marched armies into the low country, and resumed the contest in which Assyria was engaged for so many hundred years with the great people of the south. On this side nature had set no obstacles; and, if danger threatened, resistance had to be made by means of those artificial works which are specially suited for flat countries. Long lines of wall, broad dykes, huge reservoirs, by means of which large tracts may be laid under water, form the natural resort in such a case; and to such defences as these alone, in addition to her armies, could Babylonia look in case of a quarrel with the Medes. On this side, however, she for many years felt no fear. Political arrangements and family ties connected her with the Median reigning house,[40] and she looked to her northern neighbor as an ally upon whom she might depend for aid, rather than as a rival whose ambitious designs were to be watched and baffled.

Babylonia lay open also on the side of Arabia. Here, however, the nature of the country is such that population must be always sparse; and the habits of the people are opposed to that political union which can alone make a race really formidable to others. Once only in their history, under the excitement of a religious frenzy, have the Arabs issued forth from the great peninsula on an errand of conquest. In general they are content to vex and harass without seriously alarming their neighbors. The vast space and arid character of the peninsula are adverse to the collection and the movement of armies; the love of independence cherished by the several tribes indisposes them to union; the affection for the nomadic life, which is strongly felt, disinclines them to the occupation of conquests. Arabia, as a conterminous power, is troublesome, but rarely dangerous: one section of the nation may almost always be played off against another: if "their hand is against every man," "every man's hand" is also "against them;"[241] blood-feuds divide and decimate their tribes, which are ever turning their swords against each other; their neighbors generally wish them ill, and will fall upon them, if they can take them at a disadvantage; it is only under very peculiar circumstances, such as can very rarely exist, that they are likely even to attempt anything more serious than a plundering inroad. Babylonia consequently, though open to attack on the side of the south as well as on that of the north, had little to fear from either quarter. The friendliness of her northern neighbor, and the practical weakness of her southern one, were equal securities against aggression; and thus on her two largest and most exposed frontiers the Empire dreaded no attack.

But it was otherwise in the far south-west. Here the Empire bordered upon Egypt, a rich and populous country, which at all times covets Syria, and is often strong enough to seize and hold it in possession.[242] The natural frontier is moreover weak, no other barrier separating between Africa and Asia than a narrow desert, which has never yet proved a serious obstacle to an army.[243] From the side of Egypt, if from no other quarter, Babylonia might expect to have trouble. Here she inherited from her predecessor, Assyria, an old hereditary feud, which might at any time break out into active hostility. Here was an ancient, powerful, and well-organized kingdom upon her borders, with claims upon that portion of her territory which it was most difficult for her to defend effectively.[244] By sea[245] and by land equally the strip of Syrian coast lay open to the

arms of Egypt, who was free to choose her time, and pour her hosts into the country when the attention of Babylon was directed to some other quarter. The physical and political circumstances alike pointed to hostile transactions between Babylon and her south-western neighbor. Whether destruction would come from this quarter, or from some other, it would have been impossible to predict. Perhaps, on the whole, it may be said that Babylon might have been expected to contend successfully with Egypt—that she had little to fear from Arabia—that against Persia Proper it might have been anticipated that she would be able to defend herself—but that she lay at the mercy of Media. The Babylonian Empire was in truth an empire upon sufferance. From the time of its establishment with the consent of the Medes, the Medes might at any time have destroyed it. The dynastic tie alone prevented this result. When that tie was snapped, and when moreover, by the victories of Cyrus, Persian enterprise succeeded to the direction of Median power, the fate of Babylon was sealed. It was impossible for the long struggling Empire of the south, lying chiefly in low, flat, open regions, to resist for any considerable time the great kingdom of the north, of the high plateau, and of the mountain-chains.

CHAPTER II.

CLIMATE AND PRODUCTIONS.

. . . . . Πεδίον περιώσιον ἔνθα τε πολλοὶ,
Ακρόκομοι φοίνικες ἐπηρεφέες πεφύασι·
Καὶ μὴν καὶ χρυσοῖο φέρει χαριέστερον ἄλλο,
Ὑγρῆς βηρύλλου γλαυκὴν λιθον, ἢ περὶ χῶρον
Φύεται ἐν προβολῆς, ὀφιήτιδος ἔνδοθι πέτρης.

Dionys. *Perieg.* ii. 1009-1013.

Ἔστι δὲ χωρεων αυτη ἀπασέων μακρῳ ἀριστη των ἡμεις ἰδμεν Δήμητρος καρπον ἐκφερειν· —Herod. i. 193.

THE Babylonian Empire, lying as it did between the thirtieth and thirty-seventh parallels of north latitude, and consisting mostly of comparatively low countries, enjoyed a climate which was, upon the whole, considerably warmer than that of Media, and less subject to extreme variations. In its more southern parts Susiana, Chaldæa (or Babylonia Proper),

Philistia, and Edom—the intensity of the summer heat must have been great; but the winters were mild and of short duration. In the middle regions of Central Mesopotamia, the Euphrates valley, the Palmyrêné, Cœle-Syria, Judæa, and Phœnicia, while the winters were somewhat colder and longer, the summer warmth was more tolerable. Towards the north, along the flanks of Masius, Taurus, and Amanus, a climate more like that of eastern Media prevailed,[1] the summers being little less hot than those of the middle region,[2] while the winters were of considerable severity. A variety of climate thus existed, but a variety within somewhat narrow limits. The region was altogether hotter and drier than is usual in the same latitude. The close proximity of the great Arabian desert, the small size of the adjoining seas, the want of mountains within the region having any great elevation,[3] and the general absence of timber, combined to produce an amount of heat and dryness scarcely known elsewhere outside the tropics.

Detailed accounts of the temperature, and of the climate generally, in the most important provinces of the Empire, Babylonia and Mesopotamia Proper, have been already given,[4] and on these points the reader is referred to the first volume. With regard to the remaining provinces, it may be noticed, in the first place, that the climate of Susiana differs but very slightly from that of Babylonia, the region to which it is adjacent. The heat in summer is excessive, the thermometer, even in the hill country, at an elevation of 5000 feet, standing often at 107° Fahr. in the shade.[5] The natives construct for themselves *serdaubs*, or subterranean apartments, in which they live during the day,[6] thus somewhat reducing the temperature, but probably never bringing it much below 100 degrees.[7] They sleep at night in the open air on the flat roofs of their houses.[8] So far as there is any difference of climate at this season between Susiana and Babylonia, it is in favor of the former. The heat, though scorching, is rarely oppressive;[9] and not unfrequently a cool, invigorating breeze sets in from the mountains,[10] which refreshes both mind and body. The winters are exceedingly mild, snow being unknown on the plains, and rare on the mountains, except at a considerable elevation.[11] At this time, however—from December to the end of March—rain falls in tropical abundance;[12] and occasionally there are violent hail-storms,[13] which inflict serious injury on the crops. The spring-time in Susiana is delightful. Soft airs fan the cheek, laden with the scent of flowers; a carpet of ver-

dure is spread over the plains: the sky is cloudless, or overspread with a thin gauzy veil: the heat of the sun is not too great; the rivers run with full banks and fill the numerous canals; the crops advance rapidly towards perfection; and on every side a rich luxuriant growth cheers the eye of the traveller.[14]

On the opposite side of the Empire, in Syria and Palestine, a moister, and on the whole a cooler climate prevails. In Lebanon and Anti-Lebanon there is a severe winter, which lasts from October to April;[15] much snow falls, and the thermometer often marks twenty or thirty degrees of frost. On the flanks of the mountain ranges, and in the highlands of Upper and Cœle-Syria, of Damascus, Samaria, and Judæa, the cold is considerably less: but there are intervals of frost; snow falls, though it does not often remain long upon the ground;[16] and prolonged chilling rains make the winter and early spring unpleasant. In the low regions, on the other hand, in the *Shephêlah*, the plain of Sharon, the Phœnician coast tract, the lower valley of the Orontes, and again in the plain of Esdraëlon and the remarkable depression from the Merom lake to the Dead Sea, the winters are exceedingly mild;[17] frost and snow are unknown: the lowest temperature is produced by cold rains[18] and fogs,[19] which do not bring the thermometer much below 40°. During the summer these low regions, especially the Jordan valley or Ghor, are excessively hot, the heat being ordinarily of that moist kind which is intolerably oppressive.[20] The upland plains and mountain flanks experience also a high temperature, but there the heat is of a drier character, and is not greatly complained of: the nights even in summer are cold, the dews being often heavy;[21] cool winds blow occasionally, and though the sky is for months without a cloud, the prevailing heat produces no injurious effects on those who are exposed to it.[22] In Lebanon and Anti-Lebanon the heat is of course still less; refreshing breezes blow almost constantly; and the numerous streams and woods give a sense of coolness beyond the markings of the thermometer.

There is one evil, however, to which almost the whole Empire must have been subject. Alike in the east and in the west, in Syria and Palestine, no less than in Babylonia Proper and Susiana, there are times when a fierce and scorching wind prevails for days together—a wind whose breath withers the herbage and is unspeakably depressing to man. Called in the east the *Sherghis*,[23] and in the west the *Khamsin*,[24] this fiery

sirocco comes laden with fine particles of heated sand, which at once raise the temperature and render the air unwholesome to breathe. In Syria these winds occur commonly in the spring, from February to April;[27] but in Susiana and Babylonia the time for them is the height of summer.[28] They blow from various quarters, according to the position, with respect to Arabia, occupied by the different provinces. In Palestine the worst are from the east,[29] the direction in which the desert is nearest; in Lower Babylonia they are from the south;[30] in Susiana from the west or the north-west.[31] During their continuance the air is darkened, a lurid glow is cast over the earth, the animal world pines and droops, vegetation languishes, and, if the traveller cannot obtain shelter, and the wind continues, he may sink and die under its deleterious influence.[32]

The climate of the entire tract included within the limits of the Empire was probably much the same in ancient times as in our own days. In the low alluvial plains indeed near the Persian Gulf it is probable that vegetation was anciently more abundant, the date-palm being cultivated much more extensively then than at present;[1] and so far it might appear reasonable to conclude that the climate of that region must have been moister and cooler than it now is. But if we may judge by Strabo's account of Susiana, where the climatic conditions were nearly the same as in Babylonia, no important change can have taken place, for Strabo not only calls the climate of Susiana "fiery and scorching,"[2] but says that in Susa, during the height of summer, if a lizard or a snake tried to cross the street about noon-day, he was baked to death before accomplishing half the distance.[3] Similarly on the west, though there is reason to believe that Palestine is now much more denuded of timber than it was formerly,[4] and its climate should therefore be both warmer and drier, yet it has been argued with great force from the identity of the modern with the ancient vegetation, that in reality there can have been no considerable change.[5] If then there has been such permanency of climate in the two regions where the greatest alteration seems to have taken place in the circumstances whereby climate is usually affected, it can scarcely be thought that elsewhere any serious change has been brought about.

The chief vegetable productions of Babylonia Proper in ancient times are thus enumerated by Berosus. "The land of the Babylonians," he says, "produces wheat as an indigenous

plant, and has also barley, and lentils, and vetches, and sesame; the banks of the streams and the marshes supply edible roots, called *gongæ*, which have the taste of barley-cakes. Palms, too, grow in the country, and apples, and fruit-trees of various kinds."[28] Wheat, it will be observed, and barley are placed first, since it was especially as a grain country that Babylonia was celebrated. The testimonies of Herodotus, Theophrastus, Strabo, and Pliny as to the enormous returns which the Babylonian farmers obtained from their corn lands have been already cited.[29] No such fertility is known anywhere in modern times; and, unless the accounts are grossly exaggerated, we must ascribe it, in part, to the extraordinary vigor of a virgin soil, a deep and rich alluvium; in part, perhaps, to a peculiar adaptation of the soil to the wheat plant, which the providence of God made to grow spontaneously in this region, and nowhere else, so far as we know, on the whole face of the earth.[30]

Besides wheat, it appears that barley, millet,[31] and lentils were cultivated for food, while vetches were grown for beasts, and sesame for the sake of the oil which can be expressed from its seed.[32] All grew luxuriantly, and the returns of the barley in particular are stated at a fabulous amount.[33] But the production of first necessity in Babylonia was the date-palm, which flourished in great abundance throughout the region, and probably furnished the chief food of the greater portion of the inhabitants. The various uses to which it was applied have been stated in the first volume,[34] where a representation of its mode of growth has been also given.[35]

In the adjoining country of Susiana, or at any rate in the alluvial portion of it, the principal products of the earth seem to have been nearly the same as in Babylonia, while the fecundity of the soil was but little less. Wheat and barley returned to the sower a hundred or even two hundred fold.[36] The date-palm grew plentifully,[37] more especially in the vicinity of the towns.[38] Other trees also were common,[39] as probably konars, acacias, and poplars, which are still found scattered in tolerable abundance over the plain country.[40] The neighboring mountains could furnish good timber of various kinds;[41] but it appears that the palm was the tree chiefly used for building.[42] If we may judge the past by the present, we may further suppose that Susiana produced fruits in abundance; for modern travellers tell us that there is not a fruit known in Persia which does not thrive in the province of Khuzistan.[43]

Along the Euphrates valley to a considerable distance—at least as far as Anah (or Hena)—the character of the country resembles that of Babylonia and Susiana, and the products cannot have been very different. About Anah the date-palm begins to fail, and the olive first makes its appearance.[52] Further up a chief fruit is the mulberry.[53] Still higher, in northern Mesopotamia, the mulberry is comparatively rare, but its place is supplied by the walnut, the vine, and the pistachio-nut.[54] This district produces also good crops of grain, and grows oranges, pomegranates, and the commoner kinds of fruit abundantly.[55]

Across the Euphrates, in Northern Syria, the country is less suited for grain crops; but trees and shrubs of all kinds grow luxuriantly, the pasture is excellent, and much of the land is well adapted for the growth of cotton.[56] The Assyrian kings cut timber frequently in this tract;[57] and here are found at the present day enormous planes,[58] thick forests of oak, pine, and ilex, walnuts, willows, poplars, ash-trees, birches, larches, and the carob or locust tree.[59] Among wild shrubs are the oleander with its ruddy blossoms, the myrtle, the bay, the arbutus, the clematis, the juniper, and the honeysuckle;[60] among cultivated fruit-trees, the orange, the pomegranate, the pistachio-nut, the vine, the mulberry, and the olive.[61] The *adis*, an excellent pea, and the *Lycoperdon*, or wild potato, grow in the neighborhood of Aleppo.[62] The castor-oil plant is cultivated in the plain of Edlib.[63] Melons, cucumbers, [64] and most of the ordinary vegetables are produced in abundance and of good quality everywhere.

In Southern Syria and Palestine most of the same forms of vegetation occur, with several others of quite a new character. These are due either to the change of latitude, or to the tropical heat of the Jordan and Dead Sea valley, or finally to the high elevation of Hermon, Lebanon, and Anti-Lebanon. The date-palm fringes the Syrian shore as high as Beyrut,[65] and formerly flourished in the Jordan valley,[66] where, however, it is not now seen, except in a few dwarfed specimens near the Tiberias lake.[67] The banana accompanies the date along the coast, and even grows as far north as Tripoli.[68] The prickly pear, introduced from America, has completely neutralized itself, and is in general request for hedging.[69] The fig mulberry (or true sycamore), another southern form, is also common, and grows to a considerable size.[70] Other denizens of warm climes, unknown in Northern Syria, are the jujube,

the tamarisk, the elæagnus or wild olive, the gum-styrax plant (*Styrax officinalis*), the egg-plant, the Egyptian papyrus, the sugar-cane, the scarlet misletoe, the solanum that produces the "Dead Sea apple" (*Solanum Sodomæum*), the yellow-flowered acacia, and the liquorice plant.[71] Among the forms due to high elevation are the famous Lebanon cedar, several oaks and juniper,[72] the maple, berberry, jessamine, ivy, butcher's broom, a rhododendron, and the gum-tragacanth plant.[73] The fruits additional to those of the north are dates, lemons, almonds, shaddocks, and limes.[74]

The chief mineral products of the Empire seem to have been bitumen, with its concomitants, naphtha and petroleum, salt, sulphur, nitre, copper, iron, perhaps silver, and several sorts of precious stones. Bitumen was furnished in great abundance by the springs at Hit or Is,[75] which were celebrated in the days of Herodotus;[76] it was also procured from Ardericca[77] (Kir-Ab), and probably from Ram Ormuz,[78] in Susiana, and likewise from the Dead Sea.[79] Salt was obtainable from the various lakes which had no outlet, as especially from the Sabakhah,[80] the Bahr-el-Melak,[81] the Dead Sea,[82] and a small lake near Tadmor or Palmyra.[83] The Dead Sea gave also most probably both sulphur and nitre, but the latter only in small quantities.[84] Copper and iron seem to have been yielded by the hills of Palestine.[85] Silver was perhaps a product of the Anti-Lebanon.[86]

It may be doubted whether any gems were really found in Babylonia itself, which, being purely alluvial, possesses no stone of any kind. Most likely the sorts known as Babylonian came from the neighboring Susiana, whose unexplored mountains may possess many rich treasures. According to Dionysius,[87] the bed of the Choaspes produced numerous agates, and it may well be that from the same quarter came that "beryl more precious than gold,"[88] and those "highly reputed sards,"[89] which Babylon seems to have exported to other countries. The western provinces may, however, very probably have furnished the gems which are ascribed to them, as amethysts, which are said to have been found in the neighborhood of Petra,[90] alabaster, which came from near Damascus,[91] and the cyanus, a kind of lapis-lazuli,[92] which was a production of Phœnicia.[93] No doubt the Babylonian love of gems caused the provinces to be carefully searched for stones; and it is not improbable that they yielded besides the varieties already named, and the other unknown kinds mentioned by

Pliny,[94] many, if not most, of the materials which we find to have been used for seals by the ancient people. These are, cornelian, rock-crystal, chalcedony, onyx, jasper, quartz, serpentine, sienite, hæmatite, green felspar, pyrites, loadstone, and amazon-stone.

Stone for building was absent from Babylonia Proper and the alluvial tracts of Susiana, but in the other provinces it abounded. The Euphrates valley could furnish stone at almost any point above Hit; the mountain regions of Susiana could supply it in whatever quantity might be required; and in the western provinces it was only too plentiful. Near to Babylonia the most common kind was limestone;[95] but about Haddîsah on the Euphrates there was also a gritty, silicious rock alternating with iron-stone,[96] and in the Arabian Desert were sandstone and granite.[97] Such stone as was used in Babylon itself, and in the other cities of the low country, probably either came down the Euphrates,[98] or was brought by canals from the adjacent part of Arabia. The quantity, however, thus consumed was small, the Babylonians being content for most uses with the brick, of which their own territory gave them a supply practically inexhaustible.

The principal wild animals known to have inhabited the Empire in ancient times are the following: the lion, the panther or large leopard, the hunting leopard, the bear, the hyena, the wild ox, the buffalo (?), the wild ass, the stag, the antelope, the ibex or wild goat, the wild sheep, the wild boar, the wolf, the jackal, the fox, the hare, and the rabbit.[99] Of these, the lion, leopard, bear, stag, wolf, jackal, and fox seem to have been very widely diffused,[100] while the remainder were rarer, and, generally speaking, confined to certain localities. The wild ass was met with only in the dry parts of Mesopotamia, and perhaps of Syria,[101] the buffalo and wild boar only in moist regions, along the banks of rivers or among marshes.[102] The wild ox was altogether scarce;[103] the wild sheep, the rabbit, and the hare,[104] were probably not common.

To this list may be added as present denizens of the region, and therefore probably belonging to it in ancient times, the lynx, the wildcat, the ratel, the sable, the genet, the badger, the otter, the beaver, the polecat, the jerboa, the rat, the mouse, the marmot, the porcupine, the squirrel,[105] and perhaps the alligator.[106] Of these the commonest at the present day are porcupines, badgers, otters, rats, mice, and jerboas. The

ratel, sable, and genet belong only to the north;[107] the beaver is found nowhere but in the Khabour and middle Euphrates;[108] the alligator, if a denizen of the region at all exists only in the Euphrates."

The chief birds of the region are eagles, vultures, falcons, owls, hawks, many kinds of crows, magpies, jackdaws, thrushes, blackbirds, nightingales, larks, sparrows, goldfinches, swallows, doves of fourteen kinds, francolins, rock partridges, gray partridges, black partridges, quails, pheasants, capercailzies, bustards, flamingoes, pelicans, cormorants, storks, herons, cranes, wild-geese, ducks, teal, kingfishers, snipes, woodcocks, the sand-grouse, the hoopoe, the green parrot, the becafico, the locust-bird, the humming-bird (?), and the bee-eater.[109] The eagle, pheasant, capercailzie, quail, parrot, locust-bird, becafico, and humming-bird are rare;[110] the remainder are all tolerably common. Besides these, we know that in ancient times ostriches were found within the limits of the Empire,[111] though now they have retreated further south into the Great Desert of Arabia. Perhaps bitterns may also formerly have frequented some of the countries belonging to it,[112] though they are not mentioned among the birds of the region by modern writers.[113]

There is a bird of the heron species, or rather of a species between the heron and the stork, which seems to deserve a few words of special description. It is found chiefly in Northern Syria, in the plain of Aleppo and the districts watered by the Koweik and Sajur rivers. The Arabs call it *Tair-el-Raouf*, or "the magnificent." This bird is of a grayish-white, the breast white, the joints of the wings tipped with scarlet, and the under part of the beak scarlet, the upper part being of a blackish-gray. The beak is nearly five inches long, and two thirds of an inch thick. The circumference of the eye is red; the feet are of a deep yellow; and the bird in its general form strongly resembles the stork: but its color is darker. It is four feet high, and covers a breadth of nine feet when the wings are spread. The birds of this species are wont to collect in large flocks on the North Syrian rivers, and to arrange themselves in several rows across the streams where they are shallowest. Here they squat side by side, as close to one another as possible, and spread out their tails against the current, thus forming a temporary dam. The water drains off below them, and when it has reached its lowest point, at a

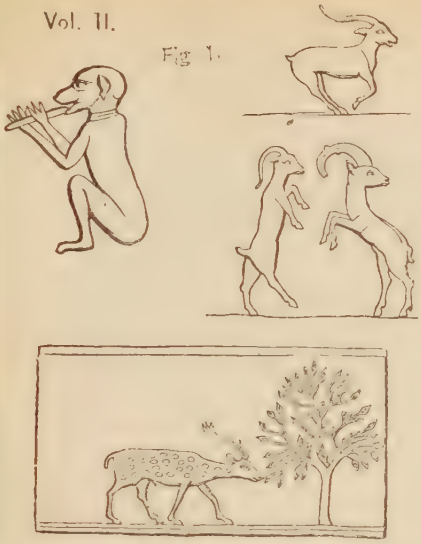
signal from one of their number who from the bank watches the proceedings, they rise and swoop upon the fish, frogs, etc., which the lowering of the water has exposed to view.[114]

Fish are abundant in the Chaldæan marshes, and in almost all the fresh-water lakes and rivers. [Pl. VIII., Fig.] The Tigris and Euphrates yield chiefly barbel and carp; [115] but the former stream has also eels, trout, chub, shad-fish, silurases, and many kinds which have no English names.[116] The Koweik contains the Aleppo eel (*Ophidium masbacambalus*), a very rare variety;[117] and in other streams of Northern Syria are found lampreys, bream, dace, and the black-fish (*Macropteronotus niger*), besides carp, trout, chub, and barbel.[118] Chub, bream, and the silurus are taken in the Sea of Galilee.[119] The black-fish is extremely abundant in the Bahr-el-Taka and the Lake of Antioch.[120]

Among reptiles may be noticed, besides snakes, lizards, and frogs, which are numerous, the following less common species —iguanoes, tortoises of two kinds, chameleons, and monitors.[121] Bats also were common in Babylonia Proper,[122] where they grew to a great size. Of insects the most remarkable are scorpions, tarantulas, and locusts.[123] These last come suddenly in countless myriads with the wind, and, settling on the crops, rapidly destroy all the hopes of the husbandman, after which they strip the shrubs and trees of their leaves, reducing rich districts in an incredibly short space of time to the condition of howling wildernesses. [Pl. VIII., Fig. 3.] If it were not for the locust-bird, which is constantly keeping down their numbers, these destructive insects would probably increase so as to ruin utterly the various regions exposed to their ravages.

The domestic animals employed in the countries which composed the Empire were, camels, horses, mules, asses, buffaloes, cows and oxen, goats, sheep, and dogs. Mules as well as horses seem to have been anciently used in war by the people of the more southern regions—by the Susianians at any rate,[124] if not also by the Babylonians. Sometimes they were ridden; sometimes they were employed to draw carts or chariots. They were spirited and active animals, evidently of a fine breed, such as that for which Khuzistan is famous at the present day.[125] [Pl. VIII., Fig. 4.] The asses from which these mules were produced must also have been of superior quality, like the breed for which Baghdad is even now famous.[126] The Babylonian horses are not likely to have been

Fig. 1.



Animal Forms (from the cylinders).

Fig. 2.

Gate and Gateway (from a cylinder).

Fig. 3

Men and monsters (from a cylinder).

Fig. 4.

Serio-comic drawing (from a cylinder).

Fig 1.

Bronze ornament (found at Babylon).

Fig 2

Top of conical stone, bearing figures of constellations.

Fig 3.

Vases and Jug (from the cylinders).

Vases in a Stand (from a cylinder).

Vase with Handles (found in Babylonia).

Fig. 4.

Babylonian glass bottles.

nearly so good; for this animal does not flourish in a climate which is at once moist and hot. Still, at any rate under the Persians, Babylonia seems to have been a great breeding-place for horses, since the stud of a single satrap consisted of 800 stallions and 16,000 mares.[129] If we may judge of the character of Babylonian from that of Susianian steeds, we may consider the breed to have been strong and large limbed, but not very handsome, the head being too large and the legs too short for beauty. [Pl. IX., Fig. 1.]

The Babylonians were also from very early times famous for their breed of dogs. The tablet engraved in a former volume,[130] which gives a representation of a Babylonian hound, is probably of a high antiquity, not later than the period of the Empire. Dogs are also not unfrequently represented on ancient Babylonian stones and cylinders.[131] It would seem that, as in Assyria, there were two principal breeds, one somewhat clumsy and heavy, of a character not unlike that of our mastiff, the other of a much lighter make, nearly resembling our greyhound. The former kind is probably the breed known as Indian,[132] which was kept up by continual importations from the country whence it was originally derived.[133] [Pl. IX., Fig. 2.]

We have no evidence that camels were employed in the time of the Empire, either by the Babylonians themselves or by their neighbors, the Susianians; but in Upper Mesopotamia, in Syria, and in Palestine they had been in use from a very early date. The Amalekites and the Midianites found them serviceable in war;[134] and the latter people employed them also as beasts of burden in their caravan trade.[135] The Syrians of Upper Mesopotamia rode upon them in their journeys.[136] It appears that they were also sometimes yoked to chariots,[137] though from their size and clumsiness they would be but ill fitted for beasts of draught.

Buffaloes were, it is probable, domesticated by the Babylonians at an early date. The animal seems to have been indigenous in the country,[138] and it is far better suited for the marshy regions of Lower Babylonia and Susiana[139] than cattle of the ordinary kind. It is perhaps a buffalo which is represented on an ancient tablet already referred to,[140] where a lion is disturbed in the middle of his feast off a prostrate animal by a man armed with a hatchet. Cows and oxen, however, of the common kind are occasionally represented on the cylinders[141] [Pl. IX., Fig. 4.], where they seem sometimes to represent ani-

mals about to be offered to the gods. Goats also appear frequently in this capacity;[140] and they were probably more common than sheep, at any rate in the more southern districts. Of Babylonian sheep we have no representations at all on the monuments; but it is scarcely likely that a country which used wool so largely[141] was content to be without them. At any rate they abounded in the provinces, forming the chief wealth of the more northern nations.[142]

CHAPTER III.

THE PEOPLE.

"The Chaldæans, that bitter and hasty nation."—Habak. i. 6.

THE Babylonians, who, under Nabopolassar and Nebuchadnezzar, held the second place among the nations of the East, were emphatically a mixed race. The ancient people from whom they were in the main descended—the Chaldæans of the First Empire—possessed this character to a considerable extent, since they united Cushite with Turanian blood, and contained moreover a slight Semitic and probably a slight Arian element.[1] But the Babylonians of later times—the Chaldæans of the Hebrew prophets[2]—must have been very much more a mixed race than their earlier namesakes—partly in consequence of the policy of colonization pursued systematically by the later Assyrian kings, partly from the direct influence exerted upon them by conquerors. Whatever may have been the case with the Arab dynasty, which bore sway in the country from about B.C. 1546 till B.C. 1300, it is certain that the Assyrians conquered Babylon about B.C. 1300, and almost certain that they established an Assyrian family upon the throne of Nimrod, which held for some considerable time the actual sovereignty of the country.[3] It was natural that under a dynasty of Semites, Semitic blood should flow freely into the lower region, Semitic usages and modes of thought become prevalent, and the spoken language of the country pass from a Turanian or Turano-Cushite to a Semitic type. The previous Chaldæan race blended, apparently, with the new comers, and a people was produced in which the three elements—the Se-

mitic, the Turanian, and the Cushite—held about equal shares. The colonization of the Sargonid kings added probably other elements in small proportions,[4] and the result was that among all the nations inhabiting Western Asia there can have been none so thoroughly deserving the title of a "mingled people"[5] as the Babylonians of the later Empire.

In mixtures of this kind it is almost always found that some one element practically preponderates, and assumes to itself the right of fashioning and forming the general character of the race. It is not at all necessary that this formative element should be larger than any other: on the contrary, it may be and sometimes is extremely small;[6] for it does not work by its mass, but by its innate force and strong vital energy. In Babylonia, the element which showed itself to possess this superior vitality, which practically asserted its pre-eminence and proceeded to mold the national character, was the Semitic. There is abundant evidence that by the time of the later Empire the Babylonians had become thoroughly Semitized; so much so, that ordinary observers scarcely distinguished them from their purely Semitic neighbors, the Assyrians.[7] No doubt there were differences which a Hippocrates or an Aristotle could have detected—differences resulting from mixed descent, as well as differences arising from climate and physical geography; but, speaking broadly, it must be said that the Semitic element, introduced into Babylonia from the north, had so prevailed by the time of the establishment of the Empire that the race was no longer one *sui generis*, but was a mere variety of the well-known and widely spread Semitic type.

We possess but few notices, and fewer assured representations, from which to form an opinion of the physical characteristics of the Babylonians. Except upon the cylinders, there are extant only three or four representations of the human form by Babylonian artists, and in the few cases where this form occurs we cannot always feel at all certain that the intention is to portray a human being. A few Assyrian bas-reliefs *probably* represent campaigns in Babylonia;[8] but the Assyrians vary their human type so little that these sculptures must not be regarded as conveying to us very exact information. The cylinders are too rudely executed to be of much service, and they seem to preserve an archaic type which originated with the Proto-Chaldæans. If we might trust the figures upon them as at all nearly representing the truth, we

should have to regard the Babylonians as of much slighter and sparer frames than their northern neighbors, of a *physique* in fact approaching to meagreness. The Assyrian sculptures, however, are far from bearing out this idea: from them it would seem that the frames of the Babylonians were as brawny and massive as those of the Assyrians themselves, while in feature there was not much difference between the nations. [Pl. IX., Fig. 3.] Foreheads straight but not high, noses well formed but somewhat depressed, full lips, and a well-marked rounded chin, constitute the physiognomy of the Babylonians as it appears upon the sculptures of their neighbors. This representation is not contradicted by the few specimens of actual sculpture left by themselves. In these the type approaches nearly to the Assyrian, while there is still such an amount of difference as renders it tolerably easy to distinguish between the productions of the two nations. The eye is larger, and not so decidedly almond-shaped; the nose is shorter, and its depression is still more marked; while the general expression of the countenance is altogether more commonplace.

These differences may be probably referred to the influence which was exercised upon the physical form of the race by the primitive or Proto-Chaldæan element, an influence which appears to have been considerable. This element, as has been already observed,[10] was predominantly Cushite; and there is reason to believe that the Cushite race was connected not very remotely with the negro. In Susiana, where the Cushite blood was maintained in tolerable purity—Elymæans and Kissians existing side by side, instead of blending together[11]—there was, if we may trust the Assyrian remains, a very decided prevalency of a negro type of countenance, as the accompanying specimens, carefully copied from the sculptures, will render evident. [Pl. IX., Fig. 6.] The head was covered with short crisp curls; the eye was large, the nose and mouth nearly in the same line, the lips thick. Such a physiognomy as the Babylonian appears to have been would naturally arise from an intermixture of a race like the Assyrian with one resembling that which the later sculptures represent as the main race inhabiting Susiana.[12]

Herodotus remarks that the Babylonians wore their hair long;[13] and this remark is confirmed to some extent by the native remains. These in general represent the hair as forming a single stiff and heavy curl at the back of the head (No. 3). Sometimes, however, they make it take the shape of

long flowing locks, which depend over the back (No. 1), or over the back and shoulders (No. 4), reaching nearly to the waist. Occasionally, in lieu of these commoner types, we have one which closely resembles the Assyrian, the hair forming a round mass behind the head (No. 2), on which we can sometimes trace indications of a slight wave. [Pl. X., Fig. 1.] The national fashion, that to which Herodotus alludes, seems to be represented by the three commoner modes. Where the round mass is worn, we have probably an Assyrian fashion, which the Babylonians aped during the time of that people's pre-eminence.[14]

Besides their flowing hair, the Babylonians are represented frequently with a large beard. This is generally longer than the Assyrian, descending nearly to the waist. Sometimes it curls crisply upon the face, but below the chin depends over the breast in long, straight locks. At other times it droops perpendicularly from the cheeks and the under lip.[15] Frequently, however, the beard is shaven off, and the whole face is smooth and hairless.[16]

The Chaldæan females, as represented by the Assyrians,[17] are tall and large-limbed. Their physiognomy is Assyrian, their hair not very abundant. The Babylonian cylinders, on the other hand, make the hair long and conspicuous, while the forms are quite as spare and meagre as those of the men.

On the whole, it is most probable that the physical type of the later Babylonians was nearly that of their northern neighbors. A somewhat sparer form, longer and more flowing hair, and features less stern and strong, may perhaps have characterized them. They were also, it is probable, of a darker complexion than the Assyrians, being to some extent Ethiopians by descent, and inhabiting a region which lies four degrees nearer to the tropics than Assyria. The Cha'ab Arabs, the present possessors of the more southern parts of Babylonia, are nearly black;[18] and the "black Syrians," of whom Strabo speaks,[19] seem intended to represent the Babylonians.

Among the moral and mental characteristics of the people, the first place is due to their intellectual ability. Inheriting a legacy of scientific knowledge, astronomical and arithmetical, from the Proto-Chaldæans,[20] they seem to have not only maintained but considerably advanced these sciences by their own efforts. Their "wisdom and learning" are celebrated by the Jewish prophets Isaiah, Jeremiah, and Daniel;[21] the Father of

History records their valuable inventions;[22] and an Aristotle was not ashamed to be beholden to them for scientific data.[23] They were good observers of astronomical phenomena, careful recorders of such observations,[24] and mathematicians of no small repute.[25] Unfortunately, they mixed with their really scientific studies those occult pursuits which, in ages and countries where the limits of true science are not known, are always apt to seduce students from the right path, having attractions against which few men are proof, so long as it is believed that they can really accomplish the end that they propose to themselves. The Babylonians were astrologers no less than astronomers;[26] they professed to cast nativities, to expound dreams, and to foretell events by means of the stars; and though there were always a certain number who kept within the legitimate bounds of science, and repudiated the astrological pretensions of their brethren,[27] yet on the whole it must be allowed that their astronomy was fatally tinged with a mystic and unscientific element.

In close connection with the intellectual ability of the Babylonians was the spirit of enterprise which led them to engage in traffic and to adventure themselves upon the ocean in ships. In a future chapter we shall have to consider the extent and probable direction of this commerce.[28] It is sufficient to observe in the present place that the same turn of mind which made the Phœnicians anciently the great carriers between the East and West, and which in modern times has rendered the Jews so successful in various branches of trade, seems to have characterized the Semitized Babylonians, whose land was emphatically "a land of traffic," and their chief city "a city of merchants."[29]

The trading spirit which was thus strongly developed in the Babylonian people led naturally to the two somewhat opposite vices of avarice and over-luxuriousness. Not content with honorable gains, the Babylonians "coveted an evil covetousness," as we learn both from Habakkuk and Jeremiah.[30] The "shameful custom" mentioned by Herodotus,[31] which required as a religious duty that every Babylonian woman, rich or poor, highborn or humble, should once in her life prostitute herself in the temple of Beltis, was probably based on the desire of attracting strangers to the capital, who would either bring with them valuable commodities or purchase the productions of the country. The public auction of marriageable virgins[32] had most likely a similar intention. If we may believe Curtius,[33]

strangers might at any time purchase the gratification of any passion they might feel, from the avarice of parents or husbands.

The luxury of the Babylonians is a constant theme with both sacred and profane writers. The "daughter of the Chaldæans" was "tender and delicate,"[34] "given to pleasures,"[35] apt to "dwell carelessly."[36] Her young men made themselves "as princes to look at—exceeding in dyed attire upon their heads,"[37]—painting their faces, wearing earrings, and clothing themselves in robes of soft and rich material.[38] Extensive polygamy prevailed.[39] The pleasures of the table were carried to excess. Drunkenness was common.[40] Rich unguents were invented.[41] The tables groaned under the weight of gold and silver plate.[42] In every possible way the Babylonians practised luxuriousness of living, and in respect of softness and self-indulgence they certainly did not fall short of any nation of antiquity.

There was, however, a harder and sterner side to the Babylonian character. Despite their love of luxury, they were at all times brave and skilful in war; and, during the period of their greatest strength, they were one of the most formidable of all the nations of the East. Habakkuk describes them, drawing evidently from the life, as "bitter and hasty," and again as "terrible and dreadful: their horses' hoofs swifter than the leopard's, and more fierce than the evening wolves."[43] Hence they "smote the people in wrath with a continual stroke"[44]—they "made the earth to tremble, and did shake kingdoms"[45]—they carried all before them in their great enterprises, seldom allowing themselves to be foiled by resistance, or turned from their course by pity. Exercised for centuries in long and fierce wars with the well-armed and well-disciplined Assyrians, they were no sooner quit of this enemy, and able to take an aggressive attitude, than they showed themselves no unworthy successors of that long-dominant nation, so far as energy, valor, and military skill constitute desert. They carried their victorious arms from the shores of the Persian Gulf to the banks of the Nile; wherever they went, they rapidly established their power, crushing all resistance, and fully meriting the remarkable title, which they seem to have received from those who had felt their attacks, of "the hammer of the whole earth."[46]

The military successes of the Babylonians were accompanied with needless violence, and with outrages not unusual in the East, which the historian must nevertheless regard as at once

crimes and follies. The transplantation of conquered races—a part of the policy of Assyria which the Chaldæans adopted—may perhaps have been morally defensible, notwithstanding the sufferings which it involved.[45] But the mutilations of prisoners,[46] the weary imprisonments,[47] the massacre of non-combatants,[48] the refinement of cruelty shown in the execution of children before the eyes of their fathers[49]—these and similar atrocities, which are recorded of the Babylonians, are wholly without excuse, since they did not so much terrify as exasperate the conquered nations, and thus rather endangered than added strength or security to the empire. A savage and inhuman temper is betrayed by these harsh punishments—a temper common in Asiatics, but none the less reprehensible on that account—one that led its possessors to sacrifice interest to vengeance, and the peace of a kingdom to a tiger-like thirst for blood. Nor was this cruel temper shown only towards the subject nations and captives taken in war. Babylonian nobles trembled for their heads if they incurred by a slight fault the displeasure of the monarch;[50] and even the most powerful class in the kingdom, the learned and venerable "Chaldæans," ran on one occasion the risk of being exterminated, because they could not expound a dream which the king had forgotten.[51] If a monarch displeased his court, and was regarded as having a bad disposition, it was not thought enough simply to make away with him, but he was put to death by torture.[54] Among recognized punishments were cutting to pieces and casting into a heated furnace.[55] The houses of offenders were pulled down and made into dunghills.[56] These practices imply a "violence" and cruelty beyond the ordinary Oriental limit; and we cannot be surprised that when final judgment was denounced against Babylon, it was declared to be sent, in a great measure, "because of men's blood, and for the violence of the land—of the city, and all that dwelt therein." [57]

It is scarcely necessary to add that the Babylonians were a proud people. Pride is unfortunately the invariable accompaniment of success, in the nation, if not in the individual; and the sudden elevation of Babylon from a subject to a dominant power must have been peculiarly trying, more especially to the Oriental temperament. The spirit which culminated in Nebuchadnezzar, when, walking in the palace of his kingdom, and surveying the magnificent buildings which he had raised on every side from the plunder of the conquered nations, and by the labor of their captive bands, he exclaimed, "Is not the

great Babylon which I have built by the might of my power and for the honor of my majesty?"[1]—was rife in the people generally, who, naturally enough, believed themselves superior to every other nation upon the earth. "I am, and there is none else beside me," was the thought, if not the speech, of the people,[2] whose arrogancy was perhaps somewhat less offensive than that of the Assyrians, but was quite as intense and as deep-seated.

The Babylonians, notwithstanding their pride, their cruelty, their covetousness, and their love of luxury, must be pronounced to have been, according to their lights, a religious people. The temple in Babylonia is not a mere adjunct of the palace, but has almost the same pre-eminence over other buildings which it claims in Egypt. The vast mass of the Birs-i-Nimrud is sufficient to show that an enormous amount of labor was expended in the erection of sacred edifices; and the costly ornamentation lavished on such buildings is, as we shall hereafter find,[3] even more remarkable than their size. Vast sums were also expended on images of the gods,[4] necessary adjuncts of the religion; and the whole paraphernalia of worship exhibited a rare splendor and magnificence.[5] The monarchs were devout worshippers of the various deities, and gave much of their attention to the building and repair of temples, the erection of images, and the like. They bestowed on their children names indicative of religious feeling,[6] and implying real faith in the power of the gods to protect their votaries. The people generally affected similar names—names containing, in almost every case, a god's name as one of their elements.[7] The seals or signets which formed almost a necessary part of each man's costume[8] were, except in rare instances, of a religious character. Even in banquets, where we might have expected that thoughts of religion would be laid aside, it seems to have been the practice during the drinking to rehearse the praises of the deities.[9]

We are told by Nicolas of Damascus that the Babylonians cultivated two virtues especially, honesty and calmness.[10] Honesty is the natural, almost the necessary virtue of traders, who soon find that it is the best policy to be fair and just in their dealings. We may well believe that this intelligent people had the wisdom to see their true interests, and to understand that trade can never prosper unless conducted with integrity and straightforwardness. The very fact that their trade did prosper, that their goods were everywhere in re-

quest,"[60] is sufficient proof of their commercial honesty, and of their superiority to those tricks which speedily ruin a commerce.

Calmness is not a common Oriental virtue. It is not even in general very highly appreciated, being apt to strike the lively, sensitive, and passionate Eastern as mere dulness and apathy. In China, however, it is a point of honor that the outward demeanor should be calm and placid under any amount of provocation; and indignation, fierceness, even haste, are regarded as signs of incomplete civilization, which the disciples of Confucius love to note in their would-be rivals of the West.

We may conceive that some similar notion was entertained by the proud Babylonians, who no doubt regarded themselves as infinitely superior in manners and culture, no less than in scientific attainments, to the "barbarians" of Persia and Greece. While rage boiled in their hearts, and commands to torture and destroy fell from their tongues, etiquette may have required that the countenance should be unmoved, the eye serene, the voice low and gentle. Such contrasts are not uncommonly seen in the polite Mandarin, whose apparent calmness drives his European antagonist to despair; and it may well be that the Babylonians of the sixth and seventh centuries before our era had attained to an equal power of restraining the expression of feeling. But real gentleness, meekness, and placability were certainly not the attributes of a people who were so fierce in their wars and so cruel in their punishments.

CHAPTER IV.

THE CAPITAL.

Πόλισμα ὀνομαστότατον καὶ ἰσχυρότατον.—Herod. i. 178.

BABYLON, the capital of the Fourth Monarchy, was probably the largest and most magnificent city of the ancient world. A dim tradition current in the East gave, it is true, a greater extent, if not a greater splendor, to the metropolis of Assyria; but this tradition first appears in ages subsequent to the complete destruction of the more northern city;[1] and it is contradicted by the testimony of facts. The walls of Nineveh

have been completely traced, and indicate a city three miles in length, by less than a mile and a half in breadth, containing an area of about 1800 English acres.[2] Of this area less than one tenth is occupied by ruins of any pretension.[3] On the admitted site of Babylon striking masses of ruin cover a space considerably larger than that which at Nineveh constitutes the whole area of the town.[4] Beyond this space in every direction, north, east, south and west, are detached mounds indicating the former existence of edifices of some size, while the intermediate ground between these mounds and the main ruins shows distinct traces of its having been built upon in former days.[5]

Of the actual size of the town, modern research gives us no clear and definite notion. One explorer[6] only has come away from the country with an idea that the general position of the detached mounds, by which the plain around Hillah is dotted, enables him to draw the lines of the ancient walls, and mark out the exact position of the city. But the very maps and plans which are put forward in support of this view show that it rests mainly on hypothesis;[7] nor is complete confidence placed in the surveys on which the maps and plans have been constructed. The English surveys, which have been unfortunately lost,[8] are said not to have placed the detached mounds in any such decided lines as M. Oppert believes them to occupy, and the general impression of the British officers who were employed on the service is that "no vestige of the walls of Babylon has been as yet discovered."[9] [Pl. XI.]

For the size and plan of the city we are thus of necessity thrown back upon the reports of ancient authors. It is not pretended that such reports are in this, or in any other case, deserving of implicit credence. The ancient historians, even the more trustworthy of them, are in the habit of exaggerating in their numbers;[10] and on such subjects as measurements they were apt to take on trust the declarations of their native guides, who would be sure to make over-statements. Still in this instance we have so many distinct authorities—eye-witnesses of the facts—and some of them belonging to times when scientific accuracy had begun to be appreciated, that we must be very incredulous if we do not accept their witness, so far as it is consentient, and not intrinsically very improbable.

According to Herodotus,[11] an eye-witness,[12] and the earliest authority on the subject, the *enceinte* of Babylon was a square, 120 stades (about 14 miles) each way—the entire circuit of the

wall being thus 56 miles, and the area enclosed within them falling little short of 200 square miles. Ctesias,[18] also an eye-witness, and the next writer on the subject, reduced the circuit of the walls to 360 stades, or 41 miles, and made the area consequently little more than 100 square miles. These two estimates are respectively the greatest and the least that have come down to us. The historians of Alexander, while conforming nearly to the statements of Ctesias, a little enlarge his dimensions, making the circuit 365, 368, or 385 stades.[19] The differences here are inconsiderable; and it seems to be established, on a weight of testimony which we rarely possess in such a matter, that the walls of this great town were about forty miles in circumference, and enclosed an area as large as that of the Landgraviat of Hesse-Homburg.

It is difficult to suppose that the real city—the streets and squares—can at any time have occupied one half of this enormous area. A clear space, we are told, was left for a considerable distance inside the wall[20]—like the *pomœrium* of the Romans—upon which no houses were allowed to be built. When houses began, they were far from being continuous; gardens, orchards, even fields, were interspersed among the buildings; and it was supposed that the inhabitants, when besieged, could grow sufficient corn for their own consumption within the walls.[16] Still the whole area was laid out with straight streets, or perhaps one should say with roads (for the houses cannot have been continuous along them), which cut one another everywhere at right angles,[17] like the streets of some German towns.[18] The wall of the town was pierced with a hundred gates,[19] twenty-five (we may suppose) in each face, and the roads led straight to these portals, the whole area being thus cut up into square blocks. The houses were in general lofty, being three or even four stories high.[20] They are said to have had vaulted roofs, which were not protected externally with any tiling, since the climate was so dry as to render such a protection unnecessary.[21] The beams used in the houses were of palm-wood, all other timber being scarce in the country; and such pillars as the houses could boast were of the same material. The construction of these last was very rude. Around posts of palm-wood were twisted wisps of rushes, which were covered with plaster, and then colored according the taste of the owner.[22]

The Euphrates ran through the town, dividing it nearly in half.[23] Its banks were lined throughout with quays of brick

laid in bitumen, and were further guarded by two walls of brick, which skirted them along their whole length. In each of these walls were twenty-five gates, corresponding to the number of the streets which gave upon the river; and outside each gate was a sloped landing place, by which you could descend to the water's edge, if you had occasion to cross the river.[24] Boats were kept ready at these landing-places to convey passengers from side to side: while for those who disliked this method of conveyance a bridge was provided of a somewhat peculiar construction. A number of stone piers were erected in the bed of the stream, firmly clamped together with fastenings of iron and lead; wooden drawbridges connected pier with pier during the day, and on these passengers passed over; but at night they were withdrawn, in order that the bridge might not be used during the dark.[25] Diodorus declares that besides this bridge, to which he assigns a length of five stades (about 1000 yards) and a breadth of 30 feet[26] the two sides of the river were joined together by a tunnel, which was fifteen feet wide and twelve high to the spring of its arched roof.[27]

The most remarkable buildings which the city contained were the two palaces, one on either side of the river, and the great temple of Belus. Herodotus describes[28] the great temple as contained within a square enclosure, two stades (nearly a quarter of a mile) both in length and breadth. Its chief feature was the *ziggurat* or tower, a huge solid mass of brick-work, built (like all Babylonian temple-towers) in stages, square being emplaced on square, and a sort of rude pyramid being thus formed,[29] at the top of which was the main shrine of the god. The basement platform of the Belus tower was, Herodotus tells us, a stade, or rather more than 200 yards, each way. The number of stages was eight. The ascent to the highest stage, which contained the shrine of the god, was on the outside, and consisted either of steps, or of an inclined plane, carried round the four sides of the building, and in this way conducting to the top. According to Strabo the tower was a stade (606 feet 9 inches) in height; but this estimate, if it is anything more than a conjecture, must represent rather the length of the winding ascent than the real altitude of the building. The great pyramid itself was only 480 feet high; and it is very questionable whether any Babylonian building ever equalled it. About half-way up the ascent was a resting-place with seats, where persons commonly sat a while on their way to the summit.[30] The shrine which crowned the edifice was large and

rich. In the time of Herodotus it contained no image: but only a golden table and a large couch, covered with a handsome drapery. This, however, was after the Persian conquest and the plunder of its principal treasures. Previously, if we may believe Diodorus,[51] the shrine was occupied by three colossal images of gold - one of Bel, one of Beltis, and the third of Rhea or Ishtar. Before the image of Beltis were two golden lions, and near them two enormous serpents of silver, each thirty talents in weight. The golden table - forty feet long and fifteen broad—was in front of these statues, and upon it stood two huge drinking-cups, of the same weight as the serpents. The shrine also contained two enormous censers and three golden bowls, one for each of the three deities.[52]

At the base of the tower was a second shrine or chapel, which in the time of Herodotus contained a sitting image of Bel, made of gold, with a golden table in front of it, and a stand for the image, of the same precious metal.[53] Here, too, Persian avarice had been busy: for anciently this shrine had possessed a second statue, which was a human figure twelve cubits high, made of solid gold.[54] The shrine was also rich in private offerings. Outside the building, but within the sacred enclosure, were two altars, a smaller one of gold, on which it was customary to offer sucklings, and a larger one, probably of stone, where the worshippers sacrificed full-grown victims.[55]

The great palace was a building of still larger dimensions than the great temple. According to Diodorus, it was situated within a triple enclosure, the innermost wall being twenty stades, the second forty stades, and the outermost sixty stades (nearly seven miles), in circumference.[56] The outer wall was built entirely of plain baked brick. The middle and inner walls were of the same material, fronted with enamelled bricks representing hunting scenes. The figures, according to this author, were larger than the life, and consisted chiefly of a great variety of animal forms. There were not wanting, however, a certain number of human forms to enliven the scene; and among these were two—a man thrusting his spear through a lion, and a woman on horseback aiming at a leopard with her javelin—which the later Greeks believed to represent the mythic Ninus and Semiramis.[57] Of the character of the apartments we hear nothing: but we are told that the palace had three gates, two of which were of bronze, and that these had to be opened and shut by a machine.[58]

But the main glory of the palace was its pleasure-ground—

the "Hanging Gardens," which the Greeks regarded as one of the seven wonders of the world.[37] This extraordinary construction, which owed its erection to the whim of a woman,[40] was a square, each side of which measured 400 Greek feet.[41] It was supported upon several tiers of open arches, built one over the other, like the walls of a classic theatre,[42] and sustaining at each stage, or story, a solid platform, from which the piers of the next tier of arches rose. The building towered into the air to the height of at least seventy-five feet, and was covered at the top with a great mass of earth, in which there grew not merely flowers and shrubs, but trees also of the largest size.[43] Water was supplied from the Euphrates through pipes, and was raised, it is said by a screw working on the principal of Archimedes.[44] To prevent the moisture from penetrating into the brick-work and gradually destroying the building, there were interposed between the bricks and the mass of soil, first a layer of reeds mixed with bitumen, then a double layer of burnt brick cemented with gypsum, and thirdly a coating of sheet lead.[45] The ascent to the garden was by steps.[46] On the way up, among the arches which sustained the building, were stately apartments,[47] which must have been pleasant from their coolness. There was also a chamber within the structure containing the machinery by which the water was raised.[48]

Of the smaller palace, which was opposite to the larger one, on the other side the river, but few details have come down to us. Like the larger palace, it was guarded by a triple enclosure, the entire circuit of which measured (it is said) thirty stades.[49] It contained a number of bronze statues, which the Greeks believed to represent the god Belus, and the sovereigns Ninus and Semiramis, together with their officers. The walls were covered with battle scenes and hunting scenes, vividly represented by means of bricks painted and enamelled.[50]

Such was the general character of the town and its chief edifices, if we may believe the descriptions of eye-witnesses. The walls which enclosed and guarded the whole—or which, perhaps one should rather say, guarded the district within which Babylon was placed—have been already mentioned as remarkable for their great extent,[51] but cannot be dismissed without a more special and minute description. Like the "Hanging Gardens," they were included among the "world's seven wonders,"[52] and, according to every account given of them, their magnitude and construction were remarkable.

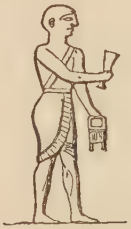
It has been already noticed that, according to the lowest of

the ancient estimates, the entire length of the walls was 360 stades, or more than forty-one miles. With respect to the width we have two very different statements,[53] one by Herodotus and the other by Clitarchus and Strabo. Herodotus[54] makes the width 50 royal cubits, or about 85 English feet, Strabo and Q. Curtius reduced the estimate to 32 feet.[55] There is still greater discrepancy with respect to the height of the walls. Herodotus says that the height was 200 royal cubits, or 300 royal feet (about 335 English feet); Ctesias made it 50 fathoms, or 300 ordinary Greek feet;[56] Pliny and Solinus,[57] substituting feet for the royal cubits of Herodotus, made the altitude 235 feet; Philostratus[58] and Q. Curtius,[59] following perhaps some one of Alexander's historians, gave for the height 150 feet; finally Clitarchus, as reported by Diodorus Siculus,[60] and Strabo,[61] who probably followed him, have left us the very moderate estimate of 75 feet. It is impossible to reconcile these numbers. The supposition that some of them belong properly to the outer, and others to the inner wall,[62] will not explain the discrepancies—for the measurements cannot by any ingenuity be reduced to two sets of dimensions.[63] The only conclusion which it seems possible to draw from the conflicting testimony is that the numbers were either rough guesses made by very unskilful travellers, or else were (in most cases) intentional exaggerations palmed upon them by the native *ciceroni*. Still the broad facts remain—first, that the walls enclosed an enormous space, which was very partially occupied by buildings;[64] secondly, that they were of great and unusual thickness;[65] and thirdly, that they were of a vast height[66]—seventy or eighty feet at least in the time of Alexander, after the wear and tear of centuries and the violence of at least three conquerors.[67]

The general character of the construction is open to but little doubt. The wall was made of bricks, either baked in kilns,[68] or (more probably) dried in the sun, and laid in a cement of bitumen, with occasional layers of reeds between the courses. Externally it was protected by a wide and deep moat. On the summit were low towers,[69] rising above the wall to the height of some ten or fifteen feet,[70] and probably serving as guard-rooms for the defenders. These towers are said to have been 250 in number;[71] they were least numerous on the western face of the city, where the wall ran along the marshes.[72] They were probably angular, not round; and instead of extending through the whole thickness of the wall, they were placed along its

Babylonian Zodiac (?)

Fig. 1.



Babylonian of the lower ranks presenting an offering.

Fig 2.

Babylonian wearing a long under garment.

Babylonian of the upper class in the ordinary costume

Fig. 3.

Patterned tunic, from a cylinder.

Fig. 4.

Babylonian soldier conducting captives (from a cylinder).

outer and inner edge, tower facing tower, with a wide space between them—"enough," Herodotus says, "for a four-horse chariot to turn in."[58] The wall did not depend on them for its strength, but on its own height and thickness, which were such as to render scaling and mining equally hopeless.

Such was Babylon, according to the descriptions of the ancients—a great city, built on a very regular plan, surrounded by populous suburbs interspersed among fields and gardens, the whole being included within a huge square strongly fortified *enceinte*. When we turn from this picture of the past to contemplate the present condition of the localities, we are at first struck with astonishment at the small traces which remain of so vast and wonderful a metropolis. "The broad walls of Babylon" are "utterly broken" down, and her "high gates burned with fire."[59] "The golden city hath ceased."[60] God has "swept it with the besom of destruction."[61] "The glory of the kingdoms, the beauty of the Chaldees' excellency," is become "as when God overthrew Sodom and Gomorrha."[62] The traveller who passes through the land is at first inclined to say that there are no ruins, no remains, of the mighty city which once lorded it over the earth. By and by, however, he begins to see that though ruins, in the common acceptation of the term, scarcely exist—though there are no arches, no pillars, but one or two appearances of masonry even—yet the whole country is covered with traces of exactly that kind which it was prophesied Babylon should leave. Vast "heaps" or mounds, shapeless and unsightly, are scattered at intervals over the entire region where it is certain that Babylon anciently stood, and between the "heaps" the soil is in many places composed of fragments of pottery and bricks, and deeply impregnated with nitre, infallible indications of its having once been covered with buildings. As the traveller descends southward from Baghdad he finds these indications increase, until, on nearing the Euphrates, a few miles beyond Mohawil, he notes that they have become continuous, and finds himself in a region of mounds, some of which are of enormous size.

These mounds begin about five miles above Hillah,[63] and extend for a distance of about three miles from north to south along the course of the river, lying principally on its left or eastern bank. The ruins on this side consist chiefly of three great masses of building. The most northern, to which the Arabs of the present day apply the name of BABIL[64]—the true native appellation of the ancient city[65]—is a vast pile of brick-

work of an irregular quadrilateral shape, with precipitous sides furrowed by ravines, and with a flat top. [Pl. X., Fig. 3.] Of the four faces of the ruin the southern seems to be the most perfect.[3] It extends a distance of about 200 yards,[4] or almost exactly a stade, and runs nearly in a straight line from west to east. At its eastern extremity it forms a right angle with the east face,[5] which runs nearly due north for about 180 yards,[6] also almost in a straight line. The western and northern faces are apparently much worn away. Here are the chief ravines, and here is the greatest seeming deviation from the original lines of the building. The greatest height of the Babil mound is 130 or 140 feet.[7] It is mainly composed of sun-dried brick, but shows signs of having been faced with fire-burnt brick, carefully cemented with an excellent white mortar.[8] The bricks of this outer facing bear the name and titles of Nebuchadnezzar. A very small portion of the original structure has been laid bare—enough however to show that the lines of the building did not slope like those of a pyramid,[9] but were perpendicular, and that the side walls had, at intervals, the support of buttresses.[10]

This vast building, whatever it was, stood within a square enclosure, two sides of which, the northern and eastern, are still very distinctly marked.[11] A long low line of rampart runs for 400 yards parallel to the east face of the building, at a distance of 120 or 130 yards, and a similar but somewhat longer line of mound runs parallel to the north face at rather a greater distance from it. On the west a third line could be traced in the early part of the present century;[12] but it appears to be now obliterated. Here and on the south are the remains of an ancient canal,[13] the construction of which may have caused the disappearance of the southern, and of the lower part of the western line. [Pl. XII., Fig. 1.]

Below the Babil mound, which stands isolated from the rest of the ruins, are two principal masses, the more northern known to the Arabs as EL KASR, "the Palace," and the more southern as "the mound of Amran," from the tomb of a reputed prophet Amrán-ibn-Alí, which crowns its summit.[14] The Kasr mound is an oblong square, about 700 yards long by 600 broad,[15] with the sides facing the cardinal points. [Pl. XII., Fig. 2.] Its height[16] above the plain is 70 feet. Its longer direction is from north to south. As far as it has been penetrated, it consists mainly of rubbish—loose bricks, tiles, and fragments of stone.[17] In a few places only are there undis-

turbed remains of building. One such relic is a subterranean passage, seven feet in height, floored and walled with baked brick, and covered in at the top with great blocks of sandstone,[1] which may either have been a secret exit or more probably an enormous drain. Another is the Kasr, or "palace" proper, whence the mound has its name. This is a fragment of excellent brick masonry in a wonderful state of preservation, consisting of walls, piers, and buttresses, and in places ornamented with pilasters,[2] but of too fragmentary a character to furnish the modern inquirer with any clue to the original plan of the building. The bricks are of a pale yellow color and of the best possible quality, nearly resembling our fire-bricks.[3] They are stamped, one and all, with the name and titles of Nebuchadnezzar. The mortar in which they are laid is a fine lime cement, which adheres so closely to the bricks that it is difficult to obtain a specimen entire.[4] In the dust at the foot of the walls are numerous fragments of brick, painted, and covered with a thick enamel or glaze.[5] Here, too, have been found a few fragments of sculptured stone,[6] and slabs containing an account of the erection of a palatial edifice by Nebuchadnezzar.[7] Near the northern edge of the mound, and about midway in its breadth, is a colossal figure of a lion,[8] rudely carved in black basalt, standing over the prostrate figure of a man with arms outstretched. A single tree grows on the huge ruin, which the Arabs declare to be of a species not known elsewhere, and regard as a remnant of the hanging garden of Bokht-i-nazar. It is a tamarisk of no rare kind, but of very great age, in consequence of which, and of its exposed position, the growth and foliage are somewhat peculiar.[9]

South of the Kasr mound, at the distance of about 800 yards, is the remaining great mass of ruins, the mound of Jumjuma, or of Amran. Pl. XII., Fig. 3.] The general shape of this mound is triangular,[10] but it is very irregular and ill-defined, so as scarcely to admit of accurate description.[11] Its three sides face respectively a little east of north, a little south of east, and a little south of west. The south-western side, which runs nearly parallel with the Euphrates, and seems to have been once washed by the river,[12] is longer than either of the others, extending a distance of above a thousand yards,[13] while the south-eastern may be 800 yards, and the north-eastern 700. Innumerable ravines traverse the mound on every side, penetrating it nearly to its centre. The surface is a series of undulations. Neither masonry nor sculpture is anywhere apparent.

All that meets the eye is a mass of *débris*; and the researches hitherto made have failed to bring to light any distinct traces of building. Occasionally bricks are found, generally of poor material, and bearing the names and titles of some of the earlier Babylonian monarchs: but the trenches opened in the pile have in no case laid bare even the smallest fragment of a wall.[111]

Besides the remains which have been already described, the most remarkable are certain long lines of rampart on both sides of the river, which lie outside of the other ruins, enclosing them all, except the mound of Babil. On the left bank of the stream there is to be traced, in the first place, a double line of wall or rampart, having a direction nearly due north and south,[112] which lies east of the Kasr and Amran mounds, at the distance from them of about 1000 yards. Beyond this is a single line of rampart to the north-east, traceable for about two miles, the direction of which is nearly from north-west to south-east, and a double line of rampart to the south-east,[113] traceable for a mile and a half, with a direction from north-east to south-west. The two lines in this last case are from 600 to 700 yards apart, and diverge from one another as they run out to the north-east. The inner of the two meets the north-eastern rampart nearly at a right angle, and is clearly a part of the same work. It is questioned, however, whether this line of fortification is ancient, and not rather a construction belonging to Parthian times.[114]

A low line of mounds is traceable between the western face of the Amran and Kasr hills, and the present eastern bank of the river, bounding a sort of narrow valley, in which either the main stream of the Euphrates, or at any rate a branch from it, seems anciently to have flowed.

On the right bank of the stream the chief remains are of the same kind. West of the river, a rampart, twenty feet high,[115] runs for nearly a mile[116] parallel with the general line of the Amran mound, at the distance of about 1000 yards from the old course of the stream. At either extremity the line of the rampart turns at a right angle, running down towards the river, and being traceable towards the north for 400 yards and towards the south for fifty or sixty.[117] It is evident that there was once, before the stream flowed in its present channel, a rectangular enclosure, a mile long and 1000 yards broad, opposite to the Amran mound; and there are indications that within this *enceinte* was at least one important building, which

was situated near the south-east angle of the enclosure, on the banks of the old course of the river. The bricks found at this point bear the name of Neriglissar.

There are also, besides the ramparts and the great masses of ruin above described, a vast number of scattered and irregular heaps of hillocks on both sides of the river, chiefly, however, upon the eastern bank. Of these one only seems to deserve distinct mention. This is the mound called El Homeira, "the Red," which lies due east of the Kasr, distant from it about 800 yards—a mound said to be 300 yards long by 100 wide,[118] and to attain an elevation of 60 or 70 feet.[119] It is composed of burnt brick of a bright red color, and must have been a building of a very considerable height resting upon a somewhat confined base. Its bricks are inscribed along their edges, not (as is the usual practice) on their lower face.[120]

The only other ancient work of any importance of which some remains are still to be traced is a brick embankment on the left bank of the stream between the Kasr and the Babil mounds,[121] extending for a distance of a thousand yards in a line which has a slight curve and a general direction of S.S.W. The bricks of this embankment are of a bright red color, and of great hardness.[122] They are laid wholly in bitumen. The legend which they bear shows that the quay was constructed by Nabonidus. [Pl. XIII.]

Such then are the ruins of Babylon—the whole that can now with certainty be assigned to the "beauty of the Chaldees' excellency"[123]—the "great Babylon" of Nebuchadnezzar.[124] Within a space little more than three miles long and a mile and three quarters broad are contained all the undoubted remains[125] of the greatest city of the old world. These remains, however, do not serve in any way to define the ancient limits of the place. They are surrounded on every side by nitrous soil, and by low heaps which it has not been thought worth while to excavate, but which the best judges assign to the same era as the great mounds, and believe to mark the sites of the lesser temples and the other public buildings of the ancient city. Masses of this kind are most frequent to the north and east. Sometimes they are almost continuous for miles; and if we take the Kasr mound as a centre, and mark about it an area extending five miles in each direction (which would give a city of the size described by Ctesias and the historians of Alexander), we shall scarcely find a single square mile of the hundred without some indications of ancient buildings upon its surface. The case is

not like that of Nineveh, where outside the walls the country is for a considerable distance singularly bare of ruins." The mass of Babylonian remains extending from Babil to Amran does not correspond to the whole *enceinte* of Nineveh, but to the mound of Koyunjik. It has every appearance of being, not the city, but "the heart of the city"[123]—the "Royal quarter"[124] outside of which were the streets and squares, and still further off, the vanished walls. It may seem strange that the southern capital should have so greatly exceeded the dimensions of the northern one. But, if we follow the indications presented by the respective sites, we are obliged to conclude that there was really this remarkable difference.

It has to be considered in conclusion how far we can identify the various ruins above described with the known buildings of the ancient capital, and to what extent it is possible to reconstruct upon the existing remains the true plan of the city. Fancy, if it discards the guidance of fact, may of course with the greatest ease compose plans of a charming completeness. A rigid adherence to existing data will produce, it is to be feared, a somewhat meagre and fragmentary result; but most persons will feel that this is one of the cases where the maxim of Hesiod[125] applies -πλέον ἥμισυ παντός—"the half is preferable to the whole."

The one identification which may be made upon certain and indeed indisputable evidence is that of the Kasr mound with the palace built by Nebuchadnezzar.[126] The tradition which has attached the name of Kasr or "Palace" to this heap is confirmed by inscriptions upon slabs found on the spot, wherein Nebuchadnezzar declares the building to be his "Grand Palace."[127] The bricks of that part of the ruin which remains uncovered bear, one and all, the name of this king;[128] and it is thus clear that here stood in ancient times the great work of which Berosus speaks as remarkable for its height and splendor.[129] If a confirmation of the fact were needed after evidence of so decisive a character, it would be found in the correspondence between the remains found on the mound and the description left us of the "greater palace" by Diodorus. Diodorus relates that the walls of this edifice were adorned with colored representations of hunting scenes;[130] and modern explorers find that the whole soil of the mound, and especially the part on which the fragment of ruin stands, is full of broken pieces of enamelled brick, varied in hue, and evidently containing portions of human and animal forms.[131]

But if the Kasr represents the palace built by Nebuchadnezzar, as is generally allowed by those who have devoted their attention to the subject,[139] it seems to follow almost as a certainty[140] that the Amran mound is the site of that old palatial edifice to which the erection of Nebuchadnezzar was an addition. Berosus expressly states that Nebuchadnezzar's building "adjoined upon" the former palace,[141] a description which is fairly applicable to the Amran mound by means of a certain latitude of interpretation, but which is wholly inapplicable to any of the other ruins. This argument would be conclusive, even if it stood alone. It has, however, received an important corroboration in the course of recent researches. From the Amran mound, and from this part of Babylon only, have monuments been recovered of an earlier date than Nebuchadnezzar.[142] Here and here alone did the early kings leave memorials of their presence in Babylon; and here consequently, we may presume, stood the ancient royal residence.

If, then, all the principal ruins on the east bank of the river, with the exception of the Babil mound and the long lines marking walls or embankments, be accepted as representing the "great palace" or "citadel" of the classical writers, we must recognize in the remains west of the ancient course of the river—the oblong square enclosure and the important building at its south-east angle[143]—the second or "smaller palace" of Ctesias, which was joined to the larger one, according to that writer, by a bridge and a tunnel.[144] This edifice, built or at any rate repaired by Neriglissar,[145] lay directly opposite the more ancient part of the eastern palace, being separated from it by the river, which anciently flowed along the western face of the Kasr and Amran mounds. The exact position of the bridge cannot be fixed.[146] With regard to the tunnel, it is extremely unlikely that any such construction was ever made.[147] The "Father of History" is wholly silent on the subject, while he carefully describes the bridge, a work far less extraordinary. The tunnel rests on the authority of two writers only—Diodorus[148] and Philostratus[149]—who both wrote after Babylon was completely ruined. It was probably one of the imaginations of the inventive Ctesias, from whom Diodorus evidently derived all the main points of his description.

Thus far there is no great difficulty in identifying the existing remains with buildings mentioned by ancient authors; but, at the point to which we are now come, the subject grows exceedingly obscure, and it is impossible to offer more than

reasonable conjectures upon the true character of the remaining ruins. The descriptions of ancient writers would lead us to expect that we should find among the ruins unmistakable traces of the great temple of Belus, and at least some indication of the position occupied by the Hanging Gardens. These two famous constructions can scarcely, one would think, have wholly perished. More especially, the Belus temple, which was a stade square,[147] and (according to some) a stade in height,[148] must almost of necessity have a representative among the existing remains. This, indeed, is admitted on all hands: and the controversy is thereby narrowed to the question, which of two great ruins—the only two entitled by their size and situation to attention—has the better right to be regarded as the great and celebrated sanctuary of the ancient Babylon.

That the mound of Babil is the *ziggurat* or tower of a Babylonian temple scarcely admits of a doubt. Its square shape, its solid construction, its isolated grandeur, its careful emplacement with the sides facing the cardinal points,[149] and its close resemblance to other known Babylonian temple-towers, sufficiently mark it for a building of this character, or at any rate raise a presumption which it would require very strong reasons indeed to overcome. Its size moreover corresponds well with the accounts which have come down to us of the dimensions of the Belus temple,[150] and its name and proximity to the other main ruins show that it belonged certainly to the ancient capital. Against its claim to be regarded as the remains of the temple of Belus two objections only can be argued: these are the absence of any appearance of stages, or even of a pyramidical shape, from the present ruin, and its position on the same side of the Euphrates with the palace. Herodotus expressly declares that the temple of Belus and the royal palace were upon opposite sides of the river,[151] and states, moreover, that the temple was built in stages, which rose one above the other to the number of eight.[152] Now these two circumstances, which do not belong at present to the Babil mound, attach to a ruin distant from it about eleven or twelve miles a ruin which is certainly one of the most remarkable in the whole country, and which, if Babylon had really been of the size asserted by Herodotus, might possibly have been included within the walls. The Birs-i-Nimrud had certainly seven, probably eight stages, and it is the only ruin on the present western bank of the Euphrates which is at once sufficiently grand to answer to the descriptions of the Belus temple, and sufficiently near to

the other ruins to make its original inclusion within the walls not absolutely impossible. Hence, ever since the attention of scholars was first directed to the subject of Babylonian topography, opinion has been divided on the question before us, and there have not been wanting persons to maintain that the Birs-i-Nimrud is the true temple of Belus,[83] if not also the actual tower of Babel,[84] whose erection led to the confusion of tongues and general dispersion of the sons of Adam.

With this latter identification we are not in the present place concerned. With respect to the view that the Birs is the sanctuary of Belus, it may be observed in the first place that the size of the building is very much smaller than that ascribed to the Belus temple;[85] secondly, that it was dedicated to Nebo, who cannot be identified with Bel;[86] and thirdly, that it is not really any part of the remains of the ancient capital, but belongs to an entirely distinct town. The cylinders found in the ruin by Sir Henry Rawlinson declare the building to have been "the wonder of Borsippa;"[87] and Borsippa, according to all the ancient authorities, was a town by itself—an entirely distinct place from Babylon.[88] To include Borsippa within the outer wall of Babylon[89] is to run counter to all the authorities on the subject, the inscriptions, the native writer, Berosus,[90] and the classical geographers generally. Nor is the position thus assigned to the Belus temple in harmony with the statement of Herodotus, which alone causes explorers to seek for the temple on the west side of the river. For, though the expression which this writer uses[91] does not necessarily mean that the temple was in the exact centre of one of the two divisions of the town, it certainly implies that it lay *towards the middle* of one division—well within it—and not upon its outskirts. It is indeed inconceivable that the main sanctuary of the place, where the kings constantly offered their worship, should have been nine or ten miles from the palace! The distance between the Amran mound and Babil, which is about two miles, is quite as great as probability will allow us to believe existed between the old residence of the kings and the sacred shrine to which they were in the constant habit of resorting.

Still there remain as objections to the identification of the great temple with the Babil mound the two arguments already noticed. The Babil mound has no appearance of stages such as the Birs presents, nor has it even a pyramidical shape. It is a huge platform with a nearly level top, and sinks, rather than

rises, in the centre. What has become, it is asked, of the seven upper stages of the great Belus tower, if this ruin represents it? Whither have they vanished? How is it that in crumbling down they have not left something like a heap towards the middle? To this it may be replied that the destruction of the Belus tower has not been the mere work of the elements—it was violently broken down either by Xerxes, or by some later king,[162] who may have completely removed all the upper stages. Again, it has served as a quarry to the hunters after bricks for more than twenty centuries;[163] so that it is only surprising that it still retains so much of its original shape. Further, when Alexander entered Babylon more than 2000 years ago 10,000 men were employed for several weeks in clearing away the rubbish and laying bare the foundations of the building.[164] It is quite possible that a conical mass of crumbled brick may have been removed from the top of the mound at this time.

The difficulty remains that the Babil mound is on the same side of the Euphrates with the ruins of the Great Palace, whereas Herodotus makes the two buildings balance each other, one on the right and the other on the left bank of the stream. Now here it is in the first place to be observed that Herodotus is the only writer who does this. No other ancient author tells us anything of the relative situation of the two buildings. We have thus nothing to explain but the bald statement of a single writer—a writer no doubt of great authority, but still one not wholly infallible. We might say, then, that Herodotus probably made a mistake—that his memory failed him in this instance, or that he mistook his notes on the subject.[165] Or we may explain his error by supposing that he confounded a canal from the Euphrates, which seems to have anciently passed between the Babil mound and the Kasr[166] (called *Shebil* by Nebuchadnezzar) with the main stream. Or, finally, we may conceive that at the time of his visit the old palace lay in ruins, and that the palace of Neriglissar on the west bank of the stream was that of which he spoke. It is at any rate remarkable, considering how his authority is quoted as fixing the site of the Belus tower to the west bank, that, in the only place where he gives us any intimation of the side of the river on which he would have placed the tower, it is the east and not the west bank to which his words point. He makes those who saw the treachery of Zopyrus at the Belian and Kissian gates, which must have been

to the east of the city,"[170] at once take refuge in the famous sanctuary,[171] which he implies was in the vicinity.

On the whole, therefore, it seems best to regard the Babil mound as the *ziggurat* of the great temple of Bel (called by some "the tomb of Belus")[172] which the Persians destroyed and which Alexander intended to restore. With regard to the "hanging gardens," as they were an erection of less than half the size of the tower,[173] it is not so necessary to suppose that distinct traces must remain of them. Their *débris* may be confused with those of the Kasr mound, on which one writer places them.[174] Or they may have stood between the Kasr and Amran ruins, where are now some mounds of no great height. Or, possibly, their true site is in the modern *El Homeira*, the remarkable red mound which lies east of the Kasr at the distance of about 800 yards, and attains an elevation of sixty-five feet. Though this building is not situated upon the banks of the Euphrates, where Strabo and Diodorus place the gardens,[175] it abuts upon a long low valley into which the Euphrates water seems formerly to have been introduced, and which may therefore have been given the name of the river. This identification is, however, it must be allowed, very doubtful.

The two lines of mounds which enclose the long low valley above mentioned are probably the remains of an embankment which here confined the waters of a great reservoir. Nebuchadnezzar relates that he constructed a large reservoir, which he calls the *Yapur-Shapu*, in Babylon,[176] and led water into it by means of an "eastern canal"—the *Shebil*. The *Shebil* canal, it is probable, left the Euphrates at some point between Babil and the Kasr, and ran across with a course nearly from west to east to the top of the *Yapur-Shapu*. This reservoir seems to have been a long and somewhat narrow parallelogram, running nearly from north to south, which shut in the great palace on the east and protected it like a huge moat. Most likely it communicated with the Euphrates towards the south by a second canal, the exact line of which cannot be determined. Thus the palatial residence of the Babylonian kings looked in both directions upon broad sheets of water, an agreeable prospect in so hot a climate; while, at the same time, by the assignment of a double channel to the Euphrates, its floods were the more readily controlled, and the city was preserved from those terrible inundations which in modern times have often threatened the existence of Baghdad."[177]

The other lines of mound upon the east side of the river

may either be Parthian works,[175] or (possibly) they may be the remains of some of those lofty walls[176] whereby, according to Diodorus, the greater palace was surrounded and defended.[177] The fragments of them which remain are so placed that if the lines were produced they would include all the principal ruins on the left bank except the Babil tower. They may therefore be the old defences of the Eastern palace: though, if so, it is strange that they run in lines which are neither straight nor parallel to those of the buildings enclosed by them. The irregularity of these ramparts is certainly a very strong argument in favor of their having been the work of a people considerably more barbarous and ignorant than the Babylonians. [Pl. XIV.]

CHAPTER V.

ARTS AND SCIENCES.

Τοῦτό γε διαβεβαιώσαιτ' ἂν τις προσηκόντως, ὅτι Χαλδαῖοι μεγίστην ἕξιν ἐν ἀστρολογίᾳ ἁπάντων ἀνθρώπων ἔχουσι, καὶ διότι πλείστην ἐπιμέλειαν ἐποιήσαντο ταύτης τῆς θεωρίας.—Diod. Sic. ii. 31.

THAT the Babylonians were among the most ingenious of all the nations of antiquity, and had made considerable progress in the arts and sciences before their conquest by the Persians, is generally admitted. The classical writers commonly parallel them with the Egyptians;[1] and though, from their habit of confusing Babylon with Assyria, it is not always quite certain that the inhabitants of the more southern country—the real Babylonians—are meant, still there is sufficient reason to believe that, in the estimation of the Greeks and Romans, the people of the lower Euphrates were regarded as at least equally advanced in civilization with those of the Nile valley and the Delta. The branches of knowledge wherein by general consent the Babylonians principally excelled were architecture and astronomy. Of their architectural works two at least were reckoned among the "Seven Wonders,"[2] while others, not elevated to this exalted rank, were yet considered to be among the most curious and admirable of Oriental constructions.[3] In astronomical science they were thought to have far excelled all other nations,[4] and the first Greeks who made much prog-

ress in the subject confessed themselves the humble disciples of Babylonian teachers.[5]

In the account, which it is proposed to give, in this place, of Babylonian art and science, so far as they are respectively known to us, the priority will be assigned to art, which is an earlier product of the human mind than science; and among the arts the first place will be given to architecture, as at once the most fundamental of all the fine arts, and the one in which the Babylonians attained their greatest excellence. It is as builders that the primitive Chaldæan people, the progenitors of the Babylonians, first appear before us in history;[6] and it was on his buildings that the great king of the later Empire, Nebuchadnezzar, specially prided himself.[7] When Herodotus visited Babylon he was struck chiefly by its extraordinary edifices;[8] and it is the account which the Greek writers gave of these erections that has, more than anything else, procured for the Babylonians the fame that they possess and the position that they hold among the six or seven leading nations of the old world.

The architecture of the Babylonians seems to have culminated in the Temple. While their palaces, their bridges, their walls, even their private houses were remarkable, their grandest works, their most elaborate efforts, were dedicated to the honor and service, not of man, but of God. The Temple takes in Babylonia the same sort of rank which it has in Egypt and in Greece. It is not, as in Assyria, a mere adjunct of the palace. It stands by itself, in proud independence, as the great building of a city, or a part of a city;[9] it is, if not absolutely larger, at any rate loftier and more conspicuous than any other edifice: it often boasts a magnificent adornment: the value of the offerings which are deposited in it is enormous: in every respect it rivals the palace, while in some it has a decided pre-eminence. It draws all eyes by its superior height and sometimes by its costly ornamentation; it inspires awe by the religious associations which belong to it; finally, it is a stronghold as well as a place of worship, and may furnish a refuge to thousands in the time of danger.[11]

A Babylonian temple seems to have stood commonly within a walled enclosure. In the case of the great temple of Belus at Babylon, the enclosure is said to have been a square of two stades each way,[12] or, in other words, to have contained an area of thirty acres. The temple itself ordinarily consisted of two parts. Its most essential feature was a *ziggurat*, or tower,

which was either square, or at any rate rectangular, and built in stages, the smallest number of such stages being two, and the largest known number seven.[13] At the summit of the tower was probably in every case a shrine, or chapel, of greater or less size, containing altars and images. The ascent to this was on the outside of the towers, which were entirely solid; and it generally wound round the different faces of the towers, ascending them either by means of steps or by an inclined plane. Special care was taken with regard to the emplacement of the tower, either its sides or its angles being made exactly to confront the cardinal points. It is said that the temple-towers were used not merely for religious purposes but also as observatories,[14] a use with a view to which this arrangement of their position would have been serviceable.

Besides the shrine at the summit of the temple-tower or *ziggurat*, there was commonly at the base of the tower, or at any rate somewhere within the enclosure, a second shrine or chapel, in which the ordinary worshipper, who wished to spare himself the long ascent, made his offerings. Here again the ornamentation was most costly, lavish use being made of the precious metals for images and other furniture.[15] Altars of different sizes were placed in the open air in the vicinity of this lower shrine, on which were sacrificed different classes of victims, gold being used occasionally as the material of the altar.[16]

The general appearance of a Babylonian temple, or at any rate of its chief feature, the tower or *ziggurat*, will be best gathered from a more particular description of a single building of the kind; and the building which it will be most convenient to take for that purpose is that remarkable edifice which strikes moderns with more admiration than any other now existing in the country,[17] and which has also been more completely and more carefully examined than any other Babylonian ruin[18]—the Birs-i-Nimrud, or ancient temple of Nebo at Borsippa. The plan of this tower has been almost completely made out from data still existing on the spot; and a restoration of the original building may be given with a near approach to certainty. [Pl. XV., Fig. 1.]

Upon a platform of crude brick,[19] raised a few feet above the level of the alluvial plain, was built the first or basement stage of the great edifice, an exact square, 272 feet each way, and and probably twenty-six feet in perpendicular height.[20] On this was erected a second stage of exactly the same height,

but a square of only 230 feet; which however was not placed exactly in the middle of the first, but further from its north-eastern than its south-western edge, twelve feet only from the one and thirty feet from the other. The third stage, which was imposed in the same way upon the second, was also twenty-six feet high, and was a square of 188 feet. Thus far the plan had been uniform and without any variety; but at this point an alteration took place. The height of the fourth stage, instead of being twenty-six, was only fifteen feet.[21] In other respects however the old numbers were maintained; the fourth stage was diminished equally with the others, and was consequently a square of 146 feet. It was emplaced upon the stage below it exactly as the former stages had been. The remaining stages probably followed the same rule of diminution [22] —the fifth being a square of 104, the sixth one of 24, and the seventh one of 20 feet. Each of these stages had a height of fifteen feet. Upon the seventh or final stage was erected the shrine or tabernacle, which was probably also fifteen feet high, and about the same length and breadth. Thus the entire height of the building, allowing three feet for the crude brick platform, was 156 feet.[23]

The ornamentation of the edifice was chiefly by means of color. The seven stages represented the Seven Spheres, in which moved (according to ancient Chaldæan astronomy) the seven planets. To each planet fancy, partly grounding itself upon fact, had from of old assigned a peculiar tint or hue. The Sun was golden, the Moon silver; the distant Saturn, almost beyond the region of light, was black; Jupiter was orange;[24] the fiery Mars was red; Venus was a pale Naples yellow; Mercury a deep blue. The seven stages of the tower, like the seven walls of Ecbatana,[25] gave a visible embodiment to these fancies. The basement stage, assigned to Saturn, was blackened by means of a coating of bitumen spread over the face of the masonry;[26] the second stage, assigned to Jupiter, obtained the appropriate orange color by means of a facing of burnt bricks of that hue;[27] the third stage, that of Mars, was made blood-red by the use of half-burnt bricks formed of a bright red clay;[28] the fourth stage, assigned to the Sun, appears to have been actually covered with thin plates of gold;[29] the fifth, the stage of Venus, received a pale yellow tint from the employment of bricks of that hue;[30] the sixth, the sphere of Mercury, was given an azure tint by vitrifaction, the whole stage having been subjected to an intense heat after it was erected, whereby

the bricks composing it were converted into a mass of blue slag;[31] the seventh stage, that of the Moon, was probably, like the fourth, coated with actual plates of metal.[32] Thus the building rose up in stripes of varied color, arranged almost as nature's cunning arranges hues in the rainbow, tones of red coming first, succeeded by a broad stripe of yellow, the yellow being followed by blue. Above this the glowing silvery summit melted into the bright sheen of the sky. [Pl. XVI.]

The faces of the various stages were, as a general rule, flat and unbroken, unless it were by a stair or ascent,[33] of which however there has been found no trace. But there were two exceptions to this general plainness. The basement stage was indented with a number of shallow squared recesses, which seem to have been intended for a decoration.[34] The face of the third stage was weak on account of its material, which was brick but half-burnt. Here then the builders, not for ornament's sake, but to strengthen their work, gave to the wall the support of a number of shallow buttresses. They also departed from their usual practice, by substituting for the rigid perpendicular of the other faces a slight slope outwards for some distance from the base.[35] These arrangements, which are apparently part of the original work, and not remedies applied subsequently, imply considerable knowledge of architectural principles on the part of the builders, and no little ingenuity in turning architectural resources to account.

With respect to the shrine which was emplaced upon the topmost, or silver stage, little is definitely known. It appears to have been of brick;[36] and we may perhaps conclude from the analogy of the old Chaldæan shrines at the summits of towers,[37] as well as from that of the Belus shrine at Babylon,[38] that it was richly ornamented both within and without; but it is impossible to state anything as to the exact character of the ornamentation.

The tower is to be regarded as fronting to the north-east, the coolest side and that least exposed to the sun's rays from the time that they become oppressive in Babylonia. On this side was the ascent, which consisted probably of a broad staircase extending along the whole front of the building. The side platforms (those towards the south-east and north-west)—at any rate of the first and second stages, probably of all—were occupied by a series of chambers abutting upon the perpendicular wall,[39] as the priests' chambers of Solomon's temple abutted upon the side walls of that building.[40] In these were

Fig.

Babylonian wearing a short open coat.

Fig. 2.

Babylonian bow.

Fig. 3.

Babylonian quiver and dagger.

Fig. 4

Axes, Chaldæan and Babylonian.

Costume of a Susianian chief (Koyunjik).

Fig. 5.

Lion attacked with spear and axe.

Fig. 6.

Fig. 1. Fig. 2.
Costumes of the priests.

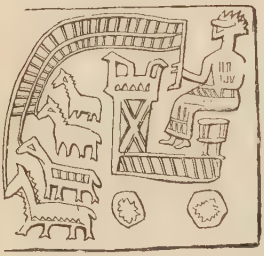
Fig. 3.

Priest wearing a peculiar mitre.

Fig. 1.

Priest-Vizier presenting captives to a king.

Fig. 2.



Babylonian four-horse chariot.

Fig 3.

.Men plougning, from a cylinder.

doubtless lodged the priests and other attendants upon the temple service. The side chambers seem sometimes to have communicated with vaulted apartments within the solid mass of the structure,[42] like those of which we hear in the structure supporting the "hanging gardens."[42] It is possible that there may have been internal stair-cases, connecting the vaulted apartments of one stage with those of another; but the ruin has not yet been sufficiently explored for us to determine whether or not there was such communication.

The great Tower is thought to have been approached through a vestibule of considerable size.[43] Towards the north-east the existing ruin is prolonged in an irregular manner and it is imagined that this prolongation marks the site of a vestibule or propylæum, originally distinct from the tower, but now, through the crumbling down of both buildings, confused with its ruins. As no scientific examination has been made of this part of the mound, the above supposition can only be regarded as a conjecture. Possibly the excrescence does not so much mark a vestibule as a second shrine, like that which is said to have existed at the foot of the Belus Tower at Babylon.[44] Till, however, additional researches have been made, it is in vain to think of restoring the plan or elevation of this part of the temple.[45]

From the temples of the Babylonians we may now pass to their palaces—constructions inferior in height and grandeur, but covering a greater space, involving a larger amount of labor, and admitting of more architectural variety. Unfortunately the palaces have suffered from the ravages of time even more than the temples, and in considering their plan and character we obtain little help from the existing remains. Still, something may be learnt of them from this source, and where it fails we may perhaps be allowed to eke out the scantiness of our materials by drawing from the elaborate descriptions of Diodorus such points as have probability in their favor.

The Babylonian palace, like the Assyrian,[46] and the Susian,[47] stood upon a lofty mound or platform. This arrangement provided at once for safety, for enjoyment, and for health. It secured a pure air, freedom from the molestation of insects, and a position only assailable at a few points.[48] The ordinary shape of the palace mound appears to have been square;[49] its elevation was probably not less than fifty or sixty feet.[50] It was composed mainly of sun-dried bricks, which however were almost certainly enclosed externally by a facing of burnt brick,

and may have been further strengthened within by walls of the same material, which perhaps traversed the whole mound.[51] The entire mass seems to have been carefully drained, and the collected waters were conveyed through subterranean channels to the level of the plain at the mound's base.[52] The summit of the platform was no doubt paved, either with stone or burnt brick – mainly, it is probable, with the latter; since the former material was scarce, and though a certain number of stone pavement slabs have been found,[53] they are too rare and scattered to imply anything like the general use of stone paving. Upon the platform, most likely towards the centre,[54] rose the actual palace, not built (like the Assyrian palaces) of crude brick faced with a better material, but constructed wholly of the finest and hardest burnt brick laid in a mortar of extreme tenacity,[55] with walls of enormous thickness,[56] parallel to the sides of the mound, and meeting each other at right angles. Neither the ground-plan nor the elevation of a Babylonian palace can be given; nor can even a conjectural restoration of such a building be made, since the small fragment of Nebuchadnezzar's palace which remains has defied all attempts to reduce it to system.[57] We can only say that the lines of the building were straight; that the walls rose, at any rate to a considerable height, without windows; and that the flatness of the straight line was broken by numerous buttressses and pilasters.[58] We have also evidence that occasionally there was an ornamentation of the building, either within or without, by means of sculptured stone slabs,[59] on which were represented figures of a small size, carefully wrought. The general ornamentation, however, external as well as internal, we may well believe to have been such as Diodorus states[60]—colored representations on brick of war-scenes, and hunting-scenes, the counterparts in a certain sense of those magnificent bas-reliefs which everywhere clothed the walls of palaces in Assyria. It has been already noticed that abundant remains of such representations have been found upon the Kasr mound.[61] [Pl. XV., Fig. 2.] They seem to have alternated with cuneiform inscriptions, in white on a blue ground, or else with a patterning of rosettes in the same colors.[62]

Of the general arrangement of the royal palaces, of their height, their number of stories, their roofing, and their lighting, we know absolutely nothing. The statement made by Herodotus, that many of the private houses in the town had three or four stories,[63] would naturally lead us to suppose

that the palaces were built similarly; but no ancient author tells us that this was so. The fact that the walls which exist, though of considerable height, show no traces of windows, would seem to imply that the lighting, as in Assyria,[64] was from the top of the apartment, either from the ceiling, or from apertures in the part of the walls adjoining the ceiling. Altogether, such evidence as exists favors the notion that the Babylonian palace, in its character and general arrangements, resembled the Assyrian, with only the two differences, that Babylonian was wholly constructed of burnt brick, while in the Assyrian the sun-dried material was employed to a large extent; and, further, that in Babylonia the decoration of the walls was made, not by slabs of alabaster, which did not exist in the country, but mainly—almost entirely—by colored representations upon the brickwork.[65]

Among the adjuncts of the principal palace at Babylon was the remarkable construction known to the Greeks and Romans as "the Hanging Garden." The accounts which Diodorus, Strabo, and Q. Curtius give of this structure[66] are not perhaps altogether trustworthy; still, it is probable that they are in the main at least founded on fact.[67] We may safely believe that a lofty structure was raised at Babylon on several tiers of arches,[68] which supported at the top a mass of earth, wherein grew, not merely flowers and shrubs, but trees of a considerable size. The Assyrians had been in the habit of erecting structures of a somewhat similar kind, artificial elevations to support a growth of trees and shrubs; but they were content to place their garden at the summit of a single row of pillars or arches,[69] and thus to give it a very moderate height. At Babylon the object was to produce an artificial imitation of a mountain.[70] For this purpose several tiers of arches were necessary; and these appear to have been constructed in the manner of a Roman amphitheatre, one directly over another, so that the outer wall formed from summit to base a single perpendicular line.[71] Of the height of the structure various accounts are given,[72] while no writer reports the number of the tiers of arches. Hence there are no sufficient data for a reconstruction of the edifice.[73]

Of the walls and bridge of Babylon, and of the ordinary houses of the people, little more is known than has been already reported in the general description of the capital.[74] It does not appear that they possessed any very great architectural merit. Some skill was shown in constructing the piers of

the bridge, which presented an angle to the current and then a curved line, along which the water slid gently.[75] [Pl. XV., Fig. 3.] The loftiness of the houses, which were of three or four stories,[76] is certainly surprising, since Oriental houses have very rarely more than two stories. Their construction, however, seems to have been rude; and the pillars especially—posts of palm, surrounded with wisps of rushes, and then plastered and painted[77]—indicate a low condition of taste and a poor and coarse style of domestic architecture.

The material used by the Babylonians in their constructions seems to have been almost entirely brick. Like the early Chaldæans,[78] they employed bricks of two kinds, both the ruder sun-dried sort, and the very superior kiln-baked article. The former, however, was only applied to platforms, and to the interior of palace mounds and of very thick walls, and was never made by the later people the sole material of a building.[79] In every case there was at least a *revêtement* of kiln-dried brick, while the grander buildings were wholly constructed of it.[80] The baked bricks used were of several different qualities, and (within rather narrow limits) of different sizes. The finest quality of brick was yellow, approaching to our Stourbridge or fire-brick:[81] another very hard kind was blue, approaching to black;[82] the commoner and coarser sorts were pink or red, and these were sometimes, though rarely, but half-baked, in which case they were weak and friable.[83] The shape was always square; and the dimensions varied between twelve and fourteen inches for the length and breadth, and between three and four inches for the thickness.[84] [Pl. XVII., Fig. 1.] At the corners of buildings, half-bricks were used in the alternate rows, since otherwise the joinings must have been all one exactly over another. The bricks were always made with a mold, and were commonly stamped on one face with an inscription.[85] They were, of course, ordinarily laid horizontally. Sometimes, however, there was a departure from this practice. Rows of bricks were placed vertically, separated from one another by single horizontal layers.[86] This arrangement seems to have been regarded as conducing to strength, since it occurs only where there is an evident intention of supporting a weak construction by the use of special architectural expedients.

The Babylonian builders made use of three different kinds of cement.[87] The most indifferent was crude clay, or mud, which was mixed with chopped straw, to give it greater tenacity, and was applied in layers of extraordinary thickness.[88]

This was at is probable employed only where it was requisite that the face of the building should have a certain color. A cement superior to clay, but not of any very high value, unless as a preventive against damp, was bitumen, which was very generally used in basements and in other structures exposed to the action of water. Mortar, however, or lime cement was far more commonly employed than either of the others, and was of very excellent quality, equal indeed to the best Roman material.[69]

There can be no doubt that the general effect of the more ambitious efforts of the Babylonian architects was grand and imposing. Even now, in their desolation and ruin, their great size renders them impressive; and there are times and states of atmosphere under which they fill the beholder with a sort of admiring awe, akin to the feeling which is called forth bo the contemplation of the great works of nature. Rude and inartificial in their idea and general construction, without architectural embellishment, without variety, without any beauty of form, they yet affect men by their mere mass, producing a direct impression of sublimity, and at the same time arousing a sentiment of wonder at the indomitable perseverance which from materials so unpromising could produce such gigantic results. In their original condition, when they were adorned with color, with a lavish display of the precious metals, with pictured representations of human life, and perhaps with statuary of a rough kind, they must have added to the impression produced by size a sense of richness and barbaric magnificence. The African spirit, which loves gaudy hues and costly ornament, was still strong among the Babylonians, even after they had been Semitized; and by the side of Assyria, her colder and more correct northern sister, Babylonia showed herself a true child of the south rich, glowing, careless of the laws of taste, bent on provoking admiration by the dazzling brilliancy of her appearance.

It is difficult to form a decided opinion as to the character of Babylonian mimetic art. The specimens discovered are so few, so fragmentary, and in some instances so worn by time and exposure, that we have scarcely the means of doing justice to the people in respect of this portion of their civilization. Setting aside the intaglios on seals and gems, which have such a general character of quaintness and grotesqueness, or at any rate of formality, that we can scarcely look upon many of them as the serious efforts of artists doing their best, we pos-

sess not half a dozen specimens of the mimetic art of the people in question. We have one sculpture *in the round*, one or two modelled clay figures, a few bas-reliefs, one figure of a king engraved on stone, and a few animal forms represented on the same material. Nothing more has reached us but fragments of pictorial representations too small for criticism to pronounce upon, and descriptions of ancient writers too incomplete to be of any great value.

The single Babylonian sculpture *in the round* which has come down to our times is the colossal lion standing over the prostrate figure of a man, which is still to be seen on the Kasr mound, as has been already mentioned.[91] The accounts of travellers uniformly state that it is a work of no merit[92]—either barbarously executed, or left unfinished by the sculptor[93]—and probably much worn by exposure to the weather. A sketch made by a recent visitor[94] and kindly communicated to the author, seems to show that, while the general form of the animal was tolerably well hit off, the proportions were in some respects misconceived, and the details not only rudely but incorrectly rendered. The extreme shortness of the legs and the extreme thickness of the tail are the most prominent errors; there is also great awkwardness in the whole representation of the beast's shoulder. The head is so mutilated that it is impossible to do more than conjecture its contour. Still the whole figure is not without a certain air of grandeur and majesty. [Pl. XVII., Fig. 3.]

The human appears to be inferior to the animal form. The prostrate man is altogether shapeless, and can never, it would seem, have been very much better than it is at the present time.

Modelled figures in clay are of rare occurrence. The best is one figured by Ker Porter,[95] which represents a mother with a child in her arms. The mother is seated in a natural and not ungraceful attitude on a rough square pedestal. She is naked except for a hood, or mantilla, which covers the head, shoulders, and back, and a narrow apron which hangs down in front. She wears earrings and a bracelet. The child, which sleeps on her left shoulder, wears a shirt open in front, and a short but full tunic, which is gathered into plaits. Both figures are in simple and natural taste, but the limbs of the infant are somewhat too thin and delicate. The statuette is about three inches and a half high, and shows signs of having been covered with a tinted glaze. [Pl. XVII., Fig. 2.]

The single figure of a king which we possess[96] is clumsy and ungraceful. It is chiefly remarkable for the elaborate ornamentation of the head-dress and the robes, which have a finish equal to that of the best Assyrian specimens. The general proportions are not bad; but the form is stiff, and the drawing of the right hand is peculiarly faulty, since it would be scarcely possible to hold arrows in the manner represented.[97] [Pl. XVIII., Fig. 2.]

The engraved animal forms have a certain amount of merit. The figure of a dog sitting, which is common on the "black stones,"[98] is drawn with spirit; [Pl. XVIII., Fig. 1.] and a bird, sometimes regarded as a cock, but more resembling a bustard, is touched with a delicate hand, and may be pronounced superior to any Assyrian representation of the feathered tribe. [Pl. XVIII., Fig. 3.] The hound on a bas-relief, given in the first volume of this work,[99] is also good; and the cylinders exhibit figures of goats, cows, deer, and even monkeys,[100] which are truthful and meritorious. [Pl. XIX., Fig. 1.]

It has been observed that the main characteristic of the engravings on gems and cylinders, considered as works of mimetic art, is their quaintness and grotesqueness. A few specimens, taken almost at random from the admirable collection of M. Felix Lajard, will sufficiently illustrate this feature. In one[101] the central position is occupied by a human figure whose left arm has two elbow-joints, while towards the right two sitting figures threaten one another with their fists, in the upper quarter, and in the lower two nondescript animals do the same with their jaws. [Pl. XVIII., Fig. 4.] The entire drawing of this design seems to be intentionally rude. The faces of the main figures are evidently intended to be ridiculous; and the heads of the two animals are extravagantly grotesque. On another cylinder[102] three nondescript animals play the principal part. One of them is on the point of taking into his mouth the head of a man who vainly tries to escape by flight. Another, with the head of a pike, tries to devour the third, which has the head of a bird and the body of a goat. This kind intention seems to be disputed by a naked man with a long beard, who seizes the fish-headed monster with his right hand, and at the same time administers from behind a severe kick with his right foot. The heads of the three main monsters, the tail and trousers of the principal one, and the whole of the small figure in front of the flying man, are exceedingly

quaint, and remind one of the pencil of Fuseli. [Pl. XIX., Fig. 3.] The third of the designs approaches nearly to the modern caricature. It is a drawing in two portions. The upper line of figures[104] represents a procession of worshippers who bear in solemn state their offerings to a god. In the lower line this occupation is turned to a jest. Nondescript animals bring with a serio-comic air offerings which consist chiefly of game, while a man in a mask seeks to steal away the sacred tree from the temple wherein the scene is enacted. [Pl. XIX., Fig. 4.]

It is probable that the most elaborate and most artistic of the Babylonian works of art were of a kind which has almost wholly perished. What bas-relief was to the Assyrian, what painting is to moderns, that enamelling upon brick appears to have been to the people of Babylon. The mimetic power, which delights in representing to itself the forms and actions of men, found a vent in this curious byway of the graphic art; and "the images of the Chaldæans, portrayed upon the wall, with vermilion,"[105] and other hues, formed the favorite adornment of palaces and public buildings, at once employing the artist, gratifying the taste of the native connoisseur, and attracting the admiration of the foreigner.[106]

The artistic merit of these works can only be conjectured. The admiration of the Jews, or even that of Diodorus,[107] who must be viewed here as the echo of Ctesias, is no sure test; for the Jews were a people very devoid of true artistic appreciation; and Ctesias was bent on exaggerating the wonders of foreign countries to the Greeks. The fact of the excellence of Assyrian art at a somewhat earlier date lends however support to the view that the wall-painting of the Babylonians had some real artistic excellence. We can scarcely suppose that there was any very material difference, in respect of taste and æsthetic power, between the two cognate nations, or that the Babylonians under Nebuchadnezzar fell very greatly short of the Assyrians under Asshur-bani-pal. It is evident that the same subjects -war scenes and hunting scenes[108]—approved themselves to both people; and it is likely that their treatment was not very different. Even in the matter of color, the contrast was not sharp nor strong; for the Assyrians partially colored their bas-reliefs.[109]

The tints chiefly employed by the Babylonians in their colored representations were white, blue, yellow, brown, and black.[110] The blue was of different shades, sometimes bright

and deep, sometimes exceedingly pale. The yellow was somewhat dull, resembling our yellow ochre. The brown was this same hue darkened. In comparatively rare instances the Babylonians made use of a red, which they probably obtained with some difficulty. Objects were colored, as nearly as possible, according to their natural tints—water a light blue, ground yellow, the shafts of spears black, lions a tawny brown, etc.[111] No attempt was made to shade the figures or the landscape, much less to produce any general effect by means of *chiaroscuro:* but the artist trusted for his effect to a careful delineation of forms, and a judicious arrangement of simple hues.

Considerable metallurgic knowledge and skill were shown in the composition of the pigments, and the preparation and application of the glaze wherewith they are covered. The red used was a sub-oxide of copper;[112] the yellow was sometimes oxide of iron,[113] sometimes antimoniate of lead—the Naples yellow of modern artists;[114] the blue was either cobalt or oxide of copper;[115] the white was oxide of tin.[116] Oxide of lead was added in some cases, not as a coloring matter, but as a flux, to facilitate the fusion of the glaze.[117] In other cases the pigment used was covered with a vitreous coat of an alkaline silicate of alumina.

The pigments were not applied to an entirely flat surface. Prior to the reception of the coloring matter and the glaze, each brick was modelled by the hand, the figures being carefully traced out, and a slight elevation given to the more important objects.[118] A very low bas-relief was thus produced, to which the colors were subsequently applied, and the brick was then baked in the furnace.

It is conjectured that the bricks were not modelled singly and separately. A large mass of clay was (it is thought) taken,[120] sufficient to contain a whole subject, or at any rate a considerable portion of a subject. On this the modeller made out his design in low relief. The mass of clay was then cut up into bricks, and each brick was taken and painted separately with the proper colors,[121] after which they were all placed in the furnace and baked.[122] When baked, they were restored to their original places in the design, a thin layer of the finest mortar serving to keep them in place.

From the mimetic art of the Babylonians, and the branches of knowledge connected with it, we may now pass to the purely mechanical arts—as the art by which hard stones were

cut, and those of agriculture, metallurgy, pottery, weaving, carpet-making, embroidery, and the like.

The stones shaped, bored, and engraved by Babylonian artisans were not merely the softer and more easily worked kinds, as alabaster, serpentine, and lapis-lazuli, but also the harder sorts—cornelian, agate, quartz, jasper, sienite, loadstone, and green felspar or amazon-stone.[123] These can certainly not have been cut without emery, and scarcely without such devices as rapidly revolving points, or discs, of the kind used by modern lapidaries. Though the devices are in general rude, the work is sometimes exceedingly delicate, and implies a complete mastery over tools and materials, as well as a good deal of artistic power. As far as the mechanical part of the art goes, the Babylonians may challenge comparison with the most advanced of the nations of antiquity; they decidedly excel the Egyptians,[124] and fall little, if at all, short of the Greeks and Romans.

The extreme minuteness of the work in some of the Babylonian seals and gems raises a suspicion that they must have been engraved by the help of a powerful magnifying-glass. A lens has been found in Assyria;[125] and there is much reason to believe that the convenience was at least as well known in the lower country.[126] Glass was certainly in use,[127] and was cut into such shapes as were required. It is at any rate exceedingly likely that magnifying-glasses, which were undoubtedly known to the Greeks in the time of Aristophanes,[128] were employed by the artisans of Babylon during the most flourishing period of the Empire.

Of Babylonian metal-work we have scarcely any direct means of judging. The accounts of ancient authors imply that the Babylonians dealt freely with the material, using gold and silver for statues, furniture, and utensils, bronze for gates and images, and iron sometimes for the latter.[129] We may assume that they likewise employed bronze and iron for tools and weapons, since those metals were certainly so used by the Assyrians. Lead was made of service in building;[130] where iron was also employed, if great strength was needed.[131] The golden images are said to have been sometimes solid,[132] in which case we must suppose them to have been cast in a mold; but undoubtedly in most cases the gold was a mere external covering, and was applied in plates, which were hammered into shape[133] upon some cheaper substance below. Silver was no doubt used also in plates, more especially when applied

externally to walls,[134] or internally to the woodwork of palaces;[135] but the silver images, ornamental figures, and utensils of which we hear, were most probably solid. The bronze works must have been remarkable. We are told that both the town and the palace gates were of this material,[136] and it is implied that the latter were too heavy to be opened in the ordinary manner.[137] Castings on an enormous scale would be requisite for such purposes: and the Babylonians must thus have possessed the art of running into a single mold vast masses of metal. Probably the gates here mentioned were solid;[138] but occasionally, it would seem, the Babylonians had gates of a different kind, composed of a number of perpendicular bars, united by horizontal ones above and below [as in Pl. XIX., Fig. 2.].[139] They had also, it would appear, metal gateways of a similar character.

The metal-work of personal ornaments, such as bracelets and armlets, and again that of dagger handles, seems to have resembled the work of the Assyrians.[140]

Small figures in bronze were occasionally cast by the Babylonians, which were sometimes probably used as amulets, while perhaps more generally they were mere ornaments of houses, furniture, and the like. Among these may be noticed figures of dogs in a sitting posture,[141] much resembling the dog represented among the constellations,[142] figures of men, grotesque in character, and figures of monsters. An interesting specimen, which combines a man and a monster, was found by Sir R. Ker Porter at Babylon.[143] [Pl. XX., Fig. 1.]

The pottery of the Babylonians was of excellent quality, and is scarcely to be distinguished from the Assyrian, which it resembles alike in form and in material.[144] The bricks of the best period were on the whole better than any used in the sister country, and may compare for hardness and fineness with the best Roman. The earthenware is of a fine terra-cotta, generally of a light red color, and slightly baked, but occasionally of a yellow hue, with a tinge of green. It consists of cups, jars, vases, and other vessels. They appear to have been made upon the wheel,[145] and are in general unornamented. From representations upon the cylinders,[146] it appears that the shapes were often elegant. Long and narrow vases with thin necks seem to have been used for water vessels; these had rounded or pointed bases, and required therefore the support of a stand. Thin jugs were also in use, with slight elegant handles. It is conjectured that sometimes modelled figures may have been

introduced at the sides as handles to the vases;[117] but neither the cylinders nor the extant remains confirm this supposition. The only ornamentation hitherto observed consists in a double band which seems to have been carried round some of the vases in an incomplete spiral.[118] The vases sometimes have two handles; but they are plain and small, adding nothing to the beauty of the vessels. Occasionally the whole vessel is glazed with a rich blue color. [Pl. XX., Fig. 3.]

The Babylonians certainly employed glass for vessels for a small size.[119] They appear not to have been very skilful blowers, since their bottles are not unfrequently misshapen. [Pl. XX., Fig. 3.] They generally stained their glass with some coloring matter, and occasionally ornamented it with a ribbing. Whether they were able to form masses of glass of any considerable size, whether they used it, like the Egyptians,[120] for beads and bugles, or for mosaics, is uncertain. If we suppose a foundation in fact for Pliny's story of the great emerald (?) presented by a king of Babylon to an Egyptian Pharaoh,[121] we must conclude that very considerable masses of glass were produced by the Babylonians, at least occasionally; for the said emerald, which can scarcely have been of any other material, was four cubits (or six feet) long and three cubits (or four and a half feet) broad.

Of all the productions of the Babylonians none obtained such high repute in ancient times as their textile fabrics. Their carpets especially were of great celebrity, and were largely exported to foreign countries.[122] They were dyed of various colors, and represented objects similar to those found on the gems, as griffins and such like monsters.[123] Their position in the ancient world may be compared to that which is now borne by the fabrics of Turkey and Persia, which are deservedly preferred to those of all other countries.

Next to their carpets, the highest character was borne by their muslins. Formed of the finest cotton, and dyed of the most brilliant colors, they seemed to the Oriental the very best possible material for dress. The Persian kings preferred them for their own wear;[124] and they had an early fame in foreign countries at a considerable distance from Babylonia.[125] It is probable that they were sometimes embroidered with delicate patterns, such as those which may be seen on the garments of the early Babylonian king (figured page 560).

Besides woollen and cotton fabrics, the Babylonians also manufactured a good deal of linen cloth, the principal seat of

the manufacture being Borsippa.[156] This material was produced, it is probable, chiefly for home consumption, long linen robes being generally worn by the people.[157]

From the arts of the Babylonians we may now pass to their science—an obscure subject, but one which possesses more than common interest. If the classical writers were correct in their belief that Chaldæa was the birthplace of Astronomy, and that their own astronomical science was derived mainly from this quarter,[158] it must be well worth inquiry what the amount of knowledge was which the Babylonians attained on the subject, and what were the means whereby they made their discoveries.

On the broad flat plains of Chaldæa, where the entire celestial hemisphere is continually visible to every eye,[159] and the clear transparent atmosphere shows night after night the heavens gemmed with countless stars, each shining with a brilliancy unknown in our moist northern climes, the attention of man was naturally turned earlier than elsewhere to these luminous bodies, and attempts were made to grasp, and reduce to scientific form, the array of facts which nature presented to the eye in a confused and tangled mass. It required no very long course of observation to acquaint men with a truth, which at first sight none would have suspected—namely, that the luminous points whereof the sky was full were of two kinds, some always maintaining the same position relatively to one another, while others were constantly changing their places, and as it were wandering about the sky. It is certain that the Babylonians at a very early date[160] distinguished from the fixed stars those remarkable five, which, from their wandering propensities, the Greeks called the "planets," and which are the only erratic stars that the naked eye, or that even the telescope, except at a very high power, can discern. With these five they were soon led to class the Moon, which was easily observed to be a wandering luminary, changing her place among the fixed stars with remarkable rapidity. Ultimately, it came to be perceived that the Sun too rose and set at different parts of the year in the neighborhood of different constellations, and that consequently the great luminary was itself also a wanderer, having a path in the sky which it was possible, by means of careful observation, to mark out.

But to do this, to mark out with accuracy the courses of the Sun and Moon among the fixed stars, it was necessary, or at

least convenient, to arrange the stars themselves into groups. Thus, too, and thus only, was it possible to give form and order to the chaotic confusion in which the stars seem at first sight to lie, owing to the irregularity of their intervals, the difference in their magnitude, and their apparent countlessness. The most uneducated eye, when raised to the starry heavens on a clear night, fixes here and there upon groups of stars: in the north, Cassiopeia, the Great Bear, the Pleiades—below the Equator, the Southern Cross—must at all times have impressed those who beheld them with a certain sense of unity. Thus the idea of a "constellation" is formed; and this once done, the mind naturally progresses in the same direction, and little by little the whole sky[161] is mapped out into certain portions or districts to which names are given—names taken from some resemblance, real or fancied, between the shapes of the several groups and objects familiar to the early observers. This branch of practical astronomy is termed "uranography" by moderns; its utility is very considerable; thus and thus only can we particularize the individual stars of which we wish to speak;[162] thus and thus only can we retain in our memory[163] the general arrangement of the stars and their positions relatively to each other.

There is reason to believe that in the early Babylonian astronomy the subject of uranography occupied a prominent place. The Chaldæan astronomers not only seized on and named those natural groups which force themselves upon the eye, but artificially arranged the whole heavens into a certain number of constellations or asterisms. The very system of uranography which maintains itself to the present day on our celestial globes and maps, and which is still acknowledged—albeit under protest[164]—in the nomenclature of scientific astronomers, came in all probability from this source, reaching us from the Arabians, who took it from the Greeks, who derived it from the Babylonians. The Zodiacal constellations, at any rate, or those through which the sun's course lies, would seem to have had this origin; and many of them may be distinctly recognized on Babylonian monuments which are plainly of a stellar character.[165] The accompanying representation, taken from a conical black stone in the British Museum [Pl. XX., Fig. 2.], and belonging to the twelfth century before our era, is not perhaps, strictly speaking, a zodiac, but it is almost certainly an arrangement of constellations accord-

ing to the forms assigned them in Babylonian uranography. [Pl. XXI.] The Ram, the Bull, the Scorpion, the Serpent, the Dog, the Arrow, the Eagle or Vulture may all be detected on the stone in question, as may similar forms variously arranged on other similar monuments.

The Babylonians called the Zodiacal constellations the "Houses of the Sun," and distinguished from them another set of asterisms, which they denominated the "Houses of the Moon." As the Sun and Moon both move through the sky in nearly the same plane, the path of the Moon merely crossing and recrossing that of the Sun, but never diverging from it further than a few degrees, it would seem that these "Houses of the Moon," or lunar asterisms,[168] must have been a division of the Zodiacal stars different from that employed with respect to the sun, either in the number of the "Houses," or in the point of separation between "House" and "House."

The Babylonians observed and calculated eclipses; but their power of calculation does not seem to have been based on scientific knowledge, nor to have necessarily implied sound views as to the nature of eclipses or as to the size, distance, and real motions of the heavenly bodies. The knowledge which they possessed was empirical. Their habits of observation led them to discover the period of 223 lunations or 18 years 10 days,[169] after which eclipses—especially those of the the moon—recur again in the same order. Their acquaintance with this cycle would enable them to predict lunar eclipses with accuracy for many ages, and solar eclipses without much inaccuracy for the next cycle or two.

That the Babylonians carefully noted and recorded eclipses is witnessed by Ptolemy,[170] who had access to a continuous series of such observations reaching back from his own time to B.C. 747. Five of these—all eclipses of the moon—were described by Hipparchus[171] from Babylonian sources, and are found to answer all the requirements of modern science. They belong to the years B.C. 721, 720, 621, and 523. One of them, that of B.C. 721, was total at Babylon. The others were partial, the portion of the moon obscured varying from one digit to seven.

There is no reason to think that the observation of eclipses by the Babylonians commenced with Nabonassar.[170] Ptolemy indeed implies that the series extant in his day went no higher;[171] but this is to be accounted for by the fact, which

Berosus mentioned,[172] that Nabonassar destroyed, as far as he was able, the previously existing observations, in order that exact chronology might commence with his own reign.

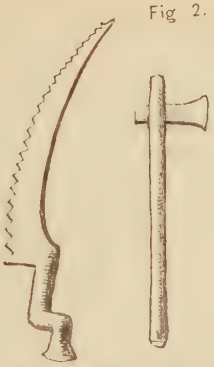
Other astronomical achievements of the Babylonians were the following. They accomplished a catalogue of the fixed stars, of which the Greeks made use in compiling their stellar tables.[173] They observed and recorded their observations upon occultations of the planets by the sun and moon.[174] They invented the *gnomon* and the *polos*,[175] two kinds of sun-dial, by means of which they were able to measure time during the day, and to fix the true length of the solar day, with sufficient accuracy. They determined correctly within a small fraction the length of the synodic revolution of the moon.[176] They knew that the true length of the solar year was 365 days and a quarter, nearly.[177] They noticed comets, which they believed to be permanent bodies, revolving in orbits like those of the planets, only greater.[178] They ascribed eclipses of the sun to the interposition of the moon between the sun and the earth.[179] They had notions not far from the truth with respect to the relative distance from the earth of the sun, moon, and planets. Adopting, as was natural, a geocentric system, they decided that the Moon occupied the position nearest to the earth;[180] that beyond the Moon was Mercury, beyond Mercury Venus, beyond Venus Mars, beyond Mars Jupiter, and beyond Jupiter, in the remotest position of all, Saturn.[181] This arrangement was probably based upon a knowledge, more or less exact, of the periodic times which the several bodies occupy in their (real or apparent) revolutions. From the difference in the times the Babylonians assumed a corresponding difference in the size of the orbits, and consequently a greater or less distance from the common centre.

Thus far the astronomical achievements of the Babylonians rest upon the express testimony of ancient writers—a testimony confirmed in many respects by the monuments already deciphered. It is suspected that, when the astronomical tablets which exist by hundreds in the British Museum come to be thoroughly understood, it will be found that the acquaintance of the Chaldæan sages with astronomical phenomena, if not also with astronomical laws, went considerably beyond the point at which we should place it upon the testimony of the Greek and Roman writers.[182] There is said to be distinct evidence that they observed the four satellites of Jupiter, and strong reason

Fig. 1.

Milking the goat, from a cylinder.

Fig. 2.



Babylonian saw and hatchet (from the cylinders).

Fig. 3.

Babylonian harp, from a cylinder.

Fig. 4.

Babylonian women making an offering to a goddess.

Fig. 5.

Babylonian women gathering dates in a garden.

View in the mountain pass between Bushire and Shiraz.

to believe that they were acquainted likewise with the seven satellites of Saturn. Moreover, the general laws of the movements of the heavenly bodies seem to have been so far known to them that they could state by anticipation the position of the various planets throughout the year.

In order to attain the astronomical knowledge which they seem to have possessed, the Babylonians must undoubtedly have employed a certain number of instruments. The invention of sun-dials, as already observed,[153] is distinctly assigned to them. Besides these contrivances for measuring time during the day, it is almost certain that they must have possessed means of measuring time during the night. The clepsydra, or water-clock, which was in common use among the Greeks as early as the fifth century before our era,[154] was probably introduced into Greece from the East, and is likely to have been a Babylonian invention. The astrolabe, an instrument for measuring the altitude of stars above the horizon, which was known to Ptolemy, may also reasonably be assigned to them. It has generally been assumed that they were wholly ignorant of the telescope.[155] But if the satellites of Saturn are really mentioned, as it is thought that they are, upon some of the tablets, it will follow—strange as it may seem to us—that the Babylonians possessed optical instruments of the nature of telescopes, since it is impossible, even in the clear and vaporless sky of Chaldæa, to discern the faint moons of that distant planet without lenses. A lens, it must be remembered, with a fair magnifying power, has been discovered among the Mesopotamian ruins.[156] A people ingenious enough to discover the magnifying-glass would be naturally led on to the invention of its opposite. When once lenses of the two contrary kinds existed, the elements of a telescope were in being. We could not assume from these data that the discovery was made; but if it shall ultimately be substantiated that bodies invisible to the naked eye were observed by the Babylonians, we need feel no difficulty in ascribing to them the possession of some telescopic instrument.

The astronomical zeal of the Babylonians was in general, it must be confessed, no simple and pure love of an abstract science. A school of pure astronomers existed among them;[157] but the bulk of those who engaged in the study undoubtedly pursued it in the belief that the heavenly bodies had a mysterious influence, not only upon the seasons, but upon the lives and actions of men—an influence which it was possible to dis-

cover and to foretell by prolonged and careful observation. The ancient writers, Biblical and other,[127] state this fact in the strongest way; and the extant astronomical remains distinctly confirm it. The great majority of the tablets are of an astrological character, recording the supposed influence of the heavenly bodies, singly, in conjunction, or in opposition, upon all sublunary affairs, from the fate of empires to the washing of hands or the paring of nails. The modern prophetical almanac is the legitimate descendant and the sufficient representative of the ancient Chaldee Ephemeris, which was just as silly, just as pretentious, and just as worthless.

The Chaldee astrology was, primarily and mainly, genethlialogical.[129] It inquired under what aspect of the heavens persons were born, or conceived,[130] and, from the position of the celestial bodies at one or other of these moments, it professed to deduce the whole life and fortunes of the individual. According to Diodorus,[131] it was believed that a particular star or constellation presided over the birth of each person, and thenceforward exercised over his life a special malign or benignant influence. But his lot depended, not on this star alone, but on the entire aspect of the heavens at a certain moment. To cast the horoscope was to reproduce this aspect, and then to read by means of it the individual's future.

Chaldee astrology was not, however, limited to genethlialogy. The Chaldæans professed to predict from the stars such things as the changes of the weather, high winds and storms, great heats, the appearance of comets, eclipses, earthquakes, and the like.[132] They published lists of luck and unlucky days, and tables showing what aspect of the heavens portended good or evil to particular countries.[133] Curiously enough, it appears that they regarded their art as locally limited to the regions inhabited by themselves and their kinsmen, so that while they could boldly predict storm, tempest, failing or abundant crops, war, famine, and the like, for Syria, Babylonia, and Susiana, they could venture on no prophecies with respect to other neighboring lands, as Persia, Media, Armenia.

A certain amount of real meteorological knowledge was probably mixed up with the Chaldæan astrology. Their calendars, like modern almanacs, boldly predicted the weather for fixed days in the year.[134] They must also have been mathematicians to no inconsiderable extent, since their methods appear to have been geometrical. It is said that the Greek mathematicians often quoted with approval the works of their

Chaldæan predecessors, Cidênas, Naburianus, and Sudinus.[195] Of the nature and extent of their mathematical acquirements, no account, however, can be given, since the writers who mention them enter into no details on the subject.

CHAPTER VI.

MANNERS AND CUSTOMS.

"Girded with girdles upon their loins, exceeding in dyed attire upon their heads, all of them princes to look to, after the manner of the Babylonians of Chaldæa, the land of their nativity."—Ezek. xxiii. 15.

THE manners and customs of the Babylonians, though not admitting of that copious illustration from ancient monuments which was found possible in the case of Assyria, are yet sufficiently known to us, either from the extant remains or from the accounts of ancient writers of authority, to furnish materials for a short chapter. Herodotus, Strabo, Diodorus, and Nicolas of Damascus, present us with many interesting traits of this somewhat singular people; the sacred writers contemporary with the acme of the nation add numerous touches; while the remains, though scanty, put distinctly and vividly before our eyes a certain number of curious details.

Herodotus describes with some elaboration the costume of the Babylonians in his day. He tells us that they wore a long linen gown reaching down to their feet, a woollen gown or tunic above this, a short cloak or cape of a white color, and shoes like those of the Bœotians.[1] Their hair they allowed to grow long, but confined it by a head-band or a turban;[2] and they always carried a walking-stick with a carving of some kind on the handle. This portraiture, it is probable, applies to the richer inhabitants of the capital, and represents the Babylonian gentleman of the fifth century before our era, as he made his appearance in the streets of the metropolis.

The cylinders seem to show that the ordinary Babylonian dress was less complicated. The worshipper who brings an offering to a god is frequently represented with a bare head, and wears apparently but one garment, a tunic generally ornamented with a diagonal fringe, and reaching from the

shoulder to a little above the knee. The tunic is confined round the waist by a belt. [Pl. XXII., Fig. 1.] Richer worshippers, who commonly present a goat, have a fillet or headband, not a turban, round the head. They wear generally the same sort of tunic as the others: but over it they have a long robe, shaped like a modern dressing-gown, except that it has no sleeves, and does not cover the right shoulder. [Pl. XXII., Fig. 1.] In a few instances only we see underneath this open gown a long inner dress or robe, such as that described by Herodotus. [Pl. XXII., Fig. 2.] A cape or tippet of the kind which he describes is worn sometimes by a god, but is never seen, it is believed, in any representation of a mortal.[7]

The short tunic, worn by the poorer worshippers, is seen also in a representation (hereafter to be given[8]) of hunters attacking a lion. A similar garment is worn by the man—probably a slave—who accompanies the dog, supposed to represent an Indian hound;[9] and also by a warrior, who appears on one of the cylinders conducting six foreign captives.[10] [Pl. XXII., Fig. 4.] There is consequently much reason to believe that such a tunic formed the ordinary costume of the common people, as it does at present of the common Arab inhabitants of the country. It left the arms and right shoulder bare, covering only the left. Below the belt it was not made like a frock but lapped over in front, being in fact not so much a garment as a piece of cloth wrapped round the body. Occasionally it is represented as patterned;[11] but this is somewhat unusual. [Pl. XXII., Fig. 3.]

In lieu of the long robe reaching to the feet, which seems to have been the ordinary costume of the higher classes, we observe sometimes a shorter, but still a similar garment—a sort of coat without sleeves, fringed down both sides, and reaching only a little below the knee.[12] The worshippers who wear this robe have in most cases the head adorned with a fillet. [Pl. XXIII., Fig. 1.]

It is unusual to find any trace of boots or shoes in the representations of Babylonians. A shoe patterned with a sort of check work was worn by the king;[13] and soldiers seem to have worn a low boot in their expeditions.[14] But with rare exceptions the Babylonians are represented with bare feet on the monuments; and if they commonly wore shoes in the time of Herodotus, we may conjecture that they had adopted the practice from the example of the Medes and Persians.[15] A low boot, laced in front, was worn by the chiefs of the Susianians.

Perhaps the "peculiar shoe" of the Babylonians [12] was not very different. [Pl. XXIII., Fig. 1.]

The girdle was an essential feature of Babylonian costume,[13] common to high and low, to the king and to the peasant. It was a broad belt, probably of leather, and encircled the waist rather high up. The warrior carried his daggers in it; to the common man it served the purpose of keeping in place the cloth which he wore round his body. According to Herodotus,[14] it was also universal in Babylonia to carry a seal and a walking-stick.

Special costumes, differing considerably from those hitherto described, distinguished the king and the priests. The king wore a long gown, somewhat scantily made, but reaching down to the ankles, elaborately patterned and fringed. Over this, apparently, he had a close-fitting sleeved vest, which came down to the knees, and terminated in a set of heavy tassels. The girdle was worn outside the outer vest, and in war the monarch carried also two cross-belts, which perhaps supported his quiver. The upper vest was, like the under one, richly adorned with embroidery. From it, or from the girdle, depended in front a single heavy tassel attached by a cord, similar to that worn by the early kings of Assyria.[15]

The tiara of the monarch was very remarkable. It was of great height, nearly cylindrical, but with a slight tendency to swell out toward the crown, [16] which was ornamented with a row of feathers round its entire circumference.[17] The space below was patterned with rosettes, sacred trees, and mythological figures. From the centre of the crown there rose above the feathers a projection resembling in some degree the projection which distinguishes the tiara of the Assyrian kings, the rounded, and not squared, at top. This head-dress, which has a heavy appearance, was worn low on the brow, and covered nearly all the back of the head. It can scarcely have been composed of a heavier material than cloth or felt. Probably it was brilliantly colored.[18]

The monarch wore bracelets, but (apparently) neither necklaces[19] nor earrings. These last are assigned by Nicolas of Damascus to a Babylonian governor;[20] and they were so commonly used by the Assyrians that we can scarcely suppose them unknown to their kindred and neighbors. The Babylonian monuments, however, contain no traces of earrings as worn by men, and only a few doubtful ones of collars or necklaces;[21] whence we may at any rate conclude that neither were

worn at all generally. The bracelets which encircle the royal wrist resemble the most common bracelet of the Assyrians,[22] consisting of a plain band, probably of metal, with a rosette in the centre.

The dress of the priests was a long robe or gown, flounced and striped, over which they seem to have worn an open jacket of a similar character. A long scarf or riband depended from behind down their backs.[23] They carried on their heads an elaborate crown or mitre, which is assigned also to many of the gods.[24] In lieu of this mitre, we find sometimes, though rarely, a horned cap; and, in one or two instances, a mitre of a different kind.[25] In all sacrificial and ceremonial acts the priests seem to have worn their heads covered. [Pl. XXIII., Fig. 6.]

On the subject of the Babylonian military costume our information is scanty and imperfect. In the time of Herodotus the Chaldæans seem to have had the same armature as the Assyrians[26]—namely, bronze helmets, linen breastplates, shields, spears, daggers, and maces or clubs: and, at a considerably earlier date, we find in Scripture much the same arms, offensive and defensive, assigned them.[27] There is, however, one remarkable difference between the Biblical account and that given by Herodotus. The Greek historian says nothing of the use of bows by the Chaldæans: while in Scripture the bow appears as their favorite weapon, that which principally renders them formidable.[28] The monuments are on this point thoroughly in accordance with Scripture. The Babylonian king already represented carries a bow and two arrows.[29] The soldier conducting captives has a bow an arrow, and a quiver.[30] A monument of an earlier date,[31] which is perhaps rather Proto-Chaldæan than pure Babylonian, yet which has certain Babylonian characteristics, makes the arms of a king a bow and arrow, a club (?), and a dagger. In the marsh fights of the Assyrians, where their enemies are probably Chaldæans of the low country, the bow is the sole weapon which we see in use.[32]

The Babylonian bow nearly resembles the ordinary curved bow of the Assyrians.[33] It has a knob at either extremity, over which the string passes, and is thicker towards the middle than at the two ends; the bend is slight, the length when strung less than four feet. [Pl. XXIII., Fig. 2.] The length of the arrow is about three feet. It is carefully notched and feathered, and has a barbed point. The quiver, as represented

in the Assyrian sculptures, has nothing remarkable about it; but the single extant Babylonian representation[34] makes it terminate curiously with a large ornament resembling a spear-head. It is difficult to see the object of this appendage, which must have formed no inconsiderable addition to the weight of the quiver. [Pl. XXIII., Fig. 3.]

Babylonian daggers were short, and shaped like the Assyrian; but their handles were less elegant and less elaborately ornamented.[35] They were worn in the girdle (as they are at the present day in all eastern countries) either in pairs or singly. [Pl. XXIII., Fig. 3.]

Other weapons of the Babylonians, which we may be sure they used in war, though the monuments do not furnish any proof of the fact, were the spear and the bill or axe. These weapons are exhibited in combination upon one of the most curious of the cylinders, where a lion is disturbed in his meal off an ox by two rustics, one of whom attacks him in front with a spear, while the other seizes his tail and assails him in the rear with an axe. [Pl. XXIII., Fig. 5.] With the axe here represented may be compared another, which is found on a clay tablet brought from Sinkara, and supposed to belong to the early Chaldæan period.[36] The Sinkara axe has a simple square blade: the axe upon the cylinder has a blade with long curved sides and a curved edge; while, to balance the weight of the blade, it has on the lower side three sharp spikes. The difference between the two implements marks the advance of mechanical art in the country between the time of the first and that of the fourth monarchy. [Pl. XXIII., Fig. 4.]

Babylonian armies seem to have been composed, like Assyrian,[37] of three elements—infantry, cavalry, and chariots. Of the chariots we appear to have one or two representations upon the cylinders,[38] but they are too rudely carved to be of much value. It is not likely that the chariots differed much either in shape or equipment from the Assyrian, unless they were, like those of Susiana,[39] ordinarily drawn by mules. A peculiar car, four-wheeled, and drawn by four horses, with an elevated platform in front and a seat behind for the driver, which the cylinders occasionally exhibit,[4] is probably not a war-chariot, but a sacred vehicle, like the *tensa* or *thensa* of the Romans.[41] [Pl. XXIV., Fig. 2.]

The Prophet Habakkuk evidently considered the cavalry of the Babylonians to be their most formidable arm. "They are terrible and dreadful," he said; "from them shall proceed

judgment and captivity; their horses also are swifter than the leopards, and are more fierce than the evening wolves; and their horsemen shall spread themselves, and their horsemen shall come from far; they shall fly, as the eagle that hasteth to eat."[42] Similarly Ezekiel spoke of the "desirable young men, captains and rulers, great lords and renowned; *all of them riding upon horses.*"[43] Jeremiah couples the horses with the chariots, as if he doubted whether the chariot force or the cavalry were the more to be dreaded. "Behold, he shall come up as clouds, and his chariot shall be as a whirlwind; his horses are swifter than eagles. Woe unto us! for we are spoiled."[44] In the army of Xerxes the Babylonians seem to have served only on foot,[45] which would imply that they were not considered in that king's time to furnish such good cavalry as the Persians, Medes, Cissians, Indians, and others, who sent contingents of horse. Darius, however, in the Behistun inscription, speaks of Babylonian horsemen;[46] and the armies which overran Syria, Palestine, and Egypt, seem to have consisted mainly of horse.[47]

The Babylonian armies, like the Persian, were vast hosts, poorly disciplined, composed not only of native troops, but of contingents from the subject nations, Cissians, Elamites, Shuhites, Assyrians, and others.[48] They marched with vast noise and tumult,[49] spreading themselves far and wide over the country which they were invading,[50] plundering and destroying on all sides. If their enemy would consent to a pitched battle, they were glad to engage with him; but, more usually, their contests resolved themselves into a succession of sieges, the bulk of the population attacked retreating to their strongholds, and offering behind walls a more or less protracted resistance. The weaker towns were assaulted with battering-rams;[51] against the stronger, mounds were raised,[52] reaching nearly to the top of the walls, which were then easily scaled or broken down. A determined persistence in sieges seems to have characterized this people, who did not take Jerusalem till the third,[53] nor Tyre till the fourteenth year.[54]

In expeditions it sometimes happened that a question arose as to the people or country next to be attacked. In such cases it appears that recourse was had to divination, and the omens which were obtained decided whither the next effort of the invader should be directed.[55] Priests doubtless accompanied the expeditions to superintend the sacrifices and interpret them on such occasions.

According to Diodorus,[56] the priests in Babylonia were a

caste, devoted to the service of the native deities and the pursuits of philosophy, and held in high honor by the people. It was their business to guard the temples and serve at the altars of the gods, to explain dreams and prodigies, to understand omens, to read the warnings of the stars, and to instruct men how to escape the evils threatened in these various ways, by purifications, incantations, and sacrifices. They possessed a traditional knowledge which had come down from father to son, and which none thought of questioning. The laity looked up to them as the sole possessors of a recondite wisdom of the last importance to humanity.

With these statements of the lively but inaccurate Sicilian those of the Book of Daniel are very fairly, if not entirely, in accordance. A class of "wise men" is described as existing at Babylon,[59] foremost among whom are the Chaldæans;[60] they have a special "learning,"[61] and (as it would seem) a special "tongue;"[62] their business is to expound dreams and prodigies;[63] they are in high favor with the monarch, and are often consulted by him. This body of "wise men" is subdivided into four classes—"Chaldæans, magicians, astrologers, and soothsayers"—a subdivision which seems to be based upon difference of occupation.[64] It is not distinctly stated that they are priests; nor does it seem that they were a caste; for Jews are enrolled among their number,[65] and Daniel himself is made chief of the entire body.[66] But they form a very distinct order, and constitute a considerable power in the state; they have direct communication with the monarch, and they are believed to possess, not merely human learning, but a supernatural power of predicting future events. High civil office is enjoyed by some of their number.[67]

Notices agreeing with these, but of less importance, are contained in Herodotus and Strabo. Herodotus speaks of the Chaldæans as "priests;"[68] Strabo says that they were "philosophers," who occupied themselves principally in astronomy.[69] The latter writer mentions that they were divided into sects, who differed one from another in their doctrines. He gives the names of several Chaldæans whom the Greek mathematicians were in the habit of quoting. Among them is a Seleucus, who by his name should be a Greek.

From these various authorities we may assume that there was in Babylon, as in Egypt, and in later Persia, a distinct priest class, which enjoyed high consideration. It was not, strictly speaking, a caste. Priests may have generally brought

up their sons to the occupation; but other persons, even foreigners (and if foreigners, then *à fortiori* natives), could be enrolled in the order, and attain its highest privileges.[68] It was at once a sacerdotal and a learned body. It had a literature, written in peculiar language, which its members were bound to study. This language and this literature were probably a legacy from the old times of the first (Turano-Cushite) kingdom, since even in Assyria it is found that the literature was in the main Turanian, down to the very close of the empire.[69] Astronomy, astrology, and mythology were no doubt the chief subjects which the priests studied; but history, chronology, grammar, law, and natural science most likely occupied some part of their attention.[70] Conducting everywhere the worship of the gods, they were of course scattered far and wide through the country; but they had certain special seats of learning, corresponding perhaps in some sort to our universities, the most famous of which were Erech or Orchoë (Warka), and Borsippa,[71] the town represented by the modern Birs-i-Nimrud. They were diligent students, not wanting in ingenuity, and not content merely to hand down the wisdom of their ancestors. Schools arose among them; and a boldness of speculation developed itself akin to that which we find among the Greeks. Astronomy, in particular, was cultivated with a good deal of success; and stores were accumulated of which the Greeks in later times understood and acknowledged the value.

In social position the priest class stood high. They had access to the monarch:[72] they were feared and respected by the people: the offerings of the faithful made them wealthy; their position as interpreters of the divine will secured them influence. Being regarded as capable of civil employment, they naturally enough obtained frequently important offices,[73] which added to their wealth and consideration.

The mass of the people in Babylonia were employed in the two pursuits of commerce and agriculture. The commerce was both foreign and domestic. Great numbers of the Babylonians were engaged in the manufacture of those textile fabrics, particularly carpets and muslins,[74] which Babylonia produced not only for her own use, but also for the consumption of foreign countries.[75] Many more must have been employed as lapidaries in the execution of those delicate engravings on hard stone, wherewith the seal, which every Babylonian carried, was as a matter of course adorned. The ordinary trades and handicrafts practised in the East no doubt flourished in the country. A

brisk import and export trade was constantly kept up, and promoted a healthful activity throughout the entire body politic. Babylonia is called "a land of traffic" by Ezekiel, and Babylon "a city of merchants."[76] Isaiah says "the cry of the Chaldæans" was "in their ships."[77] The monuments show that from very early times the people of the low country on the borders of the Persian Gulf were addicted to maritime pursuits, and navigated the gulf freely, if they did not even venture on the open ocean.[78] And Æschylus is a witness that the nautical character still attached to the people after their conquest by the Persians: for he calls the Babylonians in the army of Xerxes "navigators of ships."[79]

The Babylonian import trade, so far as it was carried on by themselves, seems to have been chiefly with Arabia, with the islands in the Persian Gulf, and directly or indirectly with India. From Arabia they must have imported the frankincense which they used largely in their religious ceremonies;[80] from the Persian Gulf they appear to have derived pearls, cotton, and wood for walking sticks;[81] from India they obtained dogs[82] and several kinds of gems.[83] If we may believe Strabo, they had a colony called Gerrha, most favorably situated on the Arabian coast of the gulf, which was a great emporium, and conducted not only the trade between Babylonia and the regions to the south, but also that which passed through Babylonia into the more northern districts.[84] The products of the various countries of Western Asia flowed into Babylonia down the courses of the rivers. From Armenia, or rather Upper Mesopotamia, came wine,[85] gems, emery, and perhaps stone for building;[86] from Phœnicia, by way of Palmyra and Thapsacus, came tin,[87] perhaps copper, probably musical instruments,[88] and other objects of luxury; from Media and the countries towards the east[89] came fine wool, lapis-lazuli, perhaps silk, and probably gold and ivory. But these imports seem to have been brought to Babylonia by foreign merchants rather than imported by the exertions of native traders. The Armenians, the Phœnicians, and perhaps the Greeks,[90] used for the conveyance of their goods the route of the Euphrates. The Assyrians, the Paretaceni, and the Medes probably floated theirs down the Tigris and its tributaries.[91]

A large—probably the largest—portion of the people must have been engaged in the occupations of agriculture. Babylonia was, before all things, a grain-producing country—noted for a fertility unexampled elsewhere, and to moderns almost

incredible. The soil was a deep and rich alluvium,[92] and was cultivated with the utmost care. It grew chiefly wheat, barley millet, and sesame,[93] which all flourished with wonderful luxuriance. By a skilful management of the natural water supply, the indispensable fluid was utilized to the utmost, and conveyed to every part of the country.[94] Date-groves spread widely over the land, [95] and produced abundance of an excellent fruit.[96]

For the cultivation of the date nothing was needed but a proper water supply, and a little attention at the time of fructification. The male and female palm are distinct trees, and the female cannot produce fruit unless the pollen from the male comes in contact with its blossoms. If the male and the female trees are grown in proper proximity, natural causes will always produce a certain amount of impregnation. But to obtain a good crop, art may be serviceably applied. According to Herodotus, the Babylonians were accustomed to tie the branches of the male to those of the female palm.[97] This was doubtless done at the blossoming time, when it would have the effect he mentions, preventing the fruit of the female, or date-producing palms, from falling off.

The date palm was multiplied in Babylonia by artificial means. It was commonly grown from seed, several stones being planted together for greater security;[98] but occasionally it was raised from suckers or cuttings.[99] It was important to plant the seeds and cuttings in a sandy soil: and if nature had not sufficiently impregnated the ground with saline particles, salt had to be applied artificially to the soil around as a dressing. The young plants needed a good deal of attention. Plentiful watering was required; and transplantation was desirable at the end of both the first and second year. The Babylonians are said to have transplanted their young trees in the height of summer: other nations preferred the springtime.[100]

For the cultivation of grain the Babylonians broke up their land with the plough; to draw which they seem to have employed two oxen, placed one before the other, in the mode still common in many parts of England. The plough had two handles, which the ploughman guided with his two hands. It was apparently of somewhat slight construction. The tail rose from the lower part of one of the handles, and was of unusual length.[101] [Pl. XXIV., Fig. 3.]

It is certain that dates formed the main food of the inhabitants. The dried fruit, being to them the staff of life, was re-

garded by the Greeks as their "bread."[102] It was perhaps pressed into cakes, as is the common practice in the country at the present day.[3] On this and goat's milk, which we know to have been in use,[104] the poorer class, it is probable, almost entirely subsisted. Palm-wine,[105] the fermented sap of the tree, was an esteemed, but no doubt only an occasional beverage. It was pleasant to the taste, but apt to leave a headache behind it.[106] Such vegetables as gourds, melons, and cucumbers, must have been cheap, and may have entered into the diet of the common people. They were also probably the consumers of the "pickled bats," which (according to Strabo) were eaten by the Babylonians.[107]

In the marshy regions of the south there were certain tribes whose sole, or at any rate whose chief, food was fish.[108] Fish abound in these districts,[4] and are readily taken either with the hook or in nets. The mode of preparing this food was to dry it in the sun, to pound it fine, strain it through a sieve, and then make it up into cakes, or into a kind of bread.

The diet of the richer classes was no doubt varied and luxurious. Wheaten bread, meats of various kinds, luscious fruits, fish, game, loaded the board; and wine, imported from abroad,[5] was the usual beverage. The wealthy Babylonians were fond of drinking to excess; their banquets were magnificent, but generally ended in drunkenness;[111] they were not, however, mere scenes of coarse indulgence, but had a certain refinement, which distinguishes them from the riotous drinking-bouts of the less civilized Medes.[112] Music was in Babylonia a recognized accompaniment of the feast; and bands of performers, entering with the wine, entertained the guests with concerted pieces.[113] A rich odor of perfume floated around, for the Babylonians were connoisseurs in unguents.[114] The eye was delighted with a display of gold and silver plate.[115] The splendid dresses of the guests, the exquisite carpets and hangings, the numerous attendants, gave an air of grandeur to the scene, and seemed half to excuse the excess of which too many were guilty.

A love of music appears to have characterized both the Babylonians and their near neighbors and kinsmen, the Susianians. In the sculptured representations of Assyria,[116] the Susianians are shown to have possessed numerous instruments, and to have organized large bands of performers. The Prophet Daniel[117] and the historian Ctesias[118] similarly witness to the musical taste of the Babylonians, which had much the same

character. Ctesias said that Annarus (or Xannarus), a Babylonian noble, entertained his guests at a banquet with music performed by a company of 150 women. Of these a part sang, while the rest played upon instruments, some using the pipe, others the harp, and a certain number the psaltery.[119] These same instruments[120] are assigned to the Babylonians by the prophet Daniel, who, however, adds to them three more —viz., the horn, the *sambuca*, and an instrument called the *sumphonia*, or "symphony." It is uncertain whether the horn intended was straight, like the Assyrian, or curved, like the Roman *cornu* and *lituus*.[121] The pipe was probably the double instrument, played at the end, which was familiar to the Susianians and Assyrians.[122] The harp would seem to have resembled the later harp of the Assyrians; but it had fewer strings, if we may judge from a representation upon a cylinder.[123] Like the Assyrian, it was carried under one arm,[124] and was played by both hands, one on either side of the strings. [Pl. XXV., Fig. 3.]

The character of the remaining instruments is more doubtful. The *sambuca* seems to have been a large harp, which rested on the ground,[125] like the harps of the Egyptians. The psaltery was also a stringed instrument, and, if its legitimate descendant is the modern *santour*,[126] we may presume that it is represented in the hands of a Susianian musician on the monument which is our chief authority for the Oriental music of the period. The *sumphonia* is thought by some to be the bagpipe,[127] which is called *sampogna* by the modern Italians: by others it is regarded as a sort of organ.[128]

The Babylonians used music, not merely in their private entertainments, but also in their religious ceremonies. Daniel's account of their instruments occurs casually in his mention of Nebuchadnezzar's dedication of a colossal idol of gold. The worshippers were to prostrate themselves before the idol as soon as they heard the music commence,[129] and were probably to continue in the attitude of worship until the sound ceased.

The seclusion of women seems scarcely to have been practised in Babylonia with as much strictness as in most Oriental countries. The two peculiar customs on which Herodotus descants at length—the public auction of the marriageable virgins in all the towns of the empire,[130] and the religious prostitution authorized in the worship of Beltis[131]—were wholly incompatible with the restraints to which the sex has commonly submitted in the Eastern world. Much modesty can scarcely

have belonged to those whose virgin charms were originally offered in the public market to the best bidder, and who were required by their religion, at least once in their lives, openly to submit to the embraces of a man other than their husband. It would certainly seem that the sex had in Babylonia a freedom—and not only a freedom, but also a consideration—unusual in the ancient world, and especially rare in Asia. The stories of Semiramis and Nitocris may have in them no great amount of truth; but they sufficiently indicate the belief of the Greeks as to the comparative publicity allowed to their women by the Babylonians.[132]

The monuments accord with the view of Babylonian manners thus opened to us. The female form is not eschewed by the Chaldæan artists. Besides images of a goddess (Beltis or Ishtar) suckling a child, which are frequent,[133] we find on the cylinders numerous representations of women, engaged in various employments. Sometimes they are represented in a procession, visiting the shrine of a goddess, to whom they offer their petitions, by the mouth of one of their number,[134] or to whom they bring their children for the purpose, probably, of placing them under her protection:[135] [Pl. XXV., Fig. 5.], sometimes they may be seen amusing themselves among birds and flowers in a garden,[136] plucking the fruit from dwarf palms, and politely handing it to one another. [Pl. XXV., Fig. 4.] Their attire is in every case nearly the same; they wear a long but scanty robe, reaching to the ankles, ornamented at the bottom with a fringe and apparently opening in front. The upper part of the dress passes over only one shoulder. It is trimmed round the top with a fringe which runs diagonally across the chest, and a similar fringe edges the dress down the front where it opens. A band or fillet is worn round the head, confining the hair, which is turned back behind the head, and tied by a riband, or else held up by the fillet.

Female ornaments are not perceptible on the small figures of the cylinders; but from the modelled image in clay, of which a representation has been already given, we learn that bracelets and earrings of a simple character were worn by Babylonian women,[137] if they were not by the men.[138] On the whole, however, female dress seems to have been plain and wanting in variety, though we may perhaps suspect that the artists do not trouble themselves to represent very accurately such diversities of apparel as actually existed.

From a single representation of a priestess[139] it would seem

that women of that class wore nothing but a petticoat, thus exposing not only the arms, but the whole of the body as far as the waist.

The monuments throw a little further light on the daily life of the Babylonians. A few of their implements, as saws and hatchets, are represented. [Pl. XXV., Fig. 2]; and from the stools, the chairs, the tables, and stands for holding water-jars[140] which occur occasionally on the cylinders, we may gather that the fashion of their furniture much resembled that of their northern neighbors, the Assyrians. It is needless to dwell on this subject, which presents no novel features, and has been anticipated by the discussion on Assyrian furniture in the first volume.[141] The only touch that can be added to what was there said is that in Babylonia, the chief—almost the sole—material employed for furniture was the wood of the palm-tree,[142] a soft and light fabric which could be easily worked, and which had considerable strength, but did not admit of a high finish.[143]

CHAPTER VII.

RELIGION.

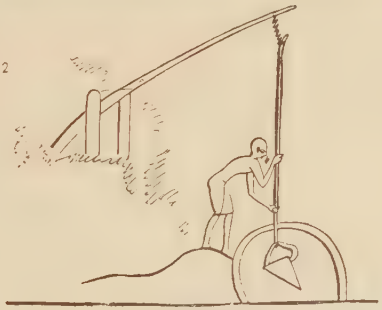
Ἤνεσαν τοὺς θεοὺς τοὺς χρυσοῦς καὶ ἀργυροῦ καὶ χαλκοῦς καὶ σιδηροῦς καὶ λιθίνους καὶ ξυλίνους.—Dan. v. 4.

THE Religion of the later Babylonians differed in so few respects from that of the early Chaldæans, their predecessors in the same country, that it will be unnecessary to detain the reader with many observations on the subject. The same gods were worshipped in the same temples and with the same rites[1]—the same cosmogony[2] was taught and held—the same symbols were objects of religious regard—even the very dress of the priests was maintained unaltered;[3] and, could Urukh or Chedorlaomer have risen from the grave and revisited the shrines wherein they sacrificed fourteen centuries earlier, they would have found but little to distinguish the ceremonies of their own day from those in vogue under the successors of Nabopolassar. Some additional splendor in the buildings, the idols, and perhaps the offerings, some increased use of music as a part of the ceremonial,[4] some advance of corruption with respect to priestly impostures and popular religious customs

Fig. 1

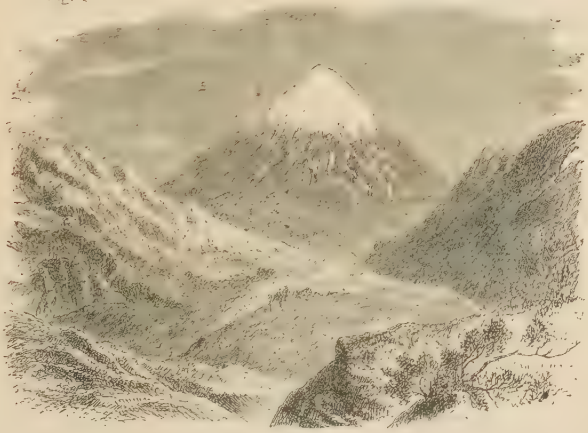
Chart of the country between Pasargadæ (Murgab) and Persepolis.

Fig. 2



Ancient Shadoof.

Fig. 3

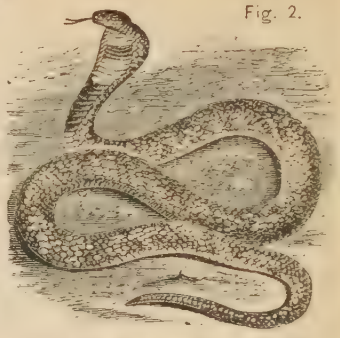


View of Mount Demavend in the Elburz.

Fig. 1.

Gecko, and feet of Gecko magnified.

Fig. 2.

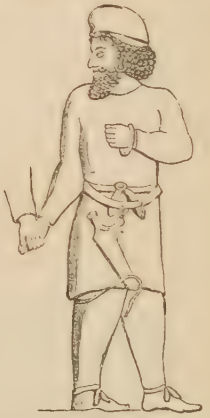


The Egyptian Asp, or *Coluber haje.*

Fig. 3.

The "Cerastes."

Fig. 4.



Persian Foot-soldier in the ordinary costume (Persepolis)

Fig. 5.

The Chameleon.

might probably have been noticed; but otherwise the religion of Nabonidus and Belshazzar was that of Urukh and Ilgi, alike in the objects and the mode of worship, in the theological notions entertained and the ceremonial observances taught and practised.

The identity of the gods worshipped during the entire period is sufficiently proved by the repair and restoration of the ancient temples under Nebuchadnezzar, and their re-dedication (as a general rule) to the same deities. It appears also from the names of the later kings and nobles, which embrace among their elements the old divine appellations. Still, together with this general uniformity, we seem to see a certain amount of fluctuation—a sort of fashion in the religion, whereby particular gods were at different times exalted to a higher rank in the Pantheon, and were sometimes even confounded with other deities commonly regarded as wholly distinct from them. Thus Nebuchadnezzar devoted himself in an especial way to Merodach, and not only assigned him titles of honor which implied his supremacy over all the remaining gods,[3] but even identified him with the great Bel, the ancient tutelary god of the capital. Nabonidus, on the other hand, seems to have restored Bel to his old position,[4] re-establishing the distinction between him and Merodach, and preferring to devote himself to the former.

A similar confusion occurs between the goddesses Beltis and Nana or Ishtar,[1] though this is not peculiar to the later kingdom. It may perhaps be suspected from such instances of connection and *quasi*-convertibility, that an esoteric doctrine, known to the priests and communicated by them to the kings, taught the real identity of the several gods and goddesses, who may have been understood by the better instructed to represent, not distinct and separate beings, but the several phases of the Divine Nature. Ancient polytheism had, it may be surmised, to a great extent this origin, the various names and titles of the Supreme, which designated His different attributes or the different spheres of His operation, coming by degrees to be misunderstood, and to pass, first with the vulgar, and at last with all but the most enlightened, for the appellations of a number of gods.

The chief objects of Babylonian worship were Bel, Merodach, and Nebo.[5] Nebo, the special deity of Borsippa, seems to have been regarded as a sort of powerful patron-saint under whose protection it was important to place individuals. Dur-

ing the period of the later kingdom, no divine element is so common in names. Of the seven kings who form the entire list, three certainly,[9] four probably,[10] had appellations composed with it. The usage extended from the royal house to the courtiers; and such names as Nebu-zar-adan, Samgar-Nebo, and Nebushazban,[11] show the respect which the upper class of citizens paid to this god. It may even be suspected that when Nebuchadnezzar's Master of the Eunuchs had to give Babylonian names to the young Jewish princes whom he was educating, he designed to secure for one of them this powerful patron, and consequently called him Abed-Nebo[12]—"the servant of Nebo"—a name which the later Jews, either disdaining[13] or not understanding, have corrupted into the Abed-nego of the existing text.

Another god held in peculiar honor by the Babylonians was Nergal. Worshipped at Cutha as the tutelary divinity of the town,[14] he was also held in repute by the people generally. No name is more common on the cylinder seals. It is sometimes, though not often, an element in the names of men, as in "Nergal-shar-ezer, the Rab-mag,"[15] and (if he be a different person) in Neriglissar, the king.

Altogether, there was a strong local element in the religion of the Babylonians. Bel and Merodach were in a peculiar way the gods of Babylon, Nebo of Borsippa, Nergal of Cutha, the Moon of Ur or Hur, Beltis of Niffer, Hea or Hoa of Hit, Ana of Erech, the Sun of Sippara. Without being exclusively honored at a single site, the deities in question held the foremost place each in his own town. There especially was worship offered to them; there was the most magnificent of their shrines. Out of his own city a god was not greatly respected, unless by those who regarded him as their special personal protector.

The Babylonians worshipped their gods indirectly, through images. Each shrine had at least one idol, which was held in the most pious reverence, and was in the minds of the vulgar identified with the god. It seems to have been believed by some that the actual idol ate and drank the offerings.[16] Others distinguished between the idol and the god, regarding the latter as only occasionally visiting the shrine where he was worshipped.[17] Even these last, however, held gross anthropomorphic views, since they considered the god to descend from heaven in order to hold commerce with the chief priestess. Such notions were encouraged by the priests, who furnished

the inner shrine in the temple of Bel with a magnificent couch and a golden table, and made the principal priestess pass the night in the shrine on certain occasions.[18]

The images of the gods were of various materials.[19] Some were of wood, others of stone, others again of metal; and these last were either solid or plated. The metals employed were gold, silver, brass, or rather bronze, and iron. Occasionally the metal was laid over a clay model.[20] Sometimes images of one metal were overlaid with plates of another, as was the case with one of the great images of Bel, which was originally of silver but was coated with gold by Nebuchadnezzar.[21]

The worship of the Babylonians appears to have been conducted with much pomp and magnificence. A description has been already given of their temples.[22] Attached to these imposing structures was, in every case, a body of priests;[23] to whom the conduct of the ceremonies and the custody of the treasures were intrusted. The priests were married,[24] and lived with their wives and children, either in the sacred structure itself, or in its immediate neighborhood. They were supported either by lands belonging to the temple,[25] or by the offerings of the faithful. These consisted in general of animals, chiefly oxen and goats;[26] but other valuables were no doubt received when tendered. The priest always intervened between the worshipper and the deities, presenting him to them and interceding with uplifted hands on his behalf.[27]

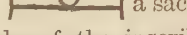
In the temple of Bel at Babylon, and probably in most of the other temples both there and elsewhere throughout the country, a great festival was celebrated once in the course of each year.[28] We know little of the ceremonies with which these festivals were accompanied; but we may presume from the analogy of other nations that there were magnificent processions on these occasions, accompanied probably with music and dancing. The images of the gods were perhaps exhibited either on frames or on sacred vehicles.[29] Numerous victims were sacrificed; and at Babylon it was customary to burn on the great altar in the precinct of Bel a thousand talents' weight of frankincense.[30] The priests no doubt wore their most splendid dresses; the multitude was in holiday costume; the city was given up to merry-making. Everywhere banquets were held. In the palace the king entertained his lords;[31] in private houses there was dancing and revelling.[32] Wine was freely drunk; passion was excited; and the day, it must be feared, too often terminated in wild orgies, wherein the sanctions of religion were

claimed for the free indulgence of the worst sensual appetites. In the temples of one deity excesses of this description, instead of being confined to rare occasions, seem to have been of every-day occurrence. Each woman was required once in her life to visit a shrine of Beltis, and there remain till some stranger cast money in her lap and took her away with him. Herodotus, who seems to have visited the disgraceful scene, describes it as follows. "Many women of the wealthier sort, who are too proud to mix with the others, drive in covered carriages to the precinct, followed by a goodly train of attendants, and there take their station. But the larger number seat themselves within the holy inclosure with wreaths of string about their heads—and *here there is always a great crowd*, some coming and others going. Lines of cord mark out paths in all directions among the woman; and the strangers pass along them to make their choice. A women who has once taken her seat is not allowed to return home till one of the strangers throws a silver coin into her lap, and takes her with him beyond the holy ground. When he throws the coin, he says these words—'The goddess Mylitta (Beltis) prosper thee.' The silver coin may be of any size; it cannot be refused; for that is forbidden by the law, since once thrown it is sacred. The woman goes with the first man who throws her money, and rejects no one. When she has gone with him, and so satisfied the goddess, she returns home; and from that time forth no gift, however great, will prevail with her. Such of the women as are tall and beautiful are soon released; but others, who are ugly, have to stay a long time before they can fulfil the law. Some have even waited three or four years in the precinct."[33] The demoralizing tendency of this religious prostitution can scarcely be overrated.[34]

Notions of legal cleanliness and uncleanliness, akin to those prevalent among the Jews, are found to some extent in the religious system of the Babylonians. The consummation of the marriage rite made both the man and the woman impure, as did every subsequent act of the same kind. The impurity was communicated to any vessel that either might touch. To remove it, the pair were required first to sit down before a censer of burning incense, and then to wash themselves thoroughly. Thus only could they re-enter into the state of legal cleanness.[35] A similar impurity attached to those who came into contact with a human corpse.[36]

The Babylonians are remarkable for the extent to which they

affected symbolism in religion. In the first place they attached to each god a special mystic number, which is used as his emblem and may even stand for his name in an inscription. To the gods of the First Triad—Anu, Bel, and Hea or Hoa—were assigned respectively the numbers 60, 50, and 40; to those of the Second Triad—the Moon, the Sun and the Atmosphere—were given the other integers, 30, 20, and 10 (or perhaps six).[37] To Beltis was attached the number 15,[38] to Nergal 12,[39] to Bar or Nin (apparently) 40, as to Hoa; but this is perhaps doubtful.[40] It is probable that every god, or at any rate all the principle deities, had in a similar way some numerical emblem. Many of these are, however, as yet undiscovered.

Further, each god seems to have had one or more emblematic signs by which he could be pictorially symbolized. The cylinders are full of such forms, which are often crowded into every vacant space where room could be found for them.[41] A certain number can be assigned definitely to particular divinities. Thus a circle, plain or crossed, designates the Sun-god, San or Shamas;[42] a six-rayed or eight-rayed star the Sun-goddess, Gula or Anunit;[43] a double or triple thunderbolt the Atmospheric god, Vul;[44] a serpent probably Hoa;[45] a naked female form Nana or Ishtar;[46] a fish Bar or Nin-ip.[47] But besides these assignable symbols, there are a vast number with regard to which we are still wholly in the dark. Among these may be mentioned a sort of double cross, often repeated three times, a jar or bottle,[48] an altar, a double lozenge, one or more birds, an animal between a monkey and a jerboa, a dog, a sort of double horn,  a sacred tree, an ox, a bee, a spearhead.[49] A study of the inscribed cylinders shows these emblems to have no reference to the god or goddess named in the inscription upon them. Each, apparently, represents a distinct deity; and the object of placing them upon a cylinder is to imply the devotion of the man whose seal it is to other deities besides those whose special servant he considers himself. A single cylinder sometimes contains as many as eight or ten such emblems.

The principal temples of the gods had special sacred appel-

lations. The great temple of Bel at Babylon was known as Bit-Saggath, that of the same god at Niffer as Kharris-Nipra, that of Beltis at Warka (Erech) as Bit-Ana, that of the Sun at Sippara as Bit-Parra, that of Anunit at the same place as Bit-Ulmis, that of Nebo at Borsippa as Bit-Tsida, etc. It is seldom that these names admit of explanation."[1] They had come down apparently from the old Chaldæan times, and belonged to the ancient (Turanian) form of speech; which is still almost unintelligible. The Babylonians themselves probably in few cases understood their meaning. They used the words simply as proper names, without regarding them as significative.

CHAPTER VIII.

HISTORY AND CHRONOLOGY.

Τῆς δὲ Βαβυλῶνος . . . πολλοὶ μέν κου . . . ἐγένοντο βασιλέες . . . οἳ τὰ τείχεά τε ἐκεκόσμησαν καὶ τὰ ἱρά.—Herod. i. 184.

THE history of the Babylonian Empire commences with Nabopolassar, who appears to have mounted the throne in the year B.C. 625; but to understand the true character of the kingdom which he set up, its traditions and its national spirit, we must begin at a far earlier date. We must examine, in however incomplete and cursory a manner, the middle period of Babylonian history, the time of obscurity and comparative insignificance, when the country was as a general rule, subject to Assyria, or at any rate played but a secondary part in the affairs of the East. We shall thus prepare the way for our proper subject, while at the same time we shall link on the history of the Fourth to that of the First Monarchy, and obtain a second line of continuous narrative, connecting the brilliant era of Cyaxares and Nebuchadnezzar with the obscure period of the first Cushite kings.

It has been observed that the original Chaldæan monarchy lasted under various dynasties from about B.C. 2400 to B.C. 1300,[1] when it was destroyed by the Assyrians, who became masters of Babylonia under the first Tiglathi-Nin,[2] and governed it for a short time from their own capital. Unable, however, to maintain this unity very long, they appear to have set up in the country an Assyrian dynasty, over which they claimed and sometimes exercised a kind of suzerainty, but which was

practically independent and managed both the external and internal affairs of the kingdom at its pleasure. The first king of this dynasty concerning whom we have any information is a Nebuchadnezzar, who was contemporary with the Assyrian monarch Asshur-ris-ilim, and made two attacks upon his territories.[3] The first of these was by the way of the Diyaleh and the outlying Zagros hills, the line taken by the great Persian military road in later times.[4] The second was directly across the plain. If we are to believe the Assyrian historian who gives an account of the campaigns, both attacks were repulsed, and after his second failure the Babylonian monarch fled away into his own country hastily. We may perhaps suspect that a Babylonian writer would have told a different story. At any rate Asshur-ris-ilim was content to defend his own territories and did not attempt to retaliate upon his assailant. It was not till late in the reign of his son and successor, Tiglath-Pileser I., that any attempt was made to punish the Babylonians for their audacity. Then, however, that monarch invaded the southern kingdom,[5] which had passed into the hands of a king named Merodach-iddin-akhi, probably a son of Nebuchadnezzar. After two years of fighting, in which he took Kurri-Galzu (Akkerkuf), the two Sipparas, Opis, and even Babylon itself, Tiglath-Pileser retired, satisfied apparently with his victories; but the Babylonian monarch was neither subdued nor daunted. Hanging on the rear of the retreating force, he harassed it by cutting off its baggage, and in this way he became possessed of certain Assyrian idols, which he carried away as trophies to Babylon. War continued between the two countries during the ensuing reigns of Merodach-shapik-ziri in Babylon and Asshur-bil-kala in Assyria, but with no important successes, so far as appears, on either side.

The century during which these wars took place between Assyria and Babylonia, which corresponds with the period of the later Judges in Israel, is followed by an obscure interval, during which but little is known of either country. Assyria seems to have been at this time in a state of great depression. Babylonia, it may be suspected, was flourishing; but as our knowledge of its condition comes to us almost entirely through the records of the sister country, which here fail us, we can only obtain a dim and indistinct vision of the greatness now achieved by the southern kingdom. A notice of Asshur-izir-pal's seems to imply that Babylon, during the period in question, enlarged her territories at the expense of Assyria,[7] and

another in Macrobius,[8] makes it probable that she held communications with Egypt. Perhaps these two powers, fearing the growing strength of Assyria, united against her, and so checked for a while that development of her resources which they justly dreaded.

However, after two centuries of comparative depression, Assyria once more started forward, and Babylonia was among the first of her neighbors whom she proceeded to chastise and despoil. About the year B.C. 880 Asshur-izir-pal led an expedition to the south-east and recovered the territory which had been occupied by the Babylonians during the period of weakness.[9] Thirty years later, his son, the Black-Obelisk king, made the power of Assyria still more sensibly felt. Taking advantage of the circumstance that a civil war was raging in Babylonia between the legitimate monarch Merodach-sum-adin, and his young brother, he marched into the country, took a number of the towns, and having defeated and slain the pretender, was admitted into Babylon itself.[10] From thence he proceeded to overrun Chaldæa, or the district upon the coast, which appears at this time to have been independent of Babylon, and governed by a number of petty kings. The Babylonian monarch probably admitted the suzerainty of the invader, but was not put to any tribute. The Chaldæan chiefs, however, had to submit to this indignity. The Assyrian monarch returned to his capital, having "struck terror as far as the sea." Thus Assyrian influence was once more extended over the whole of the southern country, and Babylonia resumed her position of a secondary power, dependent on the great monarchy of the north.

But she was not long allowed to retain even the shadow of an autonomous rule. In or about the year B.C. 821 the son and successor of the Black-Obelisk king, apparently without any pretext, made a fresh invasion of the country.[11] Merodach-belatzu-ikbi, the Babylonian monarch, boldly met him in the field, but was defeated in two pitched battles (in the latter of which he had the assistance of powerful allies,[12]) and was forced to submit to his antagonist. Babylon, it is probable, became at once an Assyrian tributary, and in this condition she remained till the troubles which came upon Assyria towards the middle of the eighth century B.C. gave an opportunity for shaking off the hated yoke. Perhaps the first successes were obtained by Pul,[13] who, taking advantage of Assyria's weakness under Asshur-dayan III. (ab. B.C. 770),

seems to have established a dominion over the Euphrates valley and Western Mesopotamia, from which he proceeded to carry his arms into Syria and Palestine. Or perhaps Pul's efforts merely, by still further weakening Assyria, paved the way for Babylon to revolt, and Nabonassar, who became king of Babylon in B.C. 747, is to be regarded as the re-establisher of her independence. In either case it is apparent that the recovery of independence was accompanied, or rapidly followed, by a disintegration of the country, which was of evil omen for its future greatness. While Nabonassar established himself at the head of affairs in Babylon, a certain Yakin, the father of Merodach-Baladan, became master of the tract upon the coast; and various princes, Nadina, Zakiru, and others, at the same time obtained governments, which they administered in their own name towards the north. The old Babylonian kingdom was broken up; and the way was prepared for that final subjugation which was ultimately affected by the Sargonids.

Still, the Babylonians seemed to have looked with complacency on this period, and they certainly made it an era from which to date their later history. Perhaps, however, they had not much choice in this matter. Nabonassar was a man of energy and determination. Bent probably on obliterating the memory of the preceding period of subjugation, he "destroyed the acts of the kings who had preceded him;"[14] and the result was that the war of his accession became almost necessarily the era from which subsequent events had to be dated.

Nabonassar appears to have lived on friendly terms with Tiglath-Pileser, the contemporary monarch of Assyria, who early in his reign invaded the southern country, reduced several princes of the districts about Babylon to subjection, and forced Merodach-Baladan, who had succeeded his father, Yakin, in the low region, to become his tributary. No war seems to have been waged between Tiglath-Pileser and Nabonassar. The king of Babylon may have seen with satisfaction the humiliation of his immediate neighbors and rivals, and may have felt that their subjugation rather improved than weakened his own position. At any rate it tended to place him before the nation as their only hope and champion—the sole barrier which protected their country from a return of the old servitude.

Nabonassar held the throne of Babylon for fourteen years, from B.C. 747 to B.C. 733.[15] It has generally been supposed

that this period is the same with that regarded by Herodotus as constituting the reign of Semiramis.[16] As the wife or as the mother of Nabonassar, that lady (according to many) directed the affairs of the Babylonian state on behalf of her husband or her son. The theory is not devoid of a certain plausibility, and it is no doubt possible that it may be true: but at present it is a mere conjecture, wholly unconfirmed by the native records; and we may question whether on the whole it is not more probable that the Semiramis of Herodotus is misplaced. In a former volume it was shown that a Semiramis flourished in Assyria towards the end of the ninth and the beginning of the eighth centuries B. C.[17]—during the period, that is, of Babylonian subjection to Assyria. She may have been a Babylonian princess, and have exercised an authority in the southern capital.[18] It would seem therefore to be more probable that she is the individual whom Herodotus intends, though he has placed her about half a century too late, than that there were two persons of the same name within so short a time, both queens, and both ruling in Mesopotamia.

Nabonassar was succeeded in the year B.C. 733 by a certain Nadius, who is suspected to have been among the independent princes reduced to subjection by Tiglath-Pileser in his Babylonian expedition.[19] Nadius reigned only two years—from B.C. 733 to B.C. 731—when he was succeeded by Chinzinus and Porus, two princes whose joint rule lasted from B.C. 731 to B.C. 726. They were followed by an Elulæus, who has been identified[20] with the king of that name called by Menander[21] king of Tyre—the Luliya of the cuneiform inscriptions;[22] but it is in the highest degree improbable that one and the same monarch should have borne sway both in Phœnicia and Chaldæa at a time when Assyria was paramount over the whole of the intervening country. Elulæus therefore must be assigned to the same class of utterly obscure monarchs with his predecessors, Porus, Chinzinus, and Nadius; and it is only with Merodach-Baladan, his successor, that the darkness becomes a little dispelled, and we once more see the Babylonian throne occupied by a prince of some reputation and indeed celebrity.

Merodach-Baladan was the son of a monarch, who in the troublous times that preceded, or closely followed, the era of Nabonassar appears to have made himself master of the lower Babylonian territory[23]—the true Chaldæa—and to have there founded a capital city, which he called after his own name, Bit-Yakin. On the death of his father Merodach-Baladan in-

herited this dominion; and it is here that we first find him, when, during the reign of Nabonassar, the Assyrians under Tiglath-Pileser II. invade the country. Forced to accept the position of Assyrian tributary under this monarch, to whom he probably looked for protection against the Babylonian king, Nabonassar, Merodach-Baladan patiently bided his time, remaining in comparative obscurity during the two reigns of Tiglath-Pileser and Shalmaneser his successor, and only emerging contemporaneously with the troubles which ushered in the dynasty of the Sargonids. In B.C. 721 the year in which Sargon made himself master of Nineveh[24]—Merodach-Baladan extended his authority over the upper country, and was recognized as king of Babylon. Here he maintained himself for twelve years: and it was probably at some point of time within this space that he sent embassadors to Hezekiah at Jerusalem,[25] with orders to inquire into the particulars of the curious astronomical marvel,[*] or miracle, which had accompanied the sickness and recovery of that monarch. It is not unlikely that the embassy, whereof this was the pretext, had a further political object. Merodach-Baladan, aware of his inability to withstand singly the forces of Assyria, was probably anxious to form a powerful league against the conquering state, which threatened to absorb the whole of Western Asia into its dominion. Hezekiah received his advances favorably, as appears by the fact that he exhibited to him all his treasures.[27] Egypt, we may presume, was cognizant of the proceedings, and gave them her support.[28] An alliance, defensive if not also offensive, was probably concluded between Egypt and Judæa on the one hand, Babylon, Susiana, and the Aramæan tribes of the middle Euphrates on the other. The league would have been formidable but for one circumstance—Assyria lay midway between the allied states, and could attack either moiety of the confederates separately at her pleasure. And the Assyrian king was not slow to take advantage of his situation. In two successive years Sargon marched his troops against Egypt and against Babylonia, and in both directions carried all before him. In Egypt he forced Sabaco to sue for peace.[29] In Babylonia (B.C. 710) he gained a great victory over Merodach-Baladan and his allies, the Aramæans and Susianians,[30] took Bit-Yakin, into which the defeated monarch had thrown himself, and gained possession of his treasures and his person. Upon this the whole country submitted; Merodach-Baladan was carried away captive into

Assyria; and Sargon himself, mounting the throne, assumed the title—rarely taken by an Assyrian monarch—of "King of Babylon."

But this state of things did not continue long. Sargon died in the year B.C. 704, and coincident with his death we find a renewal of troubles in Babylonia.[31] Assyria's yoke was shaken off; various pretenders started up; a son of Sargon and brother of Sennacherib re-established Assyrian influence for a brief space;[32] but fresh revolts followed. A certain Hagisa became king of Babylon for a month. Finally, Merodach-Baladan, again appeared upon the scene, having escaped from his Assyrian prison, murdered Hagisa, and remounted the throne from which he had been deposed seven years previously.[33] But the brave effort to recover independence failed. Sennacherib in his second year, B.C. 703, descended upon Babylonia, defeated the army which Merodach-Baladan brought against him, drove that monarch himself into exile, after a reign of six months, and re-attached his country to the Assyrian crown.[34] From this time to the revolt of Nabopolassar—a period of above three quarters of a century—Babylonia with few and brief intervals of revolt, continued an Assyrian fief. The assyrian kings governed her either by means of viceroys, such as Belibus, Regibelus, Mesesimordachus, and Saosduchinus, or directly in their own persons, as was the case during the reign of Esarhaddon,[35] and during the later years of Asshur-bani-pal.[36]

The revolts of Babylon during this period have been described at length in the history of Assyria.[37] Two fall into the reign of Sennacherib, one into that of Asshur-bani-pal, his grandson. In the former, Merodach-Baladan, who had not yet given up his pretensions to the lower country, and a certain Susub, who was acknowledged as king at Babylon, were the leaders. In the latter, Saos-duchinus, the Assyrian viceroy, and brother of Asshur-bani-pal, the Assyrian king, seduced from his allegiance by the hope of making himself independent headed the insurrection. In each case the struggle was brief, being begun and ended within the year.[38] The power of Assyria at this time so vastly preponderated over that of her ancient rival that a single campaign sufficed on each occasion of revolt to crush the nascent insurrection.[39]

A tabular view of the chronology of this period is appended.

CHRONOLOGY OF BABYLON FROM THE ARAB CONQUEST TO NABOPOLASSAR.

N.B.—*Babylonian dates fall one year below Assyrian, from the practice established at Babylon of recording a king's accession on the 1st of the ensuing year.*

B.C.	Kings.	Contemporary kings of Assyria.	Remarkable events.
Ab. 1300	Dynasty of Assyrians..	Tiglathi-Nin I....	Babylon conquered by the Assyrians.
	* * *	* * *	
		Bel-kudur-uzur.	
		Nin-pala-zira.	
		Asshur-dayan I.	
		Mutaggil-Nebo.	
Ab. 1150	Nebuchadnezzer I.....	Asshur-ris-ilim....	Wars between Assyria and Babylon.
" 1130	Merodach-iddin-akhi ..	Tiglath-Pileser I..	
" 1110	Merodach-shapik-ziri..	Asshur-bil-kala..	
		Shamas-Vul I.	
	* * *	* * *	
	Tsibir (Deboras)	Asshur-Mazur	Babylon in alliance with Egypt.
	* * *	* * *	Takes territory from Assyria.
		Asshur-dayan II..	
	* * *	Vul-lush II.	
		Tiglathi-Nin II...	
Ab. 880	....	Asshur-izir-pal ...	Assyria recovers her lost territory.
" 850	Merodach-sum-adin ...	Shalmaneser II...	Civil war in Babylon. Assyria helps the legitimate king.
" 820	Merodach-belatzu-ikbi.	Shamas-Vul II....	Babylon conquered. Passes under Assyria.
	* * *	Vul-lush III.	
		Shalmaneser III.	
		Asshur-dayan III.	
" 775	Pul (?).		
752	.....	Asshur-lush.	
747	Nabonassar.	.....	Babylon re-establishes her independence.
744	....	Tiglath-Pileser II.	
733	Nadius		
731	Chinzinus and Porus...		
726	Elulæus	Shalmaneser IV.	
721	Merodach-Baladan	Sargon.	
713 (?)	.....	.....	Embassy of Merodach-Baladan to Hezekiah.
709	Arceanus (Sargon).....	.. ..	Babylon conquered by Sargon.
704	Interregnum	Sennacherib	Babylon revolts.
703	Hagisa.....	.....	Sennacherib conquers Babylon.
	Merodach-Baladan ..		
702	Belibus (viceroy) ...		
699	Assaranadius (viceroy)		
696 (?)	Susub.....	.....	Babylon revolts. Revolt put down.
694 (?)	.....	.....	Ditto.
693	Regibelus (viceroy)....		
692	Mesesimordachus (viceroy).		
688	Interregnum	.....	Troubles in Babylon. Interregnum of eight years, coinciding with last eight years of Sennacherib.
680	Esarhaddon.....	Esarhaddon	Babylon recovered by Esarhaddon.
667	Saos-duchinus (viceroy).....	Asshur-bani-pal..	Babylon revolts and again returns to allegiance.
647	Cinneladanus (or Asshur-bani-pal).		
626	Nebo-sum-iskun (?)	Asshur-emid-ilin.	
625	Nabopolassar.....	.....	Assyrian empire destroyed.

Having thus briefly sketched the history of the kingdom of Babylon from its conquest by Tiglathi-Nin to the close of the long period of Assyrian predominance in Western Asia, we may proceed to the consideration of the "Empire." And first, as to the circumstances of its foundation.

When the Medes first assumed an aggressive attitude towards Assyria, and threatened the capital with a siege, Babylonia apparently remained unshaken in her allegiance. When the Scythian hordes spread themselves over Upper Mesopotamia and wasted with fire and sword the fairest regions under Assyrian rule, there was still no defection in this quarter.[40] It was not till the Scythic ravages were over, and the Medes for the second time poured across Zagros into Adiabêné, resuming the enterprise from which they had desisted at the time of the Scythic invasion, that the fidelity of the Southern people wavered. Simultaneously with the advance of the Medes against the Assyrian capital from the east, we hear of a force threatening it from the south,[41] a force which can only have consisted of Susianians, of Babylonians, or of both combined.[42] It is probable that the emissaries of Cyaxares had been busy in this region for some time before his second attack took place, and that by a concerted plan while the Medes debouched from the Zagros passes, the south rose in revolt and sent its hasty levies along the valley of the Tigris.

In this strait the Assyrian king deemed it necessary to divide his forces and to send a portion against the enemy which was advancing from the south, while with the remainder he himself awaited the coming of the Medes. The troops detached for the former service he placed under the command of a certain Nabopolassar[43] (Nabu-pal-uzur), who was probably an Assyrian nobleman of high rank and known capacity.[44] Nabopolassar had orders to proceed to Babylon, of which he was probably made viceroy, and to defend the southern capital against the rebels. We may conclude that he obeyed these orders so far as to enter Babylon and install himself in office; but shortly afterwards he seems to have made up his mind to break faith with his sovereign, and aim at obtaining for himself an independent kingdom out of the ruins of the Assyrian power. Having formed this resolve, his first step was to send an embassy to Cyaxares, and to propose terms of alliance, while at the same time he arranged a marriage between his own son, Nebuchadnezzar, and Amuhia, or Amyitis (for the name is written both ways), the daughter of the Median monarch.[45]

Cyaxares gladly accepted the terms offered; the young persons were betrothed: and Nabopolassar immediately led, or sent, a contingent of troops to join the Medes, who took an active part in the great siege which resulted in the capture and destruction of the Assyrian capital.[46]

A division of the Assyrian Empire between the allied monarchs followed. While Cyaxares claimed for his own share Assyria Proper and the various countries dependent on Assyria towards the north and the north-west, Nabopolassar was rewarded by his timely defection, not merely by independence but by the transfer to his government of Susiana on the one hand and of the valley of the Euphrates, Syria, and Palestine on the other. The transfer appears to have been effected quietly, the Babylonian yoke being peacefully accepted in lieu of the Assyrian without the necessity arising for any application of force. Probably it appeared to the subjects of Assyria, who had been accustomed to a monarch holding his court alternately at Nineveh and at Babylon,[47] that the new power was merely a continuation of the old, and the monarch a legitimate successor of the old line of Ninevite kings.

Of the reign of Nabopolassar the information which has come down to us is scanty. It appears by the canon of Ptolemy that he dated his accession to the throne from the year B.C. 625, and that his reign lasted twenty-one years,[48] from B.C. 625 to B.C. 604. During the greater portion of this period the history of Babylon is a blank. Apparently the "golden city"[49] enjoyed her new position at the head of an empire too much to endanger it by aggression; and, her peaceful attitude provoking no hostility, she was for a while left unmolested by her neighbors. Media, bound to her by formal treaty as well as by dynastic interests, could be relied upon as a firm friend; Persia was too weak, Lydia too remote, to be formidable; in Egypt alone was there a combination of hostile feeling with military strength such as might have been expected to lead speedily to a trial of strength; but Egypt was under the rule of an aged and wary prince, one trained in the school of adversity,[50] whose years forbade his engaging in any distant enterprise, and whose prudence led him to think more of defending his own country than of attacking others.[51] Thus, while Psammetichus lived, Babylon had little to fear from any quarter, and could afford to "give herself to pleasures and dwell carelessly."[52]

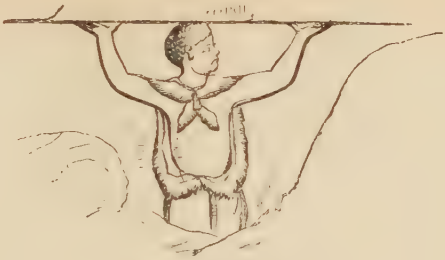
The only exertion which she seems to have been called upon to make during her first eighteen years of empire resulted from

the close connection which had been established between herself and Media. Cyaxares, as already remarked, proceeded from the capture of Nineveh to a long series of wars and conquests. In some, if not in all, of these he appears to have been assisted by the Babylonians, who were perhaps bound by treaty to furnish a contingent as often as he required it. Either Nabopolassar himself, or his son Nebuchadnezzar, would lead out the troops on such occasions; and thus the military spirit of both prince and people would be pretty constantly exercised.

It was as the leader of such a contingent that Nabopolassar was able on one occasion to play the important part of peacemaker in one of the bloodiest of all Cyaxares' wars.[53] After five years' desperate fighting the Medes and Lydians were once more engaged in conflict when an eclipse of the sun took place. Filled with superstitious dread the two armies ceased to contend, and showed a disposition for reconciliation, of which the Babylonian monarch was not slow to take advantage. Having consulted with Syennesis of Cilicia, the foremost man of the allies on the other side, and found him well disposed to second his efforts, he proposed that the sword should be returned to the scabbard, and that a conference should be held to arrange terms of peace. This timely interference proved effectual. A peace was concluded between the Lydians and the Medes, which was cemented by a royal intermarriage; and the result was to give to Western Asia, where war and ravage had long been almost perpetual, nearly half a century of tranquillity.[54]

Successful in his mediation, almost beyond his hopes, Nabopolassar returned from Asia Minor to Babylon. He was now advanced in years, and would no doubt gladly have spent the remainder of his days in the enjoyment of that repose which is so dear to those who feel the infirmities of age creeping upon them. But Providence had ordained otherwise. In B.C. 610—probably the very year of the eclipse—Psammetichus died, and was succeeded by his son Neco, who was in the prime of life and who in disposition was bold and enterprising. This monarch very shortly after his accession cast a covetous eye upon Syria, and in the year B.C. 608,[55] having made vast preparations, he crossed his frontier and invaded the territories of Nabopolassar. Marching along the usual route, by the *Shephêlah* and the plain of Esdraelon,[56] he learned, when he neared Megiddo, that a body of troops was drawn up at that place to oppose him. Josiah, the Jewish king, regarding him-

Fig. 1.

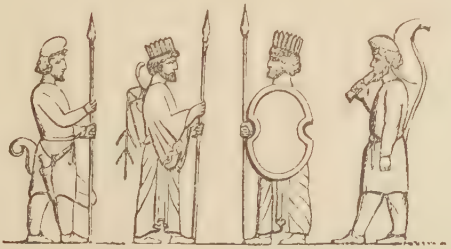


Ethiopian (Persepolis).

Fig. 2.

Persian Stabbing a Bull.

Fig. 3.



Persian Foot-soldiers (Persepolis).

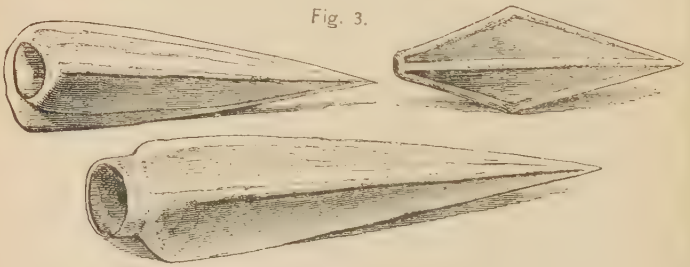
Fig. 1.

Persian Guardsman, carrying a bow and quiver (Persepolis).

Fig. 2.

"Gerrhum," or large Wicker Shield (Persepolis).

Fig. 3.

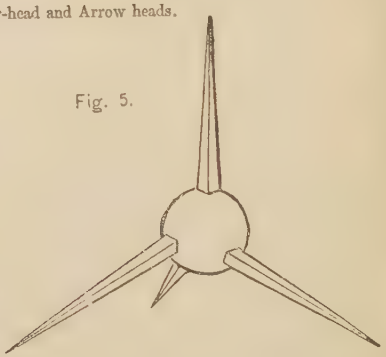


Persian Spear-head and Arrow heads.

Fig 4

Persian Soldier with battle-axe.

Fig. 5.



"Tribulus," or Spiked Ball (after Caylus).

self as bound to resist the passage through his territories of an army hostile to the monarch of whom he held his crown, had collected his forces, and, having placed them across the line of the invader's march, was calmly awaiting in this position the approach of his master's enemy. Neco hereupon sent ambassadors to persuade Josiah to let him pass, representing that he had no quarrel with the Jews, and claiming a divine sanction to his undertaking.[57] But nothing could shake the Jewish monarch's sense of duty; and Neco was consequently forced to engage with him, and to drive his troops from their position. Josiah, defeated and mortally wounded, returned to Jerusalem, where he died.[58] Neco pressed forward through Syria to the Euphrates; and carrying all before him, established his dominion over the whole tract lying between Egypt on the one hand, and the "Great River" upon the other.[59] On his return three months later he visited Jerusalem,[61] deposed Jehoahaz, a younger son of Josiah, whom the people had made king, and gave the crown to Jehoiakim, his elder brother. It was probably about this time that he besieged and took Gaza,[62] the most important of the Philistine towns next to Ashdod.

The loss of this large and valuable territory did not at once arouse the Babylonian monarch from his inaction or induce him to make any effort for its recovery. Neco enjoyed his conquests in quiet for the space of at least three full years.[63] At length, in the year B.C. 605, Nabopolassar, who felt himself unequal to the fatigues of a campaign,[64] resolved to entrust his forces to Nebuchadnezzar, his son, and to send him to contend with the Egyptians. The key of Syria at this time was Carchemish, a city situated on the right bank of the Euphrates, probably near the site which was afterwards occupied by Hierapolis. Here the forces of Neco were drawn up to protect his conquests, and here Nebuchadnezzar proceeded boldly to attack them. A great battle was fought in the vicinity of the river, which was utterly disastrous to the Egyptians, who "fled away" in confusion,[65] and seem not to have ventured on making a second stand. Nebuchadnezzar rapidly recovered the lost territory, received the submission of Jehoiakim, king of Judah,[66] restored the old frontier line, and probably pressed on into Egypt itself,[67] hoping to cripple or even to crush his presumptuous adversary. But at this point he was compelled to pause. News arrived from Babylon that Nabopolassar was dead; and the Babylonian prince, who feared a disputed suc-

cession, having first concluded a hasty arrangement with Neco, returned at his best speed to his capital.[98]

Arriving probably before he was expected, he discovered that his fears were groundless. The priests had taken the direction of affairs during his absence, and the throne had been kept vacant for him by the Chief Priest, or Head of the Order.[99] No pretender had started up to dispute his claims. Doubtless his military prestige, and the probability that the soldiers would adopt his cause, had helped to keep back aspirants; but perhaps it was the promptness of his return, as much as anything, that caused the crisis to pass off without difficulty.

Nebuchadnezzar is the great monarch of the Babylonian Empire, which, lasting only 88 years—from B.C. 625 to B.C. 538—was for nearly half the time under his sway. Its military glory is due chiefly to him, while the constructive energy, which constitutes its especial characteristic, belongs to it still more markedly through his character and genius. It is scarcely too much to say that, but for Nebuchadnezzar, the Babylonians would have had no place in history. At any rate, their actual place is owing almost entirely to this prince, who to the military talents of an able general added a grandeur of artistic conception and a skill in construction which place him on a par with the greatest builders of antiquity.

We have no complete, or even general account of Nebuchadnezzar's wars. Our chief, our almost sole, information concerning them is derived from the Jewish writers.[1] Consequently, those wars only which interested these writers, in other words those whose scene is Palestine or its immediate vicinity, admit of being placed before the reader. If Nebuchadnezzar had quarrels with the Persians, or the Arabians,[2] or the Medes, or the tribes in Mount Zagros, as is not improbable, nothing is now known of their course or issue. Until some historical document belonging to his time shall be discovered, we must be content with a very partial knowledge of the external history of Babylon during his reign. We have a tolerably full account of his campaigns against the Jews, and some information as to the general course of the wars which he carried on with Egypt and Phœnicia; but beyond these narrow limits we know nothing.

It appears to have been only a few years after Nebuchadnezzar's triumphant campaign against Neco that renewed

troubles broke out in Syria. Phœnicia revolted under the leadership of Tyre;[72] and about the same time Jehoiakim, the Jewish king, having obtained a promise of aid from the Egyptians, renounced his allegiance.[73] Upon this, in his seventh year (B.C. 598), Nebuchadnezzar proceeded once more into Palestine at the head of a vast army, composed partly of his allies, the Medes, partly of his own subjects.[74] He first invested Tyre;[75] but, finding that city too strong to be taken by assault, he left a portion of his army to continue the siege, while he himself pressed forward against Jerusalem.[76] On his near approach, Jehoiakim, seeing that the Egyptians did not care to come to his aid, made his submission; but Nebuchadnezzar punished his rebellion with death,[77] and, departing from the common Oriental practice, had his dead body treated with indignity.[78] At first he placed upon the throne Jehoiachin, the son of the late monarch,[79] a youth of eighteen;[80] but three months later, becoming suspicious (probably not without reason) of this prince's fidelity, he deposed him and had him brought a captive to Babylon,[81] substituting in his place his uncle, Zedekiah, a brother of Jehoiakim and Jehoahaz. Meanwhile the siege of Tyre was pressed, but with little effect. A blockade is always tedious; and the blockade of an island city, strong in its navy, by an enemy unaccustomed to the sea, and therefore forced to depend mainly upon the assistance of reluctant allies, must have been a task of such extreme difficulty that one is surprised it was not given up in despair. According to the Tyrian historians their city resisted all the power of Nebuchadnezzar for thirteen years.[82] If this statement is to be relied on, Tyre must have been still uncaptured, when the time came for its sister capital to make that last effort for freedom in which it perished.

After receiving his crown from Nebuchadnezzar, Zedekiah continued for eight years to play the part of a faithful vassal. At length, however, in the ninth year,[83] he fancied he saw a way to independence. A young and enterprising monarch, Uaphris—the Apries of Herodotus—had recently mounted the Egyptian throne.[84] If the alliance of this prince could be secured, there was, Zedekiah thought, a reasonable hope that the yoke of Babylon might be thrown off and Hebrew autonomy re-established. The infatuated monarch did not see that, do what he would, his country had no more than a choice of masters, that by the laws of political attraction Judæa must gravitate to one or other of the two great states between which it

had the misfortune of lying. Hoping to free his country, he sent ambassadors to Uaphris, who were to conclude a treaty and demand the assistance of a powerful contingent, composed of both foot and horse.[88] Uaphris received the overture favorably; and Zedekiah at once revolted from Babylon, and made preparations to defend himself with vigor. It was not long before the Babylonians arrived. Determined to crush the daring state, which, weak as it was, had yet ventured to revolt against him now for the fourth time,[89] Nebuchadnezzar came in person, "he and all his host,"[90] against Jerusalem, and after overcoming and pillaging the open country,[91] "built forts" and besieged the city.[92] Uaphris, upon this, learning the danger of his ally, marched out of Egypt to his relief;[93] and the Babylonian army, receiving intelligence of his approach, raised the siege and proceeded in quest of their new enemy. According to Josephus[94] a battle was fought, in which the Egyptians were defeated; but it is perhaps more probable that they avoided an engagement by a precipitate retreat into their own country.[95] At any rate the attempt effectually to relieve Jerusalem failed. After a brief interval the siege was renewed; a complete blockade was established; and in a year and a half from the time of the second investment,[96] the city fell.

Nebuchadnezzar had not waited to witness this success of his arms. The siege of Tyre was still being pressed at the date of the second investment of Jerusalem, and the Chaldæan monarch had perhaps thought that his presence on the borders of Phœnicia was necessary to animate his troops in that quarter. If this was his motive in withdrawing from the Jewish capital, the event would seem to have shown that he judged wisely. Tyre, if it fell at the end of its thirteen years' siege,[97] must have been taken in the very year which followed the capture of Jerusalem, B.C. 585.[98] We may suppose that Nebuchadnezzar, when he quitted Jerusalem and took up his abode at Riblah in the Cœle Syrian valley,[99] turned his main attention to the great Phœnician city, and made arrangements which caused its capture in the ensuing year.

The recovery of these two important cities secured to the Babylonian monarch the quiet possession thenceforth of Syria and Palestine. But still he had not as yet inflicted any chastisement upon Egypt; though policy, no less than honor, required that the aggressions of this audacious power should be punished. If we may believe Josephus, however, the day of vengeance was not very long delayed. Within four years of

the fall of Tyre, B.C. 581, Nebuchadnezzar, he tells us, invaded Egypt, put Uaphris, the monarch who had succored Zedekiah, to death, and placed a creature of his own upon the throne.[97] Egyptian history, it is true, forbids our accepting this statement as correct in all its particulars. Uaphris appears certainly to have reigned at least as late as B.C. 569,[98] and according to Herodotus, he was put to death, not by a foreign invader, but by a rebellious subject.[99] Perhaps we may best harmonize the conflicting statements on the subject by supposing that Josephus has confounded two distinct invasions of Egypt, one made by Nebuchadnezzar in his twenty-third year, B.C. 581, which had no very important consequences, and the other eleven years later, B.C. 570, which terminated in the deposition of Uaphris, and the establishment on the throne of a new king, Amasis, who received a nominal royalty from Chaldæan monarch.[100]

Such—as far as they are known—were the military exploits of this great king. He defeated Neco, recovered Syria, crushed rebellion in Judæa, took Tyre, and humiliated Egypt. According to some writers his successes did not stop here. Megasthenes made him subdue most of Africa, and thence pass over into Spain and conquer the Iberians.[101] He even went further, and declared that, on his return from these regions, he settled his Iberian captives on the shores of the Euxine in the country between Armenia and the Caucasus! Thus Nebuchadnezzar was made to reign over an empire extending from the Atlantic to the Caspian, and from the Caucasus to the Great Sahara.

The victories of Nebuchadnezzar were not without an effect on his home administration and on the construction of the vast works with which his name is inseparably associated. It was through them that he obtained that enormous command of "naked human strength" which enabled him, without undue oppression of his own people, to carry out on the grandest scale his schemes for at once beautifying and benefiting his kingdom. From the time when he first took the field at the head of an army he adopted the Assyrian system[102] of forcibly removing almost the whole population of a conquered country, and planting it in a distant part of his dominions. Crowds of captives—the produce of his various wars—Jews, Egyptians, Phœnicians, Syrians, Ammonites, Moabites, were settled in various parts of Mesopotamia,[103] more especially about Babylon. From these unfortunates forced labor was as a matter of course required;[104] and it seems to have been chiefly, if not

solely, by their exertions that the magnificent series of great works was accomplished, which formed the special glory of the Fourth Monarchy.

The chief works expressly ascribed to Nebuchadnezzar by the ancient writers are the following: He built the great wall of Babylon,[105] which, according to the lowest estimate,[106] must have contained more than 500,000,000 square feet of solid masonry, and must have required three or four times that number of bricks.[107] He constructed a new and magnificent palace in the neighborhood of the ancient residence of the kings.[108] He made the celebrated "Hanging Garden" for the gratification of his wife, Amyitis.[109] He repaired and beautified the great temple of Belus at Babylon.[110] He dug the huge reservoir near Sippara, said to have been 140 miles in circumference, and 180 feet deep, furnishing it with flood-gates, through which its water could be drawn off for purposes of irrigation.[111] He constructed a number of canals, among them the *Nahr Malcha* or "Royal River," a broad and deep channel which connected the Euphrates with the Tigris.[112] He built quays and breakwaters along the shores of the Persian Gulf, and he at the same time founded the city of Diridotis or Teredon in the vicinity of that sea.[113]

To these constructions may be added, on the authority either of Nebuchadnezzar's own inscriptions or of the existing remains, the Birs-i-Nimrud, or great temple of Nebo at Borsippa;[114] a vast reservoir in Babylon itself, called the *Yapur-Shapu*;[115] an extensive embankment along the course of the Tigris, near Baghdad;[116] and almost innumerable temples, walls, and other public buildings at Cutha, Sippara, Borsippa, Babylon, Chilmad, Bit-Digla, etc. The indefatigable monarch seems to have either rebuilt, or at least repaired, almost every city and temple throughout the entire country. There are said to be at least a hundred sites in the tract immediately about Babylon, which give evidence, by inscribed bricks bearing his legend, of the marvellous activity and energy of this king.[117]

We may suspect that among the constructions of Nebuchadnezzar was another great work, a work second in utility to none of those above mentioned, and requiring for its completion an enormous amount of labor. This is the canal called by the Arabs the *Kerek Saïdeh*, or canal of Saideh, which they ascribe to a wife of Nebuchadnezzar, a cutting 400 miles in length, which commenced at Hit on the Euphrates, and was carried along the extreme western edge of the alluvium close

to the Arabian frontier, finally falling into the sea at the head of the Bubian creek, about twenty miles to the west of the Shat el-Arab. The traces of this canal which still remain[118] indicate a work of such magnitude and difficulty that we can scarcely ascribe it with probability to any monarch who has held the country since Nebuchadnezzar.

The Pallacopas,[119] or canal of Opa (Palga Opa[120]), which left the Euphrates at Sippara (Mosaib) and ran into a great lake in the neighborhood of Borsippa, whence the lands in the neighborhood were irrigated, may also have been one of Nebuchadnezzar's constructions. It was an old canal, much out of repair, in the time of Alexander, and was certainly the work, not of the Persian conquerors, but of some native monarch anterior to Cyrus. The Arabs, who call it the Nahr Abba, regard it as the oldest canal in the country.[121]

Some glimpses into the private life and personal character of Nebuchadnezzar are afforded us by certain of the Old Testament writers. We see him in the Book of Daniel at the head of a magnificent Court, surrounded by "princes, governors, and captains, judges, treasurers, councillors, and sheriffs;"[122] waited on by eunuchs selected with the greatest care, "well-favored" and carefully educated;[123] attended, whenever he requires it, by a multitude of astrologers and other "wise men," who seek to interpret to him the will of Heaven.[124] He is an absolute monarch, disposing with a word of the lives and properties of his subjects, even the highest.[125] All offices are in his gift. He can raise a foreigner to the second place in the kingdom, and even set him over the entire priestly order.[126] His wealth is enormous, for he makes of pure gold an image, or obelisk, ninety feet high and nine feet broad.[127] He is religious after a sort, but wavers in his faith, sometimes acknowledging the God of the Jews as the only real deity,[128] sometimes relapsing into an idolatrous worship,[129] and forcing all his subjects to follow his example.[130] Even then, however, his polytheism is of a kind which admits of a special devotion to a particular deity, who is called emphatically "his god."[131] In temper he is hasty and violent, but not obstinate; his fierce resolves are taken suddenly and as suddenly repented of;[132] he is moreover capable of bursts of gratitude and devotion,[133] no less than of accesses of fury; like most Orientals, he is vainglorious:[134] but he can humble himself before the chastening hand of the Almighty; in his better moods he shows a spirit astonishing in one of his country and time—a spirit of real piety, self-con-

demnation, and self-abasement, which renders him one of the most remarkable characters in Scripture.[135]

A few touches of a darker hue must be added to this portrait of the great Babylonian king from the statements of another contemporary, the prophet Jeremiah. The execution of Jehoiakim, and the putting out of Zedekiah's eyes, though acts of considerable severity, may perhaps be regarded as justified by the general practice of the age, and therefore as not indicating in Nebuchadnezzar any special ferocity of disposition. But the ill-treatment of Jehoiakim's dead body,[136] the barbarity of murdering Zedekiah's sons *before his eyes*,[137] and the prolonged imprisonment both of Zedekiah[138] and of Jehoiachin,[139] though the latter had only contemplated rebellion, cannot be thus excused. They were unusual and unnecessary acts, which tell against the monarch who authorized them, and must be considered to imply a real cruelty of disposition, such as is observable in Sargon and Asshur-bani-pal.[140] Nebuchadnezzar, it is plain, was not content with such a measure of severity as was needed to secure his own interests, but took a pleasure in the wanton infliction of suffering on those who had provoked his resentment.

On the other hand, we obtain from the native writer, Berosus, one amiable trait which deserves a cursory mention. Nebuchadnezzar was fondly attached to the Median princess who had been chosen for him as a wife by his father from political motives.[141] Not content with ordinary tokens of affection, he erected, solely for her gratification, the remarkable structure which the Greeks called the "Hanging Garden."[142] A native of a mountainous country, Amyitis disliked the tiresome uniformity of the level alluvium, and pined for the woods and hills of Media. It was to satisfy this longing by the best substitute which circumstances allowed that the celebrated Garden was made. Art strove to emulate nature, with a certain measure of success, and the lofty rocks[143] and various trees[144] of this wonderful Paradise, if they were not a very close imitation of Median mountain scenery, were at any rate a pleasant change from the natural monotony of the Babylonian plain, and must have formed a grateful retreat for the Babylonian queen, whom they reminded at once of her husband's love and of the beauty of her native country.

The most remarkable circumstance in Nebuchadnezzar's life remains to be noticed. Towards the close of his reign, when his conquests and probably most of his great works were com-

pleted,[145] in the midst of complete tranquillity and prosperity, a sudden warning was sent him. He dreamt a strange dream;[146] and when he sought to know its meaning, the Prophet Daniel was inspired to tell him that it portended his removal from the kingly office for the space of seven years, in consequence of a curious and very unusual kind of madness.[147] This malady, which is not unknown to physicians, has been termed "Lycanthropy."[148] It consists in the belief that one is not a man but a beast, in the disuse of language, the rejection of all ordinary human food, and sometimes in the loss of the erect posture and a preference for walking on all fours. Within a year of the time that he received the warning,[149] Nebuchadnezzar was smitten. The great king became a wretched maniac. Allowed to indulge in his distempered fancy, he eschewed human habitations, lived in the open air night and day, fed on herbs, disused clothing, and became covered with a rough coat of hair.[150] His subjects generally, it is probable, were not allowed to know of his condition,[151] although they could not but be aware that he was suffering from some terrible malady. The queen most likely held the reins of power, and carried on the government in his name. The dream had been interpreted to mean that the lycanthropy would not be permanent; and even the date of recovery had been announced, only with a certain ambiguity.[152] The Babylonians were thereby encouraged to await events, without taking any steps that would have involved them in difficulties if the malady ceased. And their faith and patience met with a reward. After suffering obscuration for the space of seven years, suddenly the king's intellect returned to him.[153] His recovery was received with joy by his Court. Lords and councillors gathered about him.[154] He once more took the government into his own hands, issued his proclamations,[155] and performed the other functions of royalty. He was now an old man, and his reign does not seem to have been much prolonged; but "the glory of his kingdom," his "honor and brightness" returned; his last days were as brilliant as his first: his sun set in an unclouded sky, shorn of none of the rays that had given splendor to its noonday. Nebuchadnezzar expired at Babylon[156] in the forty-fourth year of his reign, B.C. 561, after an illness of no long duration.[157] He was probably little short of eighty years old at his death.[158]

The successor of Nebuchadnezzar was his son Evil-Merodach,[159] who reigned only two years,[160] and of whom very little is known. We may expect that the marvellous events of his

father's life, which are recorded in the Book of Daniel, had made a deep impression upon him, and that he was thence inclined to favor the persons, and perhaps the religion, of the Jews. One of his first acts[161] was to release the unfortunate Jehoiachin from the imprisonment in which he had languished for thirty-five years, and to treat him with kindness and respect. He not only recognized his royal rank, but gave him precedence over all the captive kings resident at Babylon.[162] Josephus says that he even admitted Jehoiachin into the number of his most intimate friends.[163] Perhaps he may have designed him some further advancement, and may in other respects have entertained projects which seemed strange and alarming to his subjects. At any rate he had been but two years upon the throne when a conspiracy was formed against him; he was accused of lawlessness and intemperance;[164] his own brother-in-law, Neriglissar, the husband of a daughter of Nebuchadnezzar, headed the malcontents; and Evil-Merodach lost his life with his crown.

Neriglissar, the successful conspirator, was at once acknowledged king. He is probably identical with the "Nergal-sharezer, Rab-Mag," of Jeremiah,[165] who occupied a prominent position among the Babylonian nobles left to press the siege of Jerusalem when Nebuchadnezzar retired to Riblah. The title of "Rab Mag," is one that he bears upon his bricks. It is doubtful what exactly his office was; for we have no reason to believe that there were at this time any Magi at Babylon;[166] but it was certainly an ancient and very high dignity of which even kings might be proud. It is remarkable that Neriglissar calls himself the son of Bel-sum-iskun, "king of Babylon"—a monarch whose name does not appear in Ptolemy's list, but who is probably to be identified with a chieftain so called, who assumed the royal title in the troubles which preceded the fall of the Assyrian Empire.[167]

During his short reign of four years, or rather three years and a few months,[168] Neriglissar had not time to distinguish himself by many exploits. So far as appears, he was at peace with all his neighbors, and employed his time principally in the construction of the Western Palace at Babylon, which was a large building placed at one corner of a fortified inclosure, directly opposite the ancient royal residence, and abutting on the Euphrates.[169] If the account which Diodorus gives of this palace[170] be not a gross exaggeration of the truth, it must have been a magnificent erection, elaborately ornamented with

painting and sculpture in the best style of Babylonian art, though in size it may have been inferior to the old residence of the kings on the other side of the river.

Neriglissar reigned from B.C. 559 to B.C. 556, and dying a natural death in the last-named year, left his throne to his son, Laborosoarchod, or Labossoracus.[174] This prince, who was a mere boy,[175] and therefore quite unequal to the task of governing a great empire in critical times, was not allowed to retain the crown many months. Accused by those about him—whether justly or unjustly we cannot say—of giving many indications of a bad disposition,[176] he was deposed and put to death by torture.[177] With him power passed from the House of Nabopolassar, which had held the throne for just seventy years.[178]

On the death of Laborosoarchod the conspirators selected one of their number, a certain Nabonadius or Nabannidochus,[179] and invested him with the sovereignty. He was in no way related to the late monarch,[180] and his claim to succeed must have been derived mainly from the part which he had played in the conspiracy. But still he was a personage of some rank, for his father had, like Neriglissar, held the important office of Rab Mag.[181] It is probable that one of his first steps on ascending the throne was to connect himself by marriage with the royal house which had preceded him in the kingdom.[182] Either the mother of the late king Laborosoarchod, and widow of Neriglissar, or possibly some other daughter of Nebuchadnezzar, was found willing to unite her fortune with those of the new sovereign, and share the dangers and the dignity of his position. Such a union strengthened the hold of the reigning monarch on the allegiance of his subjects, and tended still more to add stability to his dynasty. For as the issue of such a marriage would join in one the claims of both royal houses, he would be sure to receive the support of all parties in the state.

Very shortly after the accession of Nabonadius (B.C. 555) he received an embassy from the far north-west.[183] An important revolution had occurred on the eastern frontier of Babylonia three years before, in the reign of Neriglissar;[184] but its effects only now began to make themselves felt among the neighboring nations. Had Cyrus, on taking the crown, adopted the policy of Astyages, the substitution of Persia for Media as the ruling Arian nation would have been a matter of small account. But there can be little doubt that he really entered at once on a career of conquest.[185] Lydia, at any rate, felt herself men-

aced by the new power, and seeing the danger which threatened the other monarchies of the time, if they allowed the great Arian kingdom to attack them severally with her full force, proposed a league whereby the common enemy might, she thought, be resisted with success. Ambassadors seem to have been sent from Sardis to Babylon in the very year in which Nabonadius became king.[185] He therefore had at once to decide whether he would embrace the offer made him, and uniting with Lydia and Egypt in a league against Persia, make that power his enemy, or refuse the proffered alliance and trust to the gratitude of Cyrus for the future security of his kingdom. It would be easy to imagine the arguments *pro* and *contra* which presented themselves to his mind at this conjuncture; but as they would be destitute of a historical foundation, it is perhaps best to state simply the decision at which he is known to have arrived. This was an acceptance of the Lydian offer. Nabonadius consented to join the proposed league; and a treaty was probably soon afterwards concluded between the three powers whereby they united in an alliance offensive and defensive against the Persians.[186]

Knowing that he had provoked a powerful enemy by this bold act, and ignorant how soon he might be called upon to defend his kingdom from the entire force of his foe, which might be suddenly hurled against him almost at any moment, Nabonadius seems to have turned his attention at once to providing means of defence. The works ascribed by Herodotus to a queen, Nitocris, whom he makes the mother of Nabonadius (Labynetus)[187] must be regarded as in reality constructions of that monarch himself,[188] undertaken with the object of protecting Babylon from Cyrus. They consisted in part of defences within the city, designed apparently to secure it against an enemy who should enter by the river, in part of hydraulic works intended to obstruct the advances of an army by the usual route. The river had hitherto flowed in its natural bed through the middle of the town. Nabonadius confined the stream by a brick embankment carried the whole way along both banks, after which he built on the top of the embankment a wall of a considerable height, pierced at intervals by gateways, in which were set gates of bronze.[189] He likewise made certain cuttings, reservoirs, and sluices at some distance from Babylon towards the north, which were to be hindrances to an enemy's march,[190] though in what way is not very apparent. Some have supposed that besides these works there was further

built at the same time a great wall which extended entirely across the tract between the two rivers[99]—a huge barrier a hundred feet high and twenty thick[100]—meant, like the Roman walls in Britain and the great wall of China, to be insurmountable by an uncivilized foe; but there is ground for suspecting that this belief is ill-founded, having for its sole basis a misconception of Xenophon's.[101]

Nabonadius appears to have been allowed ample time to carry out to the full his system of defences, and to complete all his preparations. The precipitancy of Crœsus, who plunged into a war with Persia single-handed, asking no aid from his allies,[102] and the promptitude of Cyrus, who allowed him no opportunity of recovering from his first false step,[103] had prevented Nabonadius from coming into actual collision with Persia in the early part of his reign. The defeat of Crœsus in the battle of Pteria, the siege of Sardis, and its capture, followed so rapidly on the first commencement of hostilities, that whatever his wishes may have been, Nabonadius had it not in his power to give any help to his rash ally. Actual war was thus avoided at this time; and no collision having occurred, Cyrus could defer an attack on the great kingdom of the south until he had consolidated his power in the north and the north-east,[104] which he rightly regarded as of the last importance. Thus fourteen years intervened between the capture of Sardis by the Persian arms and the commencement of the expedition against Babylon.

When at last it was rumored that the Persian king had quitted Ecbatana (B.C. 539) and commenced his march to the south-west, Nabonadius received the tidings with indifference. His defences were completed; his city was amply provisioned;[105] if the enemy should defeat him in the open field, he might retire behind his walls, and laugh to scorn all attempts to reduce his capital either by blockade or storm. It does not appear to have occurred to him that it was possible to protect his territory. With a broad, deep, and rapid river directly interposed between him and his foe, with a network of canals spread far and wide over his country, with an almost inexhaustible supply of human labor at his command for the construction of such dikes, walls, or cuttings as he should deem advisable, Nabonadius might, one would have thought, have aspired to save his land from invasion, or have disputed inch by inch his enemy's advance towards the capital. But such considerations have seldom had much force with Ori-

entals, whose notions of war and strategy are even now of the rudest and most primitive description. To measure one's strength as quickly as possible with that of one's foe, to fight one great pitched battle in order to decide the question of superiority in the field, and then, if defeated, either to surrender or to retire behind walls, has been the ordinary conception of a commander's duties in the East from the time of the Ramesside kings to our own day. No special blame therefore attaches to Nabonadius for his neglect. He followed the traditional policy of Oriental monarchs in the course which he took. And his subjects had less reason to complain of his resolution than most others, since the many strongholds in Babylonia must have afforded them a ready refuge, and the great fortified district within which Babylon itself stood [196] must have been capable of accommodating with ease the whole native population of the country.

If we may trust Herodotus, the invader, having made all his preparations and commenced his march, came to a sudden pause midway between Ecbatana and Babylon.[197] One of the sacred white horses, which drew the chariot of Ormazd,[198] had been drowned in crossing a river; and Cyrus had thereupon desisted from his march, and, declaring that he would revenge himself on the insolent stream, had set his soldiers to disperse its waters into 360 channels. This work employed him during the whole summer and autumn; nor was it till another spring had come that he resumed his expedition. To the Babylonians such a pause must have appeared like irresolution. They must have suspected that the invader had changed his mind and would not venture across the Tigris. If the particulars of the story reached them, they probably laughed at the monarch who vented his rage on inanimate nature, while he let his enemies escape scot free.

Cyrus, however, had a motive for his proceedings which will appear in the sequel. Having wintered on the banks of the Gyndes in a mild climate, where tents would have been quite a sufficient protection to his army, he put his troops in motion at the commencement of spring,[199] crossed the Tigris apparently unopposed, and soon came in sight of the capital. Here he found the Babylonian army drawn out to meet him under the command of Nabonadius himself,[200] who had resolved to try the chance of a battle. An engagement ensued, of which we possess no details; our informants simply tell us that the Babylonian monarch was completely defeated, and

that, while most of his army sought safety within the walls of the capital, he himself with a small body of troops threw himself into Borsippa,[201] an important town lying at a short distance from Babylon towards the south-west. It is not easy to see the exact object of this movement. Perhaps Nabonadius thought that the enemy would thereby be obliged to divide his army, which might then more easily be defeated; perhaps he imagined that by remaining without the walls he might be able to collect such a force among his subjects and allies as would compel the besieging army to withdraw. Or, possibly, he merely followed an instinct of self-preservation, and fearing that the soldiers of Cyrus might enter Babylon with his own, if he fled thither, sought refuge in another city.

It might have been supposed that his absence would have produced anarchy and confusion in the capital; but a step which he had recently taken with the object of giving stability to his throne rendered the preservation of order tolerably easy. At the earliest possible moment—probably when he was about fourteen—he had associated with him in the government his son, Belshazzar,[202] or Bel-shar-uzur, the grandson of the great Nebuchadnezzar. This step, taken most likely with a view to none but internal dangers, was now found exceedingly convenient for the purposes of the war. In his father's absence Belshazzar took the direction of affairs within the city, and met and foiled for a considerable time all the assaults of the Persians. He was young and inexperienced, but he had the counsels of the queen-mother to guide and support him,[203] as well as those of the various lords and officers of the court. So well did he manage the defence that after a while Cyrus despaired,[204] and as a last resource ventured on a stratagem in which it was clear that he must either succeed or perish.

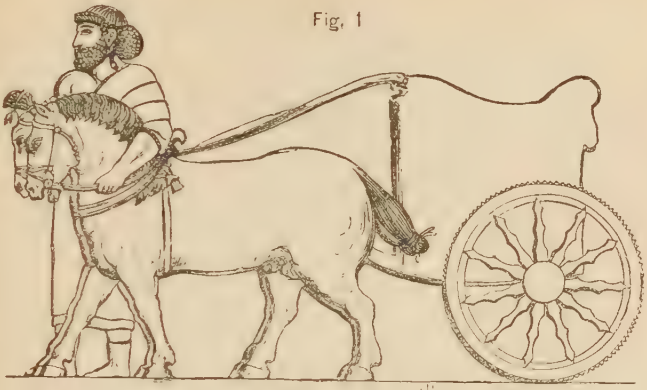
Withdrawing the greater part of his army from the vicinity of the city, and leaving behind him only certain *corps* of observation,[205] Cyrus marched away up the course of the Euphrates for a certain distance, and there proceeded to make a vigorous use of the spade. His soldiers could now appreciate the value of the experience which they had gained by dispersing the Gyndes, and perceive that the summer and autumn of the preceding year had not been wasted. They dug a channel or channels from the Euphrates,[206] by means of which a great portion of its water would be drawn off, and hoped in this way to render the natural course of the river fordable.

When all was prepared, Cyrus determined to wait for the arrival of a certain festival,[209] during which the whole population were wont to engage in drinking and revelling, and then silently in the dead of night to turn the water of the river and make his attack. All fell out as he hoped and wished. The festival was held with even greater pomp and splendor than usual; for Belshazzar, with the natural insolence of youth, to mark his contempt of the besieging army, abandoned himself wholly to the delights of the season, and himself entertained a thousand lords in his palace.[210] Elsewhere the rest of the population was occupied in feasting and dancing.[211] Drunken riot and mad excitement held possession of the town: the siege was forgotten; ordinary precautions were neglected.[212] Following the example of their king, the Babylonians gave themselves up for the night to orgies in which religious frenzy and drunken excess formed a strange and revolting medley.[213]

Meanwhile, outside the city, in silence and darkness,[214] the Persians watched at the two points where the Euphrates entered and left the walls. Anxiously they noted the gradual sinking of the water in the river-bed; still more anxiously they watched to see if those within the walls would observe the suspicious circumstance and sound an alarm through the town. Should such an alarm be given, all their labors would be lost. If, when they entered the river-bed, they found the river-walls manned and the river-gates fast-locked, they would be indeed "caught in a trap."[215] Enfiladed on both sides by an enemy whom they could neither see nor reach, they would be overwhelmed and destroyed by his missiles before they could succeed in making their escape. But, as they watched, no sounds of alarm reached them—only a confused noise of revel and riot, which showed that the unhappy townsmen were quite unconscious of the approach of danger.

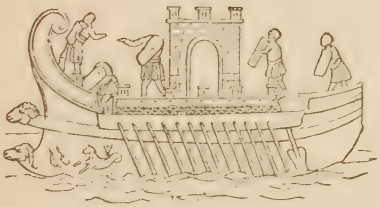
At last shadowy forms began to emerge from the obscurity of the deep river-bed, and on the landing-places opposite the river-gates scattered clusters of men grew into solid columns—the undefended gateways were seized—a war-shout was raised—the alarm was taken and spread—and swift runners started off to "show the King of Babylon that his city was taken at one end."[216] In the darkness and confusion of the night a terrible massacre ensued.[217] The drunken revellers could make no resistance. The king paralyzed with fear[218] at the awful handwriting upon the wall, which too late had warned him of his peril,[219] could do nothing even to check the progress

Fig. 1



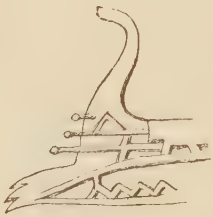
Persian Chariot (from Persepolis).

Fig. 2



Greek Triaconter, after Montfaucon.

Fig. 3.



Beak of Persian War-galley (enlarged from a Coin).

Fig. 4.

Persian Penteconter (enlarged from a Coin).

Fig. 5.

Head of Persian King (from a Daric).

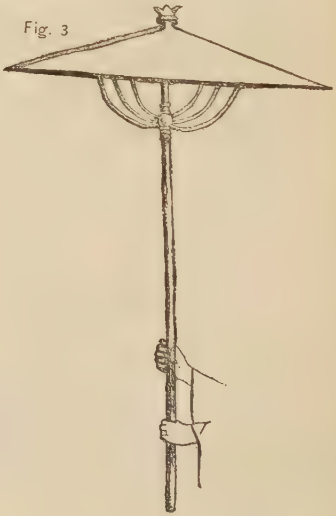
Fig. 1.

King seated on his Throne (Persepolis).

Fig. 2.

Head of Persian King (Persepolis).

Fig. 3



Royal Parasol (Persepolis).

Fig. 4.

Heads of Persian Kings (from Cylinders).

of the assailants, who carried all before them everywhere. Bursting into the palace, a band of Persians made their way to the presence of the monarch, and slew him on the scene of his impious revelry.[220] Other bands carried fire[221] and sword through the town. When morning came, Cyrus found himself undisputed master of the city, which, if it had not despised his efforts, might with the greatest ease have baffled them.

The war, however, was not even yet at an end. Nabonadius still held Borsippa, and, if allowed to remain unmolested, might have gradually gathered strength and become once more a formidable foe. Cyrus, therefore, having first issued his orders that the outer fortifications of Babylon should be dismantled,[222] proceeded to complete his conquest by laying siege to the town where he knew that Nabonadius had taken refuge.[223] That monarch, however, perceiving that resistance would be vain, did not wait till Borsippa was invested, but on the approach of his enemy surrendered himself.[224] Cyrus rewarded his submission by kind and liberal treatment. Not only did he spare his life, but (if we may trust Abydenus) he conferred on him the government of the important province of Carmania.[225]

Thus perished the Babylonian empire. If we seek the causes of its fall, we shall find them partly in its essential military inferiority to the kingdom that had recently grown up upon its borders, partly in the accidental circumstance that its ruler at the time of the Persian attack was a man of no great capacity. Had Nebuchadnezzar himself, or a prince of his mental calibre, been the contemporary of Cyrus, the issue of the contest might have been doubtful. Babylonia possessed naturally vast powers of resistance—powers which, had they been made use of to the utmost, might have tired out the patience of the Persians. That lively, active, but not overpersevering people would scarcely have maintained a siege with the pertinacity of the Babylonians themselves[226] or of the Egyptians.[227] If the stratagem of Cyrus had failed—and its success depended wholly on the Babylonians exercising no vigilance—the capture of the town would have been almost impossible. Babylon was too large to be blockaded; its walls were too lofty to be scaled, and too massive to be battered down by the means possessed by the ancients. Mining in the soft alluvial soil would have been dangerous work, especially as the town ditch was deep and supplied with abundant water

from the Euphrates.[226] Cyrus, had he failed in his night attack, would probably have at once raised the siege: and Babylonian independence might perhaps in that case have been maintained down to the time of Alexander.

Even thus, however, the "Empire" would not have been continued. So soon as it became evident that the Babylonians were no match for the Persians in the field, their authority over the subject nations was at an end. The Susianians, the tribes of the middle Euphrates, the Syrians, the Phœnicians, the Jews, the Idumæans, the Ammonites and Moabites, would have gravitated to the stronger power, even if the attack of Cyrus on Babylon itself had been repulsed. For the conquests of Cyrus in Asia Minor, the Oxus region, and Afghanistan, had completely destroyed the balance of power in Western Asia, and given to Persia a preponderance both in men and in resources[227] against which the cleverest and most energetic of Babylonian princes would have struggled in vain. Persia must in any case have absorbed all the tract between Mount Zagros and the Mediterranean, except Babylonia Proper: and thus the successful defence of Babylon would merely have deprived the Persian Empire of a province.

In its general character the Babylonian Empire was little more than a reproduction of the Assyrian.[228] The same loose organization of the provinces under native kings rather than satraps almost universally prevailed,[229] with the same duties on the part of suzerain and subjects and the same results of ever-recurring revolt and re-conquest.[230] Similar means were employed under both empires to check and discourage rebellion—mutilations and executions of chiefs, pillage of the rebellious region, and wholesale deportation of its population. Babylon, equally with Assyria, failed to win the affections of the subject nations, and, as a natural result, received no help from them in her hour of need. Her system was to exhaust and oppress the conquered races for the supposed benefit of the conquerors, and to impoverish the provinces for the adornment and enrichment of the capital. The wisest of her monarchs thought it enough to construct works of public utility in Babylonia Proper,[231] leaving the dependent countries to themselves, and doing nothing to develop their resources. This selfish system was, like most selfishness, short-sighted; it alienated those whom it would have been true policy to conciliate and win. When the time of peril came, the subject nations were no source of strength to the menaced empire. On the con-

trary, it would seem that some even turned against her and made common cause with the assailants.[232]

Babylonian civilization differed in many respects from Assyrian, to which however it approached more nearly than to any other known type. Its advantages over Assyrian were in its greater originality, its superior literary character, and its comparative width and flexibility. Babylonia seems to have been the source from which Assyria drew her learning, such as it was, her architecture, the main ideas of her mimetic art, her religious notions, her legal forms, and a vast number of her customs and usages. But Babylonia herself, so far as we know, drew her stores from no foreign country. Hers was apparently the genius which excogitated an alphabet—worked out the simpler problems of arithmetic—invented implements for measuring the lapse of time—conceived the idea of raising enormous structures with the poorest of all materials, clay—discovered the art of polishing, boring, and engraving gems—reproduced with truthfulness the outlines of human and animal forms—attained to high perfection in textile fabrics—studied with success the motions of the heavenly bodies—conceived of grammar as a science—elaborated a system of law—saw the value of an exact chronology—in almost every branch of science made a beginning, thus rendering it comparatively easy for other nations to proceed with the superstructure. To Babylonia, far more than to Egypt, we owe the art and learning of the Greeks. It was from the East, not from Egypt, that Greece derived her architecture, her sculpture, her science, her philosophy, her mathematical knowledge—in a word, her intellectual life. And Babylon was the source to which the entire stream of Eastern civilization may be traced. It is scarcely too much to say that, but for Babylon, real civilization might not even yet have dawned upon the earth. Mankind might never have advanced beyond that spurious and false form of it which in Egypt, India, China, Japan, Mexico, and Peru, contented the aspirations of the species.

APPENDIX.

A.

Standard Inscription of Nebuchadnezzar.

The Inscription begins with the various titles of Nebuchadnezzar. It then contains prayers and invocations to the Gods, Merodach and Nebo. The extent of N.'s power is spoken of—it reaches from one sea to the other.

An account is then given of the wonders of Babylon, viz.:

1. The great temple of Merodach. (The mound of *Babil* is the tower or *ziggurat* of this.)
2. The Borsippa temple (or *Birs*).
3. Various other temples in Babylon and Borsippa.

The subjoined description of the city follows:

"The double inclosure which Nabopolassar my father had made but not completed, I finished. Nabopolassar made its ditch. With two long embankments of brick and mortar he bound its bed. He made the embankment of the *Arakha*. He lined the other side of the Euphrates with brick. He made a bridge (?) over the Euphrates, but did not finish its buttresses (?). From . . . (the name of a place) he made with bricks burnt as hard as stones, by the help of the great Lord Merodach, a way (for) a branch of the *Shimat* to the waters of the *Yapur-Shapu*, the great reservoir of Babylon, opposite to the gate of *Nin*.

"The *Ingur-Bel* and the *Nimiti-Bel*—the great double wall of Babylon—I finished. With two long embankments of brick and mortar I built the sides of its ditch. I joined it on with that which my father had made. I strengthened the city. Across the river to the west I built the wall of Babylon with brick. The *Yapur-Shapu*—the reservoir of Babylon—by the grace of Merodach I filled completely full of water. With bricks burnt as hard as stones, and with bricks in huge masses

like mountains (?), the *Yapur Shapu*, from the gate of *Mula* as far as *Nana*, who is the protectress of her votaries, by the grace of his godship (*i.e.* Merodach) I strengthened. With that which my father had made I joined it. I made the way of *Nana*, the protectress of her votaries. The great gates of the *Ingur-Bel* and the *Nimiti-Bel*—the reservoir of Babylon, at the time of the flood (lit. of fulness), inundated them. These gates I raised. Against the waters their foundations with brick and mortar I built. [Here follows a description of the gates, with various architectural details, an account of the decorations, hangings, etc.] For the delight of mankind I filled the reservoir. Behold! besides the *Ingur-Bel*, the impregnable fortification of Babylon, I constructed inside Babylon on the eastern side of the river a fortification such as no king had ever made before me, viz., a long rampart, 4000 *ammas* square, as an extra defence. I excavated the ditch: with brick and mortar I bound its bed; a long rampart at its head (?) I strongly built. I adorned its gates. The folding doors and the pillars I plated with copper. Against presumptuous enemies, who were hostile to the men of Babylon, great waters, like the waters of the ocean, I made use of abundantly. Their depths were like the depths of the vast ocean. I did not allow the waters to overflow, but the fulness of their floods I caused to flow on, restraining them with a brick embankment. . . . Thus I completely made strong the defences of Babylon. May it last forever!

[Here follows a similar account of works at Borsippa.]

"In Babylon—the city which is the delight of my eyes, and which I have glorified—when the waters were in flood, they inundated the foundations of the great palace called *Taprati-nisi*, or "the Wonder of Mankind;" (a palace) with many chambers and lofty towers; the high-place of Royalty; (situated) in the land of Babylon, and in the middle of Babylon; stretching from the *Ingur-Bel* to the bed of the *Shebil*, the eastern canal, (and) from the bank of the Sippara river, to the water of the *Yapur-Shapu;* which Nabopolassar my father built with brick and raised up; when the reservoir of Babylon was full, the gates of this palace were flooded. I raised the mound of brick on which it was built, and made smooth its platform. I cut off the floods of the water, and the foundations (of the palace) I protected against the water with bricks and mortar: and I finished it completely. Long beams I set up to support it: with pillars and beams plated with copper and

strengthened with iron I built up its gates. Silver and gold, and precious stones whose names were almost unknown [here follow several unknown names of objects, treasures of the palace], I stored up inside, and placed there the treasure-house of my kingdom. Four years (?), the seat of my kingdom in the city. . . . ., which. . . . . did not rejoice (my) heart. In all my dominions I did not build a high-place of power; the precious treasures of my kingdom I did not lay up. In Babylon, buildings for myself and the honor of my kingdom I did not lay out. In the worship of Merodach my lord, the joy of my heart (?), in Babylon, the city of his sovereignty and the seat of my empire, I did not sing his praises (?), and I did not furnish his altars (*i.e.* with victims), nor did I clear out the canals. [Here follow further negative clauses.]

"As a further defence in war, at the *Ingur-Bel*, the impregnable outer wall, the rampart of the Babylonians—with two strong lines of brick and mortar I made a strong fort, 400 ammas square inside the *Nimiti-Bel*, the inner defence of the Babylonians. Masonry of brick within them (the lines) I constructed. With the palace of my father I connected it. In a happy month and on an auspicious day its foundations I laid in the earth like. . . . I completely finished its top. In fifteen days I completed it, and made it the high-place of my kingdom. [Here follows a description of the ornamentation of the palace.] A strong fort of brick and mortar in strength I constructed. Inside the brick fortification another great fortification of long stones, of the size of great mountains, I made. Like *Shedim* I raised up its head. And this building I raised for a wonder; for the defence of the people I constructed it."

B.

On The Meanings of Babylonian Names.

The names of the Babylonians, like those of the Assyrians, were significant. Generally, if not always,[2] they were composed of at least two elements. These might be a noun in the nominative case with a verb following it, a noun in the nominative with a participle in apposition, or a word meaning "servant" followed by the name of a god.[3] Under the first class came such names as Bel-ipni[4]—"Bel has made (me)"—from *Bel*,

the name of the god, and *bana* (Heb. בָּנָה), "to make;" Nabo-nassar—"Nebo protects (me)"—from Nebo and *nazar* (Heb. נָצַר), "to guard, protect;" and Nebo-sallim[9] —"Nebo makes perfect" —from Nebo and a verb cognate with the Hebrew שָׁלֵם which in the *Piel* has the meaning of "complete, make perfect." Names compounded with a noun and participle are such as Nebo-nahid and Nahid-Merodach. Here *nahid* is the participle active of a verb, *nahad*,[9] cognate with the Arabic نَهِدَ and the Hebrew נָהַר, meaning "to make prosperous" or "bless." A specimen of a name compounded with a word meaning "servant" and the appellation of a god seems to exist in Abed-nego —more properly Abed-Nebo[9] from *abed* (Heb. עֶבֶד), "a slave," and Nebo, the well-known and favorite god.

More usually a Babylonian name consists of three elements, a noun in the nominative, a verb or participle, and a noun in the accusative following the verb. To this class belong the following: Nabopolassar, Nebuchadnezzar, Neriglissar, Belshazzar, Merodach-baladan, Merodach-iddin-akhi, Merodach-sum-adin, Merodach-shapik-ziri, Nebo-bil-sumi, and Nebuzaradan.

Nabopolassar, or more properly Nabu-pal-uzur, means "Nebo protects (my) son,"[9] being formed from the roots *Nabu*, "Nebo," *pal*, "son," and *nazar*, "to protect." Nebuchadnezzar, or Nebuchadrezzar[9] (in the original, Nabu-kudurri-uzur), means either "Nebo is the protector of landmarks," or "Nebo protects the youth." The first and last elements are the same as in Nabopolassar: the middle element *kudur* is a word of very doubtful meaning. It has been connected by some with the Persian *κίδαρις*, "crown." M. Oppert explains it from the Arabic كَدَرٌ which means "a young man."[10] Sir H. Rawlinson regards it as meaning "a landmark."

Neriglissar and Belshazzar are names of exactly the same kind. The former, correctly written, is Nergal-sar-uzur; the latter, Bel-sar-uzur. The one means "Nergal protects the king;" the other, "Bel protects the king." The only new element here is the middle one, *sar*, "king" (Heb. שַׂר), which is found in Sargon, and perhaps in Shar-ezer.

In Merodach-bal-adan (or Marduk-bal-iddin) we have *bal*, a variant of *pal*, "a son," and *iddin*, the 3d person singular of *nadan*, "to give" (comp. Heb. יָתַן). The name consequently

means "Merodach has given a son." Similarly, in Marduk-iddin-akhi we have *iddin* from *nadan*, together with *akhi*, the plural of *akhu*, "a brother;" and the meaning of the name is thus "Merodach has given brothers." The two roots Merodach and *iddin* appear also in Merodach-sum-adan (or Marduk-sum-iddin) in conjunction with a new root, *sum*, "a name" (comp. Heb. שֵׁם); and there results the meaning "Merodach has given a name" -or perhaps "Merodach is the giver of fame;" since the Hebrew שֵׁם has likewise that signification.

Merodach-shapik-ziri[11] may be translated "Merodach produces offspring," the root *shapik* being connected with שָׁפַךְ, "to pour out," derivatives from which have a genitive sense, as יִשְׁפְּחָה and *ziri* being the plural of *zir*, a root meaning "seed, race, offspring" (comp. Heb. זֶרַע).

In Nabu-bil-sumi,[12] *bil* is used in its original sense of "lord" (comp. Heb. בַּעַל), while *sumi* is the plural of *sum*, "a name." The meaning is thus "Nebo presides over names," or "Nebo is the lord of names."

Nebu-zar-adan[3] is probably a Hebrew corruption of Nebu-zir-iddin, which means "Nebo has given offspring," from roots already explained.

The bulk of the Babylonian names preserved to us in Ptolemy's Canon do not admit of any certain explanation, from the corrupt shape in which they have come down to us. Occasionally we may recognize with some confidence the name of a god in them, as Merodach in Mesesi*mordachus* and Bel in Regi*bel*us; but attempts to give the full actual etymology can only be the merest conjectures,[14] with which it would not be worth while to trouble the reader. A few probable explanations of some Babylonian names preserved by the Hebrews, and probably very little changed, will alone be attempted before bringing these remarks on Babylonian nomenclature to a conclusion.

The Samgar-Nebo[15] of Jeremiah probably signifies "one who is devoted to Nebo," *Samgar* being a *shaphel* form from the root, *migir*, which means "honoring" or "obeying."[16] Sarsechim, in the same writer,[17] is perhaps "the king consents," from *sar* and the Chaldee סכם, which becomes in the *aphel* אַסְכִּים, and has that meaning. Belteshazzar, the name given by the prince of the eunuchs to Daniel, would have appeared, from the obvious analogy of Belshazzar, to be a contracted form of

Bilta-sar-uzur, and therefore to signify "Beltis protects the king." But it is an objection to this that Nebuchadnezzar connects the name with that of "his god,"[19] who must (it would seem) be Bel, and not Beltis. If then we are obliged to seek another derivation, we may perhaps find it in Bel, the god, *tisha* (Heb. שֵׁתָה, "a secret,"[20] and *uzur*, from *nazar*, "to guard, protect." Belteshazzar would then mean "Bel is the keeper of secrets," an appropriate sense, since "secrets" were what Daniel was considered especially to know.[20]

It will be observed that almost every Babylonian name, the etymology of which is known to us, has a religious character. Among the elements is almost universally to be recognized the name of a god. The gods especially favored are Nebo and Merodach, after whom comes Bel, and then Nergal and Shamas. In the kind of religious sentiment which they express the names closely resemble those of the Assyrians.[21] First, there are names announcing facts of the mythology; as Nebuchadrezzar, "Nebo protects landmarks," Belteshazzar, "Bel guards secrets." Next, there are those in which a glorification of the deity is made, as Nabu-bil-sumi, "Nebo is the lord of names;" Nabusallim, "Nebo makes perfect," and the like. Thirdly, a number of names contain the idea of thankfulness to the god who has granted the child in answer to prayer, as Merodach-bal adan, "Merodach has given a son;" Bel-ipni, "Bel has made (him);" Nebu-zar-adan, "Nebo has given the offspring," etc. And, finally, there are those which imply special devotion of the individual to a particular deity, either directly, as Sangar-Nebo, "the devotee of Nebo;" Abed-Nebo, "the slave of Nebo;" or indirectly, as Nabo nazar, "Nebo protects (me);" Nabopolassar, "Nebo protects (my) son;" Belshazzar, "Bel protects the king," Nabo-nahid, "Nebo (is) protecting (me)," and the like.

In the comparatively rare case of names which contain no divine element, the honor of the king seems to have been sometimes,[22] but not very often, considered. In Yakin, Nadina, Zakiru, Balazu, Hagisa, Susub, names which seem to be of a purely secular character, there is contained no flattery of the monarch. Thus far then the Babylonians would appear to have been of a more independent spirit than the Assyrians, with whom this species of adulation was not infrequent.

THE FIFTH MONARCHY.

PERSIA.

CHAPTER I.

EXTENT OF THE EMPIRE.

Τὴν Ἀσίην καὶ τὰ ἐνοικέοντα ἔθνεα οἰκειεῦνται οἱ Πέρσαι.—Herod. i. 4.

The geographical extent of the Fifth Monarchy was far greater than that of any one of the four which had preceded it. While Persia Proper is a comparatively narrow and poor tract, extending in its greatest length only some seven or eight degrees (less than 500 miles), the dominions of the Persian kings covered a space fifty-six degrees long, and in places more than twenty degrees wide. The boundaries of their empire were the desert of Thibet, the Sutlej, and the Indus, on the east; the Indian Sea, the Persian Gulf, the Arabian and Nubian deserts, on the south; on the west, the Greater Syrtis, the Mediterranean, the Egean, and the Strymon river; on the north, the Danube, the Black Sea, the Caucasus, the Caspian, and the Jaxartes.[1] Within these limits lay a territory, the extent of which from east to west was little less than 3000 miles, while its width varied between 500 and 1500 miles. Its entire area was probably not less than two millions of square miles—or more than half that of modern Europe. It was thus at least eight times as large as the Babylonian Empire at its greatest extent,[2] and was probably more than four times as large as the Assyrian.[3]

The provinces included within the Empire may be conveniently divided into the Central, the Western, and the Eastern. The Central are Persia Proper, Susiana, Babylonia, Assyria, Media, the coast tract of the Caspian, and Sagartia, or the

Great Desert. The Western are Pæonia, Thrace, Asia Minor, Armenia, Iberia, Syria and Phœnicia, Palestine, Egypt, and the Cyrenaica. The Eastern are Hyrcania, Parthia, Aria, Chorasmia, Sogdiana, Bactria, Scythia, Gandaria, Sattagydia, India, Paricania, the Eastern Æthiopia, and Mycia.

Of these countries a considerable number have been already described in these volumes. Susiana,[4] Babylonia,[5] Assyria,[6] Media,[7] the Caspian coast,[8] Armenia,[9] Syria,[10] Phœnicia,[11] and Palestine,[12] belong to this class: and it may be assumed that the reader is sufficiently acquainted with their general features. It would therefore seem to be enough in the present place to give an account of the regions which have not yet occupied our attention, more especially of Persia Proper—the home of the dominant race.

Persia Proper seems to have corresponded nearly to that province of the modern Iran, which still bears the ancient name slightly modified,[13] being called Farsistan or Fars. The chief important difference between the two is, that whereas in modern times the tract called Kerman is regarded as a distinct and separate region,[14] Carmania anciently was included within the limits of Persia.[15] Persia Proper lay upon the gulf to which it has given name, extending from the mouth of the Tab (Oroatis) to the point where the gulf joins the Indian Ocean. It was bounded on the west by Susiana, on the north by Media Magna, on the east by Mycia, and on the south by the sea. Its length seems to have been about 450, and its average width about 250 miles. It thus contained an area of rather more than 100,000 square miles.

In modern times it is customary to divide the province of Fars into the *ghermsir*, or, "warm district," and the *serdsir*, or "cold region"[16]—and the physical character of the country must have made such a division thoroughly appropriate at every period. The "warm district" is a tract of sandy plain, often impregnated with salt, which extends between the mountains and the sea the whole length of the province, being a continuation of the flat region of Susiana,[17] but falling very much short of that region in all the qualities which constitute physical excellence. The soil is poor, consisting of alternate sand and clay[18]—it is ill-watered, the entire tract possessing scarcely a single stream worthy of the name of river[19]—and, lying only just without the northern Tropic, the district is by its very situation among the hottest of western Asia.[20] It forms, however, no very large portion of the ancient Persia,

being in general a mere strip of land, from ten to fifty miles wide, and thus not constituting more than an eighth part of the territory in question.

The remaining seven eighths belong to the *serdsir*, or "cold region." The mountain-range which under various names skirts on the east the Mesopotamian lowland, separating off that depressed and generally fertile region from the bare high plateau of Iran, and running continuously in a direction parallel to the course of the Mesopotamian streams—*i.e.* from the north-west to the south-east[21]—changes its course as it approaches the sea, sweeping gradually round between long. 50° and 55°, and becoming parallel to the coast-line, while at the same time it broadens out, till it covers a space of nearly three degrees, or above two hundred miles. Along the high tract thus created lay the bulk of the ancient Persia, consisting of alternate mountain, plain, and narrow valley, curiously intermixed, and as yet very incompletely mapped.[22] This region is of varied character. In places richly fertile,[23] picturesque, and romantic almost beyond imagination,[24] with lovely wooded dells, green mountain-sides, and broad plains suited for the production of almost any crops, it has yet on the whole a predominant character of sterility and barrenness, especially towards its more northern and eastern portions.[25] The supply of water is everywhere scanty. Scarcely any of the streams are strong enough to reach the sea. After short courses they are either absorbed by the sand or end in small salt lakes, from which the superfluous water is evaporated. Much of the country is absolutely without streams, and would be uninhabitable were it not for the *kanats*, or *karizes*,[26] subterranean channels of spring-water, described at length in a former volume.[27]

The only rivers of the district which deserve any attention are the Tab (or Oroatis), whereof a description has been already given,[28] the Kur or Bendamir (called anciently Araxes[29]), with its tributary, the Pulwar (or Cyrus), and the Khoonazaberni or river of Khisht.[30]

The Bendamir rises in the mountains of the Bakhtiyari chain, in lat. 30° 35′, long. 51° 50′ nearly, and runs with a course which is generally south-east, past the ruins of Persepolis, to the salt lake of Neyriz or Kheir,[31] which it enters in long. 53° 30′. It receives, where it approaches nearest to Persepolis, the Pulwar or Kur-ab, a small stream coming from the north-east and flowing by the ruins of both Pasargadæ[32]

and Persepolis. A little below its junction with this stream the Bendamir is crossed by a bridge of five arches,[33] and further down, on the route between Shiraz and Kerman, by another of twelve.[34] Here its waters are to a great extent drawn off by means of canals, and are made to fertilize a large tract of rich flat country on either bank,[35] after which the stream pursues its course with greatly diminished volume to the salt lake in which it ends. The entire course, including only main windings, may be estimated at 140 or 150 miles.

The Khoonazaberni or river of Khisht rises near the ruins of Shapur, at a short distance from Kazerun, on the route between Bushire and Shiraz, and flows in a broad valley[36] between lofty mountains towards the south-west, entering the Persian Gulf by three mouths,[37] the chief of which is at Rohilla, twenty miles north of Bushire, where the stream has a breadth of sixty yards, and a depth of about four feet.[38] Above Khisht the river is already thirty yards wide.[39] Its chief tributary is the Dalaki stream, which enters it from the east, nearly in long. 51°. The entire course of the Khisht river may be about 95 or 100 miles. Its water is brackish except near the source.[40]

The principal lakes are the Lake of Neyriz and the Deriah-i-Nemek. The Deriah-i-Nemek is a small basin distant about ten miles from Shiraz, which receives the waters of the streams that supply that town. It has a length of about fifteen and a breadth of about three or three and a half miles.[41] The lake of Neyriz or Kheir is of far larger size, being from fifty to sixty miles long and from three to six broad,[42] though in the summer season it is almost entirely dried up.[43] Salt is then obtained from the lake in large quantities, and forms an important feature in the commerce of the district. Smaller lakes, also salt or brackish, exist in other parts of the country, as Lake Famur, near Kazerun, which is about six miles in length, and from half a mile to a mile across.[44]

The most remarkable feature of the country consists in the extraordinary gorges which pierce the great mountain-chain,[45] and render possible the establishment of routes across that tremendous barrier. Scarped rocks rise almost perpendicularly on either side of the mountain-streams, which descend rapidly with frequent cascades and falls. Along the slight irregularities of these rocks the roads are carried in zigzags, often crossing the streams from side to side by bridges of a single arch, which are thrown over profound chasms where the wa-

ters chafe and roar many hundred feet below.[45] [Pl. XXVI.] The roads have for the most part been artificially cut in the sides of the precipices, which rise from the streams sometimes to the height of 2000 feet.[47] In order to cross from the Persian Gulf to the high plateau of Iran, no fewer than three or four of these *kotuls*, or strange gorge-passes, have to be traversed successively. Thus the country towards the edge of the plateau is peculiarly safe from attack, being defended on the north and east by vast deserts, and on the south by a mountain-barrier of unusual strength and difficulty.

It is in these regions, which combine facility of defence with pleasantness of climate, that the principal cities of the district have at all times been placed. The earliest known capital of the region was Pasargadæ,[48] or Persagadæ, as the name is sometimes written,[49] of which the ruins still exist near Murgab, in lat. 30° 15′ long. 53° 17′. Here is the famous tomb of Cyrus,[50] whereof a description will be given hereafter: and here are also other interesting remains of the old Persian architecture. Neither the shape nor the extent of the town can be traced. The situation was a plain amid mountains, watered by small streams which found their way to a river of some size (the Pulwar) flowing at a little distance to the west. [Pl. XXVII., Fig. 1.]

At the distance of thirty miles from Pasargadæ, or of more than forty by the ordinary road,[51] grew up the second capital, Persepolis, occupying a more southern position than the primitive seat of power, but still situated towards the edge of the plateau, having the mountain-barrier to the south-west and the desert at no great distance to the north-east. Like its predecessor, Persepolis was situated in a plain, but in a plain of much larger dimensions and of far greater fertility. The plain of Merdasht is one of the most productive in Persia,[52] being watered by the two streams of the Bendamir and the Pulwar, which unite a few miles below the site of the ancient city. From these two copious and unfailing rivers a plentiful supply of the precious fluid can at all times be obtained; and in Persia such a supply will always create the loveliest verdure, the most abundant crops, and the richest and thickest foliage. The site of Persepolis is naturally far superior to that in which the modern provincial capital, Shiraz, has grown up,[53] at about the same distance from Persepolis as that is from Pasargadæ, and in the same—*i.e.* in a south-west—direction.

Besides Persepolis and Pasargadæ, Persia Proper contained

but few cities of any note or name. If we include Carmania in Persia, Carmana, the capital of that country, may indeed be mentioned as a third Persian town of some consequence; but otherwise the names which occur in ancient authors are insignificant, and designate villages rather than towns of any size. Carmana, however, which is mentioned by Ptolemy[54] and Ammianus[55] as the capital of those parts, seems to have been a place of considerable importance. It may be identified with the modern Kerman, which lies in lat. 29° 55′, long. 56° 13′, and is still one of the chief cities of Persia.[56] Situated, like Pasargadæ and Persepolis, in a capacious plain surrounded by mountains, which furnish sufficient water for cultivation to be carried on by means of *kanats* in most parts of the tract enclosed by them,[57] and occupying a site through which the trade of the country almost of necessity passes, Kerman must always be a town of no little consequence. Its inland and remote position, however, caused it to be little known to the Greeks; and, apparently, the great Alexandrian geographer was the first who made them acquainted with its existence and locality.

The Persian towns or villages upon the coast of the Gulf were chiefly Armuza[58] (which gave name to the district of Armuzia[59]), opposite the modern island of Ormuz; Sisidona,[60] which must have been near Cape Jerd; Apostana,[61] probably about Shewar; Gogana,[62] no doubt the modern Kongoon; and Taöcé on the Granis,[63] famous as having in its neighborhood a royal palace,[64] which we may perhaps place near Dalaki, Taöcé itself occupying the position of Rohilla, at the mouth of the Khisht river. Of the inland towns the most remarkable, after Persepolis, Pasargadæ, and Carmana, were Gabæ, near Pasargadæ,[65] also the site of a palace;[66] Uxia,[67] or the Uxian city,[68] which may have occupied the position of Mal-Amir.[69] Obroatis, Tragonicé, Ardea, Portospana[70] Hyrba,[71] etc., which it is impossible to locate unless by the merest conjecture.

The chief districts into which the territory was divided were Parætacêné, a portion of the Bakhtiyari mountain-chain, which some, however, reckoned to Media;[72] Mardyêné, or the country of the Mardi, also one of the hill tracts;[73] Taocêné, the district about Taöcé, part of the low sandy coast region;[74] Ciribo, the more northern portion of the same region;[75] and Carmania, the entire eastern territory.[76] These districts were not divided from one another by any marked natural features, the only division of the country to which such a character attached be-

ing the triple one into the high sandy plains north of the mountains, the mountain region, and the Deshtistan, or low hot tract along the coast.

From this account it will be easy to understand how Persia Proper acquired and maintained the character of "a scant land and a rugged," which we find attaching to it in ancient authors.[77] The entire area, as has been already observed, was about 100,000 square miles[78]—little more than half that of Spain, and about one fifth of the area of modern Persia. Even of this space nearly one half was uninhabitable, consisting either of barren stony mountain or of scorching sandy plain, ill supplied with water, and often impregnated with salt. The habitable portion consisted of the valleys and plains among the mountains and along their skirts, together with certain favored spots upon the banks of streams in the flat regions. These flat regions themselves were traversed in many places by rocky ridges of a singularly forbidding aspect. The whole appearance of the country was dry, stony, sterile. As a modern writer observes, "the livery of the land is constantly brown or gray; water is scanty; plains and mountains are equally destitute of wood. When the traveller, after toiling over the rocky mountains that separate the plains, looks down from the pass he has won with toil and difficulty upon the country below, his eye wanders unchecked and unrested over an uniform brown expanse losing itself in distance."[79]

Still this character, though predominant, is not universal. Wherever there is water, vegetation springs up. The whole of the mountain region is intersected by valleys and plains which are more or less fertile. The line of country between Bebahan and Shiraz is for above sixty miles "covered with wood and verdure."[80] East of Shiraz, on the route between that city and Kerman, the country is said to be in parts "picturesque and romantic," consisting of "low luxuriant valleys or plains separated by ranges of low mountains, green to their very summits with beautiful turf."[81] The plains of Khubbes, Merdasht, Ujan, Shiraz, Kazerun, and others,[82] produce abundantly under a very inefficient system of cultivation. Even in the most arid tracts there is generally a time of greenness immediately after the spring rains, when the whole country smiles with verdure.[83]

It has been already remarked that the Empire, which, commencing from Persia Proper, spread itself, towards the close of the sixth century before Christ, over the surrounding tracts,

Fig. 1.

King wearing a Bracelet and Ear-rings (Nakhsh i-Rustam).

Fig. 3.

Persian King in his Chariot (from a daric).

Fig. 2

Royal Sword (Persepolis).

Fig. 4

Persian Fan or Fly-Chaser (Persepolis).

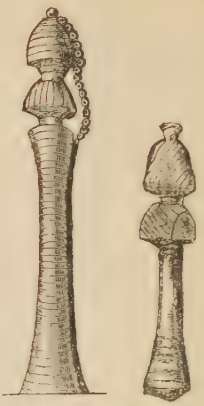
Fig. 5

The Royal Bow and Quiver-Bearer (Behistun).

Fig. 1.

Head-dress of an Attendant (Persepolis).

Fig 2.



Censers (Persepolis).

Fig. 3.

Vase of Caylus.

Fig 4.

Royal Scent-Bottle (Persepolis).

included a number of countries not yet described in these volumes, since they formed no part of any of the four Empires which preceded the Persian.[4] To complete, therefore, the geographical survey proper to our subject, it will be necessary to give a sketch of the tracts in question. They will fall naturally into three groups, an eastern, a north-western, and a south-western—the eastern extending from the skirts of Mount Zagros to the Indian Desert, the north-western from the Caspian to the Propontis, and the south-western from the borders of Palestine to the shores of the Greater Syrtis.

Inside the Zagros and Elburz ranges, bounded on the north and west by those mountain-lines, on the east by the ranges of Sulimán and Hala, and on the south by the coast-chain which runs from Persia Proper nearly to the Indus, lies a vast table-land, from 3000 to 5000 feet above the sea-level, known to modern geographers as the Great Plateau of Iran.[5] Its shape is an irregular rectangle, or trapezium, extending in its greatest length, which is from west to east, no less than twenty degrees, or above 1100 miles, while the breadth from north to south varies from seven degrees, or 480 miles (which is its measure along the line of Zagros), to ten degrees, or 690 miles, where it abuts upon the Indian Valley. The area of the tract is probably from 500,000 to 600,000 square miles.

It is calculated that two thirds of this elevated region are absolutely and entirely desert.[6] The rivers which flow from the mountains surrounding it are, with a single exception—that of the Etymandrus or Helmend—insignificant, and their waters almost always lose themselves, after a course proportioned to their volume, in the sands of the interior. Only two, the Helmend and the river of Ghazni, have even the strength to form lakes; the others are absorbed by irrigation, or sucked up by the desert. Occasionally a river, rising within the mountains, forces its way through the barrier, and so contrives to reach the sea. This is the case, especially, on the south, where the coast chain is pierced by a number of streams, some of which have their sources at a considerable distance inland.[7] On the north the Heri-rud, or River of Herat, makes its escape in a similar way from the plateau, but only to be absorbed, after passing through two mountain chains, in the sands of the Kharesm. Thus by far the greater portion of this region is desert throughout the year, while, as the summer advances, large tracts, which in the spring were green, are burnt up—the rivers shrink back towards their sources—the whole plateau

becomes dry and parched - and the traveller wonders that any portion of it should be inhabited.[88]

It must not be supposed that the entire plateau of which we have been speaking is to the eye a single level and unbroken plain. In the western portion of the region the plains are constantly intersected by "brown, irregular, rocky ridges," rising to no great height, but serving to condense the vapors held in the air, and furnishing thereby springs and wells of inestimable value to the inhabitants. In the southern and eastern districts "immense" ranges of mountains are said to occur: and the south-eastern as well as the north-eastern corners of the plateau are little else than confused masses of giant elevations.[91] Vast flats, however, are found. In the Great Salt Desert, which extends from Kashan and Koum to the *Deriah* or "Sea" in which the Helmend terminates, and in the sandy desert of Seistan, which lies east and south-east of that lake, reaching from near Furrah to the Mekran mountains, plains of above a hundred miles in extent appear to occur,[92] sometimes formed of loose sand, which the wind raises into waves like those of the sea,[93] sometimes hard and gravelly,[94] or of baked and indurated clay.[95]

The tract in question, which at the present day is divided between Afghanistan, Beloochistan, and Iran, contained, at the time when the Persian Empire arose, the following nations: the Sagartians, the Cossæans, the Parthians, the Hariva or Arians, the Gandarians, the Sattagydians, the Arachotians, the Thamanæans, the Sarangæ, and the Paricanians. The Sagartians and Cossæans dwelt in the western portion of the tract, the latter probably about the Siah-Koh mountains,[96] the former scattered over the whole region from the borders of Persia Proper to the Caspian Gates and the Elburz range.[97] Along its northern edge, east of the Sagartians, were the Parthians, the Arians, and the Gandarians, occurring in that order as we proceed from west to east. The Parthians held the country known now as the *Atak* or "Skirt,"[98] the flat tract at the southern base of the Elburz from about Shahrud to Khaff, together with a portion of the mountain region adjoining. This is a rich and valuable territory, well watered by a number of small streams, which, issuing from the ravines and valleys of the Elburz, spread fertility around,[99] but lose themselves after a short course in the Salt Desert. Adjoining the Parthians upon the east were the Haroyu, Hariva, or Arians, an Iranic race of great antiquity,[100] who held the country along the southern

skirts of the mountains from the neighborhood of Khaff to the point where the Heri-rud (Arius) issues from the Paropamisan mountains. The character of this country closely resembles that of Parthia, whereof it is a continuation; but the copious stream of the Heri-rud renders it even more productive.[101]

The Gandarians held Kabul, and the mountain tract on both sides of the Kabul river as far as the upper course of the Indus,[102] thus occupying the extreme north-eastern corner of the plateau, the region where its elevation is the greatest. Lofty mountain-ridges, ramifying in various directions but tending generally to run east and west, deep gorges, narrow and tremendous passes, like the Khyber, characterize this district.[103] Its soil is generally rocky and barren; but many of the valleys are fertile, abounding with enchanting scenery and enjoying a delightful climate.[104] More especially is this the case in the neighborhood of the city of Kabul, which is perhaps the Caspatyrus of Herodotus,[105] where Darius built the fleet which descended the Indus.

South of Aria and Gandaria, in the tract between the Great Desert and the Indus valley, the plateau was occupied by four nations—the Thamanæans, the Sarangians, the Sattagydians, and the Arachotians. The Thamanæan country appears to have been that which lies south and south-east of Aria (Herat), reaching from the Haroot-rud or river of Subzawar to the banks of the Helmend about Ghirisk.[106] This is a varied region, consisting on the north and the north-east of several high mountain chains which ramify from a common centre, having between them large tracts of hills and downs,[107] while towards the south and the south-west the country is comparatively low and flat, descending to the level of the desert about the thirty second parallel. Here the Thamanæans were adjoined upon by the Sarangians, who held the land about the lake in which the Helmend terminates[108]—the Seistan of Modern Persia. Seistan is mainly desert. "One third of the surface of the soil is composed of moving sands, and the other two thirds of a compact sand, mixed with a little clay, but very rich in vegetable matter."[109] It is traversed by a number of streams, as the Haroot-rud, the river of Furrah, the river of Khash, the Helmend, and others, and is very productive along their banks, which are fertilized by annual inundations;[110] but the country between the streams is for the most part an arid desert.

The Sattagydians and Arachotians divided between them the

remainder of Afghanistan, the former probably occupying south-eastern Kabul, from the Ghuzni river and its tributaries to the valley of the Indus,[111] while the latter were located in the modern Candahar, upon the Urghand-ab and Turnuk rivers.[112] The character of these tracts is similar to that of north-western Kabul, but somewhat less rugged and mountainous. Hills and downs alternate with rocky ranges and fairly fertile vales.[113] There is a scantiness of water, but still a certain number of moderate-sized rivers, tolerably well supplied with affluents. The soil, however, is either rocky or sandy: and without a careful system of irrigation great portions of the country remain of necessity barren and unproductive.

The south-eastern corner of the plateau, below the countries of the Sarangians and the Arachotians, was occupied by a people, called Paricanians by Herodotus,[114] perhaps identical with the Gedrosians of later writers. This district, the modern Beloochistan, is still very imperfectly known, but appears to be generally mountainous, to have a singularly barren soil, and to be deficient in rivers.[115] The nomadic life is a necessity in the greater part of the region, which is in few places suitable for cultivation, but has good pastures in the mountains or the plains according to the season of the year. The rivers of the country are for the most part mere torrents, which carry a heavy body of water after rains, but are often absolutely dry for several months in succession.[116] Water, however, is generally obtainable by digging wells in their beds;[117] and the liquid procured in this way suffices, not only for the wants of man and beast, but also for a limited irrigation.

The Great Plateau which has been here described is bordered everywhere, except at its north-eastern and north-western corners, by low regions. On the north the lowland is at first a mere narrow strip intervening between the Elburz range and the Caspian, a strip which has been already described in the account given of the Third Monarchy.[118] Where, however, the Caspian ends, its shore trending away to the northward, there succeeds to this mere strip of territory a broad and ample tract of sandy plain, extending from about the 54th to the 68th degree of east longitude—a distance of 760 miles—and reaching from the 36th to the 50th parallel of north latitude—a distance not much short of a thousand miles! This tract which comprises the modern Khanats of Khiva and Bokhara, together with a considerable piece of Southern Asiatic Russia, is for the most part a huge trackless desert, composed of loose sand,

black or red,"[118] which the wind heaps up into hills. Scarcely any region on the earth's surface is more desolate.[119] The boundless plain lies stretched before the traveller like an interminable sea, but dead, dull, and motionless. Vegetation, even the most dry and sapless, scarcely exists. For three or four hundred miles together he sees no running stream. Water, salt, slimy, and discolored, lies occasionally in pools, or is drawn from wells, which yield however only a scanty supply.[121] For anything like a drinkable beverage the traveller has to trust to the skies, "which give or withhold their stores with a caprice that is truly tantalizing. Occasionally, but only at long intervals, out of the low sandy region there rises a rocky range, or a plateau of moderate eminence, where the soil is firm, the ground smooth, and vegetation tolerably abundant. The most important of the ranges are the Great and Little Balkan, near the Caspian Sea, between the 39th and 40th parallels, the Khalata and Urta Tagh, north-west, of Bokhara, and the Kukuth; still further to the north-west in latitude 42° nearly. The chief plateau is that of Ust-Urt, between the Caspian and the Sea of Aral, which is perhaps not more than three or four hundred *feet* above the sandy plain, but is entirely different in character.[123]

This desolate region of low sandy plain would be wholly uninhabitable, were it not for the rivers. Two great streams, the Amoo or Jyhun (anciently the Oxus), and the Sir or Syhun (anciently the Jaxartes), carry their waters across the desert, and pour them into the basin of the Aral. Several others of less volume, as the Murgab, or river of Merv, the Abi Meshed or Tejend, the Heri-rud, the river of Maymene, the river of Balkh, the river of Khulm, the Shehri-Sebz, the Ak Su or river of Bokhara, the Kizil Deria, etc., flow down from the high ground into the plain, where their waters either become lost in the sands, or terminate in small salt pools.[124] Along the banks of these streams the soil is fertile, and where irrigation is employed the crops are abundant. In the vicinity of Khiva,[125] at Kermineh on the Bokhara river,[126] at Samarcand,[127] at Balkh,[128] and in a few other places, the vegetation is even luxuriant; gardens, meadows, orchards, and cornfields fringe the river-bank; and the natives see in such favored spots resemblances of Paradise![129] Often, however, even the river-banks themselves are uncultivated ,and the desert creeps up to their very edge;[130] but this is in default, not in spite, of human exertion. A well-managed system of irrigation could, in almost every

instance, spread on either side of the streams a broad strip of verdure.

In the time of the Fifth Monarchy, the tract which has been here described was divided among three nations. The region immediately to the east of the Caspian, bounded on the north by the old course of the Oxus and extending eastward to the neighborhood of Merv, though probably not including that city,[131] was Chorasmia,[132] the country of the Chorasmians. Across the Oxus[133] to the north-east was Sogdiana (or Sugd), reaching thence to the Jaxartes, which was the Persian boundary in this direction.[134] South of Sogdiana, divided from it by the Middle and Upper Oxus, was Bactria, the country of the Bakhtars or Bactrians. The territory of this people reached southward to the foot of the Paropamisus, adjoining Chorasmia and Aria on the west, and on the south Sattagydia and Gandaria.

East of the table-land lies the valley of the Indus and its tributaries, at first a broad tract, 350 miles from west to east, but narrowing as it descends, and in places not exceeding sixty or seventy miles across. The length of the valley is not less than 800 miles. Its area is probably about a hundred thousand square miles. We may best regard it as composed of two very distinct tracts—one the broad triangular plain towards the north, to which, from the fact of its being watered by five main streams, the natives have given the name of Punj-ab,[135] the other the long and comparatively narrow valley of the single Indus river, which, deriving its appellation from that noble stream, is known in modern geography as Sinde.[136] The Punjab, which contains an area of above fifty thousand square miles, is mountainous towards the north, where it adjoins on Kashmeer and Thibet, but soon sinks down into a vast plain, with a soil which is chiefly either sand or clay, immensely productive under irrigation, but tending to become jungle or desert if left without human care.[137] Sinde, or the Indus valley below the Punjab, is a region of even greater fertility. It is watered, not only by the main stream of the Indus, but by a number of branch channels which the river begins to throw off from about the 28th parallel. It includes, on the right bank of the stream, the important tract called Cutchi Gandava, a triangular plain at the foot of the Suliman and Hala ranges, containing about 7000 square miles of land which is all capable of being made into a garden. The soil is here for the most part rich, black, and loamy;[138] water is abundant; and the climate suit-

able for the growth of all kinds of grain.[139] Below Cutchi Gandava the valley of the Indus is narrow for about a hundred miles, but about Tatta it expands and a vast delta is formed. This is a third triangle, containing above a thousand square miles of the richest alluvium, which is liable however to floods and to vast changes in the river beds, whereby often whole fields are swept away. Much of this tract is moreover low and swampy: the climate is trying: and rice is almost the only product that can be advantageously cultivated.[140]

The low region lying south of the Great Plateau is neither extensive nor valuable. It consists of a mere strip of land along the coast of the Indian Ocean, extending a distance of about nine degrees (550 miles) from the mouth of the Persian Gulf to Cape Monze, near Kurrachee, but in width not exceeding ten or, at the most, twenty miles. This tract was occupied in ancient times mainly by a race which Herodotus called Ethiopians[141] and the historians of Alexander Ichthyophagi (Fish-Eaters).[142] It is an arid, sultry, and unpleasant region, scarcely possessing a perennial stream, and depending for its harvests entirely upon the winter rains,[143] and for its water during the summer on well which are chiefly brackish.[144] Tolerable pasturage is, however, obtainable in places even during the hottest part of the year, and between Cape Jask and Gwattur the crops produced are far from contemptible.[145]

A small tract of coast, a continuation of the territory just described, intervening between it and Kerman, was occupied in the early Persian times by a race known to the Persians as *Maka*, and to the Greeks as Mycians (*Μύκοι*). This district, reaching from about Cape Jask to Gombroon, is one of greater fertility than is usual in these regions, being particularly productive in dates and grain.[146] This fertility seems, however, to be confined to the vicinity of the sea-shore.

To complete the description of the Eastern provinces two other tracts must be mentioned. The mountain-chain which skirts the Great Plateau on the north, distinguished in these pages by the name of Elburz, broadens out after it passes the south-eastern corner of the Caspian Sea till it covers a space of nearly three degrees (more than 200 miles). Instead of the single lofty ridge which separates the Salt Desert from the low Caspian region, we find between the fifty-fourth and fifty-ninth degrees of east longitude three or four distinct ranges, all nearly parallel to one another, having a general direction of east and west. Broad and rich valleys are enclosed between these lati-

tudinal ranges which are watered by rivers of a considerable size, as more especially the Ettrek and the Gurgan. Thus a territory is formed capable of supporting a largish population, a territory which possesses a natural unity, being shut in on three sides by mountains, and on the fourth by the Caspian. Here in Persian times was settled a people called Hyrcani: and from them the tract derived the name of Hyrcania (Vehrkana[147]), while the lake on which it adjoined came to be known as "the Hyrcanian Sea." [148] The fertility of the region, its broad plains, shady woods and lofty mountains were celebrated by the ancient writers.[149]

Further to the east, beyond the low sandy plain, and beyond the mountains in which its great rivers have their source on the other side of the "Roof of the World," as the natives name this elevated region[150]—lay a tract unimportant in itself, but valuable to the Persians as the home of a people from whom they obtained excellent soldiers. The plain of Chinese Tartary, the district about Kashgar and Yarkand, seems to have been in possession of certain Sacans or Scythians,[151] who in the flourishing times of the empire acknowledged subjection to the Persian crown. These Sacans, who call themselves *Humavarga*[152] or Amyrgians, furnished some of the best and bravest of the Persian troops.[153] Westward they bordered on Sogdiana and Bactria; northward they extended probably to the great mountain-chain of the Tien-chan: on the east they were shut in by the vast desert of Gobi or Shamoo; while southward they must have touched Gandaria and perhaps India.[154] A portion of this country—that towards the north and west—was well watered and fairly productive:[155] but the southern and eastern part of it must have been arid and desert.

From this consideration of the Eastern provinces of the Empire, we pass on naturally to those which lay towards the North-West. The Caspian Sea alone intervened between these two groups, which thus approached each other within a distance of some 250 or 260 miles.

Almost immediately to the west of the Caspian there rises a high table-land diversified by mountains, which stretches eastward for more than eighteen degrees between the 37th and 41st parallels. This highland may properly be regarded as a continuation of the great Iranean plateau, with which it is connected at its south-eastern corner. It comprises a portion of the modern Persia, the whole of Armenia, and most of Asia Minor. Its principal mountain-ranges are latitudinal or from

west to east, only the minor ones taking the opposite or longitudinal direction.[156] Of the latitudinal chains the most important is the Taurus, which, commencing at the south-western corner of Asia Minor in longitude 29° nearly, bounds the great table-land upon the south, running parallel with the shore at the distance of sixty or seventy miles as far as the Pylæ Ciliciæ, near Tarsus, and then proceeding in a direction decidedly north of east to the neighborhood of Lake Van, where it unites with the line of Zagros. The elevation of this range, though not equal to that of some in Asia, is considerable. In Asia Minor the loftiest of the Taurus peaks seem to attain a height of about 9000 or 10,000 feet.[157] Further to the east the elevation appears to be even greater, the peaks of Ala Dagh, Sapan, Nimrud, and Mut Khan in the tract about Lake Van being all of them considerably above the line of perpetual snow,[158] and therefore probably 11,000 or 12,000 feet.

At the opposite side of the table-land, bounding it towards the north, there runs under various names a second continuous range of inferior elevation, which begins near Brusa, in the Keshish Dagh or Mysian Olympus, and proceeds in a line nearly parallel with the northern coast to the vicinity of Kars. Between this and Taurus are two other important ridges, which run westward from the neighborhood of Ararat to about the 34th degree of east longitude, after which they subside into the plain.

The heart of the mountain-region, the tract extending from the district of Erivan on the east to the upper course of the Kizil-Irmak river and the vicinity of Sivas upon the west, was, as it still is, Armenia. Amidst these natural fastnesses, in a country of lofty ridges, deep and narrow valleys, numerous and copious streams, and occasional broad plains - a country of rich pasture grounds, productive orchards, and abundant harvests[159] -this interesting people has maintained itself almost unchanged from the time of the early Persian kings to the present day. Armenia was one of the most valuable portions of the Persian Empire, furnishing, as it did, besides stone and timber, and several most important minerals,[160] an annual supply of 20,000 excellent horses to the stud of the Persian king.[161]

The highland west of Armenia, the plateau of Asia Minor, from the longitude of Siwas (37° E.) to the sources of the Meander and the Hermus, was occupied by the two nations of the Cappadocians and Phrygians, whose territories were separated by the Kizil-Irmak or Halys river. This tract, though

diversified by some considerable ranges, and possessing one really lofty mountain, that of Argæus,[165] was, compared with Armenia, champaign and level. Its broad plains afforded the best possible pasturage for sheep, while at the same time they bore excellent crops of wheat.[166] The entire region was well-watered; it enjoyed a delightful climate; and besides corn and cattle furnished many products of value.[167]

Outside the plateau on the north, on the north-east, on the west, and on the south, lie territories which, in comparison with the high region whereon they adjoined, may be called lowlands. The north-eastern lowland, the broad and rich valley of the Kur, which corresponds closely with the modern Russian province of Georgia, was in the possession of a people called by Herodotus Saspeires or Sapeires,[168] whom we may identify with the Iberians of later writers.[169] Adjoining upon them towards the south, probably in the country about Erivan, and so in the neighborhood of Ararat, were the Alarodians, whose name must be connected with that of the great mountain.[170] On the other side of the Sapeirian country, in the tracts now known as Mingrelia and Imeritia, regions of a wonderful beauty and fertility,[171] were the Colchians—dependants, but not exactly subjects, of Persia.[172]

The northern lowland, which consisted of a somewhat narrow strip of land between the plateau and the Euxine, was a rich and well-wooded region, 630 miles in length, and in breadth from forty to a hundred. It was inhabited by a large number of rude and barbarous tribes, each of whom possessed a small portion of the sea-board.[173] These tribes, enumerated in the order of their occurrence from east to west, were the following: the Moschi, the Macrones (or Tzanii),[174] the Mosynœci, the Mares, the Tibareni, the Chalybes, the Paphlagones, the Mariandyni, the Bithyni, and the Thyni. The Moschi, Macrones, Mosynœci, Mares, and Tibareni dwelt towards the east, occupying the coast from Batoum to Ordou.[175] The Chalybes inhabited the tract immediately adjoining on Sinôpé.[176] The Paphlagonians held the rest of the coast from the mouth of the Kizil-Irmak to Cape Baba, where they were succeeded by the Mariandyni, who owned the small tract between Cape Baba and the mouth of the Sakkariyeh (Sangarius).[177] From the Sangarius to the canal of Constantinople dwelt the Thynians and Bithynians intermixed, the former however affecting the coast and the latter the interior of the country.[178] The entire tract was of a nearly uniform character, consisting of wooded

spurs from the northern mountain-chain, with valleys of greater or less width between them.[177] Streams were numerous, and vegetation was consequently rich; but it may be doubted whether the climate was healthy.

The western lowland comprised the inland regions of Mysia, Lydia, and Caria, together with the coast-tracts which had been occupied by immigrant Greeks, and which were known as Æolis, Doris, and Ionia. The broad and rich plains, the open valleys, the fair grassy mountains, the noble trees, the numerous and copious rivers of this district are too well known to need description here. The western portion of Asia Minor is a terrestrial paradise, well deserving the praises which Herodotus with patriotic enthusiasm bestowed upon it.[178] The climate is delightful, only that it is somewhat too luxurious; the soil is rich and varied in quality; the vegetable productions are abundant; and the mountains, at any rate anciently,[179] possessed mineral treasures of great value.

The lowland upon the south is narrower and more mountainous than either of the others. It comprised three countries only—Lycia, Pamphylia, and Cilicia. The tract is chiefly occupied by spurs from Taurus, between which lie warm and richly wooded valleys. In Lycia, however, the mountain-ridges embrace some extensive uplands,[180] on a level not much inferior to that of the central plateau itself, while in Pamphylia and Cilicia are two or three low alluvial plains of tolerable extent and of great fertility. Of these the most remarkable is that near Tarsus, formed by the three streams of the Cydnus, the Sarus, and the Pyramus, which extends along the coast a distance of forty miles and reaches inland about thirty,[181] the region which gave to the tract where it occurs the name of Cilicia Campestris or Pedias.[181]

The Persian dominion in this quarter was not bounded by sea. Opposite to Cilicia lay the large and important island of Cyprus, which was included in the territories of the Great King from the time of Cambyses to the close of the Empire. Further to the west, Rhodes, Cos, Samos, Chios, Lesbos, Tenedos, Lemnus, Imbrus, Samothrace, Thasos, and most of the islands of the Ægean were for a time Persian, but were never grasped with such firmness as to be a source of real strength to their conquerors. The same may be said of Thrace and Paeonia, subjugated under Darius, and held for some twenty or thirty years, but not assimilated, not brought into the condition of provinces, and therefore rather a drain upon the Empire

than an addition to its resources. It seems unnecessary to lengthen out this description of the Persian territories by giving an account of countries and islands, whose connection with the Empire was at once so slight and so temporary.

A few words must, however, be said respecting Cyprus. This island, which is 140 miles long from Bafa (Paphos) to Cape Andrea, with an average width for two thirds of its length of thirty-five, and for the remaining third of about six or seven miles, is a mountainous tract, picturesque and varied, containing numerous slopes, and a few plains, well fitted for cultivation.[182] According to Eratosthenes it was in the more ancient times richly wooded, but was gradually cleared by human labor.[183] Its soil was productive, and particularly well suited for the vine and the olive. It grew also sufficient corn for its own use.[184] But its special value arose from its mineral products. The copper mines near Tamasus were enormously productive,[185] and the ore thence derived so preponderated over all other supplies that the later Romans came to use the word *Cyprium* for the metal generally—whence the names by which it is even now known in most of the languages of modern Europe.[186] On the whole Cyprus was considered inferior to no known island.[187] Besides its vegetable and mineral products, it furnished a large number of excellent sailors to the Persian fleet.[188]

It remains to notice briefly those provinces of the south-west which had not been included within any of the preceding monarchies, and which are therefore as yet undescribed in these volumes. These provinces are the African, and may be best considered under the three heads of Egypt, Libya, and the Cyrenaica.

Egypt, if we include under the name not merely the Nile valley and the Delta, but the entire tract interposed between the Libyan Desert on the one side and the Arabian Gulf or Red Sea on the other, is a country of nearly the size of Italy.[189] It measures 520 miles from Elephantiné to the Mediterranean, and has an average width of 150 or 160 miles. It must thus contain an area of about 80,000 square miles. Of this space, however, at least three fourths is valueless, consisting of bare rocky mountain or dry sandy plain. It is only along the course of the narrow valley in which the Nile flows from the Cataracts to beyond Cairo,[190] in the tract known as the Faioum, and in the broad region of the Delta, that cultivation is possible. Even in the Delta itself there are large spaces which

are arid, and others which are permanent marshes,[191] so that considerable portions of its surface are unfitted for husbandry. But if the quantity of cultivable land is thus limited in Egypt, the quality is so excellent in consequence of the alluvial character of the soil, that the country was always in ancient times a sort of granary of the world. The noble river, bringing annually a fresh deposit of the richest soil, and furnishing a supply of water, which is sufficient, if carefully husbanded, to produce a succession of luxuriant crops throughout the year, makes Egypt—what it is even at the present day—one of the most fertile portions of the earth's surface—a land of varied products, all excellent—but especially a land of corn, to which the principal nations of the world looked for their supplies, either regularly, or at any rate in times of difficulty.[192]

West of Egypt was a dry and sandy tract, dotted with oases, but otherwise only habitable along the shore,[193] which in the time of the Persian Empire was occupied by a number of wild tribes who were mostly in the lowest condition to which savage man is capable of sinking.[194] The geographical extent of this tract was large, exceeding considerably that of Egypt; but its value was slight. Naturally, it produced nothing but dates and hides. The inhumanity of the inhabitants made it, however, further productive of a commodity, which, until the world is christianized, will probably always be regarded as one of high value—the commodity of negro slaves, which were procured in the Sahara by slave-hunts,[195] and perhaps by purchase in Nigritia.

Still further to the west, and forming the boundary of the Empire in this direction, lay the district of the Cyrenaica, a tract of singular fertility and beauty. Between Benghazi, in east longitude 20°, and the Ras al Tynn (long. 23° 15′), there rises above the level of the adjacent regions an extensive table land,[196] which, attracting the vapors that float over the Mediterranean, condenses them, and so abounds with springs and rills. A general freshness and greenness, with rich vegetation in places, is the consequence. Olives, figs, carobs, junipers, oleanders, cypresses, cedars, myrtles, arbutus-trees, cover the flanks of the plateau and the hollows which break its surface,[197] while the remainder is suitable alike for the cultivation of cereals and for pasturage.[198] Nature has also made the region a special gift in the *laserpitium* or *silphium*, which was regarded by the ancients as at once a delicacy and a plant

of great medicinal power,[259] and which added largely to the value of the country.

Such was the geographical extent of the Persian Empire, and such were the chief provinces which it contained besides those previously comprised in the empires of Media or Babylon. Territorially, the great mass of the Empire lay towards the east, between long. 50° and 75°, or between the Zagros range and the Indian Desert. But its most important provinces were the western ones. East of Persepolis, the only regions of much value were the valleys of the Indus and the Oxus. Westward lay Susiana, Babylonia, Assyria, Media, Armenia, Iberia, Cappadocia, Asia Minor, Cyprus, Syria, Palestine, Egypt, the Cyrenaica—all countries of great, or at least considerable, productiveness. The two richest grain tracts of the ancient world, the best pasture regions, the districts which produced the most valuable horses, the most abundant of known gold-fields, were included within the limits of the Empire, which may be looked upon as self-sufficing, containing within it all that man in those days required, not only for his necessities, but even for his most cherished luxuries.

The productiveness of the Empire was the natural result of its possessing so many and such large rivers. Six streams of the first class,[260] having courses exceeding a thousand miles in length, helped to fertilize the lands which owned the sway of the Great King. These were the Nile, the Indus, the Euphrates, the Jaxartes, the Oxus, and the Tigris. Two of the six have been already described in these volumes,[261] and therefore will not need to detain us here; but a few words must be said with respect to each of the remaining four, if our sketch of the geography of the Empire is to make any approach to completeness.

The Nile was only in the latter part of its course a Persian stream. Flowing, as we now know that it does,[262] from within a short distance of the equator, it had accomplished more than three fourths of its course before it entered a Persian province. It ran, however, through Persian territory a distance of about six hundred miles,[263] and conferred on the tract through which it passed immeasurable benefits. The Greeks sometimes maintained that "Egypt was the gift of the river;"[264] and, though this was very far from being a correct statement in the sense intended, there is a meaning of the words in which we may accept them as expressing a fact. Egypt is only what she is through her river. The Nile gives her all that makes

her valuable. This broad, ample, and unfailing stream not only by its annual inundation enriches the soil and prepares it for tillage in a manner that renders only the lightest further labor necessary,[206] but serves as a reservoir from which inexhaustible supplies of the precious fluid can be obtained throughout the whole of the year. The water, which rises towards the end of June, begins to subside early in October, and for half the year—from December till June—Egypt is only cultivable through irrigation. She produces, however, during this period, excellent crops—even at the present day, when there are few canals—from the facility with which water is obtained, by means of a very simple engine,[207] out of the channel of the Nile. This unfailing supply enabled the cultivator to obtain a second, a third, and even sometimes a fourth crop from the same land within the space of a year.[207]

The course of the Nile from Elephantiné, where it entered Egypt, to Cercasorus,[208] near Heliopolis, where it bifurcated, was in general north, with, however, a certain tendency westward. It entered Egypt nearly in long. 33°, and at Neapolis (more than two degrees further north) it was still within 15′ of the same meridian; then, however, it took a westerly bend, crossed the 32nd and 31st meridians, and in lat. 28° 23′ reached west as far as long. 30° 45′. After this it returned a little eastward, recrossed the 31st meridian, and having reached long. 31° 22′ near Aphroditopolis (lat. 29° 25′), it proceeded almost due north to Cercasorus in lat. 30° 7′. The course of the river up to this point was, from its entry into the country, about 540 miles. At Cercasorus the Delta began. The river threw out two branches, which flowed respectively to the north-east and the north-west, while between them was a third channel, a continuation of the previous course of the stream, which pierced the Delta through its centre, flowing almost due north. Lower down, further branch channels were thrown out, some natural, some artificial, and the triangular tract between the two outer arms of the river was intersected by at least five,[209] and (in later times) by fourteen large streams.[210] The right and left arms appear to have been of about equal in length, and may be estimated at 150 or 160 miles; the central arm had a shorter course, not exceeding 110 miles. The volume of water which the Nile pours into the Mediterranean during a day and night is estimated at from 150,000 millions to 700,000 millions of cubic *mètres*.[211] It was by far the largest of all the rivers of the Empire.

The Indus, which was the next largest of the Persian rivers to the Nile, rose (like the Nile) outside the Persian territory. Its source is in the region north of the Himalaya range, about lat. 31°, long. 82° 30'.[214] It begins by flowing to the north-west, in a direction parallel to that of the Western Himalayas, along the northern flank of which it continues in this line a distance of about 700 miles, past Ladak, to long. 75° nearly. Here it is met by the Bolor chain, which prevents its further progress in this direction and causes it to turn suddenly nearly at a right angle to the south-west. Entering a transverse valley, it finds a way (which is still very imperfectly known[215]) through the numerous ridges of the Himalaya to the plain at its southern base, on which it debouches about thirty miles above Attock. It is difficult to say at what exact point it crossed the Persian frontier, but probably at least the first 700 miles of its course were through territory not Persian. From Attock to the sea the Indus is a noble river. It runs for 900 miles in a general direction of S.S.W. through the plain in one main stream (which is several hundred yards in width),[216] while on its way it throws off also from time to time small side streamlets, which are either consumed in irrigation or rejoin the main channel. A little below Tatta its Delta begins—a Delta, however, much inferior in size to that of the Nile. The distance from the apex to the sea is not more than sixty miles, and the breadth of the tract embraced between the two arms does not exceed seventy miles.[215] The entire course of the Indus is reckoned at 1960 miles,[216] of which probably 1260 were through Persian territory. The volume of the stream is always considerable, while in the rainy season it is very great. The Indus is said then to discharge into the Indian ocean 446,000 cubic feet per second,[217] or 4280 millions of cubic yards in the twenty-four hours.

The Oxus rises from an Alpine lake,[218] lying on the western side of the Bolor chain in lat. 37° 40', long. 73° 50'. After a rapid descent from the high elevation of the lake, during which it pursues a somewhat serpentine course, it debouches from the hills upon the plain about long. 69° 20', after receiving the river of Fyzabad, and then proceeds, first west and afterwards north-west, across the Great Kharesmian Desert to the Sea of Aral. During the first 450 miles of its course, while it runs among the hills, it receives from both sides numerous and important tributaries; but from the meridian of Balkh these fail entirely, and for above 800 miles the Oxus pursues

Canopy of Persian Throne (Persepolis).

Persian sleeved Cloak
(Persepolis).

Fig. 1

Front view of the Same, showing Strings
(ibid.).

Fig. 3

Persian King, killing
an Antelope
(from a Cylinder).

Fig. 2.

Persian King hunting the Lion (from the Signet-Cylinder of Darius Hystaspis).

its solitary way, unaugmented by a single affluent, across the waste of Tartary, rolling through the desert a wealth of waters, which must diminish, but which does not seem very sensibly to diminish, by evaporation. At Kilef, sixty miles north-west of Balkh, the width of the river is 350 yards;[219] at Khodja Salih, thirty miles lower down, it is 823 yards with a depth of twenty feet;[220] at Kerki, seventy miles below Khodja Salih, it is "twice the width of the Danube at Buda-Pesth,"[221] or about 940 yards;[222] at Betik, on the route between Bokhara and Merv, its width has diminished to 650 yards, but its depth has increased to twenty-nine feet.[223] Finally, at Görlen Hezaresp near Khiva, "the breadth of the Oxus is so great that both banks are hardly distinguishable at the same time;[224] but the stream is here comparatively shallow, ceasing to be navigable at about this point."[225] The present course of the Oxus from its rise in Lake Sir-i-Kol to its termination in the Sea of Aral is estimated at 1400 miles.[226] Anciently its course must have been still longer. The Oxus, in the time of the Achæmenian kings, fell into the Caspian[227] by a channel which can even now be traced.[228] Its length was thus increased by at least 450 miles, and, exceeding that of the Jaxartes, fell but little short of the length of the Indus.

The Oxus, like the Nile and the Indus, has a periodical swell, which lasts from May to October.[229] It does not, however, overflow its banks. Under a scientific system of irrigation it is probable that a considerable belt of land on either side of its course might be brought under cultivation. But at present the extreme limit to which culture is carried, except in the immediate vicinity of Khiva,[230] seems to be four miles;[231] while often, in the absence of human care, the desert creeps up to the very brink of the river.

The Jaxartes, or Sir-Deria, rises from two sources in the Thian-chan mountain chain, the more remote of which is in long. 79° nearly.[232] The two streams both flow to the westward in almost parallel valleys, uniting about long. 71°. After their junction the course of the stream is still to the westward for two degrees; but between Khokand and Tashkend the river sweeps round in a semicircle and proceeds to run first due north and then north-west, skirting the Kizil Koum desert to Otrar, where it resumes its original westerly direction and flows with continually diminishing volume across the desert to the Sea of Aral. The Jaxartes is a smaller stream than the Oxus. At Otrar, after receiving its last tributary, it is no

more than 250 yards wide. Below this point it continually dwindles, partly from evaporation, partly from the branch stream which it throws off right and left, of which the chief are the Cazala and the Kuvan Deria. On its way through the desert it spreads but little fertility along its banks, which are in places high and arid, in others depressed and swampy.[283] The branch streams are of some service for irrigation;[284] and it is possible that a scientific system might turn the water of the main channel to good account, and by its means redeem from the desert large tracts which have never yet been cultivated. But no such system has hitherto been applied to the Sir, and it is doubtful whether success would attend it. The Sir, where it falls into the Sea of Aral, is very shallow, seldom even in the flood season exceeding four feet.[285] The length of the stream was till recently estimated at more than 1200 miles;[286] but the latest explorations seem to require an enlargement of this estimate by at least 200 or 250 miles.

In rivers of the second class the Persian Empire was so rich that it will be impossible, within the limits prescribed for the present work, to do more than briefly enumerate them. The principal were, in Asia Minor, the Hermus (Ghiediz Chai), and the Mæander (Mendere) on the west, the Sangarius (Sakkariyeh), the Halys (Kizil Irmak), and the Iris (Yechil Irmak) on the north, the Cydnus (Tersoos Chai), Sarus (Cilician Syhun), and Pyramus (Cilician Jyhun) on the south: in Armenia and the adjacent regions, the Araxes (Aras), Cyrus (Kur), and Phasis (Rion); on the Iranic plateau, the Sefid-rud, the Zenderud or river of Isfahan, the Etymandrus (Helmend), and the Arius (Heri-rud): in the low country east of the Caspian, the Gurgan and Eitrek, rivers of Hyrcania, the Margus (Murghab or river of Merv), the Dehas or river of Balkh, the Ak Su or Bokhara river, and the Kizil Deria, a stream in the Khanat of Kokand; in Afghanistan and India, the Kabul river, the Hydaspes (Jelum), the Acesines (Chenab), the Hydraotes (Ravee), and the Hyphasis (Sutlej or Gharra); in Persia Proper, the Oroatis (Hindyan or Tab), and the Bendamir; in Susiana, the Pasitigris (Kuran), the Hedypnus (Jerahi), the Choaspes (Kerkhah), and the Eulæus (a branch of the same); in the Upper Zagros region, the Gyndes (Diyaleh), and the Greater and Lesser Zabs: in Mesopotamia, the Chaboras (Khabour), and Bilichus (Belik); finally, in Syria and Palestine, the Orontes or river of Antioch (Nahr-el-asy), the Jordan, and the Barada or river of Damascus. Thus, besides the six great rivers

of the Empire, forty other considerable streams[237] fertilized and enriched the territories of the Persian monarch, which, though they embraced many arid tracts, where cultivation was difficult, must be pronounced upon the whole well-watered, considering their extent and the latitude in which they lay.

The Empire possessed, besides its rivers, a number of important lakes. Omitting the Caspian and the Aral, which lay upon its borders, there were contained within the Persian territories the following important basins: the Urumiyeh, Lake Van, and Lake Goutcha or Sivan in Armenia; Lakes Touz-Ghieul, Egerdir, Bey-Shehr, Chardak, Soghla, Buldur, Ghieul-Hissar, Iznik, Abullionte, Maniyas, and many others in Asia Minor; the Sabakhah, the Bahr-el-Melak, and the Lake of Antioch in Northern Syria; the Lake of Hems in the Cœle-Syrian valley; the Damascus lakes, the Lake of Merom, the Sea of Tiberias, and the Dead Sea in Southern Syria and Palestine; Lake Mœris and the Natron lakes[238] in Egypt; the Bahr-i-Nedjif in Babylonia; Lake Neyriz in Persia Proper; the Lake of Seistan in the Iranic Desert; and Lake Manchur in the Indus valley. Several of these have been already described in these volumes.[239] Of the remainder the most important were the Lake of Van, the Touz-Ghieul, the great lake of Seistan, and Lake Mœris. These cannot be dismissed without a brief description.

Lake Van is situated at a very unusual elevation, being more than 5400 feet above the sea level.[240] It is a triangular basin, of which the three sides front respectively S.S.E., N.N.E., and N.W. by W. The sides are all irregular, being broken by rocky promontories; but the chief projection lies to the east of the lake, where a tract is thrown out which suddenly narrows the expanse from about fifty miles to less than five. The greatest length of the basin is from N.E. to S.W., where it extends a distance of eighty miles between Arnis and Tadvan; its greatest width is between Aklat and Van, where it measures across somewhat more than fifty miles.[241] The scenery which surrounds it is remarkable for its beauty.[242] The lake is embosomed amid high mountains, picturesque in outline, and all reaching in places the level of perpetual snow. Its waters, generally placid, but sometimes lashed into high waves,[243] are of the deepest blue; while its banks exhibit a succession of orchards, meadows, and gardens which have scarcely their equals in Asia. The lake is fed by a number of small streams flowing down from the lofty ridges which surround it, and,

having no outlet, is of course salt, though far less so than the neighboring lake of Urumiyeh. Gulls and cormorants float upon its surface;[244] fish can live in it; and it is not distasteful to cattle.[245] Set in the expanse of waters are a few small islets, whose vivid green contrasts well with the deep azure which surrounds them.

The Touz-Ghieul is a basin of a very different character. Situated on the upland of Phrygia, in lat. 39°, long. 33°, 30', its elevation is not more than 2500 feet.[246] Low hills of sandstone and conglomerate encircle it,[247] but generally at some distance, so that a tract of plain, six or seven miles in width, intervenes between their base and the shore. The shape of the lake is an irregular oval, with the greater axis running nearly due north and south. Its greatest length is estimated at forty-five miles;[248] its width varies, but is generally from ten to sixteen miles.[249] At one point, however, nearly opposite to Kodj Hissar, the lake narrows to a distance of no more than five miles; and here a causeway has been constructed from shore to shore, which, though ruined, still affords a dry pathway in the summer.[250] The water of the Touz-Ghieul is intensely salt, containing at some seasons of the year no less than thirty-two per cent of saline matter,[251] which is considerably more than the amount of such matter in the water of the Dead Sea.[252] The surrounding plain is barren, in places marshy, and often covered with an incrustation of salt.[253] The whole scene is one of desolation. The acrid waters support no animal organization;[254] birds shun them; the plain grows nothing but a few stunted and sapless shrubs.[255] The only signs of life which greet the traveller are the carts of the natives, which pass him laden with the salt that is obtained with ease from the saturated water.[256]

The Zerreh or Sea of Seistan—called sometimes the Hamûn, or "expanse"[257]—is situated in the Seistan Desert on the Great Iranic plateau, and consequently at an elevation of (probably) 3000 feet.[258] It is formed by the accumulation of the waters brought down by the Helmend, the Haroot-rud, the river of Khash, the Furrah-rud and other streams, which flow from the mountains of Afghanistan, with converging courses to the south-west. It is an extensive basin, composed of two arms, an eastern and a western.[259] The western arm, which is the larger of the two, has its greatest length from N.N.E. to S.S.W., and extends in this direction about ninety miles.[260] Its greatest width is about twenty-five miles. The eastern arm

is rather more than forty miles long, and from ten to twenty broad. It is shaped much like a fish's tail. The two arms are connected by a strait seven or eight miles in width, which joins them near their northern extremities. The water of the lake, though not salt, is black and has a bad taste. Fish support life in it with difficulty, and never grow to any great size. The lake is shallow, not much exceeding a depth of three or four feet. It contracts greatly in the summer, at which time the strait connecting the two arms is often absolutely dry.[261] The edges of the lake are clothed with tamarisk and other trees, and where the rivers enter it, sometimes by several branches, the soil is rich and cultivation productive;[262] but elsewhere the sand of the desert creeps up almost to the margin of the water, clothed only with some sickly grass and a few scattered shrubs.[263]

The Birket-el-Keroun, or Lake Mœris of the classical writers,[264] is a natural basin—not, as Herodotus imagined,[265] an artificial one—situated on the western side of the Nile valley, in a curious depression which nature has made among the Libyan hills. This depression—the modern district of the Faioom—is a circular plain, which sinks gradually towards the north-west, descending till it is more than 100 feet below the surface of the Nile at low water.[266] The Northern and north-western portion of the depression is occupied by the lake, a sheet of brackish water shaped like a horn (whence the modern name[267]) measuring about thirty-five or thirty-six miles from end to end, and attaining in the middle a width of between five and six miles. The area of the lake is estimated roughly at 150 square miles,[268] its circumference at about ninety miles.[269] It has a depth varying from twelve to twenty-four feet,[270] Though the water is somewhat brackish, yet the Birket contains several species of fresh-water fish;[271] and in ancient times its fisheries are said to have been exceedingly productive.[272]

The principal cities of the Empire were, besides Pesargadæ and Persepolis, Susa[273]—the chief city of Susiana—which became the capital; Babylon, Ecbatana, Rhages, Zadracarta,[274] Bactra (now Balkh), Maracanda (now Samarcand), Aria, or Artacoana[275] (Herat), Caspatyrus on the Upper Indus,[276] Taxila[277] (Attock?), Pura[278] (perhaps Bunpoor), Carmana[279] (Kerman), Arbela, Nisibis, Amida (now Diarbekr); Mazaca in Cappadocia;[280] Trapezus (Trebizond), Sinopé, Dascyleium,[281] Sardis, Ephesus, Miletus, Gordium,[282] Perga, and Tarsus in Asia Minor: Damascus, Jerusalem, Sidon, Tyre, Azotus or

Ashdod, and Gaza in Syria; Memphis and Thebes in Egypt; Cyrêné and Barca in the Cyrenaica. Of these, while Susa had from the time of Darius Hystaspis a decided pre-eminence as the main residence of the court, and consequently as the usual seat of government, there were three others which could boast the distinction of being royal abodes from time to time, either regularly at certain seasons, or occasionally at the caprice of the monarch. These were Babylon, Ecbatana, and Persepolis, the capitals respectively of Chaldæa, Media, and Persia Proper, all great and ancient cities, accustomed to the presence of Courts, and all occupying positions sufficiently central to render them not ill-suited for the business of administration. Next to these in order of dignity may be classed the satrapial residences, often the chief cities of old monarchies, such as Sardis, the capital city of Lydia, Dascyleium of Bithynia, Memphis of Egypt, Bactra of Bactria, and the like; while the third rank was held by the towns, where there was no Court, either royal or satrapial.

Before this chapter is concluded a few words must be said with respect to the countries which bordered upon the Persian Empire. The Empire was surrounded, for the most part, either by seas or deserts. The Mediterranean, the Egean, the Propontis, the Euxine, the Caspian, the Indian Ocean, the Persian Gulf, and the Arabian Gulf or Red Sea washed its shores, bounding almost all its western, and much of its northern and southern sides; while the sands of the Sahara, the deserts of Arabia and Syria of India and Thibet, filled up the greater part of the intervening spaces. The only countries of importance which can be viewed as in any sense neighbors of Persia are European and Asiatic Scythia, Hindustan, Arabia, Ethiopia, and Greece.

Where the Black Sea, curving round to the north, ceased to furnish to the Empire the advantage of a water barrier, a protection of almost equal strength was afforded to it by the mountain-chain of the Caucasus. Excepting on the extreme east, where it slopes gently to the Caspian,[283] this range is one of great elevation, possessing but few passes, and very difficult to traverse. Its fastnesses have always been inhabited by wild tribes, jealous of their freedom; and these tribes may have caused annoyance, but they could at no time have been a serious danger to the Empire. They were weak in numbers, divided in nationality[284] and in interests, and quite incapable of conducting any distant expedition. Like their modern suc-

cessors, the Circassians, Abassians, and Lesghians, their one and only desire was to maintain themselves in possession of their beloved mountains; and this desire would cause them to resist all attempts that might be made to traverse their country, whether proceeding from the north or from the south, from the inhabitants of Europe or from those of Asia. Persia was thus strongly protected in this quarter; but still she could not feel herself altogether safe. Once at least within historic memory the barrier of the Caucasus had proved to be surmountable. From the vast Steppe which stretches northwards from its base, in part salt, in part grassy, had crossed into Asia through its passes or round its eastern flank—a countless host, which had swept all before it, and brought ruin upon flourishing empires.[275] The Scythian and Samaritan[276] hordes of the steppe-country between the Wolga and the Dnieper were to the monarchies of Western Asia a permanent, if a somewhat distant, peril. It could not be forgotten that they had proved themselves capable of penetrating the rocky barrier which would otherwise have seemed so sure a protection, or that when they swarmed across it in the seventh century before our era, their strength was at first irresistible. The Persians knew, what the great nations of the earth afterwards forgot, that along the northern horizon there lay a black cloud, which might at any time burst, carrying desolation to their homes and bringing ruin upon their civilization. We shall find the course of their history importantly affected by a sense of this danger, and we shall have reason to admire the wisdom of their measures of precaution against it.

It was not only to the west of the Caspian that the danger threatened. East of that sea also was a vast steppe-region—rolling plains of sand or grass—the home of nomadic hordes similar in character to those who drank the waters of the Don and Wolga. The Sacæ, Massagetæ, and Dahæ of this country, who dwelt about the Caspian, the Aral, and the Lower Jaxartes,[277] were an enemy scarcely less formidable than the Sarmatians and the Scyths of the West. As the modern Iran now suffers from the perpetual incursions of Uzbegs and Turcomans, so the north-eastern provinces of the ancient Persia were exposed to the raids of the Asiatic Scythians and the Massagetæ,[278] who were confined by no such barrier as the Caucasus, having merely to cross a river, probably often fordable during the summer, in order to be in Persia. Hyrcania and Parthia had indeed a certain amount of protection

from the Kharesmian Desert; but the upper valleys of the great streams the satrapies of Sogdiana and Bactria—must have suffered considerable annoyance from such attacks.

On the side of India, the Empire enjoyed a twofold security. From the shores of the Indian Ocean in the vicinity of the Runn of Cutch to the 31st parallel of north latitude—a distance of above 600 miles—there extends a desert, from one to two hundred miles across, which effectually shuts off the valley of the Indus from the rest of Hindustan. It is only along the skirts of the mountains, by Lahore, Umritsir, and Loodiana, that the march of armies is possible—by this line alone can the Punjabis threaten Central India, or the inhabitants of Central India attack the Punjab. Hence in this quarter there was but a very narrow tract to guard; and the task of defence was still further lightened by the political condition of the people. The Gangetic Indians, though brave and powerful,[289] were politically weak, from their separation into a number of distinct states under petty Rajahs,[290] who could never hope to contend successfully against the forces of a mighty Empire. Persia, consequently, was safe upon this side, in the division of her adversaries. Nor had she neglected the further security which was obtainable by an interposition between her own actual frontier and her enemies' dominions of a number of half-subject dependencies. Native princes were allowed to bear sway in the Punjab region,[291] who acknowledged the suzerainty of Persia, and probably paid her a fixed tribute, but whose best service was that they prevented a collision between the Power of whom they held their crowns and the great mass of their own nation.

The Great Arabian Peninsula, which lay due south of the most central part of the Empire, and bordered it on this side for about thirteen degrees, or (if we follow the line of the boundary) for above a thousand miles, might seem to have been the most important of all the adjacent countries, since it contains an area of a million of square miles,[292] and is a nursery of brave and hardy races. Politically, however, Arabia is weak, as has been shown in a former volume;[293] while geographically she presents to the north her most arid and untraversable regions, so that it is rarely, and only under very exceptional circumstances, that she menaces seriously her northern neighbors. Persia seems never to have experienced any alarm of an Arab invasion; her relations with the tribes that came into closest contact with her were friendly;[294]

and she left the bulk of the nation in unmolested enjoyment of their independence.

Another country adjoining the Persian Empire on the south, and one which might have been expected to cause some trouble, was Ethiopia. To Egypt Ethiopia had always proved an unquiet, and sometimes even a dangerous, neighbor; she was fertile, rich, populous;[5] her inhabitants were tall, strong, and brave;[6] she had a ready means of marching into Egypt down the fertile valley of the Nile; and her hosts had frequently ravaged, and even held for considerable terms of years, that easily subjected country.[7] It is remarkable that during the whole time of the Persian dominion Ethiopia seems to have abstained from any invasion of the Egyptian territory. Apparently, she feared to provoke the power which had seated itself on the throne of the Pharaohs, and preferred the quiet enjoyment of her own wealth and resources to the doubtful issues of a combat with the mistress of Asia.

On her western horizon, clearly discernible from the capes and headlands of the Asiatic coast, but separated from her, except in one or two places, by a tolerably broad expanse of sea, and so—as it might have seemed—less liable to come in contact with her than her neighbors upon the land, lay the shores and isles of Greece—lovely and delightful regions, in possession of a brave and hardy race, as yet uncorrupted by luxury, though in the enjoyment of a fair amount of civilization. As the eye looked across the Egean waters, resting with pleasure on the varied and graceful forms of Sporades and Cyclades, covetous thoughts might naturally arise in the beholder's heart; and the idea might readily occur of conquering and annexing the fair tracts which lay so temptingly near and possessed such numerous attractions. The entire region, continent and islands included, was one of diminutive size[8]—not half so large as an ordinary Persian satrapy; it was well peopled,[9] but its population could not have amounted to that of the Punjab or of Egypt,[10] countries which Persia had overrun in a single campaign;[11] its inhabitants were warlike, but they were comparatively poor, and the true sinews of war are money; moreover, they were divided amongst themselves, locally split up by the physical conformation of their country, and politically repugnant to anything like centralization or union. A Persian king like Cambyses or Darius might be excused if, when his thoughts turned to Greece, he had a complacent feeling that no danger could threaten him from that

quarter—that the little territory on his western border was a prey which he might seize at any time that it suited his convenience or seemed good to his caprice;[2] so opening without any risk a new world to his ambition. It required a knowledge that the causes of military success and political advance lie deeper than statistics can reach—that they have their roots in the moral nature of man, in the grandeur of his ideas and the energy of his character—in order to comprehend the fact that the puny power upon her right flank was the enemy which Persia had most to fear, the foe who would gradually sap her strength, and finally deal her the blow that would lay her prostrate.

CHAPTER II.

CLIMATE AND PRODUCTIONS.

Ἔστι ἀγαθὰ τοῖσι τὴν ἤπειρον ἐκείνην νεμομένοισι, ὅσα οὐδὲ τοῖσι συναπασι ἄλλοισι. ἀπὸ χρυσοῦ ἀρξαμένοισι, ἄργυρος καὶ χαλκὸς καὶ ἐσθῆς ποικιλη καὶ ὑποζύγιά τε καὶ ἀνδράποδα.—Herod. v. 49.

It is evident that an Empire which extended over more than twenty degrees of latitude, touching on the one hand the tropic of Cancer, while it reached upon the other to the parallel of Astrakan, and which at the same time varied in elevation, from 20,000 feet above to 1300 below the sea level,[1] must have comprised within it great differences of climate, and have boasted an immense variety of productions. No general description can be applicable to such a stretch of territory; and it will therefore be necessary to speak of the various parts of the Empire successively in order to convey to the reader a true idea of the climatic influences to which it was subject, and the animals, vegetables, and minerals which it produced.

Commencing with Persia Proper, the original seat and home of the race with whose history we are specially concerned at present, we may observe that it was regarded by the ancients as possessing three distinct climates[2]—one along the shore, dry and scorchingly hot; another in the mountain region beyond, temperate and delightful; and a third in the tract further inland, which was thought to be disagreeably cold and wintry. Moderns, on the contrary, find two climates only in Fars[3]—

one that of the Deshistan or "low country," extremely hot and dry, with frequent scorching and oppressive winds from the south and the south east;[1] the other, that of the highlands, which is cold in winter, but in summer pleasant and enjoyable.[2] In the Deshistan snow never falls, and there is but little rain: heavy dews, however, occur at night,[3] so that the mornings are often fresh and cool; but the middle of the day is almost always hot, and from March to November the temperature at noon ranges from 90° to 100° of Fahrenheit.[4] Occasionally it reaches 125°, and is then fearfully oppressive.[5] Fierce gusts laden with sand sweep over the plain,[6] causing vegetation to droop or disappear, and the animal world to hide itself. Man with difficulty retains life at these trying times, feeling a languor and a depression of spirits which are barely supportable.[7] All who can do so quit the plains and betake themselves to the upland region till the great heats are past, and the advance of autumn brings at any rate cool nights and mornings. The climate of the uplands is severe in winter. Much snow falls,[8] and the thermometer often marks from ten to fifteen degrees of frost.[9] From time to time there are furious gales,[10] and, as the spring advances, a good deal of wet falls;[11] but the summer and autumn are almost rainless.[12] The heat towards midday is often considerable,[13] but it is tempered by cool winds, and even at the worst is not relaxing.[14] The variations of temperature are great in the twenty-four hours, and the climate is, so far, trying; but, on the whole, it seems to be neither disagreeable nor unhealthy.

A climate resembling that of the Deshistan prevailed along the entire southern coast of the Empire, from the mouth of the Tigris to that of the Indus.[15] It was exchanged in the lower valleys of the great streams for a damp close heat, intolerably stifling and oppressive.[16] The upper valleys of these streams and the plains into which they expanded were at once less hot and less moist,[17] but were subject to violent storms, owing to the near vicinity of the mountains.[18] In the mountains themselves, in Armenia and Zagros, and again in the Elburz, the climate was of a more rigorous character—intensely cold in winter, but pleasant in the summer time. [Pl. XXVII., Fig. 3.] Asia Minor enjoyed generally a warmer climate than the high mountain regions; and its western and southern coasts, being fanned by fresh breezes from the sea, or from the hills of the interior, and cooled during the whole of the summer by frequent showers, were especially charm-

ing.[22] In Syria and Egypt the heats of summer were somewhat trying, more especially in the *Ghor* or depressed Jordan valley,[23] and in the parts of Egypt adjoining on Ethiopia;[24] but the winters were mild, and the springs and autumns delightful. The rarity of rain in Egypt was remarkable, and drew the attention of foreigners, who recorded, in somewhat exaggerated terms, the curious meteorological phenomenon.[25] In the Cyrenaica there was a delicious summer climate—an entire absence of rain, with cool breezes from the sea, cloudy skies, and heavy dews at night, these last supplying the moisture which through the whole of summer covered the ground with the freshest and loveliest verdure.[26] The autumn and winter rains were, however, violent; and terrific storms were at that time of no unusual occurrence.[27] The natives regarded it as a blessing, that over this part of Africa the sky was "pierced,"[28] and allowed moisture to fall from the great reservoir of "waters above the firmament;" but the blessing must have seemed one of questionable value at the time of the November monsoon, when the country is deluged with rain for several weeks in succession.

On the opposite side of the Empire, towards the north and the north-east, in Azerbijan, on the Iranian plateau, in the Afghan plains, in the high flat region east of the Bolor, and again in the low plain about the Aral lake and the Caspian, a severe climate prevailed during the winter,[29] while the summer combined intense heat during the day with extraordinary cold—the result of radiation—at night.[30] Still more bitter weather was experienced in the mountain regions of these parts—in the Bolor, the Thian Chan, the Himalaya, and the Paropamisus or Hindu Kush[31]—where the winters lasted more than half the year, deep snow covering the ground almost the whole of the time, and locomotion being rendered almost impossible; while the summers were only moderately hot. On the other hand, there was in this quarter, at the very extreme east of the Empire, one of the most sultry and disagreeable of all climates—namely, that of the Indus valley, which is either intolerably hot and dry, with fierce tornadoes of dust that are unspeakably oppressive,[32] or close and moist, swept by heavy storms,[33] which, while they somewhat lower the temperature, increase the unhealthiness of the region. The worst portion of the valley is its southern extremity, where the climate is only tolerable during three months of the year. From March to

November the heat is excessive; dust-storms prevail; there are dangerous dews at night;[34] and with the inundation, which commences in April,[35] a sickly time sets in, which causes all the wealthier classes to withdraw from the country till the stagnant water, which the swell always leaves behind it, has dried up.[36]

Upon the whole, the climate of the Empire belonged to the warmer class of the climates which are called temperate. In a few parts only, indeed, as in the Indus valley, along the coast from the mouth of the Indus to that of the Tigris, in Lower Babylonia and the adjoining portion of Susiana, in Southern Palestine, and in Egypt, was frost absolutely unknown; while in many places, especially in the high mountainous regions, the winters were bitterly severe: and in all the more elevated portions of the Empire, as in Phrygia and Cappadocia, in Azerbijan, on the great Iranian plateau, and again in the district about Kashgar and Yarkand, there was a prolonged period of sharp and bracing weather. But the summer warmth of almost the whole Empire was great, the thermometer probably ranging in most places from 90° to 120° during the months of June, July, August, and September.[37] The springs and autumns were, except in the high mountain tracts, mild and enjoyable; the Empire had few very unhealthy districts; while the range of the thermometer was in most of the provinces considerable, and the variations in the course of a single day and night were unusually great, there was in the climate, speaking generally, nothing destructive of human vigor—nothing even inimical to longevity.[38]

The vegetable productions of Persia Proper in ancient times (so far as we have direct testimony on the subject) were neither numerous nor very remarkable. The low coast tract supplied dates in tolerable plenty,[39] and bore in a few favored spots, corn, vines, and different kinds of fruit-trees;[40] but its general character was one of extreme barrenness. In the mountain region there was an abundance of rich pasture,[41] excellent grapes were grown,[42] and fruit-trees of almost every sort, except the olive,[43] flourished. One fruit-tree, regarded as indigenous in the country, acquired a special celebrity, and was known to the Romans as the *persica*,[44] whence the German *Pfirsche*, the French *pêche*, and our "peach." Citrons, which grew in few places, were also a Persian fruit.[45] Further, Persia produced a coarse kind of silphium or assafœtida;[46] it

was famous for its walnuts, which were distinguished by the epithet of "royal";[47] and it supplied to the pharmacopœia of Greece and Rome a certain number of herbs.[48]

The account of Persian vegetable products which we derive from antiquity is no doubt very incomplete: and it is necessary to supplement it from the observations of modern travellers. These persons tell us that, while Fars and Kerman are ill-supplied with forest-trees, they yet produce in places oaks, planes, chenars or sycamores, poplars, willows, pinasters, cypresses, acacias, fan-palms, konars, and junipers.[49] Among shrubs, they bear the wild fig, the wild almond, the tamarisk, the myrtle, the box, the rhododendron, the camel's thorn, the gum tragacanth, the caper plant, the *benneh*, the blackberry, and the liquorice-plant.[50] They boast a great abundance of fruit-trees — as date-bearing palms, lemons, oranges, pomegranates, vines, peaches, nectarines, apricots, quinces, pears, apples, plums, figs, cherries, mulberries, barberries, walnuts, almonds, and pistachio-nuts.[51] The kinds of grain chiefly cultivated are wheat, barley, millet, rice, and Indian corn or maize,[52] which has been imported into the country from America. Pulse, beans, sesame, madder, henna, cotton, opium, tobacco, and indigo, are also grown in some places.[53] The three last-named, and maize or Indian corn, are of comparatively recent introduction; but of the remainder it may be doubted whether there is a single one which was unknown to the ancient inhabitants.

Among Persian indigenous animals may be enumerated the lion, the bear, the wild ass, the stag, the antelope, the ibex or wild goat, the wild boar, the hyena, the jackal, the wolf, the fox, the hare, the porcupine, the otter, the jerboa, the ichneumon, and the marmot.[54] The lion appears to be rare, occurring only in some parts of the mountains.[55] The ichneumon is confined to the Deshtistan. The antelope, the wild boar, the wolf, the fox, the jackal, the porcupine, and the jerboa are common. Wild asses are found only on the northern side of the mountains, towards the salt desert. In this tract they are frequently seen, both singly and in herds,[56] and are hunted by the natives, who regard their flesh as a great delicacy.[57]

The most remarkable of the Persian birds are the eagle, the vulture,[58] the cormorant, the falcon, the bustard,[59] the pheasant, the heath-cock,[60] the red-legged partridge, the small gray partridge, the pin tailed grouse, the sand-grouse, the francolin,[61] the wild swan, the flamingo, the stork, the bittern, the oyster-

catcher,[62] the raven,[63] the hooded crow, and the cuckoo.[64] Besides these, the lakes boast all the usual kinds of water-fowl, as herons, ducks, snipe, teal, etc.; the gardens and groves abound with blackbirds, thrushes, and nightingales; curlews and peewits are seen occasionally; while pigeons, starlings, crows, magpies, larks, sparrows, and swallows are common. The francolin is hunted by men on foot in the country between Shiraz and Kerman, and is taken by the hand after a few flights.[65] The oyster-catcher, which is a somewhat rare bird, has been observed only on Lake Neyriz.[66] The bustard occurs both in the low plains along the coast, and on the high plateau, where it is captured by means of hawks. The pheasant and the heath-cock (the latter a black species spotted with white) are found in the woods near Failyun.[67] The sand-grouse and the pin-tailed grouse belong to the eastern portion of the country, the portion known anciently as Carmania or "the hot region."[68] The other kinds are diffused pretty generally.

The shores and rivers of Persia Proper supplied the people very plentifully with fish. The ancient writers tell us that the inhabitants of the coast tract lived almost wholly on a fish diet.[69] The Indian Sea appears in those days to have abounded with whales,[70] which were not unfrequently cast upon the shores,[71] affording a mine of wealth to the natives. The great ribs were used as beams in the formation of huts, while the jaws served as doors and the smaller bones as planking.[72] Dolphins also abounded in the Persian waters;[73] together with many other fish of less bulk, which were more easy to capture.[74] On these smaller fish, which they caught in nets, the maritime inhabitants subsisted principally.[75] They had also an unfailing resource in the abundance of oysters,[76] and other shell-fish along their coast—the former of excellent quality.[77]

In the interior, though the lakes, being salt or brackish, had no piscatory stores, the rivers were, for the most part, it would seem, well provided; at least, good fish are still found in many of the streams, both small and large; and in some they are exceedingly plentiful.[78] Modern travellers fail to distinguish the different kinds; but we may presume that they are not very unlike those of the adjoining Media, which appear to be trout, carp, barbel, dace, bleak, and gudgeon.[79]

The reptiles of Persia Proper are not numerous. They are chiefly tortoises, lizards, frogs, land-snakes, and water-snakes. The land-snakes are venomous, but their poison is not of a

very deadly character;[83] and persons who have been bitten by them, if properly treated, generally recover. The lizards are of various sizes, some quite small, others more than three feet long, and covered with a coarse rough skin like that of a toad. They have the character of being venomous, and even dangerous to life;[84] but it may be doubted whether they are not, like our toads and newts, in reality perfectly harmless.

The traveller in Persia suffers less from reptiles than from insects. Scorpions abound in all parts of the country, and, infesting houses, furniture, and clothes, cause perpetual annoyance.[85] Mosquitoes swarm in certain places and seasons,[86] preventing sleep and irritating the traveller almost beyond endurance. A poisonous spider, a sort of tarantula, is said to occur in some localities;[87] and Chardin further mentions a kind of centipede, the bite of which, according to him, is fatal.[88] To the sufferings which these creatures cause, must be added a constant annoyance from those more vulgar forms of insect life which detract from the delights of travel even in Europe.

Persia, moreover, suffers no less than Babylonia and Media,[89] from the ravages of locusts. Constantly, when the wind is from the south-east, there cross from the Arabian coast clouds of these destructive insects, whose numbers darken the air as they move, in flight after flight, across the desert to the spots where nature or cultivation has clothed the earth with verdure.[90] The Deshtistan, or low country, is, of course, most exposed to their attacks, but they are far from being confined to that region. The interior, as far as Shiraz itself, suffers terribly from this scourge, which produces scarcity, or even famine, when (as often happens) it is repeated year after year.[91] The natives at such times are reduced to feeding on the locusts themselves; a diet which they do not relish, but to which necessity compels them.[92]

The locusts of Persia Proper are said to be of two kinds. One, which is regarded as bred in the country, bears the name of *missri*, being identified with the locust of Egypt.[93] The other, which is thought to be blown over from Arabia, and thus to cross the sea, is known as the *melekh deriai*, or "sea-locust."[94] The former is regarded as especially destructive to the crops, the latter to the shrubs and trees.

The domestic animals in use at the present day within the provinces of Fars and Kerman are identical with those employed in the neighboring country of Media,[95] and will need

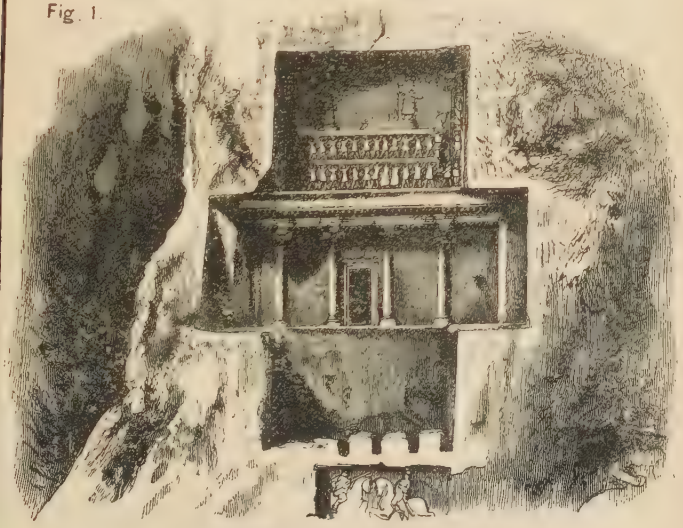
Fig. 2.

Persian chasing the Antelope (from a Gem).

Fig 3.

Persian killing a Wild Boar (from a cylinder).

Fig. 1.



Tomb of a Persian King (from a Photograph).

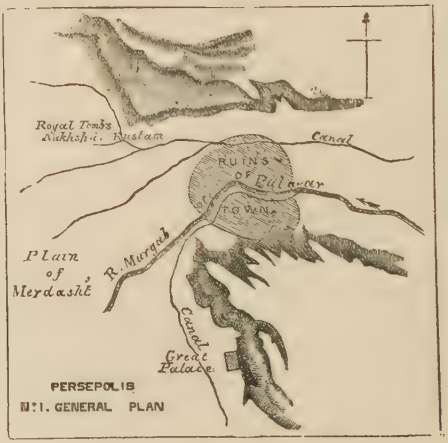
Fig. 1

Fragment of Two-Horse Chariot (from Persepolis).

Fig. 2

Ordinary Persian Costume.

Fig. 3.



only a very few words of notice here. The ordinary horse of the country is the Turcoman, a large, strong, but somewhat clumsy animal, possessed of remarkable powers of endurance; but in the Deshtistan the Arabian breed prevails, and travellers tell us that in this region horses are produced which fall but little short of the most admired coursers of Nejd.[96] Cows and oxen are somewhat rare, beef being little eaten, and such cattle being only kept for the supply of the dairy, and for purposes of agriculture.[97] Sheep and goats are abundant, and constitute the chief wealth of the inhabitants;[98] the goat is, on the whole, preferred, and both goats and sheep are generally of a black or brown color.[99] The sheep of Kerman are small and short-legged: they produce a wool of great softness and delicacy.[101]

It is probable that in ancient times the domestic animals of the country were nearly the same as at the present day. The statement of Xenophon, that anciently a horse was a rarity in Persia Proper,[1] is contradicted by the great bulk of the early writers, who tell us that the Persians were from the first expert riders, and that their country was peculiarly well fitted for the breeding of horses.[2] Their camels, sheep, goats, asses, and oxen, are also expressly mentioned by the Greeks,[103] who even indicate a knowledge of the fact that goats were preferred to sheep by the herdsmen of the country.[105]

The mineral treasures of the country appear to have been considerable, though to what extent they were known and made use of in ancient times is open to some question. Mines of gold, silver, copper, iron, red lead, and orpiment are said to have been actually worked under the Persian kings;[106] and some of the other minerals were so patent and obvious, that we can scarcely suppose them to have been neglected. Salt abounded in the region in several shapes. It appeared in some places as rock salt, showing itself in masses of vast size and various colors.[107] In other places it covered the surface of the ground for miles together with a thick incrustation, and could be gathered at all seasons with little labor.[108] It was deposited by the waters of several lakes within the territory, and could be collected round their edges at certain times of the year.[109] Finally, it was held in solution, both in the lakes and in many of the streams;[110] from whose waters it might have been obtained by evaporation. Bitumen and naphtha were yielded by sources near Dalaki,[111] which were certainly known to the ancients.[112] Sulphur was deposited upon the surface of the

ground in places.[113] Some of the mountains contained ordinary lead;[114] but it is not unlikely that this metal escaped notice.

Ancient Persia produced a certain number of gems. The pearls of the Gulf, which have still so great a reputation, had attracted the attention of adventurers before the time of Alexander, whose naval captains found a regular fishery established in one of the islands.[115] The Orientals have always set a high value on this commodity; and it appears that in ancient times the Gulf pearls were more highly esteemed than any others.[116] Of hard stones the only kinds that can be distinctly assigned to Persia Proper are the *iritis*,[117] a species of rock-crystal; the *atizoë*, a white stone which had a pleasant odor;[118] the *mithrax*, a gem of many hues,[119] the *nipparêné*, which resembled ivory;[120] and the *thelycardios* or *male*, which was in special favor among the natives of the country.[121]

From this account of the products of Persia Proper we have now to pass to those of the Empire in general—a wide subject, which it will be impossible to treat here with any completeness, owing to the limits to which the present work is necessarily confined. In order to bring the matter within reasonable compass, the reader may be referred in the first instance to the account which was given in a former volume of the products of the empire of Babylon;[122] and the enquiry may then be confined to those regions which were subject to Persia, but not contained within the limits of the Fourth Monarchy.

Among the animals belonging to these regions, the following are especially noticeable:—The tiger, the elephant, the hippopotamus, the crocodile, the monitor, the two-humped camel, the Angora goat, the elk, the monkey, and the spotted hyæna, or *Felis chaus*. The tiger, which is entirely absent from Mesopotamia, and unknown upon the plateau of Iran, abounds in the low tract between the Elburz and the Caspian,[123] in the flat region about the Sea of Aral,[124] and in the Indus valley.[125] The elephant was, perhaps, anciently an inhabitant of Upper Egypt, where the island of Elephantiné remained an evidence of the fact.[126] It was also in Persian times a denizen of the Indus valley, though perhaps only in a domesticated state.[127] The hippopotamus, unknown in India, was confined to the single province of Egypt, where it was included among the animals which were the objects of popular worship.[128] The crocodile—likewise a sacred animal to the Egyptians[129]—frequented both the Nile and the Indus.[130] Monitors,[131] which are a sort of diminutive crocodiles, were of two kinds: one, the *Lacerta*

Nilotica, was a water animal, and was probably found only in Egypt: the other, *Lacerta scincus*, frequented dry and sandy spots, and abounded in North Africa [152] and Syria,[153] as well as in the Nile valley. The two-humped camel belonged to Bactria,[154] where he was probably indigenous, but was widely spread over the Empire, on account of his great strength and powers of endurance.

The Angora goat is, perhaps, scarcely a distinct species.[155] If not identical with the ordinary wild goat of Persia and Mesopotamia (*Capra ægagrus*), he is at any rate closely allied to it: and it is possible that all his peculiar characteristics may be the effect of climate. He has a soft, white, silky fleece, very long, divided down the back by a strong line of separation, and falling on either side in beautiful spiral ringlets; his fleece weighs from two to four pounds. It is of nearly uniform length, and averages from five to five and a half inches.[156]

The elk is said to inhabit Armenia,[157] Affghanistan,[158] and the lower part of the valley of the Indus;[159] but it is perhaps not certain that he is really to be found in the two latter regions.[160] Monkeys abound in Eastern Cabul and the adjoining parts of India.[161] They may have also existed formerly in Upper Egypt.[162] The spotted hyæna, *Felis chaus* (*Canis crocuta* of Linnæus), is an Egyptian animal, inhabiting principally the hills on the western side of the Nile. In appearance it is like a large cat, with a tuft of long black hair at the extremities of its ears—a feature which it has in common with the lynx.[163]

Among the rarer birds of the Empire may be mentioned the ostrich, which occurred in Mesopotamia;[164] parrots, which were found in Cabul and the Punjab;[165] ibises, which abounded in Egypt,[166] and in the Delta of the Indus,[167] the great vulture (*Vultur cinereus*), which inhabited the Taurus,[168] the Indian owl (*Athena Indica*),[169] the spoonbill[170] (*Platalea nudifrons*); the bonno (*Ardea bubulcus*), and the sicsac (*Charadrius melanocephalus*).[171]

The most valuable of the fish belonging to the Persian seas and rivers were the pearl oyster of the Gulf, and the murex of the Mediterranean, which furnished the famous purple dye of Tyre. After these may be placed the sturgeon and sterlet of the Caspian,[172] the silurus[173] of the Sea of Aral, the Aleppo eel,[174] and the *palla*, a small but excellent fish, which is captured in the Indus during the flood season.[175] The Indian Ocean and the Persian Gulf, as we have seen,[176] were visited

by whales; dolphins, porpoises, cod, and mullet abounded in the same seas;[157] the large rivers generally contained barbel and carp;[158] while some of them, together with many of the smaller streams, supplied trout of a good flavor. The Nile had some curious fish peculiar to itself, as the oxyrinchus, the lepidotus, the *Perca Nilotica*, the *Silurus Schilbe Niloticus*, the *Silurus carmuth*[159] and others. Great numbers of fish, mostly of the same species with those of the Nile,[160] were also furnished by the Lake Mœris; and from these a considerable revenue was derived by the Great Kings.[161]

Among the more remarkable of the reptiles which the Empire comprised within its limits may be noticed—besides the great saurians already mentioned among the larger animals[162]—the Nile and Euphrates turtles (*Trionyx Ægypticus* and *Trionyx Euphraticus*), iguanas (*Stellio vulgaris* and *Stellio spinipes*), geckos, especially the Egyptian house gecko (*G. lobatus*), snakes, such as the asp (*Coluber haje*) and the horned snake (*Coluber cerastes*), and the chameleon. The Egyptian turtle is a large species, sometimes exceeding three feet in length.[163] It is said to feed on the young of the crocodile. Both it and the Euphrates turtle are of the *soft* kind, *i.e.*, of the kind which has not the shell complete, but unites the upper and under portions by a coriaceous membrane. The turtle of the Euphrates is of moderate size, not exceeding a a length of two feet. It lives in the river, and on warm days suns itself on the sandbanks with which the stream abounds. It is active, strong, violent, and passionate. When laid on its back it easily recovers itself. If provoked, it will snap at sticks and other objects, and endeavor to tear them to pieces. It is of an olive-green color, with large irregular greenish black spots.[164]

Iguanas are found in Egypt, in Syria, and elsewhere. The most common kind (*Stellio vulgaris*) does not exceed a foot in length, and is of an olive color, shaded with black. It is persecuted and killed by the Mahometans, because they regard its favorite attitude as a derisive imitation of their own attitude of prayer.[165] There is another species, also Egyptian, which is of a much larger size, and of a grass-green color. This is called *Stellio spinipes:* it has a length of from two to three feet.[166]

The *gecko*[167] is a kind of nocturnal lizard. Its eyes are large, and the pupil is extremely contractile. It hides itself during the day, and is lively only at nights. It haunts rooms, espe-

cially kitchens, in Egypt, where it finds the insects which form its ordinary food. Its feet constitute its most marked characteristic. The five toes are enlarged and furnished with an apparatus of folds, which, by some peculiar action, enable it to adhere to perfectly smooth surfaces, to ascend perpendicular walls, cross ceilings, or hang suspended for hours on the under side of leaves. The Egyptians called it the *abu burs*,[168] or "father of leprosy," and there is a wide-spread belief in its poisonous character; but modern naturalists incline to regard the belief as unfounded, and to place the *gecko* among reptiles which are absolutely harmless."[169] [Pl. XXVIII., Fig. 1.]

The asp of Egypt (*Coluber hajeh*) is a species of cobra.[170] It is a large snake, varying from three to six feet in length,[171] and is extremely venomous. It haunts gardens, where it is of great use, feeding on mice, frogs, and various small reptiles. It has the power of greatly dilating the skin of the neck, and this it does when angered in a way that is very remarkable. Though naturally irritable, it is easily tamed; and the serpent-charmers of the East make it the object of their art more often than any other species. [Pl. XXVIII., Fig. 2.] After extracting the fangs or burning out the poison-bag with a red-hot iron, the charmer trains the animal by the shrill sounds of a small flute, and it is soon perfectly docile.

The cerastes[172] is also employed occasionally by the snake-charmers. It has two long and thin excrescences above the eyes, whereto the name of "horns" has been given: they stand erect, leaning a little backwards; no naturalist has as yet discovered their use. The cerastes is of a very pale brown color, and is spotted with large, unequal, and irregularly placed spots. Its bite is exceedingly dangerous, since it possesses a virulent poison;[173] and, being in the habit of nearly burying itself in the sand, which is of the same color with itself, it is the more difficult of avoidance. Its size also favors its escaping notice, since in length it rarely much exceeds a foot. [Pl. XXVIII., Fig. 3.]

The chameleon has in all ages attracted the attention of mankind.[174] It is found in Egypt, and in many others parts of Africa, in Georgia, and in India. The power of changing color which it possesses is not really its most remarkable characteristic. Far more worthy of notice are its slow pace, extraordinary form, awkward movements, vivacity, and control of eye, and marvellous rapidity of tongue.[175] It is the most grotesque of reptiles. With protruding and telescopic eyes, that

move at will in the most opposite directions, with an ungainly head, a cold, dry, strange-looking skin, and a prehensile tail, the creature slowly steals along a branch or twig, scarcely distinguishable from the substance along which it moves, and scarcely seeming to move at all, until it has come within reach of its prey. Then suddenly, with a motion rapid as that of the most agile bird, the long cylindrical and readily extensile tongue is darted forth with unerring aim, and the prey is seized and swallowed in a single moment of time. The ordinary color of the chameleon is a pale olive-green. This sometimes fades to a sort of ashen-gray, while sometimes it warms to a yellowish-brown, on which are seen faint spots of red.[176] Modern naturalists, for the most part, attribute the changes to the action of the lungs, which is itself affected chiefly by the emotions of anger, desire, and fear. [Pl. XXVIII., Fig. 5.

The great extent of the Empire caused its vegetable productions to include almost all the forms known to the ancient world. On the one hand, the more northern and more elevated regions bore pines, firs, larches, oaks, birch, beech, ash, ilex, and junipers, together with the shrubs and flowers of the cooler temperate regions; on the other hand, the southern tracts grew palms of various kinds,[177] mangoes, tamarind-trees, lemons, oranges, jujubes, mimosas, and sensitive plants. Between these extremes of tropical and cold-temperate products, the Empire embraced an almost infinite variety of trees, shrubs, and flowers. The walnut and the Oriental plane grew to a vast size in many places.[178] Poplars, willows, fig-mulberries, konars, cedars, cypresses, acacias, were common. Bananas, egg-plants, locust-trees, banyans,[179] terebinths, the gum-styrax, the gum-tragacanth, the assafœtida plant, the arbor vitæ, the castor-oil plant, the Judas-tree, and other somewhat rare forms, sprang up side by side with the pomegranate, the oleander, the pistachio-nut, the myrtle, the bay, the laurel, the mulberry, the rhododendron, and the arbutus. The Empire grew all the known sorts of grain, and almost all the known fruits. Among its various productions of this class, it is only possible to select for notice a few which were especially remarkable either for their rarity or for their excellent quality.

The ancients celebrated the wheat of Æolis,[180] the dates of Babylon,[181] the citrons of Media,[182] the Persian peach,[183] the grapes of Carmania,[184] the Hyrcanian fig,[185] the plum of Damascus,[186] the cherries of Pontus,[187] the mulberries of Egypt and of Cyprus,[188] the silphium of Cyrênê,[189] the wine of Helbon,[190] the

wild-grape oil of Syria.[191] It is not unlikely that to these might have been added as many other vegetable products of first-rate excellence, had the ancients possessed as good a knowledge of the countries included within the Empire as the moderns. At present, the mulberries of Khiva,[192] the apricots of Bokhara,[193] the roses of Mexar,[194] the quinces and melons of Isfahan,[195] the grapes of Kasvin and Shiraz,[196] the pears of Natunz,[197] the dates of Dalaki,[198] have a wide-spread reputation, which appears in most cases to be well deserved. On the whole, it is certain that for variety and excellence the vegetable products of the Persian Empire will bear comparison with those of any other state or community that has as yet existed, either in the ancient or the modern world.

Two only of these products seem to deserve a longer description. The Cyrenaic silphium, of which we hear so much, as constituting the main wealth of that province,[199] was valued chiefly for its medicinal qualities. A decoction from its leaves was used to hasten the worst kind of labors; its root and a juice which flowed from it were employed in a variety of maladies. The plant, which is elaborately described by Theophrastus, appears to have been successfully identified by modern travellers in the Cyrenaica,[200] who see it in the *drias* or *derias* of the Arabs, an umbelliferous plant, which grows to a height of about three feet, has a deleterious effect on the camels that browse on it, and bears a striking resemblance to the representations of the ancient silphium upon coins and medals. This plant grows only in the tract between Merj and Derna—the very heart of the old silphium country, while that it has medicinal properties is certain from its effects upon animals; there can thus be little doubt that it is the silphium of the ancients, somewhat degenerated, owing to want of cultivation.

The Egyptian byblus or papyrus (*Cyperus papyrus*) was perhaps the most valuable of all the vegetables of the Empire. The plant was a tall smooth reed of a triangular shape.[201] It grew to the height of ten or fifteen feet, and terminated in a tuft or plume of leaves and flowers. Though indigenous in the country, it was the subject of careful cultivation, and was grown in irrigated ground, or in such lands as were naturally marshy. The root of the plant was eaten,[202] while from its stem was made the famous Egyptian paper. The manufacture of the papyrus was as follows: The outer rind having been removed, there was exposed a laminated interior, consisting of a number of successive layers of inner cuticle, generally about

twenty. These were carefully separated from one another by the point of a needle,[203] and thus were obtained a number of strips of the raw material, which were then arranged in rows, covered with a paste,[204] and crossed at right angles by another set of strips placed over them, after which the whole was converted into paper by means of a strong pressure. A papyrus roll was made by uniting together a greater or less number of such sheets. The best paper was made from the inmost layers of cuticle. The outer rind of the papyrus was converted into ropes; and this fabric was found to be peculiarly adapted for immersion in water.

The mineral treasures of the Empire were various and abundant. It has been noticed already that Persia Proper, if we include in it Carmania, possessed mines of gold, silver, copper, iron, red lead, orpiment, and salt, yielding also bitumen, naphtha, sulphur, and most probably common lead.[205] We are further informed by ancient writers that Drangiana, or Sarangia, furnished the rare and valuable mineral tin,[206] without which copper could not be hardened into bronze; that Armenia yielded emery,[207] so necessary for the working and polishing of gems; that the mountains and mines of the Empire supplied almost all the varieties of useful and precious stones; and that thus there was scarcely a mineral known to and required by the ancients for the purposes of their life which the Great King could not command without having recourse to others than his own subjects. It may be likewise noticed that the more important were very abundant, being found in many places and in large quantities. Gold was furnished from the mountains and deserts of Thibet and India,[208] from the rivers of Lydia,[209] and probably from other places where it is still found, as Armenia, Cabul, and the neighborhood of Meshed.[210] Silver, which was the general medium of exchange in Persia,[211] must have been especially plentiful. It was probably yielded, not only by the Kerman mines,[212] but also by those of Armenia, Asia Minor, and the Elburz.[213] Copper was obtained in great abundance from Cyprus,[214] as well as from Carmania;[215] and it may have been also derived, as it is now in very large quantities, from Armenia.[216] Iron, really the most precious of all metals, existed within the Persian territory in the shape of huge boulders,[217] as well as in nodules and in the form of ironstone.[218] Lead was procurable from Bactria, Armenia, Kerman, and many parts of Affghanistan;[219] orpiment from Bactria, Kerman, and the Hazareh country;[220] antimony from

Armenia, Affghanistan, and Media;[221] hornblende, quartz, talc, and asbestos, from various places in the Taurus.[222]

Of all necessary minerals probably none was so plentiful and so widely diffused as salt. It was not only in Persia Proper that nature had bestowed this commodity with a lavish hand—there was scarcely a province of the Empire which did not possess it in superfluous abundance. Large tracts were covered by it in North Africa, in Media, in Carmania, and in Lower Babylonia.[223] In Asia Minor, Armenia, Syria, Palestine, and other places, it could be obtained from lakes.[224] In Kerman, and again in Palestine, it showed itself in the shape of large masses, not inappropriately termed "mountains."[225] Finally, in India it was the chief material of a long mountain-range,[226] which is capable of supplying the whole world with salt for many ages.

Bitumen and napthha were also very widely diffused. At the eastern foot of the Caucasus, where it subsides into the Caspian Sea,[227] at various points in the great Mesopotamian plain,[228] in the Deshtistan or low country of Persia Proper,[229] in the Bakhtiyari mountains,[230] and again in the distant Jordan valley,[231] these two inseparable products are to be found, generally united with indications of volcanic action, present or recent. The bitumen is of excellent quality, and was largely employed by the ancients.[232] The naphtha is of two kinds, black naphtha or petroleum, and white naphtha, which is much preferred to the other. The bitumen-pits also, in some places, yielded salt.[233]

Another useful mineral with which the Persians were very plentifully supplied, was sulphur. Sulphur is found in Persia Proper, in Carmania, on the coast of Mekran,[234] in Azerbijan, in the Elburz, on the Iranian plateau, in the vicinity of the Dead Sea,[235] and in very large quantities near Mosul.[236] Here it is quarried in great blocks, which are conveyed to considerable distances.

Excellent stone for building purposes was obtainable in most parts of the Empire. Egypt furnished an inexhusatible supply of the best possible granite; marbles of various kinds, compact sandstone, limestone, and other useful sorts were widely diffused; and basalt was procurable from some of the outlying ranges of Taurus. In the neighborhood of Nineveh, and in much of the Mesopotamian region, there was abundance of grey alabaster,[237] and a better kind was quarried near Damascus.[238] A gritty silicious rock on the banks of the Euphrates, a little above Hit, was suitable for mill-stones.[239]

The gems furnished by the various provinces of the Empire are too numerous for mention. They included, it must be remembered, all the kinds which have already been enumerated among the mineral products of the earlier Monarchies.[240] Among them, a principal place must, one would think, have been occupied by the turquoise—*the* gem, *par excellence*, of modern Persia—although, strange to say, there is no certain mention of it among the literary remains of antiquity. This lovely stone is produced largely by the mines at Nishapur in the Elburz,[241] and is furnished also in less abundance and less beauty by a mine in Kerman,[242] and another near Khojend.[243] It is noticed by an Arabian author as early as the twelfth century of our era.[244] A modern writer on gems supposes that it is mentioned, though not named, by Theophrastus; but this view scarcely seems to be tenable.[245]

Among the gems of most value which the Empire certainly produced were the emerald, the green ruby, the red ruby, the opal, the sapphire, the amethyst, the carbuncle, the jasper, the lapis lazuli, the sard, the agate, and the topaz. Emeralds were found in Egypt, Media, and Cyprus;[246] green rubies in Bactria;[247] common or red rubies in Caria;[248] opals in Egypt, Cyprus, and Asia Minor;[249] sapphires in Cyprus;[250] amethysts also in Cyprus, and moreover in Egypt, Galatia, and Armenia;[251] carbuncles in Caria;[252] jaspers in Cyprus, Asia Minor, and Persia Proper;[253] the lapis lazuli in Cyprus, Egypt, and Media;[254] the sard in Babylonia;[255] the agate in Carmania, Susiana, and Armenia;[256] and the topaz or chrysoprase in Upper Egypt.[257]

The tales which are told of enormous emeralds[258] are undoubtedly fictions, the material which passed for that precious substance being really in these cases either green jasper or (more probably) glass.[259] But lapis lazuli and agate seem to have existed within the Empire in huge masses. Whole cliffs of the former overhang the river Kashkar in Kaferistan;[260] and the myrrhine vases of antiquity which were (it is probable[261]) of agate, and came mainly from Carmania,[262] seem to have been of a great size.

We may conclude this review by noticing, among stones of less consequence produced within the Empire, jet, which was so called from being found at the mouth of the river Gagis in Lycia,[263] garnets, which are common in Armenia,[264] and beryl,[265] which is a product of the same country.

CHAPTER III.

CHARACTER, MANNERS AND CUSTOMS, DRESS, ETC., OF THE PEOPLE.

"I lifted up mine eyes, and saw, and, behold, there stood before the river a ram which had two horns: and the two horns were high; but one was higher than the other, and the higher came up last."—Dan. viii. 3.

THE ethnic identity of the Persian people with the Medes, and the inclusion of both nations in that remarkable division of the human race which is known to ethnologers as the Iranic or Arian, have been maintained in a former volume.[1] To the arguments there adduced it seems unnecessary to add anything in this place, since at the present day neither of the two positions appears to be controverted. It is admitted generally, not only that the Persians were of the same stock with the Medes, but that they formed, together with the Medes and a few other tribes and peoples of less celebrity, a special branch of the Indo-European family—a branch to which the name of Arian may be assigned, not merely for convenience sake, but on grounds of actual tradition and history.[2] Undistinguished[3] in the earlier annals of their race, the Medes and Persians became towards the eighth or seventh century before our era, its leading and most important tribes. Closely united together,[4] with the superiority now inclining to one, now to the other, they claimed and exercised a lordship over all the other members of the stock, and not only over them, but over various alien races also. They had qualities which raised them above their fellows, and a civilization, which was not, perhaps, very advanced, but was still not wholly contemptible. Such details as could be collected, either from ancient authors, or from the extant remains, of the character, mode of life, customs, etc., of the Medes, have already found a place in this work.[5]

The greater part of what was there said will apply also to the Persians. The information, however, which we possess, with respect to this latter people, is so much more copious than that which has come down to us with regard to the Medes, that, without repeating anything from the former place, our materials will probably enable us to give to the present chapter considerable dimensions.

The woodcuts of the preceding volume will have made the

reader sufficiently familiar with the physiognomy of the Persians,[6] or, at any rate, with the representation of it which has come down to us upon the Persian monuments. It may be remarked that the type of face and head is uniform upon all of them, and offers a remarkable contrast to the type assigned to themselves by the Assyrians, from whom the Arians evidently adopted the general idea of bas-reliefs, as well as their general mode of treating subjects upon them. The novelty of the physiognomy is a strong argument in favor of its truthfulness; and this is further confirmed by the evidence which we have, that the Persian artists aimed at representing the varieties of the human race, and succeeded fairly in rendering them. Varieties of physiognomy are represented upon the bas-reliefs with much care, and sometimes with remarkable success, as the annexed head of a negro, taken from one of the royal tombs,[7] will sufficiently indicate. [Pl. XXIX., Fig. 1.]

According to Herodotus, the skulls of the Persians were extraordinarily thin and weak[8]—a phenomenon for which he accounted by the national habit of always covering the head. There does not seem to be in reality any ground for supposing that such a practice would at all tend to produce such a result. If, therefore, we regard the fact of thinness as established, we can only view it as an original feature in the physical type of the race. Such a feature would imply, on the supposition that the heads were of the ordinary size, a large brain-cavity, and so an unusual volume of brain, which is generally a concomitant of high intellectual power.

The Persians seem, certainly, to have been quick and lively, keen-witted, capable of repartee, ingenious, and, for Orientals, far-sighted. They had fancy and imagination, a relish for poetry and art, and they were not without a certain power of political combination. But we cannot justly ascribe to them any high degree of intellectual excellence. The religious ideas which they held in common with the Medes were, indeed, of a more elevated character than is usual with races not enlightened by special revelation;[9] but these ideas were the common stock of the Iranic peoples, and were inherited by the Persians from a remote ancestry, not excogitated by themselves. Their taste for art, though marked, was neither pure nor high. We shall have to consider, in a future chapter, the architecture and mimetic art of the people;[10] to weigh their merits in these respects, and, at the same time, to note their deficiencies.

Without anticipating the exact verdict then to be pronounced, we may say at once that there is nothing in the remains of the Persian architecture and sculpture that have come down to us indicative of any remarkable artistic genius; nothing that even places them on a par with the best works of the kind produced by Orientals. Again, if the great work of Firdausi represents to us, as it probably does, the true spirit of the ancient poetry of the Persians, we must conclude that, in the highest department of art, their efforts were but of moderate merit. A tone of exaggeration, an imagination exuberant and unrestrained, a preference for glitter over solid excellence, a love of far-fetched conceits, characterize the Shahnameh; and, though we may fairly ascribe something of this to the idiosyncrasy of the poet, still, after we have made all due allowance upon this score, the conviction presses upon us that there was a childish and grotesque character[11] in the great mass of the old Persian poetry, which marks it as the creation of moderate rather than of high intellectual power, and prevents us from regarding it with the respect with which we view the labors of the Greeks and Romans, or, again, of the Hebrews, in this department. A want of seriousness, a want of reality, and, again, a want of depth, characterize the poetry of Iran, whose bards do not touch the chords which rouse what is noblest and highest in our nature. They give us sparkle, prettiness, quaint and ingenious fancies, grotesque marvels, an inflated kind of human heroism; but they have none of the higher excellencies of the poetic art, none of the divine fire which renders the true poet, and the true prophet, one.

Among moral qualities, we must assign to the Persians as their most marked characteristics, at any rate in the earlier times, courage, energy, and a regard for truth. The valor of their troops in the great combats of Platæa and Thermopylæ extorted the admiration of their enemies, who have left on record their belief that, "in boldness and warlike spirit, the Persians were not a whit behind the Greeks," and that their defeat was wholly owing to the inferiority of their equipment and training.[12] Without proper shields, with little defensive armor, wielding only short swords and lances that were scarcely more than javelins, they dashed themselves upon the serried ranks of the Spartans, seizing the huge spear-shafts of these latter with their hands, striving to break them, and to force a way in. No conduct could have been braver than this, which the modern historian well compares with brilliant

actions of the Romans and the Swiss.[13] The Persians thoroughly deserved to be termed (as they are termed by Æschylus), a "valiant-minded people;"[14] they had boldness, *élan*, dash, and considerable tenacity and stubbornness: no nation of Asia or Africa was able to stand against them: if they found their masters in the Greeks, it was owing, as the Greeks themselves tell us, to the superiority of Hellenic arms, equipment, and, above all, of Hellenic discipline, which together rendered the most desperate valor unavailing, when it lacked the support of scientific organization and united simultaneous movement.

The energy of the Persians during the earlier years of their ascendancy is no less remarkable than their courage. Æschylus speaks of a mysterious *fate* which forced them to engage continually in a long series of wars, to take delight in combats of horse, and in the siege and overthrow of cities.[15] Herodotus, in a tone that is not very different, makes Xerxes, soon after his accession, represent himself as bound by the examples of his forefathers to engage his country in some great enterprise, and not suffer the military spirit of his people to decay through want of employment.[16] We shall find, when we come to consider the history of the Empire, that, for eighty years, under four sovereigns, the course indicated by these two writers was in fact pursued—that war followed on war, expedition on expedition—the active energy of sovereign and people carrying them on, without rest or pause, in a career of conquest that has few parallels in the history of Oriental nations. In the subsequent period, this spirit is less marked; but, at all times, a certain vigor and activity has characterized the race, distinguishing it in a very marked way from the dreamy and listless Hindus upon the one hand, and the apathetic Turks upon the other.

The Persian love of truth was a favorite theme with the Greeks,[17] who were, perhaps, the warmer in their praises from a latent consciousness of their own deficiency in the virtue. According to Herodotus, the attention of educators was specially directed to the point, and each young Persian was taught by his preceptors three main things:—"To ride, to draw the bow, and to speak the truth."[18] We find that, in the Zendavesta, and more especially in its earliest and purest portions, truth is strenuously inculcated. Ahura-Mazda himself is "true," "the father of all truth,"[19] and his worshippers are bound to conform themselves to his image. Darius, in his inscriptions,

protests frequently against "lies," which he seems to regard as the embodiment of all evil.[22] A love of *finesse* and intrigue is congenital to Orientals; and, in the later period of their sway, the Persians appear to have yielded to this natural inclination, and to have used freely in their struggle with the Greeks the weapons of cunning and deception; but, in the earlier period, a different spirit prevailed; lying was then regarded as the most disgraceful act of which a man could possibly be guilty;[23] truth was both admired and practised; Persian kings, entrapped into a promise, stood to it firmly, however much they might wish it recalled;[24] foreign powers had never to complain that the terms of a treaty were departed from;[25] the Persians thus form an honorable exception to the ordinary Asiatic character, and for general truthfulness and a faithful performance of their engagements compare favorably with the Greeks and Romans.

The Persian, if we may trust Herodotus, was careful to avoid debt.[26] He had a keen sense of the difficulty with which a debtor escapes subterfuge and equivocation—forms, slightly disguised, of lying. To buy and sell wares in a market place, to chaffer and haggle over prices, was distasteful to him, as apt to involve falsity and unfairness.[25] He was free and open in speech, bold in act, generous, warm-hearted, hospitable. His chief faults were an addiction to self-indulgence and luxury, a passionate *abandon* to the feeling of the hour, whatever that might happen to be; and a tameness and subservience in all his relations towards his prince, which seem to moderns almost incompatible with real self-respect and manliness.

The luxury of the Persians will be considered when we treat of their manners. In illustration of the two other weak points of their character, it may be observed that, in joy and in sorrow, they were alike immoderate: in the one transported beyond all reasonable bounds, and exhibiting their transports with entire unreserve and openness;[27] in the other proportionately depressed, and quite unrestrained in the expression of their anxiety or misery.[27] Æschylus' tragedy of the "Persæ" is, in this respect, true to nature, and represents with accuracy the real habits of the nation.[28] The Persian was a stranger to the dignified reserve which has commonly been affected by the more civilized among Western nations. He laughed and wept, shouted and shrieked, with the unrestraint of a child, who is not ashamed to lay bare his inmost feelings to the eyes of those about him. Lively and excitable, he loved to give vent to every

passion that stirred his heart, and cared not how many witnessed his lamentations or his rejoicings.

The feeling of the Persian towards his king is one of which moderns can with difficulty form a conception. In Persia the monarch was so much the State, that patriotism itself was, as it were, swallowed up in loyalty; and an absolute unquestioning submission, not only to the deliberate will, but to the merest caprice of the sovereign, was, by habit and education, so engrained into the nature of the people that a contrary spirit scarcely ever manifested itself. In war the safety of the sovereign was the first thought, and the principal care of all.[29] The tales told of the self-devotion of individuals to secure the preservation of the monarch[30] may not be true, but they indicate faithfully the actual tone of men's sentiments about the value of the royal person. If the king suffered, all was lost; if the king escaped, the greatest calamities seemed light, and could be endured with patience.[31] Uncomplaining acquiescence in all the decisions of the monarch—cheerful submission to his will, whatever it might chance to be—characterized the conduct of the Persians in time of peace. It was here that their loyalty degenerated into parasitical tameness, and became a defect instead of a virtue. The voice of remonstrance, of rebuke, of warning, was unheard at the Court; and tyranny was allowed to indulge unchecked in the wildest caprices and extravagances. The father, whose innocent son was shot before his eyes by the king in pure wantonness, instead of raising an indignant protest against the crime, felicitated him on the excellence of his archery.[32] Unfortunates, bastinadoed by the royal orders, declared themselves delighted, because his majesty had condescended to recollect them.[33] A tone of sycophancy and servility was thus engendered, which, sapping self-respect, tended fatally to lower and corrupt the entire character of the people.

In considering the manners and customs of the Persians, it will be convenient to follow the order already observed in treating of Assyria and Media—that is to say, to treat, in the first instance, of their warlike, and subsequently of their peaceful usages. On the latter the monuments throw considerable light; on the former, the information which they supply is comparatively scanty.

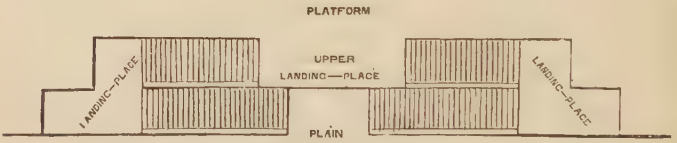
The Persians, like the Medes,[34] regarded chariots with disfavor, and composed their armies almost entirely of foot and horse. The ordinary dress of the foot-man was, in the earlier times, a tunic with long sleeves,[35] made of leather,[36] and fitting

PLAN OF THE
RUINS OF PERSEPOLIS
(AFTER FLANDIN) N°2.
A. Palace.
B. Ancient gateway.
C. Fragments of columns.
D. Ancient edifice.
E. E. Remains of the high platform.
Direction of Palace
Canal for Irrigation
Rivulet
Canal for Irrigation
Direction of Tombs

Fig. 1.

Masonry of Great Platform, Persepolis.

Fig. 2.



Ground-plan of Great Staircase.

Front View of same.

rather tightly to the frame, which it covered from the neck to the knee.[54] Under this was worn a pair of trousers,[55] also of leather, and tolerably tight-fitting, especially at the ankles, where they met a sort of high shoe, or low boot. The head was protected by a loose round cap,[56] apparently of felt, which projected a little in front, and rose considerably above the top of the head. Round the waist was worn a double girdle or belt,[57] from which depended a short sword. [Pl. XXVIII., Fig. 4.]

The offensive arms of the foot-man were, a sword, a spear, and a bow. The sword, which was called by the Persians *akinaces*,[58] appears to have been a short, straight weapon,[59] suited for stabbing rather than for cutting, and, in fact, not very much better than a dagger. [Pl. XXIX., Fig. 2.] It was carried in a sheath,[60] and was worn suspended from the girdle on the right side.[61] From the Persepolitan sculptures it would seem not to have hung freely, but to have been attached to the right thigh by a thong which passed round the knee. The handle was short, and generally unprotected by a guard; but, in some specimens, we see a simple cross-bar between the hilt and the blade.

The spear carried by the Persian foot-man was also short,[62] or, at any rate, much shorter than the Greek. To judge by the representations of guardsmen on the Persepolitan sculptures, it was from six to six and a half or seven feet in length. The Grecian spear was sometimes as much as twenty-one feet.[63] The Persian weapon had a short head, which appears to have been flattish, and which was strengthened by a bar or ridge down the middle.[64] The shaft, which was of cornel wood,[65] tapered gradually from bottom to top, and was ornamented at its lower extremity with a ball,[66] sometimes carved in the shape of an apple or a pomegranate.[67] [Pl. XXIX., Fig. 3.]

The Persian bow, according to Herodotus and Xenophon,[68] was of unusual size. According to the sculptures,[69] it was rather short, certainly not exceeding four feet. It seems to have been carried strung, either on the left shoulder, with the arm passed through it, or in a bow-case slung at the left side.[70] It was considerably bent in the middle, and had the ends slighuly turned back. [Pl. XXX., Fig. 1.] The arrows, which were of reed,[71] tipped with metal, and feathered,[72] were carried in a quiver, which hung at the back near the left shoulder. To judge from the sculptures, their length must have been about two feet and a half. The arrow-heads, which were either of

bronze or iron, seem to have been of various shapes,[56] the most common closely resembling the arrow-heads of the Assyrians.[57] [Pl. XXX., Fig. 3.]

Other offensive weapons carried occasionally by the Persian foot-men were, a battle-axe, a sling, and a knife. The battle-axe, which appears in the sculptures only in one or two instances, is declared to have been a common Persian weapon by Xenophon,[58] who, upon such a point, would seem to be trustworthy. The use of the sling by the Persian light-armed is quite certain. It is mentioned by Curtius and Strabo,[59] no less than by Xenophon; and the last-named writer speaks with full knowledge on the subject, for he witnessed the effect of the weapon in the hands of Persian slingers during his return with the Ten Thousand.[60] The only missiles which the Persian slingers threw were stones: they did not, like the Rhodians, make use of small lumps of lead.[61]

The knife (κοπίς or μάχαιρα) seems also to have been a Persian weapon. Its blade appears to have been slightly curved, like that of a pruning-hook.[62] It was worn in a sheath,[63] and was probably thrust into the belt or girdle like the similar weapon, half knife, half dagger, of a modern Persian.

The ordinary defence of the Persian against the weapons of his enemy was a shield of wicker-work,[64] which covered him almost from head to foot,[65] and which probably differed little from the wattled shield of the Assyrians.[66] [Pl. XXX., Fig. 2.] This he commonly planted on the ground, supporting it, perhaps, with a crutch, while he shot his arrows from behind it.[67] Occasionally, he added to this defence the protection of a coat of mail,[68] composed either of scale armor,[69] or of quilted linen,[70] like the corselets of the Egyptians. Armor of the former kind was almost impenetrable, since the scales were of metal—iron, bronze, or sometimes gold—and overlapped one another like those of a fish.[71]

The Persian cavalry was armed, in the early times of the monarchy, almost exactly in the same manner as their infantry.[72] Afterwards, however a considerable change seems to have been made. In the time of the younger Cyrus cavalry soldiers were very fully protected. They wore helmets on their heads, coats of mail about their bodies, and greaves on their legs.[73] Their chief offensive arms seem, then, to have been the short sword, the javelin, and the knife.[74] It is probable that they were without shields,[75] being sufficiently defended by their armor, which (as we have seen) was almost complete.

The javelin of the horseman, which was his special weapon, was a short strong spear or pike, with a shaft of cornel-wood,[76] and an iron point. It was common for him to carry two such weapons,[77] one of which he used as a missile, while he retained the other in order to employ it in hand-to-hand combat with the enemy.[78] It was a stout manageable weapon, and though no match for the longer and equally strong spear of the Macedonian cavalry,[79] was preferred by Xenophon to the long weak reed-lance commonly carried by horse-soldiers in his day.[80]

It was the practice of the later Persians to protect with armor, not only the horseman, but the horse. They selected for the service large and powerful animals, chiefly of the Nisæan breed,[81] and cased them almost wholly in mail.[82] The head was guarded by a frontlet, and the neck and chest by a breast-piece; the sides and flanks had their own special covering (παλαμίδια), and cuisses defended the thighs. These defences were not merely, like those of the later Assyrian heavy cavalry,[83] of felt or leather, but consisted, like the cuirasses worn by the riders, of some such material covered with metal scales.[84] The weight which the horse had to sustain was thus very great, and the movements of the cavalry force were, in consequence, slow and hesitating.[85] Flight was difficult; and, in a retreat, the weaker animals were apt to sink under their burdens, and to be trampled to death by the stronger ones.[86]

There can be no doubt that, besides these heavy horsemen, the Persians employed, even in the latest times, and much more in the earlier, a light and agile cavalry force. Such were the troops which, under Tissaphernes, harassed the Ten Thousand during their retreat; and such, it may be conjectured, was really at all times the great body of their cavalry. The education of the Persian, as we shall see hereafter,[87] was directed to the formation of those habits of quickness and agility in the mounting and managing of horses, which have a military value only as furnishing a good training for the light-cavalry service; and the tendency of the race has at all times been, not to those forms of military organization which are efficient by means of solidity and strength, but to those lighter, more varied, and more elastic branches which compensate for a want of solidity by increased activity, readiness, and ease of movement.

Though the Persians did not set any great store by chariots, as an arm of the military service,[88] they nevertheless made

occasional use of them. Not only were their kings and princes, when they commanded their troops in person, accustomed to direct their movements, both on the march and even in action, from the elevation of a war-chariot,[89] but now and then, in great battles, a considerable force of them was brought into the field,[90] and important consequences were expected from their employment.[91] The wheels of the war-chariots were armed with scythes;[92] and these, when the chariot was set in motion, were regarded as calculated to inflict great damage on the ranks of opponents. Such hopes seem, however, to have been generally disappointed.[93] As every chariot was drawn by at least two horses, and contained at least two persons—the charioteer and the warrior—a large mark was offered by each to the missiles of the light troops who were commonly stationed to receive them; and, as practically it was found that a single wound to either horse or man threw the whole equipage into confusion, the charge of a scythed chariot was commonly checked before it reached the line of battle of the enemy. Where this was not the case, the danger was escaped by opening the ranks and letting the chariots pass through them to the rear, a good account being speedily given of any adventurer who thus isolated himself from the support of his own party.

The Persian war-chariot was, probably, somewhat loftier than the Assyrian.[94] The wheels appear to have been from three to four feet in diameter; and the body rose above them to a height from the ground of nearly five feet. The person of the warrior was thus protected up to his middle[95] by the curved board which enclosed the chariot on three sides.[96] The axle-tree is said to have been broad, since breadth afforded a security against being overturned,[97] and the whole construction to have been strong and solid. The wheels had twelve spokes, which radiated from a nave of unusual size.[98] The felloes were narrower than the Assyrian, but were still composed, like them, of two or three distinct layers of wood. The tires were probably of metal, and were indented like the edge of a saw. [Pl. XXXI., Fig. 1.]

No great ornamentation of the chariot appears to have been attempted. The body was occasionally patterned with a chequer-work,[99] which may be compared with a style common in Assyria,[100] and the spokes of the wheels were sometimes of great elegance,[101] but the general character of the workmanship was massive and plain. The pole was short, and terminated

with a simple curve. From the evidence of the monuments it would seem that chariots were drawn by two horses only;[102] but the classical writers assure us that the ordinary practice was to have teams of four.[103] The harness used was exceedingly simple, consisting of a yoke, a belly-band, a narrow collar, a head-stall, a bit, and reins. When the charioteer left his seat, the reins could be attached to a loop or bar which projected from the front of the chariot-board.

Chariots were constructed to contain two, or perhaps, in some instances, three persons. These consisted of the warrior, his charioteer, who stood beside him, and an attendant, whose place was behind, and whose business it was to open and shut the chariot doors.[104] The charioteer wore a visor and a coat of mail, exposing nothing to the enemy but his eyes.[105]

The later Persians made use also of elephants in battle, but to a very small extent,[106] and without any results worth mentioning.

The chief points of Persian tactics were the following. The army was organized into three distinct services—those of the chariots, the horse, and the foot. In drawing up the line of battle, it was usual, where chariots were employed, to place them in the front rank, in front of the rest of the army.[107] Behind the chariots were stationed the horse and the foot; the former generally massed upon the wings;[108] the latter placed in the middle, drawn up according to nations,[109] in a number of oblong squares,[110] which touched, or nearly touched, one another. The bravest and best armed troops were placed in front; the ranks towards the rear being occupied by those of inferior quality.[111] The depth of the ranks was usually very great,[112] since Oriental troops cannot be trusted to maintain a firm front unless they are strongly supported from behind. No attempt, however, seems to have been made at forming a second line of battle in the rear of the first, nor does there even seem to have been any organized system of reserves. When the battle began, the chariots were first launched against the enemy,[113] whose ranks it was hoped they would confuse, or, at any rate, disturb. After this the main line advanced to the attack, but without any inclination to come at once to close quarters. Planting their shields firmly on the ground in front of them,[114] the Persian heavy-armed shot flight after flight of arrows against their foe, while the slingers and other light-armed in the rear sent clouds of missiles over the heads of their friends into the adverse ranks beyond them. It was

usually the enemy which brought this phase of the battle to an end, by pressing onward and closing with the Persian main line in a hand-to-hand combat. Here the struggle was commonly brief—a very few minutes often decided the engagement.[115] If the Persian line of battle was forced or broken, all was immediately regarded as lost—flight and rout followed. The cavalry, from its position on the wings, might attempt, by desperate charges on the flanks of the advancing foe, to stay his progress, and restore the fortune of the day, but such efforts were usually unavailing. Its line of battle once broken, a Persian army lost heart; its commander commonly set the example of flight, and there was a general rush of all arms from the battle-field.

For success the Persians trusted mainly to their numbers, which enabled them, in some cases, to renew an attack time after time with fresh troops,[116] in others to outflank and surround their adversary.[117] Their best troops were undoubtedly their cavalry, both heavy and light. The heavy, armed in the old times with bows,[118] and in the later with the javelin[119] (*παλτόν*), highly distinguished itself on many important occasions.[120] The weight of its charge must have been great; its offensive weapons were good;[121] and its armor made it almost invulnerable to ordinary weapons. The light cavalry was celebrated for the quickness and dexterity of its manœuvres.[122] It had the loose organization of modern Bashi-Bazouks or Cossacks; it hung in clouds on the enemy—assailed, retreated, rallied, re-advanced—fled, and even in flight was formidable, since each rider was trained to discharge his arrows backwards with a sure aim against the pursuing foe.[123] The famous skill of the Parthians in their horse-combats[124] was inherited from their Persian predecessors, who seem to have invented the practice which the later people carried to perfection.

Though mainly depending for success on their numbers, the Persians did not wholly despise the use of contrivance and stratagem. At Arbela, Darius Codomannus had spiked balls strewn over the ground where he expected the Greek cavalry to make its attacks[125] [Pl. XXX., Fig. 5]; and, at Sardis, Cyrus obtained his victory over the Lydian horse by frightening them with the grotesque and unfamiliar camel.[126] Other instances[127] will readily occur to the reader, whereby it appears that the art of war was studied, and ingenuity allowed its due place in military matters, by this people, who showed

a fair share of Oriental subtlety in the devices which they employed against their enemies.

It is doubtful whether we are to include among these devices the use of military engines. On the one hand, we have several distinct statements by the author of the "Cyropædia," to the effect that engines were well known to the Persians;[128] on the other, we remark an entire absence from the works of other ancient writers of any notice that they actually employed them, either in their battles or their sieges. The silence of Scripture,[129] of Herodotus, of the inscriptions, of Quintus Curtius, of Arrian, may fairly be regarded as outweighing the unsupported authority of the romance-writer, Xenophon; and though it would be rash to decide that such things as siege-towers, battering rams, and *balistæ*—all of which are found to have been in constant use under the Assyrian and Babylonian monarchies[130]—were wholly discarded by, or unknown to, their successors in the government of Asia, yet a wise criticism will conclude, that they were, at any rate, unfamiliar to the Persians, rarely and sparingly (if at all) employed by them, other methods of accomplishing the ends whereto they served having more approved themselves to this ingenious people. In ordinary sieges it would seem that they trusted to the bank or mound,[131] while sometimes they drove mines under the walls, and sought in this way to effect a breach.[132] Where the place attacked was of great strength, they had recourse in general either to stratagem or to blockade.[133] Occasionally they employed the destructive force of fire,[134] and no doubt they often succeeded by the common method of escalade. On the whole, it must certainly be said that they were successful in their sieges, exhibiting in their conduct of them courage, activity, and considerable fertility of resource.

A Persian army was usually, though not always,[135] placed under a single commander. This commander was the monarch, if he was present; if not, it was a Persian, or a Mede,[136] nominated by him. Under the commander-in-chief were a number of general officers, heads of corps or divisions, of whom we find, in one instance, as many as nine.[137] Next in rank to these were the chiefs of the various ethnic contingents composing the army, who were, probably, in general the satraps of the different provinces.[138] Thus far appointments were held directly from the crown; but beyond this the system was changed. The ethnic or satrapial commanders appointed the officers next below themselves, the captains over a thousand,

and (if their contingent was large enough to admit it) the captains over ten thousand; who, again, nominated their subordinates, commanders of a hundred, and commanders of ten.[139] Thus, in the main, a decimal scale prevailed. The lowest rank of officers commanded each ten men, the next lowest a hundred, the next to that a thousand, the next ten thousand. The officer over ten thousand was sometimes a divisional chief;[140] sometimes he was subject to the commander of an ethnic contingent, who was himself under the orders of the head of a division. Altogether there were six ranks of officers, exclusive of the commander-in-chief.

The proper position of the commander-in-chief was considered to be the centre of the line of battle.[141] He was regarded as safer there than he would have been on either wing; and it was seen that, from such a position, his orders would be most rapidly conveyed to all parts of the battle-field.[142] It was not, however, thought to be honorable that he should keep aloof from the fight, or avoid risking his own person.[143] On the contrary, he was expected to take an active part in the combat; and therefore, though his place was not exactly in the very foremost ranks, it was *towards* the front, and the result followed that he was often exposed to imminent danger. The consequences of this arrangement were frequently disastrous in the extreme,[144] the death or flight of the commander producing universal panic, stopping the further issue of any general order, and thus paralyzing the whole army.

The numbers of a Persian army, though no doubt exaggerated by the Greeks, must have been very great, amounting, probably, on occasions, to more than a million of combatants.[145] Troops were drawn from the entire empire, and were marshalled in the field according to nations,[146] each tribe accoutred in its own fashion. Here were seen the gilded breastplates[147] and scarlet kilts[148] of the Persians and Medes; there the woollen shirt of the Arab,[149] the leathern jerkin of the Berber,[150] or the cotton dress of the native of Hindustan.[151] Swart savage Ethiops from the Upper Nile, adorned with a war-paint of white and red, and scantily clad with the skins of leopards or lions, fought in one place with huge clubs, arrows tipped with stone, and spears terminating in the horn of an antelope.[152] In another, Scyths, with their loose spangled trousers[153] and their tall pointed caps,[154] dealt death around from their unerring blows; while near them Assyrians, helmeted, and wearing

corselets of quilted linen, wielded the tough spear, or the still more formidable iron mace.[95] Rude weapons, like cane bows, unfeathered arrows, and stakes hardened at one end in the fire,[96] were seen side by side with keen swords and daggers of the best steel, the finished productions of the workshops of Phœnicia and Greece. Here the bronze helmet was surmounted with the ears and horns of an ox;[97] there it was superseded by a fox-skin,[98] a leathern or wooden skull-cap,[99] or a head-dress fashioned out of a horse's scalp.[100] Besides horses and mules, elephants,[1] camels,[2] and wild asses,[3] diversified the scene, and rendered it still more strange and wonderful to the eye of a European. One large body of cavalry was accustomed to enter the field apparently unarmed; besides the dagger, which the Oriental never lays aside, they had nothing but a long leathern thong. They used this, however, just as the lasso is used by the natives of Brazil, and the wretch at whom they aimed their deadly noose had small chance of escape.[4]

The Persians, like the Assyrians,[5] usually avoided fighting during the winter, and marched out their armies against the enemy in early spring.[6] With the great hosts which they moved a fixed order of march was most necessary; and we find evidence of so much attention being paid to this point that confusion and disorder seem scarcely ever to have arisen. When the march lay within their own country, it was usual to send on the baggage and the sumpter beasts in advance,[7] after which came about half the troops, moving slowly in a long and continuous column along the appointed line of route. At this point a considerable break occurred, in order that all might be clear for the most important part of the army, which was now to follow. A guard, consisting of a thousand horse and a thousand foot, picked men of the Persian people, prepared the way for what was most holy in the eyes of the nation—the emblems of their religion, and their king. The former consisted of sacred horses and cars; perhaps, in the later times, of silver altars also, bearing the perpetual and heaven-kindled fire,[8] which was a special object of Persian religious regard, and which the superstition of the people viewed as a sort of palladium, sure to bring the blessings of heaven upon their arms. Behind the sacred emblems followed the Great King himself, mounted on a car drawn by Nisæan steeds,[9] and perhaps protected on either side by a select band of his relatives.[10] Behind the royal chariot came a second guard, consisting, like the first, of a thousand foot and a thousand horse. Then followed

ten thousand picked foot, probably the famous "Immortals;"[171] then came a body of ten thousand picked Persian horsemen. After these a space of four hundred yards (nearly a quarter of a mile) was left vacant; then marched, in a second continuous column, the remainder of the host.

On entering an enemy's country, or drawing near a hostile force in their own, certain alterations in these dispositions became necessary, and were speedily effected. The baggage-train was withdrawn, and instead of moving before the army, followed at some little distance in the rear.[172] Horsemen were thrown out in front, to feel for the enemy and notify his arrival.[173] Sometimes, if the host was large, a division of the troops was made, and several *corps d'armée* advanced against the foe simultaneously by distinct routes.[174] When this took place, the commander-in-chief was careful to accompany the central force,[175] so as to find himself in his proper position if he was suddenly compelled to give battle.

Night movements were seldom attempted by the Persians. They marched from sunrise[176] to sunset,[177] halting, probably, during the midday heat. In their most rapid marches they seldom accomplished more than from twenty to twenty-five miles in the day;[178] and when this rate was attempted for any continuance, it was necessary to rest the men at intervals for as much as three days at a time.[179] The great drag upon rapidity of movement was the baggage-train, which consisted ordinarily of a vast multitude of camels, horses, asses, mules, oxen, etc., in part carrying burthens upon their backs, in part harnessed to carts laden with provisions, tents, and other necessaries.[180] The train also frequently comprised a number of litters,[181] in which the wives or female companions of the chief men were luxuriously conveyed, amid a crowd of eunuchs[182] and attendants, and with all the cumbrous paraphernalia of female wardrobes.[183] Roads, it must be remembered, did not exist; rivers were not bridged, except occasionally by boats;[184] the army marched on the natural ground along an established line of route which no art had prepared for the passage of man or beast. Portions of the route would often be soft and muddy; the carts and litters would become immovable, their wheels sinking into the mire up to the axles; all the efforts of the teams would be unavailing; it must have been imperative to halt the main line, and employ the soldiers in the release of the vehicles, which had to be lifted and carried forward till the ground was sufficiently firm to bear them.[185] When a river

crossed the line of route, a ford had to be sought, boats procured, or rafts extemporized. The Persians were skilful in the passage of streams, to which they became accustomed in their first campaigns under Cyrus;[186] but the march was necessarily retarded by these and similar obstacles, and we cannot be surprised that the average rate of movement was slow.

As evening approached the Persians sought a suitable place for their camp. An open plain was preferred for the purpose, and the vicinity of water was a necessity.[187] If an enemy was thought to be at hand, a ditch was rapidly dug, and the earth thrown up inside;[188] or if the soil was sandy, sacks were filled with it, and the camp was protected with sand-bags.[189] Immediately within the rampart were placed the *gerrhophori*, or Persians armed with large wicker shields.[190] The rest of the soldiers had severally their appointed places, the position assigned to the commander-in-chief being the centre.[191] All the army had tents,[192] which were pitched so as to face the east.[193] The horses of the cavalry were tethered and hobbled in front of the tents of their owners.[194]

The Persians disliked encamping near to their enemy.[195] They preferred an interval of seven or eight miles, which they regarded as a considerable security against a surprise. As their most important arm was the cavalry, and as it was impossible for the cavalry to unfasten and unhobble their steeds, to equip them properly, to arm themselves, and then to mount in a short space of time, when darkness and confusion reigned around, a night attack on the part of an enterprising enemy would have been most perilous to a Persian army. Hence the precaution which they observed against its occurrence—a precaution which was seldom or never omitted[196] where they felt any respect for their foe, and which seems to have been effective, since we do not hear of their suffering any disaster of the kind which they so greatly feared.

The Persians do not seem to have possessed any special corps of pioneers. When the nature of the country was such as to require the felling of timber or the removal of brushwood, the army was halted, and the work was assigned to a certain number of the regular soldiers.[197] For the construction of bridges, however, in important places, and for other works on a grand scale intended to facilitate an expedition, preparations were made beforehand, the tasks being entrusted either to skilled workmen,[198] or to the crews of ships,[199] if they were tolerably easy of performance.

Commissariat arrangements were generally made by the Persians on a large scale, and with the best possible results. An ample baggage-train conveyed corn sufficient to supply the host during some months;[200] and in cases where scarcity was apprehended, further precautions were taken. Ships laden with corn accompanied the expedition as closely as possible,[201] and supplemented any deficiency that might arise from a failure on the part of the land transport department. Sometimes, too, magazines[202] were established at convenient points along the intended line of march previously to the setting forth of the army, and stores were thus accumulated at places where it was probable they would be found of most service.

Requisitions for supplies were also made upon the inhabitants of the towns and villages through which lay the route of the army. Whenever the host rested for a night at a place of any consequence, the inhabitants seem to have been required to furnish sufficient bread for a meal to each man,[203] and, in addition, to provide a banquet for the king[204] (or general) and his suite, which was always very numerous. Such requisitions, often intolerably burthensome to those upon whom they were laid, must have[205] tended greatly to relieve the strain upon their own resources, which the sustentation of such enormous hosts as the Persian kings were in the habit of moving, cannot have failed to produce in many cases.

The effectiveness of these various arrangements for the provisioning of troops upon a march was such that Persian armies were rarely, if ever, in any difficulty with respect to their subsistence. Once only in the entire course of their history do we hear of the Persian forces suffering to any considerable extent from a want of supplies. According to Herodotus, Cambyses, when he invaded Ethiopia, neglected the ordinary precautions, and brought his army into such straits that his men began to eat each other.[206] This caused the total failure of his expedition, and the loss of a great proportion of the troops employed in it. There is, however, reason to suspect that, even in this case, the loss and difficulty which occurred have been much exaggerated.[207]

The Persians readily gave quarter to the enemy who asked it, and generally treated their prisoners of war with much kindness. Personages of importance, as monarchs or princes, either preserved their titles and their liberty, with even a certain nominal authority,[208] or received appanages in other parts of the Persian territory,[209] or, finally, were retained about

the Court as friends and table-companions of the Great King.[210] Those of less rank were commonly given lands and houses in some province remote from their own country, and thenceforth held the same position as the great mass of the subject races.[211] Exchanges of prisoners do not seem to have been thought of. In a few cases, persons, whom we should regard as prisoners of war, experienced some severities, but probably only when they were viewed by the Persians, not as fair enemies, but as rebels.[212] Rebels were, of course, liable to any punishment which the king might think it right to inflict upon them, and there were occasions after a revolt when sentences of extreme rigor were passed upon the persons considered to have been most in fault. According to Herodotus, three thousand Babylonians were crucified by order of Darius, to punish their revolt from him;[213] and, though this is probably an exaggeration, it is certain that sometimes, where an example was thought to be required, the Persians put to death, not only the leader of a rebellion, but a number of his chief adherents.[214] Crucifixion, or, at any rate, impalement of some sort, was in such cases the ordinary punishment.[215] Sometimes, before a rebel was executed, he was kept for a while chained at the king's door, in order that there might be no doubt of his capture.[216]

Among the minor punishments of rebellion were branding,[217] and removal of the rebels *en masse* from their own country to some remote locality.[218] In this latter case, they were merely treated in the same way as ordinary prisoners of war. In the former, they probably became royal slaves attached to the household of the monarch.

Though the Persians were not themselves a nautical people, they were quite aware of the great importance of a navy, and spared no pains to provide themselves with an efficient one. The conquests of Phœnicia, Cyprus, Egypt, and the Greek islands were undertaken, it is probable, mainly with this object; and these parts of the Empire were always valued chiefly as possessing skilled seamen, vessels, and dockyards, from which the Great King could draw an almost inexhaustible supply of war-ships and transports. Persia at times had the complete command of the Mediterranean Sea,[219] and bore undisputed sway in the Levant during almost the whole period of her existence as an empire.[220]

The war-ship preferred by the best naval powers during the whole period of the Persian rule was the trireme, or decked

galley impelled by rowers sitting in three tiers, or banks, one above another. This vessel, the invention of the Corinthians,[221] had been generally adopted by the nations bordering on the Mediterranean[222] in the interval between B.C. 700 and B.C. 525, when by the reduction of Phœnicia, Cyprus, and Egypt, the Persians obtained the command of the sea. Notwithstanding the invention of quadriremes by the Carthaginians before B.C. 400, and of quinqueremes by Dionysius the Elder soon after, the trireme stood its ground, and from first to last the Persian fleets were mainly composed of this class of vessels.[223]

The trireme was a vessel of a considerable size, and was capable of accommodating two hundred and thirty persons.[224] Of these, two hundred constituted the crew, while the remaining thirty were men-at-arms, corresponding to our own "marines." By far the greater number of the crew consisted of the rowers, who probably formed at least nine-tenths of the whole, or one hundred and eighty out of the two hundred.[225] The rowers sat, not on benches running right across the vessel, but on small seats attached to its side.[226] They were arranged, as before stated, in three tiers, not, however, directly one over the head of another, but obliquely, each at once above and behind his fellow. Each rower had the sole management of a single oar, which he worked through a hole pierced in the side of the vessel. To prevent his oar from slipping he had a leathern strap,[227] which he twisted round it, and fastened to the thole, probably by means of a button. The remainder of the crew comprised the captain, the steersman, the petty officers, and the sailors proper, or those whose office it was to trim the sails and look to the rigging. The trireme of Persian times had, in all cases, a mast, and at least one sail, which was of a square shape, hung across the mast by means of a yard or spar,[228] like the "square-sail" of a modern vessel. The rudder was composed of two broad-bladed oars, one on either side of the stern, united, however, by a cross-bar, and managed by a single steersman. The central part of a trireme was always decked, and on this deck, which was generally level with the bulwarks, stood and fought the men-at-arms, whose business it was to engage the similar force of the enemy.

The weapon of the trireme, with which she was intended chiefly to attack her foe, was the ἔμβολος, or beak. [Pl. XXXI., Fig. 3.] This consisted of a projection from the prow of the ship, either above or below the water-line, strongly shod with a casting of iron, and terminating either in the head of an ani-

mal, or in one or more sharp points. A trireme was expected, like a modern "ram," to use this implement against the sides of her adversary's vessels, so as to crush them in and cause the vessels to sink. Driven by the full force of her oars, which impelled her almost at the rate of a modern steamer,[229] she was nearly certain, if she struck her adversary full, to send ship and men to the bottom. She might also, it is true, greatly damage herself; but, to preclude this, it was customary to make the whole prow of a trireme exceedingly strong, and, more particularly, to support it with beams at the side (ὑπωτίδες), which tended to prevent the timbers from starting.

Besides triremes, which constituted the bulk of the Persian navy, there were contained in their fleet various other classes of vessels, as triaconters, penteconters, cercuri, and others.[230] Triaconters were long, sharp-keeled ships, shaped very much like a trireme, rowed by thirty rowers, who sat all upon a level, like the rowers in modern boats, fifteen on either side of the vessel. [Pl. XXXI., Fig. 2.] Penteconters were very similar, the only difference being in the number of the oars and oarsmen. [Pl. XXXI., Fig. 4.] Both these classes of vessels seem to have been frequently without sails.[231] Cercuri were light boats, very long and swift. They are said to have been invented by the Cyprians,[232] and were always peculiar to Asia.[233]

The transports of the Persians were either for the conveyance of horses or of food. Horse-transports (ἱππαγωγὰ πλοῖα) were large clumsy vessels, constructed expressly for the service whereon they were used,[234] possessing probably a special apparatus for the embarkation and disembarkation of the animals which they were built to carry. Corn-transports (πλοῖα σιταγωγά) seem to have been of a somewhat lighter character. Probably, they varied very considerably in their size and burthen, including huge and heavy merchantmen (ναῦς στρογγύλαι) on the one hand, and a much lighter and smaller craft (ἄκατοι) on the other.[235]

The Persians used their ships of war, not only for naval engagements, but also for the conveyance of troops and the construction of bridges. Accustomed to pass the great streams which intersect Western Asia by bridges of boats, which were permanently established wherever an unfordable river crossed any of the regular routes connecting the provinces with the capital,[236] the Persians, when they proceeded to carry their arms from Asia into Europe, conceived the idea of bridging the interval between the continents, which did not much exceed

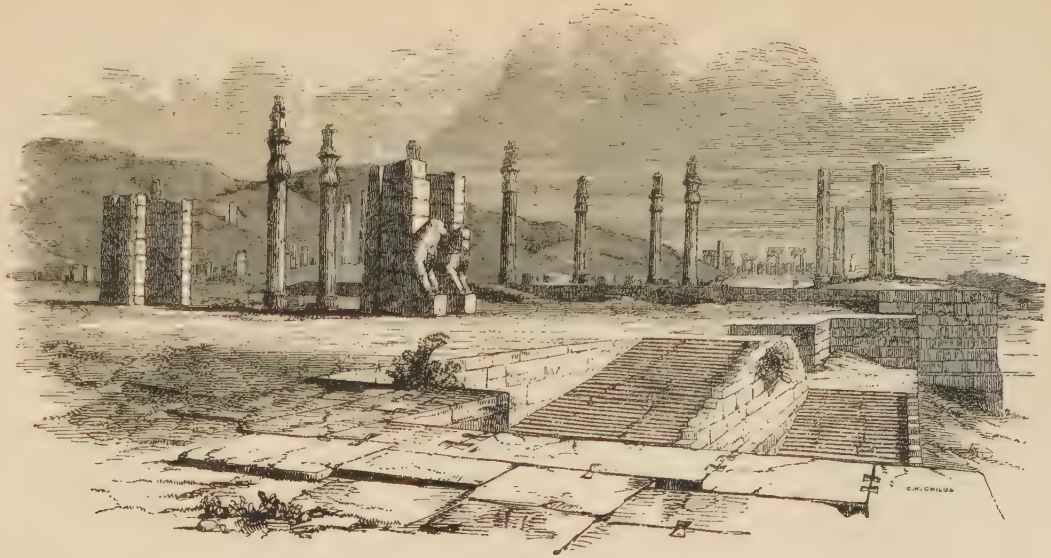
the width of one of the Mesopotamian streams,[237] by constructions similar in principle and general character to those wherewith long use had made them familiar in their own country. Ranging a number of vessels side by side, at no great distance one from another, parallel with the course of the stream, which ran down the straits, anchoring each vessel stem and stern to keep it in place, and then laying upon these supports a long wooden platform, they made a floating bridge of considerable strength, reaching from the Asiatic to the European coast, on which not only men, but horses, camels, chariots, and laden carts passed over safely from the one continent to the other.[238] Only, as the water which they had to cross was not a river, but an arm of the real salt sea, and might, therefore, in case of a storm, show a might and fury far beyond a river's power, they thought it necessary to employ, in lieu of boats, the strongest ships which they possessed, namely, triremes and penteconters,[239] as best capable of withstanding the force of an angry sea. Bridges of this kind were intended sometimes for temporary, sometimes for permanent constructions.[240] In the latter case, great care and much engineering skill was lavished on their erection. The shore cables, which united the ships together, and sustained the actual bridge or platform, were made of most carefully selected materials, and must have been of enormous strength;[241] the ships were placed in close proximity one to another; and by the substitution of a double for a single line—of two bridges, in fact, for one—the solidity of the work was very largely augmented. Yet, rare as was the skill shown, solid and compact as were the causeways thus thrown by human art over the sea, they were found inadequate to the end desired. The great work of Xerxes, far the most elaborate of its class, failed to withstand the fury of the elements even for a single year; the bridge, constructed in one autumn, was utterly swept away in the next;[242] and the army which had crossed into Europe by its aid had to embark as it best could, and return on board ship to Asia.

As the furnishing of the Persian fleet was left wholly to the subject nations of the Empire, so was its manning intrusted to them almost entirely. Phœnicians, Syrians, Egyptians, Cypriots, Cilicians, Lycians, Pamphylians, Carians, Greeks, equipped in the several costumes of their countries,[243] served side by side in their respective contingents of ships, thereby giving the fleet nearly the same motley appearance which was presented by the army.[244] In one respect alone did the navy

A. Great retaining wall of the eastern terrace from Nimrûd.
B. Sculptured staircase to Hall of Xerxes.
C D Staircases to palace of Xerxes.

E F Staircases to palace of Darius.
G G Steps cut in rock.

I Inscription of Darius.
M Great Mound.
P Position for Lioness.



Propylæa, Chehl Minar and Palace of Darius, from top of Great Stairs, Persepolis. From Fergusson.

exhibit superior uniformity to their sister service—the *epibatæ*, or "marines," who formed the whole fighting force of the fleet while it kept the sea, was a nearly homogeneous body, consisting of three races only (two of which were closely allied), namely, Persians, Medes, and Sacæ.[251] Every ship had thirty such men on board: all, it is probable, uniformly armed, and all animated by one and the same spirit. To this force the Persians must have owed it mainly that their great fleets were not mere congeries of mutually repellant atoms, but were capable of acting against an enemy with a fair amount of combination and singleness of purpose.

When a fleet accompanied a land army upon an expedition, it was usually placed under the same commander.[252] This commander, however, was not expected to adventure himself on board, much less to take the direction of a sea-fight. He intrusted the fleet to an officer, or officers,[253] whom he nominated, and was content himself with the conduct of operations ashore. Occasionally the land and sea forces were assigned to distinct commanders of co-ordinate authority—an arrangement which led, naturally, to misunderstanding and quarrel.[254]

The tactics of a Persian fleet seem to have been of the simplest kind. Confident in their numbers, until experience had taught them the fallaciousness of such a ground of hope, they were chiefly anxious that their enemy should not escape. To prevent this, they endeavored to surround the ships opposed to them, advancing their line in a crescent form, so as to enclose their adversary's wings,[255] or even detaching squadrons to cut off his retreat.[256] They formed their line several ships deep,[257] and, when the hour of battle came, advanced directly at their best speed against the enemy, endeavoring to run down his vessels by sheer force,[258] and never showing any acquaintance with or predilection for manœuvres. Met by a skilful antagonist, who avoided or successfully withstood this first onset, they were apt through their very numbers to be thrown into disorder: the first line would become entangled with the second, the second with the third, and inextricable confusion would be the result.[259] Confusion placed them at the mercy of their antagonist, who, retaining complete command over his own vessels, was able to strike theirs in vulnerable parts, and, in a short time, to cover the sea with shattered and sinking wrecks. The loss to the Persians in men, as well as in material, was then sure to be very great; for their sailors seldom knew how to swim,[260] and were con-

sequently drowned, even when the shore was but a few yards distant.

When, from deficiency in their numbers, or distrust of their own nautical skill in comparison with that of their enemy, the commanders of a Persian fleet wished to avoid an engagement, a plan sometimes adopted was to run the ships ashore upon a smooth soft beach, and, after drawing them together, to surround them with such a rampart as could be hastily made,[255] and defend this rampart with the sailors. The crews of the Persian vessels were always more or less completely armed,[256] in order that, if occasion arose, they might act as soldiers ashore, and were thus quite capable of fighting effectively behind a rampart. They might count, too, under such circumstances, upon assistance from such of their own land forces as might happen to be in the neighborhood, who would be sure to come with all speed to their aid, and might be expected to prove a sure protection.

The subject nations who furnished the Persians with their fleet were, in the earlier times, the Phœnicians, the Egyptians, the Cypriots, the Cilicians, the Syrians of Palestine, the Pamphylians, the Lycians, the Carians, and the Greeks of Asia Minor and the islands.[257] The Greeks seem to have furnished the largest number of ships; the Phœnicians, the next largest; then the Egyptians; after them the Cypriots; then the Cilicians; then the Carians; next the Lycians; while the Pamphylians furnished the least.[258] The best ships and the best sailors were the Phœnicians, especially those of Sidon.[259] In later times, ships were drawn either from Phœnicia alone, or from Phœnicia, Cilicia, and Cyprus.[260]

The limits assigned to the present work forbid the further prosecution of this branch of our inquiry, and require us now to pass on from the consideration of the Persian usages in war, to that of their manners and customs, their habits and proceedings, in time of peace. And here it will once more be convenient to follow a division of the subject with which the reader is familiar,[261] and to treat first of the public life of the King and Court, and next of the private life of the people.

The Persian king held the same rank and position in the eyes of his subjects which the great monarch of Western Asia, whoever he might be, had always occupied from time immemorial.[262] He was their lord and master, absolute disposer of their lives, liberties, and property; the sole fountain of law and right, incapable himself of doing wrong, irresponsible irresist-

ible—a sort of God upon earth; one whose favor was happiness, at whose frown men trembled, before whom all bowed themselves down with the lowest and humblest obeisance.

To a personage so exhalted, a state and pomp of the utmost magnificence was befitting. The king's ordinary dress in time of peace was the long flowing "Median garment," or *candys*[263] —made in his case (it is probable) of richest silk,[264] which, with its ample folds, its wide hanging sleeves, and its close fit about the neck and chest, gave dignity to almost any figure,[265] and excellently set off the noble presence of an Achæmenian prince. The royal robe was either of purple throughout,[266] or sometimes of purple embroidered with gold.[267] It descended below the ankles; resting on the foot even when the monarch was seated.[268] A broad girdle confined it at the waist. Under it was worn a tunic,[269] or shirt, which reached from the neck to the knee,[270] and had tight-fitting sleeves that covered the arm to the wrist.[271] The tunic was purple in color, like the *candys*, or robe, but striped or mixed with white.[272] The lower limbs were encased in trousers of a crimson hue.[273] On his feet the the king wore shoes like those of the Medes,[274] long and taper at the toe buttoned in front, and reaching very high up the instep: their color was deep yellow or saffron.[275] [Pl. XXXII., Fig. 1.]

Thus far the monarch's costume, though richer in material than the dress of the Persian nobles, and in some points different in color, was on the whole remarkably like that of the upper class of his subjects. It was, however, most important that his dress should possess some distinguishing feature, and that that feature should be one of very marked prominency. In an absolute monarchy the king must be unmistakable, at almost any distance, and almost in any light. Consequences of the gravest kind may follow from any mistake of the royal identity; and it is therefore essential to the comfort both of prince and subject that some very conspicuous badge shall mark and notify the monarch's presence. Accordingly, it appears that the Persian ruler was to be known by his headdress, which was peculiar alike in shape and in color, and was calculated to catch the eye in both respects. It bore the name *kitaris* or *kidaris*,[276] and was a tall stiff cap,[277] slightly swelling as it ascended, flat at top, and terminating in a ring or circle which projected beyond the lines of the sides. Round it, probably near the bottom, was worn a fillet or band—the *diadem* proper—which was blue, spotted with white.[278]

As the other Persians wore either simple fillets round their heads, or soft, rounded, and comparatively low caps, with no band round them,[277] the king's head-dress, which would tower above theirs and attract attention by its color, could readily be distinguished even in the most crowded Court.

It has been asserted that the *kidaris*, or tiara of the Persian kings, was "commonly adorned with gold and jewelry;"[278] and this may possibly have been the case, but there is no evidence that it was so.[281] Its material was probably either cloth or felt,[282] and it was always of a bright color,[283] though not (apparently) always of the same color. Its distinguishing features were its height, its stiffness, and the blue and white fillet which encircled it.[84]

Among other certain indications of the royal presence may be mentioned the golden sceptre,[285] and the parasol. The sceptre, which is seen frequently in the king's hands,[286] was a plain rod, about five feet in length, ornamented with a ball, or apple, at its upper end, and at its lower tapering nearly to a point. The king held it in his right hand, grasping it near, but not at, the thick end, and rested the thin end on the ground in his front. When he walked, he planted it upright before him, as a spearman would plant his spear. When he sate, he sloped it outwards, still, however, touching the ground with its point.

The parasol, which has always been in the East a mark of dignity, seems in Persia, as in Assyria,[287] to have been confined, either by law or usage, to the king. The Persian implement resembled the later Assyrian, except that it was not tasselled, and had no curtain or flap. It had the same tent-like shape, the same long thick stem, and the same ornament at the top. It only differed in being somewhat shallower, and in having the supports, which kept it open, curved instead of straight. It was held over the king's head on state occasions by an attendant who walked immediately behind him.[288] [Pl. XXXII., Fig. 3.]

The throne of the monarch was an elevated seat, with a high back, but without arms, cushioned, and ornamented with a fringe, and with moldings or carvings along the back and legs. The ornamentation consisted chiefly of balls and broad rings, and contained little that was artistic or elaborate. The legs, however, terminated in lions' feet, resting upon half balls, which were ribbed or fluted. The sides of the chair below the seat appear to have been panelled, like the thrones of the Assyrians,[289] but were not adorned with any carving. The seat

of the throne was very high from the ground, and without a rest the legs would have dangled.[290] A footstool consequently was provided, which was plain, like the throne, but was supported on legs terminating in the feet of bulls. Thus the lion and the bull, so frequent in the symbolism of the East,[291] were here again brought together, being represented as the supports of the throne.[292]

With respect to the material whereof the throne was composed, there can be no doubt that it was something splendid and costly. Late writers describe it as made of pure gold;[293] but, as we hear of its having silver feet,[294] we may presume that parts at least were of the less precious metal.[295] Ivory is not said to have been used in its composition. We may, perhaps, conjecture, that the frame of the throne was wood, and that this was overlaid with plates of gold or silver, whereby the whole of the woodwork was concealed from view, and an appearance of solid metal presented.

The person of the king was adorned with golden ornaments. He had earrings of gold in his ears, often inlaid with jewels;[296] he wore golden bracelets upon his wrists;[297] and he had a chain or collar of gold about his neck.[298] [Pl. XXXIII., Fig. 1.] In his girdle, which was also of gold, he carried a short sword, the sheath of which was formed of a single precious stone.[299] The monuments, unfortunately, throw little light on the character and workmanship of these portions of the royal costume. We may gather from them, perhaps, that the bracelets had a large jewel set in their centre,[300] and that the collars were of twisted work, worn loosely around the neck.[301] The sword seems to have differed little from that of the ordinary Persians. It had a short straight blade, a mere cross-bar for a guard, and a handle almost devoid of ornament. This plainness was compensated, if we may trust Curtius, by the magnificence of the sheath, which was, perhaps, of jasper, agate, or lapis lazuli.[302] [Pl. XXXIII., Fig. 2.]

The officers in most close attendance on the monarch's person were, in war, his charioteer, his stool-bearer, his bow-bearer, and his quiver-bearer: in peace, his parasol-bearer, and his fan bearer, who was also privileged to carry what has been termed "the royal pocket-handkerchief."[303]

The royal charioteer is seemingly unarmed.[304] His head is protected merely by a fillet. He sits in front of his master, and both his hands are fully occupied with the management of the reins. He has no whip, and seems to urge his horses for-

ward simply by leaning forward himself, and slackening or shaking the reins over them. He was, no doubt, in every case a Persian of the highest rank,[308] such near proximity to the Royal person being a privilege to which none but the very noblest could aspire. [Pl. XXXIII., Fig. 2.]

The office of the stool-bearer,[309] was to assist the king as he mounted his chariot or dismounted from it. He carried a golden stool, and followed the royal chariot closely, in order that he might be at hand whenever his master felt disposed to alight. On a march, the king was wont to vary the manner of his travelling, exchanging, when the inclination took him, his chariot for a litter, and riding in that more luxurious vehicle till he was tired of it, after which he returned to his chariot for a space.[310] The services of the stool-bearer were thus in constant requisition, since it was deemed quite impossible that his Majesty could ascend or descend his somewhat lofty war-car without such aid.

The rank of the bow-bearer was probably nearly as great as that of the driver of the chariot.[308] He was privileged to stand immediately behind the monarch on grand occasions,[309] carrying in his left hand the weapon from which he derived his appellation. The quiver-bearer had the next place.[311] Both wore the Median costume—the *candys*, or flowing robe, the girdle, the high shoe, and the stiff fluted cap, or, perhaps, occasionally the simple fillet. Sometimes the two offices would seem to have been held by the same person, unless we are to attribute this appearance, where it occurs,[311] to the economy of the artist, who may have wished to save himself the trouble of drawing two separate figures. [Pl. XXXIII., Fig. 5.]

The parasol-bearer[312] was attired as the bow and quiver bearers, except that he was wholly unarmed, and had the fillet for his proper head-dress. Though not a military officer, he accompanied the monarch in his expeditions,[313] since in the midst of war there might be occasions of state when his presence would be convenient. The officer who bore the royal fan and handkerchief had generally the same costume; but sometimes his head was enveloped in a curious kind of cowl or muffler, which covered the whole of it except the forehead, the eyes, the nose, the mouth, and the upper portion of the cheeks. [Pl. XXXIV., Fig. 1.]

The fan, or fly-chaser, had a long straight handle, ornamented with a sort of beading, which held a brush of some springy fibrous matter. [Pl. XXXIII., Fig. 4.] The bearer,

whose place was directly behind the monarch, held his implement, which bent forward gracefully, nearly at arm's length over his master's head.[314]

It would seem that occasionally the bearer of the handkerchief laid aside his fly-chaser, and assumed in lieu of it a small bottle containing perfumery. [Pl. XXXIV., Fig. 4.] In a sculptured tablet at Persepolis, given by Ker Porter,[315] an attendant in the Median robe, with a fillet upon his head, who bears the handkerchief in the usual way in his left hand, carries in the palm of his right what seems to be a bottle, not unlike the scent-bottle of a modern lady. It has always been an Oriental custom to wash the hands before meals, and the rich commonly mix some perfumery or other with the water We may presume that this was the practice at the Persian Court, and that the Great King therefore took care to have an officer, who should at all times be ready to provide his guests, or himself, with the scent which was most rare or most fashionable.

The Persians seem to have been connoisseurs in scents. We are told that, when the royal tiara was not in wear, it was laid up carefully with a mixture of myrrh and *labyzus*, to give it an agreeable odor.[316] Unguents were thought to have been a Persian invention,[317] and at any rate were most abundantly used by the upper classes of the nation.[318] The monarch applied to his own person an ointment composed of the fat of lions, palm wine, saffron, and the herb *helianthes*, which was considered to increase the beauty of the complexion.[319] He carried with him, even when he went to the wars, a case of choice unguents; and such a treasure fell into the hands of Alexander, with the rest of Darius's camp equipage, at Arbela.[320] It may be suspected that the "royal ointment" of the Parthian kings, composed of cinnamon, spikenard, myrrh, cassia, gum styrax, saffron, cardamum, wine, honey, and sixteen other ingredients,[321] was adopted from the Persians, who were far more likely than the rude Parthians to have invented so recondite a mixture. Nor were scents used only in this form by the ingenious people of whom we are speaking. Arabia was required to furnish annually to the Persian crown a thousand talents' weight of frankincense;[322] and there is reason to believe that this rare spice was largely employed about the Court, since the walls of Persepolis have several representations of censers, which are sometimes carried in the hands of an attendant,[323] while sometimes they stand on the ground,

immediately in front of the Great King.[324] [Pl. XXXIV., Fig. 2.]

The box or vase in which the Persians commonly kept their unguents was of alabaster.[325] This stone, which abounded in the country,[326] was regarded as peculiarly suited for holding ointments, not only by the Persians, but also by the Egyptians,[327] the Greeks,[328] and (probably) the Assyrians.[329] The Egyptian variety of stone seems to have been especially valued; and vases appear to have been manufactured in that country for the use of the Persian monarch, which were transmitted to the Court, and became part of the toilet furniture of the palace.[330] [Pl. XXXIV., Fig. 3.]

Among the officers of the Court, less closely attached to the person of the monarch than those above enumerated, may be mentioned the steward of the household;[331] the groom or master of the horse;[332] the chief eunuch, or keeper of the women;[333] the king's "eyes" and "ears,"[334] persons whose business it was to keep him informed on all matters of importance; his scribes or secretaries,[335] who wrote his letters and his edicts;[336] his messengers,[337] who went his errands; his ushers,[338] who introduced strangers to him; his "tasters," who tried the various dishes set before him lest they should be poisoned;[339] his cupbearers,[340] who handed him his wine, and tasted it; his chamberlains,[341] who assisted him to bed; and his musicians,[342] who amused him with song and harp. Besides these, the Court comprised various classes of guards, and also doorkeepers, huntsmen, grooms, cooks, and other domestic servants in great abundance,[343] together with a vast multitude of visitors and guests, princes, nobles, captives of rank, foreign refugees, ambassadors, travellers. We are assured that the king fed daily within the precincts of his palace as many as fifteen thousand persons,[344] and that the cost of each day's food was four hundred talents.[345] A thousand beasts were slaughtered for each repast, besides abundance of feathered game and poultry.[346] The beasts included not only sheep, goats, and oxen, but also stags, asses, horses, and camels.[347] Among the feathered delicacies were poultry, geese, and ostriches.[348]

The monarch himself rarely dined with his guests. For the most part he was served alone. Sometimes he admitted to his table the queen and two or three of his children.[349] Sometimes, at a "banquet of wine,"[350] a certain number of privileged boon companions were received, who drank in the royal presence, not, however, of the same wine, nor on the same terms.

The monarch reclined on a couch with golden feet, and sipped the rich wine of Helbon; the guests drank an inferior beverage, seated upon the floor.[351] At a great banquet, it was usual to divide the guests into two classes. Those of lower degree were entertained in an outer court or chamber to which the public had access, while such as were of higher rank entered the private apartments, and drew near to the king. Here they were feasted in a chamber opposite to the king's chamber, which had a curtain drawn across the door, concealing him from their gaze, but not so thick as to hide them from their entertainer.[352] Occasionally, on some very special occasion, as, perhaps, on the Royal birthday,[353] or other great festival, the king presided openly at the banquet,[354] drinking and discoursing with his lords, and allowing the light of his countenance to shine freely upon a large number of guests, whom, on these occasions, he treated as if they were of the same flesh and blood with himself. Couches of gold and silver were spread for all,[355] and "royal wine in abundance" was served to them in golden goblets.[356] On these, and, indeed, on all occasions, the guests, if they liked, carried away any portion of the food set before them which they did not consume at the time, conveying it to their homes, where it served to support their families.[357]

The architecture of the royal palace will be discussed in another chapter; but a few words may be said in this place with respect to its furniture and general appearance. The pillared courts and halls of the vast edifices which the Achæmenian monarchs raised at Susa and Persepolis would have had a somewhat bare and cold aspect, if it had not been for their internal fittings. The floors were paved with stones of various hues, blue, white, black, and red,[358] arranged doubtless into patterns, and besides were covered in places with carpeting.[359] The spaces between the pillars were filled with magnificent hangings, white green, and violet, which were fastened with cords of fine linen (?) and purple to silver rings and pillars of marble,"[360] screening the guests from sight, while they did not too much exclude the balmy summer breeze. The walls of the apartments were covered with plates of gold.[361] All the furniture was rich and costly. The golden throne of the monarch stood under an embroidered canopy or awning supported by four pillars of gold inlaid with precious stones.[362] [Pl. XXXV.] Couches resplendent with silver and gold filled the rooms.[363] The private chamber of the monarch was

adorned with a number of objects, not only rich and splendid, but valuable as productions of high art. Here, impending over the royal bed, was the golden vine, the work of Theodore of Samos, where the grapes were imitated by means of precious stones, each of enormous value.[364] Here, probably, was the golden plane-tree, a worthy companion to the vine,[365] though an uncourtly Greek declared it was too small to shade a grasshopper.[366] Here, finally, was a bowl of solid gold, another work of the great Samian metallurgist, more precious for its artistic workmanship than even for its material.[367]

Nothing has hitherto been said of the Royal harem or seraglio, which, however, as a feature of the Court always important, and ultimately preponderating over all others, claims a share of our attention. In the early times, it would appear that the Persian kings were content with three or four wives,[368] and a moderate number of concubines. Of the wives there was always one who held the most exalted place, to whom alone appertained the title of "Queen," and who was regarded as "wife" in a different sense from the others. Such was Atossa to Darius Hystaspis, Amestris to Xerxes, Statira to Darius Codomannus. Such, too, were Vashti and Esther to the prince, whoever he was, whose deeds are recorded in Scripture under the name of Ahasuerus.[369] The chief wife, or Queen-Consort, was privileged to wear on her head a royal tiara or crown.[370] She was the acknowledged head of the female apartments or Gynæceum, and the concubines recognized her dignity by actual prostration.[371] On great occasions, when the king entertained the male part of the Court, she feasted all the females in her own part of the palace.[372] She had a large revenue of her own, assigned her, not so much by the will of her husband, as by an established law or custom.[373] Her dress was splendid,[374] and she was able to indulge freely that love of ornament of which few Oriental women are devoid. Though legally subject to her husband as much as the meanest of his slaves,[375] she could venture on liberties which would have been fatal to almost any one else,[376] and often, by her influence over the monarch, possessed a very considerable share of power.[377]

The status of the other wives was very inferior to this; and it is difficult to see how such persons were really in a position much superior to that of the concubines. As daughters of the chief nobles—for the king could only choose a wife within a narrow circle[378]—they had, of course, a rank and dignity inde-

pendent of that acquired by marriage; but otherwise they must have been almost on a par with those fair inmates of the Gynæceum who had no claim even to the name of consort. Each wife had probably a suite of apartments to herself, and a certain number of attendants—eunuchs, and tirewomen—at her disposal: but the inferior wives saw little of the king, being only summoned each in their turn to share his apartment,[379] and had none of the privileges which made the position of chief wife so important.

The concubines seem to have occupied a distinct part of the Gynæceum, called "the second house of the women."[380] They were in the special charge of one of the eunuchs,[381] and were no doubt kept under strict surveillance. The Empire was continually searched for beautiful damsels to fill the harem,[382] a constant succession being required, as none shared the royal couch more than once, unless she attracted the monarch's regard very particularly.[383] In the later times of the Empire, the number of the concubines became enormous, amounting (according to one authority[384]) to three hundred and twenty-nine, (according to another[385]) to three hundred and sixty. They accompanied the king both in his wars[386] and in his hunting expeditions.[387] It was a part of their duty to sing and play for the royal delectation: and this task, according to one author,[388] they had to perform during the whole of each night. It is a more probable statement that they entertained the king and queen with music while they dined, one of them leading, and the others singing and playing in concert.[389]

The Gynæceum in the Susa palace, at any rate—was a building distinct from the general edifice, separated from the "king's house" by a court.[390] It was itself composed of at least three sets of apartments—viz. apartments for the virgins who had not yet gone into the king, apartments for the concubines, and apartments for the Queen-Consort and the other wives. These different portions were under the supervision of different persons. Two eunuchs of distinction had the charge respectively of the "first" and of the "second house of the women."[391] The Queen-Consort was, at any rate nominally, paramount in the third,[392] her authority extending over all its inmates, male and female.

Sometimes there was in the Gynæceum a personage even more exalted than any which have as yet been mentioned. The mother of the reigning prince, if she outlived his father, held a position at the Court of her son beyond that even of

his Chief Wife. She kept the ensigns of royalty which she had worn during the reign of her husband;[393] and wielded, as Queen-Mother, a far weightier and more domineering authority than she ever exercised as Queen-Consort.[394] The habits of reverence and obedience, in which the boy had been reared, retained commonly their power over the man: and the monarch who in public ruled despotically over millions of men, succumbed, within the walls of the seraglio, to the yoke of a woman, whose influence he was too weak to throw off. The Queen-Mother had her seat at the royal table whenever the king dined with his wife; and, while the wife sat below, she sat above the monarch.[395] She had a suite of eunuchs distinct from those of her son.[396] Ample revenues were secured to her, and were completely at her disposal.[397] She practically exercised—though she could not perhaps legally claim—a power of life and death.[398] She screened offenders from punishment, procuring for them the royal pardon,[399] or sheltering them in her own apartments;[400] and she poisoned, or openly executed, those who provoked her jealousy or resentment.[401]

The service of the harem, so far as it could not be fitly performed by women, was committed to eunuchs. Each legitimate wife—as well as the Queen-Mother—had a number of these unfortunates among her attendants; and the king intrusted the house of the concubines, and also that of the virgins,[402] to the same class of persons. His own attendants seem likewise to have been chiefly eunuchs.[403] In the later times, the eunuchs acquired a vast political authority, and appear to have then filled all the chief offices of state. They were the king's advisers in the palace,[404] and his generals in the field.[405] They superintended the education of the young princes,[406] and found it easy to make them their tools. The plots and conspiracies, the executions and assassinations, which disfigure the later portion of the Persian annals, may be traced chiefly to their intrigues and ambition. But the early Persian annals are free from these horrors; and it is clear that the power of the eunuchs was, during this period, kept within narrow bounds. We hear little of them in authentic history till the reign of Xerxes.[407] It is remarkable that the Persepolitan sculptures, abounding as they do in representations of Court life, of the officers and attendants who approached at all closely to the person of the monarch, contain not a single figure of a eunuch in their entire range.[408] We may gather from this that there was at any rate a marked difference be-

tween the Assyrian and the early Persian Court in the position which eunuchs occupied at them respectively: we should not, however, be justified in going further and questioning altogether the employment of eunuchs by the Persian monarchs during the early period, since their absence from the sculptures may be accounted for on other grounds.

It is peculiarly noticeable in the Persian sculptures and inscriptions that they carry to excess that reserve which Orientals have always maintained with regard to women. The inscriptions are wholly devoid of all reference to the softer sex, and the sculptures give us no representation of a female. In Persia, at the present day, it is regarded as a gross indecorum to ask a man after his wife; and anciently it would seem that the whole sex fell under a law of *taboo*, which required that, whatever the real power and influence of women, all public mention of them, as well as all representations of the female form, should be avoided. If this were so, it must of course still more have been the rule that the women—or, at any rate, those of the upper classes—should not be publicly seen. Hence the indignant refusal of Vashti to obey the command of King Ahasuerus to show herself to his Court.[409] Hence, too, the law which made it a capital offence to address or touch one of the royal concubines or even to pass their litters upon the road.[410] The litters of women were always curtained; and when the Queen Statira rode in hers with the curtains drawn, it was a novelty which attracted general attention, as a relaxation of the ordinary etiquette, though only females were allowed to come near her.[411] Married women might not even see their nearest male relatives, as their fathers and brothers:[412] the unmarried had, it is probable, a little more liberty.

As the employment of eunuchs at the Persian Court was mainly in the harem, and in offices connected therewith, it is no wonder that they shared, to some extent, in the law of *taboo*, which forbade the representation of women. Their proper place was in the female courts and apartments, or in close attendance upon the litters, when members of the seraglio travelled, or took the air—not in the throne-room, or the antechambers, or the outer courts of the palace, which alone furnished the scenes regarded as suitable for representation.

Of right, the position at the Persian Court immediately below that of the king belonged to the members of certain privileged families. Besides the royal family itself—or clan of the Achæmenidæ—there were six great houses which had a

rank superior to that of all the other grandees. According to Herodotus these houses derived their special dignity from the accident that their heads had been fellow-conspirators with Darius Hystaspis;[413] but there is reason to suspect that the rank of the families was precedent to the conspiracy in question, certain families conspiring because they were great, and not becoming great because they conspired. At any rate, from the time of Darius I., there seem to have been seven great families, including that of the Achæmenidæ, whose chiefs had the privilege of free communication with the monarch, and from which he was legally bound to choose his legitimate wives. The chiefs appear to have been known as "the Seven Princes," or "the Seven Counsellors," of the king.[414] They sat next to him at public festivals;[415] they were privileged to tender him their advice, whenever they pleased;[416] they recommended important measures of state, and were, in part, responsible for them;[417] they could demand admission to the monarch's presence at any time, unless he were in the female apartments; they had precedence on all great occasions of ceremony, and enjoyed a rank altogether independent of office. Sometimes—perhaps most commonly—they held office; but they rather conferred a lustre on the position which they consented to fill, than derived any additional splendor from it.

It does not appear that the chiefs of the seven great families had any peculiar insignia. Officers of the Court, on the contrary, seem to have always carried, as badges marking their position, either wands about three feet in length, or an ornament resembling a lotos blossom,[418] which is sometimes seen in the hands of the monarch himself.[419] Such officers wore, at their pleasure, either the long Median robe and the fluted cap, or the close-fitting Persian tunic and trousers, with the loose felt κυρβασία or πίλος. All had girdles, in which sometimes a dagger was placed; and all had collars of gold about their necks, and earrings of gold in their ears.[420] The Median robes were of various colors—scarlet, purple, crimson, dark gray, etc.[421] Over the Persian tunic a sleeved cloak, or great coat, reaching to the ankles, was sometimes worn;[422] this garment was fastened by strings in front, and descended loosely from the shoulders, no use being commonly made of the sleeves, which hung empty at the wearer's side. [Pl. XXXVI., Fig. 1.]

An elaborate Court ceremonial was the natural accompani-

ment of the ideas with respect to royalty embodied in the Persian system. Excepting the "Seven Princes," no one could approach the royal person unless introduced by a Court usher.[423] Prostration—the attitude of worship—was required of all as they entered the presence.[424] The hands of the persons introduced had to be hidden in their sleeves so long as their audience lasted.[425] In crossing the Palace Courts it was necessary to abstain carefully from touching the carpet which was laid for the king to walk on.[426] Coming into the king's presence unsummoned was a capital crime, punished by the attendants with instant death, unless the monarch himself, as a sign that he pardoned the intrusion, held out towards the culprit the golden sceptre which he bore in his hands.[427] It was also a capital offence to sit down, even unknowingly, upon the royal throne;[428] and it was a grave misdemeanor to wear one of the king's cast-off dresses.[429] Etiquette was almost as severe on the monarch himself as on his subjects. He was required to live chiefly in seclusion;[430] to eat his meals, for the most part, alone;[431] never to go on foot beyond the palace walls;[432] never to revoke an order once given, however much he might regret it;[433] never to draw back from a promise, whatever ill results he might anticipate from its performance.[434] To maintain the quasi-divine character which attached to him it was necessary that he should seem infallible, immutable, and wholly free from the weakness of repentance.

As some compensation for the restrictions laid upon him, the Persian king had the sole enjoyment of certain luxuries. The wheat of Assos was sent to the Court to furnish him with bread, and the vines of Helbon were cultivated for the special purpose of supplying him with wine.[435] Water was conveyed to Susa for his use from distant streams regarded as specially sweet and pure;[436] and in his expeditions he was accompanied by a train of wagons, which were laden with silver flasks, filled from the clear stream of the Choaspes.[437] The oasis of Ammon contributed the salt with which he seasoned his food.[438] All the delicacies that the Empire anywhere produced were accumulated on his board, for the supply of which each province was proud to send its best and choicest products.

The chief amusements in which the Great King indulged were hunting and playing at dice. Darius Hystaspis, who followed the chase with such ardor as on one occasion to dislocate his ankle in the pursuit of a wild beast,[439] had himself represented on his signet-cylinder as engaged in a lion-hunt.[440]

From this representation, we learn that the Persian monarchs, like the Assyrian, pursued the king of beasts in their chariots, and generally despatched him by means of arrows. Seated in a light car, and attended by a single unarmed charioteer, they invaded the haunts of these fiercest of brutes, rousing them from their lairs—probably with Indian hounds,[441] and chasing them at full speed if they fled, or, if they faced the danger, attacking them with arrows or with the javelin. [Pl. XXXVI., Fig. 2.] Occasionally the monarch might indulge in this sport alone; but generally he was (it seems) accompanied by some of his courtiers,[442] who shared the pleasures of the chase with him on the condition that they never ventured to let fly their weapons before he had discharged his.[443] If they disregarded this rule they were liable to capital punishment, and might esteem themselves fortunate if they escaped with exile.[444]

Besides lions, the Persian monarch chased, it is probable, stages, antelopes, wild asses, wild boars, bears, wild sheep, and leopards. [Pl. XXXVI., Fig. 3.] These animals all abounded in the neighborhood of the royal palaces, and they are enumerated by Xenophon among the beasts hunted by Cyrus.[445] The mode of chasing the wild ass was for the horsemen to scatter themselves over the plain, and to pursue the animal in turns, one taking up the chase when the horse of another was exhausted.[446] The speed of the creature is so great that no horse with a rider on his back can long keep pace with him; and thus relays were necessary to tire him out, and enable the hunters to bring him within the range of their weapons.

When game was scarce in the open country, or when the kings were too indolent to seek it in its native haunts, they indulged their inclination for sport by chasing the animals which they kept in their own "paradises."[447] These were walled enclosures of a large size, well wooded, and watered with sparkling streams, in which were bred or kept wild beasts of various kinds, chiefly of the more harmless sorts, as stags, antelopes, and wild sheep. These the kings pursued and shot with arrows, or brought down with the javelin;[448] but the sport was regarded as tame, and not to be compared with hunting in the open field.

Within the palace the Persian monarchs are said to have amused themselves with dice. They played, it is probable, chiefly with their near relatives, as their wives, or the Queen-Mother. The stakes, as was to be expected, ran high, as much as a thousand darics (nearly 1100*l.*) being sometimes set on a

Fig. 1.

Parapet Wall of Staircase, Persepolis (restored) 'Interior View'

Fig. 2.

Parapet Wall of the same (restored).
'Exterior view.'

East Stairs of Palace of Xerxes. From Fergusson.

single throw. Occasionally they played for the persons of their slaves, eunuchs, and others, who, when lost, became the absolute property of the winner.[449]

Another favorite royal amusement was carving or planing wood. According to Ælian, the Persian king, when he took a journey, always employed himself, as he sat in his carriage, in this way;[450] and Ctesias speaks of the occupation as pursued also within the walls of the palace.[451] Manual work of this kind has often been the refuge of those rulers, who, sated with pleasure and devoid of literary tastes, have found time hang heavy upon their hands.

In literature a Persian king seems rarely to have taken any pleasure at all.[452] Occasionally, to beguile the weary hours, a monarch may have had the "Book of the Chronicles of the Kings of Persia and Media" read before him;[453] but the kings themselves never opened a book,[454] or studied any branch of science or learning. The letters, edicts, and probably even the inscriptions, of the monarch were the composition of the Court scribes,[455] who took their orders from the king or his ministers, and clothed them in their own language. They did not even call upon their master to sign his name to a parchment; his seal, on which his name was engraved,[456] sufficiently authenticated all proclamations and edicts.[457]

Among the more serious occupations of the monarch were the holding of councils,[458] the reviewing of troops,[459] the hearing of complaints,[460] and the granting or refusing of redress, the assignment of rewards,[461] perhaps, in some cases, the trying of causes,[462] and, above all, the general direction of the civil administration and government of the Empire.[463] An energetic king probably took care to hear all the reports which were sent up to the Court by the various officials employed in the actual government of the numerous provinces, as well as those sent in by the persons who from time to time inspected, on the part of the Crown, the condition of this or that satrapy. Having heard and considered these reports, and perhaps taken advice upon them, such a monarch would give clear directions as to the answers to be sent, which would be embodied in despatches by his secretaries, and then read over to him, before he affixed his seal to them. The concerns of an empire so vast as that of Persia would have given ample employment for the greater part of the day to any monarch who was determined not only to reign, but to govern. Among the Persian sovereigns there seem to have been a few who had sufficient energy and self-

denial to devote themselves habitually to the serious duties of their office. Generally, however, the cares of government were devolved upon some favorite adviser, a relative, or a eunuch, who was entrusted by the monarch with the entire conduct of affairs, in order that he might give himself up to sensual pleasures, to the sports of the field, or to light and frivolous amusements.

The passion for building, which we have found so strong in Assyria and Babylonia, possessed, but in a minor degree, a certain number of the Persian monarchs. The simplicity of their worship giving little scope for architectural grandeur in the buildings devoted to religion,[464] they concentrated their main efforts upon the construction of palaces and tombs. The architectural character of these works will be considered in a later chapter.[465] It is sufficient to note here that a good deal of the time and attention of many monarchs were directed to these objects: and particularly it is interesting to remark, that, notwithstanding their worldly greatness, and the flattering voices of their subjects, which were continually bidding them "live for ever,"[466] the Persian kings were quite aware of the frail tenure by which man holds his life, and, while they were still in vigorous health, constructed their own tombs.[467]

It was an important principle of the Magian religion that the body should not after death be allowed to mingle with, and so pollute, any one of the four elements.[468] Either from a regard for this superstition, or from the mere instinctive desire to preserve the lifeless clay as long as possible, the Persians entombed their kings in the following way. The body was placed in a golden coffin, which was covered with a close-fitting lid,[469] and deposited either in a massive building erected to serve at once as a tomb and a monument,[470] or in a chamber cut out of some great mass of solid rock, at a considerable elevation above its base.[471] In either case, the entrance into the tomb was carefully closed, after the body had been deposited in it, by a block or blocks of stone.[472] [Pl. XXXVII., Fig. 1.] Inside the tomb were placed, together with the coffin, a number of objects, designed apparently for the king's use in the other world, as rich cloaks and tunics, trousers, purple robes, collars of gold, earrings of gold, set with gems, daggers, carpets, goblets, and hangings.[473] Generally the tomb was ornamented with sculptures, and sometimes, though rarely,[474] it had an inscription (or inscriptions) upon it, containing the name and titles of the monarch whose remains reposed within.

If the tomb were a building, and not rock-hewn, the ground in the vicinity was formed into a park or garden, which was planted with all manner of trees.[475] Within the park, at some little distance from the tomb, was a house, which formed the residence of a body of priests, who watched over the safety of the sepulchre.[476]

The Greeks seem to have believed that divine honors were sometimes paid to a monarch after his decease;[477] but the spirit of the Persian religion was so entirely opposed to any such observance that it is most probable the Greeks were mistaken. Observing that sacrifices were offered once a month in the vicinity of some of the royal tombs, they assumed that the object of the cult was the monarch himself, whereas it was no doubt really addressed either to Ormazd or to Mithras. The Persians cannot rightly be accused of the worship of dead men, a superstition from which both the Zoroastrian and the Magian systems were entirely free.

From this account of the Persian monarchs and their Court, we may now turn to a subject which moderns regard as one of much greater interest—the general condition, manners, and customs of the Persian people. Our information on these points is unfortunately far less full than on the subject which we have been recently discussing, but still it is perhaps sufficient to give us a tolerably complete notion of the real character of the nation.

The Persians, according to Herodotus,[478] were divided into ten tribes, of which four were nomadic and three agricultural. The nomadic were the Dai, the Mardi, the Dropici, and the Sagartii; the agricultural were the Panthialæi, the Derusiæi, and the Germanii, or Carmanians. What the occupation of the other three tribes was Herodotus does not state; but, as one of them—the Pasargadæ—was evidently the ruling class, consisting, therefore (it is probable), of land-*owners*, who did not themselves till the soil, we may perhaps assume that all three occupied this position, standing in Persia somewhat as the three tribes of Dorians stood to the other Greeks in the Peloponnese. If this were the case, the population would have been really divided broadly into the two classes of settled and nomade,[479] whereof the former class was subdivided into those who were the lords of the soil, and those who cultivated it, either as farmers or as laborers, under them.

The ordinary dress of the poorer class, whether agricultural or nomade, was probably the tunic and trousers of leather

which have been already mentioned as the true national costume of the people.[480] The costume was completed by a loose felt cap upon the head, a strap or belt round the waist, and a pair of high shoes upon the feet, tied in front with a string. [Pl. XXXVIII., Fig. 2.] In later times a linen or muslin rag replaced the felt cap,[481] and the tunic was lengthened so as to reach half way between the knee and the ankle.[482]

The richer classes seem generally to have adopted the Median costume which was so prevalent at the Court. They wore long purple or flowered robes[483] with loose hanging sleeves, flowered tunics reaching to the knee, also sleeved,[484] embroidered trousers,[485] tiaras,[486] and shoes of a more elegant shape than the ordinary Persian.[487] Nor was this the whole of their dress. Under their trousers they wore drawers, under their tunics shirts, on their hands gloves,[488] and under their shoes socks or stockings[489]—luxuries these, one and all, little known in the ancient world. The Persians were also, like most Orientals, extremely fond of ornaments. Men of rank carried, almost as a matter of course, massive chains or collars of gold about their necks, and bracelets of gold upon their arms.[490] The sheaths and handles of their swords and daggers were generally of gold,[491] sometimes, perhaps, studded with gems. Many of them wore earrings.[492] Great expense was lavished on the trappings of the horses which they rode or drove; the bridle, or at least the bit, was often of solid gold,[493] and the rest of the equipment was costly. Among the gems which were especially affected, the pearl held the first place. Besides being set in the ordinary way, it was bored and strung, in order that it might be used for necklaces, bracelets, and ankles.[494] Even children had sometimes golden ornaments, which were preferred when the gold was of a reddish color.[495]

Very costly and rich too was the furniture of the better class of houses. The tables were plated or inlaid with silver and gold. Splendid couches,[496] spread with gorgeous coverlets, invited the inmates to repose at their ease; and, the better to insure their comfort, the legs of the couches were made to rest upon carpets, which were sufficiently elastic to act as a sort of spring, rendering the couches softer and more luxurious than they would otherwise have been.[497] Gold and silver plate, especially in the shape of drinking-cups,[498] was largely displayed in all the wealthy mansions, each household priding itself on the show which it could make of the precious metals.

In respect of eating and drinking, the Persians, even of the

better sort, were in the earlier times noted for their temperance and sobriety. Their ordinary food was wheaten bread, barley-cakes, and meat simply roasted or boiled, which they seasoned with salt and with bruised cress-seed, a substitute for mustard.[499] The sole drink in which they indulged was water.[500] Moreover, it was their habit to take one meal only each day.[501] The poorer kind of people were contented with even a simpler diet, supporting themselves, to a great extent, on the natural products of the soil, as dates, figs, wild pears, acorns, and the fruit of the terebinth-tree.[502] But these abstemious habits were soon laid aside, and replaced by luxury and self-indulgence, when the success of their arms had put it in their power to have the full and free gratification of all their desires and propensities. Then, although the custom of having but one meal in the day was kept up, the character of the custom was entirely altered by beginning the meal early and making it last till night.[503] Not many sorts of meat were placed on the board, unless the occasion was a grand one; but course after course of the lighter kinds of food flowed on in an almost endless succession, intervals of some length being allowed between the courses to enable the guests to recover their appetites.[504] Instead of water, wine became the usual beverage;[505] each man prided himself on the quantity he could drink; and the natural result followed that most banquets terminated in general intoxication. Drunkenness even came to be a sort of institution. Once a year, at the feast of Mithras, the king of Persia, according to Duris, was bound to be drunk.[506] A general practice arose of deliberating on all important affairs under the influence of wine, so that, in every household, when a family crisis impended, intoxication was a duty.[507]

The Persians ate, not only the meats which we are in the habit of consuming, but also the flesh of goats, horses, asses, and camels.[508] The hump of the last-named animal is considered, even at the present day, a delicacy in many parts of the East; but in ancient Persia it would seem that the entire animal was regarded as fairly palatable. The horse and ass, which no one would touch in modern Persia, were thought, apparently, quite as good eating as the ox; and goats, which were far commoner than sheep, appeared, it is probable, oftener at table. The dietery of a grand house was further varied by the admission into it of poultry and game—the game including wild boars,[509] stags,[510] antelopes,[511] bustards, and probably partridges; the poultry consisting of geese and chick-

ens.[512] Oysters and other fish were used largely as food by the inhabitants of the coast-region.[513]

Grades of society were strongly marked among the Persians; and the etiquette of the Court travelled down to the lowest ranks of the people. Well-known rules determined how each man was to salute his equal, his inferior, or his superior; and the observance of these rules was universal. Inferiors on meeting a decided superior prostrated themselves on the ground; equals kissed each other on the lips; persons nearly but not quite equals kissed each other's cheeks.[514] The usual Oriental rules prevailed as to the intercourse of the sexes. Wives lived in strict seclusion within the walls of the Gynæceum,[515] or went abroad in litters, seeing no males except their sons, their husbands, and their husbands' eunuchs. Concubines had somewhat more freedom, appearing sometimes at banquets, when they danced, sang, and played to amuse the guests of their master.[516]

The Persian was allowed to marry several wives, and might maintain in addition as many concubines as he thought proper.[517] Most of the richer class had a multitude of each, since every Persian prided himself on the number of his sons,[518] and it is even said that an annual prize was given by the monarch to the Persian who could show most sons living.[519] The concubines were not unfrequently Greeks, if we may judge by the case of the younger Cyrus, who took two Greek concubines with him when he made his expedition against his brother.[520] It would seem that wives did not ordinarily accompany their husbands, when these went on military expeditions, but that concubines were taken to the wars by most Persians of consideration.[521] Every such person had a litter at her disposal,[522] and a number of female attendants,[523] whose business it was to wait upon her and execute her orders.

All the best authorities are agreed that great pains were taken by the Persians—or, at any rate, by those of the leading clans—in the education of their sons.[524] During the first five years of his life the boy remained wholly with the women, and was scarcely, if at all, seen by his father.[525] After that time his training commenced. He was expected to rise before dawn, and to appear at a certain spot, where he was exercised with other boys of his age in running, slinging stones, shooting with the bow, and throwing the javelin.[526] At seven he was taught to ride, and soon afterwards he was allowed to begin to hunt.[527] The riding included, not only the ordinary management of the

horse, but the power of jumping on and off his back when he was at speed, and of shooting with the bow and throwing the javelin with unerring aim, while the horse was still at full gallop. The hunting was conducted by state-officers, who aimed at forming by its means in the youths committed to their charge all the qualities needed in war.[528] The boys were made to bear extremes of heat and cold, to perform long marches, to cross rivers without wetting their weapons, to sleep in the open air at night, to be content with a single meal in two days, and to support themselves occasionally on the wild products of the country, acorns, wild pears, and the fruit of the terebinth-tree.[529] On days when there was no hunting they passed their mornings in athletic exercises, and contests with the bow or the javelin, after which they dined simply on the plain food mentioned above as that of the men in the early times, and then employed themselves during the afternoon in occupations regarded as not illiberal—for instance, in the pursuits of agriculture, planting, digging for roots, and the like, or in the construction of arms and hunting implements, such as nets and springes.[530] Hardy and temperate habits being secured by this training, the point of morals on which their preceptors mainly insisted was the rigid observance of truth.[531] Of intellectual education they had but little. It seems to have been no part of the regular training of a Persian youth that he should learn to read. He was given religious notions and a certain amount of moral knowledge by means of legendary poems, in which the deeds of gods and heroes were set before him by his teachers, who recited or sung them in his presence, and afterwards required him to repeat what he had heard, or, at any rate, to give some account of it.[532] This education continued for fifteen years, commencing when the boy was five, and terminating when he reached the age of twenty.[533]

The effect of this training was to render the Persian an excellent soldier and a most accomplished horseman. Accustomed from early boyhood to pass the greater part of every day in the saddle, he never felt so much at home as when mounted upon a prancing steed. On horseback he pursued the stag, the boar, the antelope, even occasionally the bear or the lion,[534] and shot his arrows, or slung his stones, or hurled his javelin at them with deadly aim, never pausing for a moment in his career. [Pl. XXXVII., Fig. 2.] Only when the brute turned on his pursuers, and stood at bay, or charged them in its furious despair, they would sometimes descend from their

coursers, and receive the attack, or deal the *coup de grâce* on foot, using for the purpose a short but strong hunting-spear. [Pl. XXXVII., Fig. 3.] The chase was the principal delight of the upper class of Persians, so long as the ancient manners were kept up, and continued an occupation in which the bolder spirits loved to indulge [535] long after decline had set in, and the advance of luxury had changed, to a great extent, the character of the nation.

At fifteen years of age the Persian was considered to have attained to manhood, and was enrolled in the ranks of the army, continuing liable to military service from that time till he reached the age of fifty.[536] Those of the highest rank became the body-guard of the king, and these formed the garrison of the capital. They were a force of not less than fourteen or fifteen thousand men.[537] Others, though liable to military service, did not adopt arms as their profession, but attached themselves to the Court and looked to civil employment, as satraps, secretaries, attendants, ushers, judges, inspectors, messengers. A portion, no doubt, remained in the country districts, and there followed those agricultural pursuits which the Zoroastrian religion regarded as in the highest degree honorable.[538] But the bulk of the nation must, from the time of the great conquests, have passed their lives mainly, like the Roman legionaries under the Empire, in garrison duty in the provinces. The entire population of Persia Proper can scarcely have exceeded two millions.[539] Not more than one fourth of this number would be males between the ages of fifteen and fifty. This body of 500,000 men, besides supplying the official class at the Court and throughout the provinces, and also furnishing to Persia Proper those who did the work of its cultivation, had to supply to the whole Empire those large and numerous garrisons on whose presence depended the maintenance of the Persian dominion in every province that had been conquered. According to Herodotus, the single country of Egypt contained, in his day, a standing army of 120,000 Persians;[540] and, although this was no doubt an exceptional case, Egypt being more prone to revolt than any other satrapy,[541] yet there is abundant evidence that elsewhere, in almost every part of the Empire, large bodies of troops were regularly maintained; troops which are always characterized as "Persians."[542] We may suspect that under the name were included the kindred nation of the Medes, and perhaps some other Arian races, as the Hyrcanians,[543] and the Bactrians, for

it is difficult to conceive that such a country as Persia Proper could alone have kept up the military force which the Empire required for its preservation; but to whatever extent the standing army was supplemented from these sources, Persia must still have furnished the bulk of it; and the demands of this service must have absorbed, at the very least, one third if not one half of the adult male population.

For trade and commerce the Persians were wont to express extreme contempt.[544] The richer classes made it their boast that they neither bought nor sold,[545] being supplied (we must suppose) from their estates, and by their slaves and dependents, with all that they needed for the common purposes of life. Persians of the middle rank would condescend to buy, but considered it beneath them to sell; while only the very lowest and poorest were actual artisans and traders. Shops were banished from the more public parts of the towns;[546] and thus such commercial transactions as took place were veiled in what was regarded as a decent obscurity. The reason assigned for this low estimation of trade was that shopping and bargaining involved the necessity of falsehood.[547]

According to Quintus Curtius, the Persian ladies had the same objection to soil their hands with work that the men had to dirty theirs with commerce.[548] The labors of the loom, which no Grecian princess regarded as unbecoming her rank, were despised by all Persian women except the lowest;[549] and we may conclude that the same idle and frivolous gossip which resounds all day in the harems of modern Iran formed the main occupation of the Persian ladies in the time of the Empire.

With the general advance of luxury under Xerxes and his successors, of which something has been already said,[550] there were introduced into the Empire a number of customs of an effeminate and demoralizing character. From the earliest times the Persians seem to have been very careful of their beards and hair, arranging the latter in a vast number of short crisp curls, and partly curling the former, partly training it to hang straight from the chin. After a while, not content with this degree of care for their personal appearance, they proceeded to improve it by wearing false hair in addition to the locks which nature had given them,[551] by the use of cosmetics to increase the delicacy of their complexions,[552] and by the application of a coloring matter to the upper and lower eyelids, for the purpose of giving to the eye an appearance of greater size

and beauty.[553] They employed a special class of servants to perform these operations of the toilet, whom the Greeks called "adorners" (κοσμητάς).[554] Their furniture increased, not merely in splendor, but in softness; their floors were covered with carpets, their beds with numerous and delicate coverlets;[555] they could not sit upon the ground unless a cloth was first spread upon it;[556] they would not mount a horse until he was so caparisoned that the seat on his back was softer even than their couches.[557] At the same time they largely augmented the number and variety of their viands and of their sauces,[558] always seeking after novel delicacies, and offering rewards to the inventors of "new pleasures."[559] A useless multitude of lazy menials was maintained in all rich households, each servant confining himself rigidly to a single duty, and porters, bread-makers, cooks, cup-bearers, water-bearers, waiters at table, chamberlains, "awakers," "adorners," all distinct rom one another, crowded each noble mansion, helping forward the general demoralization.[560] It was probably at this comparatively late period that certain foreign customs of a sadly lowering character were adopted by this plastic and impressible people, who learnt the vice of pæderasty from the Greeks,[561] and adopted from the Assyrians the worship of Beltis, with its accompaniment of religious prostitution.[562]

On the whole the Persians may seem to have enjoyed an existence free from care, and only too prosperous to result in the formation of a high and noble character. They were the foremost Asiatic people of their time, and were fully conscious of their pre eminency. A small ruling class in a vast Empire, they enjoyed almost a monopoly of office, and were able gradually to draw to themselves much of the wealth of the provinces. Allowed the use of arms, and accustomed to lord it over the provincials, they themselves maintained their self-respect, and showed, even towards the close of their Empire, a spirit and an energy seldom exhibited by any but a free people. But there was nevertheless a dark side to the picture—a lurking danger which must have thrown a shadow over the lives of all the nobler and richer of the nation, unless they were utterly thoughtless. The irreponsible authority and cruel dispositions of the kings, joined to the recklessness with which they delegated the power of life and death to their favorites, made it impossible for any person of eminence in the whole Empire to feel sure that he might not any day be seized and accused of a crime, or even without the form of an accusation be taken

and put to death, after suffering the most excruciating tortures. To produce this result, it was enough to have failed through any cause whatever in the performance of a set task,[563] or to have offended, even by doing him too great a service,[564] the monarch or one of his favorites. Nay, it was enough to have provoked, through a relation or a connection, the anger or jealousy of one in favor at Court; for the caprice of an Oriental would sometimes pass over the real culprit and exact vengeance from one quite guiltless—even, it may be, unconscious—of the offence given.[565] Theoretically, the Persian was never to be put to death for a single crime;[566] or at least he was not to suffer until the king had formally considered the whole tenor of his life, and struck a balance between his good and his evil deeds to see which outweighed the other.[567] Practically, the monarch slew with his own hand any one whom he chose,[568] or, if he preferred it, ordered him to instant execution, without trial or inquiry.[569] His wife and his mother indulged themselves in the same pleasing liberty of slaughter, sometimes obtaining his tacit consent to their proceedings,[570] sometimes without consulting him.[571] It may be said that the sufferers could at no time be very many in number, and that therefore no very wide-spread alarm can have been commonly felt; but the horrible nature of many of the punishments, and the impossibility of conjecturing on whom they might next fall, must be set against their infrequency; and it must be remembered that an awful horror, from which no precautions can save a man, though it happen to few, is more terrible than a score of minor perils, against which it is possible to guard. Noble Persians were liable to be beheaded, to be stoned to death,[572] to be suffocated with ashes,[573] to have their tongues torn out by the roots,[574] to be buried alive,[575] to be shot in mere wantonness,[576] to be flayed and then crucified,[577] to be buried all but the head,[578] and to perish by the lingering agony of "the boat."[579] If they escaped these modes of execution, they might be secretly poisoned,[580] or they might be exiled, or transported for life.[581] Their wives and daughters might be seized and horribly mutilated,[582] or buried alive,[583] or cut into a number of fragments.[584] With these perils constantly impending over their heads, the happiness of the nobles can scarcely have been more real than that of Damocles upon the throne of Dionysius.

In conclusion, we may notice as a blot upon the Persian character and system, the cruelty and barbarity which was

exhibited, not only in these abnormal acts of tyranny and violence, but also in the regular and legal punishments which were assigned to crimes and offences. The criminal code, which—rightly enough—made death the penalty of murder, rape, treason, and rebellion, instead of stopping at this point, proceeded to visit with a like severity even such offences as deciding a cause wrongfully on account of a bribe,[585] intruding without permission on the king's privacy,[586] approaching near to one of his concubines,[587] seating oneself, even accidentally, on the throne,[588] and the like. The modes of execution were also, for the most part, unnecessarily cruel. Poisoners were punished by having their heads placed upon a broad stone, and then having their faces crushed, and their brains beaten out by repeated blows with another stone.[589] Ravishers and rebels were put to death by crucifixion.[590] The horrible punishment of "the boat" seems to have been no individual tyrant's cruel conception, but a recognized and legal form of execution.[591] The same may be said also of burying alive.[592] Again the Persian secondary punishments were for the most part exceedingly barbarous. Xenophon tells us, as a proof of the good government maintained by the younger Cyrus, in his satrapy, that under his sway it was common to see along all the most frequented roads numbers of persons who had had their hands or feet cut off, or their eyes put out, as a punishment for thieving and rascality.[593] And other writers relate that similar mutilations were inflicted on rebels,[594] and even on prisoners of war.[595] It would seem, indeed, that mutilation and scourging[596] were the ordinary forms of secondary punishment used by the Persians, who employed imprisonment solely for the safe custody of an accused person between his arrest and his execution,[597] while they had recourse to transportation and exile only in the case of political offenders.[598]

CHAPTER IV.

LANGUAGE AND WRITING.

Τῆς Περσίδος γλώσσης ὅσα ἠδύνατο.—Thucyd. i. 38.

It has been intimated in the account of the Median Empire which was given in a former volume that the language of the Persians, which was identical, or almost identical, with that of the Medes, belonged to the form of speech known to moderns as Indo-European.[1] The characteristics of that form of speech are a certain number of common, or at least widely spread, roots, a peculiar mode of inflecting, together with a resemblance in the inflections, and a similarity of syntax or construction. Of the old Persian language the known roots are, almost without exception, kindred forms to roots already familiar to the philologist through the Sanscrit, or the Zend, or both; while many are of that more general type of which we have spoken—forms common to all, or most of the varieties of the Indo-European stock. To instance in a few very frequently recurring words—"father" is in old Persian (as in Sanscrit) *pitar*, which differs only in the vocalization from the Zendic *patar*, the Greek πατήρ, and the Latin *pater*, and of which cognate forms are the Gothic *fadar*, the German *vater*, the English *father*, and the Erse *athair*. "Name" is in old Persian (as in both Zend and Sanscrit) *nâma*, for which we have in Greek, ὄνομα, in Latin *nomen*, in German *nahme* or *name*, in English *name*. "Man" is *martiya*, for which we have in Greek βρότος, in Latin *mortalis*, in English *mortal*, in modern Persian, *merd*. "Horse" is *açpa*, the same as in Zend, with which may be compared the Sanscrit *açva*, the modern Persian *asp*, the Greek ἵππ-ος, the Welsh *osw*, and even the Latin *equus*.[2]

The following table (pp. 366, 367) exhibits a number of similar instances.

With respect to inflections, we may observe first, that the original masculine nominatival ending (as was long ago observed by Herodotus[3]) was *sh* or *s*—the same as in Latin and

Old Persian.	*Sanscrit.*	*Zend.*	*Greek.*	*Latin.*	*German.*	*English.*	*Mod. Persian.*
Aj (to drive)	aj	az	ἄγ-ειν	ag-ere		to act.	
Api (water)	áp	ap		aqua (?)	aue	av (in Av-on	ab.
Amiya (I am)	asmi	ahmi	εἰμί	sum		am	am.
Arika (hostile)	ari		ἔρις	rixa (?)			
Bad (to bind)	bandh	bañd			binden	bind	bas-tan (band).
Bar (to carry)	bhri.	bere	φέρειν	ferre.	fuhren	bear	bur-dan.
Bu (to be)	bhu	bu			bin.	be	bu-dan.
Bumi (earth)	bhumi	bumi		humus			bumi.
Brâtar (brother)	bhrâtar	brâtar		frater	bruder	brother	birader.
Cha (and)	ka	ka	καί	que			
Cta (to stand)	sthâ.	çta	ἵστημι	sto	stehen	stand	ista-dan.
Dâ (to give)	dhâ	dâ	δίδωμι	da-re			da-dan.
Dâ (to know)	dâ, dô	dao	δάω	doc-eo (?)			dan-istan.
Darsh (to dare)	dars	dars	θαρσ-εῖν	au-dere	dürfen	dare.	
Duvarâ (door)	dvara	dvara	θύρα	(fores) (?)	thüre	door	dar.
Duvitiya (second)	dvitiyâ	bitya	δεύτερος	duo	zweite	two	du.
Fratama (first)	prathamâ	frathema	πρῶτος	primus	frum's (Goth).	first.	
Garma (warm)		gharemo	θερμός (?)		warm	warm	gherm.
Garb (to take)	gribh, grabh	gerev	ἁρπ-άζω	rapio	greifen	gripe	girif-tan.
Gausha (the ear)	gaosha	oûs		auris, ausculto	ohr	ear	gush.
Gub (to speak)	gup			jubeo (?)		gab, gabble	guf-tan.
Had-ish (a seat)	hadhis		ἕδος κ. τ. λ	sed-es	sitz	seat.	
Hama (together)	hama		ἁμά	cum			ham.
I (to go)	i	i	ἰέναι	i-re			
Jan (to strike, kill)	han	zan, jan	θέν-ω				zan.
Jiv (to live)	jiv	jiv, jvo	ζάϝω	vivo			zis tan.
Ka (who)	ka	ka		quis	hva (O. G.)	who	ki.
Khshanas (to know)			γινώσ-κω	gnos-co	kennen	know	shinâs.
Mâm (me)	mâm	manm	ἐμέ, με	me	mich	me	man.

Old Persian.	*Sanscrit.*	*Zend.*	*Greek.*	*Latin.*	*German.*	*English.*	*Mod. Persian.*
Man (to think)	man	man	μενος	mens	meinen	mean.	
Man (to wait)	mann	mâne	μενω	maneo			man-dan.
Mar (to die)	mri	mere	(βρότος)	morior			mur-dan.
Matar	mâtar	mâtar	μητηρ	mater	mutter	mother	mader.
Mathista (greatest)	mazista	mazista	μειζων / μέγιστος			mightiest, most.	
Mâha (month)	mas	mâogha	μην	mensis	monat	month	mah.
Nâha (nose)	nâsâ	naogha		nasus	nase	nose.	
Napat (grandson)	napât	napô	(ἀνεψιός)	nepos	neffe	nephew	nava.
Navama (ninth)	navamâ	nâuma	ἔννεϝα	novem	neun	nine	navam.
Nâvi (ship)	naus	naviya	ναῦς	navis	nacho (O. G.)		nau.
Niya (not)	na, nih	naêdha	νη	ne-	ni-cht	nay, not	na.
Pad (foot, footstep)	pâda	padha	ποδ-α	ped-em	fuss	foot	pá.
Paça (after)	paç-kat			post			pas.
Pathi (path)	panthan	pâtha	πατος	pons (?)	pfad	path	
Raçta (right)	raj	raz		rectus	richtig	right	rast.
Shim (him)	him		ὁν		ihn	him	ash.
Tars (to fear)	tras	tereç	τρε-ω	tre-mo		tremble	tars.
Tigra (an arrow, sharp)	tigma	tighra			degen (?)	dagger (?)	tir.
Taumâ (family)	tokma	taokhma	(τεκω)	stemma	stamm	stem	tukhm.
Thah (to say)	ças	çagh			sagen	say	sukhn(speech).
Tritiya (third)	tritîyâ	thritya	τριτος	tertius	dritte	third.	
Tuvam (thou)	twam	tum	τύ, σύ	tu	du	thou	tu.
Vaj (to bring)	vah	vaz		veho			
Vâ (or, enclit.)	vâ	vâ		ve			va.
Vayam (we)	vayam	vaêm			wir	we.	
U (good)	su	hu	εὖ	euge			khub.
Utâ (and)	utâ	uta		et	und (?)	and (?).	

Greek;[4] and this ending is found whenever the final vowel of the root is *i* or *u;* as in *Kurush*, *Daryavush*, *Fravartish*, and the like. When, however, the final root-vowel happened to be *â*, the *s* was dropped, first, perhaps, passing into a breathing, and then becoming absorbed in the vowel.[5] Thus we have *Auramazdâ*, *Artakhshatrâ*, *khshatrapâ* (satrap), etc. Where the root ended in a consonant, the final consonant was sometimes dropped, and the preceding vowel sound elongated—as *brâtar*, nom. *brâtâ*, "brother" *pitar*, nom. *pitâ*, "father;" *jatar*, nom. *jatâ*, "enemy;" *napat*, nom. *napâ*, "grandson;" while at other times the consonant was retained, either with or without the light *a;* e.g. *açpa*, "a horse," *martiya*, "a man," *kauf*, "a mountain," *daraug*, "a lie," etc. Feminine nominatives usually ended in *-â* long; a few had *-i* as their final vowel; and these seem to have taken the masculine nominatival sign *-sh;* e.g. *shiyatish*, "happiness."[6] Neuters appear to have ended only in *-am*, a form analogous to the Latin *-um* and Greek *-ον*; examples are *avahanam*, "dwelling;" *hamaranam*, "battle;" *vardanam*, "city, state."

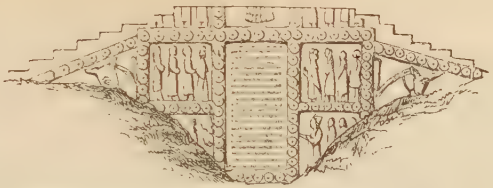
Besides the nominative, the ancient Persians recognized five other cases. These were the genitive, the accusative, the vocative, the ablative, and the locative.[7] The dative was wanting, and its force was expressed through the genitive.

The genitive singular of nouns masculine in *ă* was formed ordinarily by the addition of *hya*, with which we may compare the Sanscrit *-sya* and the Greek *-οιο*.[8] Other masculine nouns formed the genitive by adding to the root *-a*,[9] which probably stood for *-ah*, the Old Persian equivalent of the Sanscrit genitival *-as*. Masculines in *-ish* and *-ush* made the genitive in *-aish* and *-aush*, as *Kur-ush*, *Kur-aush*; *Fravart-ish*, *Fravart-aish*. Feminines in *â* formed the genitive by adding *-yâ*, as *taumâ*, "a family," gen. *taumâyâ;* those in *-ish* changed *-ish* into *-iya*, as *bumish*, "the earth," gen. *bumiya*. The genitive of neuter nouns does not occur in the inscriptions.

The universal sign of the accusative singular was *-m*.[10] Nouns whose nominative ended in *-sh* made the accusative by changing *-sh* into *-m*. Nouns in *-â* or *-ă* took *-m* in addition. The closest analogy to this is furnished by the Latin; but we may compare also the Greek *-ν*, the German *-n* ("den ihn"), and our own *-m* in "him," and "whom."

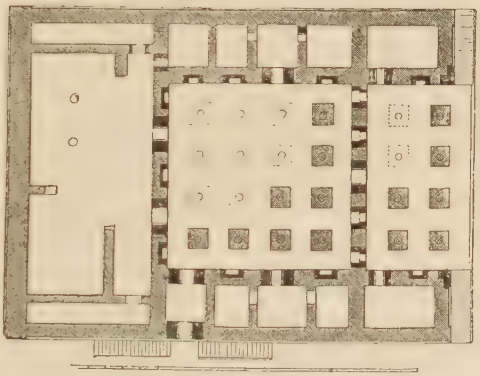
The vocative seems to have ended, as in Sanscrit, with the root-vowel of the word, which, if not already long, was elongated; e.g. *martiyă*, "man," voc. *martiyâ*, "O man."

Fig. 1.



Staircase of Artaxerxes, Persepolis. Existing condition.

Fig. 2



Ground Plan of the Palace of Darius. 50 ft. to 1 inch.

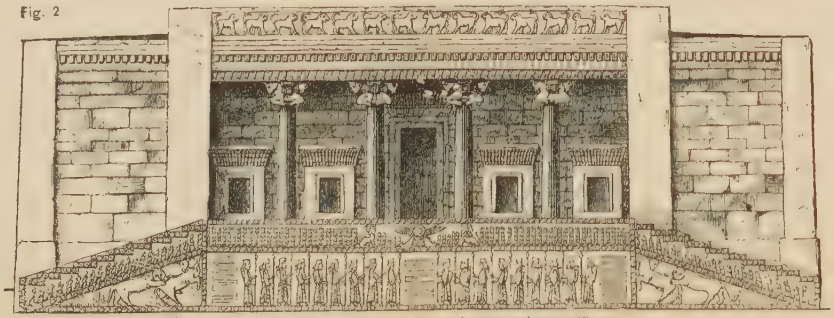
Fig. 3.

King and Attendants,
Persepolis.

Fig. 1.

Façade of the Palace of Darius, Persepolis. (From Fergusson.)

Fig. 2



[South Front of the Palace of Darius, Persepolis, restored (after Flandin)]

The ablative is thought to have terminated originally in *-at;*[11] but the *t* fell away, and the regular sign of the case became the long *-á*. (Compare the Latin ablative of nouns in *-a* and *-as*.)

The ordinary sign of the locative (which in Sanscrit and Zend is *-i*) was in the Old Persian *-ya* or *-iya*. Masculine nouns in *-ă* took the full form *-iya*, as *Armina*, loc. *Armina iya*. Feminines in *-i* took *-yâ*, as *Athura*, loc. *Athurâyâ; Arbirâ*, loc. *Arbirâyâ*. Feminines in *-i* took sometimes simply *-yâ*, as *api*, "water," loc. *apiyâ:* sometimes they changed *-i* into *aiyâ*, as *Bakhtri*, loc. *Bakhtraiyâ; Harauvati*, loc. *Haravatâiyâ*. Themes in *-u* took *v* as the characteristic of the locative instead of *y*," the masculines changing *-u* into *auva* (with a short final *ă*), and the feminines changing *-u* or *-au* into *-auvâ* (with the long *â*). Examples of masculines are *Babiru*, loc. *Babiravva; Margu*, loc. *Margauva;* of feminines, *dahyâu*, "a province," loc. *dahyauvâ; Ufratu*, "the Euphrates," loc. *Ufratauvâ.*

The nominative plural of roots in *-ă* seem to have been originally formed by changing *ă* into *âha* the proper Persian equivalent of the Vedic *-âsas*—and this ending is found in the plural of one word, viz. *baga*, "God," which makes nom. pl. *bagâha*. The termination *-âha* was, however, in most instances contracted into *-â;*[13] e.g. *martyâ*, "men;" *khshayathiyâ*, "kings," and the like. The nominative plural of roots in *-â*, *-i* and *-u* is unknown, the inscriptions furnishing no examples.

The sign of the genitive plural was the suffix *-nâm*[14] (compare the Latin *-rum*), which was preceded by *-â*, *i* (?) or *-u*, according to the characteristic vowel of the theme; e.g. *baga*, gen. pl. *bagânâm; khshayathiya*, gen. pl. *khshayathiyânâm; dahyâu*, gen. pl. *dahyunâm*. The accusative plural[15] of roots in *-a* and *-am* was the same as the nominative plural, e.g. *martiya*, "a man," acc. pl. *martiyâ*, "men;" *hamaranâm*, "a battle," acc. pl. *hamaranâ*, "battles."

No vocatives plural have been found. The ablative plural was formed by the addition of *-bish* or *-ibish* (compare the Latin *-ibus*[16] to the root of the word, as *baga*, *bagaibish; vith*, *vithibish; rauca*, *raucabish*, etc.

The sign of the locative plural was the suffix *-shuva*,[17] which in themes with the light *-ă* became *-ishuva*, as *Mada*, "a Mede," *Madaishuva*, "among the Medes."

The following are examples of the declensions so far as they are known to us:

Declension of Nouns ending in á.

	Sing.	*Plural.*
N.	Mada..... a Mede.	Madâ..... Medes.
G.	Madahyâ.. . ..... of a Mede.	Madâaam ..... of Medes.
Ac.	Madam..... a Mede	Madâ..... Medes.
V.	Madâ..... O Mede.	Madâ (?) ..... O Medes.
Abl.	Madâ..... by a Mede.	Madaibish..... by Medes.
Loc.	Madaiya..... with a Mede.	Madaishuva..... with the Medes.

Declension of Nouns masculine ending in â.

	Sing.	*Plural.*
N.	Auramazdâ.	Wanting.
G.	Auramazdâha.	
Ac.	Auramazdâm.	
V.	Auramazdâ.	
Abl.	Auramazdâ,	
Loc.	Auramazdayâ (?)	

Declension of Nouns feminine ending in â.

	Sing.	*Plural.*
N.	Taumâ..... a family.	Unknown.
G.	Taumâyâ..... of a family.	
Ac.	Taumân (?)... a family.	
V.	Taumâ..... O family.	
Abl.	Taumâyâ..... by a family.	
Loc.	Taumâyâ..... in a family.	

Declension of Nouns ending in i *and* ish.

	Sing.	*Plural.*
N.	Apish..... water.	Unknown.
G.	Apâish ..... of water.	
Ac.	Apim..... water.	
V.	Unknown, prob. Api.	
Abl.	Unknown.	
Loc.	Apiya..... in water.	

Declension of Nouns ending in ush.

	Sing.	*Plural.*
N.	Dahyâ-ush..... a province.	Dahyâ-va..... provinces.
G.	Dahyâ-âush (?) ... of a province.	Dahy-unâm..... of provinces.
Ac.	Dahyâ-um..... a province.	Dahyâ-va..... provinces.
V.	Unknown	Unknown.
Abl.	Unknown	Unknown.
Loc.	Dahyâ-uva..... in a province.	Dahy-ushuvâ..... in provinces.

Declension of Nouns neuter ending in am.

	Sing.	*Plural.*
N.	Hamaranam..... a battle.	Hamaranâ..... battles.
G.	Unknown.	Unknown.
Ac.	Hamaranam..... a battle.	Hamaranâ..... battles.
V.	Unknown.	Unknown.
Abl.	Unknown.	Unknown.
Loc.	Unknown.	Unknown.

ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives appear to have followed in all respects the inflections of nouns. They ended generally in the weak *-a;* but one theme in *-u* has been found (*paru*, "much"), and there may also have been themes in *-i*.

The following is an example of an ordinary adjective in *-a*. (Forms of the adjective not actually found are printed in italics.)

Sing.

	M.	F.	N.
N.	vazark-a.	vazark-â.	*vazark-am.*
G.	vazark-ahyâ.	vazark-âyâ.	(unknown).
Ac.	vazarg-am.	*vazark-âm.*	vazark-am.
V.	*vazark-â.*	(unknown).	(unknown).
Abl.	*vazark-â.*	*vazark-âyâ.*	(unknown).
Loc.	vazark-aiya.	*vazark-âyâ.*	(unknown).

Plural.

	M.	F.	N.
N.	vazark-â.	vazark-â.	*vazark-â.*
G.	*vazark-ânâm.*	vazark-ânâm.	(unknown).
Ac.	*vazark-â.*	vazark-â.	*vazark-â.*
V.	*vazark-â* (?).	(unknown).	(unknown).
Abl.	vazark-aibish.	(unknown).	(unknown).
Loc.	*vazark-aishuva.*	vazark-auva.	(unknown).

As in Sanscrit,[18] the comparative degree of adjectives seems to have been formed by adding *-tara* to the positive, e.g. *apa*, "distant," *apa-tara*, "the more distant;" the superlative by adding *-tama*, e.g. *fra*, *fra-tama*, "the first." There was also a superlative in *-ista* (compare the Greek *-ιστος*), which would seem to imply a comparative in *-iyas*.[19] The only known example of this superlative is *mathista*, "greatest."

NUMERALS.

The numerals are but little known to us, owing to the practice which prevailed of writing them by the means of signs. A single wedge, placed perpendicularly, marked one (𐏑); two such signs marked two, and so on up to nine; the sign of ten was the double wedge, or arrow head (𐏒), and this was used for the tens up to ninety. To mark a hundred the horizontal wedge was probably used (𐏓).

A few numerals only, and those, in every case, ordinals, have reached us through the inscriptions. They are *fratama*, "the first," *duvitiya*, "the second," *tritiya*, "the third," and *navama*, "the ninth."[20] *Fratama*, for which the Zend has *fratema*, combines the formative letters which we find separately in *πρῶτος* and *pri-mus*. Its root *fra* is cognate with *προ*. *Duvitiya* corresponds closely with *δεύτερος*, as *tritiya* does

with τρίτος and *tertius*. *Navama*, "ninth," implies a cardinal number, very closely resembling *novem*.

PRONOUNS.

The personal pronouns in Old Persian, as in most Indo-European tongues, were declined very irregularly—the different cases really belonging to completely distinct roots. The roots themselves are without exception such as occur in other cognate languages,[21] and approach very closely indeed to the forms used in the Zend, as will appear by the subjoined declensions.

Declension of âdam, "I."

	Sing.		*Plural.*	
	Old Persian.	Zend.	Old Persian.	Zend.
N.	âdam	azem.	vayam.....	vaem.
G.	manâ	mana.	amâkham.....	ahmâkem.
Ac.	mâm	mana.	(unknown).	
	-maiya (*encl.*).			
Abl.	ma (*encl.*).	....	(unknown).	

The pronoun of the second person is known to us only in the singular, in which it is declined as follows :—

Nom. Tuvam....."thou" (comp. Sans. *tvam* and Zend *tum*).
Gen. -taiya or -taya (*encl.*).
Acc. Thuvâm (compare Sans *tvám* and Zend *thwañm*).
Voc. Tuvam.

The ordinary pronoun of the third person is *hauva*, which is declined as follows :—

Sing.

	M.	F.	N.
N.	Hauva.	Hauva.	Ava.
G.	Avahyâ.	(Unknown.)	(Unknown.)
Ac.	Avam.	(Unknown.)	Ava.
	-shim (*enclitic*).		
Abl.	-shaiya (*encl.*).	(Unknown.)	(Unknown.)

Plural.

	M.	F.	N.
N.	Avaiya.	Avâ	(Unknown.)
G.	Avaishâm.	(Unknown.)	(Unknown.)
	-shâm (*encl.*).		
Ac.	Avaiya	(Unknown.)	(Unknown.)
	-shim, -shish (*encl.*).	-shim (*encl.*).	
Abl.	-âhâm (*encl.*).	-shâm (*encl*).	

Strictly speaking, *hauva* is the more remote demonstrative, equivalent to our "that;" but practically its use is personal.

There appear to have been originally three such demonstratives in the Old Persian, *hauva*, *ava*, and *shi* or *shish*, from the surviving cases of which the above declension is made up.

Hauva is probably identical with the Sanscrit *sas* (*sa*, *so*) and the Zend *hau* (*hô*).[22] *Ava* has no exact equivalent in Sanscrit or Zend: but its inflections have mostly their Zendic representatives—the gen. *avahyâ* corresponding to *avaghê*, the acc. *avam* to *aom*, the nom. masc. pl. *avaiya* to *avâ*, the nom. fem. pl. *avâ* to *avâo*, and the gen. pl. *avaishâm* to *avaêshâm*. The third element, *shi*, which has furnished the pronominal suffixes, *shish*, *shim*, *shâm*, and *shaiya*, corresponds to the Zend *hoi*, *hê*, and *shê*, which are used for the genitive and dative singular of the third person in all genders.[23]

The nearer demonstrative, "this," is expressed by *iyam*, which is declined as follows :—

Sing.

	M.	F.	N.
N.	Iyam.	Iyam.	Ima.
G.	(Unknown.)	Ahyâyâ.	(Unknown,)
Ac.	Imam.	Imâm.	Ima.
Abl. or *Instr.*	Anâ.	(Unknown.)	(Unknown.)

Plural.

	M.	F.	N.
N.	Imalya.	Imâ.	(Unknown.)
G.	(Unknown.)	(Unknown.)	(Unknown.)
Ac.	Imaiya.	Imâ.	Imâ.
Abl. or *Instr.*	(Unknown.)	(Unknown.)	(Unknown.)

Here again the agreement with the Zend, and also with the Sanscrit, is very complete.[24]

The relative, "who," "which," is rendered by *hya*. Its declension, so far as we can trace it out, is the following:—

Sing.

	M.	F.	N.
N.	Hya.	Hyâ.	Tya.
G.	(Unknown.)	(Unknown.)	(Unknown.)
Ac.	Tyam.	Tyâm.	Tya.
Voc.	Hyâ.	(Unknown.)	(Unknown.)
Abl.	Tyanâ.	(Unknown.)	(Unknown.)

Plural.

	M.	F.	N.
N.	Tyaiya.	Tyâ.	Tyâ.
G.	Tyaisâm.	Tyaisâm.	(Unknown.)
Ac.	Tyaiya.	Tyâ.	Tyâ.
Abl.	(Unknown.)	(Unknown.)	(Unknown.)

Other pronouns are *ka*, "who" (interrog.):[25] *aiša*, "it;" *aniya*, "another;" *uvá*, "self," "own" (compare Lat. *suus*), which is found only in composition; *kashchiya*, "any one" (compare Lat. *quisque*); *hama*, "all" (compare Lat. *omnis*); *haruva*, "all," etc.

VERBS.

The verb in old Persian had three voices, Active, Middle, and Passive; but of these the middle differed in form very slightly from the Passive. The moods recognized were the Indicative, the Imperative, the Subjunctive or Potential, and the Infinitive. The tenses seem to have been the present, the imperfect, the aorist, and the perfect. There was no future, the deficiency being supplied by the present subjunctive, which had a future force.

Of the verb substantive *amiya* (= sum), the conjugation, so far as we know it, is the following:

INDICATIVE.

Present.

Amiya.....	"I am."	Amahya.....	"we are."
Ahya	"Thou art."	(Unknown.)	
Astiya.....	"He is."	Hatiya[26]	"they are."

Imperfect.

Aham	"I was."	(Unknown.)	
(Unknown.)		(Unknown.)	
Aha.....	"He was."	Aha	"they are."

Imperfect Middle.

Ahata or Ahatâ..... "they became."

CONJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Ahatiya..... "He may be."

It is impossible to give anything like a complete example of the conjugation of a regular verb. The inscriptions are so similar in their character, and run so much in the same groove, that, while we have abundant examples of certain forms, the great majority of the forms are wanting. Suffice it to notice a few points in which the conjugation resembled the Greek or the Latin, or both, such as the following.

Past time was usually marked by prefixing an augment, the augment used being the long *á*, which was regularly attached to the imperfect and aorist tenses, as *jan*, imperf. *ájanam; thah*, imperf. *áthahaṁ; dâ*, imperf. *ádadâ;* aor. *ádâ*. The perfect tense, which occurs but rarely, seems to have had, instead of the augment, a reduplication; as *kar*, *chakhriyâ*.

The ordinary sign of the first person singular was *-mi* or *-m* (compare Greek, εἰμί τίθημι. Latin *sum*, *eram*, *sim*, *essem*, etc.); of the first person plural, *-maiya* or *mâ* (Latin, *-mus;* Æol. Greek, *-μες*); of the third person singular, *-sh* (Greek, *τιθησι*; English, "has," "is"); but this sign was commonly dropped; of the third person plural, *-tiya* or (according to Spiegel) *-ntiy* (compare Greek, *τύπτουσι*; Latin, "sunt").

The past participle ended in *-ta*, as *karta*, neut. *kartam*, "done;" *dâta*, "given," from *dâ;* *pâta*, "protected," from *pâ;* *basta*, "bound" from *bad*, etc. (Compare the Sanscrit and Latin past participles.)

ADVERBS.

Of adverbs, the most important are those of time and place. Among adverbs of time the old Persian had the following: *yathâ*, "when;" *thakatâ*, "then;" *pasâva*, "afterwards;" *aparam*, "hereafter;" *paruvam*, "before;" *daragam*, "long;" *duvaistam*, "long ago;" and *duvitatâranam*, "for a length of time." Among those of places were *idâ*, "here;" *avadâ*, "there;" *apataram*, "elsewhere;" and *amutha*, "thence."

The ordinary negative was *niya*," "not;" but besides this there was a negative of prohibition, *mâ*, corresponding exactly to the Greek *μη* and the Latin *ne*, in such phrases as *μη γένοιτο* *ne facias*, and the like.[28]

Among adverbs of quality may be mentioned *vasiya*, "much," "greatly," "often;" and *darsham*, "wholly," "entirely;" the former of which occurs very frequently in the inscriptions.

PREPOSITIONS.

Among prepositions the following have been satisfactorily identified: *hachâ*, "from;" *abiya*, *patiya*, "to;" *abish*, "by;" *ni*, "in;" *hadâ*, "with;" *upa*, "near;" *agasta*, "near" or "by;" *patish*, "before" (= Latin *coram*); *pasâ*, "behind," "after;" *pariya*, "concerning;" *atara*, "among;" *anuva*, "along;" *atiya*, "across;" *upariya*, "over," "above;" and *athiya*, "over against." Of these, *abiya* may be compared with the Greek *ἐπί*, *ni* with *ἐνί*, *pariya* with *περί*, *upariya* with Greek *ὑπέρ*, Latin *super*, *athiya* with *ἀντί*, *upa* with Latin *apud*, *pasa* with *post*, *agasta* with *juxta*, and *atara* with *inter*. *Hachâ*, *hadâ*, *patiya*, and *anuva*, have close correspondents in the Zend,[29] but none in languages with which the ordinary reader is familiar.

Two or three other prepositions, which are not found separately, are indicated by compound words, in which they occur as an element. Thus *hama-* seems to have had the sense of the Greek ἁμά or ὁμοῦ, and *tara* that of the Latin *trans*, with which they are etymologically connected. *Parâ* had also apparently the sense of "from" or "away."[31]

CONJUNCTIONS.

Of conjunctions the most common were *uta* and *-cha* (enclitic), "and;" which corresponded respectively to the Latin *et* and *que; va*, "or" (compare Latin *vel*); *avathâ*, "thus," "so" (compare Greek οὕτως); *yatha*, "as," its correlative; *tya*, "that;" *aivam*, "both—and" (used like the Latin *tum—tum*); *avâ*, "so long"—*yava*, "as;" *chitâ*, "all the while"—*yâtâ*, "until;" *yadiya*, "if;" and *matiya*, "lest" (compare the Greek μήτι).

SYNTAX.

The ordinary rules of Indo-European syntax were (as might be supposed) observed in the old Persian. Adjectives agreed with their substantives in gender, number, and case. Thus we have *kara Parsa* "the Persian people," in the nominative, but *karam Parsam uta Madam*, "the Persian and Median people," in the accusative; *imâm bumim*, "this earth" (accus.); *ahyayâ bumiyâ vazarkayâ*, "of this great earth" (gen.); *Baga vazarka*, "a great God" (nom.); *hadâ vithaibish Bagaibish*, "with the tutelary Gods" (abl.), etc. Relative pronouns agreed with their antecedents in number, gender, and person, but their case depended on the verb accompanying them: as *iyam dahyavush*, tyâm *manâ Auramazdâ frâbara*, "this province which Ormazd has given me"—*ima dahyâva*, tyâ *adam adarshiya*, "these provinces which I have possessed" *avam kâram*, hya *manâ niya gaubatiya*, "that people which is not called mine," etc.

The latter of two substantives was placed in the genitive case; as, *khshâyathiya khshayathiyanâm*, "king of kings"—*Vishtaspahyâ putra*, "son of Hystaspes," and the like. The genitive case also followed the superlative; as *mathishta Bagânâm* "the greatest of the Gods."

Verbs commonly governed the accusative, as *mâm khshâyathiyam akunaush*, "he made me king;" *khshatram hauva agarbayatâ*, "he seized the empire," etc. When the force of the verb passed on to a second object, that object was expressed by the genitive-dative case; as *Auramazdâ khshatram*

manâ frâbara, "Ormazd granted me the empire;" *manâ bajim abaratâ*, "they brought me tribute." Occasionally a verb governed a double accusative, as *khshatramshim adinam*, "I took the empire from him."

Prepositions generally governed the accusative or the ablative. The accusative followed *abiya*, "to," "after;" *athiya*, "over," "against," "near;" *atara*, "among;" *pariya* "concerning;" *patiya*, "to," "for;" *patish*, "in face of;" *upa*, "near;" and *upariya*, "over," "above." *Hadâ*, "with," and *hachâ*, "from," took the ablative. The locative followed *anuva*, "along," and perhaps sometimes *patiya* and *abish*.[32] *Pasâ*, "after," took a genitive.

Among the peculiarities of old Persian syntax may be mentioned the following: (1.) The pronouns had in certain cases an enclitic form, wherein they could be attached to almost any kind of word:[33] e.g. *Auramazdâ*-maiya *upastam abara*, "Oromasdes mihi opem tulit" –*adam*shim *avajanam*, "Ego eum occidi" *hachâma*, "a me" –*mâm Auramazdâ patuva*, *utâ*maiya *khshatram*, *utâ tya*maiya *kartam*, "Me Oromazdes protegat, et mihi imperium, et quod a me factum." (2.) Adjectives, instead of simply accompanying their substantives, were often joined to them by the relative pronoun *hya*, the relative being in such cases attracted into the case of the noun, e.g. *kâra* hya *hamitriya*, *kâram* tyam *Mâdam*, *pathim* tyam *raçtam*, etc. (3.) The genitive of the personal pronoun was usually employed in the place of a possessive pronoun: e.g. manâ *badaka* "meus servus" (lit. "*mei* servus"); amâkham *taumâ*, "nostra familia" (lit. "*nostrûm* familia"), etc. Sometimes a redundant relative accompanied these expressions: as, hyâ *amâkham taumâ*, "quæ nostrûm familia," *i.e.* "familia nostra." (4.) The substantive verb was most commonly omitted from a sentence,[34] as *Adam Kurush*, "Ego Cyrus"—*i.e.* "Ego *sum* Cyrus."

In conclusion, a passage is subjoined, accompanied by an interlinear Latin translation, whereby the close similarity of the syntactical construction, and order of the words, in the Latin and the Old Persian will be apparent.

Baga	*vazarka*	*Auramazdâ*,	*hya*	*imâm*	*bumim*	*adâ*,	*hya*	*avam*
Deus	magnus	Oromasdes,	qui	hanc	terram	dedit,	qui	istud
asmânam	*adâ*,	*hya*	*martiyam*	*adâ*,	*hya*	*shiyâtim*	*adâ*	*martiyahyâ*,
cœlum	dedit,	qui	hominem	dedit,	qui	felicitatem	dedit	homini,
hya	*Dâryavum*	*khshâyathiyam*		*akunaush*,	*aivam*		*paruvanâm*	
qui	Darium	regem		fecit,	tum		multorum	
khshâyathiyam,	*aivam*	*paruvanâm*		*framâtaram*.	*Adam*		*Dâryavush*	
regem,	tum	multorum		dominum.	Ego (sum)		Darius,	

khshâyathiya	*vazarka,*	*khshâyathiya*	*khshâyathiyânâm,*	*khshâyathiya*
rex	magnus,	rex	regum,	rex
dahyunâm	*vizpazanânâm,*	*khshâyathiya*	*ahyâyâ*	*bumiya*
provinciarum	a-multis-gentibus-habitatarum,	rex	hujus	terræ
vazarkâya	*darîâpiya.*	*Vishtâspahyâ*	*putra,*	*Hakhâmanishiya;*	*Pârsa,*
magnæ	latè-patentis,	Hystaspis	filius,	Achæmenius;	Persa,
Pârsahyâ	*putra,*	*Ariya,*	*Ariya chitra.*	*Thâtiya*	*Dâryavush*
Persæ	filius,	Arius,	ex Aria stirpe.	Dicit	Darius
khshâyathiya:	*Vashnâ*	*Auramazdâhâ*	*imâ*	*dahyâra*	*tyâ*	*adam*
rex:	Gratiâ	Oromazdis	hæ (sunt)	provinciæ	quas	ego
agarbâyam	*apataram*	*hachâ*	*Pârsâ.*	*Adamsham*	*patiyakhshaiya*	*Manâ*
obtinui	longiùs	a	Perside.	Ego illas	rexi.	Mihi
bajim	*abara.....ha.*	*Tyahsâm*	*hachâma*	*athahya,*	*ava*
tributum	tulerunt.....	Quod illis	à me	dictum est,	illud
akunava.	*Dâtam*	*tya*	*manâ,*	*aita*	*adâri.*
fecerunt.	Jussum	quod	à me,	id	servatum est.

WRITING.

The ordinary Persian writing was identical with that which has been described in the second volume of this work as Median. A cuneiform alphabet, consisting of some thirty-six or thirty-seven forms, expressive of twenty-three distinct sounds, sufficed for the wants of the people, whose language was simple and devoid of phonetic luxuriance. Writing was from left to right, as with the Arian nations generally. Words were separated from one another by an oblique wedge 𐏐 ; and were divided at any point at which the writer happened to reach the end of a line. Enclitics were joined without any break to the words which they accompanied.

The Persian writing which has come down to us is almost entirely upon stone. It comprises various rock tablets,[35] a number of inscriptions upon buildings,[36] and a few short legends upon vases[37] and cylinders.[38] It is in every case incised or cut into the material. The letters are of various sizes, some (as those at Elwend) reaching a length of about two inches, others (those, for instance, on the vases) not exceeding the sixth of an inch.[39] The inscriptions cover a space of at least a hundred and eighty years, commencing with Cyrus, and terminating with Artaxerxes Ochus, the successor of Mnemon. The style of the writing is, on the whole, remarkably uniform, the latter inscriptions containing only two characters unknown to the earlier times. Orthography, however, and grammar are in these later inscriptions greatly changed, the character of the

changes being indicative of corruption and decline, unless, indeed, we are to ascribe them to mere ignorance on the part of the engravers.[4]

There can be little doubt that, besides the cuneiform character, which was only suited for inscriptions, the Persians employed a cursive writing for common literary purposes.[41] Ctesias informs us that the royal archives were written on parchment;[42] and there is abundant evidence that writing was an art perfectly familiar to the educated Persian.[43] It might have been supposed that the Pehlevi, as the lineal descendant of the Old Persian language, would have furnished valuable assistance towards solving the question of what character the Persians employed commonly: but the alphabetic type of the Pehlevi inscriptions is evidently Semitic; and it would thus seem that the old national modes of writing had been completely lost before the establishment by Ardeshir, son of Babek, of the new Persian Empire.[44]

CHAPTER V.

ARCHITECTURE AND OTHER ARTS.

Ἱδρυτο [ὁ μέγας βασιλεὺς] ἐν Σούσοις ἢ Ἐκβατάνοις . . . θαυμαστὸν ὑπέρχων βασίλειον οἶκον, καὶ περίβολον, χρυσῷ καὶ ἠλέκτρῳ καὶ ἐλέφαντι ἀστράπτοντα· πυλῶνές τε πολλοὶ καὶ συνεχεῖς, πρόθυρά τε συχνοῖς εἰργόμενα σταδίοις ἀπ' ἀλλήλων, θύραις τε χαλκαῖς καὶ τείχεσι μεγαλοῖς ὠχύρωτο.—De Mundo, vi. p. 637.

If in the old world the fame of the Persians, as builders and artists, fell on the whole below that of the Assyrians and Babylonians—their instructors in art, no less than in letters and science—it was not so much that they had not produced works worthy of comparison with those which adorned Babylon and Nineveh, as that, boasting less antiquity and less originality than those primitive races, they did not strike in the same way the imagination of the lively Greeks, who moreover could not but feel a certain jealousy of artistic successes, which had rewarded the efforts of a living and rival people. It happened, moreover, that the Persian masterpieces were less accessible to the Greeks than the Babylonian, and hence there was actually less knowledge of their real character in the time when Greek literature was at its best. Herodotus

and Xenophon, who impressed on their countrymen true ideas of the grandeur and magnificence of the Mesopotamian structures,[1] never penetrated to Persia Proper, and perhaps never beheld a real Persian building.[2] Ctesias, it is true, as a resident at the Achæmenian Court for seventeen years,[3] must certainly have seen Susa and Ecbatana, if not even Persepolis, and he therefore must have been well acquainted with the character of Persian palaces; but, so far as appears from the fragments of his work which have come down to us, he said but little on the subject of these edifices. It was not until Alexander led his cohorts across the chain of Zagros to the high plateau beyond, that a proper estimate of the great Persian buildings could be made; and then the most magnificent of them all was scarcely seen before it was laid in ruins.[4] The barbarous act of the great Macedonian conqueror, in committing the palace of Persepolis to the flames, tended to prevent a full recognition of the real greatness of Persian art even after the Greeks had occupied the country; but we find from this time a certain amount of acknowledgment of its merits—a certain number of passages, which, like that which forms the heading to this chapter, admit alike its grandeur and its magnificence.[5]

If, however, the ancients did less than justice to the efforts of the Persians in architecture, sculpture, and the kindred arts, moderns have, on the contrary, given them rather an undue prominence. From the middle of the seventeenth century, when Europeans first began freely to penetrate the East, the Persian ruins, especially those of Persepolis, drew the marked attention of travellers; and in times when the site of Babylon had attracted but scanty notice, and that of Nineveh and the other great Assyrian cities was almost unknown, English, French, and German *savans* measured, described, and figured the Persian remains with a copiousness and exactness that left little to desire. Chardin, the elder Niebuhr, Le Brun, Ouseley, Ker Porter,[6] exerted themselves with the most praiseworthy zeal to represent fully and faithfully the marvels of the "Chehl Minar;" and these persevering efforts were followed within no very lengthy period by the splendid and exhaustive works of the Baron Texier[7] and of MM. Flandin and Coste.[8] Persepolis rose again from its ashes in the superb and costly volumes of these latter writers, who represented on the grandest scale, and in the most finished way, not only the actual but the ideal—not only the present but the past—

placing before our eyes at once the fullest and completest views of the existing ruins, and also restorations of the ancient structures, some of them warm with color and gilding,[1] which, though to a certain extent imaginary, probably give to a modern the best notion that it is now possible to form of an old Persian edifice.

It is impossible within the limits of the present work, and with the resources at the author's command, to attempt a complete description of the Persian remains, or to vie with writers who had at their disposal all the modern means of illustration. By the liberality of a well-known authority on architecture,[2] he is able to present his readers with certain general views of the most important structures; and he also enjoys the advantage of illustrating some of the most curious of the details with engravings from a set of photographs recently taken. These last have, it is believed, an accuracy beyond that of any drawings hitherto made, and will give a better idea than words could possibly do of the merit of the sculptures. With these helps, and with the addition of reduced copies from some of MM. Flandin and Coste's plates, the author hopes to be able to make his account fairly intelligible, and to give his readers the opportunity of forming a tolerably correct judgment on the merit of the Persian art in comparison with that of Babylon and Assyria.

Persian architectural art displayed itself especially in two forms of building—the palace and the tomb. Temples were not perhaps unknown in Persia,[3] though much of the worship may always have been in the open air; but temples, at least until the time of Artaxerxes Mnemon,[4] were insignificant, and neither attracted the attention of contemporaries, nor were of such a character as to leave traces of themselves to after times. The palaces[5] of the Persian kings, on the other hand, and the sepulchres which they prepared for themselves,[6] are noticed by many ancient writers as objects of interest; and, notwithstanding certain doubts which have been raised in recent years,[7] it seems tolerably certain that they are to be recognized in the two chief classes of ancient ruins which still exist in the country.

The Persian palatial buildings, of which traces remain, are four in number. One was situated at Ecbatana, the Median capital, and was a sort of adjunct to the old residence of the Median kings.[8] Of this only a very few vestiges have been hitherto found; and we can merely say that it appears to have

been of the same general character with the edifices which will be hereafter described. Another was built by Darius and his son Xerxes on the great mound of Susa: and of this we have the ground-plan, in a great measure, and various interesting details.[17] A third stood within the walls of the city of Persepolis,[18] but of this not much more is left than of the construction at Ecbatana. Finally, there was in the neighborhood of Persepolis, but completely distinct from the town, the Great Palace, which, as the chief residence, at any rate of the later kings, Alexander burnt, and of which the remains still to be seen are ample, constituting "by far the most remarkable group of buildings now existing in this part of Asia."[19]

It is to this last edifice, or group of edifices, that the reader's attention will be specially directed in the following pages. Here the greatest of the Persian monarchs seem to have built the greatest of their works. Here the ravages of time and barbarism, sadly injurious as they may have been, have had least effect. Here, moreover, modern research has spent its chief efforts, excavations having been made, measurements effected, and ground-plans laid down with accuracy. In describing the Persepolitan buildings we have aids which mostly fail us elsewhere—charts, plans, drawings in extraordinary abundance and often of high artistic value, elaborate descriptions, even photographs. [Pl. XXXVIII., Fig. 3.] If the describer has still a task of some difficulty to perform, it is because an overplus of material is apt to cause almost as much embarrassment as too poor and scanty a supply.

The buildings at Persepolis are placed upon a vast platform. It was the practice of the Persians, as of the Assyrians and Babylonians,[20] to elevate their palaces in this way. They thus made them at once more striking to the eye, more dignified, and more easy to guard. In Babylonia an elevated habitation was also more healthy and more pleasant, being raised above the reach of many insects, and laid open to the winds of heaven, never too boisterous in that climate. Perhaps the Assyrians and Persians in their continued use of the custom, to some extent followed a fashion, elevating their royal residences, not so much for security or comfort, as because it had come to be considered that a palace *ought* to have a lofty site, and to look down on the habitations of meaner men; but, however this may have been, the custom certainly prevailed, and at Persepolis we have, in an almost perfect condition, this first element of a Persian palace. [Pl. XXXIX.]

The platform at Persepolis is built at the foot of a high range of rocky hills, on which it abuts towards the east. It is composed of solid masses of hewn stone,[21] which were united by metal clamps, probably of iron or lead.[22] The masses were not cut to a uniform size, nor even always to a right angle, but were fitted together with a certain amount of irregularity, which will be the best understood from the woodcut overleaf. Many of the blocks were of enormous size;[23] and their quarrying, transport, and elevation to their present places, imply very considerable mechanical skill. They were laid so as to form a perfectly smooth perpendicular wall, the least height of which above the plain below is twenty feet.[24] The outline of the platform was somewhat irregular. Speaking roughly, we may call it an oblong square, with a breadth about two thirds of its length:[25] but this description, unless qualified, will give an idea of far greater uniformity than actually prevails. [Pl. XL., Fig. 1.] The most serious irregularity is on the north side, the general line of which is not parallel to the south side, nor at right angles with the western one,[26] but forms with the general line of the western an angle of about eighty degrees. The cause of this deviation lay probably in the fact that, on this side, a low rocky spur ran out from the mountain-range in this direction,[27] and that it was thought desirable to accommodate the line of the structure to the natural irregularities of the ground. In addition to the irregularity of general outline thus produced, there is another of such perpetual occurrence that it must be regarded as an essential element of the original design, and therefore probably as approving itself to the artistic notions of the builder. This is the occurrence of frequent angular projections and indentations, which we remark on all three sides of the platform equally, and which would therefore seem to have been regarded in Persia, no less than in Assyria,[28] as ornamental.[29]

The whole of the platform is not of a uniform height. On the contrary, it seems to have been composed, as originally built, of several quite distinct terraces. Three of these still remain, exhibiting towards the west a very marked difference of elevation. The lowest of the three is on the south side, and it may therefore be termed the Southern Terrace. It extends from east to west a distance of about 800 feet, with a width of about 170 or 180, and has an elevation above the plain of from twenty to twenty-three feet.[30] Opposite to this, on the northern side of the platform, is a second terrace, more than three times the breadth of the southern one, which may be called, by

way of distinction, the Northern Terrace. This has an elevation above the plain of thirty-five feet.[30] Intermediate between these two is the great Central or Upper Terrace, standing forty-five feet above the plain, having a length of 770 feet along the west face of the platform, and a width of about 400.[32] Upon this Upper Terrace were situated almost all the great and important buildings.

The erection of a royal residence on a platform composed of several terraces involved the necessity of artificial ascents, which the Persian architects managed by means of broad and solid staircases.[33] These staircases constitute one of the most remarkable features of the place, and seem to deserve careful and exact description. [Pl. XL., Fig. 2.]

The first, and grandest in respect of scale, is on the west front of the platform towards its northern end, and leads up from the plain to the summit of the northern terrace, furnishing the only means by which the platform can even now be ascended. It consists of two distinct sets of steps, each composed of two flights, with a broad landing-place between them, the steps themselves running at right angles to the platform wall, and the two lower flights diverging, while the two upper ones converge to a common landing-place on the top. The slope of the stairs is so gentle that, though each step has a convenient width, the height of a step is in no case more than from three to four inches. It is thus easy to ride horses both up and down the staircase, and travellers are constantly in the habit of ascending and descending it in this way.[34]

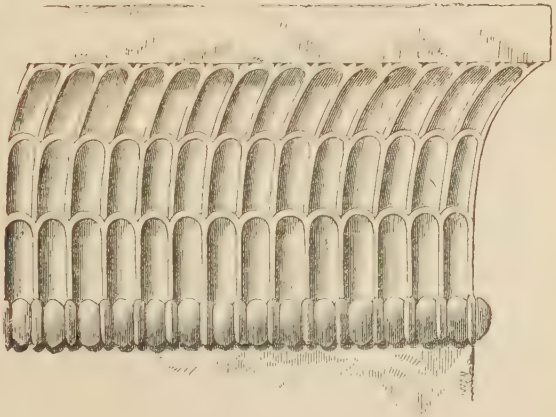
The width of the staircase is twenty-two feet—space sufficient to allow of ten horsemen ascending each flight of steps abreast.[35] Altogether this ascent, which is on a plan unknown elsewhere, is pronounced to be "the noblest example of a flight of stairs to be found in any part of the world."[36] It does not project beyond the line of the platform whereto it leads, but is, as it were, taken out of it. [Pl. XLII.]

The next, and in some respects the most remarkable of all the staircases, conducts from the level of the northern platform to that of the central or upper terrace. This staircase fronts northward, and opens on the view as soon as the first staircase (*A* on the plan) has been ascended, lying to the right of the spectator at the distance of about fifty or sixty yards. It consists of four single flights of steps, two of which are central, facing one another, and leading to a projecting landing-place (*B*), about twenty feet in width; while the two others are on

Fig. 1.

Great Propylæa of Xerxes (from a photograph).

Fig. 2.



Ornament over Windows, Persepolis.

Fig. 1

Fig. 3. Gateway to Hall of a Hundred Columns (from a Photograph).

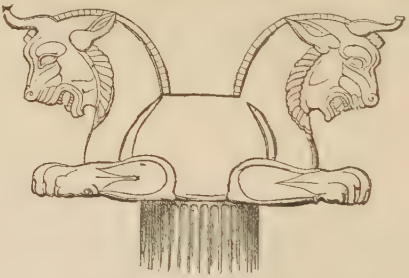
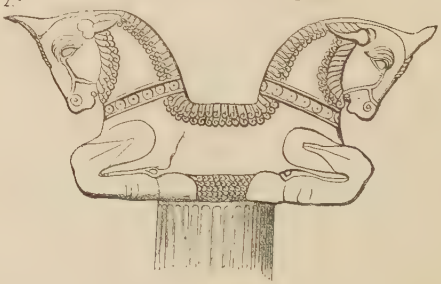


Fig. 2. Double Griffin Capital, Persepolis.



Double Bull Capital, Persepolis.

either side of the central flights, distant from them about twenty-one yards. The entire length of this staircase is 212 feet; its greatest projection in front of the line of the terrace whereon it abuts, is thirty-six feet.[37] The steps, which are sixteen feet wide, rise in the same gentle way as those of the lower or platform staircase. The height of each is under four inches; and thus there are thirty-one steps in an ascent of ten feet.[38]

The feature which specially distinguishes this staircase from the lower one already described is its elaborate ornamentation. The platform staircase is perfectly plain. The entire face which this staircase presents to the spectator is covered with sculptures. In the first place, on the central projection, which is divided perpendicularly into three compartments, are represented, in the spandrels on either side, a lion devouring a bull, and in the compartment between the spandrels eight colossal Persian guardsmen,[39] armed with spears and either with sword or shield. Further, above the lion and bull, towards the edge of the spandrel where it slopes, forming a parapet to the steps, [Pl. XLIII., Fig. 1.] there was a row of cypress trees, while at the end of the parapet and along the whole of its inner face were a set of small figures, guardsmen habited like those in the central compartment, but carrying mostly a bow and quiver instead of a shield. Along the extreme edge of the parapet externally was a narrow border thickly set with rosettes. [Pl. XLIII., Fig. 2.] Next, in the long spaces between the central stairs and those on either side of them, the spandrels contain repetitions of the lion and bull sculpture, while between them and the central stairs the face of the wall is divided horizontally into three bands, each of which has been ornamented with a continuous row of figures. The highest row of the three is unfortunately mutilated, the upper portion of all the bodies being lost in consequence of their having been sculptured upon a parapet wall built originally to protect the edge of the terrace, but now fallen away.[40] The middle and lowest rows are tolerably perfect, and possess considerable interest, as well as some artistic merit. The entire scene represented on the right side seems to be the bringing of tribute or presents to the monarch by the various nations under his sway. On the left-hand side this subject was continued to a certain extent: but the greater part of the space was occupied by representations of guards and officers of the court, the guards being placed towards the centre, and, as it were, keeping the main stairs, while

the officers were at a greater distance. The three rows of figures were separated from one another by narrow bands, thickly set with rosettes.[41]

The builder of this magnificent work was not content to leave it to history or tradition to connect his name with his construction, but determined to make the work itself the means of perpetuating his memory. In three conspicuous parts of the staircase, slabs were left clear of sculpture, undoubtedly to receive inscriptions commemorative of the founder. The places selected were the front of the middle staircase, the exact centre of the whole work, and the space adjoining the spandrels to the extreme right and the extreme left. In one instance alone, however, was this part of the work completed. On the right hand, or western extremity of the staircase,[42] an inscription of thirty lines in the old Persian language informs us that the constructor was "Xerxes, the Great King, the King of Kings, the son of King Darius, the Achæmenian." The central and left-hand tablets, intended probably for Babylonian and Scythic translations of the Persian legend, were never inscribed, and remain blank to the present day.

The remaining staircases will not require very lengthy or elaborate descriptions. They are six in number, and consist, in most instances, of a double flight of steps, similar to the central portion of the staircase which has been just described. Two of them (*e* and *f*) belonged to the building marked as the "Palace of Darius" on the plan, and gave entrance to it from the central platform above which it is elevated about fourteen or fifteen feet. Two others (*c* and *d*) belonged to the "Palace of Xerxes." These led up to a broad paved space in front of that building, which formed a terrace, elevated about ten feet above the general level of the central platform. Their position was at the two ends of the terrace, opposite to one another; but in other respects they cannot be said to have matched. The eastern, which consisted of two double flights,[43] was similar in general arrangement to the staircase by which the platform was mounted from the plain, excepting that it was not recessed, but projected its full breadth beyond the line of the terrace. It was decidedly the more elegant of the two, and evidently formed the main approach. It was adorned with the usual bull and lion combats, with figures of guardsmen,[44] and with attendants carrying articles needed for the table or the toilet.[45] The inscriptions upon it declare it to be the work of Xerxes. [Pl. XLIV.] The western staircase was composed

merely of two single flights, facing one another, with a narrow landing-place between them. It was ornamented like the eastern, but somewhat less elaborately.[46]

A staircase, very similar to this last, but still one with certain peculiarities, was built by Artaxerxes Ochus, at the west side of the Palace of Darius, in order to give it a second entrance. [Pl. XLV., Fig. 1.] There the spandrels have the usual figures of the lion and bull: but the intermediate space is somewhat unusually arranged. It is divided vertically and horizontally into eight squared compartments, three on either side, and two in the middle.[47] The upper of these two contains nothing but a winged circle, the emblem of Divinity being thus placed reverently by itself. Below, in a compartment of double size, is an inscription of Ochus, barbarous in language, but very religious in tone.[48] The six remaining compartments had each four figures, representing tribute-bearers introduced to the royal presence by a court officer.

The other, and original, staircase to this palace (*f* on the plan) was towards the north, and led up to the great portico, which was anciently its sole entrance. Two flights of steps, facing each other, conducted to a paved space of equal extent with the portico and projecting in front of it about five feet. On the base of the staircase were sculptures in a single line—the lion and bull in either spandrel—and between the spandrels eighteen colossal guardsmen, nine facing either way towards a central inscription, which was repeated in other languages on slabs placed between the guardsmen and the bulls. Above the spandrels, on the parapet which fenced the stairs, was a line of figures representing attendants bringing into the palace materials for the banquet. A similar line adorned the inner wall of the staircase.[49]

Opposite to this, at the distance of about thirty-two yards, was another very similar staircase, leading up to the portico of another building, erected (apparently) by Artaxerxes Ochus,[50] which occupied the south-western corner of the upper platform. The sculptures here seem to have been of the usual character but they are so mutilated that no very decided opinion can be passed upon them.

Last of all, a staircase of a very peculiar character, (*h* on the plan) requires notice. This is a flight of steps cut in the solid rock,[51] which leads up from the southern terrace to the upper one, at a point intervening between the south-western edifice, or palace of Artaxerxes, and the palace of Xerxes, or

central southern edifice. These steps are singular in facing the terrace to which they lead, instead of being placed sideways to it. They are of rude construction, being without a parapet, and wholly devoid of sculpture or other ornamentation. They furnish the only communication between the southern and central terraces.

It is a peculiarity of the Persepolitan ruins that they are not continuous, but present to the modern inquirer the appearance, at any rate, of a number of distinct buildings. Of these the platform altogether contains ten, five of which are of large size, while the remainder are comparatively insignificant.

Of the five large buildings four stand upon the central or upper terrace, while one lies east of that terrace, between it and the mountains. The four upon the central terrace comprise three buildings made up of several sets of chambers, together with one great open pillared hall, to which are attached no subordinate apartments. The three complex edifices will be here termed "palaces," and will take the names of their respective founders, Darius, Xerxes, and Artaxerxes Ochus: the fourth will be called the "Great Hall of Audience." The building between the upper terrace and the mountains will be termed the "Great Eastern Edifice."

The "Palace of Darius," which is one of the most interesting of the Persepolitan buildings, stands near the western edge of the platform, midway between the "Great Hall of Audience" and the "Palace of Artaxerxes Ochus." [Pl. XLVI., Fig. 1.] It is a building about one hundred and thirty-five feet in length, and in breadth a little short of a hundred.[52] Of all the existing buildings on the platform it occupies the most exalted position, being elevated from fourteen to fifteen feet above the general level of the central terrace, and being thus four or five feet higher than the "Palace of Xerxes."[53] It fronted towards the south, where it was approached by a double staircase of the usual character, which led up to a deep portico[54] of eight pillars arranged in two rows. On either side of the portico were guard-rooms, which opened upon it,[55] in length twenty-three feet, and in breadth thirteen.[56] Behind the portico lay the main chamber, which was a square of fifty feet,[57] having a roof supported by sixteen pillars, arranged in four rows of four, in line with the pillars of the portico. [Pl. XLV., Fig. 2.] The bases for the pillars alone remain; and it is thus uncertain whether their material was stone or wood. They were probably light and slender, not greatly interrupting the view. The

hall was surrounded on all sides by walls from four to five feet in thickness, in which were doors, windows, and recesses, symmetrically arranged. The entrance from the portico was by a door in the exact centre of the front wall, on either side of which were two windows, looking into the portico. The opposite, or back, wall was pierced by two doors, which faced the intercolumniations of the side rows of pillars, as the front door faced the intercolumniation of the central rows. Between the two doors which pierced the back wall was a squared recess, and similar recesses ornamented the same wall on either side of the doors. The side walls were each pierced originally by a single doorway,[57] between which and the front wall was a squared recess, while beyond, between the doorways and the back wall, were two recesses of the same character. Curiously enough, these side doorways and recesses fronted the pillars, not the intercolumniations.

No sculpture, so far as appears, adorned this apartment, excepting in the doorways, which however had in every case this kind of ornamentation. The doorways in the back wall exhibited on their jambs figures of the king followed by two attendants, one holding a cloth, and the other a fly-chaser.[59] [Pl. XLV., Fig. 3.] These figures had in every case their faces turned towards the apartment. The front doorway showed on its jambs the monarch followed by the parasol-bearer and the bearer of the fly-chaser, with his back turned to the apartment, issuing forth, as it were, from it.[60] On the jambs of the doors of the side apartments was represented the king in combat with a lion or a monster, the king here in every case facing outwards, and seeming to guard the entrances to the side chambers.[61]

At the back of the hall, and at either side, were chambers of very moderate dimensions. The largest were to the rear of the building, where there seems to have been one about forty feet by twenty-three, and another twenty-eight feet by twenty. The doorways here had sculptures, representing attendants bearing napkins and perfumes.[62] The side chambers, five in number, were considerably smaller than those behind the great hall, the largest not exceeding thirty-four feet by thirteen.

It seems probable that this palace was without any second story.[63] There is no vestige in any part of it of a staircase—no indication of its height having ever exceeded from twenty-two to twenty-five feet.[64] It was a modest building, simple and regular, covering less than half the space of an ordinary

palace in Assyria.[65] [Pl. XLV., Fig. 2.] Externally, it must have presented an appearance not very dissimilar to that of the simpler Greek temples; distinguished from them by peculiarities of ornamentation, but by no striking or important feature, excepting the grand and elaborately sculptured staircase. Internally, it was remarkable for the small number of its apartments, which seem not to have been more than twelve or thirteen,[66] and for the moderate size of most of them. Even the grand central hall covered a less area than three out of the five halls in the country palace of Sargon.[67] The effect of this room was probably fine, though it must have been somewhat over-crowded with pillars.[68] If these were, however (as is probable[69]), light wooden posts, plated with silver or with gold, and if the ceiling consisted (as it most likely did) of beams, crossing each other at right angles, with square spaces between them, all likewise coated with the precious metals;[70] if moreover the cold stone walls, excepting where they were broken by a doorway, or a window, were similarly decked;[71] if curtains of brilliant hues hung across the entrances;[72] if the pavement was of many-colored stones,[73] and in places covered with magnificent carpets;[74] if an elevated golden throne, under a canopy of purple,[75] adorned the upper end of the room, standing against the wall midway between the two doors—if this were in truth the arrangement and ornamentation of the apartment, we can well understand that the *coup d'œil* must have been effective, and the impression made on the spectator highly pleasing. A room fifty feet square, and not much more than twenty high, could not be very grand; but elegance of form, combined with richness of material and splendor of coloring, may have more than compensated for the want of that grandeur which results from mere size.

If it be inquired how a palace of the dimensions described can have sufficed even for one of the *early* Persian kings, the reply must seemingly be that the building in question can only have contained the public apartments of the royal residence—the throne-room, banqueting-rooms, guard-rooms, etc., —and that it must have been supplemented by at least one other edifice of a considerable size, the Gynæceum or "House of the Women."[76] There is ample room on the platform for such a building, either towards the east, where the ground is now occupied by a high mound of rubbish, or on the west, towards the edge of the platform, where traces of a large

edifice were noted by Niebuhr.[77] On the whole, this latter situation seems to be the more probable: and the position of the Gynæceum in this quarter may account for the alteration made by Artaxerxes Ochus in the palace of Darius, which now seriously interferes with its symmetry. Artaxerxes cut a doorway in the outer western wall, and another opposite to it in the western wall of the great hall, adding at the same time a second staircase to the building, which thus became accessible from the west no less than from the south. It has puzzled the learned in architecture to assign a motive for this alteration.[78] May we not find an adequate one in the desire to obtain a ready and comparatively private access to the Gynæceum, which must have been somewhere on the platform, and which may well have lain in this direction?

The minute account which has been now given of this palace will render unnecessary a very elaborate description of the remainder. Two grand palatial edifices seem to have been erected on the platform by later kings—one by Xerxes and the other by Artaxerxes Ochus; but the latter of these is in so ruined a condition,[79] and the former is so like the palace of Darius, that but few remarks need be made upon either. The palace of Xerxes is simply that of Darius on a larger scale, the pillars in the portico being increased from two rows of four to two rows of six, and the great hall behind being a square of eighty[80] instead of a square of fifty feet, with thirty-six instead of sixteen pillars to support its roof. On either side of the hall, and on either side of the portico, were apartments like those already described as abutting on the same portions of the older palace,[81] differing from them chiefly in being larger and more numerous. The two largest, which were thirty-one feet square,[82] had roofs supported on pillars, the numbers of such supports being in each case four.[83] The only striking difference in the plans of the two buildings consisted in the absence from the palace of Xerxes of any apartments to the rear of the great hall. In order to allow space for an ample terrace in front, the whole edifice was thrown back so close to the edge of the upper platform that no room was left for any chambers at the back, since the hall itself was here brought almost to the very verge of the sheer descent from the central to the low southern terrace.[84] In ornamentation the palaces also very closely resembled each other, the chief difference being that the combats of the king with lions and mythological monsters, which form the regular orna-

mentation of the side-chambers in the palace of Darius, occur nowhere in the residence of his son, where they are replaced by figures of attendants bringing articles for the toilet or the table,[55] like those which adorn the main staircase of the older edifice. Figures of the same kind also ornament all the windows in the palace of Xerxes. A tone of mere sensual enjoyment is thus given to the later edifice, which is very far from characterizing the earlier; and the decline of morals at the Court, which history indicates as rapid about this period, is seen to have stamped itself, as such changes usually do, upon the national architecture.

A small building, at the distance of about twenty or twenty-five yards from the eastern wall of the palace of Xerxes,[56] possesses a peculiar interest, in consequence of its having some claims to be considered the most ancient structure upon the platform.[57] It consists of a hall and portico, in size, proportions, and decoration almost exactly resembling the corresponding parts of Darius's palace, but unaccompanied by any trace of circumjacent chambers, and totally devoid of inscriptions.[58] The building is low, on the level of the northern, rather than on that of the central terrace, and is indeed half buried in the rubbish which has accumulated at its base. Its fragments are peculiarly grand and massive, while its sculptures are in strong and bold relief. There can be little doubt but that it was originally, like the hall and portico of Darius, surrounded on three sides by chambers. These, however, have entirely disappeared, having probably been pulled down to furnish materials for more recent edifices. Like the palaces of Xerxes and Artaxerxes Ochus, and unlike the palace of Darius, the building faces to the north, which is the direction naturally preferred in such a climate. We may suppose it to have been the royal residence of the earlier times, the erection of Cyrus or Cambyses, and to have been intended especially for summer use, for which its position well fitted it. Darius, wishing for a winter palace at Persepolis, as well as a summer one, took probably this early palace for his model, and built one as nearly as possible resembling it,[59] except that, for the sake of greater warmth, he made his new erection face southwards. Xerxes, dissatisfied with the size of the old summer palace, built a new one at its side of considerably larger dimensions, using perhaps some of the materials of the old palace in his new building. Finally, Artaxerxes Ochus made certain additions to the palace of Xerxes on its western side, and at

the same time added a staircase and a doorway to the winter residence of Darius. Thus the Persepolitan palace, using the word in its proper sense of royal *residence*, attained its full dimensions, occupying the southern half of the great central platform, and covering with its various courts and buildings a space 500 feet long by 375 feet wide, or nearly the space covered by the less ambitious of the palaces of Assyria.[90]

Besides edifices adapted for habitation, the Persepolitan platform sustained two other classes of buildings. These were propylæa, or gateways—places commanding the approach to great buildings, where a guard might be stationed to stop and examine all comers—and halls of a vast size, which were probably throne-rooms, where the monarch held his court on grand occasions, to exhibit himself in full state to his subjects. The propylæa upon the platform appear to have been four in number. One, the largest, was directly opposite the centre of the landing-place at the top of the great stairs which gave access to the platform from the plain. This consisted of a noble apartment, eighty-two feet square,[91] with a roof supported by four magnificent columns, each between fifty and sixty feet high.[92] The walls of the apartment were from sixteen to seventeen feet thick.[93] Two grand portals, each twelve feet wide by thirty-six feet high,[94] led into this apartment, one directly facing the head of the stairs, and the other opposite to it, towards the east. Both were flanked with colossal bulls, those towards the staircase being conventional representations of the real animal, while the opposite pair are almost exact reproductions of the winged and human-headed bulls, with which the Assyrian discoveries have made us so familiar.[95] The accompanying illustration [Pl. XLVII., Fig. 1.], which is taken from a photograph, exhibits this inner pair in their present condition. The back of one of the other pair is also visible. Two of the pillars—which alone are still standing—appear in their places, intervening between the front and the back gateway.

The walls which enclosed this chamber, notwithstanding their immense thickness, have almost entirely disappeared.[96] On the southern side alone, where there seems to have been a third doorway, unornamented, are there any traces of them. We must conclude that they were either of burnt brick or of small blocks of stone, which the natives of the country in later times found it convenient to use as material for their own buildings.

An edifice, almost exactly similar to this, but of very inferior dimensions,[97] occupied a position due east of the palace of Darius, and a little to the north of the main staircase leading to the terrace in front of the palace of Xerxes. The bases of two pillars and the jambs of three doorways remain, from which it is easy to reconstruct the main building.[98] Its position seems to mark it as designed to give entrance to the structure, whatever it was, which occupied the site of the great mound (*M* on the Plan) east of Darius's palace, and north of the palace of his son.[99] The ornamentation, however,[100] would rather connect it with the more eastern of the two great pillared halls, which will have to be described presently.

A third edifice of the same kind stood in front of the great eastern hall, at the distance of about seventy yards from its portico. This building is more utterly ruined than either of the preceding,[101] and its dimensions are open to some doubt. On the whole, it seems probable that it resembled the great propylæa at the head of the stairs leading from the plain rather than the central propylæa just described. Part of its ornamentation was certainly a colossal bull, though whether human-headed or not cannot be determined.

The fourth of the propylæa was on the terrace whereon stood the palace of Xerxes, and directly fronting the landing-place at the head of its principal stairs, just as the propylæa first described fronted the great stairs leading up from the plain. Its dimensions were suited to those of the staircase which led to it, and of the terrace on which it was placed. It was less than one fourth the size of the great propylæa, and about half that of the propylæa which stood the nearest to it. The bases of the four pillars alone remain *in situ*;[102] but, from the proportions thus obtained, the position of the walls and doorways is tolerably certain.[103]

We have now to pass to the most magnificent of the Persepolitan buildings—the Great Pillared Halls—which constitute the glory of Arian architecture, and which, even in their ruins, provoke the wonder and admiration of modern Europeans, familiar with all the triumphs of Western art, with Grecian temples, Roman baths and amphitheatres, Moorish palaces, Turkish mosques, and Christian cathedrals.[104] Of these pillared halls, the Persepolitan platform supports two, slightly differing in their design, but presenting many points of agreement. They bear the character of an earlier and a

later building—a first effort in the direction which circumstances compelled the architecture of the Persians to take, and the final achievement of their best artists in this kind of building.

Nearly midway in the platform between its northern and its southern edges, and not very far from the boundary of rocky mountain on which the platform abuts towards the east, is the vast edifice which has been called with good reason the "Hall of a Hundred Columns,"[194] since its roof was in all probability supported by that number of pillars. This building consisted of a single magnificent chamber, with a portico, and probably guard-rooms, in front, of dimensions quite unequalled upon the platform. The portico was 183 feet long by 52 feet deep, and was sustained by sixteen pillars, about 35 feet high,[195] arranged in two rows of eight. The great chamber behind was a square of 227 feet,[196] and had therefore an area of about 51,000 feet. Over this vast space were distributed, at equal distances from one another, one hundred columns, each 35 feet high, arranged in ten rows of ten each, every pillar thus standing at a distance of nearly 20 feet from any other. The four walls which enclosed this great hall had a uniform thickness of 10½ feet,[197] and were each pierced at equal intervals by two doorways, the doorways being thus exactly opposite to one another, and each looking down an avenue of columns. In the spaces of wall on either side of the doorways, eastward, westward, and southward, were three niches, all square-topped, and bearing the ornamentation which is universal in the case of all niches, windows, and doorways in the Persepolitan ruins. [Pl. XLVII., Fig. 2.] In the northern, or front, wall, the niches were replaced by windows,[198] looking upon the portico, excepting towards the angles of the building, where niches were retained, owing to a peculiarity in the plan of the edifice which has now to be noticed. The portico, instead of being, as in every other Persian instance, of the same width with the building which it fronted, was 41 feet narrower, its *antæ* projecting from the front wall, not at either extremity, but at the distance of 41 feet from the corner. While the porch was thus contracted, so that the pillars had to be eight in each row instead of ten, space was left on either side for a narrow guard-room opening on to the porch, indications of which are seen in the doorways placed at right angles to the front wall, which are ornamented with the usual figures of soldiers armed with spear and shield.[199] It has been suggested

that the hall was, like the smaller pillared chambers upon the platform, originally surrounded on three sides by a number of lesser apartments;[112] and this is certainly possible: but no trace remains of any such buildings. The ornamentation which exists seems to show that the building was altogether of a public character. Instead of exhibiting attendants bringing articles for the toilet or the banquet, it shows on its doors the monarch, either engaged in the art of destroying symbolical monsters, or seated on his throne under a canopy, with the tiara on his head, and the golden sceptre in his right hand. The throne representations are of two kinds. On the jambs of the great doors leading out upon the porch, we see in the top compartment the monarch seated under the canopy, accompanied by five attendants, while below him are his guards, arranged in five rows of ten each, some armed with spears and shields, others with spears, short swords, bows and quivers.[113] Thus the two portals together exhibit the figures of 200 Persian guardsmen in attendance on the person of the king. The doors at the back of the building present us with a still more curious sculpture. On these the throne appears elevated on a lofty platform, the stages of which, three in number, are upheld by figures in different costumes,[114] representing apparently the natives of all the different provinces of the Empire. It is a reasonable conjecture that this great hall was intended especially for a throne-room, and that in the representations on these doorways we have figured a structure which actually existed under its roof (probably at *t* in the plan)—a platform reached by steps, whereon, in the great ceremonies of state, the royal throne was placed, in order that the monarch might be distinctly seen at one and the same time by the whole Court.[115]

The question of the lighting of this huge apartment presents some difficulties. On three sides, as already observed, the hall had (so far as appears) no windows—the places where windows might have been expected to occur being occupied by niches. The apparent openings are consequently reduced to some fifteen, viz., the eight doorways, and seven windows, which looked out upon the portico, and were therefore overhung and had a north aspect. It is clear that sufficient light could not have entered the apartment from these—the only visible—apertures. We must therefore suppose either that the walls above the niches were pierced with windows, which is quite possible,[116] or else that light was in some way or other

admitted from the roof. The latter is the supposition of those most competent to decide.[117] M. Flandin conjectures that the roof had four apertures, placed at the points where the lines drawn from the northern to the southern, and those drawn from the eastern to the western, doors would intersect one another.[118] He seems to suppose that these openings were wholly unprotected, in which case they would have admitted, in a very inconvenient way, both the sun and the rain. May we not presume that, if such openings existed, they were guarded by *louvres* such as have been regarded as probably lighting the Assyrian halls, and of which a representation has already been given?[119]

The portico of the Hall of a Hundred Columns was flanked on either side by a colossal bull,[120] standing at the inner angle of the *antæ*, and thus in some degree narrowing the entrance. Its columns were fluted, and had in every case the complex capital, which occurs also in the great propylæa and in the Hall of Xerxes. It was built of the same sort of massive blocks as the south-eastern edifice, or Ancient Palace—blocks often ten feet square by seven feet thick,[121] and may be ascribed probably to the same age as that structure. Like that edifice, it is situated somewhat low; it has no staircase, and no inscription. We may fairly suppose it to have been the throne-room or great hall of audience of the early king who built the South-eastern Palace.

We have now to describe the most remarkable of all the Persepolitan edifices—a building the remains of which stretch nearly 350 feet in one direction, while in the other they extend 216 feet.[122] Its ruins consist almost entirely of pillars, which are divided into four groups. The largest of these was a square of thirty-six pillars, arranged in six rows of six, all exactly equi-distant from one another, and covering an area of above 20,000 square feet.[123] On three sides of this square, eastward, northward, and westward, were magnificent porches, each consisting of twelve columns, arranged in two rows, in line with the pillars of the central cluster. These porches stood at the distance of seventy feet from the main building,[124] and have the appearance of having been entirely separate from it. They are 142 feet long, by thirty broad,[125] and thus cover each an area of 4260 feet. The most astonishing feature in the whole building is the height of the pillars. These, according to the measurements of M. Flandin, had a uniform altitude throughout the building of sixty-four feet.[126] Even in their ruin, they

tower over every other erection upon the platform, retaining often, in spite of the effects of time, an elevation of sixty feet.[127]

The capitals of the pillars were of three kinds. Those of the side colonnades were comparatively simple: they consisted, in each case, of a single member, formed, in the eastern colonnade, of two half-griffins, with their heads looking in opposite directions [Pl. XLVII., Fig. 2];[128] and, in the western colonnade, of two half-bulls, arranged in the same manner [Pl. XLVII., Fig. 3].[129] The capitals of the pillars in the northern colonnade, which faced the great sculptured staircase, and constituted the true front of the building, were of a very complex character. They may be best viewed as composed of three distinct members—first, a sort of lotos-bud, accompanied by pendent leaves; then, above that, a member, composed of volutes like those of the Ionic order,[130] but placed in a perpendicular instead of a horizontal direction; and at the top, a member composed of two half-bulls, exactly similar to that which forms the complete capital of the western group of pillars.[131] The pillars of the great central cluster had capitals exactly like those of the northern colonnade.

The bases of the colonnade pillars are of singular beauty.[132] Bell-shaped, and ornamented with a double or triple row of pendent lotos leaves, some rounded, some narrowed to a point; they are as graceful as they are rare in their forms, and attract the admiration of all beholders. Above them rise the columns, tapering gently as they ascend, but without any swell or entasis. They consist of several masses of stone, carefully joined together, and secured at the joints by an iron cramp in the direction of the column's axis.[133] All are beautifully fluted along their entire length, the number of the incisions or flutings being from forty-eight to fifty-two in each pillar.[134] They are arcs of circles smaller than semicircles, thus resembling those of the Doric, rather than those of the Ionic or Corinthian order. The cutting of all is very exact and regular.

There can be little doubt but that both the porches, and the great central pillar-cluster, were roofed in. The double-bull and double-griffin capital are exactly suited to receive the ends of beams, which would stretch from pillar to pillar,[135] and support a roof and an entablature. [Pl. L., Fig. 1.] We may see in the entrances to the royal tombs[136] the true use of pillars in a Persian building, and the character of the entablature which they were intended to sustain.[137] Assuming, then, that both

the great central pillar phalanx and the three detached colonnades supported a roof, the question arises, were the colonnades in any way united with the main building, or did they stand completely detached from it? It has been supposed[138] that they were all porticos *in antis*, connected with the main building by solid walls—that the great central column-cluster was surrounded on all sides by a wall of a very massive description, from the four corners of which similar barriers were carried down to the edge of the terrace, abutting in front upon the steps of the great sculptured staircase, and extending eastward and westward, so as to form the *antæ* of an eastern and a western portico. In the two corners between the northern *antæ* of the side porticos and the *antæ* of the portico in front are supposed to have been large guard-rooms, entirely filling up the two angles. The whole building is thus brought into close conformity with the "Palace of Xerxes," from which it is distinguished only by its superior size, its use of stone pillars, and the elongation of the tetrastyle chambers at the sides of that edifice into porticos of twelve pillars each.

The ingenuity of this conception is unquestionable; and one is tempted at first sight to accept a solution which removes so much that is puzzling, and establishes so remarkable a harmony between works whose outward aspect is so dissimilar. It seems like the inspiration of genius to discern so clearly the like in the unlike, and one inclines at first to believe that what is so clever cannot but be true. But a rigorous examination of the evidence leads to an opposite conclusion, and if it does not absolutely disprove Mr. Fergusson's theory, at any rate shows it to be in the highest degree doubtful. Such walls as he describes, with their *antæ* and their many doors and windows, should have left very marked traces of their existence in great squared pillars at the sides of porticos,[139] in huge door-frames and window-frames, or at least in the foundations of walls, or the marks of them, on some part of the paved terrace. Now the entire absence of squared pillars for the ends of *antæ*, of door-frames, and window-frames, or even of such sculptured fragments as might indicate their former existence, is palpable and is admitted; nor is there any even supposed trace of the walls, excepting in one of the lines which by the hypothesis they would occupy. In front of the building, midway between the great pillar-cluster and the north colonnade, are the remains of four stone bases, parallel to one another, each seventeen feet long by five feet six inches wide.[140]

Mr. Fergusson regards these bases as marking the position of the doors in his front wall;[141] and they are certainly in places where doors might have been looked for, if the building had a front wall, since the openings are exactly opposite the intercolumniations of the pillars, both in the portico and in the main cluster.[142] But there are several objections to the notion of these bases being the foundations of the jambs of doors. In the first place, they are too wide apart, being at the distance from one another of seventeen feet, whereas no doorway on the platform exceeds a width of twelve or thirteen feet. In the second place, if these massive stone bases were prepared for the jambs of doors, it could only have been for massive stone jambs like those of the other palaces; but in that case, the jambs could not have disappeared. Thirdly, if the doorways on this side were thus marked, why were they not similarly marked on the other sides of the building?[143] On the whole, the supposition of M. Flandin, that the bases were pedestals for ornamental statues, perhaps of bulls,[144] seems more probable than that of Mr. Fergusson; though, no doubt, there are objections also to M. Flandin's hypothesis,[145] and it would be perhaps best to confess that we do not know the use of these strange foundations, which have nothing that at all resembles them upon the rest of the platform.

Another strong objection to Mr. Fergusson's theory, and one of which he, to a certain extent, admits the force,[146] is the existence of drains, running exactly in the line of his side walls,[147] which, if such walls existed, would be a curious provision on the part of the architect for undermining his own work. Mr. Fergusson supposes that they might be intended to drain the walls themselves and keep them dry. But as it is clear that they must have carried off the whole surplus water from the roof of the building, and as there is often much rain and snow at Persepolis,[148] their effect on the foundations of such a wall as Mr. Fergusson imagines would evidently be disastrous in the extreme.

To these minute and somewhat technical objections may be added the main one, whereof all alike can feel the force—namely, the entire disappearance of such a vast mass of building as Mr. Fergusson's hypothesis supposes. To account for this, Mr. Fergusson is obliged to lay it down, that in this magnificent structure, with its solid stone staircase, its massive pavement of the same material, and its seventy-two stone pillars, each sixty-four feet high, the walls were of mud. Can we

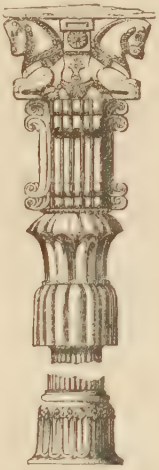
Fig. 1

Single volute Capital, Persepolis.

Fig. 2.

Base of Pillars forming central Cluster.

Fig. 3.

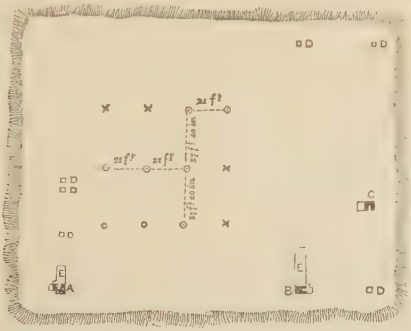


Complex Capital and Base of Pillars in the Great Hall of Xerxes (Persepolis)

Fig. 4.

Another Pillar-Base in the same.

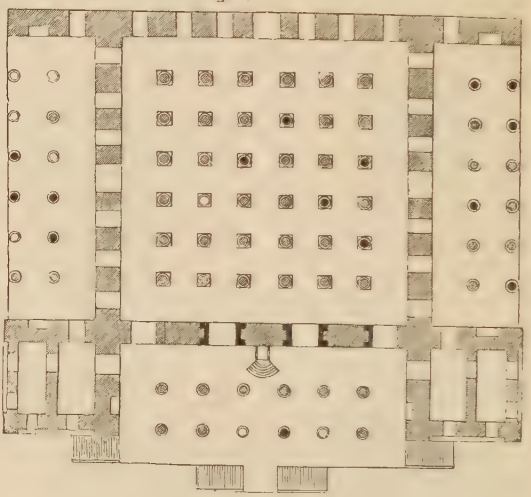
Fig. 5.



Plan of Palace, Pasargadæ.

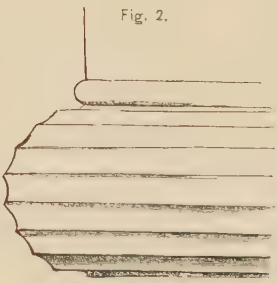
A, B, C. Pillars with inscriptions. D D. Pillar Bases. E E. Remains of Pavement.

Fig. 1.



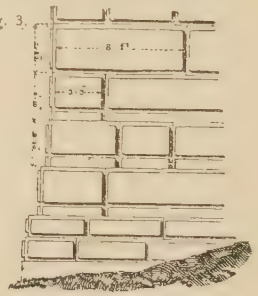
Ground Plan of the Hall of Xerxes (after Fergusson).

Fig. 2.



Pillar-Base, Pasargadæ.

Fig. 3.



Masonry of Great Platform, Pasargadæ.

Fig. 4

General View of Platform, Pasargadæ.

believe in this incongruity? Can we imagine that a prince, who possessed an unbounded command of human labor, and an inexhaustible supply of stone in the rocky mountains close at hand, would have had recourse to the meanest of materials for the walls of an edifice which he evidently intended to eclipse all others upon the platform? And, especially, can we suppose this, when the very same prince used solid blocks of stone in the walls of the very inferior edifice which he constructed in this same locality? Mr. Fergusson, in defence of his hypothesis, alleges the frequent combination of meanness with magnificence in the East, and softens down the meanness in the present case by clothing his mud walls with enamelled tiles, and painting them with all the colors of the rainbow. But here again the hypothesis is wholly unsupported by fact. Neither at Persepolis, nor at Pasargadæ, nor at any other ancient Persian site,[149] has a single fragment of an enamelled tile or brick been discovered. In Babylonia and Assyria, where the employment of such an ornamentation was common,[150] the traces of it which remain are abundant. Must not the entire absence of such traces from all exclusively Persian ruins be held to indicate that this mode of adorning edifices was not adopted in Persia?

If then we resign the notion of this remarkable building having been a walled structure, we must suppose that it was a *summer* throne-room, open to all the winds of heaven, except so far as it was protected by curtains. For the use of these by the Persians in pillared edifices, we have important historical authority in the statement already quoted from the Book of Esther.[151] The Persian palace, to which that passage directly refers, contained a structure almost the exact counterpart of this at Persepolis;[152] and it is probable that at both places the interstices between the outer pillars of, at any rate, the great central colonnade, were filled with "hangings of white and green and blue, fastened with cords of white[153] and purple to silver rings," which were attached to the "pillars of marble;" and that by these means an undue supply of light and air, as well as an unseemly publicity, were prevented. A traveller in the country well observes, in allusion to this passage from Esther: "Nothing could be more appropriate than this method at Susa and Persepolis, the spring residences of the Persian monarchs. It must be considered that these columnar halls were the equivalents of the modern throne-rooms, that here all public business was dispatched, and that here the king might

sit and enjoy the beauties of the landscape. With the rich plains of Susa and Persepolis before him, he could well, after his winter's residence at Babylon, dispense with massive walls, which would only check the warm fragrant breeze from those verdant prairies adorned with the choicest flowers. A massive roof, covering the whole expanse of columns, would be too cold and dismal, whereas curtains around the central group would serve to admit both light and warmth. Nothing can be conceived better adapted to the climate or the season."[154]

If the central cluster of pillars was thus adapted to the purposes of a throne-room, equally well may the isolated colonnades have served as ante-chambers or posts for guards. Protected, perhaps, with curtains or awnings of their own,[155] of a coarser material than those of the main chamber, or at any rate casting, when the sun was high, a broad and deep shadow, they would give a welcome shelter to those who had to watch over the safety of the monarch, or who were expecting but had not yet received their summons to the royal presence.[156] Except in the very hottest weather, the Oriental does not love to pass his day within doors. Seated on the pavement in groups, under the deep shadows of these colonnades, which commanded a glorious view of the vast fertile plain of the Bendamir, of the undulating mountain-tract beyond, and of the picturesque hills known now as Koh-Istakhr, or Koh-Rhamgherd,[157] the subjects of the Great King, who had business at Court, would wait, agreeably enough, till their turn came to approach the throne.

Our survey of the Persepolitan platform is now complete; but, before we entirely dismiss the subject of Persian palaces, it seems proper to say a few words with respect to the other palatial remains of Achæmenian times, remains which exist in three places—at Murgab or Pasargadæ, at Istakr, and at the great mound of Susa. The Murgab and Istakr ruins were carefully examined by MM. Coste and Flandin; while General Williams and Mr. Loftus diligently explored, and completely made out, the plan of the Susian edifice.

The ruins at Murgab, which are probably the most ancient in Persia, comprise, besides the well-known "Tomb of Cyrus," two principal buildings. The largest of these was of an oblong-square shape, about 147 feet long by 116 wide.[158] It seems to have been surrounded by a lofty wall, in which were huge portals, consisting of great blocks of stone, partially hollowed out, to render them portable.[159] There was an inscription on the jambs of each portal, containing the words, "I am Cyrus

the King, the Achæmenian." Within the walled enclosure which may have been skirted internally by a colonnade[163] was a pillared building, of much greater height than the surrounding walls, as is evident from the single column which remains. This shaft, which is perfectly plain, and shows no signs of a capital, has an altitude of thirty-six feet,[164] with a diameter of three feet four inches at the base.[165] On the area around, which was carefully paved,[166] are the bases of seven other similar pillars, arranged in lines, and so situated as apparently to indicate an oblong hall, supported by twelve pillars, in three rows of four each.[167] The chief peculiarity of the arrangement is, a variety in the width of the intercolumniations, which measure twenty-seven feet ten inches in one direction, but twenty one feet only in the other.[168] The smaller building, which is situated at only a short distance from the larger one, covers a space of 125 feet by fifty. It consists of twelve pillar bases, arranged in two rows of six each, the pillars being somewhat thicker than those of the other building, and placed somewhat closer together.[169] [Pl. XLIX., Fig. 5.] The form of the base is very singular. It exhibits at the side a semicircular bulge, ornamented with a series of nine flutings, which are carried entirely round the base in parallel horizontal circles.[170] [Pl. L., Fig. 2.] In front of the pillar bases, at the distance of about twenty-three feet from the nearest, is a square column, still upright, on which is sculptured a curious mythological figure,[171] together with the same cuit legend, which appears on the larger building—"I am Cyrus, the King, the Achæmenian."

There are two other buildings at Murgab remarkable for their masonry. One is a square tower, with slightly projecting corners, built of hewn blocks of stone, very regularly laid, and carried to a height of forty-two feet.[172] The other is a platform, exceedingly massive and handsome, composed entirely of squared stone, and faced with blocks often eight or ten feet long,[173] laid in horizontal courses, and rusticated throughout in a manner that is highly ornamental. [Pl. L. Fig. 3.] The style resembles that of the substructions of the Temple of Jerusalem. It occurs occasionally, though somewhat rarely, in Greece; but there is said to exist nowhere so extensive and beautiful a specimen of it as that of the platform at this ancient site.[174] [Pl. L., Fig. 4.]

The palace at Istakr is in better preservation than either of the two pillared edifices at Murgab; but still, it is not in such

a condition as to enable us to lay down with any certainty even its ground-plan. [Pl. LI., Fig. 1.] One pillar only remains erect; but the bases of eight others have been found *in situ;* the walls are partly to be traced, and the jambs of several doorways and niches are still standing.[172] These remains show that in many respects, as in the character of the pillars, which were fluted and had capitals like those already described,[173] in the massiveness of the door and window jambs, and in the thickness of the walls, the Istakr Palace resembled closely the buildings on the Persepolitan platform; but at the same time they indicate that its plan was wholly different, and thus our knowledge of the platform buildings in no degree enables us to complete, or even to carry forward to any appreciable extent, the ground-plan of the edifice derived from actual research. The height of the columns, which is inferior to that of the lowest at the great platform,[174] would seem to indicate, either that the building was the first in which stone pillars were attempted, or that it was erected at a time when the Persians no longer possessed the mechanical skill required to quarry, transport, and raise into place the enormous blocks used in the best days of the nation.

The palace of Susa, exhumed by Mr. Loftus and General Williams, consisted of a great Hall or Throne-room, almost exactly a duplicate of the Chehl Minar at Persepolis, and of a few other very inferior buildings. It stood at the summit of the great platform, a quadrilateral mass of unburnt brick, which from a remote antiquity had supported the residence of the old Susian kings. It fronted a little west of north, and commanded a magnificent view over the Susianian plains to the mountains of Lauristan. An inscription, repeated on four of its pillar-bases, showed that it was originally built by Darius Hystaspis, and afterwards repaired by Artaxerxes Longimanus.[175] As it was so exactly a reproduction of an edifice already minutely described,[176] no further account of it need be here given.

From the palaces of the Persian kings we may now pass to their tombs, remarkable structures which drew the attention of the ancients,[177] and which have been very fully examined and represented in modern times.[178] These tombs are eight in number, but present only two types, so that it will be sufficient to give in this place a detailed account of two tombs—one of each description.

The most ancient, and, on the whole, the most remarkable

of the tombs, is almost universally allowed to be that of the Great Cyrus. It is unique in design, totally different from all the other royal sepulchres; and, though it has been often described, demands, and must receive, notice in any account that is given of the ancient Persian constructions. The historian Arrian calls it "a house upon a pedestal;"[179] and this brief description exactly expresses its general character. On a base, composed of huge blocks of the most beautiful white marble,[180] which rises pyramidically in seven[181] steps of different heights,[182] there stands a small "house" of similar material, crowned with a stone roof, which is formed in front and rear into a pediment resembling that of a Greek temple.[183] [Pl. LI., Fig. 3.] The "house" has no window, but one of the end walls was pierced by a low and narrow doorway, which led into a small chamber or cell, about eleven feet long, seven broad, and seven high.[184] Here, as ancient writers inform us,[185] the body of the Great Cyrus was deposited in a golden coffin. Internally the chamber is destitute of any inscription, and indeed seems to have been left perfectly plain.[186] Externally, there is a cornice of some elegance below the pediment, a good molding over the doorway, which is also doubly recessed—and two other very slight moldings, one at the base of the "house," and the other at the bottom of the second step. [Pl. LI., Fig. 2.] Except for these, the whole edifice is perfectly plain. Its present height above the ground is thirty-six feet,[187] and it may originally have been a foot or eighteen inches higher, for the top of the roof is worn away. It measures at the base forty-seven feet by forty-three feet nine inches.[188]

The tomb stands within a rectangular area, marked out by pillars, the bases or broken shafts of which are still to be seen. They appear to have been twenty-four in number; all of them circular and smooth, not fluted; six pillars occupied each side of the rectangle, and they stood distant from each other about fourteen feet.[189] It is probable that they originally supported a colonnade, which skirted internally a small walled court, within which the tomb was placed. The capitals of the pillars, if they had any, have wholly disappeared; and the researches conducted on the spot have failed to discover any trace of them.

The remainder of the Persian royal sepulchres are rock-tombs, excavations in the sides of mountains, generally at a considerable elevation, so placed as to attract the eye of the beholder, while they are extremely difficult of approach. Of

this kind of tomb there are four in the face of the mountain which bounds the Pulwar Valley on the north-west, while there are three others in the immediate vicinity of the Persepolitan platform, two in the mountain which overhangs it, and one in the rocks a little further to the south. The general shape of the excavations, as it presents itself to the eye of the spectator, resembles a Greek cross.[190] [Pl. LII., Fig. 1.] This is divided by horizontal lines into three portions, the upper one (corresponding with the topmost limb of the cross) containing a very curious sculptured representation of the monarch worshipping Ormazd; the middle one, which comprises the two side limbs, together with the space between them, being carved architecturally so as to resemble a portico;[191] and the third compartment (corresponding with the lowest limb of the cross) being left perfectly plain. In the centre of the middle compartment is sculptured on the face of the rock the similitude of a doorway, closely resembling those which still stand on the great platform; that is to say, doubly recessed, and ornamented at the top with lily-work. The upper portion of this doorway is filled with the solid rock, smoothed to a flat surface and crossed by three horizontal bars. The lower portion, to the height of four or five feet, is cut away; and thus entrance is given to the actual tomb, which is hollowed out in the rock behind.

Thus far the rock tombs are, with scarcely an exception,[192] of the same type. The excavations, however, behind their ornamental fronts, present some curious differences. In the simplest case of all, we find, on entering, an arched chamber,[193] thirteen feet five inches long by seven feet two inches wide, from which there opens out, opposite to the door and at the height of about four feet from the ground, a deep horizontal recess, arched, like the chamber. Near the front of this recess is a further perpendicular excavation, in length six feet ten inches, in width three feet three inches, and in depth the same.[194] This was the actual sarcophagus, and was covered, or intended to be covered, by a slab of stone. In the deeper part of the recess there is room for two other such sarcophagi; but in this case they have not been excavated, one burial only having, it would seem, taken place in this tomb. Other sepulchres present the same general features, but provide for a much greater number of interments.[195] In that of Darius Hystaspis the sepulchral chamber contains three distinct recesses, in each of which are three sarcophagi, so that the tomb

would hold nine bodies. It has, apparently, been cut originally for a single recess, on the exact plan of the tomb described above, but has afterwards been elongated towards the left. [Pl. LIII., Fig. 1.] Two of the tombs show a still more elaborate ground-plan—one in which curved lines take to some extent the place of straight ones.[196] [Pl. LII., Fig. 2.] The tombs above the platform of Persepolis are more richly ornamented than the others, the lintels and sideposts of the doorways being covered with rosettes, and the entablature above the cornice bearing a row of lions, facing on either side towards the centre.[197] [Pl. LIII., Fig. 2.]

A curious edifice, belonging probably to the later Achæmenian times, stands immediately in front of the four royal tombs at Nakhsh-i-Rustam. This is a square tower, composed of large blocks of marble, cut with great exactness, and joined together without mortar or cement of any kind. The building is thirty-six feet high; and each side of it measures, as near as possible, twenty-four feet.[198] It is ornamented with pilasters at the corners and with six recessed niches, or false windows, in three ranks, one over the other, on three out of its four faces. On the fourth face are two niches only, one over the other; and below them is a doorway with a cornice. The surface of the walls between the pilasters is also ornamented with a number of rectangular depressions, resembling the sunken ends of beams.[199] The doorway, which looks north, towards the tombs, is not at the bottom of the building, but half-way up its side, and must have been reached either by a ladder or by a flight of steps.[200] It leads into a square chamber, twelve feet wide by nearly eighteen high,[201] extending to the top of the building, and roofed in with four large slabs of stone, which reach entirely across from side to side, being rather more than twenty-four feet long, six feet wide, and from eighteen inches to three feet in thickness. [Pl. LIII., Fig. 3.] On the top these slabs are so cut that the roof has every way a slight incline;[202] at their edges they are fashioned between the pilasters, into a dentated cornice, like that which is seen on the tombs.[203] Externally they were clamped together in the same careful way which we find to have been in use both at Persepolis and Parsargadæ.[204] The building seems to have been closed originally by two ponderous stone doors.[205] [Pl. LIV., Fig. 1.]

Another remarkable construction, which must belong to a very ancient period in the history of the country, is a gateway[206] composed of enormous stones, which forms a portion of

the ruins of Istakr. [Pl. LIV., Fig. 2.] It has generally been regarded as one of the old gates of the city;[207] but its position in the gorge between the town wall and the opposite mountain, and the fact that it lies directly across the road from Pasargadæ into the plain of Merdasht, seem rather to imply that it was one of those fortified "gates," which we know to have been maintained by the Persians, at narrow points along their great routes,[208] for the purpose of securing them, and stopping the advance of an enemy.[209] On either side were walls of vast thickness, on the one hand abutting upon the mountain, on the other probably connected with the wall of the town, while between them were three massive pillars, once, no doubt, the supports of a tower, from which the defenders of the gate would engage its assailants at a great advantage.

We have now described (so far as our data have rendered it possible) all the more important of the ancient edifices of the Persians, and may proceed to consider the next branch of the present inquiry, namely, their skill in the mimetic arts. Before, however, the subject of their architecture is wholly dismissed, a few words seem to be required on its general character and chief peculiarities.

First, then, the simplicity and regularity of the style are worthy of remark. In the ground-plans of buildings the straight line only is used; all the angles are right angles; all the pillars fall into line; the intervals between pillar and pillar are regular, and generally equal; doorways are commonly placed opposite intercolumniations; where there is but one doorway, it is in the middle of the wall which it pierces; where there are two, they correspond to one another. Correspondence is the general law. Not only does door correspond to door, and pillar to pillar, but room to room, window to window, and even niche to niche. Most of the buildings are so contrived that one half is the exact duplicate of the other; and where this is not the case, the irregularity is generally either slight,[210] or the result of an alteration,[211] made probably for convenience sake. Travellers are impressed with the Grecian character of what they behold,[212] though there is an almost entire absence of Greek forms. The regularity is not confined to single buildings, but extends to the relations of different edifices one to another. The sides of buildings standing on one platform, at whatever distance they may be, are parallel. There is, however, less consideration paid than we should have expected to the exact position, with respect to a main building, in which a

subordinate one shall be placed. Propylæa, for instance, are not opposite the centre of the edifice to which they conduct, but slightly on one side of the centre. And generally, excepting in the parallelism of their sides, buildings seem placed with but slight regard to neighboring ones.

For effect, the Persian architecture must have depended, firstly, upon the harmony that is produced by the observance of regularity and proportion; and, secondly, upon two main features of the style. These were the grand sculptured staircases which formed the approaches to all the principal buildings, and the vast groves of elegant pillars in and about the great halls. The lesser buildings were probably ugly, except in front. But such edifices as the *Chehl Minar* at Persepolis, and its duplicate at Susa – where long vistas of columns met the eye on every side, and the great central cluster was supported by lighter detached groups, combining similarity of form with some variety of ornament, where richly colored drapings contrasted with the cool gray stone of the building, and a golden roof overhung a pavement of many hues – must have been handsome, from whatever side they were contemplated, and for general richness and harmony of effect may have compared favorably with any edifices which, up to the time of their construction, had been erected in any country or by any people. If it may seem to some that they were wanting in grandeur, on account of their comparatively low height – a height which, including that of the platform, was probably in no case much more than a hundred feet—it must be remembered that the buildings of Greece and (except the Pyramids) those of Egypt, had the same defect,[213] and that, until the constructive powers of the arch came to be understood, it was almost impossible to erect a building that should be at once lofty and elegant. Height, moreover, if the buildings are for use, implies inconvenience, a waste of time and power being involved in the ascent and descent of steps. The ancient architects, studying utility more than effect, preferred spreading out their buildings to piling them up, and rarely, unless in thickly-peopled towns,[214] even introduced a second story.

The spectator, however, was impressed with a sense of grandeur in another way. The use of huge blocks of stone, not only in platforms, but in the buildings themselves, in the shafts of pillars, the antæ of porticos, the jambs of doorways, occasionally in roofs, and perhaps in epistylia, produced the same impression of power, and the same feeling of personal

insignificance in the beholder, which is commonly effected by great size in the edifice, and particularly by height. The mechanical skill required to transport and raise into place the largest of these blocks must have been very considerable, and their employment causes not merely a blind admiration of those who so built on the part of ignorant persons, but a profound respect for them on the part of those who are by their studies and tastes best qualified for pronouncing on the relative and absolute merits of architectural masterpieces.[215]

Among the less pleasing peculiarities of the Persian architecture may be mentioned a general narrowness of doors in proportion to their height,[216] a want of passages, a thickness of walls, which is architecturally clumsy, but which would have had certain advantages in such a climate, an inclination to place the doors of rooms near one corner, an allowance of two entrances into a great hall from under a single portico,[217] a peculiar position of propylæa,[218] and the very large employment of pillars in the interior of buildings. In many of these points,[219] and also in the architectural use which was made of sculpture, the style of building resembled, to some extent, that of Assyria; the propylæa, however, were less Assyrian than Egyptian; while in the main and best features of the architecture, it was (so far as we can tell) original. The solid and handsome stone platforms, the noble staircases, and the profusion of light and elegant stone columns, which formed the true glory of the architecture—being the features on which its effect chiefly depended—have nowhere been discovered in Assyria; and all the evidence is against their existence. The Arians found in Mesopotamia an architecture of which the pillar was scarcely an element at all[220]—which was fragile and unenduring[221]—and which depended for its effect on a lavish display of partially colored sculpture and more richly tinted enamelled brick. Instead of imitating this, they elaborated for themselves, from the wooden buildings of their own mountain homes,[222] a style almost exactly the reverse of that with which their victories had brought them into contact. Adopting, of main features, nothing but the platform, they imparted even to this a new character, by substituting in its construction the best for the worst of materials, and by further giving to these stone structures a massive solidity, from the employment of huge blocks, which made them stand in the strongest possible contrast to the frail and perishable mounds of Babylonia and Assyria. Having se-

cured in this way a firm and enduring basis, they proceeded to erect upon it buildings where the perpendicular line was primary and the horizontal secondary[3]—buildings of almost the same solid and massive character as the platform itself—forests of light but strong columns, supporting a wide-spreading roof, sometimes open to the air, sometimes enclosed by walls,[4] according as they were designed for summer or winter use, or for greater or less privacy. To edifices of this character elaborate ornamentation was unnecessary; for the beauty of the column is such that nothing more is needed to set off a building. Sculpture would thus be dispensed with, or reserved for mere occasional use, and employed not so much on the palace itself as on its outer approaches; while brick enamelling could well be rejected altogether, as too poor and fragile a decoration for buildings of such strength and solidity.

The origination of this columnar architecture must be ascribed to the Medes, who, dwelling in or near the more wooden parts of the Zagros range, constructed, during the period of their empire, edifices of considerable magnificence, whereof wooden pillars were the principal feature,[225] the courts being surrounded by colonnades, and the chief buildings having porticos, the pillars in both cases being of wood. A wooden roof rested on these supports, protected externally by plates of metal. We do not know if the pillars had capitals, or if they supported an entablature; but probability is in favor of both these arrangements having existed. When the Persians succeeded the Medes in the sovereignty of Western Asia, they found Arian architecture in this condition. As stone, however, was the natural material of their country, which is but scantily wooded and is particularly barren towards the edge of the great plateau,[226] where their chief towns were situated, and as they had from the first a strong desire of fame and a love for the substantial and the enduring, they almost immediately substituted for the cedar and cypress pillars of the Medes, stone shafts, plain or fluted, which they carried to a surprising height, and fixed with such firmness that many of them have resisted the destructive powers of time, of earthquakes,[227] and of Vandalism for more than three-and-twenty centuries, and still stand erect and nearly as perfect as when they received the last touch from the sculptor's hand more than 2000 years ago. It is the glory of the Persians in art to have invented this style, which they cer-

tainly did not learn from the Assyrians, and which they can scarcely be supposed to have adopted from Egypt, where the conception of the pillar and its ornamentation were wholly different.[228] We can scarcely doubt that Greece received from this quarter the impulse which led to the substitution of the light and elegant forms which distinguish the architecture of her best period from the rude and clumsy work of the more ancient times.[229]

Of the mimetic art of the Persians we do not possess any great amount, or any great variety, of specimens. The existing remains consist of reliefs, either executed on the natural rock or on large slabs of hewn stone used in building, of impressions upon coins, and of a certain number of intaglios cut upon gems. We possess no Persian statues, no modelled figures,[230] no metal castings, no carvings in ivory or in wood, no enamellings, no pottery even. The excavations on Persian sites have been singularly barren of those minor results which flowed so largely from the Mesopotamian excavations, and have yielded no traces of the furniture, domestic implements, or wall-ornamentation of the people; have produced, in fact, no small objects at all, excepting a few cylinders and some spear and arrow heads, thus throwing scarcely any light on the taste or artistic genius of the people.

The nearest approach to statuary which we meet with among the Persian remains are the figures of colossal bulls, set to guard portals, or porticos, which are not indeed sculptures *in the round*, but are specimens of exceedingly high relief, and which, being carved in front as well as along the side, do not fall very far short of statues. Of such figures, we find two varieties—one representing the real animal, the other a monster with the body and legs of a bull, the head of a man, and the wings of an eagle. There is considerable merit in both representations. They are free from the defect of flatness, or want of breadth in comparison with the length, which characterizes the similar figures of Assyrian artists; and they are altogether grand, massive, and imposing. The general proportions of the bulls are good, the limbs are accurately drawn, the muscular development is well portrayed, and the pose of the figure is majestic.[231] Even the monstrous forms of human-headed bulls have a certain air of quiet dignity, which is not without its effect on the beholder;[232] and, although implying no great artistic merit, since they are little more than reproductions of Assyrian models, indicate an

appreciation of some of the best qualities of Assyrian art—the combination of repose with strength, of great size with the most careful finish, and of strangeness with the absence of any approach to grotesqueness or absurdity.

The other Persian reliefs may be divided under four heads: (1) Mythological representations of a man—the king apparently[233]—engaged in combat with a lion, a bull, or a monster; (2) Processions of guards, courtiers, attendants, or tribute-bearers; (3) Representations of the monarch walking, seated upon his throne, or employed in the act of worship; and (4) Representations of lions and bulls, either singly or engaged in combat.

On the jambs of doorways in three of the Persepolitan buildings, a human figure, dressed in the Median robe, but with the sleeve thrown back from the right arm, is represented in the act of killing either a lion, a bull, or a grotesque monster. In every case the animal is rampant, and assails his antagonist with three of his feet, while he stands on the fourth. The lion and bull have nothing about them that is very peculiar; but the monsters present most strange and unusual combinations. One of them has the griffin head, which we have already seen in use in the capitals of columns,[234] a feathered crest and neck, a bird's wings, a scorpion's tail,[235] and legs terminating in the claws of an eagle. The other has an eagle's head, ears like an ass, feathers on the neck, the breast, and the back, with the body, legs, and tail of a lion.[236] [Pl. LV., Fig. 1.] Figures of equal grotesqueness, some of which possess certain resemblances to these, are common in the mythology of Assyria, and have been already represented in these volumes;[237] but the Persian specimens are no servile imitations of these earlier forms. The idea of the Assyrian artist has, indeed, been borrowed; but Persian fancy has worked it out in its own way, adding, modifying, and subtracting in such a manner as to give to the form produced a quite peculiar, and (so to speak) native character.

Persian gems abound with monstrous forms, of equal, or even superior grotesqueness. As the Gothic architects indulged their imagination in the most wonderful combinations to represent evil spirits or the varieties of vice and sensualism, so the Persian gem-engravers seem to have allowed their fancy to run riot in the creation of monsters, representative of the Powers of Darkness or of different kinds of evil. The stones

exhibit the king in conflict with a vast variety of monsters, some nearly resembling the Persepolitan, while others have strange shapes unseen elsewhere. Winged lions, with two tails and with the horns of a ram or an antelope,[238] sphinxes and griffins of half a dozen different kinds, and various other nondescript creatures, appear upon the Persian gems and cylinders,[239] furnishing abundant evidence of the quaint and prolific fancy of the designers.

The processional subjects represented by the Persian artists are of three kinds. In the simplest and least interesting the royal guards, or the officers of the court, are represented in one or more lines of very similar figures, either moving in one direction,[240] or standing in two bodies, one facing the other, in the attitude of quiet expectation.[241] In these subjects there is a great sameness, and a very small amount of merit. The proportion of the forms is, indeed, fairly good,[242] the heads and hands are well drawn, and there is some grace in certain of the figures, but the general effect is tame and somewhat heavy; the attitudes are stiff, and present little variety, while, nevertheless, they are sometimes impossible;[243] there is a monotonous repetition of identically the same figure, which is tiresome, and a want of grouping which is very inartistic. If Persia had produced nothing better than this in sculpture, she would have had to be placed not only behind Assyria, but behind Egypt, as far as the sculptor's art is concerned.

Processional scenes of a more attractive character are, however, tolerably frequent. Some exhibit to us the royal purveyors arriving at the palace with their train of attendants, and bringing with them the provisions required for the table of the monarch.[244] Here we have some varieties of costume which are curious, and some representations of Persian utensils, which are not without a certain interest. Occasionally, too, we are presented with animal forms, as kids, which have considerable merit.

But by far the most interesting of the processional scenes, are those which represent the conquered nations bringing to the monarch those precious products of their several countries which the Lord of Asia expected to receive annually, as a sort of free gift from his subjects, in addition to the fixed tribute which was exacted from them. Here we have a wonderful variety of costume and equipment, a happy admixture of animal with human forms, horses, asses, chariots, sheep, cattle, camels, interspersed among men, and the whole divided into

groups by means of cypress-trees, which break the series into portions, and allow the eye to rest in succession upon a number of distinct pictures. Processions of this kind occurred on several of the Persepolitan staircases; but by far the most elaborate and complete is that on the grand steps in front of the Chehl Minar, or Great Hall of Audience, where we see above twenty such groups of figures, each with it own peculiar features, and all finished with the utmost care and delicacy.[245] The illustration [Pl. LV., Fig. 2], which is taken from a photograph, will give a tolerable idea of the general character of this relief; it shows the greater portion of six groups, whereof two are much injured by the fall of the parapet-wall on which they were represented, while the remaining four are in good preservation. It will be noticed that the animal forms—the Bactrian camel and the humped ox—are superior to the human, and have considerable *positive* merit as works of art. This relative superiority is observable throughout the entire series, which contains, besides several horses (some of which have been already represented in these volumes), a lioness, an excellent figure of the wild ass, and two tolerably well-drawn sheep.[247] [Pl. LVI., Fig. 2 and 3.]

The representations of the monarch upon the reliefs are of three kinds. In the simplest, he is on foot, attended by the parasol-bearer and the napkin-bearer, or by the latter only, apparently in the act of proceeding from one part of the palace to another. In the more elaborate he is either seated on an elevated throne, which is generally supported by numerous *caryatid* figures,[248] or he stands on a platform similarly upheld, in the act of worship before an altar.[249] This latter is the universal representation upon tombs, while the throne scenes are reserved for palaces. In both representations the supporting figures are numerous; and it is here chiefly that we notice varieties of physiognomy, which are evidently intended to recall the differences in the physical type of the several races by which the Empire was inhabited. In one case, we have a negro very well portrayed;[250] in others we trace the features of Scyths or Tâtars.[251] It is manifest that the artist has not been content to mark the nationality of the different figures by costume alone, but has aimed at reproducing upon the stone the physiognomic peculiarities of each race.

The purely animal representations which the bas-reliefs bring before us are few in number, and have little variety of type. The most curious and the most artistic is one which is several

times repeated at Persepolis, where it forms the usual ornamentation of the triangular spaces on the façades of stairs. This is a representation of a combat between a lion and a bull, or (perhaps, we should rather say) a representation of a lion seizing and devouring a bull; for the latter animal is evidently powerless to offer any resistance to the fierce beast which has sprung upon him from behind, and has fixed both fangs and claws in his body. [Pl. LVI., Fig. 4.] In his agony the bull rears up his fore-parts, and turns his head feebly towards his assailant, whose strong limbs and jaws have too firm a hold to be dislodged by such struggles as his unhappy victim is capable of making. In no Assyrian drawing is the massiveness and strength of the king of beasts more powerfully rendered than in this favorite group, which the Persian sculptors repeated without the slightest change from generation to generation. The contour of the lion, his vast muscular development, and his fierce countenance are really admirable, and the bold presentation of the face in full, instead of in profile, is beyond the ordinary powers of Oriental artists.[252]

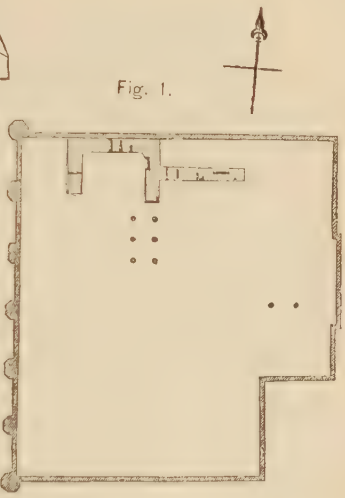
Drawings of bulls and lions in rows, where each animal is the exact counterpart of all the others, are found upon the friezes of some of the tombs, and upon the representations of canopies over the royal throne.[253] These drawings are fairly spirited, but have not any extraordinary merit. They reproduce forms well known in Assyria. A figure of a sitting lion[254] seems also to have been introduced occasionally on the façades of staircases, occurring in the central compartment of the parapet-wall at top. These figures, in no case, remain complete; but enough is left to show distinctly what the attitude was, and this appears not to have resembled very closely any common Assyrian type.[255] [Pl. LVII., Fig. 1.]

The Persian gem-engravings have considerable merit, and need not fear a comparison with those of any other Oriental nation. They occur upon hard stones of many different kinds, as cornelian, onyx, rock-crystal, sapphirine, sardonyx, chalcedony, etc.,[256] and are executed for the most part with great skill and delicacy. The designs which they embody are in general of a mythological character; but sometimes scenes of real life occur upon them, and then the drawing is often good, and almost always spirited. In proof of this, the reader may be referred to the hunting-scenes already given,[257] which are derived wholly from this source, as well as to the gems figured [Pl. LVII., Fig. 3], one of which is certainly, and the other

Fig. 2

1. Moulding over door. 2. Cornice.
Tomb of Cyrus, Pasargadæ.

Fig. 1.

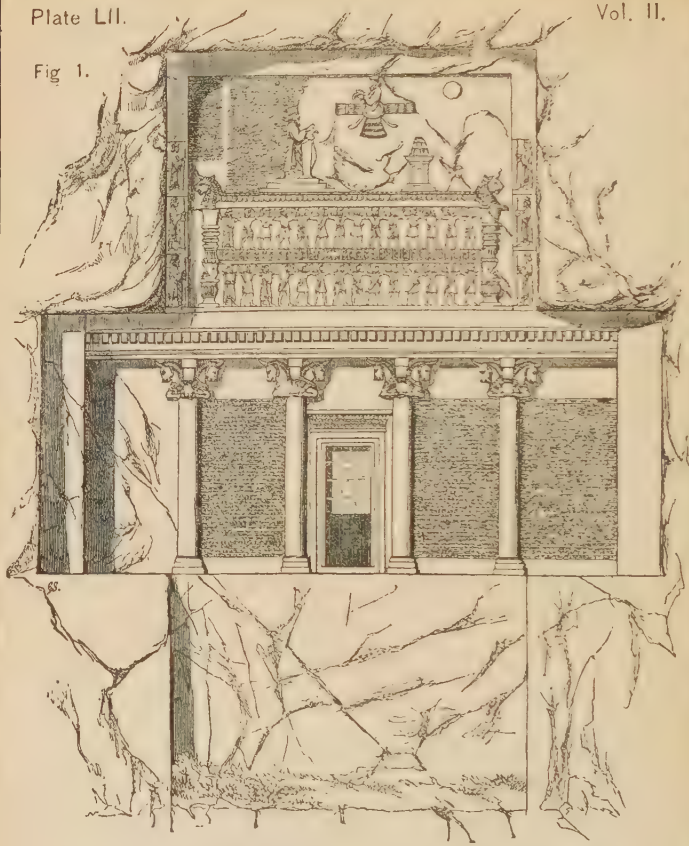


Plan of Palace, Istakr.

Fig. 3.

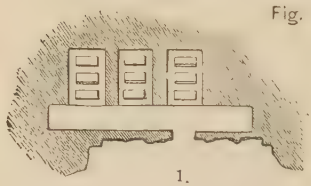
Tomb of Cyrus.

Fig. 1.



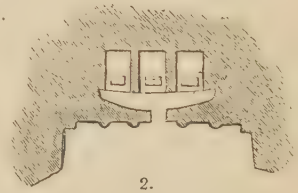
External appearance of the Tomb of Darius Hystaspis, at Nakhsh-i-Rustam.

Fig. 2.



1.

1. Ground-plan of Tomb of Darius, Nakhsh-i-Rustam.



2.

2. Ground-plan of another Royal Tomb.

almost certainly, of Persian workmanship. In the former we see the king, not struggling with a mythological lion, but engaged apparently in the actual chase of the king of beasts. Two lions have been roused from their lairs, and the monarch hastily places an arrow on the string, anxious to despatch one of his foes before the other can come to close quarters. The eagerness of the hunter and the spirit and boldness of the animals are well represented. In the other gem, while there is less of artistic excellence, we have a scene of peculiar interest placed before us. A combat between two Persians and two Scythians seems to be represented. The latter marked by their peaked caps[258] and their loose trousers,[259] fight with the bow and the battle-axe, the former with the bow and the sword. One Scyth is receiving his death-wound, the other is about to let loose a shaft, but seems at the same time half inclined to fly. The steady confidence of the warriors on the one side contrasts well with the timidity and hesitancy of their weaker and smaller rivals. [Pl. LVII., Fig. 3.]

The vegetable forms represented on the gems are sometimes graceful and pleasing. This is especially the case with palm-trees, a favorite subject of the artists,[260] who delineated with remarkable success the feathery leaves, the pendant fruit, and the rough bark of the stem. [Pl. LVIII., Fig. 1.] The lion-hunter represented on the signet-cylinder of Darius Hystaspis[261] takes place in a palm-grove, and furnishes the accompanying example of this form of vegetable life.

One gem, ascribed on somewhat doubtful grounds to the Persians of Achæmenian times,[262] contains what appears to be a portrait. It is thought to be the bust of a satrap of Salamis, in Cyprus, and is very carefully executed. If really of Persian workmanship, it would indicate a considerable advance in the power of representing the human countenance between the time of Darius Hystaspis and that of Alexander. [Pl. LVII., Fig. 2.]

Persian coins are of three principal types. The earliest have on the one side the figure of a monarch bearing the diadem, and armed with the bow and javelin, while on the other there is an irregular indentation of the same nature with the *quadratum incusum* of the Greeks. This rude form is replaced in later times by a second design, which is sometimes a horseman,[263] sometimes the fore part of a ship,[264] sometimes the king drawing an arrow from his quiver.[265] Another type exhibits on the obverse the monarch in combat with a lion, while

the reverse shows a galley, or a towered and battlemented city with two lions standing below it, back to back.[267] The third common type has on the obverse the king in his chariot, with his charioteer in front of him, and (generally) an attendant carrying a fly-chaser behind. The reverse has either the trireme or the battlemented city.[268] A specimen of each type is given. [Pl. LVII., Fig. 4.]

The artistic merit of these medals is not great. The relief is low, and the drawing generally somewhat rude. The head of the monarch in the early coins is greatly too large. The animal forms are, however, much superior to the human, and the horses which draw the royal chariot, the lions placed below the battlemented city, and the bulls which are found occasionally in the same position,[269] must be pronounced truthful and spirited.

Of the Persian taste in furniture, utensils, personal ornaments and the like, we need say but little. The throne and footstool of the monarch are the only pieces of furniture represented in the sculptures, and these, though sufficiently elegant in their forms,[269] are not very remarkable. Costliness of material seems to have been more prized than beauty of shape; and variety appears to have been carefully eschewed, one single uniform type of each article occurring in all the representations. The utensils represented are likewise few in number, and limited to certain constantly repeated forms. The most elaborate is the censer, which has been already given.[270] With this is usually seen a sort of pail or basket, shaped like a lady's reticule, in which the aromatic gums for burning were probably kept. [Pl. LVIII., Fig. 5.] A covered dish, and a goblet with an inverted saucer over it, are also forms of frequent occurrence in the hands of the royal attendants; and the tribute-bearers frequently carry, among their other offerings, bowls or basons,[271] which, though not of Persian manufacture, were no doubt left at the court, and took their place among the utensils of the palace. [Pl. LVIII., Figs. 2 and 3.]

In the matter of personal ornaments the taste of the Persians seems to have been peculiarly simple. Earrings were commonly plain rings of gold: bracelets mere bands of the same metal.[272] Collars were circlets of gold twisted in a very inartificial fashion.[273] There was nothing artistic in the sheaths or hilts of swords, though spear-shafts were sometimes adorned with the representation of an apple or a pomegranate.[274] Dresses seem not to have been often patterned,

but to have depended generally for their effect on make and color. In all these respects we observe a remarkable contrast between the Arian and the Semitic races, extreme simplicity characterizing the one, while the most elaborate ornamentation was affected by the other.[275]

Persia was not celebrated in antiquity for the production of any special fabrics. The arts of weaving and dyeing were undoubtedly practised in the dominant country, as well as in most of the subject provinces, and the Persian dyes seem even to have had a certain reputation;[276] but none of the productions of their looms acquired a name among foreign nations. Their skill, indeed, in the mechanical arts generally was, it is probable, not more than moderate. It was their boast that they were soldiers, and had won a position by their good swords which gave them the command of all that was most exquisite and admirable, whether in the natural world or among the products of human industry. So long as the carpets of Babylon[277] and Sardis,[278] the shawls of Kashmir and India,[279] the fine linen of Borsippa[280] and Egypt,[281] the ornamental metal-work of Greece,[282] the coverlets of Damascus,[283] the muslins of Babylonia,[284] the multiform manufactures of the Phœnician towns,[285] poured continually into Persia Proper in the way of tribute, gifts, or merchandise, it was needless for the native population to engage largely in industrial enterprise.

To science the ancient Persians contributed absolutely nothing. The genius of the nation was adverse to that patient study and those laborious investigations from which alone scientific progress ensues. Too light and frivolous, too vivacious, too sensuous for such pursuits, they left them to the patient Babylonians, and the thoughful, many-sided Greeks. The schools of Orchoë, Borsippa, and Miletus flourished under their sway,[286] but without provoking their emulation, possibly without so much as attracting their attention. From first to last, from the dawn to the final close of their power, they abstained wholly from scientific studies. It would seem that they thought it enough to place before the world, as signs of their intellectual vigor, the fabric of their Empire and the buildings of Susa and Persepolis.

CHAPTER VI.

RELIGION.

Ἀγάλματα μὲν οὐκ ἐν νόμῳ ποιευμένους ἱδρύεσθαι, ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῖσι ποιεῦσι μωρίην ἐπίφερουσι.—Herod. i. 131.

Μαγεία Ζωροάστρου τοῦ Ὡρομάζου.—Plat. *Alcib.* i. 122, A.

THE original form of the Persian religion has been already described under the head of the third or Median monarchy.[1] It was identical with the religion of the Medes in its early shape, consisting mainly in the worship of Ahura-Mazda, the acknowledgment of a principle of evil—Angro-Mainyus, and obedience to the precepts of Zoroaster. When the Medes, on establishing a wide-spread Empire, chiefly over races by whom Magism had been long professed, allowed the creed of their subjects to corrupt their own belief, accepted the Magi for their priests, and formed the mixed religious system of which an account has been given in the second volume of this work,[2] the Persians in their wilder country, less exposed to corrupting influences, maintained their original faith in undiminished purity, and continued faithful to their primitive traditions. The political dependence of their country upon Media during the period of the Median sway made no difference in this respect; for the Medes were tolerant, and did not seek to interfere with the creed of their subjects. The simple Zoroastrian belief and worship, overlaid by Magism in the now luxurious Media, found a refuge in the rugged Persian uplands, among the hardy shepherds and cultivators of that unattractive region, was professed by the early Achæmenian princes, and generally acquiesced in by the people.

The main feature of the religion during this first period was the acknowledgment and the worship of a single supreme God—"the Lord God of Heaven"[3]—"the giver (*i.e.* maker) of heaven and earth"[4]—the disposer of thrones, the dispenser of happiness. The foremost place in inscriptions and decrees[5] was assigned, almost universally, to the "*great* god, Ormazd." Every king, of whom we have an inscription more than two lines in length, speaks of Ormazd as his upholder; and the early monarchs mention by name no other god. All rule "by

the grace of Ormazd." From Ormazd come victory, conquest, safety, prosperity, blessings of every kind. The "law of Ormazd" is the rule of life. The protection of Ormazd is the one priceless blessing for which prayer is perpetually offered.

While, however, Ormazd holds this exalted and unapproachable position, there is still an acknowledgment made, in a general way, of "other gods." Ormazd is "the greatest of the gods" (*mathista bagánám*[9]). It is a usual prayer to ask for the protection of Ormazd, together with that of these lesser powers (*huda bagaibish*[9]). Sometimes the phrase is varied, and the petition is for the special protection of a certain class of Deities—the *Dii familiares*—or "deities who guard the house."

The worship of Mithra, or the Sun, does not appear in the inscriptions until the reign of Artaxerxes Mnemon, the victor of Cunaxa. It is, however, impossible to doubt that it was a portion of the Persian religion, at least as early as the date of Herodotus.[10] Probably it belongs, in a certain sense, to primitive Zoroastrianism, but was kept in the background during the early period, when a less materialistic worship prevailed than suited the temper of later times.[11]

Nor can it be doubted that the Persians held during this early period that Dualistic belief which has been the distinguishing feature of Zoroastrianism from a time long anterior to the commencement of the Median Empire down to the present day. It was not to be expected that this belief would show itself in the inscriptions, unless in the faintest manner; and it can therefore excite no surprise that they are silent, or all but silent, on the point in question.[12] Nor need we wonder that this portion of their creed was not divulged by the Persians to Herodotus or to Xenophon, since it is exactly the sort of subject on which reticence was natural and might have been anticipated. Neither the lively Halicarnassian, nor the pleasant but somewhat shallow Athenian, had the gift of penetrating very deeply into the inner mind of a foreign people; added to which, it is to be remembered that they were unacquainted with Persia Proper, and drew their knowledge of Persian opinions and customs either from hearsay or from the creed and practices of the probably *mixed* garrisons[13] which held Asia Minor, Syria, and Egypt.

Persian worship, in these early times, was doubtless that enjoined by the Zendavesta, comprising prayer and thanksgiving to Ormazd and the good spirits of his creation, the

recitation of Gâthâs or hymns, the performance of sacrifice, and participation in the Soma ceremony.[14] Worship seems to have taken place in temples, which are mentioned (according to the belief of most cuneiform scholars) in the Behistun inscription.[15] Of the character of these buildings we can say nothing. It has been thought that those two massive square towers so similar in construction, which exist in a more or less ruined condition at Murgab and Nakhsh-i-Rustam,[16] are Persian temples of the early period, built to contain an altar on which the priests offered victims.[17] But the absence of any trace of an altar from both, the total want of religious emblems, and the extremely small size of the single apartment which each tower contains,[18] make strongly against the temple theory: not to mention that a much more probable use[19] may be suggested for the buildings.

With respect to the altars upon which sacrifice was offered, we are not left wholly without evidence. The Persian monarchs of the early period, including Darius Hystaspis, represented themselves on their tombs in the act of worship. Before them, at the distance of a few feet, stands an altar, elevated on three steps, and crowned with the sacrificial fire.[20] Its form is square, and its only ornaments are a sunken squared recess, and a strongly projecting cornice at top. The height of the altar, including the steps, was apparently about four and a half feet.[21] [Pl. LVIII., Fig. 4.]

The Persians' favorite victim was the horse;[22] but they likewise sacrificed cattle, sheep, and goats. Human sacrifices seem to have been almost, if not altogether, unknown to them,[23] and were certainly alien to the entire spirit of the Zoroastrian system. The flesh of the victim was probably merely shown to the sacred fire, after which it was eaten by the priests, the sacrificer, and those whom the latter associated with himself in the ceremony.[24]

The spirit of the Zendavesta is wholly averse to idolatry, and we may fully accept the statement of Herodotus that images of the gods were entirely unknown to the Persians.[25] Still, they did not deny themselves a certain use of symbolic representations of their deities, nor did they even scruple to adopt from idolatrous nations the forms of their religious symbolism.[26] The winged circle, with or without the addition of a human figure, which was in Assyria the emblem of the chief Assyrian deity, Asshur,[27] became with the Persians the ordinary representation of the Supreme God, Ormazd, and, as such, was

placed in most conspicuous positions on their rock tombs and on their buildings.[29] [Pl. LVIII., Fig. 7.] Nor was the general idea only of the emblem adopted, but all the details of the Assyrian model were followed, with one exception. The human figure of the Assyrian original wore the close-fitting tunic, with short sleeves, which was the ordinary costume in Assyria, and had on its head the horned cap which marked a god or a genius. In the Persian counterpart this costume was exchanged for the Median robe, and a tiara, which was sometimes that proper to the king,[30] sometimes that worn with the Median robe by court officers.[31] [Pl. LVIII., Fig. 7.]

Mithra, or the Sun, is represented in Persian sculptures by a disk or orb, which is not four-rayed like the Assyrian,[31] but perfectly plain and simple. In sculptures where the emblems of Ormazd and Mithra occur together, the position of the former is central, that of the latter towards the right hand of the tablet. The solar emblem is universal on sculptured tombs,[32] but is otherwise of rare occurrence.

Spirits of good and evil, the Ahuras and Devas of the mythology, were represented by the Persians under human, animal, or monstrous forms. There can be little doubt that it is a good genius perhaps the "well-formed, swift, tall Serosh"[33]—who appears on one of the square pillars set up by Cyrus at Pasargadæ.[34] This figure is that of a colossal man, from whose shoulders issue four wings, two of which spread upwards above his head, while the other two droop and reach nearly to his feet. [Pl. LIX.] It stands erect, in profile, with both arms raised and the hands open. The costume of the figure is remarkable. It consists of a long fringed robe reaching from the neck to the ankles—apparently of a stiff material, which conceals the form—and of a very singular head-dress. This is a striped cap, closely fitting the head, overshadowed by an elaborate ornament, of a character purely Egyptian. First there rise from the top of the cap two twisted horns, which, spreading right and left, become a sort of basis for the other forms to rest upon. These consist of two grotesque human-headed figures, one at either side, and of a complex triple ornament between them, clumsily imitated from a far more elegant Egyptian model. [Pl. LX., Fig. 1.]

The winged human-headed bulls, which the Persians adopted from the Assyrians, with very slight modifications,[35] were also, it is probable, regarded as emblems of some god or good genius. They would scarcely otherwise have been represented on

Persian cylinders as upholding the emblem of Ormazd in the same way that human-headed bulls uphold the similar emblem of Asshur on Assyrian cylinders. [Pl. LX., Fig. 2.] Their position, too, at Persepolis, where they kept watch over the entrance to the palace,[36] accords with the notion that they represented guardian spirits, objects of the favorable regard of the Persians. Yet this view is not wholly free from difficulty. The bull appears in the bas-reliefs of Persepolis among the evil, or at any rate hostile, powers, which the king combats and slays;[37] and though in these representations the animal is not winged or human-headed, yet on some cylinders apparently Persian, the monarch contends with bulls of exactly the same type as that which is assigned in other cylinders to the upholders of Ormazd.[38] It would seem therefore that in this case the symbolism was less simple than usual, the bull in certain combinations and positions representing a god or a good spirit, while in others he was the type of a *dera* or evil genius.

The most common representatives of the Evil Powers of the mythology were lions, winged or unwinged, and monsters of several different descriptions. At Persepolis the lions which the king stabs or strangles are of the natural shape, and this type is found also upon gems and cylinders; but on these last the king's antagonist is often a winged, while sometimes he is a winged and horned, lion.[39] [Pl. LX., Fig. 3.] The monsters are of two principal types. In both the forms of a bird and a beast are commingled; but in the one the bird, and in the other the beast predominates. Specimens are given [Pl. IX., Fig. 4] taken from Persian gems and cylinders.[40]

Such seems to have been, in outline, the purer and more ancient form of the Persian religion. During its continuance a fierce iconoclastic spirit animated the princes of the Empire, who took every opportunity of showing their hatred and contempt for the idolatries of the neighboring nations, burning temples,[41] confiscating or destroying images,[42] scourging or slaying idolatrous priests,[43] putting a stop to festivals,[44] disturbing tombs,[45] smiting with the sword animals believed to be divine incarnations.[46] Within their own dominions the fear of stirring up religious wars compelled them to be moderately tolerant, unless it were after rebellion, when a province lay at their mercy; but when they invaded foreign countries, they were wont to exhibit in the most open and striking way their aversion to materialistic religions. In Greece, during the great invasion, they burned every temple that they came near;[47] in

Egypt, on their first attack, they outraged every religious feeling of the people.[48]

It was during this time of comparative purity, when the anti-idolatrous spirit was in full force, that a religious sympathy seems to have drawn together the two nations of the Persians and the Jews. Cyrus evidently identified Jehovah with Ormazd,[49] and, accepting as a divine command the prophecy of Isaiah,[50] undertook to rebuild their temple for a people who, like his own, allowed no image of God to defile the sanctuary. Darius, similarly, encouraged the completion of the work,[51] after it had been interrupted by the troubles which followed the death of Cambyses. The foundation was thus laid for that friendly intimacy between the two peoples, of which we have abundant evidence in the books of Ezra, Nehemiah, and Esther, a friendly intimacy which caused the Jews to continue faithful to Persia to the last, and to brave the conqueror of Issus[52] rather than desert masters who had shown them kindness and sympathy.

The first trace that we have of a corrupting influence being brought to bear on the Persian religion is connected with the history of the pseudo-Smerdis. According to Herodotus, Cambyses, when he set out on his Egyptian expedition, left a Magus, Patizeithes, at the capital, as comptroller of the royal household.[53] The conferring of an office of such importance on the priest of an alien religion is the earliest indication which we have of a diminution of zeal for their ancestral creed on the part of the Achæmenian kings, and the earliest historical proof of the existence of Magism beyond the limits of Media. Magism was really, it is probable, an older creed than Zoroastrianism in the country where the Persians were settled; but it now, for the first time since the Persian conquest, began to show itself, to thrust itself into high places, and to attract general notice. From being the religion of the old Scythic tribes whom the Persians had conquered and whom they held in subjection, it had passed into being the religion of great numbers of the Persians themselves. The same causes which had corrupted Zoroastrianism in Media soon after the establishment of the Empire, worked also, though more slowly, in Persia, and a large section of the nation was probably weaned from its own belief, and won over to Magism, before Cambyses went into Egypt.[54] His prolonged absence in that country brought matters to a crisis. The Magi took advantage of it to attempt a substitution of Magism for Zoroastrianism as the religion of the

state.[55] When this attempt failed, there was no doubt a reaction for a time, and Zoroastrianism thought itself triumphant. But a foe is generally most dangerous when he is despised. Magism, repulsed in its attempt to oust the rival religion, derived wisdom from the lesson, and thenceforth set itself to sap the fortress which it could not storm. Little by little it crept into favor, mingling itself with the old Arian creed, not displacing it, but only adding to it. In the later Persian system the Dualism of Zoroaster and the Magian elemental worship were jointly professed — the Magi were accepted as the national priests—the rights and ceremonies of the two religions were united—a syncretism not unusual in the ancient world blended into one two creeds originally quite separate and distinct, but in few respects antagonistic[56]—and the name of Zoroaster being still fondly cherished in the memory of the nation, while in their practical religion Magian rites predominated,[57] the mixed religion acquired the name, by which it was known to the later Greeks, of "the Magism of Zoroaster."[58]

The Magian rites have been described in the chapter on the Median Religion.[59] Their leading feature was the fire-worship, which is still cherished among those descendants of the ancient Persians who did not submit to the religion of Islam. On lofty spots in the high mountain-chain which traversed both Media and Persia, fire-altars were erected, on which burnt a perpetual flame, watched constantly lest it should expire,[60] and believed to have been kindled from heaven.[61] Over the altar in most instances a shrine or temple[62] was built; and on these spots day after day the Magi chanted their incantations, displayed their barsoms or divining-rods, and performed their choicest ceremonies. Victims were not offered on these fire-altars. When a sacrifice took place, a fire was laid hard-by with logs of dry wood, stript of their bark, and this was lighted from the flame which burned on the altar.[63] On the fire thus kindled was consumed a small part of the fat of the victim; but the rest was cut into joints, boiled, and eaten or sold by the worshipper.[64] The true offering, which the god accepted, was, according to the Magi, the *soul* of the animal.[65]

If human victims were ever really offered by the Persians as sacrifices, it is to Magian influence that the introduction of this horrid practice must be attributed, since it is utterly opposed to the whole spirit of Zoroaster's teaching. An instance of the practice is first reported in the reign of Xerxes, when Magism, which had been sternly repressed by Darius Hystaspis, began

once more to lift its head, crept into favor at Court,[66] and obtained a *status* which it never afterwards forfeited. According to Herodotus, the Persians, on their march into Greece, sacrificed, at Ennea Hodoi on the Strymon river, nine youths and nine maidens of the country, by burying them alive.[67] Herodotus seems to have viewed the act as done in propitiation of a god resembling the Grecian Pluto; but it is not at all certain that he interpreted it correctly. Possibly he mistook a vengeance for a religious ceremony. The Brygi, who dwelt at this time in the vicinity of Ennea Hodoi, had given Mardonius a severe defeat on a former occasion;[68] and the Persians were apt to treasure up such wrongs, and visit them, when occasion offered, with extreme severity.[69]

When the Persians had once yielded to the syncretic spirit so far as to unite the Magian tenets and practices with their primitive belief, they were naturally led on to adopt into their system such portions of the other religions, with which they were brought into close contact, as possessed an attraction for them. Before the date of Herodotus they had borrowed from the Babylonians the worship of a Nature-Goddess,[70] whom the Greeks identified at one time with Aphrodité, at another with Artemis, at another (probably) with Heré,[71] and had thus made a compromise with one of the grossest of the idolatries which, theoretically, they despised and detested. The Babylonian Venus, called in the original dialect of her native country Nana, was taken into the Pantheon of the Persians, under the name of Nanæa, Anæa, Anaitis, or Tanata,[72] and became in a little while one of the principal objects of Persian worship. At first idolatry, in the literal sense, was avoided: but Artaxerxes Mnemon, the conqueror of Cunaxa, an ardent devotee of the goddess,[73] not content with the mutilated worship which he found established, resolved to show his zeal by introducing into all the chief cities of the Empire the image of his patroness. At Susa, at Persepolis, at Babylon, at Ecbatana, at Damascus, at Sardis, at Bactra,[74] images of Anaitis were set up by his authority for the adoration of worshippers. It is to be feared that at this time, if not before, the lascivious rites were also adopted, which throughout the East constituted the chief attraction of the cult of Venus.[75]

With the idolatry thus introduced, another came soon to be joined. Mithra, so long an object of reverence, if not of actual worship, to the Zoroastrians, was in the reign of Artaxerxes Mnemon, honored, like Anaitis, with a statue, and

advanced into the foremost rank of deities.[76] The exact form which the image took is uncertain; but probability is in favor of the well-known type of a human figure slaying a prostrate bull,[77] which was to the Greeks and Romans the essential symbol of the Mithraic worship. The intention of this oft-repeated group has been well explained by Hyde, who regards it as a representation of the Sun quitting the constellation of Taurus,[78] the time when in the East his fructifying power is the greatest. The specimens which we possess of this group belong to classical art and to times later than Alexander; but we can scarcely suppose the idea to have been Occidental. The Western artists would naturally adopt the symbolism of those from whom they took the rites, merely modifying its expression in accordance with their own æsthetic notions.

Towards the close of the Empire two other gods emerged from the obscurity in which the lower deities of the Zoroastrian system were shrouded during the earlier and purer period. Vohu-manu, or Bah-man, and Amerdat, or Amendat, two of the councillors of Ormazd,[79] became the objects of a worship, which was clearly of an idolatrous character.[80] Shrines were built in their honor,[81] and were frequented by companies of Magi, who chanted their incantations, and performed their rites of divination in these new edifices as willingly as in the old Fire-temples. The image of Bah-man was of wood, and was borne in procession on certain occasions.[82]

Thus as time went on, the Persian religion continually assimilated itself more and more to the forms of belief and worship which prevailed in the neighboring parts of Asia. Idolatries of several kinds came into vogue, some adopted from abroad, others developed out of their own system. Temples, some of which had a character of extraordinary magnificence,[83] were erected to the honor of various gods; and the degenerate descendants of pure Zoroastrian spiritualists bowed down to images, and entangled themselves in the meshes of a sensualistic and most debasing Nature-worship. Still, amid whatsoever corruptions, the Dualistic faith was maintained. The supremacy of Ormazd was from first to last admitted. Ahriman retained from first to last the same character and position, neither rising into an object of worship,[84] nor sinking into a mere personification of evil. The inquiries which Aristotle caused to be made, towards the very close of the Empire, into the true nature of the Persian Religion, showed him Ormazd and Ahriman still recognized as "Principles," still standing in

the same hostile and antithetical attitude, one towards the other," which they occupied when the first Fargard of the Vendidad was written, long anterior to the rise of the Persian Power.

CHAPTER VII.

CHRONOLOGY AND HISTORY.

"I saw the man pushing westward, and northward, and southward; so that no beast might stand before him, neither was there any that could deliver out of his hand; but he did according to his will, and became great."—Daniel, viii. 4.

Συνέβη τοῖς Πέρσαις ἐνδοξοτάτοις γενέσθαι τῶν βαρβάρων.—Strabo, xv. 3, § 23.

THE history of the Persian EMPIRE dates from the conquest of Astyages by Cyrus, and therefore commences with the year B.C. 558.[1] But the present inquiry must be carried considerably further back, since in this, as in most other cases, the Empire grew up out of a previously existing monarchy. Darius Hystaspis reckons that there had been eight Persians kings of his race previously to himself;[2] and though it is no doubt possible that some of the earlier names may be fictitious, yet we can scarcely suppose that he was deceived, or that he wished to deceive, as to the fact that long anterior to his own reign, or that of his elder contemporary, Cyrus, Persia had been a monarchy, governed by a line of princes of the same clan, or family, with himself. It is our business in this place, before entering upon the brilliant period of the Empire, to cast a retrospective glance over the earlier ages of obscurity, and to collect therefrom such scattered notices as are to be found of the Persians and their princes or kings before they suddenly attracted the general attention of the civilized world by their astonishing achievements under the great Cyrus.

The more ancient of the sacred books of the Jews, while distinctly noticing the nation of the Medes,[4] contain no mention at all of Persia or the Persians.[5] The Zendavesta, the sacred volume of the people themselves, is equally silent on the subject. The earliest appearance of the Persians in history is in the inscriptions of the Assyrian kings, which begin to notice them about the middle of the ninth century B.C. At this time Shalmaneser II. found them in south-western Ar-

menia,[6] where they were in close contact with the Medes, of whom, however, they seem to have been wholly independent. Like the modern Kurds in this same region, they owned no subjection to a single head, but were under the government of numerous petty chieftains, each the lord of a single town or of a small mountain district. Shalmaneser informs us that he took tribute from twenty-five such chiefs. Similar tokens of submission were paid also to his son and grandson.[7] After this the Assyrian records are silent as to the Persians for nearly a century, and it is not until the reign of Sennacherib that we once more find them brought into contact with the power which aspired to be mistress of Asia. At the time of their reappearance they are no longer in Armenia, but have descended the line of Zagros and reached the districts which lie north and north-east of Susiana, or that part of the Bakhtiyari chain which, if it is not actually within Persia Proper, at any rate immediately adjoins upon it. Arrived thus far, it was easy for them to occupy the region to which they have given permanent name;[8] for the Bakhtiyari mountains command it and give a ready access to its valleys and plains.

The Persians would thus appear not to have completed their migrations till near the close of the Assyrian period, and it is probable that they did not settle into an organized monarchy much before the fall of Nineveh. At any rate we hear of no Persian ruler of note or name in the Assyrian records, and the reign of petty chiefs would seem therefore to have continued at least to the time of Asshur-bani-pal, up to which date we have ample records. The establishment, however, about the year B.C. 660, or a little later,[9] of a powerful monarchy in the kindred and neighboring Media, could not fail to attract attention, and might well provoke imitation in Persia; and the native tradition appears to have been that about this time[10] Persian royalty began in the person of a certain Achæmenes (Hakhamanish), from whom all their later monarchs, with one possible exception,[11] were proud to trace their descent.

The name Achæmenes cannot fail to arouse some suspicion. The Greek genealogies render us so familiar with *heroës eponymi*—imaginary personages, who owe their origin to the mere fact of the existence of certain tribe or race names, to account for which they were invented—that whenever, even in the history of other nations, we happen upon a name professedly personal, which stands evidently in close connection with a tribal designation, we are apt at once to suspect it of being

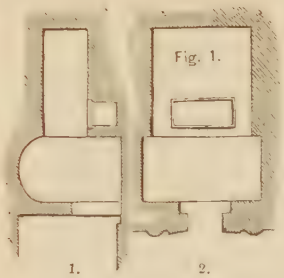
fictitious. But in the East tribal and even ethnic names were certainly sometimes derived from actual persons;[12] and it may be questioned whether the Persians, or the Iranic stock generally, had the notion of inventing personal eponyms.[13] The name Achæmenes, therefore, in spite of its connection with the royal clan name of Achæmenidæ, may stand as perhaps that of a real Persian king,[14] and, if so, as probably that of the first king, the original founder of the monarchy, who united the scattered tribes in one, and thus raised Persia into a power of considerable importance.

The immediate successor of Achæmenes appears to have been his son, Teispes.[15] Of him and of the next three monarchs, the information that we possess is exceedingly scanty. The very names of one or two in the series are uncertain.[16] One tradition assigns either to the second or the fourth[17] king of the list the establishment of friendly relations with a certain Pharnaces, King of Cappadocia, by an intermarriage between a Persian princess, Atossa, and the Cappadocian monarch. The existence of communication at this time between petty countries politically unconnected, and placed at such a distance from one another as Cappadocia and Persia, is certainly what we should not have expected; but our knowledge of the general condition of Western Asia at the period is too slight to justify us in a positive rejection of the story, which indicates, if it be true, that even during this time of comparative obscurity, the Persian monarchs were widely known, and that their alliance was thought a matter of importance.

The political condition of Persia under these early monarchs is a more interesting question than either the names of the kings or the foreign alliances which they attracted. According to Herodotus, that condition was one of absolute and unqualified subjection to the sway of the Medes, who conquered Persia and imposed their yoke upon the people before the year B.C. 634.[18] The native records,[19] however, and the accounts which Xenophon[20] preferred, represent Persia as being at this time a separate and powerful state, either wholly independent of Media, or, at any rate, held in light bonds of little more than nominal dependence. On the whole, it appears most probable that the true condition of the country was that which this last phrase expresses. It may be doubted whether there had ever been a conquest; but the weaker and less developed of the two kindred states owned the suzerainty of the stronger, and though quite unshackled in her internal administration,

and perhaps not very much interfered with in her relations towards foreign countries, was, formally, a sort of Median fief, standing nearly in the position in which Egypt now stands to Turkey. The position was irksome to the sovereigns rather than unpleasant to the people. It detracted from the dignity of the Persian monarchs, and injured their self-respect; it probably caused them occasional inconvenience, since from time to time they would have to pay their court to their suzerain; and it seems towards the close of the Median period to have involved an obligation which must have been felt, if not as degrading, at any rate as very disagreeable. The monarch appears to have been required to send his eldest son as a sort of hostage [21] to the Court of his superior, where he was held in a species of honorable captivity, not being allowed to quit the Court and return home without leave,[22] but being otherwise well treated. The fidelity of the father was probably supposed to be in this way secured while it might be hoped that the son would be conciliated, and made an attached and willing dependent.

When Persian history first fairly opens upon us in the pages of Xenophon and of Nicolaüs Damascenus, this is the condition of things which we find existing. Cambyses, the father of Cyrus the Great—called Atradates by the Syrian writer—is ruler of Persia,[23] and resides in his native country, while his son Cyrus is permanently, or at any rate usually, resident at the Median Court, where he is in high favor with the reigning monarch, Astyages. According to Xenophon, who has here the support of Herodotus, he is Astyages' grandson, his father, Cambyses, being married to Mandané, that monarch's daughter.[24] According to Nicolaüs, who in this agrees with Ctesias,[25] he is no way related to Astyages, who retains him at his court because he is personally attached to him. In the narrative of the latter writer, which has already been preferred in these volumes,[26] the young prince, while at the Court, conceives the idea of freeing his own country by a revolt, and enters into secret communication with his father for the furtherance of his object. His father somewhat reluctantly assents, and preparations are made, which lead to the escape of Cyrus and the commencement of a war of independence. The details of the struggle, as they are related by Nicolaüs, have been already given.[27] After repeated defeats, the Persians finally make a stand at Pasargadæ, their capital,

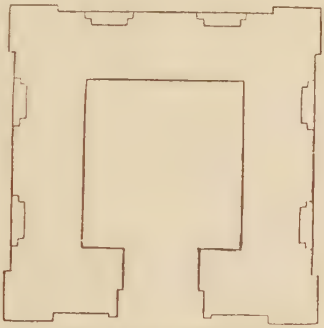


1. Section of Tomb, Persepolis.
2. Ground plan of the same.

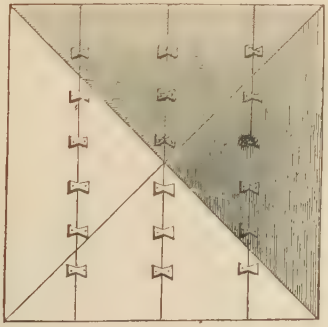
Fig. 2.

Entrance to a Royal Tomb, Persepolis.

Fig. 3.

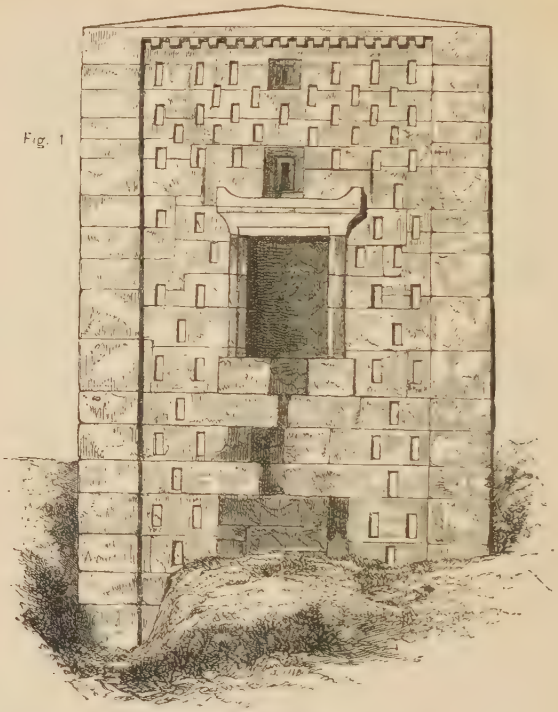


1. Section of Tower, Nakhsh-i-Rustam.



2. Roof of the same.

Fig. 1



Front View of the Tower, showing excavation.

Fig. 2.

Massive Gateway (Istakr).

where in two great battles they destroy the power of Astyages, who himself remains a prisoner in the hands of his adversary.

In the course of the struggle the father of Cyrus had fallen, and its close, therefore, presented Cyrus himself before the eyes of the Western Asiatics as the undisputed lord of the great Arian Empire which had established itself on the ruins of the Semitic. Transfers of sovereignty are easily made in the East, where independence is little valued, and each new conqueror is hailed with acclamations from millions. It mattered nothing to the bulk of Astyages' subjects whether they were ruled from Ecbatana or Pasargadæ, by Median or Persian masters. Fate[30] had settled that a single lord was to bear sway over the tribes and nations dwelling between the Persian Gulf and the Euxine; and the arbitrament of the sword had now decided that this single lord should be Cyrus. We may readily believe the statement of Nicolaüs that the nations previously subject to the Medes vied with each other in the celerity and zeal with which they made their submission to the Persian conqueror.[31] Cyrus succeeded at once to the full inheritance of which he had dispossessed Astyages, and was recognized as king by all the tribes between the Halys and the desert of Khorassan.[32]

He was at this time, if we may trust Dino,[33] exactly forty years of age, and was thus at that happy period in life when the bodily powers have not yet begun to decay, while the mental are just reaching their perfection. Though we may not be able to trust implicitly the details of the war of independence which have come down to us, yet there can be no doubt that he had displayed in its course very remarkable courage and conduct. He had intended, probably, no more than to free his country from the Median yoke; by the force of circumstances he had been led on to the destruction of the Median power, and to the establishment of a Persian Empire in its stead. With empire had come an enormous accession of wealth. The accumulated stores of ages, the riches of the Ninevite kings—the "gold," the "silver," and the "pleasant furniture" of those mighty potentates, of which there was "none end"[34]—together with all the additions made to these stores by the Median monarchs, had fallen into his hands, and from comparative poverty he had come *per saltum* into the position of one of the wealthiest—if not of *the* very wealthiest—of princes. An ordinary Oriental would have been content

with such a result, and have declined to tempt fortune any more. But Cyrus was no ordinary Oriental. Confident in his own powers, active, not to say restless, and of an ambition that nothing could satiate, he viewed the position which he had won simply as a means of advancing himself to higher eminence. According to Ctesias,[33] he was scarcely seated upon the throne, when he led an expedition to the far north-east against the renowned Bactrians and Sacans: and at any rate, whether this be true or no—and most probably it is an anticipation of later occurrences—it is certain that, instead of folding his hands, Cyrus proceeded with scarcely a pause on a long career of conquest, devoting his whole life to the carrying out of his plans of aggression, and leaving a portion of his schemes, which were too extensive for one life to realize, as a legacy to his successor.[34] The quarter to which he really first turned his attention seems to have been the north-west. There, in the somewhat narrow but most fertile tract between the river Halys and the Egean Sea, was a state which seemed likely to give him trouble—a state which had successfully resisted all the efforts of the Medes to reduce it,[35] and which recently, under a warlike prince, had shown a remarkable power of expansion.[36] An instinct of danger warned the scarce firmly-settled monarch to fix his eye at once upon Lydia: in the wealthy and successful Crœsus, the Lydian king, he saw one whom dynastic interests might naturally lead to espouse the quarrel of the conquered Mede, and whose power and personal qualities rendered him a really formidable rival.

The Lydian monarch, on his side, did not scruple to challenge a contest. The long strife which his father had waged with the great Cyaxares had terminated in a close alliance, cemented by a marriage, which made Crœsus and Astyages brothers.[37] The friendship of the great power of Western Asia, secured by this union, had set Lydia free to pursue a policy of self-aggrandizement in her own immediate neighborhood. Rapidly, one after another, the kingdoms of Asia Minor had been reduced; and, excepting the mountain districts of Lycia and Cilicia,[38] all Asia within the Halys now owned the sway of the Lydian king. Contented with his successes, and satisfied that the tie of relationship secured him from attack on the part of the only power which he had need to fear, Crœsus had for some years given himself up to the enjoyment of his gains and to an ostentatious display of his magnificence.[39] It was a rude shock to the indolent and self-com-

placent dreams of a sanguine optimism, which looked that "to-morrow should be as to-day, only much more abundant," when tidings came that revolution had raised its head in the far south-east, and that an energetic prince, in the full vigor of life, and untrammelled by dynastic ties, had thrust the aged Astyages from his throne, and girt his own brows with the Imperial diadem. Crœsus, according to the story, was still in deep grief on account of the untimely death of his eldest son,[42] when the intelligence reached him. Instantly rousing himself from his despair, he set about his preparations for the struggle, which his sagacity saw to be inevitable. After consultation of the oracles of Greece, he allied himself with the Grecian community, which appeared to him on the whole to be the most powerful.[43] At the same time he sent ambassadors to Babylon and Memphis,[44] to the courts of Labynetus and Amasis, with proposals for an alliance offensive and defensive between the three secondary powers of the Eastern world against that leading power whose superior strength and resources were felt to constitute a common danger. His representations were effectual. The kings of Babylon and Egypt, alive to their own peril, accepted his proposals; and a joint league was formed between the three monarchs and the republic of Sparta for the purpose of resisting the presumed aggressive spirit of the Medo-Persians

Cyrus, meanwhile, was not idle. Suspecting that a weak point in his adversary's harness would be the disaffection of some of his more recently conquered subjects, he sent emissaries into Asia Minor to sound the dispositions of the natives. These emissaries particularly addressed themselves to the Asiatic Greeks,[45] who, coming of a freedom-loving stock, and having been only very lately subdued,[46] would it was thought, be likely to catch at an opportunity of shaking off the yoke of their conqueror. But, reasonable as such hopes must have seemed, they were in this instance doomed to disappointment. The Ionians, instead of hailing Cyrus as a liberator, received his overtures with suspicion. They probably thought that they were sure not to gain, and that they might possibly lose, by a change of masters. The yoke of Crœsus had not, perhaps, been very oppressive; at any rate it seemed to them preferable to "bear the ills they had," rather than "fly to others" which might turn out less tolerable.

Disappointed in this quarter, the Persian prince directed his efforts to the concentration of a large army, and its rapid ad-

vance into a position where it would be excellently placed both for defence and attack. The frontier province of Cappadocia, which was only separated from the dominions of the Lydian monarch by a stream of moderate size, the Halys, was a most defensible country, extremely fertile and productive,[45] abounding in natural fastnesses,[46] and inhabited by a brave and warlike population. Into this district Cyrus pushed forward his army with all speed, taking, as it would seem, not the short route through Diarbekr, Malatiyah, and Gurun, along which the "Royal Road" afterwards ran,[47] but the more circuitous one by Erzerum, which brought him into Northern Cappadocia, or Pontus, as it was called by the Romans. Here, in a district named Pteria,[48] which cannot have been very far from the coast,[49] he found his adversary, who had crossed the Halys, and taken several Cappadocian towns, among which was the chief city of the Pterians. Perceiving that his troops considerably outnumbered those of Crœsus,[50] he lost no time in giving him battle. The action was fought in the Pterian country, and was stoutly contested, terminating at nightfall without any decisive advantage to either party. The next day neither side made any movement; and Crœsus, concluding from his enemy's inaction that, though he had not been able to conquer him, he had nothing to fear from his desire of vengeance or his spirit of enterprise, determined on a retreat. He laid the blame of his failure, we are told, on the insufficient number of his troops, and purposed to call for the contingents of his allies, and renew the war with largely augmented forces in the ensuing spring.[51]

Cyrus, on his part, allowed the Lydians to retire unmolested, thus confirming his adversary in the mistaken estimate which he had formed of Persian courage and daring. Anticipating the course which Crœsus would adopt under the circumstances, he kept his army well in hand, and, as soon as the Lydians were clean gone, he crossed the Halys, and marched straight upon Sardis.[52] Crœsus, deeming himself safe from molestation, had no sooner reached his capital than he had dismissed the bulk of his troops to their homes for the winter, merely giving them orders to return in the spring, when he hoped to have received auxiliaries from Sparta, Babylon, and Egypt. Left thus almost without defence, he suddenly heard that his audacious foe had followed on his steps, had ventured into the heart of his dominions, and was but a short distance from the capital. In this crisis he showed a spirit well worthy of admi-

ration. Putting himself at the head of such an army of native Lydians as he could collect at a few hours' notice, he met the advancing foe in the rich plain a little to the east of Sardis,[53] and gave him battle immediately. It is possible that even under these disadvantageous circumstances he might in fair fight have been victorious, for the Lydian cavalry were at this time excellent, and decidedly superior to the Persian.[54] But Cyrus, aware of their merits, had recourse to stratagem, and by forming his camels in front, so frightened the Lydian horses that they fled from the field.[55] The riders dismounted and fought on foot, but their gallantry was unavailing. After a prolonged and bloody combat the Lydian army was defeated, and forced to take refuge behind the walls of the capital.

Crœsus now in hot haste sent off fresh messengers to his allies, begging them to come at once to his assistance.[56] He had still a good hope of maintaining himself till their arrival, for his city was defended by walls, and was regarded by the natives as impregnable.[57] An attempt to storm the defences failed; and the siege must have been turned into a blockade but for an accidental discovery. A Persian soldier had approached to reconnoitre the citadel on the side where it was strongest by nature, and therefore guarded with least care,[58] when he observed one of the garrison descend the rock after his helmet, which had fallen from his head, pick it up, and return with it. Being an expert climber, he attempted the track thus pointed out to him, and succeeded in reaching the summit. Several of his comrades followed in his steps; the citadel was surprised, and the town taken and plundered.

Thus fell the greatest city of Asia Minor after a siege of fourteen days.[59] The Lydian monarch, it is said, narrowly escaped with his life from the confusion of the sack;[60] but, being fortunately recognized in time, was made prisoner, and brought before Cyrus. Cyrus at first treated him with some harshness,[61] but soon relented, and, with that clemency which was a common characteristic of the earlier Persian kings,[62] assigned him a territory for his maintenance,[63] and gave him an honorable position at Court, where he passed at least thirty years,[64] in high favor, first with Cyrus, and then with Cambyses. Lydia itself was absorbed at once into the Persian Empire, together with most of its dependencies, which submitted as soon as the fall of Sardis was known. There still, however, remained a certain amount of subjugation to be effected. The

Greeks of the coast, who had offended the Great King by their refusal of his overtures,[65] were not to be allowed to pass quietly into the condition of tributaries; and there were certain native races in the south-western corner of Asia Minor which declined to submit without a struggle to the new conqueror.[66] But these matters were not regarded by Cyrus as of sufficient importance to require his own personal superintendence. Having remained at Sardis for a few weeks, during which time he received an insulting message from Sparta, whereto he made a menacing reply,[67] and having arranged for the government of the newly-conquered province and the transmission of its treasures to Ecbatana, he quitted Lydia for the interior, taking Crœsus with him, and proceeded towards the Median capital. He was bent on prosecuting without delay his schemes of conquest in other quarters—schemes of a grandeur and a comprehensiveness unknown to any previous monarch.[68]

Scarcely, however, was he departed when Sardis became the scene of an insurrection. Pactyas, a Lydian, who had been entrusted with the duty of conveying the treasures of Crœsus and his more wealthy subjects to Ecbatana, revolted against Tabalus,[69] the Persian commandant of the town, and being joined by the native population and numerous mercenaries, principally Greeks,[70] whom he hired with the treasure that was in his hands, made himself master of Sardis, and besieged Tabalus in the citadel. The news reached Cyrus while he was upon his march; but, estimating the degree of its importance aright, he did not suffer it to interfere with his plans. He judged it enough to send a general with a strong body of troops to put down the revolt, and continued his own journey eastward.[71] Mazares, a Mede, was the officer selected for the service. On arriving before Sardis, he found that Pactyas had relinquished his enterprise and fled to the coast,[72] and that the revolt was consequently at an end. It only remained to exact vengeance. The rebellious Lydians were disarmed.[73] Pactyas was pursued with unrelenting hostility, and demanded, in succession, of the Cymæans, the Mytilenæans, and the Chians, of whom the last-mentioned surrendered him.[74] The Greek cities which had furnished Pactyas with auxiliaries were then attacked, and the inhabitants of the first which fell, Priêné, were one and all sold as slaves.[75]

Mazares soon afterwards died, and was succeeded by Harpagus, another Mede, who adopted a somewhat milder policy towards the unfortunate Greeks.[76] Besieging their cities one

by one, and taking them by means of banks or mounds piled up against the walls[63] he, in some instances, connived at the inhabitants escaping in their ships,[64] while, in others, he allowed them to take up the ordinary position of Persian subjects, liable to tribute and military service, but not otherwise molested.[65] So little irksome were such terms to the Ionians of this period that even those who dwelt in the islands off the coast, with the single exception of the Samians—though they ran no risk of subjugation, since the Persians did not possess a fleet[66]—accepted voluntarily the same position, and enrolled themselves among the subjects of Cyrus.[67]

One Greek continental town alone suffered nothing during this time of trouble. When Cyrus refused the offers of submission, which reached him from the Ionian and Æolian Greeks after his capture of Sardis, he made an exception in favor of Miletus,[68] the most important of all the Grecian cities in Asia. Prudence, it is probable, rather than clemency, dictated this course, since to detach from the Grecian cause the most powerful and influential of the states was the readiest way of weakening the resistance they would be able to make. Miletus singly had defied the arms of four successive Lydian kings,[69] and had only succumbed at last to the efforts of the fifth, Crœsus. If her submission had been now rejected, and she had been obliged to take counsel of her despair, the struggle between the Greek cities and the Persian generals might have assumed a different character.

Still more different might have been the result, if the cities generally had had the wisdom to follow a piece of advice which the great philosopher and statesman of the time, Thales, the Milesian, is said to have given them. Thales suggested that the Ionians should form themselves into a confederation, to be governed by a congress which should meet at Teos, the several cities retaining their own laws and internal independence,[70] but being united for military purposes into a single community. Judged by the light which later events, the great Ionian revolt especially, throw upon it, this advice is seen to have been of the greatest importance. It is difficult to say what check, or even reverse, the arms of Persia might not have at this time sustained, if the spirit of Thales had animated his Asiatic countrymen generally; if the loose Ionic Amphictyony, which in reality left each state in the hour of danger to its own resources, had been superseded by a true federal union, and the combined efforts of the thirteen Ionian communities[71] had been

directed to a steady resistance of Persian aggression and a determined maintenance of their own independence. Mazares and Harpagus would almost certainly have been baffled, and the Great King himself would probably have been called off from his eastern conquests to undertake in person a task which after all he might have failed to accomplish.

The fall of the last Ionian town left Harpagus free to turn his attention to the tribes of the south-west which had not yet made their submission—the Carians, the Dorian Greeks, the Caunians, and the people of Lycia. Impressing the services of the newly-conquered Ionians and Æolians,[86] he marched first against Caria, which offered but a feeble resistance.[87] The Dorians of the continent, Myndians, Halicarnassians, and Cnidians, submitted still more tamely, without any struggle at all; but the Caunians[88] and Lycians showed a different spirit. These tribes, which were ethnically allied,[89] and of a very peculiar type,[90] had never yet, it would seem, been subdued by any conqueror.[91] Prizing highly the liberty they had enjoyed so long, they defended themselves with desperation. When they were defeated in the field they shut themselves up within the walls of their chief cities, Caunus and Xanthus, where, finding resistance impossible, they set fire to the two places with their own hands, burned their wives, children, slaves, and valuables, and then sallying forth, sword in hand, fell on the besiegers' lines, and fought till they were all slain.[92]

Meanwhile Cyrus was pursuing a career of conquest in the far east. It was now, according to Herodotus, who is, beyond all question, a better authority than Ctesias for the reign of Cyrus, that the reduction of the Bactrians and the Sacans, the chief nations of what is called by moderns Central Asia, took place.[93] Bactria was a country which enjoyed the reputation of having been great and glorious at a very early date. In one of the most ancient portions of the Zendavesta it was celebrated as "*Bakhdi eredhwô-drafsha*," or "Bactria with the lofty banner;"[94] and traditions not wholly to be despised made it the native country of Zoroaster.[95] There is good reason to believe that, up to the date of Cyrus, it had maintained its independence, or at any rate that it had been untouched by the great monarchies which for above seven hundred years had borne sway in the western parts of Asia.[96] Its people were of the Iranic stock, and retained in their remote and somewhat savage country the simple and primitive habits of the race.[97] Though their arms were of indifferent character,[98] they were among the

best soldiers to be found in the East,[99] and always showed themselves a formidable enemy.[100] According to Ctesias, when Cyrus invaded them, they fought a pitched battle with his army, in which the victory was with neither party. They were not, he said, reduced by force of arms at all, but submitted voluntarily when they found that Cyrus had married a Median princess.[101] Herodotus, on the contrary, seems to include the Bactrians among the nations which Cyrus *subdued*,[102] and probability is strongly in favor of this view of the matter. So warlike a nation is not likely to have submitted unless to force; nor is there any ground to believe that a Median marriage, had Cyrus contracted one,[103] would have made him any the more acceptable to the Bactrians.[104]

On the conquest of Bactria followed, we may be tolerably sure, an attack upon the Sacæ. This people, who must certainly have bordered on the Bactrians,[105] dwelt probably either on the Pamir Steppe, or on the high plain of Chinese Tartary, east of the Bolar range—the modern districts of Kashgar and Yarkand.[106] They were reckoned excellent soldiers.[107] They fought with the bow, the dagger, and the battle-axe,[108] and were equally formidable on horseback and on foot.[109] In race they were probably Tâtars or Turanians, and their descendants or their congeners are to be seen in the modern inhabitants of these regions. According to Ctesias, their women took the field in almost equal numbers with their men; and the mixed army which resisted Cyrus amounted, including both sexes, to half a million.[110] The king who commanded them was a certain Amorges, who was married to a wife called Sparethra. In an engagement with the Persians he fell into the enemy's hands, whereupon Sparethra put herself at the head of the Sacan forces, defeated Cyrus, and took so many prisoners of importance that the Persian monarch was glad to release Amorges in exchange for them. The Sacæ, however, notwithstanding this success, were reduced, and became subjects and tributaries of Persia.[111]

Among other countries subdued by Cyrus in this neighborhood, probably about the same period, may be named Hyrcania, Parthia, Chorasmia, Sogdiana, Aria (or Herat), Drangiana, Arachosia, Sattagydia, and Gandaria. The brief epitome which we possess of Ctesias omits to make any mention of these minor conquests, while Herodotus sums them all up in a single line;[112] but there is reason to believe that the Cnidian historian gave a methodized account of their accomplishment,[113] of which

scattered notices have come down to us in various writers. Arrian relates that there was a city called Cyropolis, situated on the Jaxartes, a place of great strength defended by very lofty walls, which had been founded by the Great Cyrus.[114] This city belonged to Sogdiana. Pliny states that Capisa, the chief city of Capisêné, which lay not far from the upper Indus, was destroyed by Cyrus.[115] This place is probably Kafshan, a little to the north of Kabul. Several authors tell us that the Ariaspæ, a people of Drangiana, assisted Cyrus with provisions when he was warring in their neighborhood,[116] and received from him in return a new name, which the Greeks rendered by "Euergetæ"—"Benefactors."[117] The Ariaspæ must have dwelt near the Hamoon, or Lake of Seistan. We have thus traces of the conqueror's presence in the extreme north on the Jaxartes, in the extreme east in Affghanistan, and towards the south as far as Seistan and the Helmend; nor can there be any reasonable doubt that he overran and reduced to subjection the whole of that vast tract which lies between the Caspian on the west, the Indus valley and the desert of Tartary towards the east, the Jaxartes or Sir Deria on the north, and towards the south the Great Deserts of Seistan and Khorassan.

More uncertainty attaches to the reduction of the tract lying south of these deserts. Tradition said that Cyrus had once penetrated into Gedrosia on an expedition against the Indians, and had lost his entire army in the waterless and trackless desert;[118] but there is no evidence at all that he reduced the country. It appears to have been a portion of the Empire in the reign of Darius Hystaspis, but whether that monarch, or Cambyses, or the great founder of the Persian power conquered it, cannot at present be determined.

The conquest of the vast tract lying between the Caspian and the Indus, inhabited (as it was) by a numerous, valiant, and freedom-loving population, may well have occupied Cyrus for thirteen or fourteen years. Alexander the Great spent in the reduction of this region, after the inhabitants had in a great measure lost their warlike qualities, as much as five years, or half the time occupied by his whole series of conquests.[119] Cyrus could not have ventured on prosecuting his enterprises, as did the Macedonian prince, continuously and without interruption, marching straight from one country to another without once revisiting his capital. He must from time to time have returned to Ecbatana or Pasargadæ;[120] and it is on the whole most probable that, like the Assyrian monarchs,[121] he marched

out from home on a fresh expedition almost every year. Thus it need cause us no surprise that fourteen years were consumed in the subjugation of the tribes and nations beyond the Iranic desert to the north and the north-east, and that it was not till B.C. 539, when he was nearly sixty years of age, that the Persian monarch felt himself free to turn his attention to the great kingdom of the south.

The expedition of Cyrus against Babylon has been described already.[125] Its success added to the Empire the rich and valuable provinces of Babylonia, Susiana, Syria, and Palestine, thus augmenting its size by about 240,000 or 250,000 square miles. Far more important, however, than this geographical increase was the removal of the last formidable rival—the complete destruction of a power which represented to the Asiatics the old Semitic civilization, which with reason claimed to be the heir and the successor of Assyria,[126] and had a history stretching back for a space of nearly two thousand years. So long as Babylon, "the glory of kingdoms,"[1] "the praise of the whole earth," "retained her independence, with her vast buildings, her prestige of antiquity, her wealth, her learning, her ancient and grand religious system, she could scarcely fail to be in the eyes of her neighbors the first power in the world, if not in mere strength, yet in honor, dignity, and reputation. Haughty and contemptuous herself to the very last,[127] she naturally imposed on men's minds, alike by her past history and her present pretensions; nor was it possible for the Persian monarch to feel that he stood before his subjects as indisputably the foremost man upon the earth until he had humbled in the dust the pride and arrogance of Babylon. But, with the fall of the Great City, the whole fabric of Semetic greatness was shattered. Babylon became "an astonishment and a hissing"[127] —all her prestige vanished—and Persia stepped manifestly into the place, which Assyria had occupied for so many centuries, of absolute and unrivalled mistress of Western Asia.

The fall of Babylon was also the fall of an ancient, widely spread, and deeply venerated religious system. Not of course, that the religion suddenly disappeared or ceased to have votaries, but that, from a dominant system, supported by all the resources of the state, and enforced by the civil power over a wide extent of territory,[128] it became simply one of many tolerated beliefs, exposed to frequent rebuffs and insults,[129] and at all times overshadowed by a new and rival system—the comparatively pure creed of Zoroastrianism. The conquest of

Babylon by Persia was, practically, if not a death-blow, at least a severe wound, to that sensuous idol-worship which had for more than twenty centuries been the almost universal religion in the countries between the Mediterranean and the Zagros mountain range. The religion never recovered itself—was never reinstated. It survived, a longer or a shorter time, in places. To a slight extent it corrupted Zoroastrianism:[130] but, on the whole, from the date of the fall of Babylon it declined. "Bel bowed down; Nebo stooped:"[131] "Merodach was broken in pieces."[132] Judgment was done upon the Babylonian graven images;[133] and the system, of which they formed a necessary part, having once fallen from its proud pre-eminence, gradually decayed and vanished.

Parallel with the decline of the old Semitic idolatry was the advance of its direct antithesis, pure spiritual Monotheism. The same blow which laid the Babylonian religion in the dust struck off the fetters from Judaism.[134] Purified and refined by the precious discipline of adversity, the Jewish system, which Cyrus, feeling towards it a natural sympathy, protected, upheld, and replaced in its proper locality, advanced from this time in influence and importance, leavening little by little the foul mass of superstition and impurity which came in contact with it. Proselytism grew more common. The Jews spread themselves wider. The return from the captivity, which Cyrus authorized almost immediately after the capture of Babylon, is the starting point from which we may trace a gradual enlightenment of the heathen world by the dissemination of Jewish beliefs and practices[135]—such dissemination being greatly helped by the high estimation in which the Jewish system was held by the civil authority, both while the empire of the Persians lasted, and when power passed to the Macedonians.

On the fall of Babylon its dependencies seem to have submitted to the conqueror, with a single exception. Phœnicia, which had never acquiesced contentedly either in Assyrian or in Babylonian rule, saw, apparently, in the fresh convulsion that was now shaking the East, an opportunity for recovering autonomy.[136] It was nearly half a century since her last struggle to free herself had terminated unsuccessfully.[137] A new generation had grown up since that time—a generation which had seen nothing of war, and imperfectly appreciated its perils. Perhaps some reliance was placed on the countenance and support of Egypt, which, it must have been felt, would view with satisfaction any obstacle to the advance of a power

wherewith she was sure, sooner or later, to come into collision. At any rate, it was resolved to make the venture. Phœnicia, on the destruction of her distant suzerain, quietly resumed her freedom; abstained from making any act of submission to the conqueror; while, however, at the same time, she established friendly relations for commercial purposes with one of the conqueror's vassals, the prince who had been sent into Palestine to re-establish the Jews at Jerusalem.[138]

It might have been expected that Cyrus, after his conquest of Babylon, would have immediately proceeded towards the south-west. The reduction of Egypt had, according to Herodotus, been embraced in the designs which he formed fifteen years earlier.[139] The non-submission of Phœnicia must have been regarded as an act of defiance which deserved signal chastisement. It has been suspected that the restoration of the Jews was prompted, at least in part, by political motives, and that Cyrus, when he re-established them in their country, looked to finding them of use to him in the attack which he was meditating upon Egypt.[140] At any rate it is evident that their presence would have facilitated his march through Palestine, and given him a *point d'appui*, which could not but have been of value. These considerations make it probable that an Egyptian expedition would have been determined on, had not circumstances occurred to prevent it.

What the exact circumstances were, it is impossible to determine. According to Herodotus,[141] a sudden desire seized Cyrus to attack the Massagetæ, who bordered his Empire to the north-east. He led his troops across the Araxes (Jaxartes?), defeated the Massagetæ by stratagem in a great battle, but was afterwards himself defeated and slain, his body falling into the enemy's hands, who treated it with gross indignity.[142] According to Ctesias,[143] the people against whom he made his expedition were the Derbices, a nation bordering upon India. Assisted by Indian allies, who lent them a number of elephants, this people engaged Cyrus, and defeated him in a battle, wherein he received a mortal wound. Reinforced, however, by a body of Sacæ, the Persians renewed the struggle, and gained a complete victory, which was followed by the submission of the nation.[144] Cyrus, however, died of his wound on the third day after the first battle.[145]

This conflict of testimony clouds with uncertainty the entire closing scene of the life of Cyrus. All that we can lay down as tolerably well established is, that instead of carrying out his

designs against Egypt, he engaged in hostilities with one of the nations on his north-eastern frontier, that he conducted the war with less than his usual success, and in the course of it received a wound of which he died (B.C. 529), after he had reigned nine-and-twenty years. That his body did not fall into the enemy's hands appears, however, to be certain from the fact that it was conveyed into Persia Proper, and buried at Pasargadæ.[146]

It may be suspected that this expedition, which proved so disastrous to the Persian monarch, was not the mere wanton act which it appears to be in the pages of our authorities. The nations of the north-east were at all times turbulent and irritable, with difficulty held in check by the civilized power that bore rule in the south and west. The expedition of Cyrus, whether directed against the Massagetæ or the Derbices, was probably intended to strike terror into the barbarians of these regions, and was analogous to those invasions which were undertaken under the wisest of the Roman Emperors,[147] across the Rhine and Danube, against Germans, Goths, and Sarmatæ. The object of such inroads was not to conquer, but to alarm — it was hoped by an imposing display of organized military force to deter the undisciplined hordes of the prolific North from venturing across the frontier and carrying desolation through large tracts of the Empire. Defensive warfare has often an aggressive look. It may have been solely with the object of protecting his own territories from attack that Cyrus made his last expedition across the Jaxertes, or towards the upper Indus.[148]

The character of Cyrus, as represented to us by the Greeks, is the most favorable that we possess of any early Oriental monarch. Active, energetic, brave, fertile in stratagems,[149] he has all the qualities required to form a successful military chief. He conciliates his people by friendly and familiar treatment,[150] but declines to spoil them by yielding to their inclinations when they are adverse to their true interests.[151] He has a ready humor, which shows itself in smart sayings and repartees,[152] that take occasionally the favorite Oriental turn of parable or apologue.[153] He is mild in his treatment of the prisoners that fall into his hands,[154] and ready to forgive even the heinous crime of rebellion.[155] He has none of the pride of the ordinary eastern despot, but converses on terms of equality with those about him.[156] We cannot be surprised that the Persians, contrasting him with their later monarchs, held his

memory in the highest veneration,[157] and were even led by their affection for his person to make his type of countenance their standard of physical beauty.[158]

The genius of Cyrus was essentially that of a conqueror, not of an administrator. There is no trace of his having adopted anything like a uniform system for the government of the provinces which he subdued. In Lydia he set up a Persian governor, but assigned certain important functions to a native;[159] in Babylon he gave the entire direction of affairs into the hands of a Mede, to whom he allowed the title and style of king;[160] in Judæa he appointed a native, but made him merely "governor" or "deputy;"[161] in Sacia he maintained as tributary king the monarch who had resisted his arms.[162] Policy may have dictated the course pursued in each instance, which may have been suited to the condition of the several provinces; but the variety allowed was fatal to consolidation, and the monarchy, as Cyrus left it, had as little cohesion as any of those by which it was preceded.

Though originally a rude mountain-chief, Cyrus, after he succeeded to empire, showed himself quite able to appreciate the dignity and value of art. In his constructions at Pasargadæ he combined massiveness with elegance, and manifested a taste at once simple and refined.[163] He ornamented his buildings with reliefs of an ideal character.[164] It is probably to him that we owe the conception of the light tapering stone shaft, which is the glory of Persian architecture. If the more massive of the Persepolitan buildings are to be ascribed to him,[165] we must regard him as having fixed the whole plan and arrangement which was afterwards followed in all Persian palatial edifices.

In his domestic affairs Cyrus appears to have shown the same moderation and simplicity which we observe in his general conduct. He married, as it would seem, one wife only, Cassandané, the daughter of Pharnaspes, who was a member of the royal family.[166] By her he had issue two sons and at least three daughters. The sons were Cambyses and Smerdis;[167] the daughters Atossa, Artystoné, and one whose name is unknown to us.[168] Cassandané died before her husband, and was deeply mourned by him.[169] Shortly before his own death he took the precaution formally to settle the succession.[170] Leaving the general inheritance of his vast dominions to his elder son, Cambyses, he declared it to be his will that the younger should be entrusted with the actual government of several large and im-

portant provinces.[171] He thought by this plan to secure the well-being of both the youths, never suspecting that he was in reality consigning both to untimely ends, and even preparing the way for an extraordinary revolution.

The ill effect of the unfortunate arrangement thus made appeared almost immediately. Cambyses was scarcely settled upon the throne before he grew jealous of his brother, and ordered him to be privately put to death.[172] His cruel orders were obeyed, and with so much secrecy that neither the mode of the death, nor even the fact, was known to more than a few. Smerdis was generally believed to be still alive; and thus an opportunity was presented for personation—a form of imposture very congenial to Orientals, and one which has often had very disastrous consequences. We shall find in the sequel this opportunity embraced, and results follow of a most stirring and exciting character.

It required time, however, to bring to maturity the fruits of the crime so rashly committed. Cambyses, in the meanwhile, quite unconscious of danger, turned his attention to military matters, and determined on endeavoring to complete his father's scheme of conquest by the reduction of Egypt. Desirous of obtaining a ground of quarrel less antiquated than the alliance, a quarter of a century earlier, between Amasis and Crœsus, he demanded that a daughter of the Egyptian king should be sent to him as a secondary wife. Amasis, too timid to refuse, sent a damsel named Nitetis, who was not his daughter; and she, soon after her arrival, made Cambyses acquainted with the fraud.[173] A ground of quarrel was thus secured, which might be put forward when it suited his purpose; and meanwhile every nerve was being strained to prepare effectually for the expedition. The difficulty of a war with Egypt lay in her inaccessibility. She was protected on all sides by seas or deserts; and, for a successful advance upon her from the direction of Asia, it was desirable both to obtain a quiet passage for a large army through the desert of El-Tij, and also to have the support of a powerful fleet in the Mediterranean. This latter was the paramount consideration. An army well supplied with camels might carry its provisions and water through the desert, and might intimidate or overpower the few Arab tribes which inhabited it;[174] but, unless the command of the sea was gained and the navigation of the Nile closed, Memphis might successfully resist attack.[175] Cambyses appears to have perceived with sufficient clearness the conditions on which victory depended,

Fig. 1.

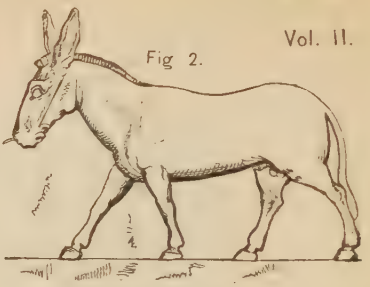
Fig. 2. King killing a Monster, Persepolis. (From a photograph.)

Persian subjects bringing tribute to the King, Persepolis. (From a Photograph.)

Fig. 1.

Attendant bringing a kid to the palace. (Persepolis.)

Fig. 2.

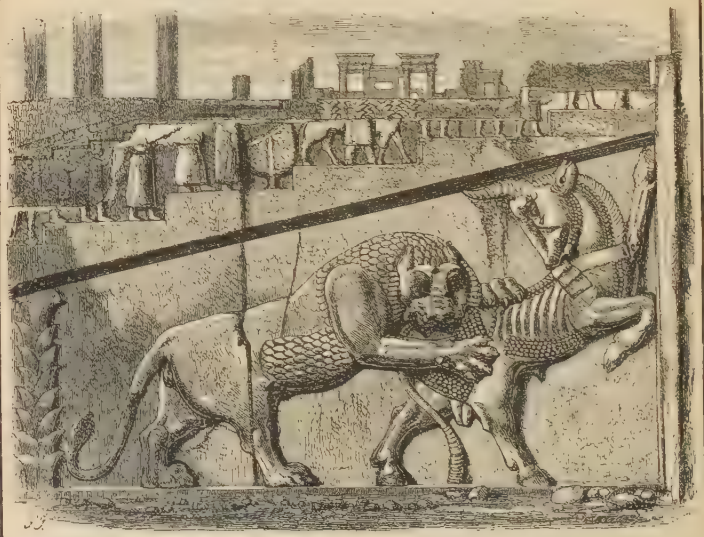


Wild Ass, Persepolis.

Fig. 3

Horned Sheep, Persepolis.

Fig. 4.



Lion devouring a Bull, Persepolis. (From a Photograph.)

and to have applied himself at once to securing them. He made a treaty with the Arab Sheikh who had the chief influence over the tribes of the desert:[177] and at the same time he set to work to procure the services of a powerful naval force. By menaces or negotiations he prevailed upon the Phœnicians to submit themselves to his yoke,[178] and having thus obtained a fleet superior to that of Egypt, he commenced hostilities by robbing her of a dependency[179] which possessed considerable naval strength, in this way still further increasing the disparity between his own fleet and that of his enemy. Against the combined ships of Phœnicia, Cyprus, Ionia, and Æolis, Egypt was powerless, and her fleets seem to have quietly yielded the command of the sea. Cambyses was thus able to give his army the support of a naval force, as it marched along the coast, from Carmel probably to Pelusium; and when, having defeated the Egyptians at the last-named place, he proceeded against Memphis, he was able to take possession of the Nile,[179] and to blockade the Egyptian capital both by land and water.

It appears that four years were consumed by the Persian monarch in his preparations for his Egyptian expedition. It was not until B.C. 525 that he entered Egypt at the head of his troops,[180] and fought the great battle which decided the fate of the country. The struggle was long and bloody. Psammenitus,[181] who had succeeded his father Amasis, had the services, not only of his Egyptian subjects, but a large body of mercenaries besides, Greeks and Carians.[182] These allies were zealous in his cause, and are said to have given him a horrible proof of their attachment. One of their body had deserted to the Persians some little time before the expedition, and was believed to have given important advice to the invader. He had left his children behind in Egypt; and these his former comrades now seized, and led out in front of their lines, where they slew them before their father's eyes, and, having so done, mixed their blood in a bowl with water and wine, and drank, one and all, of the mixture.[183] The battle followed immediately after; but, in spite of their courage and fanaticism, the Egyptian army was completely defeated.[184] According to Ctesias, fifty thousand fell on the vanquished side, while the victors lost no more than seven thousand.[185] Psammenitus, after his defeat, threw himself into Memphis, but, being blockaded by land and prevented from receiving supplies from the sea,[186] after a stout resistance, he surrendered. The captive monarch received the respectful treatment which Persian clemency

usually accorded to fallen sovereigns.[187] Herodotus even goes so far as to intimate that, if he had abstained from conspiracy, he would probably have been allowed to continue ruler of Egypt,[188] exchanging, of course, his independent sovereignty for a delegated kingship held at the pleasure of the Lord of Asia.

The conquest of Egypt was immediately followed by the submission of the neighboring tribes. The Libyans of the desert tract which borders the Nile valley to the west, and even the Greeks of the more remote Barca and Cyrêné, sent gifts to the conqueror and consented to become his tributaries.[189] But Cambyses placed little value on such petty accessions to his power. Inheriting the grandeur of view which had characterized his father, he was no sooner master of Egypt than he conceived the idea of a magnificent series of conquests in this quarter,[190] whereby he hoped to become Lord of Africa no less than of Asia, or at any rate to leave himself without a rival of any importance on the vast continent which his victorious arms had now opened to him. Apart from Egypt, Africa possessed but two powers capable, by their political organization and their military strength, of offering him serious resistance. These were Ethiopia and Carthage—the one the great power of the South, the equal, if not even the superior, of Egypt[191]—the other the great power of the West—remote, little known, but looming larger for the obscurity in which she was shrouded, and attractive from her reputed wealth. The views of Cambyses comprised the reduction of both these powers, and also the conquest of the oasis of Ammon. As a good Zoroastrian, he was naturally anxious to exhibit the superiority of Ormazd to all the "gods of the nations;" and, as the temple of Ammon in the oasis had the greatest repute of all the African shrines,[192] this design would be best accomplished by its pillage and destruction. It is probable that he further looked to the subjugation of all the tribes on the north coast between the Nile valley and the Carthaginian territory; for he would undoubtedly have sent an army along the shore to act in concert with his fleet,[193] had he decided ultimately on making the expedition. An unexpected obstacle, however, arose to prevent him. The Phœnicians, who formed the main strength of his navy, declined to take any part in an attack on Carthage, since the Carthaginians were their colonists, and the relations between the two people had always been friendly. Cambyses did not like to force their inclinations, on account of their recent

voluntary submission; and as, without their aid, his navy was manifestly unequal to the proposed service, he felt obliged to desist from the undertaking.[194]

While the Carthaginian scheme was thus nipped in the bud, the enterprises which Cambyses attempted to carry out led to nothing but disaster. An army, fifty thousand strong, despatched from Thebes against Ammon, perished to a man amid the sands of the Libyan desert.[195] A still more numerous force, led by Cambyses himself towards the Ethiopian frontier, found itself short of supplies on its march across Nubia,[196] and was forced to return, without glory, after suffering considerable loss.[197] It became evident that the abilities of the Persian monarch were not equal to his ambition—that he insufficiently appreciated the difficulties and dangers of enterprises—while a fatal obstinacy prevented him from acknowledging and retrieving an error while retrieval was possible. The Persians, we may be sure, grew dispirited under such a leader; and the Egyptians naturally took heart. It seems to have been shortly after the return of Cambyses from his abortive expedition against Ethiopia that symptoms of an intention to revolt began to manifest themselves in Egypt. The priests declared an incarnation of Apis, and the whole country burst out into rejoicings.[198] It was probably now that Psammenitus, who had hitherto been kindly treated by his captor, was detected in treasonable intrigues, condemned to death, and executed.[199] At the same time, the native officers who had been left in charge of the city of Memphis were apprehended and capitally punished.[200] Such stringent measures had all the effect that was expected from them; they wholly crushed the nascent rebellion; they left, however, behind them a soreness, felt alike by the conqueror and the conquered, which prevented the establishment of a good understanding between the Great King and his new subjects. Cambyses knew that he had been severe, and that his severity had made him many enemies; he suspected the people, and still more suspected the priests, their natural leaders; he soon persuaded himself that policy required in Egypt a departure from the principles of toleration which were ordinarily observed towards their subjects by the Persians, and a sustained effort on the part of the civil power to bring the religion, and its priests, into contempt. Accordingly, he commenced a series of acts calculated to have this effect. He stabbed the sacred calf, believed to be incarnate Apis; he ordered the body of priests who had the animal in charge to be

publicly scourged; he stopped the Apis festival by making participation in it a capital offence;[201] he opened the receptacles of the dead, and curiously examined the bodies contained in them;[202] he intruded himself into the chief sanctuary at Memphis, and publicly scoffed at the grotesque image of Phtha; finally, not content with outraging in the same way the inviolable temple of the Cabeiri, he wound up his insults by ordering that their images should be burnt.[203] These injuries and indignities rankled in the minds of the Egyptians, and probably had a large share in producing that bitter hatred of the Persian yoke which shows itself in the later history on so many occasions; but for the time the policy was successful: crushed beneath the iron heel of the conqueror—their faith in the power of their gods shaken, their spirits cowed, their hopes shattered—the Egyptian subjects of Cambyses made up their minds to submission. The Oriental will generally kiss the hand that smites him, if it only smite hard enough. Egypt became now for a full generation the obsequious slave of Persia, and gave no more trouble to her subjugator than the weakest or the most contented of the provinces.

The work of subjection completed, Cambyses, having been absent from his capital longer than was at all prudent, prepared to return home. He had proceeded on his way as far as Syria,[204] when intelligence reached him of a most unexpected nature. A herald suddenly entered his camp and proclaimed, in the hearing of the whole army, that Cambyses, son of Cyrus, had ceased to reign, and that the allegiance of all Persian subjects was henceforth to be paid to Smerdis, son of Cyrus. At first, it is said, Cambyses thought that his instrument had played him false, and that his brother was alive and had actually seized the throne; but the assurances of the suspected person, and a suggestion which he made, convinced him of the contrary, and gave him a clue to the real solution of the mystery. Prexaspes, the nobleman inculpated, knew that the so-called Smerdis must be an impostor, and suggested his identity with a certain Magus, whose brother had been intrusted by Cambyses with the general direction of his houshold and the care of the palace. He was probably led to make the suggestion by his knowledge of the resemblance borne by this person to the murdered prince,[205] which was sufficiently close to make personation possible. Cambyses was thus enabled to appreciate the gravity of the crisis, and to consider whether he could successfully contend with it or no. Apparently, he decided in

the negative. Believing that he could not triumph over the conspiracy which had decreed his downfall, and unwilling to descend to a private station—perhaps even uncertain whether his enemies would spare his life—he resolved to fly to the last refuge of a dethroned king, and to end all by suicide.[206] Drawing his short sword from its sheath, he gave himself a wound, of which he died in a few days.[207]

It is certainly surprising that the king formed this resolution. He was at the head of an army, returning from an expedition, which, if not wholly successful, had at any rate added to the empire an important province. His father's name was a tower of strength; and if he could only have exposed the imposture that had been practised on them, he might have counted confidently on rallying the great mass of the Persians to his cause. How was it that he did not advance on the capital, and at least strike one blow for empire? No clear and decided response can be made to this inquiry; but we may indistinctly discern a number of causes which may have combined to produce in the monarch's mind the feeling of despondency whereto he gave way. Although he returned from Egypt a substantial conqueror, his laurel wreath was tarnished by ill-success; his army, weakened by its losses, and dispirited by its failures, was out of heart; it had no trust in his capacity as a commander, and could not be expected to fight with enthusiasm on his behalf. There is also reason to believe that he was generally unpopular on account of his haughty and tyrannical temper, and his contempt of law and usage, where they interfered with the gratification of his desires. Though we should do wrong to accept as true all the crimes laid to his charge by the Egyptians, who detested his memory,[208] we cannot doubt the fact of his incestuous marriage with his sister, Atossa,[209] which was wholly repugnant to the religious feelings of his nation. Nor can we well imagine that there was no foundation at all for the stories of the escape of Crœsus,[210] the murder of the son of Prexaspes,[211] and the execution in Egypt on a trivial charge of twelve noble Persians.[212] His own people called Cambyses a "despot" or "master," in contrast with Cyrus, whom they regarded as a "father," because, as Herodotus says, he was "harsh and reckless," whereas his father was mild and beneficent.[213] Further, there was the religious aspect of the revolution, which had taken place, in the background. Cambyses may have known that in the ranks of his army there was much sympathy with Magism,[214] and may have doubted

whether, if the whole conspiracy were laid bare, he could count on anything like a general adhesion of his troops to the Zoroastrian cause. These various grounds, taken together, go far towards accounting for a suicide which at first sight strikes us as extraordinary, and is indeed almost unparalleled.[215]

Of the general character of Cambyses little more need be said. He was brave, active, and energetic, like his father; but he lacked his father's strategic genius, his prudence, and his fertility in resources. Born in the purple, he was proud and haughty,[216] careless of the feelings of others, and impatient of admonition or remonstrance.[217] His pride made him obstinate in error;[218] and his contempt of others led on naturally to harshness, and perhaps even to cruelty.[219] He is accused of "habitual drunkenness,"[220] and was probably not free from the intemperance which was a common Persian failing;[221] but there is not sufficient ground for believing that his indulgence was excessive, much less that it proceeded to the extent of affecting his reason. The "madness of Cambyses," reported to and believed in by Herodotus, was a fiction of the Egyptian priests, who wished it to be thought that their gods had in this way punished his impiety.[222] The Persians had no such tradition, but merely regarded him as unduly severe and selfish.[223] A dispassionate consideration of all the evidence on the subject leads to the conclusion that Cambyses lived and died in the possession of his reason, having neither destroyed it through inebriety nor lost it by the judgment of Heaven.[224]

The death of Cambyses (B.C. 522) left the conspirators, who had possession of the capital, at liberty to develop their projects, and to take such steps as they thought best for the consolidation and perpetuation of their power. The position which they occupied was one of peculiar delicacy. On the one hand, the impostor had to guard against acting in any way which would throw suspicion on his being really Smerdis, the son of Cyrus. On the other, he had to satisfy the Magian priests, to whom he was well known, and on whom he mainly depended for support, if his imposture should be detected. These priests must have desired a change of the national religion, and to effect this must have been the true aim and object of the revolution.[225] But it was necessary to proceed with the utmost caution. An open proclamation that Magism was to supersede Zoroastrianism would have seemed a strange act in an Achæmenian prince, and could scarcely have failed to arouse doubts which might easily terminate in discovery. The Magian

brothers shrank from affronting this peril, and resolved, before approaching it, to obtain for the new government an amount of general popularity which would make its overthrow in fair fight difficult. Accordingly the new reign was inaugurated by a general remission of tribute and military service for the space of three years[226]—a measure which was certain to give satisfaction to all the tribes and nations of the Empire, except the Persians. Persia Proper was at all times exempt from tribute,[227] and was thus, so far, unaffected by the boon granted, while military service was no doubt popular with the ruling nation, for whose benefit the various conquests were effected.[228] Still Persia could scarcely take umbrage at an inactivity which was to last only three years, while to the rest of the Empire the twofold grace accorded must have been thoroughly acceptable.

Further to confirm his uncertain hold upon the throne, the Pseudo-Smerdis took to wife all the widows of his predecessor.[229] This is a practice common in the East;[230] and there can be no doubt that it gives a new monarch a certain prestige in the eyes of his people. In the present case, however, it involved a danger. The wives of the late king were likely to be acquainted with the person of the king's brother; Atossa, at any rate, could not fail to know him intimately. If the Magus allowed them to associate together freely, according to the ordinary practice, they would detect his imposture and probably find a way to divulge it. He therefore introduced a new system into the seraglio. Instead of the free intercourse one with another which the royal consorts had enjoyed previously, he established at once the principle of complete isolation. Each wife was assigned her own portion of the palace; and no visiting of one wife by another was permitted.[231] Access to them from without was altogether forbidden, even to their nearest relations; and the wives were thus cut off wholly from the external world, unless they could manage to communicate with it by means of secret messages.[232] But precautions of this kind, though necessary, were in themselves suspicious; they naturally suggested an inquiry into their cause and object. It was a possible explanation of them that they proceeded from an extreme and morbid jealousy; but the thought could not fail to occur to some that they might be occasioned by the fear of detection.

However, as time went on, and no discovery was actually made, the Magus grew bolder, and ventured to commence that

reformation of religion which he and his order had so much at heart. He destroyed the Zoroastrian temples in various places, and seems to have put down the old worship, with its hymns in praise of the Zoroastrian deities.[233] He instituted Magian rites in lieu of the old ceremonies, and established his brother Magians as the priest-caste of the Persian nation.[234] The changes introduced were no doubt satisfactory to the Medes, and to many of the subject races throughout the Empire. They were even agreeable to a portion of the Persian people, who leant towards a more material worship and a more gorgeous ceremonial than had contented their ancestors. If the faithful worshippers of Ormazd saw them with dismay, they were too timid to resist, and tacitly acquiesced in the religious revolution.[235]

In one remote province the change gave a fresh impulse to a religious struggle which was there going on, adding strength to the side of intolerance. The Jews had now been engaged for fifteen or sixteen years in the restoration of their temple, according to the permission granted them by Cyrus. Their enterprise was distasteful to the neighboring Samaritans,[236] who strained every nerve to prevent its being brought to a successful issue, and as each new king mounted the Persian throne, made a fresh effort to have the work stopped by authority. Their representations had had no effect upon Cambyses;[237] but when they were repeated on the accession of the Pseudo-Smerdis, the result was different. An edict was at once sent down to Palestine, reversing the decree of Cyrus, and authorizing the inhabitants of Samaria to interfere forcibly in the matter, and compel the Jews to desist from building.[238] Armed with this decree, the Samaritan authorities hastened to Jerusalem, and "made the Jews to cease by force and power."[239]

These revelations of a leaning towards a creed diverse from that of the Achæmenian princes, combined with the system of seclusion adopted in the palace—a system not limited to the seraglio, but extending also to the person of the monarch, who neither quitted the palace precincts himself, nor allowed any of the Persian nobles to enter them[240]—must have turned the suspicions previously existing into a general belief and conviction that the monarch seated on the throne was not Smerdis the son of Cyrus, but an impostor. Yet still there was for a while no outbreak. It mattered nothing to the provincials who ruled them, provided that order was maintained, and

that the boons granted them at the opening of the new reign were not revoked or modified. Their wishes were no doubt in favor of the prince who had remitted their burthens;[241] and in Media a peculiar sympathy would exist towards one who had exalted Magism.[242] Such discontent as was felt would be confined to Persia, or to Persia and a few provinces of the north-east, where the Zoroastrian faith may have maintained itself.[243]

At last, among the chief Persians, rumors began to arise. These were sternly repressed at the outset, and a reign of terror was established, during which men remained silent through fear.[244] But at length some of the principal nobles, convinced of the imposture, held secret council together, and discussed the measures proper to be adopted under the circumstances.[245] Nothing, however, was done until the arrival at the capital[246] of a personage felt by all to be the proper leader of the nation in the existing crisis. This was Darius, the son of Hystaspes, a prince of the blood royal[247] who probably stood in the direct line of the succession, failing the issue of Cyrus. At the early age of twenty he had attracted the attention of that monarch, who suspected him even then of a design to seize the throne.[248] He was now about twenty-eight years[249] of age, and therefore at a time of life suited for vigorous enterprise; which was probably the reason why his father, Hystaspes, who was still alive,[250] sent him to the capital, instead of proceeding thither in person. Youth and vigor were necessary qualifications for success in a struggle against the holders of power; and Hystaspes no longer possessed those advantages. He therefore yielded to his son that headship of the movement to which his position would have entitled him; and, with the leadership in danger, he yielded necessarily his claim to the first place, when the time of peril should be past and the rewards of victory should come to be apportioned.

Darius, on his arrival at the capital,[251] was at once accepted as head of the conspiracy, and with prudent boldness determined on pushing matters to an immediate decision. Overruling the timidity of a party among the conspirators, who urged delay,[252] he armed his partisans, and proceeded, without a moment's pause, to the attack. According to the Greek historians, he and his friends entered the palace in a body, and surprised the Magus in his private apartments, where they slew him after a brief struggle.[253] But the authority of Darius discredits the Greek accounts, and shows us, though with provok-

ing brevity, that the course of events must have been very different. The Magus was not slain in the privacy of his palace, at Susa or Ecbatana, but met his death in a small and insignificant fort in the part of Media called "the Nisæan plain,"[254] or, more briefly, "Nisæa," whither he appears to have fled with a band of followers.[255] Whether he was first attacked in the capital, and escaping threw himself into this stronghold, or receiving timely warning of his danger withdrew to it before the outbreak occurred, or merely happened to be at the spot when the conspirators decided to make their attempt, we have no means of determining. We only know that the scene of the last struggle was Sictachotes, in Media; that Darius made the attack accompanied by six Persian nobles of high rank;[256] and that the contest terminated in the slaughter of the Magus and of a number of his adherents, who were involved in the fall of their master.[257]

Nor did the vengeance of the successful conspirators stop here. Speeding to the capital, with the head of the Magus in their hands, and exhibiting everywhere this proof at once of the death of the late king and of his imposture, they proceeded to authorize and aid in carrying out, a general massacre of the Magian priests, the abettors of the later usurpation.[258] Every Magus who could be found was poniarded by the enraged Persians; and the caste would have been well-nigh exterminated, if it had not been for the approach of night. Darkness brought the carnage to an end; and the sword, once sheathed, was not again drawn. Only, to complete the punishment of the ambitious religionists who had insulted and deceived the nation, the day of the massacre was appointed to be kept annually as a solemn festival, under the name of the Magophonia; and a law was passed that on that day no Magus should leave his house.[259]

The accession of Darius to the vacant throne now took place (Jan. 1, B.C. 521). According to Herodotus it was preceded by a period of debate and irresolution, during which the royal authority was, as it were, in commission among the Seven; and in this interval he places not only the choice of a king, but an actual discussion on the subject of the proper form of government to be established.[260] Even his contemporaries, however, could see that this last story was unworthy of credit;[261] and it may be questioned whether any more reliance ought to be placed on the remainder of the narrative. Probably the true account of the matter is, that, having come to a

knowledge of the facts of the case, the heads of the seven great Persian clans or families[263] met together in secret conclave and arranged all their proceedings beforehand. No government but the monarchical could be thought of for a moment, and no one could assert any claim to be king but Darius. Darius went into the conspiracy as a pretender to the throne: the other six were simply his "faithful men,"[263] his friends and well wishers. While, however, the six were far from disputing Darius's right, they required and received for themselves a guarantee of certain privileges, which may either have belonged to them previously, by law or custom, as the heads of the great clans, or may have been now for the first time conceded. The king bound himself to choose his wives from among the families of the conspirators only, and sanctioned their claim to have free access to his person at all times without asking his permission.[264] One of their number, Otanes, demanded and obtained even more. He and his house were to remain "free,"[265] and were to receive yearly a magnificent *kafian*, or royal present.[266]

Thus, something like a check on unbridled despotism was formally and regularly established; an hereditary nobility was acknowledged: the king became to some extent dependent on his grandees; he could not regard himself as the sole fountain of honor; six great nobles stood round the throne as its supports; but their position was so near the monarch that they detracted somewhat from his prestige and dignity.

The guarantee of these privileges was, we may be sure, given, and the choice of Darius as king made, before the attack upon the Magus began. It would have been madness to allow an interval of anarchy. When Darius reached the capital, with the head of the Pseudo-Smerdis in his possession, he no doubt proceeded at once to the palace and took his seat upon the vacant throne. No opposition was offered to him. The Persians gladly saw a scion of their old royal stock installed in power. The provincials were too far off to interfere. Such malcontents as might be present would be cowed by the massacre that was going on in the streets. The friends and intimates of the fallen monarch would be only anxious to escape notice. The reign of the new king no doubt commenced amid those acclamations which are never wanting in the East when a sovereign first shows himself to his subjects.

The measures with which the new monarch inaugurated his reign had for their object the re establishment of the old worship. He rebuilt the Zoroastrian temples which the Magus

had destroyed, and probably restored the use of the sacred chants and the other accustomed ceremonies.[267] It may be suspected that his religious zeal proceeded often to the length of persecution, and that the Magian priests were not the only persons who, under the orders which he issued, felt the weight of the secular arm.[268] His Zoroastrian zeal was soon known through the provinces; and the Jews forthwith resumed the building of their temple,[269] trusting that their conduct would be consonant with his wishes. This trust was not misplaced: for, when the Samaritans once more interfered and tried to induce the new king to put a stop to the work, the only result was a fresh edict, confirming the old decree of Cyrus, forbidding interference, and assigning a further grant of money, cattle, corn, etc., from the royal stores, for the furtherance of the pious undertaking.[270] Its accomplishment was declared to be for the advantage of the king and his house, since, when the temple was finished, sacrifices would be offered in it to "the God of Heaven," and prayer would be made "for the life of the king and of his sons."[271] Such was the sympathy which still united pure Zoroastrianism with the worship of Jehovah.

But the reign, which, so far, might have seemed to be auspiciously begun, was destined ere long to meet opposition, and even to encounter armed hostility, in various quarters. In the loosely organized empires of the early type,[272] a change of sovereign, especially if accompanied by revolutionary violence, is always regarded as an opportunity for rebellion. Doubt as to the condition of the capital paralyzes the imperial authority in the provinces; and bold men, taking advantage of the moment of weakness, start up in various places, asserting independence, and seeking to obtain for themselves kingdoms out of the chaos which they see around them. The more remote provinces are especially liable to be thus affected, and often revolt successfully on such an occasion. It appears that the circumstances under which Darius obtained the throne were more than usually provocative of the spirit of disaffection and rebellion. Not only did the governors of remote countries, like Egypt and Lydia, assume an attitude incompatible with their duty as subjects,[273] but everywhere, even in the very heart of the Empire, insurrection raised its head; and for six long years the new king was constantly employed in reducing one province after another to obedience. Susiana, Babylonia, Persia itself, Media, Assyria, Armenia, Hyrcania, Parthia, Margiana, Sagartia, and Sacia, all revolted during this space, and

were successively chastised and recovered. It may be suspected that the religious element entered into some of these struggles,[274] and that the unusual number of the revolts and the obstinate character of many of them were connected with the downfall of Magism and the restoration of the pure Zoroastrian faith, which Darius was bent on effecting. But this explanation can only be applied partially.[275] We must suppose, besides, a sort of contagion of rebellion—an awakening of hopes, far and wide, among the subject nations, as the rumor that serious troubles had broken out reached them, and a resolution to take advantage of the critical state of things, spreading rapidly from one people to another.

A brief sketch of these various revolts must now be given. They commenced with a rising in Susiana, where a certain Atrines assumed the name and state of king, and was supported by the people.[276] Almost simultaneously a pretender appeared in Babylon, who gave out that he was the son of the late king, Nabonidus, and bore the world-renowned name of Nebuchadnezzar.[277] Darius, regarding this second revolt as the more important of the two, while he dispatched a force to punish the Susianians, proceeded in person against the Babylonian pretender. The rivals met at the river Tigris, which the Babylonians held with a naval force, while their army was posted on the right bank, ready to dispute the passage. Darius, however, crossed the river in their dispite, and, defeating the troops of his antagonist, pressed forward against the capital. He had nearly reached it, when the pretender gave him battle for the second time at a small town on the banks of the Euphrates. Fortune again declared in favor of the Persians, who drove the host of their enemy into the water and destroyed great numbers. The *soi-disant* Nebuchadnezzar escaped with a few horsemen and threw himself into Babylon; but the city was ill prepared for a siege, and was soon taken, the pretender falling into the hands of his enemy, who caused him to be executed.[278]

Meanwhile, in Susiana, Atrines, the original leader of the rebellion, had been made prisoner by the troops sent against him, and, being brought to Darius while he was on his march against Babylon, was put to death.[279] But this severity had little effect. A fresh leader appeared in the person of a certain Martes, a Persian:[280] who, taking example from the Babylonian rebel, assumed a name which connected him with the old kings of the country,[281] and probably claimed to be their descendant.

But the hands of Darius were now free by the termination of the Babylonian contest, and he was able to proceed towards Susiana himself. This movement, apparently, was unexpected; for when the Susianians heard of it they were so alarmed that they laid hands on the pretender and slew him.[282]

A more important rebellion followed. Three of the chief provinces of the empire, Media, Armenia, and Assyria, revolted in concert. A Median monarch was set up, who called himself Xathrites, and claimed descent from the great Cyaxares; and it would seem that the three countries immediately acknowledged his sway. Darius, seeing how formidable the revolt was, determined to act with caution. Settling himself at the newly-conquered city of Babylon, he resolved to employ his generals against the rebels, and in this way to gauge the strength of the outbreak, before adventuring his own person into the fray. Hydarnes, one of the Seven conspirators, was sent into Media with an army, while Dadarses, an Armenian, was dispatched into Armenia, and Vomises, a Persian, was ordered to march through Assyria into the same country. All three generals were met by the forces of the pretender, and several battles were fought,[283] with results that seem not to have been very decisive. Darius claims the victory on each occasion for his own generals; but it is evident that his arms made little progress, and that, in spite of several small defeats, the rebellion maintained a bold front, and was thought not unlikely to be successful. So strong was this feeling that two of the eastern provinces, Hyrcania and Parthia, deserted the Persian cause in the midst of the struggle, and placed themselves under the rule of Xathrites.[285] Either this circumstance, or the general position of affairs, induced Darius at length to take the field in person. Quitting Babylon, he marched into Media, and being met by the pretender near a town called Kûdrûs, he defeated him in a great battle.[286] This is no doubt the engagement of which Herodotus speaks, and which he rightly regards as decisive.[287] The battle of Kûdrûs gave Ecbatana into the hands of Darius, and made the Median prince an outcast and a fugitive. He fled towards the East, probably intending to join his partisans in Hyrcania and Parthia, but was overtaken in the district of Rhages and made prisoner by the troops of Darius.[288] The king treated his captive with extreme severity. Having cut off his nose, ears, and tongue, he kept him for some time chained to the door of his palace, in order that there might be no doubt of his capture. When this object had

been sufficiently secured, the wretched sufferer was allowed to end his miserable existence. He was crucified in his capital city, Ecbatana, before the eyes of those who had seen his former glory.[290]

The rebellion was thus crushed in its original seat, but it had still to be put down in the countries whereto it had extended itself. Parthia and Hyrcania, which had embraced the cause of the pretender, were still maintaining a conflict with their former governor, Hystaspes, Darius's father.[291] Darius marched as far as Rhages to his father's assistance, and dispatched from that point a body of Persian troops to reinforce him. With this important aid Hystaspes once more gave the rebels battle, and succeeded in defeating them so entirely that they presently made their submission.[291]

Troubles, meanwhile, had broken out in Sagartia. A native chief, moved probably by the success which had for a while attended the Median rebel who claimed to rule as the descendant and representative of Cyaxares, came forward with similar pretensions, and was accepted by the Sagartians as their monarch. This revolt, however, proved unimportant. Darius suppressed it with the utmost facility by means of a mixed army of Persians and Medes, whom he placed under a Median leader, Tachmaspates. The pretender was captured and treated almost exactly in the same way as the Mede whose example he had followed. His nose and ears were cut off; he was chained for a while at the palace door; and finally he was crucified at Arbela.[292]

Another trifling revolt occurred about the same time in Margiana. The Margians rebelled and set up a certain Phraates, a native, to be their king. But the satrap of Bactria, within whose province Margiana lay, quelled the revolt almost immediately.[293]

Hitherto, however thickly troubles had come upon him, Darius could have the satisfaction of feeling that he was contending with foreigners, and that his own nation at any rate was faithful and true. But now this consolation was to be taken from him. During his absence in the provinces of the north-east Persia itself revolted against his authority, and acknowledged for king an impostor, who, undeterred by the fate of Gomates, and relying on the obscurity which still hung over the end of the real Smerdis, assumed his name, and claimed to be the legitimate occupant of the throne.[294] The Persians at home were either deceived a second time, or were

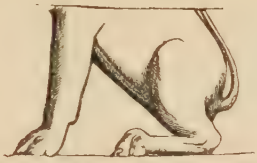
willing to try a change of ruler;[295] but the army of Darius, composed of Persians and Medes, adhered to the banner under which they had so often marched to victory, and enabled Darius, after a struggle of some duration, to re-establish his sway.[296] The impostor suffered two defeats at the hands of Artabardes, one of Darius's generals, while a force which he had detached to excite rebellion in Arachosia was engaged by the satrap of that province and completely routed.[297] The so-called Smerdis was himself captured, and suffered the usual penalty of unsuccessful revolt, crucifixion.[298]

Before, however, these results were accomplished—while the fortune of war still hung in the balance—a fresh danger threatened. Encouraged by the disaffection which appeared to be so general, and which had at length reached the very citadel of the Empire, Babylon revolted for the second time. A man, named Aracus, an Armenian by descent, but settled in Babylonia, headed the insurrection, and, adopting the practice of personation so usual at the time, assumed the name and style of "Nebuchadnezzar, son of Nabonidus." Less alarmed on this occasion than at the time of the first revolt, the king was content to send a Median general against the new pretender. This officer, who is called Intaphres, speedily chastised the rebels, capturing Babylon, and taking Aracus prisoner. Crucifixion was again the punishment awarded to the rebel leader.[299]

A season of comparative tranquillity seems now to have set in; and it may have been in this interval that Darius found time to chastise the remoter governors, who without formally declaring themselves independent, or assuming the title of king, had done acts savoring of rebellion. Orœtes, the governor of Sardis, who had comported himself strangely even under Cambyses, having ventured to entrap and put to death an ally of that monarch's, Polycrates of Samos,[300] had from the time of the Magian revolution assumed an attitude quite above that of a subject. Having a quarrel with Mitrobates, the governor of a neighboring province, he murdered him and annexed his territory.[301] When Darius sent a courier to him with a message the purport of which he disliked, he set men to waylay and assassinate him.[302] It was impossible to overlook such acts; and Darius must have sent an army into Asia Minor, if one of his nobles had not undertaken to remove Orœtes in another way. Arming himself with several written orders bearing the king's seal, he went to Sardis, and gradually tried

Plate. LVII.

Fig. 1.



Fragment of a sitting Lion, Persepolis.

Fig 2

Persian Portrait,
(From a Gem.)

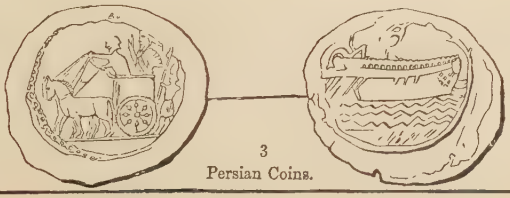
Fig 3

Fig 4

Persian cylinders.

1

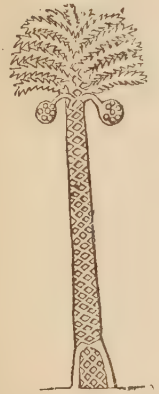
2



3

Persian Coins.

Fig. 1

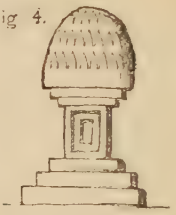


Palm-tree, from the cylinder of Darius Hystaspis.

Fig. 2.

Bowls or Basons. (From the same.)

Fig. 4.



Altar. (From a rock-sculpture, Nakhsh-i-Rustam.)

Fig. 3.

Covered Dishes. (From the Sculptures, Persepolis.)

Fig. 5.

Incense Vessel, Persepolis.

Fig. 6.

Portable Altar. (From a gem.)

Fig. 7.

1.

2.

3.

4.

the temper of the guard which the satrap kept round his person. When he found them full of respect for the royal authority and ready to do whatever the king commanded, he produced an order for the governor's execution, which they carried into effect immediately.[303]

The governor of Egypt, Aryandes, had shown a guilty ambition in a more covert way.[304] Understanding that Darius had issued a gold coinage of remarkable purity, he, on his own authority and without consulting the king, issued a silver coinage of a similar character.[305] There is reason to believe that he even placed his name upon his coins;[306] an act which to the Oriental mind distinctly implied a claim of independent sovereignty. Darius taxed him with a design to revolt, and put him to death on the charge, apparently without exciting any disturbance.[307]

Still, however, the Empire was not wholly tranquillized. A revolt in Susiana, suppressed by the conspirator Gobryas, and another among the Sacæ of the Tigris, quelled by Darius in person, are recorded on the rock of Behistun, in a supplementary portion of the Inscription.[308] We cannot date, unless it be by approximation, these various troubles; but there is reason to believe that they were almost all contained within a space not exceeding five or six years. The date of the Behistun Inscription is fixed by internal evidence to about B.C. 516-515— in other words, to the fifth or sixth year of the reign of Darius.[309] Its erection seems to mark the termination of the first period of the reign, or that of disturbance, and the commencement of the second period, or that of tranquillity, internal progress, and patronage of the fine arts by the monarch.

It was natural that Darius, having with so much effort and difficulty reduced the revolted provinces to obedience, should proceed to consider within himself how the recurrence of such a time of trouble might be prevented. His experience had shown him how weak were the ties which had hitherto been thought sufficient to hold the Empire together, and how slight an obstacle they opposed to the tendency, which all great empires have, to disruption. But, however natural it might be to desire a remedy for the evils which afflicted the State, it was not easy to devise one. Great empires had existed in Western Asia for above seven hundred years,[310] and had all suffered more or less from the same inherent weakness; but no one had as yet invented a cure, or even (so far as appears)

conceived the idea of improving on the rude system of imperial sway which the first conqueror had instituted. It remained for Darius, not only to desire, but to design—not only to design, but to bring into action—an entirely new form and type of government. He has been well called "the true founder of the Persian state."[311] He found the Empire a crude and heterogeneous mass of ill-assorted elements, hanging loosely together by the single tie of subjection to a common head; he left it a compact and regularly organized body, united on a single well-ordered system, permanently established everywhere.

On the nature and details of this system it will be necessary to speak at some length. It was the first, and probably the best, instance of that form of government which, taking its name from the Persian word for provincial ruler,[312] is known generally as the system of "satrapial" administration. Its main principles were, in the first place, the reduction of the whole Empire to a quasi-uniformity by the substitution of one mode of governing for several; secondly, the substitution of fixed and definite burthens on the subject in lieu of variable and uncertain calls; and thirdly, the establishment of a variety of checks and counterpoises among the officials to whom it was necessary that the crown should delegate its powers, which tended greatly to the security of the monarch and the stability of the kingdom. A consideration of the modes in which these three principles were applied will bring before us in a convenient form the chief points of the system.

Uniformity, or a near approach to it, was produced, not so much by the abolition of differences as by superadding one and the same governmental machinery in all parts of the Empire. It is an essential feature of the satrapial system that it does not aim at destroying differences, or assimilating to one type the various races and countries over which it is extended. On the contrary, it allows, and indeed encourages, the several nations to retain their languages, habits, manners, religion, laws, and modes of local government. Only it takes care to place above all these things a paramount state authority, which is one and the same everywhere, whereon the unity of the kingdom is dependent. The authority instituted by Darius was that of his satraps. He divided the whole empire into a number of separate governments—a number which must have varied at different times, but which seems never to have fallen short of twenty.[313] Over each govern-

ment he placed a satrap, or supreme civil governor, charged with the collection and transmission of the revenue, the administration of justice, the maintenance of order, and the general supervision of the territory. These satraps were nominated by the king at his pleasure from any class of his subjects,[314] and held office for no definite term, but simply until recalled, being liable to deprivation or death at any moment, without other formality than the presentation of the royal *firman*.[315] While, however, they remained in office they were despotic—they represented the Great King, and were clothed with a portion of his majesty they had palaces (βασίλεια),[316] Courts, body-guards,[317] parks or "paradises,"[318] vast trains of eunuchs and attendants, well-filled seraglios.[319] They wielded the power of life and death.[320] They assessed the tribute on the several towns and villages within their jurisdiction at their pleasure, and appointed deputies called sometimes, like themselves, satraps[321]—over cities or districts within their province, whose office was regarded as one of great dignity. They exacted from the provincials, for their own support and that of their Court, over and above the tribute due to the crown, whatever sum they regarded them as capable of furnishing. Favors, and even justice, had to be purchased from them by gifts.[322] They were sometimes guilty of gross outrages on the persons and honor of their subjects.[323] Nothing restrained their tyranny but such sense of right as they might happen to possess, and the fear of removal or execution if the voice of complaint reached the monarch.

Besides this uniform civil administration, the Empire was pervaded throughout by one and the same military system. The services of the subject nations as soldiers were, as a general rule, declined, unless upon rare and exceptional cases.[324] Order was maintained by large and numerous garrisons of foreign troops—Persians and Medes[325]—quartered on the inhabitants, who had little sympathy with those among whom they lived, and would be sure to repress sternly any outbreak. All places of much strength were occupied in this way; and special watch was kept upon the great capitals, which were likely to be centres of disaffection.[326] Thus a great standing army, belonging to the conquering race, stood everywhere on guard throughout the Empire, offending the provincials no doubt by their pride, their violence, and their contemptuous bearing, but rendering a native revolt under ordinary circumstances hopeless.

Some exceptions to the general uniformity had almost of necessity to be made in so vast and heterogeneous an empire as the Persian. Occasionally it was thought wise to allow the continuance of a native dynasty in a province; and the satrap had in such a case to share with the native prince a divided authority. This was certainly the case in Cilicia,[327] and probably in Paphlagonia[328] and Phœnicia.[329] Tribes also, included within the geographical limits of a satrapy, were sometimes recognized as independent: and petty wars were carried on between these hordes and their neighbors.[330] Robber bands in many places infested the mountains,[331] owing no allegiance to any one, and defied alike the satrap and the standing army.

The condition of Persia Proper was also purely exceptional. Persia paid no tribute,[332] and was not counted as a satrapy. Its inhabitants were, however, bound, when the king passed through their country, to bring him gifts according to their means.[333] This burthen may have been felt sensibly by the rich, but it pressed very lightly on the poor, who, if they could not afford an ox or a sheep, might bring a little milk or cheese, a few dates, or a handful of wild fruit.[334] On the other hand, the king was bound, whenever he visited Pasargadæ, to present to each Persian woman who appeared before him a sum equal to twenty Attic drachmas, or about sixteen shillings of our money.[335] This custom commemorated the service rendered by the sex in the battle wherein Cyrus first repulsed the forces of Astyages.

The substitution of definite burthens on the subject in lieu of variable and uncertain charges was aimed at, rather than effected, by the new arrangement of the revenue which is associated with the name of Darius. This arrangement consisted in fixing everywhere the amount of tribute in money and in kind which each satrapy was to furnish to the crown. A definite money payment, varying, in ordinary satrapies, from 170 to 1000 Babylonian silver talents,[336] or from 42,000*l.* to 250,000*l.* of our money, and amounting, in the exceptional case of the Indian satrapy, to above a million sterling,[337] was required annually by the sovereign, and had to be remitted by the satrap to the capital. Besides this, a payment, the nature and amount of which was also fixed, had to be made in kind, each province being required to furnish that commodity, or those commodities, for which it was most celebrated. This latter burthen must have pressed very unequally on different

portions of the Empire, if the statement of Herodotus be true that Babylonia and Assyria paid one-third of it.[338] The payment seems to have been very considerable in amount. Egypt had to supply grain sufficient for the nutriment of 120,000 Persian troops quartered in the country.[339] Media had to contribute 100,000 sheep, 4000 mules, and 3000 horses; Cappadocia, half the above number of each kind of animal; Armenia furnished 20,000 colts;[340] Cilicia gave 360 white horses and a sum of 140 talents (35,000*l.*) in lieu of further tribute in kind.[341] Babylonia, besides corn, was required to furnish 500 boy eunuchs.[342] These charges, however, were all fixed by the crown and may have been taken into consideration in assessing the money payment, the main object of the whole arrangement evidently being to make the taxation of each province proportionate to its wealth and resources.

The assessment of the taxation upon the different portions of his province was left to the satrap. We do not know on what principles he ordinarily proceeded, or whether any uniform principles at all were observed throughout the Empire. But we find some evidence that, in places at least, the mode of exaction and collection was by a land-tax.[343] The assessment upon individuals, and the actual collection from them, devolved, in all probability, on the local authorities, who distributed the burthen imposed upon their town, village, or district as they thought proper.[344] Thus the foreign oppressor did not come into direct contact with the mass of the conquered people, who no doubt paid the calls made upon them with less reluctance through the medium of their own proper magistrates.

If the taxation of the subject had stopped here, he would have had no just ground of complaint against his rulers. The population of the Empire cannot be estimated at less than forty millions of souls.[345] The highest estimate of the value of the entire tribute, both in money and kind, will scarcely place it at more than ten millions sterling.[346] Thus far, then, the burthen of taxation would certainly not have exceeded five shillings a head per annum. Perhaps it would not have reached half that amount.[347] But, unhappily, neither was the tribute the sole tax which the crown exacted from its subjects, nor had the crown the sole right of exacting taxation. Persian subjects in many parts of the Empire paid, besides their tribute, a water-rate, which is expressly said to have been very productive.[348] The rivers of the Empire were the king's; and when water was required for irrigation, a state officer

superintended the opening of the sluices, and regulated the amount of the precious fluid which might be drawn off by each tribe or township. For the opening of the sluices a large sum was paid to the officer, which found its way into the coffers of the state.[349] Further, it appears that such things as fisheries—and if so, probably salt-works, mines, quarries, and forests—were regarded as crown property, and yielded large sums to the revenue.[350] They appear to have been farmed to responsible persons, who undertook to pay at a certain fixed rate, and made what profit they could by the transaction. The price of commodities thus farmed would be greatly enhanced to the consumer.

By these means the actual burthen of taxation upon the subject was rendered to some extend uncertain and indefinite, and the benefits of the fixed tribute system were diminished. But the chief drawback upon it has still to be mentioned. While the claims of the crown upon its subjects were definite and could not be exceeded, the satrap was at liberty to make any exactions that he pleased beyond them. There is every reason to believe that he received no stipend, and that, consequently, the burthen of supporting him, his body-guard, and his Court was intended to fall on the province which had the benefit of his superintendence. Like a Roman proconsul, he was to pay himself out of the pockets of his subjects; and, like that class of persons, he took care to pay himself highly. It has been calculated that one satrap of Babylon drew from his province annually in actual coin a sum equal to 100,000*l.* of our money.[351] We can scarcely doubt that the claims made by the provincial governors were, on the average, at least equal to those of the crown; and they had the disadvantage of being irregular, uncertain, and purely arbitrary.

Thus, what was gained by the new system was not so much the relief of the subject from uncertain taxation as the advantage to the crown of knowing beforehand what the revenue would be, and being able to regulate its expenditure accordingly. Still a certain amount of benefit did undoubtedly accrue to the provincials from the system; since it gave them the crown for their protector. So long as the payments made to the state were irregular, it was, or at least seemed to be, for the interest of the crown to obtain from each province as much as it could anyhow pay.[352] When the state dues were once fixed, as the crown gained nothing by the rapacity of its officers, but rather lost, since the province became exhausted,

it was interested in checking greed, and seeing that the provinces were administered by wise and good satraps.

The control of its great officers is always the main difficulty of a despotic government, when it is extended over a large space of territory and embraces many millions of men. The system devised by Darius for checking and controlling his satraps was probably the best that has ever yet been brought into operation. His plan was to establish in every province at least three officers holding their authority directly from the crown, and only responsible to it, who would therefore act as checks one upon another. These were the satrap, the military commandant, and the secretary. The satrap was charged with the civil administration, and especially with the department of finance. The commandant was supreme over the troops.[353] The office of the secretary is less clearly defined; but it probably consisted mainly in keeping the Court informed by despatches of all that went on in the province.[354] Thus, if the satrap were inclined to revolt, he had, in the first place, to persuade the commandant, who would naturally think that, if he ran the risk, it might as well be for himself; and, further, he had to escape the lynx eyes of the secretary, whose general right of superintendence gave him entrance everywhere, and whose prospects of advancement would probably depend a good deal upon the diligence and success with which he discharged the office of "King's Eye" and "Ear."[355] So, if the commandant were ambitious of independent sway, he must persuade the satrap, or he would have no money to pay his troops; and he too must blind the secretary, or else bribe him into silence. As for the secretary, having neither men nor money at his command, it was impossible that he should think of rebellion.

But the precautions taken against revolt did not end here. Once a year, according to Xenophon,[356] or more probably at irregular intervals, an officer came suddenly down from the Court with a commission to inspect a province. Such persons were frequently of royal rank, brothers or sons of the king. They were accompanied by an armed force, and were empowered to correct whatever was amiss in the province, and in case of necessity to report to the crown the insubordination or incompetency of its officers. If this system had been properly maintained, it is evident that it would have acted as a most powerful check upon misgovernment, and would have rendered revolt almost impossible.

Another mode by which it was sought to secure the fidelity of the satraps and commandants was by choosing them from among the king's blood relations,[357] or else attaching them to the crown by marriage with one of the princesses.[358] It was thought that the affection of sons and brothers would be a restraint upon their ambition, and that even connections by marriage would feel that they had an interest in upholding the power and dignity of the great house with which they had been thought worthy of alliance. This system, which was extensively followed by Darius, had on the whole good results, and was at any rate preferable to that barbarous policy of prudential fratricide which has prevailed widely in Oriental governments.

The system of checks, while it was effectual for the object at which it specially aimed, had one great disadvantage. It weakened the hands of authority in times of difficulty. When danger, internal or external, threatened, it was an evil that the powers of government should be divided, and the civil authority lodged in the hands of one officer, the military in those of another. Concentration of power is needed for rapid and decisive action, for unity of purpose, and secrecy both of plan and of execution. These considerations led to a modification of the original idea of satrapial government, which was adopted partially at first—in provinces especially exposed to danger, internal or external[359]—but which ultimately became almost universal.[360] The offices of satrap, or civil administrator, and commandant, or commander of the troops, were vested in the same person, who came in this way to have that full and complete authority which is possessed by Turkish pashas and modern Persian khans or beys—an authority practically uncontrolled. This system was advantageous for the defence of a province against foes: but it was dangerous to the stability of the Empire, since it led naturally to the occurrence of formidable rebellions.

Two minor points in the scheme of Darius remain to be noticed, before this account of his governmental system can be regarded as complete. These are his institution of posts, and his coinage of money.

In Darius's idea of government was included rapidity of communication. Regarding it as of the utmost importance that the orders of the Court should be speedily transmitted to the provincial governors, and that their reports and those of the royal secretaries should be received without needless de-

lay, he established along the lines of route [361] already existing between the chief cities of the Empire a number of post-houses, placed at regular intervals, according to the estimated capacity of a horse to gallop at his best speed without stopping.[362] At each post-house were maintained, at the cost of the state, a number of couriers and several relays of horses. When a despatch was to be forwarded it was taken to the first post-house along the route, where a courier received it, and immediately mounting on horseback galloped with it to the next station. Here it was delivered to a new courier, who, mounted on a fresh horse, took it the next stage on its journey; and thus it passed from hand to hand till it reached its destination. According to Xenophon, the messengers travelled by night as well as by day; and the conveyance was so rapid that some even compared it to the flight of birds.[363] Excellent inns or caravanserais [364] were to be found at every station; bridges or ferries were established upon all the streams; guard-houses occurred here and there, and the whole route was kept secure from the brigands who infested the Empire.[365] Ordinary travellers were glad to pursue so convenient a line of march; it does not appear, however, that they could obtain the use of post-horses even when the government was in no need of them.

The coinage of Darius consisted, it is probable, both of a gold and silver issue. It is not perhaps altogether certain that he was the first king of Persia who coined money;[366] but, if the term "daric" is really derived from his name,[367] that alone would be a strong argument in favor of his claim to priority. In any case, it is indisputable that he was the first Persian king who coined on a large scale,[368] and it is further certain that his gold coinage was regarded in later times as of peculiar value on account of its purity.[369] His gold darics appear to have contained, on an average, not quite 124 grains of pure metal, which would make their value about twenty two shillings of our money. They were of the type usual at the time both in Lydia and in Greece—flattened lumps of metal, very thick in comparison with the size of their surface, irregular, and rudely stamped.[370] The silver darics were similar in general character, but exceeded the gold in size. Their weight was from 224 to 230 grains, and they would thus have been worth not quite three shillings of our money. It does not appear that any other kinds of coins besides these were ever issued from the Persian mint. They must, therefore, it would seem, have satisfied the commercial needs of the people.

From this review of the governmental system of Darius we must now return to the actions of his later life. The history of an Oriental monarchy must always be composed mainly of a series of biographies; for, as the monarch is all in all in such communities, his sayings, doings, and character, not only determine, but constitute, the annals of the State. In the second period of his reign, that which followed on the time of trouble and disturbance, Darius (as has been already observed [371]) appears to have pursued mainly the arts of peace. Bent on settling and consolidating his Empire, he set up everywhere the satrapial form of government, organized and established his posts, issued his coinage, watched over the administration of justice,[372] and in various ways exhibited a love of order and method, and a genius for systematic arrangement. At the same time he devoted considerable attention to ornamental and architectural works, to sculpture, and to literary composition. He founded the royal palace at Susa, which was the main residence of the later kings.[373] At Persepolis he certainly erected one very important building: and it is on the whole most probable that he designed—if he did not live to execute—the *Chehl Minar* itself—the chief of the magnificent structures upon the great central platform.[374] The massive platform itself, with its grand and stately steps, is certainly of his erection, for it is inscribed with his name.[375] He gave his works all the solidity and strength that is derivable from the use of huge blocks of a good hard material. He set the example of ornamenting the stepped approached to a palace with elaborate bas-reliefs.[376] He designed and caused to be constructed in his own lifetime [377] the rock-tomb at Nakhsh-i-Rustam, in which his remains were afterwards laid. The rock-sculpture at Behistun was also his work. In attention to the creation of permanent historical records he excelled all the Persian kings, both before him and after him. The great Inscription of Behistun has no parallel in ancient times for length, finish, and delicacy of execution,[378] unless it be in Assyria or in Egypt. The only really historical inscription at Persepolis is one set up by Darius.[379] He was the only Persian king, except perhaps one,[380] who placed an inscription upon his tomb. The later monarchs in their records do little more than repeat certain religious phrases and certain forms of self-glorification which occur in the least remarkable inscriptions of their great predecessor. He alone oversteps those limits, and presents us with geographical notices and narratives of events profoundly interesting to the historian.

During this period of comparative peace, which may have extended from about B.C. 516 to B.C. 508 or 507,[381] the general tranquillity was interrupted by at least one important expedition. The administrational merits of Darius are so great that they have obscured his military glories, and have sent him down to posterity with the character of an unwarlike monarch —if not a mere "peddler," as his subjects said,[382] yet, at any rate, a mere consolidator and arranger. But the son of Hystaspes was no carpet prince. He had not drawn the sword against his domestic foes to sheath it finally and forever when his triumph over them was completed. On the contrary, he regarded it as incumbent on him to carry on the aggressive policy of Cyrus and Cambyses, his great predecessors, and like them to extend in one direction or another the boundaries of the Empire.[383] Perhaps he felt that aggression was the very law of the Empire's being, since if the military spirit was once allowed to become extinct in the conquering nation, they would lose the sole guarantee of their supremacy. At any rate, whatever his motive, we find him, after he had snatched a brief interval of repose, engaging in great wars both towards his eastern and his western frontier—wars which in both instances had results of considerable importance.

The first grand expedition was towards the East.[384] Cyrus, as we have seen,[385] had extended the Persian sway over the mountains of Afghanistan and the highlands from which flow the tributaries of the Upper Indus. From these eminences the Persian garrisons looked down on a territory possessing every quality that could attract a powerful conqueror. Fertile, well-watered, rich in gold, peopled by an ingenious yet warlike race,[386] which would add strength no less than wealth to its subjugators, the Punjab lay at the foot of the Sufeid Koh and Suliman ranges, inviting the attack of those who could swoop down when they pleased upon the low country. It was against this region that Darius directed his first great aggressive effort.[387] Having explored the course of the Indus from Attock to the sea by means of boats,[388] and obtained, we may suppose, in this way some knowledge of the country and its inhabitants, he led or sent an expedition into the tract, which in a short time succeeded in completely reducing it. The Punjab, and probably the whole valley of the Indus,[389] was annexed, and remained subject till the later times of the Empire. The results of this conquest were the acquisition of a brave race, capable of making excellent soldiers, an enormous

increase of the revenue, a sudden and vast influx of gold into Persia, which led probably to the introduction of the gold coinage,[300] and the establishment of commercial relations with the natives, which issued in a regular trade carried on by coasting-vessels between the mouths of the Indus and the Persian Gulf.[301]

The next important expedition—one probably of still greater magnitude—took exactly the opposite direction. The sea which bounded the Persian dominion to the west and the north-west narrowed in two places to dimensions not much exceeding those of of the greater Asiatic rivers. The eye which looked across the Thracian Bosphorus or the Hellespont seemed to itself to be merely contemplating the opposite bank of a pretty wide stream. Darius, consequently being master of Asia Minor, and separated by what seemed to him so poor a barrier from fertile tracts of vast and indeed indefinite extent, such as were nowhere else to be found on the borders of his empire, naturally turned his thoughts of conquest to this quarter.[302] His immediate desire was, probably, to annex Thrace; but he may have already entertained wider views, and have looked to embracing in his dominions the lovely isles and coasts of Greece also, so making good the former threats of Cyrus.[303] The story of the voyage and escape of Democedes, related by Herodotus with such amplitude of detail,[304] and confirmed to some extent from other sources,[305] cannot be a mere myth without historical foundation. Nor is it probable that the expedition was designed merely for the purpose of "indulging the exile with a short visit to his native country," or of collecting "interesting information."[306] If by the king's orders a vessel was fitted out at Sidon to explore the coasts of Greece under the guidance of Democedes, which proceeded as far as Crotona in Magna Græcia, we may be tolerably sure that a political object lay at the bottom of the enterprise. It would have exactly the same aim and end as the eastern voyage of Scylax, and would be intended, like that, to pave the way for a conquest. Darius was therefore, it would seem, already contemplating the reduction of Greece Proper, and did not require to have it suggested to him by any special provocation. Mentally, or actually,[307] surveying the map of the world, so far as it was known to him, he saw that in this direction only there was an attractive country readily accessible. Elsewhere his Empire abutted on seas, sandy deserts, or at best barren steppes; here, and here only,[308] was there a rich

prize close at hand and (as it seemed) only waiting to be grasped.

But if the aggressive force of Persia was to be turned in this direction, if the stream of conquest was to be set westward along the flanks of Rhodopé and Hæmus, it was essential to success, and even to safety, that the line of communication with Asia should remain intact. Now, there lay on the right flank of an army marching into Europe a vast and formidable power, known to be capable of great efforts,[397] which, if allowed to feel itself secure from attack, might be expected at any time to step in, to break the line of communication between the east and west, and to bring the Persians who should be engaged in conquering Pæonia, Macedonia, and Greece, into imminent danger. It is greatly to the credit of Darius that he saw this peril saw it and took effectual measures to guard against it. The Scythian expedition was no insane project of a frantic despot,[398] burning for revenge, or ambitious of an impossible conquest. It has all the appearance of being a well-laid plan, conceived by a moderate and wise prince, for the furtherance of a great design, and the permanent advantage of his empire. The lord of South-Western Asia was well aware of the existence beyond his northern frontier of a standing menace to his power. A century had not sufficed to wipe out the recollection of that terrible time when Scythian hordes had carried desolation far and wide over the fairest of the regions that were now under the Persian dominion. What had occurred once might recur. Possibly, as a modern author suggests, "the remembrance of ancient injuries may have been revived by recent aggressions."[399] It was at any rate essential to strike terror into the hordes of the Steppe Region in order that Western Asia might attain a sense of security. It was still more essential to do so if the north-west was to become the scene of war, and the Persians were to make a vigorous effort to establish themselves permanently in Europe. Scythia, it must be remembered, reached to the banks of the Danube. An invader, who aspired to the conquest even of Thrace, was almost forced into collision with her next neighbor.

Darius, having determined on his course, prefaced his expedition by a raid, the object of which was undoubtedly to procure information. He ordered Ariaramnes, satrap of Cappadocia, to cross the Euxine with a small fleet,[400] and, descending suddenly upon the Scythian coast, to carry off a number of

prisoners. Ariaramnes executed the commission skilfully, and was so fortunate as to make prize of a native of high rank, the brother of a Scythian chief or king. From this person and his companions the Persian monarch was able to obtain all the information which he required. Thus enlightened, he proceeded to make his preparations. Collecting a fleet of 600 ships,[403] chiefly from the Greeks of Asia,[404] and an army estimated at from 700,000 to 800,000 men,[405] which was made up of contingents from all the nations under his rule, he crossed the Bosphorus by a bridge of boats constructed by Mandrocles a Samian;[406] marched through Thrace along the line of the Little Balkan, receiving the submission of the tribes as he went;[407] crossed the Great Balkan;[408] conquered the Getæ, who dwelt between that range and the Danube;[409] passed the Danube by a bridge, which the Ionian Greeks had made with their vessels just above the apex of the Delta;[410] and so invaded Scythia. The natives had received intelligence of his approach, and had resolved not to risk a battle.[411] They retired as he advanced, and endeavored to bring his army into difficulties by destroying the forage, driving off the cattle, and filling in the wells. But the commissariat of the Persians was, as usual, well arranged.[412] Darius remained for more than two months[413] in Scythia without incurring any important losses. He succeeded in parading before the eyes of the whole nation the immense military power of his empire. He no doubt inflicted considerable damage on the hordes, whose herds he must often have captured,[414] and whose supplies of forage he curtailed.[415] It is difficult to say how far he penetrated. Herodotus was informed that he marched east to the Tanais (Don), and thence north to the country of the Budini, where he burnt the staple of Gelonus,[416] which cannot well have been below the fiftieth parallel, and was probably not far from Voronej. It is certainly astonishing that he should have ventured so far inland, and still more surprising that, having done so, he should have returned with his army well-nigh intact. But we can scarcely suppose the story that he destroyed the staple of the Greek trade a pure fiction. He would be glad to leave his mark in the country, and might make an extraordinary effort to reach the only town that was to be found in the whole steppe region. Having effected his purpose by its destruction, he would retire, falling back probably upon the coast, where he could obtain supplies from his fleet. It is beyond dispute that he returned with the bulk of his army, having suffered no loss but that of a

few invalid troops whom he sacrificed.[417] Attempts had been made during his absence to induce the Greeks, who guarded the bridge over the Danube, to break it, and so hinder his return;[418] but they were unsuccessful. Darius recrossed the river after an interval of somewhat more than two months, victorious according to his own notions, and regarded himself as entitled thenceforth to enumerate among the subject races of his empire "the Scyths beyond the sea."[419] On his return march through Thrace, he met, apparently, with no opposition. Before passing the Bosphorus, he gave a commission to one of his generals, a certain Megabazus, to complete the reduction of Thrace, and assigned him for the purpose a body of 80,000 men, who remained in Europe while Darius and the rest of his army crossed into Asia.[420]

Megabazus appears to have been fully worthy of the trust reposed in him. In a single campaign (B.C. 506) he overran and subjugated the entire tract between the Propontis and the Strymon, thus pushing forward the Persian dominion to the borders of Macedonia. Among the tribes which he conquered were the Perinthians, Greeks;[421] the Pæti, Cicones, Bistones, Sapæi, Dersæi and Edoni, Thracians;[422] and the Pæoplæ and Siriopæones, Pæonians.[423] These last, to gratify a whim of Darius,[424] were transported into Asia. The Thracians who submitted were especially those of the coast, no attempt, apparently, being made to penetrate the mountain fastnesses and bring under subjection the tribes of the interior.[425]

The first contact between Persia and Macedonia possesses peculiar interest from the circumstances of the later history. An ancestor of Alexander the Great sat upon the throne of Macedon when the general of Darius was brought in his career of conquest to the outskirts of the Macedonian power. The kingdom was at this time comparatively small, not extending much beyond Mount Bermius on the one hand, and not reaching very far to the east of the Axius on the other. Megabazus saw in it, we may be sure, not the fated destroyer of the Empire which he was extending, but a petty state which the mere sound of the Persian name would awe into subjection. He therefore, instead of invading the country, contented himself with sending an embassy, with a demand for earth and water, the symbols, according to Persian custom, of submission.[426] Amyntas, the Macedonian king, consented to the demand at once; and though, owing to insolent conduct on the part of the ambassadors, they were massacred

with their whole retinue,[427] yet this circumstance did not prevent the completion of Macedonian vassalage. When a second embassy was sent to inquire into the fate of the first, Alexander, the son of Amyntas, who had arranged the massacre, contrived to have the matter hushed up by bribing one of the envoys with a large sum of money and the hand of his sister, Gygæa.[428] Macedonia took up the position of a subject kingdom, and owned for her true lord the great monarch of Western Asia.

Megabazus, having accomplished the task assigned him, proceeded to Sardis,[429] where Darius had remained almost, if not quite, a full year His place was taken by Otanes, the son of Sisamnes,[430] a different person from the conspirator, who rounded off the Persian conquests in these parts by reducing, probably in B.C. 505, the cities of Byzantium, Chalcedon, Antandrus, and Lamponium, with the two adjacent islands of Lemnos and Imbrus. The inhabitants of all were, it appears, taxable, either with having failed to give contingents towards the Scythian expedition, or with having molested it on its return[431]—crimes these, which Otanes thought it right to punish by their general enslavement.

Darius, meanwhile, had proceeded to the seat of government, which appears at this time to have been Susa.[432] He had perhaps already built there the great palace, whose remains have been recently disinterred by English enterprise; or he may have wished to superintend the work of construction. Susa, which was certainly from henceforth the main Persian capital, possessed advantages over almost any other site. Its climate was softer than that of Ecbatana and Persepolis, less sultry than that of Babylon. Its position was convenient for communicating both with the East and with the West. Its people were plastic,[433] and probably more yielding and submissive than the Medes or the Persians. The king, fatigued with his warlike exertions, was glad for a while to rest and recruit himself at Susa, in the tranquil life of the Court. For some years he appears to have conceived no new aggressive project; and he might perhaps have forgotten his designs upon Greece altogether, had not his memory been stirred by a signal and extraordinary provocation.

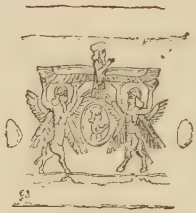
The immediate circumstances which led to the Ionian Revolt belong to Greek rather than to Persian history, and have been so fully treated of by the historians of the Hellenic race[434] that a knowledge of them may be assumed as already

Figure of a Good Genius, Pasargadæ.

Fig 1.

Figure with curious head dress (Egyptian).

Fig 2.



No. 1.

No. 2.

Persian Cylinders.

Fig. 3.

No. 1.

No. 2.

Fig. 4

Monsters, probably representing evil spirits, from Persian gems or cylinders.

possessed by the reader. What is chiefly remarkable about them is, that they are so purely private and personal. A chance quarrel between Aristagoras of Miletus and the Persian Megabates, pecuniary difficulties pressing on the former, and the natural desire of Histiæus, father-in-law of Aristagoras, to revisit his native place, were undoubtedly the direct and immediate causes of what became a great national outbreak. That there must have been other and wider predisposing causes can scarcely be doubted. Among them two may be suggested. The presence of Darius in Asia Minor, and his friendliness towards the tyrants who bore sway in most of the Greek cities,[434] were calculated to elate those persons in their own esteem, and to encourage in them habits and acts injurious or offensive to their subjects. Their tyranny under these circumstances would become more oppressive and galling. At the same time the popular mind could not fail to associate together the native despot and the foreign lord, who (it was clear to all) supported and befriended each other.[436] If the Greeks of Asia, like so many of their brethren in Europe, had grown weary of their tyrants and were desirous of rising against them, they would be compelled to contemplate the chances of a successful resistance to the Persians. And here there were circumstances in the recent history calculated to inspirit them and give them hopes. Six hundred Greek ships, manned probably by 120,000 men, had been lately brought together, and had formed a united fleet.[437] The fate of the Persian land-army had depended on their fidelity.[438] It is not surprising that a sense of strength should have been developed, and something like a national spirit should have grown up in such a condition of things.

If this were the state of feeling among the Greeks, the merit of Aristagoras would be, that he perceived it, and, regardless of all class prejudices,[439] determined to take advantage of the chance which it gave him of rising superior to his embarrassments. Throwing himself on the popular feeling, the strength of which he had estimated aright, he by the same act gave freedom to the cities, and plunged his nation into a rebellion against Persia. It was easy for reason to show, when the matter was calmly debated, that the probabilities of success against the might of Darius were small.[440] But the arrest of the tyrants by Aristagoras, and his deliverance of them into the hands of their subjects,[441] was an appeal to passion against which reason was powerless. No state could resist the temp-

tation of getting rid of the tyranny under which it groaned. But the expulsion of the vassal committed those who took part in it to resist in arms the sovereign lord.

In the original revolt appear to have been included only the cities of Ionia and Æolis.[442] Aristagoras felt that some further strength was needed, and determined to seek it in European Greece. Repulsed from Sparta, which was disinclined to so distant an expedition,[443] he applied for aid to cities on which he had a special claim. Miletus counted Athens as her mother state;[444] and Eretria was indebted to her for assistance in her great war with Chalcis.[445] Applying in these quarters Aristagoras succeeded better, but still obtained no very important help. Athens voted him twenty ships,[446] Eretria five:[447] and with the promise of these succors he hastened back to Asia.

The European contingent soon afterwards arrived; and Aristagoras, anxious to gain some signal success which should attract men to his cause, determined on a most daring enterprise. This was no less than an attack on Sardis, the chief seat of the Persian power in these parts, and by far the most important city of Asia Minor. Sailing to Ephesus, he marched up the valley of the Cayster, crossed Mount Tmolus, and took the Lydian capital at the first onset. Artaphernes, the satrap, was only able to save the citadel; the invaders began to plunder the town, and in the confusion it caught fire and was burnt. Aristagoras and his troops hastily retreated, but were overtaken before they could reach Ephesus by the Persians quartered in the province, who fell upon them and gave them a severe defeat. The expedition then broke up; the Asiatic Greeks dispersed among their cities; the Athenians and Eretrians took ship and sailed home.[448]

Results followed that could scarcely have been anticipated. The failure of the expedition was swallowed up in the glory of its one achievement. It had taken Sardis—it had burnt one of the chief cities of the Great King. The news spread like wildfire on every side, and was proclaimed aloud in places where the defeat of Ephesus was never even whispered. Everywhere revolt burst out. The Greeks of the Hellespont —not only those of Asia but likewise those of Europe[449]—the Carians and Caunians of the south-western coast[450]—even the distant Cyprians[451] broke into rebellion; the Scythians took heart and made a plundering raid through the Great King's Thracian territories;[452] vassal monarchs, like Miltiades, assumed independence, and helped themselves to some of the

fragments of the Empire that seemed falling to pieces.[453] If a great man, a Miltiades or a Leonidas, had been at the head of the movement, and if it had been decently supported from the European side,[454] a successful issue might probably have been secured.

But Aristagoras was unequal to the occasion; and the struggle for independence, which had promised so fair, was soon put down. Despite a naval victory gained by the Greeks over the Phœnician fleet off Cyprus,[455] that island was recovered by the Persians within a year.[456] Despite a courage and a perseverance worthy of a better fate,[457] the Carians were soon afterwards forced to succumb. The reduction of the Hellespontine Greeks and of the Æolians followed.[458] The toils now closed around Ionia, and her cities began to be attacked one by one:[459] whereupon the incapable Aristagoras, deserting the falling cause, betook himself to Europe, where a just Nemesis pursued him: he died by a Thracian sword.[460] After this the climax soon arrived. Persia concentrated her strength upon Miletus,[461] the cradle of the revolt, and the acknowledged chief of the cities; and though her sister states came gallantly to her aid, and a fleet was collected which made it for a while doubtful which way victory might incline,[462] yet all was of no avail. Laziness and insubordination began[463] and treachery completed the work[464] which all the force of Persia might have failed to accomplish; the combined Ionian fleet was totally defeated in the battle of Ladé;[465] and soon after Miletus herself fell.[466] The bulk of her inhabitants were transported into inner Asia and settled upon the Persian Gulf.[467] The whole Ionian coast was ravaged, and the cities punished by the loss of their most beautiful maidens and youths.[468] The islands off the coast were swept of their inhabitants.[469] The cities on the Hellespont and Sea of Marmora were burnt.[470] Miltiades barely escaped from the Chersonese with the loss of his son and his kingdom.[471] The flames of rebellion were everywhere ruthlessly trampled out; and the power of the Great King was once more firmly established over the coasts and islands of the Propontis and the Ægean Sea.

It remained, however, to take vengeance upon the foreigners who had dared to lend their aid to the king's revolted subjects, and had borne a part in the burning of Sardis. The pride of the Persians felt such interference as an insult of the grossest kind: and the tale may well be true that Darius, from the time that he first heard the news, employed an officer to

bid him daily "remember Athens."[472] The schemes which he had formerly entertained with respect to the reduction of Greece recurred with fresh force to his mind; and the task of crushing the revolt was no sooner completed than he proceeded to attempt their execution. Selecting Mardonius, son of Gobryas the conspirator, and one of his own sons-in-law, for general,[473] he gave him the command of a powerful expedition, which was to advance by way of Thrace, Macedonia, and Thessaly, against Eretria and Athens. At the same time, with a wisdom which we should scarcely have expected in an Oriental, he commissioned him, ere he quitted Asia, to depose the tyrants who bore rule in the Greek cities,[474] and to allow the establishment of democracies in their stead. Such a measure was excellently calculated to preserve the fidelity of the Hellenic population and to prevent any renewal of disturbance. It gave ample employment to unquiet spirits by opening to them a career in their own states—and it removed the grievance which, more than anything else, had produced the recent rebellion.[475]

Mardonius having effected this change proceeded into Europe. He had a large land force and a powerful navy, and at first was successful both by land and sea. The fleet took Thasos, an island valuable for its mines;[476] and the army forced the Macedonians to exchange their position of semi-independence for that of full Persian subjects, liable to both tribute and military service. But this fair dawn was soon overcast. As the fleet was rounding Athos a terrible tempest arose which destroyed 300 triremes and more than 20,000 men, some of whom were devoured by sea-monsters, while the remainder perished by drowning. On shore, a night attack of the Brygi, a Thracian tribe dwelling in the tract between the Strymon and the Axius, brought disaster upon the land force, numbers of which were slain, while Mardonius himself received a wound. This disgrace, indeed, was retrieved by subsequent operations, which forced the Brygi to make their submission; but the expedition found itself in no condition to advance further, and Mardonius retreated into Asia.[477]

Darius, however, did not allow failure to turn him from his purpose. The attack of Mardonius was followed within two years by the well-known expedition under Datis (B.C. 490), which, avoiding the dangers of Athos, sailed direct to its object, crossing the Egean by the line of the Cyclades, and falling upon Eretria and Attica.[478] Eretria's punishment[479] warned

the Athenians to resist to the uttermost: and the skill of Miltiades, backed by the valor of his countrymen, gave to Athens the great victory of MARATHON.[479] Datis fell back upon Asia,[481] having suffered worse disasters than his predecessor, and bore to the king the melancholy tidings that his vast force of from 100,000 to 200,000 men had been met and worsted by 20,000 Athenians and Platæans.

Still Darius was not shaken in his resolution. He only issued fresh orders for the collection of men, ships, and materials.[482] For three years Asia resounded with the din of preparation: and it is probable that in the fourth year a fresh expedition would have been led into Greece, had not an important occurrence prevented it. Egypt, always discontented with its subject position under a race which despised its religion, and perhaps occasionally persecuted it, broke out into open revolt (B.C. 487).[483] Darius, it seems, determined to divide his forces, and proceed simultaneously against both enemies;[484] he even contemplated leading one of the two expeditions in person;[485] but before his preparations were completed his vital powers failed. He died in the year following the Egyptian revolt (B.C. 486), in the sixty-third year of his age,[486] and the thirty-sixth of his reign, leaving his crown to his eldest son by Atossa, Xerxes.

The character of Darius will have revealed itself with tolerable clearness in the sketch which has been here given of the chief events of his reign. But a brief summary of some of its main points may not be superfluous. Darius Hystaspis was, next to Cyrus, the greatest of the Persian kings; and he was even superior to Cyrus in some particulars. His military talent has been underrated.[487] Though not equal to the founder of the Empire in this respect, he deserves the credit of energy, vigor, foresight, and judicious management in his military expeditions, of promptness in resolving and ability in executing, of discrimination in the selection of generals,[488] and of a power of combination not often found in Oriental commanders.[489] He was personally brave, and quite willing to expose himself, even in his old age,[490] to dangers and hardships. But he did not unnecessarily thrust himself into peril. He was content to employ generals, where the task to be accomplished did not seem to be beyond their powers; and he appears to have been quite free from an unworthy jealousy of their successes.[491] He was a man of kindly and warm feeling—strongly attached to his friends;[492] he was clement and even generous towards con-

quered foes.[493] When he thought the occasion required it, he could be severe;[494] but his inclination was towards mildness and indulgence. He excelled all the other Persian kings in the arts of peace. To him, and him alone, the Empire owed its organization. He was a skilful administrator, a good financier, and a wise and far-seeing ruler. Of all the Persian princes he is the only one who can be called "many-sided." He was organizer, general, statesman, administrator, builder, patron of arts and literature, all in one. Without him Persia would probably have sunk as rapidly as she rose, and would be known to us only as one of the many meteor powers which have shot athwart the horizon of the East.

Xerxes, the eldest son of Darius by Atossa, succeeded his father by virtue of a formal act of choice. It was a Persian custom that the king, before he went out of his dominions on an expedition, should nominate a successor.[495] Darius must have done this before his campaign in Thrace and Scythia; and if Xerxes was then, as is probable, a mere boy, it is impossible that he should have received the appointment.[496] Artobazanes, the eldest of all Darius's sons, whose mother, a daughter of Gobryas, was married to Darius before he became king,[497] was most likely then nominated, and was thenceforth regarded as the heir-apparent. When, however, towards the close of his reign Darius again proposed to head a foreign expedition, an opportunity occurred of disturbing this arrangement, of which Atossa, Darius's favorite wife, whose influence over her husband was unbounded,[498] determined to take advantage. According to the law, a fresh signification of the sovereign's will was now requisite; and Atossa persuaded Darius to make it in favor of Xerxes. The pleas put forward were, first, that he was the eldest son of *the king*,[499] and secondly, that he was descended from Cyrus. The latter argument could not fail to have weight. Backed by the influence of Atossa, it prevailed over all other considerations; and Hence Xerxes obtained the throne.

If we may trust the informants of Herodotus, it was the wish of Xerxes on his accession to discontinue the preparations against Greece, and confine his efforts to the re-conquest of Egypt.[500] Though not devoid of ambition, he may well have been distrustful of his own powers; and, having been nurtured in luxury, he may have shrunk from the perils of a campaign in unknown regions. But he was surrounded by advisers who had interests opposed to his inclinations, and who worked on

his facile temper till they prevailed on him to take that course which seemed best calculated to promote their designs. Mardonius was anxious to retrieve his former failure,[501] and expected, if Greece were conquered, that the rich prize would become his own satrapy.[502] The refugee princes of the family of Pisistratus hoped to be reinstated under Persian influence as dependent despots of Athens.[503] Demaratus of Sparta probably cherished a similar expectation with regard to that capital.[504] The Persian nobles generally, who profited by the spoils of war, and who were still full of the military spirit, looked forward with pleasure to an expedition from which they anticipated victory, plunder, and thousands of valuable captives.[505] The youthful king was soon persuaded that the example of his predecessors required him to undertake some fresh conquest,[506] while the honor of Persia absolutely demanded that the wrongs inflicted upon her by Athens should be avenged.[507] Before, however, turning his arms against Greece, two revolts required his attention. In the year B.C. 485—the second of his reign—he marched into Egypt, which he rapidly reduced to obedience and punished by increasing its burthens.[508] Soon afterwards he seems to have provoked a rebellion of the Babylonians by acts which they regarded as impious, and avenged by killing their satrap, Zopyrus, and proclaiming their independence.[509] Megabyzus, the son of Zopyrus, recovered the city, which was punished by the plunder and ruin of its famous temple and the desolation of many of its shrines.[510]

Xerxes was now free to bend all his efforts against Greece, and, appreciating apparently to the full the magnitude and difficulty of the task, resolved that nothing should be left undone which could possibly be done in order to render success certain. The experience of former years had taught some important lessons. The failure of Datis had proved that such an expedition as could be conveyed by sea across the Egean would be insufficient to secure the object sought, and that the only safe road for a conqueror whose land force constituted his real strength was along the shores of the European continent. But if a large army took this long and circuitous route, it must be supported by a powerful fleet; and this involved a new danger. The losses of Mardonius off Athos had shown the perils of Egean navigation, and taught the lesson that the naval force must be at first far more than proportionate to the needs of the army, in order that it might still be sufficient notwithstanding some considerable disasters. At the same time they

had indicated one special place of danger, which might be avoided, if proper measures were taken. Xerxes, in the four years which followed on the reduction of Egypt, continued incessantly to make the most gigantic preparations for his intended attack upon Greece,[511] and among them included all the precautions which a wise foresight could devise in order to ward off every conceivable peril. A general order was issued to all the satraps throughout the Empire, calling on them to levy the utmost force of their province for the new war;[512] while, as the equipment of Oriental troops depends greatly on the purchase and distribution of arms by their commander, a rich reward was promised to the satrap whose contingent should appear at the appointed place and time in the most gallant array.[513] Orders for ships and transports of different kinds were given to the maritime states,[514] with such effect that above 1200 triremes [515] and 3000 vessels of an inferior description [516] were collected together. Magazines of corn were formed at various points along the intended line of route.[517] Above all, it was determined to bridge the Hellespont by a firm and compact structure, which it was thought would secure the communication of the army from interruption by the elements; and at the same time it was resolved to cut through the isthmus which joined Mount Athos to the continent, in order to preserve the fleet from disaster at that most perilous part of the proposed voyage. These remarkable works, which made a deep impression on the minds of the Greeks, have been ascribed to a mere spirit of ostentation on the part of Xerxes; the vain-glorious monarch wished, it is supposed, to parade his power, and made a useless bridge and an absurd cutting merely for the purpose of exhibiting to the world the grandeur of his ideas and the extent of his resources.[518] But there is no necessity for travelling beyond the line of ordinary human motive in order to discover a reason for the works in question. The bridge across the Hellespont was a mere repetition of the construction by which Darius had passed into Europe when he made his Scythian expedition,[519] and probably seemed to a Persian not a specially dignified or very wonderful way of crossing so narrow a strait, but merely the natural mode of passage.[520] The only respect in which the bridge of Xerxes differed from constructions with which the Persians were thoroughly familiar, was in its superior solidity and strength. The shore-cables were of unusual size and weight, and apparently of unusual materials;[521] the formation of a double line—of two

bridges in fact, instead of one—was almost without a parallel;[922] and the completion of the work by laying on the ordinary plank-bridge a solid causeway composed of earth and brushwood, with a high bulwark on either side,[923] was probably, if not unprecedented, at any rate very uncommon. Boat-bridges were usually, as they are even now in the East, somewhat rickety constructions, which animals unaccustomed to them could with difficulty be induced to cross. The bridge of Xerxes was a high-road—ὁδὸς ἁμαξευτός, as Æschylus calls it[924]—along which men, horses, and vehicles might pass with as much comfort and facility as they could move on shore.

The utility of such a work is evident. Without it Xerxes must have been reduced to the necessity of embarking in ships, conveying across the strait, and disembarking,[925] not only his entire host, but all its stores, tents, baggage, horses, camels, and sumpter-beasts. If the numbers of his army approached even the lowest estimate that has been formed of them, it is not too much to say that many weeks must have been spent in this operation.[926] As it was, the whole expedition marched across in seven days.[927] In the case of ship conveyance, continual accidents would have happened: the transport would from time to time have been interrupted by bad weather; and great catastrophes might have occurred. By means of the bridge the passage was probably effected without any loss of either man or beast. Moreover, the bridge once established, there was a safe line of communication thenceforth between the army in Europe and the headquarters of the Persian power in Asia, along which might pass couriers, supplies, and reinforcements, if they should be needed. Further, the grandeur, massiveness, and apparent stability of the work was calculated to impose upon the minds of men, and to diminish their power of resistance by impressing them strongly with a sense of the irresistible greatness and strength of the invader.[928]

The canal of Athos was also quite a legitimate and judicious undertaking. [Pl. LXI.] No portion of the Greek coast is so dangerous as that about Athos. Greek boatmen even at the present day refuse to attempt the circumnavigation;[929] and probably any government less apathetic than that of the Turks would at once re-open the old cutting. The work was one of very little difficulty, the breadth of the isthmus being less than a mile and a half, the material sand and marl, and the greatest height of the natural ground above the level of the sea about fifty feet.[930] The construction of a canal in such a locality was

certainly better than the formation of a ship-groove or Diolcus—the substitute for it proposed by Herodotus,[532] [Pl. LXI.] not to mention that it is doubtful whether at the time that this cutting was made ship-grooves were known even to the Greeks.[533]

Xerxes, having brought his preparations into a state of forwardness, having completed his canal and his bridge—after one failure with the latter, for which the constructors *and the sea* were punished[534]—proceeded, in the year B.C. 481, along the "Royal Road" from Susa to Sardis, and wintered at the Lydian capital.[535] His army is said to have accompanied him:[536] but more probably it joined him in the spring, flocking in, contingent after contingent, from the various provinces of his vast Empire. Forty-nine nations, according to Herodotus,[537] served under his standard; and their contingents made up a grand total of eighteen hundred thousand men.[538] Of these, eighty thousand were cavalry, while twenty thousand rode in chariots or on camels; the remainder served on foot. There are no sufficient means of testing these numbers. Figures in the mouth of an Oriental are vague and almost unmeaning; armies are never really counted: there is no such thing as a fixed and definite "strength" of a division or a battalion. Herodotus tells us that a rough attempt at numbering the infantry of the host was made on this occasion: but it was of so rude and primitive a description that little dependence can be placed on the results obtained by it. Ten thousand men were counted, and were made to stand close together; a line was then drawn round them, and a wall built on the line to the height of a man's waist; within the enclosure thus made all the troops in turn entered, and each time that the enclosure appeared to be full, ten thousand were supposed to be within it.[539] Estimated in this way, the infantry was regarded as amounting to 1,700,000. It is clear that such mode of counting was of the roughest kind, and might lead to gross exaggeration. Each commander would wish his troops to be thought more numerous than they really were, and would cause the enclosure to appear full when several thousands more might still have found room within it. Nevertheless there would be limits beyond which exaggeration could not go; and if Xerxes was made to believe that the land force which he took with him into Europe amounted to nearly two millions of men, it is scarcely doubtful but that it must have exceeded one million.

The motley composition of such a host has been described in a former chapter.[540] Each nation was armed and equipped

after its own fashion, and served in a body, often under a distinct commander.[541] The army marched through Asia in a single column, which was not, however, continuous, but was broken into three portions. The first portion consisted of the baggage animals and about half of the contingents of the nations: the second was composed wholly of native Persians, who preceded and followed the emblems of religion and the king: the third was made up of the remaining national contingents.[542] The king himself rode alternately in a chariot and in a litter. He was preceded immediately by ten sacred horses, and a sacred chariot drawn by eight milk-white steeds. Round him and about him were the choicest troops of the whole army, twelve thousand horse and the same number of foot, all Persians, and those too not taken at random, but selected carefully from the whole mass of the native soldiery. Among them seem to have been the famous "Immortals"—a picked body of 10,000 footmen, always maintained at exactly the same number, and thence deriving their appellation.[543]

The line of march from Sardis to Abydos was only partially along the shore. The army probably descended the valley of the Hermus nearly to its mouth, and then struck northward into the Caicus vale, crossing which it held on its way, with Mount Kara-dagh (Cané) on the left,[544] across the Atarnean plain, and along the coast to Adramyttium (Adramyti) and Antandros, whence it again struck inland, and, crossing the ridge of Ida, descended into the valley of the Scamander. Some losses were incurred from the effects of a violent thunderstorm amid the mountains;[544] but they cannot have been of a any great consequence. On reaching the Scamander the army found its first difficulty with respect to water. That stream was probably low, and the vast host of men and animals were unable to obtain from it a supply sufficient for their wants. This phenomenon, we are told, frequently recurred afterwards;[545] it surprises the English reader, but is not really astonishing,[546] since, in hot countries, even considerable streams are often reduced to mere threads of water during the summer.

Rounding the hills which skirt the Scamander valley upon the east, the army marched past Rhœteum, Ophrynium, and Dardanus to Abydos.[547] Here Xerxes, seated upon a marble throne, which the people of Abydos had erected for him on the summit of a hill,[548] was able to see at one glance his whole armament, and to feast his eyes with the sight. It is not likely

that any misgivings occurred to him at such a moment.[549] Before him lay his vast host, covering with its dense masses the entire low ground between the hills and the sea: beyond was the strait, and to his left the open sea, white with the sails of four thousand ships; the green fields of the Chersonese smiled invitingly a little further on; while, between him and the opposite shore, the long lines of his bridges lay darkling upon the sea, like a yoke placed upon the neck of a captive.[550] Having seen all, the king gave his special attention to the fleet, which he now perhaps beheld in all its magnitude for the first time. Desirous of knowing which of his subjects were the best sailors, he gave orders for a sailing-match, which were at once carried out. The palm was borne off by the Phœnicians of Sidon,[551] who must have beaten not only their own countrymen of Tyre, but the Greeks of Asia and the islands.

On the next day the passage took place. It was accompanied by religious ceremonies. Waiting for the sacred hour of sunrise, the leader of the host, as the first rays appeared, poured a libation from a golden goblet into the sea, and prayed to Mithra that he might effect the conquest of Europe. As he prayed he cast into the sea the golden goblet, and with it a golden bowl and a short Persian sword. Meanwhile the multitude strewed all the bridge with myrtle boughs, and perfumed it with clouds of incense.[552] The "Immortals" crossed first, wearing garlands on their heads. The king, with the sacred chariot and horses passed over on the second day.[553] For seven days and seven nights the human stream flowed on without intermission across one bridge, while the attendants and the baggage-train made use of the other. The lash was employed to quicken the movements of laggards.[554] At last the whole army was in Europe, and the march resumed its regularity.

It is unnecessary to follow in detail the advance of the host along the coast of Thrace, across Chalcidicé, and round the Thermaic Gulf into Pieria. If we except the counting of the fleet and army at Doriscus no circumstances of much interest diversified this portion of the march, which lay entirely through territories that had previously submitted to the Great King. The army spread itself over a wide tract of country, marching generally in three divisions,[555] which proceeded by three parallel lines—one along the coast, another at some considerable distance inland, and a third, with which was Xerxes himself, midway between them. At every place where Xerxes stopped along his line of route the natives had, besides furnish-

ing corn for his army, to entertain him and his suite at a great banquet, the cost of which was felt as a heavy burthen.[556] Contributions of troops or ships were also required from all the cities and tribes;[557] and thus both fleet and army continually swelled as they advanced onward. In crossing the track between the Strymon and the Axius some damage was suffered by the baggage-train from lions,[558] which came down from the mountains during the night and devoured many of the camels; but otherwise the march was effected without loss, and the fleet and army reached the borders of Thessaly intact, and in good condition. Here it was found that there was work for the pioneers,[559] and a reconnaissance of the enemy's country before entering it was probably also thought desirable.[560] The army accordingly halted some days in Pieria,[561] while preparations were being made for crossing the Olympic range into the Thessalian lowland.

During the halt intelligence arrived which seemed to promise the invader an easy conquest. Xerxes, while he was staying at Sardis, had sent heralds to all the Grecian states,[562] excepting Athens and Sparta, with a demand for earth and water, the recognized symbols of submission. His envoys now returned, and brought him favorable replies from at least one-third of the continental Greeks—from the Perrhæbians, Thessalians, Dolopians, Magnetians, Achæans of Phthiotis, Enianians, Malians, Locrians, and from most of the Bœotians.[563] Unless it were the insignificant Phocis, no hostile country seemed to intervene between the place where his army lay and the great object of the expedition, Attica. Xerxes, therefore, having first viewed the pass of Tempé, and seen with his own eyes that no enemy lay encamped beyond,[564] passed over the Olympic range by a road cut through the woods by his army, and proceeded southwards across Thessaly and Achæa Phthiotis into Malis,[565] the fertile plain at the mouth of the Spercheius river. Here, having heard that a Greek force was in the neighborhood, he pitched his camp not far from the small town of Trachis.

Thus far had the Greeks allowed the invader to penetrate their country without offering him any resistance. Originally there had been an intention of defending Thessaly, and an army under Evænetus, a Spartan polemarch, and Themistocles, the great Athenian, had proceeded to Tempé, in order to co-operate with the Thessalians in guarding the pass.[566] But the discovery that the Olympic range could be crossed in the

place where the army of Xerxes afterwards passed it had shown that the position was untenable; and it had been then resolved that the stand should be made at the next defensible position,[567] Thermopylæ. [Pl. LXII.] Here, accordingly, a force was found—small, indeed, if it be compared with the number of the assailants, but sufficient to defend such a position as that where it was posted against the world in arms. Three hundred Spartans, with their usual retinue of helots,[568] 700 Lacedæmonians,[569] other Peloponnesians to the number of 2800,[570] 1000 Phocians,[571] the same number of Locrians,[572] 700 Thespians, and 400 Thebans,[573] formed an army of 9000 men—quite as numerous a force as could be employed with any effect in the defile they were sent to guard. The defile was a long and narrow pass shut in between a high mountain, Callidromus, and the sea, and crossed at one point by a line of wall in which was a single gateway.[574] Unless the command of the sea were gained, or another mode of crossing the mountains discovered, the pass could scarcely be forced.

Xerxes, however, confident in his numbers—after waiting four days at Trachis, probably in the hope that his fleet would join him[575]—proceeded on the fifth day to the assault. First the Medes and Cissians, then the famous "Immortals" were sent into the jaws of the pass against the immovable foe;[576] but neither detachment could make any impression. The long spears,[577] large shields,[578] and heavy armor of the Greeks, their skilful tactics, and steady array, were far more than a match for the inferior equipments and discipline of the Asiatics. Though the attack was made with great gallantry, both on this day and the next,[579] it failed to produce the slightest effect. Very few of the Greeks were either slain or wounded; and it seemed as if the further advance of a million of men was to be stopped by a force less than a hundredth part of their number.

But now information reached Xerxes which completely changed the face of affairs. There was a rough mountain-path leading from Trachis up the gorge of the Asopus and across Callidromus to the rear of the Greek position,[580] which had been unknown to the Greeks when they decided on making their first stand at Thermopylæ,[581] and which they only discovered when their plans no longer admitted of alteration. It was, perhaps, not much more than a goat-track, and apparently they had regarded it as scarcely practicable, since they had thought its defence might be safely entrusted to a

thousand Phocians.[582] Xerxes, however, on learning the existence of the track, resolved at once to make trial of it. His Persian soldiers were excellent mountaineers. He ordered Hydarnes to take the "Immortals," and, guided by a native, to proceed along the path by night, and descend with early dawn into the rear of the Greeks, who would then be placed between two fires. The operation was performed with complete success. The Phocian guard, surprised at the summit, left the path free while they sought a place of safety.[583] The Greeks in the pass below, warned during the night of their danger, in part fled, in part resolved on death.[584] When morning came, Leonidas, at the head of about half his original army, moved forward towards the Malian plain, and there met the advancing Persians. A bloody combat ensued, in which the Persians lost by far the greater number; but the ranks of the Greeks were gradually thinned, and they were beaten back step by step into the narrowest part of the pass, where finally they all perished, except the four hundred Thebans, who submitted and were made prisoners.[585]

So terminated the first struggle on the soil of Greece, between the invaders and the invaded. It seemed to promise that, thought at vast cost, Persia would be victorious. If her loss in the three days' combat was 20,000 men, as Herodotus states,[586] yet, as that of her enemy was 4000, the proportionate advantage was on her side.[587]

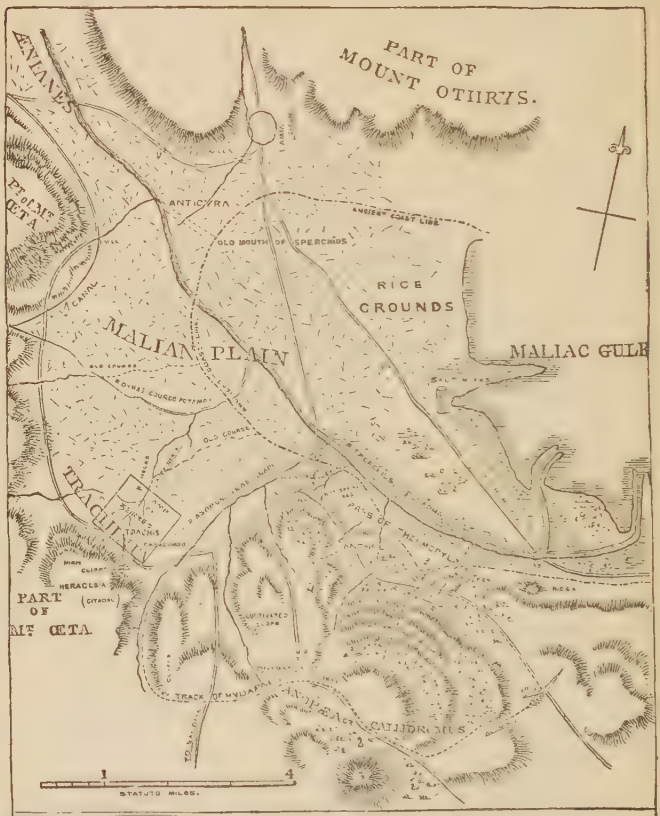
But, for the conquest of such a country as Greece, it was requisite, not only that the invader should succeed on land, but also that he should be superior at sea. Xerxes had felt this, and had brought with him a fleet, calculated, as he imagined, to sweep the Greek navy from the Ægean. As far as the Pagasæan Gulf, opposite the northern extremity of Eubœa, his fleet had advanced without meeting an enemy. It had encountered one terrible storm off the coast of Magnesia, and had lost 400 vessels;[588] but this loss was scarcely felt in so vast an armament. When from Aphetæ, at the mouth of the gulf, the small Greek fleet, amounting to no more than 271 vessels, was seen at anchor off Artemisium, the only fear which the Persian commanders entertained was lest it should escape them.[589] They at once detached 200 vessels to sail round the east coast of Eubœa, and cut off the possibility of retreat.[590] When, however, these vessels were all lost in a storm, and when in three engagements on three successive days, the Greek fleet showed itself fully able to contend against the superior

numbers of its antagonist,[592] the Persians themselves could not fail to see that their naval supremacy was more than doubtful. The fleet at Artemisium was not the entire Greek naval force; on another occasion it might be augumented, while their own could scarcely expect to receive reinforcements.[593] The fights at Artemisium foreshadowed a day when the rival fleets would no longer meet and part on equal terms, but Persia would have to acknowledge herself inferior.

Meanwhile, however, the balance of advantage rested with the invaders. The key of Northern Greece was won, and Phocis, Locris, Bœotia, Attica, and the Megarid lay open to the Persian army. The Greek fleet could gain nothing by any longer maintaining the position of Artemisium, and fell back towards the south,[594] while its leaders anxiously considered where it should next take up its station. The Persians pressed on both by land and sea. A rapid march through Phocis and Bœotia[595] brought Xerxes to Athens, soon after the Athenians, knowing that resistance would be vain, had evacuated it.[596] The Acropolis, defended by a few fanatics, was taken and burnt.[597] One object of the expedition was thus accomplished.[598] Athens lay in ruins; and the whole of Attica was occupied by the conqueror. The Persian fleet, too, finding the channel of the Euripus clear, sailed down it, and rounding Sunium, came to anchor in the bay of Phalerum.[599]

In the councils of the Greeks all was doubt and irresolution. The army, which ought to have mustered in full force at Thermopylæ and Callidromus, and which, after those passes were forced, might have defended Cithæron and Parnes, had never ventured beyond the Isthmus of Corinth, and was there engaged in building a wall across the neck of land from sea to sea.[600] The fleet lay off Salamis, where it was detained by the entreaties of the Athenians, who had placed in that island the greater part of the non-combatant population; but the inclination was strong on the part of many to withdraw westward and fight the next battle, if a battle must be fought, in the vicinity of the land force, which would be a protection in case of defeat.[601] Could Xerxes have had patience for a few days, the combined fleet would have broken up.[602] The Peloponnesian contingents would have withdrawn to the isthmus; and the Athenians, despairing of success, would probably have sailed away to Italy.[603] But the Great King, when he saw the vast disproportion between his own fleet and that of the enemy, could not believe in the possibility of the Greeks offering a

Plan of Canal.



PLAN OF THERMOPYLÆ
AND THE
ADJACENT COUNTRY.

ENLARGED VIEW OF THE PASS.

1 Monument to Leonidas.
2 Turkish Custom-house.
3 Hot Spring.

1 Position of the Greek Army.
2 Position of the Phocians.
3 Summit of Callidromus.
4 Site of the Monument to Leonidas.

successful resistance. Like a modern emperor,[604] who imagined that, if only he could have been with his fleet, all would necessarily have gone well, Xerxes supposed that by having the sea-fight under his own eye he would be sure of victory.[605] Thus again, as at Artemisium, the only fear felt was lest the Greeks should fly, and in that way escape chastisement. Orders were therefore issued to the Persian fleet to close up at once, and blockade the eastern end of the Salaminian strait,[606] while a detachment repeated the attempted manœuvre at Euboea, and sailed round the island to guard the channel at its western outlet.[607]

These movements were executed late in the day on which the Persian fleet arrived at Phalerum. During the night intelligence reached the commanders that the retreat of the Greeks was about to commence at once;[608] whereupon the Persian right wing was pushed forward into the strait, and carried beyond the Greek position so as to fill the channel where it opens into the bay of Eleusis.[609] The remainder of the night passed in preparations for the battle on both sides.[610] At daybreak both fleets advanced from their respective shores, the Persians being rather the assailants.[611] Their thousand vessels[612] were drawn up in three lines,[613] and charged their antagonists with such spirit that the general inclination on the part of the Greeks was at first to retreat. Some of their ships had almost touched the shore, when the bold example of one of the captains,[614] or a cry of reproach from unknown lips,[615] produced a revulsion of feeling, and the whole line advanced in good order. The battle was for a short time doubtful;[616] but soon the superiority of Greek naval tactics began to tell. The Persian vessels became entangled one with another, and crashing together broke each other's oars.[617] The triple line increased their difficulties. If a vessel, overmatched, sought to retreat, it necessarily came into collision with the ships stationed in its rear. These moreover pressed too eagerly forward, since their captains were anxious to distinguish themselves in order to merit the approval of Xerxes.[618] The Greeks found themselves able to practice with good effect their favorite manœuvre of the *periplus*,[619] and thus increased the confusion. It was not long before the greater part of the Persian fleet became a mere helpless mass of shattered or damaged vessels. Five hundred are said to have been sunk[620]—the majority by the enemy, but some even by their own friends.[621] The sea was covered with wrecks, and with wretches who clung to them, till the ruthless enemy slew them or forced them to let go their hold.[622]

This defeat was a death-blow to the hopes of Xerxes, and sealed the fate of the expedition. From the moment that he realized to himself the fact of the entire inability of his fleet to cope with that of the Greeks, Xerxes made up his mind to return with all haste to Asia.[623] From over-confidence he fell into the opposite extreme of despair, and made no effort to retrieve his ill fortune. His fleet was ordered to sail straight for the Hellespont, and to guard the bridges until he reached them with his army.[624] He himself retreated hastily along the same road by which he had advanced, his whole army accompanying him as far as Thessaly,[625] where Mardonius was left with 260,000 picked men,[626] to prevent pursuit, and to renew the attempt against Greece in the ensuing year. Xerxes pressed on to the Hellespont, losing vast numbers of his troops by famine and sickness on the way,[627] and finally returned into Asia, not by his magnificent bridge, which a storm had destroyed, but on board a vessel, which, according to some, narrowly escaped shipwreck during the passage.[628] Even in Asia disaster pursued him. Between Abydos and Sardis his army suffered almost as much from over-indulgence as it had previously suffered from want;[629] and of the mighty host which had gone forth from the Lydian capital in the spring not very many thousands can have re-entered it in the autumn.

Still, however, there was a possibility that the success which his own arms had failed to achieve might reward the exertions of his lieutenants. Mardonius had expressed himself confident that with 300,000 picked soldiers he could overpower all resistance,[630] and make Greece a satrapy of Persia. Xerxes had raised his forces to that amount by sending Artabazus back from Sestos at the head of a *corps d'armée* numbering 40,000 men.[631] The whole army of 300,000 wintered in Thessaly;[632] and Mardonius, when spring came, having vainly endeavored to detach the Athenians from the Grecian ranks,[633] marched through Bœotia in Attica, and occupied Athens for the second time.[634] Hence he proceeded to menance the Peloponnese, where he formed an alliance with the Argives, who promised him that they would openly embrace the Persian cause.[635] At the same time the Athenians, finding that Sparta took no steps to help them, began to waver in their resistance, and to contemplate accepting the terms which Mardonius was still willing to grant them.[636] The fate of Greece trembled in the balance, and apparently was determined by the accident of a death and a succession, rather than by any wide-spread patriotic feeling or any settled course of policy. Cleombrotus, regent for the

young son of Leonidas, died,[637] and his brother Pausanias—a brave, clever, and ambitious man—took his place. We can scarcely be wrong in ascribing—at least in part—to this circumstance the unlooked for change of policy, which electrified the despondent ambassadors of Athens[638] almost as soon as Pausanias was installed in power. It was suddenly announced that Sparta would take the offensive. Ten thousand hoplites and 100,000 light-armed—the largest army that she ever levied—took the field,[639] and, joined at the isthmus by above 25,000 Peloponnesians,[640] and soon afterwards by almost as many Athenians and Megarians,[641] proceeded to seek the foreigners, first in Attica, and then in the position to which they had retired,[642] in Bœotia. On the skirts of Cithæron,[643] near Platæa, a hundred and eight thousand Greeks[644] confronted more than thrice their number of Persians and Persian subjects;[645] and now at length the trial was to be made whether, in fair and open fight on land, Greece or Persia would be superior. A suspicion of what the result would be might have been derived from Marathon. But there the Persians had been taken at a disadvantage, when the cavalry, their most important arm, was absent.[646] Here the error of Datis was not likely to be repeated. Mardonius had a numerous and well-armed cavalry, which he handled with no little skill.[647] It remained to be seen, when the general engagement came, whether, with both arms brought fully into play, the vanquished at Marathon would be the victors.

The battle of Platæa was brought on under circumstances very unfavorable to the Greeks. Want of water and a difficulty about provisions had necessitated a night movement on their part.[648] The cowardice of all the small contingents,[649] and the obstinacy of an individual Spartan,[650] disconcerted the whole plan of the operation, and left the Lacedæmonians and the Athenians at daybreak separated from each other,[651] and deserted by the whole body of their allies. Mardonius attacked at once, and prevented the junction of the two allies, so that two distinct and separate engagements went on at the same time. In both the Greeks were victorious. The Spartans repulsed the Persian horse and foot, slew Mardonius and were the first to assail the Persian camp. The Athenians defeated the *medizing* Greeks, and effected a breach in the defences of the camp, on which the Spartans had failed to make any impression.[652] A terrible carnage followed.[653] The contingent of 40,000 troops under Artabazus alone drew off in good order.[654]

The remainder were seized with panic, and were either slaughtered like sheep or fled in complete disarray. Seventy thousand Greeks[655] not only defeated but destroyed the army of 300,000 barbarians, which melted away and disappeared making no further stand anywhere. The disaster of Marathon was repeated on a larger scale, and without the resource of an embarkation. Henceforth the immense superiority of Greek troops to Persian was well known on both sides: and nothing but the distance from Greece of her vital parts, and the quarrels of the Greek states among themselves, preserved for nearly a century and a half the doomed empire of Persia.

The immediate result of the defeats of Salamis and Platæa was a contraction of the Persian boundary towards the west. Though a few Persian garrisons maintained themselves for some years on the further side of the straits,[656] soothing thereby the wounded vanity of the Great King, who liked to think that he had still a hold on Europe;[657] yet there can be no doubt that, after the double flight of Xerxes and Artabazus, Macedonia, Pæonia, and Thrace recovered their independence. Persia lost her European provinces, and began the struggle to retain those of Asia. Terminus receded, and having once receded never advanced again in this quarter. The Greeks took the offensive. Sailing to Asia, they not only liberated from their Persian bondage the islands which lay along the coast, but landing their men on the continent, attacked and defeated an army of 60,000 Persians at Mycalé, and destroyed the remnant of the ships that had escaped from Salamis.[658] Could they have made up their minds to maintain a powerful fleet permanently on the coast of Asia, they might at once have deprived Persia of her whole sea-board on the Propontis and the Egean: but neither of the two great powers of Greece was prepared for such a resolve. Sparta disliked distant expeditions; and Athens did not as yet see her way to undertaking the protection of the *continental* Greeks.[659] She had much to do at home, and had not yet discovered those weak points in her adversary's harness, which subsequently enabled her to secure by treaty the freedom of the Greek cities upon the mainland.[660] For the present, therefore, Persia only lost the bulk of her European possessions, and the islands of the Propontis and the Egean.

The circumstances which caused a renewal of Greek agressions upon Asia towards the close of the reign of Xerxes are

not very clearly narrated by the authors who speak of them. It appears, however, that after twelve years of petty operations, during which Eïon was recovered,[661] and Doriscus frequently attacked, but without effect,[662] the Athenians resolved, in B.C. 466, upon a great expedition to the eastward. Collecting a fleet of 300 vessels,[663] which was placed under the command of Cimon, the son of Miltiades, they sailed to the coast of Caria and Lycia, where they drove the Persian garrisons out of the Greek towns, and augmenting their navy by fresh contingents at every step,[664] proceeded along the shores of Pamphylia as far as the mouth of the river Eurymedon, where they found a Phœnician fleet of 340 vessels,[665] and a Persian army, stationed to protect the territory. Engaging first the fleet they defeated it, and drove it ashore, after which they disembarked and gained a victory over the Persian army.[666] As many as two hundred triremes were taken or destroyed.[667] They then sailed on towards Cyprus, where they met and destroyed a squadron of eighty ships,[668] which was on its way to reinforce the fleet at the Eurymedon. Above a hundred vessels, 20,000 captives, and a vast amount of plunder were the prize of this war;[669] which had, however, no further effect on the relations of the two powers.[670]

In the following year the reign of Xerxes came to an end abruptly. With this monarch seems to have begun those internal disorders of the seraglio, which made the Court during more than a hundred and forty years a perpetual scene of intrigues, assassinations, executions, and conspiracies. Xerxes, who appears to have only one wife, Amestris,[671] the daughter (or grand-daughter) of the conspirator, Otanes,[672] permitted himself the free indulgence of illicit passion among the princesses of the Court, the wives of his own near relatives. The most horrible results followed. Amestris vented her jealous spite on those whom she regarded as guilty of stealing from her the affections of her husband; and to prevent her barbarities from producing rebellion, it was necessary to execute the persons whom she had provoked, albeit they were near relations of the monarch.[673] The taint of incontinence spread among the members of the royal family; and a daughter of the king, who was married to one of the most powerful nobles, became notorious for her excesses.[674] Eunuchs rose into power, and fomented the evils which prevailed.[675] The king made himself bitter enemies among those whose position was close to his person. At last, Artabanus, chief of the guard,[676] a courtier

of high rank, and Aspamitres, a eunuch, who held the office of chamberlain,[677] conspired against their master, and murdered him in his sleeping apartment, after he had reigned twenty years.[678]

The character of Xerxes falls below that of any preceding monarch. Excepting that he was not wholly devoid of a certain magnanimity, which made him listen patiently to those who opposed his views or gave him unpalatable advice,[679] and which prevented him from exacting vengeance on some occasions,[680] he had scarcely a trait whereon the mind can rest with any satisfaction. Weak and easily led,[681] puerile in his gusts of passion and his complete abandonment of himself to them[682] —selfish, fickle, boastful, cruel, superstitious, licentious—he exhibits to us the Oriental despot in the most contemptible of all his aspects—that wherein the moral and the intellectual qualities are equally in defect, and the career is one unvarying course of vice and folly. From Xerxes we have to date at once the decline of the Empire in respect of territorial greatness and military strength, and likewise its deterioration in regard to administrative vigor and national spirit. With him commenced the corruption of the Court—the fatal evil, which almost universally weakens and destroys Oriental dynasties. His expedition against Greece exhausted and depopulated the Empire; and though, by abstaining from further military enterprises, he did what lay in his power to recruit its strength, still the losses which his expedition caused were certainly not repaired in his lifetime.

As a builder, Xerxes showed something of the same grandeur of conception which is observable in his great military enterprise and in the works by which it was accompanied.[683] His Propylæa, and the sculptured staircase in front of the Chehl Minar, which is undoubtedly his work,[684] are among the most magnificent erections upon the Persepolitan platform; and are quite sufficient to place him in the foremost rank of Oriental builders. If we were to ascribe the Chehl Minar itself to him, we should have to give him the palm above all other kings of Persia; but on the whole it is most probable that that edifice and its duplicate at Susa were conceived, and in the main, constructed, by Darius.[685]

Xerxes left behind him three sons—Darius, Hystaspes, and Artaxerxes and two daughters, Amytis and Rhodoguné.[686] Hystaspes was satrap of Bactria,[687] and at the time of their father's death, only Darius and Artaxerxes were at the Court.

Fearing the eldest son most, Artabanus persuaded Artaxerxes that the assassination of Xerxes was the act of his brother, whereupon Artaxerxes caused him to be put to death,[688] and himself ascended the throne (B.C. 465).

Troubles, as usual, accompanied this irregular accession. Artabanus, not content with exercising an influence under Artaxerxes such as has caused some authors to speak of him as king,[689] aimed at removing the young prince,[690] and making himself actual monarch. But his designs being betrayed to Artaxerxes by Megabyzus, and at the same time his former crimes coming to light, he was killed, together with his tool Aspamitres, seven months after the murder of Xerxes. The sons of Artabanus sought to avenge his death, but were defeated by Megabyzus in an engagement, wherein they lost their lives.[692]

Meanwhile, in Bactria, Hystaspes,[693] who had a rightful claim to the throne, raised the standard of revolt. Artaxerxes marched against him in person, and engaged him in two battles, the first of which was indecisive, while in the second the Bactrians suffered defeat, chiefly (according to Ctesias) because the wind blew violently in their faces. So signal was victory, that Bactria at once submitted. Hystaspes' fate is uncertain.

Not long after the reduction of Bactria, Egypt suddenly threw off the Persian yoke (B.C. 460).[694] Inarus, a king of the wild African tribes who bordered the Nile valley on the west, but himself perhaps a descendant of the old monarchs of Egypt,[695] led the insurrection, and, in conjunction with an Egyptian, named Amyrtæus,[696] attacked the Persian troops stationed in the country, who were commanded by Achæmenes, the satrap.[697] A battle was fought near Papremis in the Delta,[698] wherein the Persians were defeated, and Achæmenes fell by the hand of Inarus himself.[699] The Egyptians generally now joined in the revolt; and the remnant of the Persian army was shut up in Memphis. Inarus had asked the aid of Athens; and an Athenian fleet of 200 sail was sent to his assistance. This fleet sailed up the Nile, defeated a Persian squadron,[700] and took part in the capture of Memphis and the siege of its citadel[701] (White Castle). When the Persian king first learned what had happened, he endeavored to rid himself of his Athenian enemies by inducing the Spartans to invade their country;[702] but, failing in his attempt, he had recourse to arms, and, levying a vast host,[703] which he placed under the command of

Megábyzus, sent that officer to recover the revolted province. Megabyzus marched upon Memphis, defeated the Egyptians and their allies in a great battle,[704] relieved the citadel of Memphis from its siege, and recovered the rest of the town. The Athenians fled to the tract called Prosôpitis,[705] which was a a portion of the Delta, completely surrounded by two branch streams of the Nile.[706] Here they were besieged for eighteen months, till Megabyzus contrived to turn the water from one of the two streams, whereby the Athenian ships were stranded, and the Persian troops were able to march across the river bed, and overwhelm the Athenians with their numbers.[707] A few only escaped to Cyrêne.[708] The entire fleet fell into the enemy's hands; and a reinforcement of fifty more ships, arriving soon after the defeat, was attacked unawares after it had entered the river, and lost more than half its number.[709] Inarus was betrayed by some of his own men,[710] and, being carried prisoner to Persia, suffered death by crucifixion. Amyrtæus fled to the fens,[711] where for a while he maintained his independence.[712] Egypt, however, was with this exception recovered to the Empire (B.C. 455); and Athens was taught that she could not always invade the dominions of the Great King with impunity.

Six years after this, the Athenians resolved on another effort. A fleet of 200 ships was equipped and placed under the command of the victor of the Eurymedon, Cimon,[713] with orders to proceed into the Eastern Mediterranean, and seek to recover the laurels lost in Egypt. Cimon sailed to Cyprus, where he received a communication from Amyrtæus, which induced him to dispatch sixty ships to Egypt, while with the remaining one hundred and forty he commenced the siege of Citium. Here he died, either of disease or from the effects of a wound;[714] and his armament, pressed for provisions, was forced soon afterwards to raise the siege, and address itself to some other enterprise. Sailing past Salamis, it found there a Cilician and Phœnician fleet, consisting of 300 vessels,[715] which it immediately attacked and defeated, notwithstanding the disparity of number. Besides the ships which were sunk, a hundred triremes were taken;[716] and the sailors then landed and gained a victory over a Persian army upon the shore.[717] Artaxerxes, upon this, fearing lest he should lose Cyprus altogether, and thinking that, if Athens became mistress of this important island, she would always be fomenting insurrection in Egypt, made overtures for peace to the generals who were now in

command. His propositions were favorably received. Peace was made on the following terms: Athens agreed to relinquish Cyprus, and recall her squadron from Egypt; while the king consented to grant freedom to all the Greek cities on the Asiatic continent, and not to menace them either by land or water. The sea was divided between the two powers. Persian ships of war were not to sail to the west of Phaselis in the Levant, or of the Cyanean islands in the Euxine; and Greek war-ships, we may assume, were not to show themselves east of those limits.[718] On these conditions there was to be peace and amity between the Greeks and the Persians, and neither nation was to undertake any expeditions against the territories of the other. Thus terminated the first period of hostility between Greece and Persia, a period of exactly half a century, commencing B.C. 499 and ending B.C. 449, in the seventeenth year of Artaxerxes.

It was probably not many years after the conclusion of this peace that a rebellion broke out in Syria. Megabyzus, the satrap of that important province, offended at the execution of Inarus, in violation of the promise which he had himself made to him, raised a revolt against his sovereign, defeated repeatedly the armies sent to reduce him to obedience, and finally treated with Artaxerxes as to the terms on which he would consent to be reconciled.[719] Thus was set an example, if not of successful insurrection, yet at any rate of the possibility of rebelling with impunity—an example which could not fail to have a mischievous effect on the future relations of the monarch with his satraps. It would have been better for the Empire had Megabyzus suffered the fate of Orœtes,[720] instead of living to a good old age in high favor with the monarch whose power he had weakened and defied.[721]

Artaxerxes survived the "Peace of Callias" twenty-four years. His relations with the Greeks continued friendly till his demise, though, on the occasion of the revolt of Samos (B.C. 440), Pissuthnes, satrap of Sardis, seems to have transgressed the terms of the treaty, and to have nearly brought about a renewal of hostilities.[722] It was probably in retaliation for the aid given to the revolted Samians, that the Athenians, late in the reign of Artaxerxes, made an expedition against Caunus,[723] which might have had important consequences, if the Caunians had not been firm in their allegiance. A revolt of Lycia and Caria under Zopyrus, the son of Megabyzus, assisted by the Greeks, might have proved even more difficult to subdue than

the rebellion of Syria under his father. Persia, however, escaped this danger; and Artaxerxes, no doubt, saw with pleasure a few years later the Greeks turn their arms against each other—Athens, his great enemy, being forced into a contest for existence with the Peloponnesian confederacy under Sparta.

The character of Artaxerxes, though it receives the approval of Plutarch and Diodorus,[724] must be pronounced on the whole poor and contemptible. His ready belief of the charge brought by Artabanus against his brother, Darius, admits perhaps of excuse, owing to his extreme youth;[725] but his surrender of Inarus to Amestris on account of her importunity,[726] his readiness to condone the revolt of Megabyzus, and his subjection throughout almost the whole of his life to the evil influence of Amytis, his sister, and Amestris, his mother—both persons of ill-regulated lives[727]—are indications of weakness and folly quite unpardonable in a monarch. That he was mild in temperament, and even kind and good-natured, is probable.[728] But he had no other quality that deserves the slightest commendation. In the whole course of his long reign he seems never once to have adventured himself in the field against an enemy. He made not a single attempt at conquest in any direction. We have no evidence that he patronized either literature or the arts.[729] His peace with Athens was necessary perhaps, but disgraceful to Persia. The disorders of the Court increased under his reign, from the license (especially) which he allowed the Queen-mother, who sported with the lives of his subjects.[730] The decay of the Empire received a fatal impulse from the impunity which he permitted to Megabyzus.

Like his father,[731] Artaxerxes appears to have had but one legitimate wife. This was a certain Damaspia, of whom nothing is known, except that she died on the same day as her husband, and was the mother of his only legitimate son, Xerxes.[732] Seventeen other sons, who survived him, were the issue of various concubines, chiefly—it would appear—Babylonians.[733] Xerxes II. succeeded to the throne on the death of his father (B.C. 425), but reigned forty-five days only, being murdered after a festival, in which he had indulged too freely, by his half-brother, Secydianus or Sogdianus.[734] Secydianus enjoyed the sovereignty for little more than half a year,[735] when he was in his turn put to death by another, brother, Ochus,[736] who on ascending the throne took the name of Darius, and became known to the Greeks as Darius Nothus.

Darius Nothus had in his father's lifetime been made satrap

of Hyrcania,[737] and had married his aunt, Parysatis, a daughter of Xerxes.[738] He had already two children at his accession,—a daughter, Amestris, and a son, Arsaces, who succeeded him as Artaxerxes. His reign, which lasted nineteen years, was a constant scene of insurrections and revolts, some of which were of great importance, since they had permanent and very disastrous consequences. The earliest of all was raised by his full-brother, Arsites, who rebelled in conjunction with a son of Megabyzus, and, obtaining the support of a number of Greek mercenaries, gained two victories over the forces dispatched against him by the king. At last, however, the fortune of war changed. Persian gold was used to corrupt the mercenaries; and the rebels being thus reduced to extremities, were forced to capitulate, yielding themselves on the condition that their lives should be spared. Parysatis induced her husband to disregard the pledges given and execute both Arsites and his fellow-conspirator[739]—thus proclaiming to the world that, unless by the employment of perfidy, the Empire was incapable of dealing with those who rebelled against its authority.

The revolt of Pissuthnes, satrap of Lydia, was the next important outbreak. Its exact date is uncertain; but it seems not to have very long preceded the Athenian disasters in Sicily.[740] Pissuthnes, who had held his satrapy for more than twenty years,[741] was the son of a Hystaspes, and probably a member of the royal family.[742] His wealth—the accumulations of so long a term of office—enabled him to hire the services of a body of Greek mercenaries, who were commanded by an Athenian, called Lycon. On these troops he placed his chief dependence; but they failed him in the hour of need. Tissaphernes, the Persian general sent against him, bribed Lycon and his men, who thereupon quitted Pissuthnes and made common cause with his adversaries. The unfortunate satrap could no longer resist, and therefore surrendered upon terms, and accompanied Tissaphernes to the Court. Darius, accustomed now to disregard the pledged word of his officers, executed him forthwith, and made over his satrapy to Tissaphernes, as a reward for his zeal. Lycon, the Athenian traitor, received likewise a handsome return for his services, the revenues of several towns and districts being assigned him by the Great King.[743]

The rebellion, however, was not wholly crushed by the destruction of its author. Amorges, a bastard son of Pissuthnes,

continued to maintain himself in Caria, where he was master of the strong city of Iasus, on the north coast of the Sinus Iasicus, and set the power of Tissaphernes at defiance. Having probably inherited the wealth of his father, he hired a number of Peloponnesian mercenaries, and succeeded in maintaining himself as an independent monarch for some years.[744]

Such was the condition of things in Asia Minor, when intelligence arrived of the fearful disasters which had befallen the Athenians in Sicily—disasters without a parallel since those of Salamis—sudden, unexpected, overwhelming. The news, flying through Asia, awoke everywhere a belief that the power of Athens was broken, and that her hostility need no longer be dreaded. The Persian monarch considered that under the altered circumstances it would be safe to treat the Peace of Callias as a dead letter, and sent down orders to the satraps of Lydia and Bithynia that they were once more to demand and collect the tribute of the Greek cities within their provinces. The satraps began to speculate on the advantages which they might derive from alliance with the enemies of Athens, and looked anxiously to see a Peloponnesian fleet appear off the coast of Asia. Tissaphernes and Pharnabazus vied with each other in the tempting offers which they made to Sparta,[745] and it was not long before a formal treaty was concluded between that state and Persia, by which the two powers bound themselves to carry on war conjointly against Athens.[746]

Thus the contest between Persia and her rival entered upon a new phase. Henceforth until the liberties of Greece were lost, the Great King could always count on having for his ally one of the principal Grecian powers. His gold was found to possess attractions which the Greeks were quite unable to resist. At one time Sparta, at another Athens, at another Thebes yielded to the subtle influence; Greek generals commanded the Persian armies; Greek captains manœuvered the Persian fleets; the very rank and file of the standing army came to be almost as much Greek as Persian.[747] Acting on the maxim, *Divide et impera*, Persia prolonged for eighty years her tottering Empire, by the skilful use which she made of the mutual jealousies and divisions of the Hellenic states.

It scarcely belongs to the history of Persia to trace in detail the fortunes of the contending powers during the latter portion of the Peloponnesian war. We need only observe that the real policy of the Court of Susa, well understood, and, on the whole, tolerably well carried out by the satraps, was to preserve the

balance of power between Athens and Sparta, to allow neither to obtain too decided a preponderance, to help each in turn, and encourage each to waste the other's strength, but to draw back whenever the moment came for striking a decisive blow against either side. This policy skilfully pursued by Tissaphernes (who had a genius for intrigue and did not require an Alcibiades to give him lessons in state-craft),[748] more clumsily by Pharnabazus, [749] whose character was comparatively sincere and straightforward, prevailed until the younger Cyrus made his appearance upon the scene, when a disturbing force came into play which had disastrous effects both on the fortunes of Greece and on those of Persia. The younger Cyrus had personal views of self-aggrandizement which conflicted with the true interests of his nation, and was so bent on paving the way for his own ascent to sovereign power that he did not greatly care whether he injured his country or no.[750] As the accomplishment of his designs depended mainly on his obtaining a powerful land-force, he regarded a Spartan as preferable to an Athenian alliance; and, having once made his choice, he lent his ally such effectual aid that in two years from the time of his coming down to the coast the war was terminated. Persian gold manned and partly built [751] the fleet which conquered at Ægos-Potami; perhaps it contributed in a still more decisive manner to the victory.[752] Cyrus, by placing his stores at the entire command of Lysander,[753] deserved and acquired the cordial good-will of Sparta and the Peloponnesians generally—an advantage of which we shall find him in the sequel making good use.[754]

The gain to Persia from the dominion which she had reacquired over the Greeks of Asia was more than counter-balanced by a loss of territory in another quarter, which seems to have occurred during the reign of Darius Nothus, though in what exact year is doubtful. The revolt of Egypt is placed by Heeren and Clinton in B.C. 414,[755] by Eusebius[756] in B.C. 411, by Manetho[757] in the last year of Darius Nothus, or B.C. 405. The earlier dates depend on the view that the Amyrtæus of Manetho's twenty-eighth dynasty was the leader of the rebellion, and had a reign of six years at this period—a view which is perhaps unsound.[758] Manetho probably represented Nepherites (*Nefaorot*) as the leader; and it is quite clear that he placed the re-establishment of the old throne of the Pharaohs in the year that Darius Nothus died. As his authority is the best that we can obtain upon this obscure point, we may regard

the last days of the Persian monarch as clouded by news of a rebellion, which had been perhaps for some time contemplated,[759] but which did not break out until he was known to be in a moribund condition.

A few years earlier, B.C. 408 or 409, the Medes had made an unsuccessful attempt to recover their independence.[760] The circumstances of this revolt, which is mentioned by no writer but Xenophon, are wholly unknown, but we may perhaps connect it with the rebellion of Terituchmes, a son-in-law of the king. The story of Terituchmes, which belongs to this period, deserves at any rate to be told,[761] as illustrating, in a very remarkable way, the corruption, cruelty, and dissoluteness of the Persian Court at the time to which we have now come. Terituchmes was the son of Idernes, a Persian noble of high rank, probably a descendant of the conspirator Hydarnes.[762] On the death of his father, he succeeded to his satrapy, as to a hereditary fief, and being high in favor with Darius Nothus, he received in marriage that monarch's daughter, Amestris. Having, however, after his marriage become enamored of his own half-sister, Roxana, and having persuaded her to an incestuous commerce, he grew to detest his wife, and as he could not rid himself of her without making an enemy of the king, he entered into a conspiracy with 300 others, and planned to raise a rebellion. The bond of a common crime, cruel and revolting in its character, was to secure the fidelity of the rebels one to another. Amestris was to be placed in a sack, and each conspirator in turn was to plunge his sword into her body. It is not clear whether this intended murder was executed or no. Hoping to prevent it, Darius commissioned a certain Udiastes, who was in the service of Terituchmes, to save his daughter by any means that might be necessary; and Udiastes, collecting a band, set upon Terituchmes and slew him after a strenuous resistance.[763] After this, his mother, brothers, and sisters were apprehended by the order of Parysatis, the queen, who caused Roxana to be hewn in pieces, and the other unfortunates to be buried alive. It was with great difficulty that Arsaces, the heir-apparent, afterwards Artaxerxes Mnemon, preserved his own wife, Statira, from the massacre. It happened that she was sister to Terituchmes, and, though wholly innocent of his offence, she would have been involved in the common destruction of her family had not her husband with tears and entreaties begged her life of his parents.[764] The son of Terituchmes maintained himself for a

while in his father's government; but Parysatis succeeded in having him taken off by poison.[768]

The character of Darius Nothus is seen tolerably clearly in the account of his reign which has been here given. He was at once weak and wicked. Contrary to his sworn word, he murdered his brothers, Secydianus and Arsites. He broke faith with Pissuthnes. He sanctioned the wholesale execution of Terituchmes' relatives. Under him the eunuchs of the palace rose to such power that one of them actually ventured to aspire to the sovereignty.[766] Parysatis, his wife, one of the most cruel and malignant even of Oriental women, was in general his chosen guide and counsellor.[767] His severities cannot, however, in all cases be ascribed to her influence, for he was anxious that she should put the innocent Statira to death, and, when she refused, reproached her with being foolishly lenient.[768] In his administration of the Empire he was unsuccessful: for, if he gained some tracts of Asia Minor, he lost the entire African satrapy. Under him we trace a growing relaxation of the checks by which the great officers of the state were intended to have been held under restraint. Satraps came to be practically uncontrolled in their provinces, and the dangerous custom arose of allowing sons to succeed, almost as a matter of course, to the governments of their fathers.[769] Powers unduly large were lodged in the hands of a single officer,[770] and actions, that should have brought down upon their perpetrators sharp and signal punishment, were timorously or negligently condoned by the supreme authority.[771] Cunning and treachery were made the weapons wherewith Persia contended with her enemies. Manly habits were laid aside,[772] and the nation learned to trust more and more to the swords of mercenaries.[773]

Shortly before the death of Darius there seems to have been a doubt raised as to the succession.[774] Parysatis, who preferred her second son to her first-born, imagined that her influence was sufficient to induce her husband to nominate Cyrus, instead of Arsaces, to succeed him; and Cyrus is said to have himself expected to be preferred above his brother. He had the claim, if claim it can be called, that he was the first son born to his father after he became king;[775] but his main dependence was doubtless on his mother. Darius, however, proved less facile in his dying moments than he had been during most of his life, and declined to set aside the rights of the eldest son on the frivolous pretence suggested to him. His own

feelings may have inclined him towards Arsaces, who resembled him far more than Cyrus did in character: and Cyrus, moreover, had recently offended him, and been summoned to court, to answer a very serious charge.[777] Arsaces, therefore, was nominated, and took the name of Artaxerxes[777]—as one of a king who had reigned long, and, on the whole, prosperously.

An incident of ill omen accompanied the commencement of the new reign (B.C. 405). The inauguration of the monarch was a religious ceremony, and took place in a temple at Pasargadæ, the old capital, to which a peculiar sanctity was still regarded as attaching. Artaxerxes had proceeded to this place, and was about to engage in the ceremonies, when he was interrupted by Tissaphernes, who informed him that his life was in danger. Cyrus, he said, proposed to hide himself in the temple, and assassinate him as he changed his dress, a necessary part of the formalities.[778] One of the officiating priests—a Magus, as it would seem[779]—confirmed the charge. Cyrus was immediately arrested, and would have been put to death on the spot, had not his mother interfered, and, embracing him in her arms, made it impossible for the executioner to perform his task. With some difficulty she persuaded Artaxerxes to spare his brother's life and allow him to return to his government, assuring him,[780] and perhaps believing, that the charges made against her favorite were without foundation.

Cyrus returned to Asia Minor with the full determination of attacking his brother at the earliest opportunity.[781] He immediately began the collection of a mercenary force, composed wholly of Greeks, on whose arms he was disposed to place far more reliance than on those of Orientals. As Tissaphernes had returned to the coast with him, and was closely watching all his proceedings, it was necessary to exercise great caution, lest his intentions should become known before he was ready to put them into execution. He therefore had recourse to three different devices. Having found a cause of quarrel with Tissaphernes in the ambiguous terms of their respective commissions, he pressed it on to an actual war, which enabled him to hire troops openly, as against this enemy;[782] and in this way he collected from 5000 to 6000 Greeks—chiefly Peloponnesians. He further gave secret commissions to Greek officers, whose acquaintance he had made when he was previously in these parts, to collect men for him, whom they were to employ in their own quarrels until he needed their services.[783] From

3000 to 4000 troops were gathered for him by these persons. Finally, when he found himself nearly ready to commence his march, he discovered a new foe in the Pisidians of the Western Taurus, and proceeded to levy a force against them,[784] which amounted to some thousands more. In all, he had in readiness 11,000 heavy-armed and about 2000 light armed Greeks[785] before his purpose became so clear that Tissaphernes could no longer mistake it, and therefore started off to carry his somewhat tardy intelligence to the capital.[786]

The aims of Cyrus were different from those of ordinary rebel satraps: and we must go back to the times of Darius Hystaspis in order to find a parallel to them. Instead of seeking to free a province from the Persian yoke, or to carve out for himself an independent sovereignty in some remote corner of the Empire, his intention was to dethrone his brother, and place on his own brows the diadem of his great namesake. It was necessary for him therefore to assume the offensive. Only by a bold advance, and by taking his enemy to some extent unprepared, and so at a disadvantage, could he hope to succeed in his audacious project. It is not easy to see that he could have had any considerable party among the Persians,[787] or any ground for expecting to be supported by any of the subject nations. His following must have been purely personal;[788] and though it may be true that he was of a character to win more admiration and affection than his brother, yet Artaxerxes himself was far from being unpopular with his subjects, whom he pleased by a familiarity and a good-nature to which they were little accustomed.[789] Cyrus knew that his principal dependence must be on himself, on his Greeks, and on the carelessness and dilatoriness of his adversary,[790] who was destitute of military talent and was even thought to be devoid of personal bravery.[791]

Thus it was important to advance as soon as possible. Cyrus therefore quitted Sardis before all his troops were collected (B.C. 401), and marched through Lydia and Phrygia, by the route formally followed in the reverse direction by the army of Xerxes,[792] as far as Celænæ, where the remainder of his mercenaries joined him.[793] With his Greek force thus raised to 13,000 men, and with a native army not much short of 100,000,[794] he proceeded on through Phrygia and Lycaonia to the borders of Cilicia, having determined on taking the shortest route to Babylon, through the Cilician and Syrian passes, and then along the course of the Euphrates. At

Cäystrupedion he was met by Epyaxa, consort of Syennesis, the tributary king of Cilicia, who brought him a welcome supply of money,[795] and probably assured him of the friendly disposition of her husband, who was anxious to stand well with both sides. In Lycaonia, Cyrus divided his forces, and sending a small body of troops under Menon to escort Epyaxa across the mountains and enter Cilicia by the more western of the two practicable passes[796] he proceeded himself with the bulk of his troops to the famous Pylæ Ciliciæ, where he probably knew that Syennesis would only make a feint of resistance. He found the pass occupied; but it was evacuated the next day, on the receipt of intelligence that Menon had already entered the country and that the fleet of Cyrus—composed partly of his own ships, partly of a squadron furnished to him by Sparta[797]—had appeared off the coast and threatened a landing. Cyrus thus crossed the most difficult and dangerous of all the passes that separated him from the heart of the Empire, without the loss of a man.[798]

Thus far it would appear that Cyrus had to a certain extent masked his plans. The Greek captains must have guessed, if they had not actually learnt, his intentions; but to the bulk of the soldiery they had been hitherto absolutely unknown. It was only in Cilicia that the light broke in upon them, and they began to suspect that they were being marched into the interior of Asia, there to engage in a contest with the entire power of the Great King. Something of the horror which is ascribed to Cleomenes, when it was suggested to him a century earlier that he should conduct his Spartans the distance of a three months' journey from the sea,[799] appears to have taken possession of the minds of the mercenaries on their awaking to this conviction. They at once refused to proceed.[800] It was only by the most skilful management on the part of their captains, joined to a judicious liberality on the part of Cyrus, that they were induced to forego their intention of returning home at once, and so breaking up the expedition. A perception of the difficulty of effecting a retreat, together with an increase of pay, extorted a reluctant assent to continue the march, of which the real term and object were even now not distinctly avowed. Cyrus said he proposed to attack the army of Abrocomas, which he believed to be posted on the Euphrates. If he did not find it there, a fresh consultation might be held to consider any further movement.[801]

The march now proceeded rapidly. The gates of Syria—a

narrow pass on the east coast of the Gulf of Issus, shut in, like Thermopylæ, between the mountains and the sea, and strengthened moreover by fortifications—were left unguarded by Abrocomas;[802] and the army, having traversed them without loss, crossed the Amanus range by the pass of Beilan,[803] and in twenty-nine days from Tarsus reached Thapsacus on the Euphrates.[804] The forces of Artaxerxes had nowhere made their appearance—Abrocomas, though he had 300,000 men at his disposal,[805] had weakly or treacherously abandoned all these strong and easily defensible positions; he does not seem even to have wasted the country; but, having burnt the boats at Thapsacus, he was content to fall back upon Phœnicia,[806] and left the way to Babylon and Susa open. At Thapsacus there was little difficulty in persuading the Greeks, who had no longer the sea before their eyes, to continue the march; they only stipulated for a further increase of pay, which was readily promised them by the sanguine prince,[807] who believed himself on the point of obtaining by their aid the inexhaustible treasures of the Empire. The river, which happened to be unusually low for the time of year,[808] was easily forded. Cyrus entered Mesopotamia, and continued his march down the left bank of the Euphrates at the quickest rate that it was possible to move a hundred thousand Orientals.[809] In thirty-three days he had accomplished above 600 miles,[810] and had approached within 120 miles of Babylon without seeing any traces of an enemy. His only difficulties were from the nature of the country, which, after the Khabour is passed, becomes barren, excepting close along the river.[811] From want of fodder there was a great mortality among the baggage-animals; the price of grain rose; and the Greeks had to subsist almost entirely upon meat.[812] At last, when the Babylonian alluvium was reached, with its abundance of fodder and corn, signs of the enemy began to be observed. Artaxerxes, who after some doubts and misgivings had finally determined to give his enemy battle in the plain, was already on his way from Babylon, with an army reckoned at 900,000 men,[813] and had sent forward a body of horse, partly to reconnoitre, partly to destroy the crops, in order to prevent Cyrus and his troops from benefiting by them.[814] Cyrus now advanced slowly and cautiously, at the rate of about fourteen miles a day,[815] expecting each morning to fight a general engagement before evening came. On the third night, believing the battle to be imminent, he distributed the commands and laid down a

plan of operations.[516] But morning brought no appearance of the enemy, and the whole day passed tranquilly. In the course of it, he came upon a wide and deep trench cut through the plain for a distance of above forty miles—a recent work, which Artaxerxes had intended as a barrier to stop the progress of his enemy.[517] But the trench was undefended and incomplete, a space of twenty feet being left between its termination and the Euphrates. Cyrus, having passed it, began to be convinced that his brother would not risk a battle in the plain, but would retreat to the mountains and make his stand at Persepolis or Ecbatana. He therefore continued his march negligently. His men piled their arms on the wagons or laid them across the beasts of burthen; while he himself exchanged the horse which he usually rode for a chariot, and proceeded on his way leisurely, having about his person a small escort, which preserved their ranks, while all the rest of the troops were allowed to advance in complete disarray.[518]

Suddenly, as the army was proceeding in this disorderly manner through the plain, a single horseman was perceived advancing at full gallop from the opposite quarter, his steed all flecked with foam. As he drew near, he shouted aloud to those whom he met, addressing some in Greek, others in Persian, and warning them that the Great King, with his whole force, was close at hand, and rapidly approaching in order of battle. The news took every one by surprise, and at first all was hurry and confusion. The Greeks, however, who were on the right, rapidly marshalled their line, resting it upon the river; while Cyrus put on his armor, mounted his horse, and arranged the ranks of his Asiatics.[519] Ample time was given for completing all the necessary dispositions; since three hours, at the least,[520] must have elapsed from the announcement of the enemy's approach before he actually appeared. Then a white cloud of dust arose towards the verge of the horizon, below which a part of the plain began soon to darken; presently gleams of light were seen to flash out from the dense mass which was advancing, the serried lines of spears came into view, and the component parts of the huge army grew to be discernible.[521] On the extreme left was a body of horsemen with white cuirasses, commanded by Tissaphernes; next came infantry, carrying the long wicker shield, or *gerrhum*;[522] then a solid square of Egyptians, heavily armed, and bearing wooden shields that reached to the feet; then the contingents of many different nations, some on foot, some on horseback,

armed with bows and other weapons.[823] The line stretched away to the east further than the Greeks, who were stationed on the right, could see, extending (as it would seem) more than twice the distance which was covered by the army of Cyrus.[824] Artaxerxes was in the centre of his line,[825] on horseback,[826] surrounded by a mounted guard of 6000 Persians.[827] In front of the line, towards the river, were drawn up at wide intervals a hundred and fifty scythed chariots, which were designed to carry terror and confusion into the ranks of the Greeks.[828]

On the other side, Cyrus had upon the extreme right a thousand Paphlagonian cavalry with the more lightly armed of the Greeks;[829] next, the Greek heavy-armed, under Clearchus; and then his Asiatics, stretching in a line to about the middle of his adversary's army, his own special command being in the centre; and his left wing being led by the satrap, Ariæus.[830] With Ariæus was posted the great mass of the cavalry; but a band of six hundred, clad in complete armor, with their horses also partially armed,[831] waited on Cyrus himself, and accompanied him wherever he went. As the enemy drew near, and Cyrus saw how much he was outflanked upon the left, he made an attempt to remedy the evil by ordering Clearchus to move with his troops from the extreme right to the extreme left of the line, where he would be opposite to Artaxerxes himself.[832] This, no doubt, would have been a hazardous movement to make in the face of a superior enemy; and Clearchus, feeling this, and regarding the execution of the order as left to his discretion, declined to move away from the river. Cyrus, who trusted much to the Greek general's judgment, did not any further press the change,[833] but prepared to fight the battle as he stood.

The combat began upon the right. When the enemy had approached within six or seven hundred yards, the impatience of the Greeks to engage could not be restrained. They sang the pæan and started forwards at a pace which in a short time became a run.[834] The Persians did not await their charge. The drivers leaped from their chariots, the line of battle behind them wavered, and then turned and fled without striking a blow. One Greek only was wounded by an arrow.[835] As for the scythed chariots, they damaged their own side more than the Greeks; for the frightened horses in many cases, carried the vehicles into the thick of the fugitives, while the Greeks opened their ranks and gave passage to such as charged in an opposite direction.[836] Moderating their pace so as to preserve

their tactical arrangement,[837] but still advancing with great rapidity, the Greeks pressed on the flying enemy, and pursued him a distance of two or three miles,[838] never giving a thought to Cyrus, who, they supposed, would conquer those opposed to him with as much ease as themselves.

But the prince meanwhile was in difficulties. Finding himself outnumbered and outflanked, and fearing that his whole army would be surrounded, and even the victorious Greeks attacked in the rear,[839] he set all upon one desperate cast and charged with his Six Hundred against the six thousand horse who protected his brother. Artagerses, their commander, who met him with a Homeric invective,[840] he slew with his own hand.[841] The six thousand were routed and took to flight; the person of the king was exposed to view; and Cyrus, transported at the sight, rushed forward shouting, "I see the man," and hurling his javelin, struck him straight upon the breast, with such force that the cuirass was pierced and a slight flesh-wound inflicted.[842] The king fell from his horse; but at the same moment Cyrus received a wound beneath the eye from the javelin of a Persian,[843] and in the *mêlée* which followed he was slain with eight of his followers.[844] The Six Hundred could lend no effectual aid, because they had rashly dispersed in pursuit of the flying enemy.[845]

As the whole contest was a personal one, the victory was now decided. Fighting, however, continued till nightfall. On learning the death of their leader, the Asiatic troops under Ariæus fled—first to their camp, and then, when Artaxerxes attacked them there, to the last night's station.[846] The Grecian camp was assaulted by Tissaphernes, who at the beginning of the battle had charged through the Greek light-armed, without however, inflicting on them any loss,[847] and had then pressed on, thinking to capture the Grecian baggage.[848] But the guard defended their camp with success, and slew many of the assailants. Tissaphernes and the king drew off after a while, and retraced their steps, in order to complete the victory by routing the troops of Clearchus. Clearchus was at the same time returning from his pursuit, having heard that his camp was in danger, and as the two bodies of troops approached, he found his right[849] threatened by the entire host of the enemy, which might have lapped round it and attacked it in front, in flank, and in rear. To escape this peril he was about to wheel his line and make it rest alone its whole extent upon the river,[850] when the Persians

passed him and resumed the position which they had occupied at the beginning of the battle. They were then about to attack, when once more the Greeks anticipated them and charged. The effect was again ludicrous. The Persians would not abide the onset, but fled faster than before.[551] The Greeks pursued them to a village, close by which was a knoll or mound,[552] whither the fugitives had betaken themselves. Again the Greeks made a movement in advance, and immediately the flight recommenced. The last rays of the setting sun fell on scattered masses of Persian horse and foot flying in all directions over the plain from the little band of Greeks.[553]

The battle of Cunaxa was a double blow to the Persian power. By the death of Cyrus there was lost the sole chance that existed of such a re-invigoration of the Empire as might have enabled it to start again on a new lease of life, with ability to hold its own, and strength to resume once more the aggressive attitude of former times. The talents of Cyrus have perhaps been overrated, but he was certainly very superior to most Orientals; and there can be no doubt that the Empire would have greatly gained by the substitution of his rule for that of his brother. He was active, energetic, prompt in deed, ready in speech, faithful in the observance of his engagements, brave, liberal—he had more foresight and more self-control[554] than most Asiatics; he knew how to deal with different classes of men; he had a great power of inspiring affection and retaining it;[555] he was free from the folly of national prejudice, and could appreciate as they deserved both the character and the institutions of foreigners.[556] It is likely that he would have proved a better administrator and ruler than any king of Persia since Darius Hystaspis. He would, therefore, undoubtedly have raised his country to some extent. Whether he could really have arrested its decline, and enabled it to "avenge the humiliations of Marathon, Salamis, and the peace of Callias,"[557] is, however, exceedingly doubtful.

For Cyrus, though he had considerable merits, was not without great and grievous defects. As the Tartar is said always to underlie the Russ,[558] so the true Oriental underlay that coating of Grecian manners and modes of thought and act, with which a real admiration of the Hellenic race induced Cyrus to conceal his native barbarism. When he slew his cousins for an act which he chose to construe as disrespect,[559] and when he executed Orontes for contemplated desertion, secretly and silently, so that no one knew his fate,[560] when

transported with jealous rage he rushed madly upon his brother,[501] exposing to hazard the success of all his carefully formed plans, and in fact ruining his cause, the acquired habits of the Phil-Hellene gave way, and the native ferocity of the Asiatic came to the surface. We see Cyrus under favorable circumstances, while conciliation, tact, and self-restraint were necessities of his position, without which he could not possibly gain his ends—we do not know what effect success and the possession of supreme power might have had upon his temper and conduct: but from the acts above-mentioned we may at any rate suspect that the result would have been very injurious.

Again, intellectually, Cyrus is only great *for an Asiatic*. He has more method, more foresight, more power of combination, more breadth of mind than the other Asiatics of his day, or than the vast mass of Asiatics of any day. But he is not entitled to the praise of a great administrator or of a great general. His three years' administration of Asia Minor was chiefly marked by a barbarous severity towards criminals,[502] and by a lavish expenditure of the resources of his government, which left him in actual want at the moment when he was about to commence his expedition.[503] His generalship failed signally at the battle of Cunaxa, for the loss of which he is far more to be blamed than Clearchus. As he well knew that Artaxerxes was sure to occupy the centre of his line of battle,[504] he should have placed his Greeks in the middle of his own line, not at one extremity. When he saw how much his adversary outflanked him on the left—a contingency which was so probable that it ought to have occurred to him beforehand—he should have deployed his line in that direction, instead of ordering such a movement as Clearchus, not unwisely, declined to execute. He might have trusted the Greeks to fight in line, as they had fought at Marathon;[505] and by expanding their ranks, and moving off his Asiatics to the left, he might have avoided the danger of being outflanked and surrounded. But his capital error was the wildness and *abandon* of his charge with the Six Hundred—a charge which it was probably right to make under the circumstances, but which required a combination of coolness and courage that the Persian prince evidently did not possess when his feelings were excited. Had he kept his Six Hundred well in hand, checked their pursuit, and abstained from thrusting his own person into unnecessary danger, he might have joined the Greeks as

they returned from their first victory and participated in their final triumph. At the same time, Clearchus cannot but be blamed for pushing his suit too far. If, when the enemy in his front fled, he had at once turned against those who were engaging Cyrus, taking them on their left flank, which must have been completely uncovered, he might have been in time to prevent the fatal results of the rash charge made by his leader.

Thus the death of Cyrus, though a calamity to Persia, was scarcely the great loss which it has been represented. A far worse result of the Cyreian expedition was the revelation which it made of the weakness of Persia, and of the facility with which a Greek force might penetrate to the very midst of the Empire, defeat the largest army that could be brought against it, and remain,[*6] or return, as it might think proper. Hitherto Babylon and Susa had been, even to the mind of a Greek statesman,[*7] remote localities, which it would be the extreme of rashness to attempt to reach by force of arms, and from which it would be utter folly to suppose that a single man could return alive except by permission of the Great King. Henceforth these towns were looked upon as prizes quite within the legitimate scope of Greek ambition, and their conquest came to be viewed as little more than a question of time. The opinion of inaccessibility, which had been Persia's safeguard hitherto, was gone, and in its stead grew up a conviction that the heart of the Empire might be reached with very little difficulty.[*8]

It required, however, for the production of this whole change, not merely that the advance to Cunaxa should have been safely made, and the immeasurable superiority of Greek to Asiatic soldiers there exhibited, but also that the retreat should have been effected, as it was effected, without disaster. Had the Ten Thousand perished under the attacks of the Persian horse, or even under the weapons of the Kurds, or amid the snows of Armenia, the opinion of Persian invulnerability would have been strengthened rather than weakened by the expedition. But the return to Greece of ten thousand men, who had defeated the hosts of the Great King in the centre of his dominions, and fought their way back to the sea without suffering more than the common casualties of war, was an evidence of weakness which could not but become generally known, and of which all could feel the force. Hence the retreat was as important as the battle. If in late autumn and mid-winter a small Greek army, without maps[*9] or guides, could make its

way for a thousand miles through Asia, and encounter no foe over whom it could not easily triumph, it was clear that the fabric of Persian power was rotten, and would collapse on the first serious attack.

Still, it will not be necessary to trace in detail the steps of the retreat. It was the fact of the return, rather than the mode of its accomplishment, which importantly affected the subsequent history of Persia. We need only note that the retreat was successfully conducted in spite, not merely of the military power of the Empire, but of the most barefaced and cruel treachery[870]—a fact which showed clearly the strong desire that there was to hinder the invaders' escape. Persia did not set much store by her honor at this period; but she would scarcely have pledged her word and broken it, without the slightest shadow of excuse, unless she had regarded the object to be accomplished as one of vast importance, and seen no other way which offered any prospect of the desired result. Her failure, despite the success of her treachery, places her military weakness in the strongest possible light. The Greeks, though deprived of their leaders, deceived, surprised, and hemmed in by superior numbers, amid terrific mountains, precipices, and snows, forced their way by sheer dogged perseverance through all obstacles, and reached Trebizond with the loss of not one fourth of their original number.[871]

There was also another discovery made during the return which partly indicated the weakness of the Persian power, and partly accounted for it. The Greeks had believed that the whole vast space enclosed between the Black Sea, Caucasus, Caspian, and Jaxartes on the one hand, and the Arabian Desert, Persian Gulf, and Indian Ocean on the other, was bound together into one single centralized monarchy, all the resources of which were wielded by a single arm. They now found that even towards the heart of the empire, on the confines of Media and Assyria, there existed independent tribes which set the arms of Persia at defiance;[872] while towards the verge of the old dominion whole provinces, once certainly held in subjection, had fallen away from the declining State, and succeeded in establishing their freedom. The nineteenth satrapy of Herodotus[873] existed no more; in lieu of it was a mass of warlike and autonomous tribes—Chalybes, Taochi, Chaldeans, Macronians, Scythians, Colchians, Mosynœcians, Tibarenians[874]—whose services, if he needed them, the King of Persia had to buy,[875] while ordinarily their attitude towards him was one of distrust and

hostility. Judging of the unknown from the known, the Greeks might reasonably conclude that in all parts of the Empire similar defections had occurred, and that thus both the dimensions and the resources of the state had suffered serious diminution, and fell far below the conception which they had been accustomed to form of them.

The immediate consequence of the Cyreian expedition was a rupture between Persia and Sparta. Sparta had given aid to Cyrus, and thus provoked the hostility of the Great King. She was not inclined to apologize or to recede. On the contrary, she saw in the circumstances of the expedition strong grounds for anticipating great advantages to herself from a war with so weak an antagonist. Having, therefore, secured the services of the returned Ten Thousand,[876] she undertook the protection of the Asiatic Greeks against Persia, and carried on a war upon the continent against the satraps of Lydia and Phrygia for the space of six years (B.C. 399 to B.C. 394). The disorganization of the Persian Empire became very manifest during this period. So jealous were the two satraps of each other, that either was willing at any time to make a truce with the Spartans on condition that they proceeded to attack the other; and, on one occasion, as much as thirty silver talents was paid by a satrap on the condition that the war should be transferred from his own government to that of his rival.[877] At the same time the native tribes were becoming more and more inclined to rebel. The Mysians and Pisidians had for a long time been practically independent.[878] Now the Bithynians showed a disposition to shake off the Persian yoke,[879] while in Paphlagonia the native monarchs boldly renounced their allegiance.[880] Agesilaüs, who carried on the war in Asia Minor for three years, knew well how to avail himself of all these advantageous circumstances: and it is not unlikely that he would have effected the separation from Persia of the entire peninsula, had he been able to continue the struggle a few years longer. But the league between Argos, Thebes, and Corinth, which jealousy of Sparta caused and Persian gold promoted,[881] proved so formidable, that Agesilaüs had to be summoned home:[882] and after his departure, Conon, in alliance with Pharnabazus, recovered the supremacy of the sea for Athens,[883] and greatly weakened Spartan influence in Asia. Not content with this result, the two friends, in the year B.C. 393, sailed across the Egean, and the portentous spectacle of a Persian fleet in Greek waters was once more seen—this

time in alliance with Athens! Descents were made upon the coasts of the Peloponnese,[884] and the island of Cythera was seized and occupied.[885] The long walls of Athens were rebuilt with Persian money, and all the enemies of Sparta were richly subsidized.[886] Sparta was made to feel that if she had been able at one time to make the Great King tremble for his provinces, or even for his throne, the King could at another reach her across the Egean, and approach Sparta as nearly as she had, with the Cyreians, approached Babylon.

The lesson of the year B.C. 393 was not thrown away on the Spartan government. The leading men became convinced that unless they could secure the neutrality of the Persians, Sparta must succumb to the hostility of her Hellenic enemies. Under these circumstances they devised, with much skill, a scheme likely to be acceptable to the Persians, which would weaken their chief rivals in Greece—Athens and Thebes—while it would leave untouched their own power. They proposed a general peace, the conditions of which should be the entire relinquishment of Asia to the Persians, and the complete autonomy of all the Greek States in Europe. The first attempt to procure the acceptance of these terms failed[887] (B.C. 393); but six years later, after Antalcidas had explained them at the Persian Court, Artaxerxes sent down an *ultimatum* to the disputants,[888] modifying the terms slightly as regarded Athens,[889] extending them as regarded himself so as to include the islands of Clazomenæ and Cyprus, and requiring their acceptance by all the belligerents, on pain of their incurring his hostility. To this threat all yielded. A Persian king may be excused if he felt it a proud achievement thus to dictate a peace to the Greeks—a peace, moreover, which annulled the treaty of Callias, and gave back absolutely into his hands a province which had ceased to belong to his Empire more than sixty years previously.

It was the more important to Artaxerxes that his relations with the European Greeks should be put upon a peaceful footing, since all the resources of the Empire were wanted for the repression of disturbances which had some years previously broken out in Cyprus. The exact date of the Cyprian revolt under Evagoras, the Greek tyrant of Salamis, is uncertain;[890] but there is evidence that, at least as early as B.C. 391, he was at open war with the power of Persia, and had made an alliance with the Athenians, who both in that year and in B.C. 388 sent him aid.[891] Assisted also by Achôris, independent

monarch of Egypt, and Hecatomnus, vassal king of Caria,[892] he was able to take the offensive, to conquer Tyre,[893] and extend his revolt into Cilicia[894] and Idumæa.[895] An expedition undertaken against him by Autophradates, satrap of Lydia,[896] seems to have failed. It was the first object of the Persians, after concluding the "Peace of Antalcidas," to crush Evagoras. They collected 300 vessels, partly from the Greeks of Asia, and brought together an army of 300,000 men.[897] The fleet of Evagoras numbered 200 triremes, and with these he ventured on an attack, but was completely defeated by Tiribazus, who shut him up in Salamis, and, after a struggle which continued for at least six years,[898] compelled him to submit to terms (B.C. 380 or 379).[899] More fortunate than former rebels, he obtained not merely a promise of pardon, which would probably have been violated, but a recognition of his title, and permission to remain in his government, with the single obligation of furnishing to the Great King a certain annual tribute.

During the continuance of this war, Artaxerxes was personally engaged in military operations in another part of his dominions. The Cadusians, who inhabited the low and fertile tract between the Elburz range and the Caspian, having revolted against his authority, Artaxerxes invaded their territory at the head of an army which is estimated at 300,000 foot and 10,000 horse.[900] The land was little cultivated, rugged, and covered with constant fogs; the men were brave and warlike, and having admitted him into their country, seem to have waylaid and intercepted his convoys. His army was soon reduced to great straits, and forced to subsist on the cavalry horses and the baggage animals. A most disastrous result must have followed,[901] had not Tiribazus, who had been recalled from Cyprus on charges preferred against him by the commander of the land force, Orontes,[902] contrived very artfully to induce the rebels to make their submission.[903] Artaxerxes was thus enabled to withdraw from the country without serious disaster, having shown in his short campaign that he possessed the qualities of a soldier,[904] but was entirely deficient in those of a general.

A time of comparative tranquillity seems to have followed the Cadusian campaign. Artaxerxes strengthened his hold upon the Asiatic Greeks by razing some of their towns and placing garrisons in others.[905] His satraps even ventured to commence the absorption of the islands off the coast; and

there is evidence that Samos, at any rate, was reduced and added to the Empire.[7] Cilicia, Phœnicia, and Idumæa were doubtless recovered soon after the great defeat of Evagoras. There remained only one province in this quarter which still maintained its revolt, and enjoyed, under native monarchs, the advantages of independence. This was Egypt, which had now continued free for above thirty years, since it shook off the yoke of Darius Nothus. Artaxerxes, anxious to recover this portion of his ancestral dominions, applied in B.C. 375 to Athens for the services of her great general, Iphicrates.[8] His request was granted, and in the next year a vast armament was assembled at Acre[9] under Iphicrates and Pharnabazus, which effected a successful landing in the Delta at the Mendesian mouth of the Nile, stormed the town commanding this branch of the river, and might have taken Memphis, could the energetic advice of the Athenian have stirred to action the sluggish temper of his Persian colleague.[9] But Pharnabazus declined to be hurried, and preferred to proceed leisurely and according to rule. The result was that the season for hostilities passed and nothing had been done. The Nile rose as the summer drew on, and flooded most of the Delta; the expedition could effect nothing, and had to return. Pharnabazus and Iphicrates parted amid mutual recriminations; and the reduction of Egypt was deferred for above a quarter of a century.

In Greece, however, the Great King still retained that position of supreme arbiter with which he had been invested at the "Peace of Antalcidas." In B.C. 372 Antalcidas was sent by Sparta a second time up to Susa, for the purpose of obtaining an imperial rescript, prescribing the terms on which the then existing hostilities among the Greeks should cease.[10] In B.C. 367 Pelopidas and Ismenias proceeded with the same object from Thebes to the Persian capital.[11] In the following year a rescript, more in their favor than former ones, was obtained by Athens.[12] Thus every one of the leading powers of Greece applied in turn to the Great King for his royal mandate, so erecting him by common consent into a sort of superior, whose decision was to be final in all cases of Greek quarrel.

But this external acknowledgment of the imperial greatness of Persia did not, and could not, check the internal decay and tendency to disintegration, which was gradually gaining head, and threatening the speedy dissolution of the Empire. The long reign of Artaxerxes Mnemon was now verging towards its close. He was advanced in years, and enfeebled in mind

and body, suspicious of his sons and of his nobles, especially of such as showed more than common ability. Under these circumstances, revolts on the part of satraps grew frequent. First Ariobarzanes, satrap of Phrygia, renounced his allegiance (B.C. 366), and defended himself with success against Autophradates, satrap of Lydia, and Mausôlus, native king of Caria under Persia, to whom the task of reducing him had been entrusted.[913] Then Aspis, who held a part of Cappadocia, revolted and maintained himself by the help of the Pisidians, until he was overpowered by Datames.[914] Next Datames himself, satrap of the rest of Cappadocia, understanding that Artaxerxes' mind was poisoned against him, made a treaty with Ariobarzanes, and assumed an independent attitude in his own province.[915] In this position he resisted all the efforts of Autophradates to reduce him to obedience; and Artaxerxes condescended first to make terms with him and then to remove him by treachery.[916] Finally (B.C. 362), there seems to have been something like a general revolt of the western provinces, in which the satraps of Mysia, Phrygia, and Lydia, Mausôlus, prince of Caria, and the people of Lycia, Pamphylia, Cilicia, Syria, and Phœnicia participated.[917] Tachos, king of Egypt, fomented the disturbances, which were also secretly encouraged by the Spartans.[918] A terrible conflict appeared to be imminent; but it was avoided by the ordinary resources of bribery and treachery. Orontes, satrap of Phrygia, and Rheomithras, one of the revolted generals, yielding to the attractions of Persian gold, deserted and betrayed their confederates.[919] The insurrection was in this way quelled, but it had raised hopes in Egypt, which did not at once subside. Tachos, the native king, having secured the services of Agesilaüs as general,[920] and of Chabrias, the Athenian, as admiral of his fleet,[921] boldly advanced into Syria, was well received by the Phœnicians, and commenced the siege of some of the Syrian cities. Persia might have suffered considerable loss in this quarter, had not the internal quarrels of the Egyptians among themselves proved a better protection to her than her own armies. Two pretenders to the throne sprang up as soon as Tachos had quitted the country,[922] and he was compelled to return to Egypt in order to resist them. The force intended to strike a vigorous blow against the power of Artaxerxes was dissipated in civil conflicts; and Persia had once more to congratulate herself on the intestine divisions of her adversaries.

A few years after this, Artaxerxes died, having reigned forty-

six years,[923] and lived, if we may trust Plutarch, ninety-four.[924] Like most of the later Persian kings, he was unfortunate in his domestic relations. To his original queen, Statira, he was indeed fondly attached;[925] and she appears to have merited and returned his love;[926] but in all other respects his private life was unhappy. Its chief curse was Parysatis, the queen-mother. This monster of cruelty held Artaxerxes in a species of bondage during almost the whole of his long reign, and acted as if she were the real sovereign of the country. She encouraged Cyrus in his treason,[927] and brought to most horrible ends all those who had been prominent in frustrating it.[928] She poisoned Statira out of hatred and jealousy, because she had a certain degree of influence over her husband.[929] She encouraged Artaxerxes to contract an incestuous marriage with his daughter Atossa,[930] a marriage which proved a fertile source of further calamities. Artaxerxes had three sons by Statira—Darius, Ariaspes, and Ochus. Of these Darius, as the eldest, was formally declared the heir.[931] But Ochus, ambitious of reigning, intrigued with Atossa,[932] and sought to obtain the succession by her aid. So good seemed to Darius the chances of his brother's success that he took the rash step of conspiring against the life of his father, as the only way of securing the throne.[933] His conspiracy was detected, and he was seized and executed, Ariaspes thereby becoming the eldest son, and so the natural heir. Ochus then persuaded Ariaspes that he had offended his father, and was about to be put to a cruel and ignominious death, whereupon that prince in despair committed suicide.[934] His elder brothers thus removed, there still remained one rival, whom Ochus feared. This was Arsames, one of his half-brothers, an illegitimate son of Artaxerxes, who stood high in his favor. Assassination was the weapon employed to get rid of this rival. It is said that this last blow was too much for the aged and unhappy king, who died of grief on receiving intelligence of the murder.[935]

Artaxerxes was about the weakest of all the Persian monarchs. He was mild in temperament,[936] affable in demeanor, goodnatured,[937] affectionate,[938] and well-meaning. But, possessing no strength of will, he allowed the commission of the most atrocious acts, the most horrible cruelties, by those about him, who were bolder and more resolute than himself. The wife and son, whom he fondly loved, were plotted against before his eyes; and he had neither the skill to prevent nor the courage to avenge their fate. Incapable of resisting entreaty

and importunity, he granted boons which he ought to have refused, and condoned offences which it would have been proper to punish. He could not maintain long the most just resentment, but remitted punishments even when they were far milder than the crime deserved.[337] He was fairly successful in the management of his relations with foreign countries, and in the suppression of disturbances within his own dominions; but he was quite incapable of anything like a strenuous and prolonged effort to renovate and re-invigorate the Empire. If he held together the territories which he inherited, and bequeathed them to his successor augmented rather than diminished, it is to be attributed more to his good fortune than to his merits, and to the mistakes of his opponents than to his own prudence or sagacity.

Ochus, who obtained the crown in the manner related above, was the most cruel and sanguinary of all the Persian kings.[341] He is indeed the only monarch of the Achæmenian line who appears to have been bloodthirsty by temperament. His first act on finding himself acknowledged king (B.C. 359) was to destroy, so far as he could, all the princes of the blood royal, in order that he might have no rival to fear. He even, if we may believe Justin,[342] involved in this destruction a number of the princesses, whom any but the most ruthless of despots would have spared. Having taken these measures for his own security, he proceeded to show himself more active and enterprising than any monarch since Longimanus. It was now nearly half a century since one of the important provinces of the Empire—Egypt—had successfully asserted its independence and restored the throne of its native kings. General after general had been employed in vain attempts to reduce the rebels to obedience. Ochus determined to attempt the recovery of the revolted province in person. Though a rebellion had broken out in Asia Minor,[343] which being supported by Thebes, threatened to become serious,[344] he declined to be diverted from his enterprise. Levying a vast army, he marched into Egypt, and engaged Nectanebo, the king, in a contest for existence. Nectanebo, however, having obtained the services of two Greek generals, Diophantus, an Athenian, and Lamius, a citizen of Sparta,[345] boldly met his enemy in the field, defeated him, and completely repulsed his expedition.[346] Hereupon the contagion of revolt spread. Phœnicia assumed independence under the leadership of Sidon, expelled or massacred the Persian garrisons, which held her cities, and formed an alliance with Egypt.[347] Her

example was followed by Cyprus, where the kings of the nine principal towns assumed each a separate sovereignty.[945]

The chronology of this period is somewhat involved: but it seems probable that the attack and failure of Ochus took place about B.C. 351; that the revolts occurred in the next year, B.C. 350; while it was not till B.C. 346, or four years later, that Ochus undertook his second expedition into these regions.[949] He had, however, in the meanwhile, directed his generals or feudatories, to attack the rebels, and bring them into subjection. The Cyprian war he had committed to Idrieus,[948] prince of Caria, who employed on the service a body of 8000 Greek mercenaries, commanded by Phocion, the Athenian, and Evagoras, son of the former Evagoras,[951] the Cyprian monarch: while he had committed to Belesys, satrap of Syria, and Mezæus, satrap of Cilicia, the task of keeping the Phœnicians in check.[952] Idrieus succeeded in reducing Cyprus:[953] but the two satraps suffered a single defeat at the hands of Tennes, the Sidonian king, who was aided by 40,000 Greek mercenaries, sent him by Nectanebo, and commanded by Mentor the Rhodian.[954] The Persian forces were driven out of Phœnicia: and Sidon had ample time to strengthen its defences[955] and make preparations for a desperate resistance. The approach, however, of Ochus, at the head of an army of 330,000 men,[956] shook the resolution of the Phœnician monarch, who endeavored to purchase his own pardon by treacherously delivering up a hundred of the principal citizens of Sidon into the hands of the Persian king, and then admitting him within the defences of the town.[957] Ochus, with the savage cruelty which was his chief characteristic, caused the hundred citizens to be transfixed with javelins,[958] and when 500 more came out as suppliants to entreat his mercy, relentlessly consigned them to the same fate. Nor did the traitor Tennes derive any advantage from his guilty bargain. Ochus, having obtained from him all he needed, instead of rewarding his desertion, punished his rebellion with death.[959] Hereupon the Sidonians, understanding that they had nothing to hope from submission, formed the dreadful resolution of destroying themselves and their town. They had previously, to prevent the desertion of any of their number, burnt their ships.[960] Now they shut themselves up in their houses, and set fire each to his own dwelling. Forty thousand persons lost their lives in the conflagration; and the city was reduced to a heap of ruins, which Ochus sold for a large sum.[961] Thus ended the Phœnician revolt. Among its

most important results was the transfer of his services to the Persian king on the part of Mentor the Rhodian, who appears to have been the ablest of the mercenary leaders of whom Greece at this time produced so many.

The reduction of Sidon was followed closely by the invasion of Egypt. Ochus, besides his 330,000 Asiatics, had now a force of 14,000 Greeks[962]—6000 furnished by the Greek cities of Asia Minor; 4000 under Mentor, consisting of the troops which he had brought to the aid of Tennes from Egypt; 3000 sent by Argos; and 1000 from Thebes. He divided his numerous armament into three bodies, and placed at the head of each two generals—one Persian and one Greek.[963] The Greek commanders were Lacrates of Thebes, Mentor of Rhodes, and Nicostratus of Argos, a man of enormous strength, who regarded himself as a second Hercules, and adopted the traditional costume of that hero—a club and a lion's skin.[964] The Persians were Rhœsaces, Aristazanes, and Bagôas, the chief of the eunuchs. Nectanebo was only able to oppose to this vast array an army less than one third of the size.[965] Twenty thousand, however, out of the 100,000 troops at his disposal were Greeks; he occupied the Nile and its various branches with a numerous navy;[966] the character of the country, intersected by numerous canals, and full of strongly fortified towns, was in his favor;[967] and he might have been expected to make a prolonged, if not even a successful, resistance. But he was deficient in generals, and over confident in his own powers of command:[968] the Greek captains out-manœuvred him; and no sooner did he find one line of his defences forced than his ill-founded confidence was exchanged for an alarm as little reasonable. He hastily fell back upon Memphis,[969] leaving the fortified towns to the defence of their garrisons. These consisted of mixed troops, partly Greek and partly Egyptian: between whom jealousies and suspicions were easily sown by the Persian leaders, who by these means rapidly reduced the secondary cities of Lower Egypt,[970] and were advancing upon Memphis, when Nectanebo in despair quitted the country and fled southwards to Ethiopia.[971] All Egypt submitted to Ochus, who demolished the walls of the cities, plundered the temples,[972] and after amply rewarding his mercenaries, returned to his own capital with an immense booty, and with the glory of having successfully carried through a most difficult and important enterprise.

It has been well observed that "the reconquest of Egypt by

Ochus must have been one of the most impressive events of the age," and that it "exalted the Persian Empire in force and credit to a point nearly as high as it had ever occupied before."[973] Ochus not only redeemed by means of it his former failure, but elevated himself in the opinions of men to a pitch of glory such as no previous Persian king had reached, excepting Cyrus, Cambyses, and the first Darius. Henceforth we hear of no more revolts or rebellions. Mentor and Bagôas, the two generals who had most distinguished themselves in the Egyptian campaign, were advanced by the gratitude of Ochus to posts of the highest importance,[974] in which their vigor and energy found ample room to display themselves. Mentor, who was governor of the entire Asiatic sea-board, exerted himself successfully to reduce to subjection the many chiefs who during the recent troubles had assumed an independent authority,[975] and in the course of a few years brought once more the whole coast into complete submission and dependence. Bagôas, carried with him by Ochus to the capital, became the soul of the internal administration, and maintained tranquillity throughout the rest of the Empire.[976] The last six years of the reign of Ochus form an exceptional period of vigorous and successful government, such as occurs nowhere else in the history of the later Persian monarchy. The credit of bringing about such a state of things may be due especially to the king's officers, Bagôas and Mentor; but a portion of it must reflect upon himself,[977] as the person who selected them, assigned them their respective tasks, and permanently maintained them in office.

It was during this period of vigor and renewed life, when the Persian monarchy seemed to have recovered almost its pristine force and strength, that the attention of its rulers was called to a small cloud on the distant horizon, which some were wise enough to see portended storm and tempest. The growing power of Macedon, against which Demosthenes was at this time in vain warning the careless Athenians, attracted the consideration of Ochus or of his counsellors; and orders went forth from the Court that Persian influence was to be used to check and depress the rising kingdom.[978] A force was consequently despatched to assist the Thracian prince, Cersobleptes, to maintain his independence;[979] and such effectual aid was given to the city of Perinthus[980] that the numerous and well-appointed army with which Philip had commenced its siege was completely baffled and compelled to give up the at-

tempt (B.C. 340). The battle of Chæroneia had not yet been fought, and Macedonia was still but one of the many states which disputed for supremacy over Greece; but it is evident that she had already awakened the suspicions of Persia, which saw a rival and a possible assailant in the rapidly growing monarchy.

Greater and more systematic efforts might possibly have been made, and the power of Macedon might perhaps have been kept within bounds, had not the inveterate evil of conspiracy and revolution once more shown itself at the Court, and paralyzed for a time the action of the Empire on communities beyond its borders. Ochus, while he was a vigorous ruler and administrator, was harsh and sanguinary. His violence and cruelty rendered him hateful to his subjects;[981] and it is not unlikely that they caused even those who stood highest in his favor to feel insecure. Bagôas may have feared that sooner or later he would himself be one of the monarch's victims, and have been induced by a genuine alarm to remove the source of his terrors. In the year B.C. 338 he poisoned Ochus, and placed upon the throne his youngest son, Arses, at the same time assassinating all the brothers of the new monarch.[982] It was evidently his aim to exercise the supreme power himself, as counsellor to a prince who owed his position to him, and who was moreover little more than a boy.[983] But Arses, though subservient for a year or two, began, as he grew older, to show that he had a will of his own, and was even heard to utter threats against his benefactor;[984] whereupon Bagôas, accustomed now to crime, secured himself by a fresh series of murders. He caused Arses and his infant children to be assassinated,[985] and selected one of his friends, Codomannus, the son of Arsanes,[986] to fill the vacant throne. About the same time (B.C. 336), Philip of Macedon was assassinated by the incensed Pausanias;[987] and the two new monarchs—Codomannus, who took the name of Darius, and Alexander the Great—assumed their respective sceptres almost simultaneously.[988]

Codomannus, the last of the Persian kings, might with some reason have complained, like Plato,[989] that nature had brought him in the world too late. Personally brave, as he proved himself into the Cadusian war,[990] tall and strikingly handsome,[991] amiable in temper, capable of considerable exertion,[992] and not altogether devoid of military capacity,[993] he would have been a fairly good ruler in ordinary times, and might, had he fallen upon such times, have held an honorable place among

the Persian monarchs. But he was unequal to the difficulties of such a position as that in which he found himself. Raised to thet hrone after the victory of Chæroneia had placed Philip at the head of Greece, and when a portion of the Macedonian forces had already passed into Asia,[994] he was called upon to grapple at once with a danger of the most formidable kind, and had but little time for preparation. It is true that Philip's death soon after his own accession gave him a short breathing-space: but at the same time it threw him off his guard. The military talents of Alexander were untried, and of course unknown; the perils which he had to encounter were patent. Codomannus may be excused if for some months after Alexander's accession he slackened his preparations for defence,[995] uncertain whether the new monarch would maintain himself, whether he would overpower the combinations which were formed against him in Greece, whether he would inherit his father's genius for war, or adopt his ambitious projects. It would have been wiser, no doubt, as the event proved, to have joined heart and soul with Alexander's European enemies, and to have carried the war at once to the other side of the Egean. But no great blame attaches to the Persian monarch for his brief inaction. As soon as the Macedonian prince had shown by his campaigns in Thrace, Illyria, and Bœotia that he was a person to be dreaded, Darius Codomannus renewed the preparations which he had discontinued, and pushed them forward with all the speed that was possible.[996] A fleet was rapidly got ready: the satraps of Asia Minor were reinforced with troops of good quality from the interior of the Empire,[997] and were ordered to raise a strong force of mercenaries;[998] money was sent into Greece to the Lacedæmonians and others in order to induce them to create disturbances in Europe;[999] above all, Memnon the Rhodian, a brother of Mentor, and a commander of approved skill, was sent to the Hellespont, at the head of a body of Greeks in Persian pay, with an authority co-ordinate to that of the satraps.[1000]

A certain amount of success at first attended these measures. Memnon was able to act on the offensive in North-Western Asia. He marched upon Cyzicus and was within a little of surprising it, obtaining from the lands and villas without the walls an immense booty. He forced Parmenio to raise the seige of Pitané; and when Callas, one of the Macedonian leaders, endeavored to improve the condition of things by

meeting the Persian forces in the open field, he suffered a defeat and was compelled to throw himself into Rhœteum.[1001]

These advantages, however, were detrimental rather than serviceable to the Persian cause; since they encouraged the Persian satraps to regard the Macedonians as an enemy no more formidable than the various tribes of Greeks with whom they had now carried on war in Asia Minor for considerably more than a century. The intended invasion of Alexander seemed to them a matter of no great moment—to be classed with expeditions like those of Thimbron and Agesilaus,[1002] not to need, as it really did, to be placed in a category of its own. Accordingly, they made no efforts to dispute the passage of the Hellespont, or to oppose the landing of the expedition on the Asiatic shore. Alexander was allowed to transport a force of 30,000 foot and 4000 or 5000 horse[1003] from the Chersonese to Mysia without the slightest interference on the part of the enemy, notwithstanding that his naval power was weak and that of the Persians very considerable. This is one of those pieces of remissness in the Persian conduct of military matters, whereof we have already had to note signal instances,[1004] and which constantly caused the failure of very elaborate and judicious preparations to meet a danger. Great efforts had been made to collect and equip a numerous fleet, and a few weeks later it was all-powerful in the Egean.[1005] But it was absent exactly at the time when it was wanted. Alexander's passage and landing were unopposed, and the Persians thus admitted within the Empire without a struggle the enemy who was fated to destroy it.

When the Persian commanders heard that Alexander was in Asia, they were anxious to give him battle.[1006] One alone, the Rhodian Greek, Memnon, proposed and urged a wholly different plan of operations. Memnon advised that a general engagement should be avoided, that the entire country should be laid waste, and even the cities burnt, while the army should retire, cut off stragglers, and seek to bring the enemy into difficulties.[1007] At the same time he recommended that the fleet should be brought up, a strong land force embarked on board it, and an effort made to transfer the war into Europe.[1008] But Memnon's colleagues, the satraps and commandants of the north-western portion of Asia Minor, could not bring themselves to see that circumstances required a line of action which they regarded as ignominious.[1009] It is not necessary to attri-

bute to them personal or selfish motives.[1010] They probably thought honestly that they were a match for Alexander with the troops at their disposal, and viewed retreat before an enemy numerically weaker than themselves as a disgrace not to be endured unless its necessity was palpable. Accordingly they determined to give the invader battle. Supposing that Alexander, having crossed into Asia at Abydos, would proceed to attack Dascyleium, the nearest satrapial capital, they took post on the Granicus, and prepared to dispute the further advance of the Macedonian army. They had collected a force of 20,000 cavalry of the best quality that the Empire afforded,[1011] and nearly the same number of infantry,[1012] who were chiefly, if not solely, Greek mercenaries.[1013] With these they determined to defend the passage of the small stream above mentioned—one of the many which flow from the northern flank of Ida into the Propontis.

The battle thus offered was eagerly accepted by the Macedonian. If he could not defeat with ease a Persian force not greatly exceeding his own, he had miscalculated the relative goodness of the soldiers on either side, and might as well desist from the expedition. Accordingly, he no sooner came to the bank of the river, and saw the enemy drawn up on the other side, than, rejecting the advice of Parmenio to wait till the next day,[1014] he gave orders that the whole army should enter the stream and advance across it. The Granicus was in most places fordable; but there were occasional deeper parts,[1015] which had to be avoided; and there was thus some difficulty in reaching the opposite bank in line. That bank itself was generally steep and precipitous,[1016] but offered also several gentle slopes where a landing was comparatively easy. The Persians had drawn up their cavalry along the line of the river close to the water's edge, and had placed their infantry in the rear.[1017] Alexander consequently attacked with his cavalry. The engagement began upon the right. Amytas and Ptolemy, who were the first to reach the opposite bank, met with a strenuous resistance and were driven back into the stream by the forces of Memnon and his sons.[1018] The battle, however, on this side was restored by Alexander himself, who gradually forced the Persians back after a long hand-to-hand fight, in which he received a slight wound, and slew with his own hand several noble Persians.[1019] Elsewhere the resistance was less determined. Parmenio crossed on the left with comparative ease,[1020] by his advance relieving Alexander. The Persians found the

long spears of the Macedonians and their intermixture of light-armed foot with heavy-armed cavalry irresistible.[121] The Macedonians seem to have received orders to strike at their adversaries' faces[122]—a style of warfare which was as unpleasant to the Persians as it was to the soldiers of Pompey at Pharsalia. Their line was broken where it was opposed to Alexander and his immediate companions;[123] but the contagion of disorder rapidly spread, and the whole body of the cavalry shortly quitted the field, after having lost a thousand of their number.[124] Only the infantry now remained. Against these the Macedonian phalanx was brought up in front, while the cavalry made repeated charges on either flank with overwhelming effect. Deserted by their horse, vastly outnumbered, and attacked on all sides, the brave mercenaries stood firm, fought with desperation, and were mostly slaughtered where they stood.[125] Two thousand out of the 20,000—probably wounded men—were made prisoners.[126] The rest perished, except a few who lay concealed among the heaps of slain.

The Persians lost by the battle 20,000 of their best footmen, and one or two thousand horse. Among their slain the proportion of men of rank was unusually large. The list included Spithridates, satrap of Lydia, Mithrobarzanes, governor of Cappadocia, Pharnaces, a brother-in-law, and Mithridates, a son-in-law of Darius, Arbupales, a grandson of Artaxerxes Mnemon, Omares, the commander of the mercenaries, Niphates, Petines, and Rhesaces, generals.[127] The Greek loss is said to have been exceedingly small. Aristobulus made the total number of the slain thirty-four;[128] Arrian gives it as one hundred and fifteen, or a little over.[129] It has been suspected that even the latter estimate is below the truth;[130] but the analogy furnished by the other great victories of the Greeks over the Persians tends rather to confirm Arrian's statement.[131]

The battle of the Granicus threw open to Alexander the whole of Asia Minor. There was no force left in the entire country that could venture to resist him, unless protected by walls. Accordingly, the Macedonian operations for the next twelve months, or during nearly the whole space that intervened between the battles of the Granicus and of Issus, consist of little more than a series of marches and sieges. The reader of Persian history will scarcely wish for an account of these operations in detail. Suffice it to say that Alexander rapidly overran Lydia, Ionia, Caria, Lycia, Pamphylia, Pisidia, and Phrygia, besieged and took Miletus, Halicarnassus, Marmareis,

and Sagalassus, and received the submission of Dascyleium, Sardis, Ephesus, Magnesia, Tralles, the Lycian Telmisseis, Pinara, Xanthus, Patara, Phaselis, Side, Aspendus, Celænæ, and Gordium.[1032] This last city was the capital of Phrygia; and there the conqueror for the first time since his landing gave himself and his army a few months' rest during the latter part of the winter.[1033]

With the first breath of spring his forces were again in motion. Hitherto anxious with respect to the state of things on the coast and in Greece, he had remained in the western half of Asia Minor, within call of his friends in Macedonia, at no time distant more than about 200 miles from the sea. Now intelligence reached him which made him feel at liberty to advance into the interior of Asia. Memnon the Rhodian fell sick and died in the early spring of B.C. 333.[1034] It is strange that so much should have depended on a single life: but it certainly seems that there was no one in the Persian service who, on Memnon's death, could replace him – no one fitted for the difficult task of uniting Greeks and Asiatics together, capable of influencing and managing the one while he preserved the confidence of the other. Memnon's death disconcerted all the plans of the Great King, who till it occurred had fully intended to carry the war into his enemy's country.[1035] It induced Darius even to give up the notion of maintaining a powerful fleet, and to transfer to the land service the most efficient of his naval forces.[1036] At the same time it set Alexander free to march wherever he liked, liberating him from the keen anxiety, which he had previously felt, as to the maintenance of the Macedonian power in Europe.

It now became the object of the Persian king to confront the daring invader of his Western provinces with an army worthy of the Persian name and proportionate to the vastness of the Empire. He had long been collecting troops from many of the most warlike nations, and had got together a force of several hundred thousand men.[1037] Forgetting the lessons of his country's previous history, he flattered himself that the host which he had brought together was irresistible, and became anxious to hurry on a general engagement. Starting from Babylon, probably about the time that Alexander left Gordium in Phrygia, he marched up the valley of the Euphrates, and took up a position at Sochi, which was situated in a large open plain, not far from the modern Lake of Antioch.[1038] On his arrival there he heard that Alexander was in Cilicia at no great

distance; and the Greeks in his service assured him that it would not be long before the Macedonian monarch would seek him out and accept his offer of battle.[1039] But a severe attack of illness detained Alexander at Tarsus,[1040] and when he was a little recovered, troubles in Western Cilicia, threatening his communications with Greece, required his presence;[1041] so that Darius grew impatient, and, believing that his enemy had no intention of advancing further than Cilicia, resolved to seek him in that country. Quitting the open plain of Sochi, he marched northwards, having the range of Amanus on his left, almost as far as the thirty-seventh parallel, when turning sharply to the west, he crossed the chain, and descended upon Issus, in the inner recess of the gulf which bore the same name.[1042] Here he came upon Alexander's hospitals, and found himself to his surprise in the rear of his adversary, who, while Darius was proceeding northwards along the eastern flank of Amanus, had been marching southwards between the western flank of the same range and the sea.[1043] Alexander had crossed the Pylæ, or narrowest portion of the pass, and had reached Myriandrus—a little beyond Iskenderum—when news reached him that Darius had occupied Issus in his rear,[1044] and had put to death all the sick and wounded Macedonians whom he had found in the town.[1045] At first he could not credit the intelligence; but when it was confirmed by scouts, whom he sent out,[1046] he prepared instantly to retrace his steps, and to fight his first great battle with the Persian king under circumstances which he felt to be favorable beyond anything that he could have hoped. The tract of flat land between the base of the mountains and the sea on the borders of the Gulf of Issus was nowhere broader than about a mile and a half.[1047] The range of Amanus on the east rose up with rugged and broken hills, so that on this side the operations of cavalry were impracticable. It would be impossible to form a line of battle containing in the front rank more than about 4000 men,[1048] and difficult for either party to bring into action as many as 30,000 of their soldiers. Thus the vast superiority of numbers on the Persian side became in such a position absolutely useless,[1049] and even Alexander had more troops than he could well employ. No wonder that the Macedonian should exclaim, that "God had declared Himself on the Grecian side by putting it into the heart of Darius to execute such a movement."[1050] It may be that Alexander's superior generalship would have made him victorious even on the open plain of Sochi; but in the

defile of Issus success was certain, and generalship superfluous.

Darius had started from Issus in pursuit of his adversary, and had reached the banks of the Pinarus, a small stream flowing westward from Amanus into the Mediterranean, when he heard that Alexander had hastened to retrace his steps, and was coming to meet him.[1051] Immediately he prepared for battle. Passing a force of horse and foot across the stream in his front, to keep his adversary in check if he advanced too rapidly,[1052] he drew up his best troops along the line of the river in a continuous solid mass, the ranks of which must have been at least twenty deep.[1053] Thirty thousand Greek mercenaries formed the centre of the line,[1054] while on either side of them were an equal number of Asiatic "braves"[1055]—picked probably from the mass of the army.[1056] Twenty thousand troops of a lighter and inferior class were placed upon the rough hills on the left, the outskirts of the Amanian range, where the nature of the ground allowed them to encircle the Macedonian right,[1057] which, to preserve its ranks unbroken, kept the plain. The cavalry, to the number of 30,000, was massed upon the other wing, near the sea.[1058]

The battle began by certain movements of Alexander against the flank force which menaced his right. These troops, assailed by the Macedonian light-armed, retreated at once to higher ground, and by their manifest cowardice freed Alexander from all anxiety on their account.[1059] Leaving 300 horse to keep the 20,000 in check, he moved on his whole line at a slow pace towards the Pinarus till it came within bow-shot of the enemy, when he gave the order to proceed at a run.[1060] The line advanced as commanded; but before it could reach the river, the Persian horse on the extreme right, unable to restrain themselves any longer, dashed across the shallow stream, and assailed Alexander's left,[1061] where they engaged in a fierce battle with the Thessalian cavalry, in which neither attained any decided advantage.[1062] The infantry, meanwhile, came into conflict along the rest of the line. Alexander himself, with the right and the right-centre, charged the Asiatic troops on Darius's left, who, like their brethren at Cunaxa,[1063] instantly broke and fled.[1064] Parmenio, with the left-centre, was less successful. The north bank of the Pinarus was in this part steep and defended by stakes[1065] in places; the Greek mercenaries were as brave as the Macedonians, and fought valiantly. It was not till the troops which had routed the Persian right

began to act against their centre, assailing it upon the flank, while it was at the same time engaged in front, that the mercenaries were overpowered and gave way.[1066] Seeing their defeat, the horse likewise fled, and thus the rout became general.

It is not quite clear what part Darius took in the battle, or how far he was answerable for its untoward result. According to Arrian,[1067] he was struck with a sudden panic on beholding the flight of his left wing, and gave orders to his charioteer instantly to quit the field. But Curtius and Diodorus represent him as engaged in a long struggle against Alexander himself, and as only flying when he was in imminent danger of falling into the enemy's hands.[1068] Justin goes further, and states that he was actually wounded.[1069] The character gained by Darius in his earlier years[1070] makes it improbable that he would under any circumstances have exhibited personal cowardice. On the whole it would seem to be most probable that the flight of the Persian monarch occurred, not when the left wing fled, but when the Greek mercenaries among whom he had placed himself began to give way before the irresistible phalanx and the impetuous charges of Alexander. Darius, not unwisely, accepted the defeat of his best troops as the loss of the battle, and hastily retired across Amanus by the pass which had brought him to Issus, whence he hurried on through Soch[1071] to the Euphrates, anxious to place that obstacle between himself and his victorious enemy.[1072] His multitudinous host, entangled in the defiles of the mountains, suffered by its own weight and size, the stronger fugitives treading[1073] down the weaker, while at the same time it was ruthlessly slaughtered by the pursuing enemy, so long as the waning light allowed. As many as 100,000 - 90,000 foot and 10,000 horse - are said to have fallen.[1074] The ravines were in places choked with the dead bodies, and Ptolemy the son of Lagus related that in one instance he and Alexander crossed a gully on a bridge of this kind.[1075] Among the slain were Sabaces, satrap of Egypt,[1076] Bubaces, a noble of high rank, and Arsames, Rheomithres, and Atizyes, three of the commanders at the Granicus. Forty thousand prisoners were made. The whole of the Persian camp and camp-equipage fell into the enemy's hands, who found in the royal pavilion the mother, wife, and sister of the king, an infant son, two daughters, and a number of female attendants, wives of noblemen.[1077] The treasure captured amounted to 3000 silver talents. Among the trophies of victory

were the chariot, bow, shield, and robe of the king, which he had abandoned in his hurried flight.[1775]

The loss on the side of the Macedonians was trivial. The highest estimate places it at 450 killed, the lowest at 182.[1776] Besides these, 504 were wounded.[1777] Thus Alexander had less than 1000 men placed *hors de combat*. He himself received a slight wound in the thigh from a sword,[1778] which, used a little more resolutely, might have changed the fortunes of the world.

The defeat of the Persians at Issus seems to have been due simply to the fact that, practically, the two adversaries engaged with almost equal numbers, and that the troops of Alexander were of vastly superior quality to those of Darius. The Asiatic infantry—notwithstanding their proud title of "braves"—proved to be worthless; the Greek mercenaries were personally courageous, but their inferior arms and training rendered them incapable of coping with the Macedonian phalanx.[1779] The cavalry was the only arm in which the Persians were not greatly at a disadvantage: and cavalry alone cannot gain, or even save a battle. When Darius put himself into a position where he lost all the advantages derivable from superiority of numbers, he made his own defeat and his adversary's triumph certain.

It remained, therefore, before the Empire could be considered as entirely lost, that this error should be corrected, this false step retrieved. All hope for Persia was not gone, so long as her full force had not been met and defeated in a fair and open field. When Darius fled from Issus, it was not simply to preserve for a few months longer his own wretched life; it was to make an effort to redeem the past[1780]—to give his country that last chance of maintaining her independence which she had a right to claim at his hands—to try what the award of battle would be under the circumstances which he had fair grounds for regarding as the most favorable possible to his own side and the most disadvantageous to his adversary. Before the heart of the Empire could be reached from the West, the wide Mesopotamian plain had to be traversed—there, in those vast flats, across which the enemy must come, a position might be chosen where there would be room for the largest numbers that even his enormous Empire could furnish—where cavalry and even chariots would be everywhere free to act—where consequently he might engage the puny force of his antagonist to the greatest advantage, outflank it, envelop it, and perhaps

destroy it. Darius would have been inexcusable had he given up the contest without trying this last chance—the chance of a battle in the open field with the full collected force of Persia.

His adversary gave him ample time to prepare for this final struggle. The battle of Issus was fought in November, B. C. 333.[1974] It was not till the summer of B.C. 331, twenty months later that the Macedonian forces were set in motion towards the interior of the Empire.[1975] More than a year and a half was consumed in the reduction of Phœnicia,[1976] the siege of Gaza,[1977] and the occupation of Egypt.[1978] Alexander, apparently, was confident of defeating Darius in a pitched battle, whenever and under whatever circumstances they should again meet: and regarded as the only serious dangers which threatened him, a possible interruption of his communications with Greece, and the employment of Persian gold and Persian naval force in the raising of troubles on the European side of the Ægean.[1979] He was therefore determined, before he plunged into the depth of the Asiatic continent, to isolate Persia from Greece, to destroy her naval power, and to cripple her pecuniary resources. The event showed that his decision was a wise one. By detaching from Persia and bringing under his own sway the important countries of Syria, Phœnicia, Palestine, Idumæa, and Egypt, he wholly deprived Persia of her navy, and transferred to himself the complete supremacy of the sea, he greatly increased his own resources while he diminished those of the enemy, and he shut out Persia altogether from communication with Greece, excepting through his territories. He could therefore commence his march into the interior with a feeling of entire security as to his communications and his rear. No foe was left on the coast capable of causing him a moment's uneasiness. Athens and Sparta might chafe and even intrigue; but without the Persian "archers,"[1980] it was impossible that any force should be raised which could in the slightest degree imperil his European dominions.

From Babylon, whither Darius proceeded straight from Issus,[1981] he appears to have made two ineffectual attempts at negotiating with his enemy. The first embassy was despatched soon after his arrival, and, according to Arrian,[1982] was instructed merely to make proposals for peace, and to request the restitution of the Queen, the Queen-mother, Sisygambis, the infant prince, and the two princesses, captured by Alexander. To this Alexander replied, in haughty and contemptuous terms, that if Darius would acknowledge him as Lord of

Asia, and deliver himself into his power, he should receive back his relatives: if he intended still to dispute the sovereignty, he ought to come and fight out the contest, and not run away.

The second embassy was sent six or eight months later, while Alexander was engaged in the siege of Tyre.[1093] Darius now offered, as a ransom for the members of his family held in captivity by Alexander, the large sum of ten thousand talents (240,000*l.*), and was willing to purchase peace by the cession of all the provinces lying west of the Euphrates, several of which were not yet in Alexander's possession. At the same time he proposed that Alexander should marry his daughter, Statira, in order that the cession of territory might be represented as the bestowal of a dowry.[1094] The reply of Alexander was, if possible, ruder and haughtier than before. "What did Darius mean by offering money and territory? All his treasure and all his territory were Alexander's already. As for the proposed marriage, if he (Alexander) liked to marry a daughter of Darius, he should of course do so, whether her father consented or not. If Darius wanted merciful treatment, he had better come and deliver himself up at once."

The terms of this reply rendered further negotiation impossible. Darius had probably not hoped much from his pacific overtures, and was therefore not greatly concerned at their rejection. He knew that the members of his family were honorably and even kindly treated by their captor,[1095] and that, so far at any rate, Alexander had proved himself a magnanimous conqueror. He can scarcely have thought that a lasting peace was possible between himself and his young antagonist, who had only just fleshed his maiden sword, and was naturally eager to pursue his career of conquest. Indeed, he seems from the moment of his defeat at Issus to have looked forward to another battle as inevitable, and to have been unremitting in his efforts to collect and arm a force which might contend, with a good hope of victory, against the Macedonians. He replaced the panoplies lost at Issus with fresh ones;[1096] he armed his forces anew with swords and spears longer than the Persians had been previously accustomed to employ, on account of the great length of the Macedonian weapons;[1097] he caused to be constructed 200 scythed chariots;[1098] he prepared spiked balls to use against his enemy's cavalry; above all, he laid under contribution for the supply of troops all the provinces, even the most remote, of his extensive Empire, and asked and obtained important aid from allies situated beyond his borders.[1099] The

forces which he collected for the final struggle comprised—besides Persians, Medes, Babylonians, and Susianians from the centre of the Empire—Syrians from the banks of the Orontes, Armenians from the neighborhood of Ararat, Cappadocians and Albanians from the regions bordering on the Euxine, Cadusians from the Caspian, Bactrians from the Upper Oxus, Sogdians from the Jaxartes, Arachosians from Cabul, Arians from Herat, Indians from Punjab, and even Sacæ from the country about Kashgar and Yarkand, on the borders of the Great Desert of Gobi. Twenty-five nations followed the standard of the Great King,[1094] and swelled the ranks of his vast army, which amounted (according to the best authorities) to above a million of men.[1095] Every available resource that the Empire possessed was brought into play. Besides the three arms of cavalry, infantry, and chariots, elephants were, for perhaps the first time in the history of military science, marshalled in the battle-field,[1096] to which they added an unwonted element of grotesqueness and savagery.

The field of battle was likewise selected with great care, and artificially prepared for the encounter. Darius, it would seem, had at last become convinced that his enemy would seek him out wherever he might happen to be, and that consequently the choice of ground rested wholly with himself. Leaving, therefore, the direct road to Babylon by the line of the Euphrates undefended,[1097] he selected a position which possessed all the advantages of the Mesopotamian plain, being open, level, fertile, and well supplied with water, while its vicinity to the eastern and northern provinces, made it convenient for a rendezvous. This position was on the left or east bank of the Tigris, in the heart of the ancient Assyria, not more than thirty miles from the site of Nineveh.[1098] Here, in the region called by the Greeks Adiabêné, extended between the Tigris and the river Zab or Lycus, a vast plain broken by scarcely any elevations, and wholly bare of both shrubs and trees.[1099] The few natural inequalities which presented themselves were levelled by order of Darius,[1100] who made the entire plain in his front practicable not only for cavalry but for chariots. At the same time he planted, in the places where Alexander's cavalry was likely to charge, spiked balls to damage the feet of the horses.[1101]

Meanwhile, Alexander had quitted Egypt, and after delaying some months in Syria while his preparations were being completed,[1102] had crossed the Euphrates at Thapsacus and

marched through northern Mesopotamia along the southern flank of the Mons Masius, a district in which provisions, water, and forage were abundant,[1110] to the Tigris, which he must have reached in about lat. 36° 20′, thirty or forty miles above the site of Nineveh. No resistance was made to his advance; even the passage of the great rivers was unopposed.[1111] Arrived on the east bank of the Tigris, Alexander found himself in Assyria Proper, with the stream upon his right and the mountains of Gordyêné Kurdistan at no great distance upon his left.[1111] But the plain widened as he advanced, and became, as he drew near the position of his enemy, a vast level, nowhere less than thirty miles in breadth, between the outlying ranges of hills and the great river. Darius, whose headquarters had been at Arbela,[1112] south of the Zab, on learning Alexander's approach, had crossed that stream and taken post on the prepared ground to the north, in the neighborhood of a small town or village called Gaugamela.[1113] Here he drew up his forces in the order which he thought best, placing the scythed chariots in front, with supports of horse—Scythian, Bactrian, Armenian, and Cappadocian—near to them;[1114] then, the main line of battle, divided into a centre and two wings, and composed of horse and foot intermixed; and finally a reserve of Babylonians, Sitaceni, and others, massed in heavy column in the rear. His own post was, according to invariable Persian custom,[1115] in the centre; and about him were grouped the best troops—the Household brigade, the Melophori or Persian foot-guards, the Mardian archers, some Albanians and Carians, the entire body of Greek mercenaries, and the Indians with their elephants.[1116]

Alexander, on his side, determined to leave nothing to chance. Advancing leisurely, resting his troops at intervals, carefully feeling his way by means of scouts, and gradually learning from the prisoners whom he took, and the deserters who came over to him, all the dispositions and preparations of the enemy,[1117] he arrived opposite the position of Darius on the ninth day after his passage of the Tigris.[1118] His officers were eager to attack at once;[1119] but with great judgment he restrained them, gave his troops a night's rest, and obtained time to reconnoitre completely the whole position of the enemy and the arrangement which he had made of his forces. He then formed his own dispositions. The army with which he was to attack above a million of men consisted of 40,000 foot and 7000 horse.[1120] Alexander drew them up in three lines.

The first consisted of light-armed troops, horse and foot, of good quality, which were especially intended to act against the enemy's chariots. The next was the main line of battle, and contained the phalanx with the rest of the heavy infantry in the centre, the heavy cavalry upon the two wings. The third line consisted of light troops, chiefly horse, and was instructed to act against such of the Persians as should outflank the Macedonian main line and so threaten their rear.[1121] As at Issus, Alexander took the command of the right wing himself, and assigned the left to Parmenio.

As the two armies drew near, Alexander, who found himself greatly outflanked on both wings, and saw in front of him smooth ground carefully prepared for the operations of chariots and cavalry, began a diagonal movement towards the right,[1122] which tended at once to place him beyond the levelled ground, and to bring him in contact with his enemy's left wing rather than with his direct front. The movement greatly disconcerted his adversary, who sought to prevent it by extending and advancing his own left, which was soon engaged with Alexander's right in a fierce hand-to-hand conflict. Alexander still pressed his slanting movement, and in resisting it Darius's left became separated from his centre, while at the same time he was forced to give the signal for launching the chariots against the foe sooner than he had intended, and under circumstances that were not favorable. The effect of the operation was much the same as at Cunaxa. Received by the Macedonian light-armed, the chariots were mostly disabled before the enemy's main line was reached: the drivers were dragged from the chariot-boards; and the horses were cut to pieces. Such as escaped this fate and charged the Macedonian line, were allowed to pass through the ranks, which opened to receive them, and were then dealt with by grooms and others in the rear of the army.[1123]

No sooner had the chariot attack failed, and the space between the two lines of battle become clear, than Alexander, with the quick eye of a true general, saw his opportunity: to resist his flank movement, the Bactrians and Sacæ with the greater part of the left wing had broken off from the main Persian line, and in pressing towards the left had made a gap between their ranks and the centre.[1124] Into this gap the Macedonian king, at the head of the "Companion" cavalry and a portion of the phalanx, plunged. Here he found himself in the near neighborhood of Darius, whereupon he redoubled

the vigor of his assault, knowing the great importance of any success gained in this quarter. The Companions rushed on with loud cries,[1125] pressing with all their weight, and thrusting their spears into the faces of their antagonists—the phalanx, bristling with its thick array of lances, bore them down.[1126] Alexander found himself sufficiently near Darius to hurl a spear at him, which transfixed his charioteer.[1127] The cry arose that the king had fallen, and the ranks at once grew unsteady. The more timid instantly began to break and fly; the contagion of fear spread; and Darius was in a little while almost denuded of protection on one side.[1128] Seeing this, and regarding the battle as lost, since his line was broken, his centre and left wing defeated,[1129] while only his right wing remained firm, the Persian monarch yielded to his alarm, and hastily quitting the field, made his way to Arbela.[1130] The centre and left fled with him. The right, which was under the command of the Syrian satrap, Mazæus, made a firmer stand. On this side the chariots had done some damage,[1131] and the horse was more than a match for the Thessalian cavalry.[1132] Parmenio found himself in difficulties about the time when the Persian king fled.[1133] His messengers detained a part of the phalanx, which was about to engage in the pursuit, and even recalled Alexander, who was hastening upon the track of Darius.[1134] The careful prince turned back, but before he could make his way through the crowd of fugitives to the side of his lieutenant, victory had declared in favor of the Macedonians in this part of the field also.[1135] Mazæus and his troops, learning that the king was fled, regarded further resistance as useless, and quitted the field. The Persian army hurriedly recrossed the Zab, pursued by the remorseless conquerors, who slew the unresisting fugitives till they were weary of slaughter. Arrian says that 300,000 fell, while a still larger number were taken prisoners.[1136] Other writers make the loss considerably less.[1137] All, however, agree that the army was completely routed and dispersed, that it made no attempt to rally, and gave no further trouble to the conqueror.

The conduct of Darius in this—the crisis of his fate—cannot be approved; but it admits of palliation, and does not compel us to withdraw from him that respectful compassion which we commonly accord to great misfortunes. After Issus, it was his duty to make at least one more effort against the invader. To this object he addressed himself with earnestness and dili-

gence. The number and quality of the troops collected at Arbela attests at once the zeal and success of his endeavors. His choice and careful preparation of the field of battle are commendable; in his disposition of his forces there is nothing with which to find fault. Every arm of the service had full room to act; all were brought into play; if Alexander conquered, it was because he was a consummate general, while at the same time he commanded the best troops in the world. Arbela was not, like Issus, won by mere fighting. It was the leader's victory, rather than the soldiers. Alexander's diagonal advance, the confusion which it caused, the break in the Persian line, and its prompt occupation by some of the best cavalry and a portion of the phalanx, are the turning-points of the engagement. All the rest followed as a matter of course. Far too much importance has been assigned to Darius's flight,[1137] which was the effect rather than the cause of victory. When the centre of an Asiatic army is so deeply penetrated that the person of the monarch is exposed and his near attendants begin to fall, the battle is won. Darius did not—indeed he could not—"set the example of flight."[1139] Hemmed in by vast masses of troops, it was not until their falling away from him on his left flank at once exposed him to the enemy and gave him room to escape, that he could extricate himself from the *mêlée*.

No doubt it would have been nobler, finer, more heroic, had the Persian monarch, seeing that all was lost, and that the Empire of the Persians was over, resolved not to outlive the independence of his country. Had he died in the thick of the fight, a halo of glory would have surrounded him. But, because he lacked, in common with many other great kings and commanders, the quality of heroism, we are not justified in affixing to his memory the stigma of personal cowardice. Like Pompey, like Napoleon, he yielded in the crisis of his fate to the instinct of self preservation. He fled from the field where he had lost his crown, not to organize a new army, not to renew the contest, but to prolong for a few weeks a life which had ceased to have any public value.

It is needless to pursue further the dissolution of the Empire. The fatal blow was struck at Arbela—all the rest was but the long death-agony. At Arbela the crown of Cyrus passed to the Macedonian; the Fifth Monarchy came to an end. The HE-GOAT, with the notable horn between his eyes, had come from the west to the ram which had two horns, and

had run into him with the fury of his power. He had come close to him, and, moved with choler, had smitten the ram and broken his two horns there was no power in the ram to stand before him, but he had cast him down to the ground and stamped upon him and there was none to deliver the ram out of his hand.[1140]

NOTES TO THE THIRD MONARCHY.

CHAPTER I.

[1] See the author's *Herodotus*, vol. i. p. 440, 2nd edition. Compare Chesney, *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 65; *Geographical Journal*, vol. iii. p. 112; Fraser, *Khorasan*, p. 162, note.

[2] See vol. i. p. 136.

[3] Polyb. v. 44, § 6; 54, § 7; 55, § 6; Strab. xi. p. 759; Plin. *H. N.* vi. 27; xii. 12; Ptol. vi. 2; Amm. Marc. xxiii. 6, p. 404; &c. The name Zagros more especially attached to the central portion of the chain from the mountain district south of Lake Van to the latitude of Isfahan. A good general description of the range is given by Q. Curtius:—"Namque Persis ab altero latere perpetuis montium jugis clauditur, quod in longitudinem MDC stadia, in latitudinem CLXX procurrit. Hoc dorsum a Caucaso monte ad Rubrum mare pertinet; quaque deficit mons, aliud munimentum, fretum objectum est." (*Vit. Alex. Mag.* v. 4.) Diodorus Siculus well describes the delightful character of the region (xix. 21).

[4] Xen. *Anab.* iii. 5; Strab. xi. 13, § 3; Arr. *Exp. Al.* iii. 17.

[5] Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. p. 357; Fraser, *Khorasan*, p. 244.

[6] Ker Porter well describes the majestic appearance of Demavend from the neighborhood of Teheran, the present capital of Persia: "The mountain of Demavend bears N. 65° E. of Teheran, about forty miles distant; and is seen, raising its lofty and pale summit to the north-east of the town; forming a magnificent pyramid that shoots up from the high range of Elburz, which bounds the wide plain in that direction." (*Travels*, l. s. c.) Recent ascents of Demavend have proved it to have an elevation of more than 20,000 feet. (See the author's *Herodotus*, vol. i. p. 442, note 1.) Ararat is only 17,000 feet; and the highest peak in the Caucasus does not exceed 18,000 feet.

[7] This name was derived from Atropates, the governor of the region at the time of the battle of Arbela, who made terms with Alexander, and was allowed to keep the province, where he shortly made himself independent. (Strab. xi. 13, § 1; Diod. Sic. xviii. 3.)

[8] Strabo makes Media to be bounded on the north by Matiané and the mountain region of the Cadusians (Elburz); on the east by Parthia and the Cossæans; on the south by Sittacené, Zagros, and Elymais; on the west by Matiané and Armenia (xi. 13). Pliny says that it has on the east the Parthians and Caspians; on the south Sittacené, Susiana, and Persis; on the west Adiabené; and on the north Armenia (*H. N.* vi. 26). The Armenian Geography makes the northern boundary Armenia and the Caspian, the eastern Aria or Khorasan, the southern Persia, and the western Armenia and Assyria (pp. 357-365). According to the most extensive view, Media begins at the Araxes, includes the whole low region between the mountains and the Caspian as far as Hyrcania, extends southwards to a little below Isfahan, and westward includes the greater part of Zagros. More moderate dimensions are assumed in the text.

[9] The salt desert projects somewhat further to the west, a portion being crossed on the route from Teheran to Isfahan. (See Fraser's *Khorasan*, p. 142; Ouseley, *Travels*, vol. iii p. 109; Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. p. 372.)

[10] Amm. Marc. xxiii. 6. "Medi—pugnatrix natio, regiones inhabitans ad speciem quadratæ figuræ formatas." Comp. Strab. xi. 13, § 8.

[11] See vol. i. pp. 4 and 121.

[12] Compare Polybius, x. 27, § 1:—*Ἐστὶ τοίνυν ἡ Μηδία κατὰ τὸ μέγεθος νῆς χῶρας ἀξιοχρεωτάτη τῶν κατὰ τὴν Ἀσίαν ὑπαστειῶν.*

[13] So Strabo: *Ἡ πολλὴ μὲν οὖν ὑψηλή ἐστι καὶ ψυχρά* (xi. 13, § 7). Compare Kinneir, *Persian Empire*, pp. 108, 144, 149, with Fraser, *Khorasan*, pp. 162-165.

[14] This is more especially the case in Irak, the most southern portion of the country. (Kinneir, p. 108.)

[15] Sir H. Rawlinson in *Geograph. Journ.* vol. x. pp. 43, 44, 55, &c. Even here a tree is a rarity. (Morier, *Second Journey*, p. 237.)

[16] Fraser, p. 163.

[17] Ker Porter, vol. i. pp. 285, 367, &c.

[18] Ibid. pp. 228, 231, &c.; *Geograph. Journ.* vol. x. p. 29.

[19] *Journal of Geographical Society*, vol. x. pp. 2, 5, 10, 13, 39, &c.; Kinneir, *Persian Empire*, pp. 153-156; Morier, *Second Journey*, p. 284; Ker Porter, vol. ii. pp. 592-607.

[20] Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. p. 217; Kinneir, p. 153; Morier, pp. 234-236. The plain of Moghan on the lower Aras is

famous for its rich soil and luxuriant pastures. The Persians say that the grass is sufficiently high to hide an army from view when encamped. (Kinneir, l. s. c.)

[21] *Journal of Geograph. Society*, vol. x. p. 59; Ker Porter, vol. i. p. 267.

[22] *Geograph. Journ.* vol. x. pp. 11, 40, &c.

[23] Kinneir, p. 110.

[24] Rich, *Kurdistan*, pp. 60, 130–134, &c.

[25] Ker Porter, vol. i. pp. 220, 370, &c.; Morier, *Second Journey*, pp. 167, 233; *Geograph. Journ.* vol. xxxi. p. 38.

[26] According to Strabo (xi. 13, § 3), the lower Araxes was the boundary between Armenia and Media Atropatênê. Thus even here one bank only was Median; and the upper course of the river was entirely in Armenia.

[27] See Hamilton's *Asia Minor*, vol. i. p. 183.

[28] Ibid. l. s. c.

[29] Ibid. p. 185.

[30] Ker Porter, vol. i. p. 215.

[31] Kinneir, p. 321.

[32] Virgil, *Æn.* viii. 728. "Pontem indignatus Araxes."

[33] Ker Porter, vol. ii. pp. 610, 641, &c.

[34] Kinneir, l. s. c.

[35] Col. Chesney estimates the whole course of the Araxes, including all its windings, at 830 miles. (*Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 12.)

[36] Sir H. Rawlinson estimated the height of these rocks above the stream at 1,500 feet. (*Geograph. Journ.* vol. x. p. 59.)

[37] Ibid. p. 64; Kinneir, p. 124.

[38] Chesney, *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 191.

[39] *Geograph. Journ.* vol. x. p. 59.

[40] Ker Porter, vol. i. p. 267; Morier, *First Journey*, p. 267.

[41] *Geograph. Journ.* vol. x. p. 11.

[42] Ker Porter, vol. i. p. 220; Morier, *Second Journey*, p. 233.

[43] Kinneir, p. 109.

[44] According to Kinneir, the whole *ballook* of Linjan, a district *seventy miles long and forty wide*, is irrigated by canals cut from the Zenderud, which render it one of the most productive parts of Persia (p. 110). Ker Porter speaks of the "great quantities of water which are drawn off from the Zenderud for the daily use of the rice-fields all around Isfahan" (vol. i. p. 420).

[45] Ker Porter, vol. i. pp. 411 and 431; vol. ii. p. 60.

[46] Kinneir goes considerably beyond the truth when he estimates the circumference at 300 miles. (*Persian Empire*, p. 155.)

[47] Lake Urumiyeh is 4,200 feet above the sea level; Lake Van 5,400 feet. Lake Sivan is less elevated than either of these; but still its height above the sea is considerable.

[48] See *Geographical Journal*, vol. x. p. 7. Compare vol. iii. p. 56; and see also Kinneir, l. s. c.

[49] *Armen. Geogr.* p. 364. It has been ingeniously conjectured that Strabo's Σπαῦτα (xi. 13, § 2) is a corruption of Καπαῦτα, due to some ancient copyist. (See St. Martin's *Recherches sur l'Arménie*, tom. i. p. 59; and compare Ingigi, *Archæolog. Armen.* vol. i. p. 160, and *Geograph. Journ.* vol. x. p. 9.)

[50] These were Atropatia (or Atropatênê), Rhea (Rhagiana), Gilania (Ghilan), Mucania, Dilumia, Amatania (Hamadan), Dambuaria, Sparastania, Amlia, Chesosia, and Rhovania (see text, pp. 363, 364).

[51] Ptolemy's districts are Margiana, Tropatênê (*i.e.* Atropatênê), Choromithrênê, Elymais, Sigriana, Rhagiana, Daritis, and Syro-Media (*Geograph.* vi. 2).

[52] See text, p. 2.

[53] The proper Nisæa is the district of Nishapur in Khorasan (Strabo, xi. 7, § 2; Isid. Char. p. 7), whence it is probable that the famous breed of horses was originally brought. The Turkoman horses of the *Atak* are famous throughout Persia. (See the *Geograph. Journ.* vol. ix. p. 101.)

[54] Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* vii. 13. Compare Diod. Sic. xvii. 110, § 6.

[55] *Geographical Journal*, vol. ix. pp. 100, 101. Compare Ker Porter, vol. ii. p. 84.

[56] I *suspect* that the *Varena* of the Vendidad is Atropatênê, so named from its capital city, which was often called Vara or Vera (see below, note 89); and I believe that the Bikan of the Assyrian inscriptions designates the same district. (See note 576, Chapter IX. Vol. I., *Second Monarchy*.)

[57] Hagmatana, or Hagmatan, is the form used in the Behistun inscription, which was set up in Media within a short distance of the city itself. The Achmetha (אחמתא) of Ezra (vi. 2) drops the last consonant (just as 1 Chr. v. 26 drops the same letter from Harran); but otherwise it fairly represents the native word. Of the two Greek forms, Agbatana, which is the more ancient, is to be preferred.

[58] Polyb. x. 27.

[59] Diod. Sic. ii. 13, § 6.

[60] Ap. Strab. ii. p. 79.

[61] *Mans. Parth.* p. 6; ed. Hudson, in his *Geographic Minores*. The "Apobatana" of this passage is beyond a doubt Ecbatana.

[62] *H. N.* vi. 14 and 26.

[63] *Exp. Alex.* iii. 19, 20.

[64] Chardin believed Hamadan to occupy the site of Susa (*Voyages en Perse*, tom. iii. p. 15), and the late Archdeacon Williams argued with much learning and ability that Ecbatana was at or near Isfahan (*Geography of Ancient Asia*, pp. 9–48); but with these exceptions there is an almost unanimous consent among scholars and travellers as to the identity of Hamadan with the great Median capi-

tal. (See Ritter's *Erdkunde*, vol. ix. pp. 98–100; and compare Heeren, *As. Nat.* vol. i. p. 250, E. T.; Sainte-Croix, *Mém. de l'Académie des Inscriptions*, vol. l. pp. 108–141; Ouseley, *Travels in the East*, vol. iii. p. 411; Morier, *Second Journey*, pp. 264–271; Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. ii. pp. 99–115, &c.)

[65] Ker Porter estimates the length of Mount Orontes at 30 miles from the point where it leaves the main range (*Travels*, vol. ii. p. 139). Kinneir (*Persian Empire*, p. 126) says that "Elwend *proper*" is "not more than twelve miles" long. The height of Orontes is estimated by Ritter at "10,000 feet at the least." (*Erdkunde*, vol. ix. p. 87.)

[66] Ker Porter. p. 101.

[67] Τῶν γὰρ Ἐκβατάνων ὡς δώδεκα σταδίους ἄπεχον ἐστὶν ὄρος ὃ καλεῖται Ὀρόντης. (Diod. Sic. ii. 13, § 7.)

[68] Diod. Sic. xvii. 110, § 7.

[69] See Vol. I. p. 164.

[70] Diod. Sic. ii. 13, § 6.

[71] Polyb. x. 27, § 9.

[72] The circumference of the palace mound at Susa is about 4000 feet, or 1333 yards. (Loftus, *Chaldæa and Susiana*, plan, opp. p. 340.) That of the Persepolitan platform is 4578 feet. or 1526 yards. (Ker Porter, vol. i. p. 582.) The Assyrian palace mounds are in some instances still larger. The circuit of the Nimrud mound is nearly 1900 and that of the Koyunjik platform exceeds 2000 yards.

[73] Polyb. x. 27, § 10.

[74] The Assyrian courts seem, on the contrary, to have been quite open.

[75] Polyb. l. s. c. Οὔσης γὰρ τῆς ξυλίας ἁπάσης κεδρίνης καὶ κυπαριττίνης, κ.τ.λ.

[76] That the Persians in some cases used sloping roofs, rather than flat ones, we may gather from the "Tomb of Cyrus."

[77] Polyb. l. s. c. τοὺς κίονας, τοὺς μὲν ἀργυραῖς τοὺς δὲ χρυσαῖς λεπίσι περιειλῆφθαι, τὰς δὲ κεραμίδας ἀργυρᾶς εἶναι πάσας.

[78] See his *Travels*, vol. ii. p. 115. The shaft and base were also seen by Mr. Morier in 1813, and are figured by him in his work entitled a *Second Journey through Persia*. (See p. 268.) It is from this work that the illustration [see Pl. I. Fig. 1] is taken.

Sir H. Rawlinson, who visited Hamadan frequently between 1835 and 1839, saw five or six other pillar bases of the same type.

[79] The rare use of pillars by the Assyrians has been noticed in the first volume (vol. i. p. 540, note 53). If, as seems probable, they were more largely employed by the later Babylonians, we may ascribe their introduction to Median influence. (See the chapter on the "Arts and Sciences of the Babylonians.") A pillar architecture naturally began in a country where there was abundant wood. The first pillars were mere rough posts, like those which support the houses of the Kurds and Yezidis. (See Layard's *Nineveh and Babylon*, p 252.) These were after a time shaped regularly, then carved and ornamented; while finally they were replaced by stone shafts, which may have been first used where wood was scarce, but were soon perceived to be of superior beauty.

[80] Polyb. x. 27, § 6. Ἄκραν ἐν αὐτῇ χειροποίητον ἔχει, θαυμασίως πρὸς ὀχυρότητα κατεσκευασμένην.

[81] Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* iii. 19.

[82] Ezra vi. 2.

[83] As Ker Porter (*Travels*, vol. ii. p. 101).

[84] This is the decided opinion of Sir H. Rawlinson, who carefully examined the ruins in 1836.

[85] Polyb. l. s. c.

[86] Herodotus expressly states that the northern Ecbatane was a city of this character (i. 98, 99). Modern researches have discovered no signs of town walls at any of the old Persian or Median sites.

[87] Ecbatana yielded at once to Cyrus, to Alexander (Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* iii. 19), and to Antiochus the Great (Polyb. x. 27).

[88] Judith, i. 2–4. According to this account the walls were built of hewn stones nine feet long, and four and a half broad. The height of the walls was 105 feet, the width 75 feet. The gates were of the same altitude as the walls; and the towers over the gates were carried to the height of 150 feet.

[89] See Strab. xi. 13, § 3; Plin. *H. N.* vi. 13; Ptol. *Geograph.* vi. 2; Am. Marc. xxiii. 6; *Armen. Geogr.* § 87, p. 364, &c. Another name of the city was Vera. (Strabo, l. s. c.)

[90] See the paper of Sir H. Rawlinson, "On the Site of the Atropatenian Ecbatana," in the tenth volume of the *Journal of the Geographical Society*, pp. 65–158.

[91] Mos. Chor. *Hist. Armen.* ii. 84.

[92] Herod. i. 98.

[93] This whole description has no doubt a somewhat mythical air; and the plating of the battlements with the precious metals seems to the modern reader peculiarly improbable. But the people who roofed their palaces with silver tiles, and coated all the internal wood-work either with plates of silver or of gold, may have been wealthy enough and lavish enough to make even such a display as Herodotus describes. There is reason to believe that in Babylonia at least one temple was ornamented almost exactly as the citadel of Ecbatana is declared to have been by Herodotus. (See the Author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii. p. 484, 2nd edition, and compare ch. vi. of the "Fourth Monarchy.")

[94] The view maintained by Sir H. Rawlinson in the paper already referred to (see above, note 90), while in England it has been very generally accepted, has been combated on the Continent, more especially in France, where an elaborate

reply to his article was published by M. Quatremère in the *Mémoires de l'Académie des Inscriptions et Belles-Lettres*, tom. xix. part i. p. 419 et seq. It must be admitted that the only ancient writer who distinctly recognizes two Median Ecbatanas is the Armenian historian above quoted. (See above, note 91.)

[95] The ruins at Kileh Zohak, described by Colonel Menteith in such glowing terms (*Journal of the Geographical Society*, vol. iii. pp. 4, 5), are in reality quite insignificant.

[96] The best description of the Takht-i-Suleïman ruins will be found in the *Geographical Journal*, vol. x. pp 46-53. Sir R. K. Porter is both less complete and less exact. (*Travels*, vol. ii. pp. 558-561.)

[97] This theory was first broached by Ker Porter, Later travellers agree with him.

[98] One of the peculiarities of the lake is, that whatever the quantity of water drawn off from it for purposes of irrigation by the neighboring tribes, it always remains at the same level. Sir H. Rawlinson thus explains the phenomenon: "I conclude," he says, "the lake to be connected by an underground syphon with some other great fountain in the interior of the adjacent mountains, which is precisely at the same level as itself, and which has other means of outlet." (*Geographical Journal*, vol. x. p. 48.)

[99] *Geographical Journal*, vol. x. p. 50; Ker Porter, vol. ii. p. 558.

[100] *Geograph. Journal*, vol. x. p. 51.

[101] In its present condition the hill could not receive seven complete circular walls, from the fact that towards the east it abuts upon the edge of the hilly country, and is consequently on that side only a little elevated above the adjacent ground. But as the water has now for some time been drawn off on this side, the hill has probably grown in this direction.

[102] Rhages occurs as *Ragha* in the first Fargard of the Vendidad. It is the twelfth settlement, and one in which the faithful were intermingled with unbelievers. (Haug in Bunsen's *Egypt*, vol. iii. p. 490, E. T.)

[103] Tobit i. 14; iv. 1; ix. 1; &c.

[104] Judith i. 5 and 15.

[105] *Behistun Inscription*, col. ii. par. 13.

[106] Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* iii. 19. Arrian only mentions the Caspian Gates; but there can be little doubt that Rhages was the place where they were to await Darius. Compare ch. 20.

[107] Rhagiana occurs as a district in Isidore (*Mans. Parth.* p. 6) as well as in Ptolemy. In the former the MSS. have Rhatiana (PATIANH for PAΓIANH), which Hudson perversely transforms into Matiana, a district lying exactly in the opposite direction. Strabo points to Rhagiana in his expression, τὰ περὶ τὰς Ῥάγας καὶ τὰς Κασπίους πύλας (xi. 13, § 7). Diodorus calls it an eparchy—τὴν ἐπαρχίαν τὴν προσαγορευομένην Ῥάγας (xix. 44, § 5).

[108] See especially Isidore, l. s. c.; and compare C. Müller's Map to illustrate this author (*Tab. in Geographos Minores*, No. 10). C. Müller makes the boundary westward the *Karaghan* hills, thus extending Rhagiana half a degree to the west of Kasvin. He greatly exaggerates the rivers of the region.

[109] Fraser, *Khorasan*, p. 286; Morier, *Second Journey*, p. 365; Ouseley, *Travels*, vol. iii. p. 174; Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. p. 357; Heeren, *Asiatic Nations*, vol. i. p. 233, E. T.; Ritter, *Erdkunde*, vol. viii. pp. 595-604; Winer, *Realwörterbuch*, ad voc.; C. Müller, *Tabulæ*, l. s. c. *Geographical Journ.* vol. xxxi. p. 38.

[110] Names travel. The modern Marathon is more than three miles from the ancient site. New Ilium was still further (six miles) from old Troy. The shores of the Black Sea have witnessed still more violent changes. The ancient Eupatoria was at Inkerman; the modern is 50 miles to the northward. Cherson (or Chersonesus) was at the mouth of the Sebastopol inlet; it is now on the Borysthenes or Dnieper. Odessus was at Varna; Odessa is three degrees to the north-east.

[111] *Exp. Alex.* iii. 20.

[112] This point is well argued by Mr. Fraser (*Khorasan*, pp. 291-293, note), whose conclusion seems to be now generally adopted. Pliny's Pylæ Caspiæ, on the other hand (*H. N.* vi. 14), would appear to be the Girduni Siyaluk, another pass over the same spur, situated three or four miles further north, at the point where the spur branches out from the main chain. This pass is one of a tremendous character. It is a gap five miles long between precipices 1,000 feet high, scarped as though by the hand of man, its width varying from ten to forty feet. (Sir H. Rawlinson, MS. notes.)

[113] Alexander's marches seem to have averaged 190 stades, or about 22 miles. The ordinary Roman march was 20 Roman miles, equivalent to 18½ English miles.

[114] Sir H. Rawlinson, MS. notes. In Erij we have probably a corruption of *Rhag*-es.

[115] Uewanukif is six or seven miles from the commencement of the pass (Fraser, p. 291). Isidore places Charax directly under the hill. (ὑπὸ τὸ ὄρος ὃ καλεῖται Κάσπιος, ἀφ' οὗ αἱ Κασπίαι πύλαι, p. 6.)

[116] Plin. *H. N.* iv. 27, ad fin.; Ptol. *Geograph.* vi. 3; Steph. Byz. ad voc. Χάραξ. Hudson's identification of Charax Spasini with Anthemusias or Charax Sidæ (Isid. *Mans. Parth.* p. 2) is a strange error.

[117] *Mans. Parth.* p. 6. Βάπτανα (leg. Βάστανα) πόλις ἐπ' ὄρος κειμένη, ἐνθ Σεμι-

ῥάμιδος ἄγαλμα καὶ στήλη. Compare with Βάστανα the modern Bostan and Behistun.

118 Diod. Sic. ii. 13, §§ 1-2.

119 Diodorus, as usual, greatly exaggerates the height of the mountain, which he estimates at seventeen stades, or above 10,000 feet, whereas it is really about 1,700 feet. (*Journal of Asiatic Society*, vol. x. p. 187.)

120 Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. ii. pp. 150, 151; Sir H. Rawlinson, in *Journal of the Geographical Society*, vol. ix. pp. 112, 113

121 They were perhaps destroyed by Chosroe Parviz, when he prepared to build a palace on the site. (Ibid. p. 114.)

122 See vol. i. pp. 382, 405-6, 489, &c.

123 Bagistan is "the hill of Jove" (Διὸς ὄρος), according to Diodorus (ii. 13, § 1). It seems to mean really "the place of God." We may thus compare the name with the "Bethel" of the Hebrews.

124 The tablet and inscriptions of Darius, which have made Behistun famous in modern times, are in a recess to the right of the scarped face of the rock, and at a considerable elevation. (Ker Porter, vol. ii. p. 154.)

125 The inscription, which is in the Greek character and language, is much mutilated; but the name of Gotarzes (ΓΩΤΑΡΖΗΣ) appears twice in it. His rival, Meherdates, is perhaps mentioned under the name of Mithrates. (Sir H. Rawlinson, in *Geograph. Journ.* vol. ix. pp. 114-116.)

126 *Mans. Parth.* p. 6. The true reading seems to be Ἀδραπάναν, as edited by Höschel.

127 Arteman is one of three villages—Tooee, Sirkan, and Arteman—which lie close together, and are generally known under the common title of Toosirkan. (Sir H. Rawlinson, MS. notes.)

128 Ibid.

129 Isidore, *Mans. Parth.* l. s. c.

130 Diod. Sic. ii. 13, § 3.

131 Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. ii. pp. 141, 142; Ollivier, *Voyage dans l'Empire othoman*, tom. v. pp. 47, 48.

132 *Geograph.* vi. 4.

133 See text, p. 3. It is strange that so acute a writer as the late Archdeacon Williams should not have seen that this position was fatal to his theory, that Isfahan represented Ecbatana.

134 The Parætaceni had another city, called Parætaca, the site of which is uncertain. (Steph. Byz. ad voc.)

135 See text, p. 11.

136 See Vol. I. pp. 16, 136.

137 The mountains are pierced by the two streams of the Aras and the Kizil Uzen or Sefid Rud, and the low country may be entered along their courses. There is a pass over the Elburz chain from *Firuz-kuh* to *Puli-sefid*, 80 or 90 miles to the east of Teheran. This would seem to be the "Pylæ Caspiæ" of Dionysius (*Perieg.* 1035-1038).

138 The authorities for this description are Kinneir, *Persian Empire*, pp. 159-163; Ouseley, *Travels*, vol. iii. pp. 221-336; Fraser, *Khorasan*, p. 165; Chesney, *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. pp. 216, 217; Todd, in *Journal of Geographical Society*, vol. viii. pp. 102-104.

139 Tigers sometimes stray from this region into Azerbijan. (See Morier, *Second Journey*, p. 218.)

140 Kinneir, p. 166; Chesney, vol. i. p. 216; Fraser, *Travels near the Caspian Sea*, p. 11.

141 Strab. xi. 13, § 3; Diod. Sic. ii. 33, § 4.

142 Strab. xi. 13, § 4. Ἀκοντισταί εἰσιν ἄριστοι.

143 Diod. Sic. xv. 33, §§ 3 and 6.

144 After the battle of Arbela, Darius hoped to retrieve his fortunes by means of a fresh army of Cadusians and Sacæ. (Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* iii. 19.)

145 Diod. Sic. xv. 8, § 4; xvii. 6, § 1.

146 See Vol. I. pp. 136-138.

147 *Journal of the Geographical Society*, vol. x. pp. 21, 22; compare text, vol. i. p. 319.

148 *Geographical Journal*, vol. x. p. 12.

149 The Urumi are coupled with the Naïri in an inscription of Asshur-izir-pal; and the Van monarchs always call themselves "kings of the Naïri."

150 Morier, *Second Journey*, p. 245; Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. pp. 192-194.

151 See vol. i. pp. 136-7.

152 See text, p. 8.

153 On the known superiority of mountain troops in ancient times see Herod. ix. 122, and compare Plat. *Leg.* iii. p. 695, A.

154 Herod. iii. 93. The Sarangians dwelt about the lake in which the Helmend ends; the Thamanæans between that lake and Herat. The Utians (Uxians) inhabited a part of the Zagros range; the Mycians seem to have dwelt on the Persian Gulf, in a part of the modern *Mek*-ran.

155 See the author's *Herodotus*, vol. iv. p. 172, and compare vol. i. p. 554 (2nd edition.)

156 We can only account for carrying the *lasso* into battle (Herod. vii. 85) by regarding it as the weapon with which daily use had made them familiar.

157 They furnished 8,000 horsemen to the army of Xerxes (Herod. l. s. c.), which was probably not their full force.

158 Cossæans is explained by some as *Koh-Sians*, inhabitants of the *Koh-Siah*, or *Siah-Koh*, a remarkable isolated mountain in the salt desert, nearly due south of the Caspian Gates.

159 Fraser, *Khorasan*, p. 245.

160 Ἀηστρικοί. Strab. xi. 13, § 6.

161 A good description of this spur and of the true character of the "Caspian Gates" is given by Mr. Fraser in his *Khorasan*, pp. 291-293, note. The reader may compare the author's article on Rhages in Dr. Smith's *Biblical Dictionary*, vol. ii. p. 990.

162 See text, p. 15.

[163] The Caspian Sea was a great protection from the barbarians of the North.

CHAPTER II.

[1] Morier complains of the "oppressive heat of the low countries" in Azerbijan during the summer (*Second Journey*, p. 295). He found the thermometer rise to 99½ degrees at Miana early in June. (Ibid. p. 208.)

[2] The latitude of Azerbijan is that of Bœotia, Corfu, Southern Italy, Sardinia, Southern Spain, the Azores, Washington, and San Francisco. It is also that of Balkh, Yarkand, and Diarbekr. These last-named places, and some others in the same latitude in Tartary and China, are perhaps as cold.

[3] Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. p. 257.

[4] Ibid. p. 260.

[5] Ibid. p. 247. "Scarcely a day passes," says the writer, "without one or two persons being found frozen to death in the neighborhood of the town" (Tabriz).

[6] Fraser speaks of the winter in Azerbijan as lasting six or seven months (*Winter Journey*, p. 332). Birds, he says, are often frozen to death (p. 341). According to Kinneir (*Persian Empire*, p. 158), the snow remains on the mountains for nine months.

[7] Morier, *Second Journey*, p. 303.

[8] Kinneir, l. s. c. Compare Morier, *Second Journey*, p. 309.

[9] Morier, pp. 243, 297, &c.

[10] Kinneir, l. s. c.; Chesney, *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 221; Morier, p. 230.

[11] An instance of death from co'd in this region is recorded by Mr. Fraser (*Khorasan*, p. 144).

[12] Kinneir, p. 121; Ker Porter, vol. i. p. 291. According to the latter writer, this wind "continues to blow at intervals till the end of May."

[13] "The heats of Teheran," says Mr. Morier, "become insupportable by the middle of June." (*Second Journey*, p. 351.)

[14] Ibid. p. 358.

[15] This is especially the practice at Teheran. (Kinneir, p. 119; Morier, p. 351; Ollivier, *Voyage*, tom. v. p. 91.)

[16] See Morier, *Second Journey*, p. 270. Compare Kinneir, *Persian Empire*, p. 126; Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. ii. p. 121; Ollivier, *Voyage*, tom. v. p. 53. Ollivier says: "En été le climat est le plus doux, le plus tempéré de la Perse."

[17] Ker Porter, vol. i. p. 441; vol. ii. p. 123; Morier, p. 153; Ollivier, tom. v. pp. 199 and 209. The last-named writer mentions as a proof of the dryness, that during a long stay in the region he never saw a single snail! Morier, however, notes that he saw several (p. 154, note).

[18] Morier, p. 154.

[19] On the salubrity of Isfahan, see Morier, p. 153; Ker Porter, vol. i. p. 407.

[20] See Morier, *Second Journey*, Appendix, pp. 406-408; Ouseley, vol. iii. pp. 110-112; and the passage quoted in the next note.

[21] Morier, *First Journey*, p. 174; *Second Journey*, p. 202; Ouseley, vol. iii. pp. 73 and 375.

[22] Fraser, *Khorasan*, p. 165, note.

[23] Morier, *Second Journey*, p. 282.

[24] Chesney, *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 80; Kinneir, p. 144; *Journal of the Geographical Society*, vol. x. pp. 20-22.

[25] Chesney, l. s. c. In Ardelan, which is much lower than many parts of the range, Morier found the air quite "cool" in June (*Second Journey*, p. 272). Kinneir notes that in the same region there was frost in July, 1810 (*Persian Empire*, p. 144).

[26] As at Toosirkan (see note 127, Chapter I.

[27] See Layard, *Nineveh and its Remains*, vol. i. pp. 159-165.

[28] See text, pp. 4, 5.

[29] Fraser, *Winter Journey*, p. 353.

[30] Morier, *Second Journey*, p. 362.

[31] Ibid. l. s. c.; and see also p. 354.

[32] Morier, *First Journey*, pp. 274 and 277; *Second Journey*, p. 262. The wood of the plane is preferred for furniture.

[33] Ollivier, tom. v. p. 59; Chesney, vol. i. p. 123.

[34] *Journal of the Geographical Society*, vol. x. p. 3; Ker Porter, vol. i. p. 394; Rich, *Kurdistan*, pp. 105, 163, &c. It was probably from some knowledge of this tract that Virgil spoke of Media as "abounding in trees." (Georg. ii. 136. "Medorum silvæ ditissima terra.")

[35] On the verdure and shade of Isfahan, see Ker Porter, vol. i. p. 411; on that of Hamadan, see Morier, *Second Journey*, p. 262, and Ker Porter, vol. ii. p. 91. On Kashan, see the last-named writer, vol. i. p. 389; and compare Ollivier, tom. v. p. 169.

[36] Ker Porter notes "a species of cedar not unlike that of Lebanon" at Kashan (l. s. c.). Morier notices elms "with very thick and rich foliage," and a peculiarly "formal shape," near Isfahan (*First Journey*, p. 169; compare *Second Journey*, p. 263).

[37] Ollivier, tom. v. p. 191.

[38] Morier, *Second Journey*, p. 271.

[39] As the soap-wort, which is the "most common shrub" in the country between Koum and Teheran. (Morier, *First Journey*, p. 183.)

[40] *Journal of the Geographical Society*, vol. ix. p. 100.

[41] Morier, *Second Journey*, p. 277.

[42] Ibid. p. 302.

[43] Kinneir, *Persian Empire*, p. 153, note.

[44] See the passage quoted at the head of the text of this chapter.

[45] Ollivier, *Voyage*, tom. v. p. 14;

Chesney, *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 123; Rich, *Kurdistan*, pp. 99, 150, 134, &c. Manna is also a product of this region. (See Vol. I. p. 145.)

[46] Morier, *First Journey*, pp. 261–266; *Second Journey*, p. 257; Kinneir, *Persian Empire*, p. 149.

[47] "Homo non ut a matre sed ut a novercâ naturâ editus est in vitam."

[48] Ollivier says: "Il faut noter que dans presque toute la Perse il n'y a aucune sorte de culture sans arrosement." (*Voyage*, tom. v. p. 217.)

[49] Ollivier, tom. v. pp. 308, 309; Ker Porter, vol. i. p. 296; Morier, *Second Journey*, pp. 163, 164.

[50] Strab. xvi. 1, § 2. Compare Diod. Sic. ii. 13, § 7. An excellent description of the *kanat* system is given by Polybius (ix. 28, § 2).

[51] Ollivier, p. 214. This writer also supposes that much more care was taken in ancient times to economize the water arising from the melting of the snows and from the spring rains, by means of embankments across the lower valleys of the mountains, and the formation thereby of large reservoirs (p. 214). These reservoirs would be the ὑδρεῖα of Strabo.

[52] Ollivier, pp. 163, 198, &c.; Kinneir, p. 108.

[53] Ollivier, p. 198; Kinneir, p. 38.

[54] Chesney, *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 80; Ollivier, l. s. c.; Kinneir, p. 38.

[55] See text, p. 26.

[56] Kinneir, p. 38; Ollivier, p. 191; Morier, *First Journey*, p. 230.

[57] Ollivier, pp. 191, 192.

[58] Morier, *Second Journey*, p. 203.

[59] Ker Porter, vol. i. p. 440; *Geographical Journal*, vol. x. p. 29; Ollivier, tom. v. pp. 49, &c.

[60] Ollivier, p. 184; Ker Porter, vol. i. p. 337.

[61] A correct account of the botany of Persia is still a desideratum. The particulars (see text, p. 28) are collected chiefly from Ollivier and Chardin.

[62] Morier, *First Journey*, pp. 263 and 300. Rich, *Kurdistan*, p. 360. Hence the abundance of excellent honey. (Rich, p. 142.)

[63] *Geographical Journal*, vol. x. p. 4; Morier, *Second Journey*, p. 285; Ker Porter, vol. ii. p. 527.

[64] Morier, l. s. c.

[65] Chardin, *Voyages en Perse*, tom. iii. p. 29; Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. pp. 266 and 380; *Geographical Journal*, vol. x. p. 55; Morier, *First Journey*, pp. 283, 284; Ouseley, *Travels*, vol. iii. p. 406.

[66] *Geographical Journal*, vol. x. p. 55. A mountain in this quarter is called by the natives *Zerreh Shurân*, or the mountain of the "Gold-washers."

[67] Chesney, *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 72.

[68] Chardin says: "Il n'y a rien de plus commun en Perse que le sel." (*Voyages*, tom. iii. p. 30.)

[69] See note 25, Chapter I.

[70] *Geographical Journal*, vol. x. p. 62; Chardin, l. s. c.; Morier, *Second Journey*, pp. 257 and 288; Rich, *Kurdistan*, p. 123.

[71] Morier, *Second Journey*, p. 288.

[72] Kinneir, p. 40; Chardin, tom. iii. p. 29.

[73] Morier, *First Journey*, p. 284.

[74] Kinneir, l. s. c.; Morier, *First Journey*, p. 284; *Second Journey*, p. 355; Rich, *Kurdistan*, p. 123; Ker Porter, vol. i. p. 374.

[75] *Geographical Journal*, vol. x. p. 62. Alum is also found in the Zagros range. (Rich, l. s. c.)

[76] Ibid. pp. 123 and 231.

[77] Ker Porter, vol. i. p. 380.

[78] Morier, *Second Journey*, p. 289.

[79] Sir W. Ouseley *heard* of lions near Koum, but he saw no signs of them. (*Travels*, vol. iii. p. 108.) Mr. Morier observed marks of a lion's foot in Mount Sehend, which impends over Tabriz. (*Second Journey*, p. 294.) He heard of tigers in the same region, and saw the skin of one which had been killed. (Ibid. p. 218.)

[80] Ibid. pp. 241, 359, 364.

[81] Ibid. pp. 241, 302; Ollivier, tom. iii. p. 64.

[82] Ouseley, *Travels*, vol. iii. pp. 213, 217, and 246; Morier, *Second Journey*, p. 205.

[83] Ouseley saw them near Kasvin (vol. iii. p. 381); Ker Porter in the desert below Isfahan (vol. i. pp. 459–461).

[84] Rich, *Kurdistan*, p. 186.

[85] See the description of Ker Porter (l. s. c.), who carefully examined a specimen killed by one of his party. Morier and Ollivier differ from him with respect to the existence of a line down the back and a bar across the shoulders (Ollivier, tom. iii. p. 65; Morier, *Second Journey*, p. 201); but they appear to have had less satisfactory means of judging.

[86] See the *Annals and Magazine of Natural History*, vol. vi. No. 34, p. 243.

[87] Rich, *Kurdistan*, p. 237.

[88] See Vol. I. pp. 148, 298, 299.

[89] Tame pigeons are bred on a large scale, mainly for the sake of their dung, which is the favorite manure of the melon-grounds. All travellers remark the numerous pigeon-towers, especially in the neighborhood of Isfahan, some of which bring in an income of two or three hundred pounds a year. [Pl. III. Fig. 1.] (See Kinneir, p. 110; Chardin, tom. iii. p. 39; Morier, *First Journey*, p. 155; *Second Journey*, p. 140.)

[90] Rich says: "Hundreds of partridges are taken by parties of sportsmen stationed on opposite hills, who frighten the covey by shouting as soon as it comes in their direction. The birds at last become alarmed and confused, and drop to the ground, when they are easily taken." (*Kurdistan*, p. 237.) Compare 1 Sam. xxvi. 20.

[91] Morier, *Second Journey*, pp. 234 and 359.

92 Rich, *Kurdistan*, p. 143.
93 Ollivier, *Voyages*, tom. v. p. 125.
94 I have found a mention of the hoopoe only in Morier, who saw it near Kasvin. (*First Journey*, p. 255.)
95 Rich, *Kurdistan*, p. 143.
96 *Geographical Journal*, vol. iii. p. 56; vol. x. p. 7; Morier, *Second Journey*, p. 288; Kinneir, p 155.
97 Morier, *Second Journey*, p. 253; Chardin, tom. iii. p. 44; Ouseley, vol. iii. p. 50; Rich, *Kurdistan*, p. 60.
98 Rich, p. 67; Fraser, *Travels in Kurdistan*, vol. i. p. 7. Trout occur also in the Elburz. (Ouseley, vol. iii. p. 125.)
99 Chardin, tom. iii. p. 44. "Un manger fort délicat."
100 Ibid.
101 Fraser, *Khorasan*, p. 406.
102 Kinneir, p. 153, note; Morier, *Second Journey*, p. 250; Chesney, *Euphrates Exhibition*, vol. i. p. 82.
103 See note 112, Chapter I.
104 Sir H. Rawlinson. MS. notes. Compare Pliny, *H. N.* vi. 14: "Præterea serpentium multitudo, nisi hyeme, transitum non sinit."
105 Ker Porter, vol. i. pp. 390, 391.
106 Ker Porter measured one, and found it exceed two feet (l. s. c.). Chardin says that some which he saw were an ell in length. (*Voyages*, tom. iii. p. 38.)
107 Ker Porter, l. s. c.
108 Rich, *Kurdistan*, p. 173.
109 Ibid. p. 172; Chardin, tom. iii. p. 38; Ouseley, vol. iii. p. 122.
110 Chardin, l. s. c. This writer adds that its bite is dangerous, and has been known to prove fatal in some cases. But recent travellers do not confirm this statement.
111 Rich, p. 171.
112 Kinneir, p. 43; Chardin, l. s. c.
113 Chardin, tom. ii. p. 221.
114 Lev. xi. 22. The resemblance of the word *shira-kulla* to *chargol* (חרגל) is striking, and can scarcely be a mere accident. *Shira-kulla*, however, is translated "the lion locust," a meaning which cannot possibly be given to *chargol*.
115 *Kurdistan*, p. 195.
116 Cuvier's *Animal Kingdom*, edition of Carpenter and Westwood, p. 561.
117 Chardin, tom. iii. p. 38.
118 Ollivier, tom. v. p. 170; Ker Porter, vol. i. p. 390; Ouseley, vol. iii. pp. 87–89.
119 Ollivier, p. 171; Kinneir, p. 43.
120 Ker Porter remarks that neither he himself, nor any of his "people," were ever stung during their stay in Persia (l. s. c.). So Ouseley (p. 91).
121 Chesney, *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 82.
122 Ibid. p. 582.
123 Chesney says that the ordinary burden of a mule in Persia is three hundredweight. (*Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 81.)
124 Ibid. l. s. c.
125 Chardin, *Voyages*, tom. iii. p. 33; Chesney, l. s. c.
126 Kinneir, *Persian Empire*, p. 40; Fraser, *Khorasan*, pp. 269, 270. Fraser observes, that "on the whole the Turkoman horses approach more to the character of the English horse than any other breed in the East."
127 Kinneir, l. s. c.
128 Chesney, l. s. c.
129 The antelope is commonly chased by the falcon and greyhound in combination. The falcon, when loosed, makes straight at the game, and descending on its head, either strikes it to the ground, or at least greatly checks its course. If shaken off, it will strike again and again, at once so frightening and retarding the animal that the dogs easily reach it. (See Chardin, tom. iii. p. 42, and Kinneir, p. 42. Compare the similar practice of the Mesopotamian Arabs, described in Layard's *Nineveh and Babylon*, p. 482.)
130 Ollivier, tom. v. p. 104; Chesney, vol. i. p. 587; Layard, p. 482, note.
131 See the narrative of Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. pp. 444, 445.
132 Diodorus Siculus says that the great horse pastures near Bagistan nourished at one time 160,000 horses (xvii. 110. § 6). Strabo tells us that Media furnished annually to the Persian king 3,000 horses as a part of its fixed tribute (xi. 13, § 8). Polybius speaks of the vast number of horses in Media, which supplied with those animals "almost all Asia." (σχεδὸν ἅπασαν χορηγεῖ τὴν Ἀσίαν. Polyb. x. 27, § 2.)
133 Herod. vii. 40. Compare iii. 106 and i. 189.
134 Strab. xi. 13, § 7.
135 Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* vii. 13. Arrian gives the form Νυσαῖοι, in place of the Νισαῖοι of Herodotus, and the Νησαῖοι of Strabo.
136 Amm. Marc. xxiii. 6.
137 Suidas, ad voc. Νίσαιον.
138 Ἰδιόμορφοι. Strab. l. s. c.
139 Μέγιστοι (Strab.), ὤκιστοι (Suid.), ἄριστοι (Strab.).
140 Loc. cit.
141 The horse represented, though not large according to English notions, is considerably above the standard usual on the Persian monuments.
142 Strab. xi. 13, § 8.
143 It has been questioned whether the "Malum medicum" was the orange or the citron. I decide in favor of the citron, on account of the description in Dioscorides. Τὸ μῆλον ἐπίμηκες (oblong), ἐῤῥυτιδωμένον (wrinkled), χρυσίζον τῇ χρόᾳ, κ.τ.λ. (*De Mat. Med.* i. § 166.)
144 *H. N.* xii. 3. "Nec alia arbor laudatur in Medis."
145 Ibid. "Nisi apud Medos et in Perside nasci noluit."
146 *Hist. Plant.* iv. 4.
147 *De Mat. Med.* i. § 166.
148 *Georg.* ii. 126–135:

"Media fert tristes succos tardumque saporem
Felicis mali: quo non præsentius ullum,
Pocula si quando sæve infecere novercæ,
Miscuerunt herbas et non innoxia verba.
Auxilium venit, ac membris agit atra venena.
Ipsa ingens arbos, faciemque simillima lauro;
Et, si non alium late jactaret odorem,
Laurus erat: folia haud ullis labentia ventis;
Flos ad prima tenax; animas et olentia Medi
Ora fovent illo, et senibus medicantur anhelis."

149 Ollivier, tom. v. p. 191; Chesney, vol. i. p. 80.

150 Pliny, *H. N.* xviii. 16.

151 See Varro, *De Re Rustica*, i. 42; Virg. *Georg.* i. 215; Pliny, l. s. c.

152 Strab. xi. 13, § 7.

153 *De Mat. Med.* ii. § 176; iv. § 18.

154 See Morier. *Second Journey*, p. 361.

155 Chesney, vol. i. p. 80; Chardin, tom iii. p. 17.

156 Pliny, *H. N.* xxii. 23. Compare Strab. xi. 13, § 7.

157 Dioscor. *De Mat. Med.* iii. 84; Plin. *H. N.* xix. 3.

158 Compare Strab. xi. 13, § 7 ad fin. with Dioscor. iii. 84.

159 Bdellium is called a Median product by Pliny (*H. N.* xii. 9); amomum by Pliny and Dioscorides (*De Mat. Med.* i. § 14); gum tragacanth by Pliny (xiii. 21) and Theophrastus (*De Hist. Plant.* ix. 1); sagapenum by Dioscorides (iii. 85); wild vine oil (*Œnanthe*) by Pliny (xii. 28); and cardamomum by the same writer (xii. 13). Theophrastus expresses a doubt whether amomum and cardamomum came from Media or from India (viii. 7).

160 Olivier, tom. v. p. 343.

161 Rich, *Kurdistan*, p. 144.

162 See above, note 159. Kuhn argues that this was the case also with the silphium or assafetida, which (he thinks) is scarcely to be found in Media Proper. (See his edition of Dioscorides, vol. ii. p. 530.)

163 Plin. *H. N.* xxxi. 10.

164 See above, notes 73 and 74.

165 Strab. xi. 13, § 2. Λίμνην ἔχει τὴν Σπαῦταν, ἐν ᾗ ἅλες ἐπανθοῦντες πήττονται.

166 *H. N.* xxxvii. 5. Compare Solinus, *Polyhist.* 20.

167 Pliny's name for this gem is "sapphirus;" but it has been well shown by Mr. King that his "sapphirus" is the lapis lazuli, and his "hyacinthus" the sapphire. (*Antique Gems*, pp. 44–47.)

168 *H. N.* xxxvii. 8. Neither the lapis lazuli nor the emerald are now found within the limits of Media. The former abounds in Bactria, near Fyzabad; and the latter is occasionally found in the same region. (Fraser, *Khorasan*, Appendix, pp. 105, 106.)

169 See Plin. *H. N.* xxxvii. 10 and 11. The *narcissitis* is mentioned also by Dionysius. (See the passage in the text at the head of the first chapter.)

CHAPTER III.

1 On this connection see Dan. v. 28 ("Thy kingdom is divided and given to the Medes and Persians"), vi. 8, 12, 15 ("the law of the Medes and Persians"), Esther i. 3 ("the power of Persia and Media"), i. 14 ("the princess of Persia and Media"), i. 19 ("the laws of the Persians and the Medes"), x. 2 ("the book of the chronicles of Media and Persia"); and compare Herod. i. 102, 130; Æsch. *Pers.* 761–775; Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 2, § 1, *et passim*; *Beh. Ins.* col. i. par. 10, § 10; par. 11, § 7; par. 12, § 3; par. 13, § 2; par. 14, § 7. Medes were frequently employed as generals by the Persians. (See Herod. i. 156, 162; vi. 94; *Beh. Ins.* col. ii. par. 14, § 6; col. iii. par. 14, § 3.) The closeness of the connection is perhaps most strikingly shown by the indifferent use in the Greek writers of the expressions τὰ Περσικὰ and τὰ Μηδικὰ for the Persian war, ὁ Πέρσης and ὁ Μῆδος for the invader. Compare μεδίζειν, μηδισμός, and the like.

2 See the Analysis of the Median and Persian Proper Names in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. iii. pp. 444–455, 2nd edition.

3 See the author's *Herodotus*, vol. i. p. 552, note 9.

4 Herod. vii. 62. Οἱ Μῆδοι ἐκαλέοντο πάλαι πρὸς πάντων Ἄριοι.

5 Strab. xv. 2, § 8. Ἐπεκτείνεται δὲ τοῦνομα τῆς Ἀριανῆς μέχρι μέρους τινὸς καὶ Περσῶν καὶ Μηδων. . . . Εἰσὶ γάρ πως καὶ ὁμόγλωττοι παρὰ μικρόν.

6 See the Author's *Herodotus*, vol. i. pp. 550–555, 2nd edition.

7 The only certain representations of actual Medes which the sculptures furnish are the prostrate figure and the third standing rebel in the Behistun basrelief. But the artist in this sculpture made no pretence of marking ethnic difference by a variety in the physiognomy.

8 Dr. Prichard observes of the type in question: "The outline of the countenance is here *not strictly* Grecian, for it is peculiar; but it is noble and dignified; and if the expression is not full of life and genius, it is intellectual and indicative of reflexion. The shape of the head is entirely Indo-European, and has nothing that recalls the Tartar or Mongolian." (*Nat. Hist. of Man*, p. 173.)

9 Xen. *Anab.* iii. 2, § 25. In accordance with his statement in this place, Xenophon makes the daughter of Cyaxares, whom he marries to Cyrus the Great, an extraordinary beauty. (*Cyrop.* viii. 5, § 28.)

10 Plut. *Vit. Alexand.* p. 676, D.

11 Amm. Marc. xxiv. 14. "Ex virginivus, quæ speciosæ sunt captæ, ut in Perside, *ubi feminarum pulchritudo excellit.*" Compare Quint. Curt. iii. 11; Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* ix. 19, &c.

12 Amm. Marc. xxiii. 6. Compare Nic. Dam. Fr. 9; Diod. Sic. xi. 6; Herod. i. 95; &c.

13 Herod. viii. 113.

14 Ibid. ix. 31.

15 Diod. Sic. xi. 6, § 3. Δι' ἀνδρειαν προκρίνας αὐτούς.

[16] See Herod. vii. 210.
[17] Ezek. xxxi. 11.
[18] Ibid. verse 12.
[19] Isaiah xiii. 15 and 18.
[20] Ibid. verse 16. "Their children also shall be dashed to pieces before their eyes; their houses shall be spoiled, and their wives ravished."
[21] See verse 17.
[22] Grote, *History of Greece*, vol. iii. p. 157. 2nd ed.
[23] Horat. *Epist.* ii. 1, 156. "Græcia capta ferum victorem cepit."
[24] Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 3, § 2, et seq.
[25] Herod. i. 135; Strab. xi. 13, § 9.
[26] Strab. l. s. c.
[27] See text, p. 11.
[28] Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 3, § 4. Παντοδαπὰ ἐμβάμματα καὶ βρώματα.
[29] The use of writing by the Medes is indicated in the Book of Daniel (vi. 9). The existence of a Median literature seems to be implied by the mention in Esther of the "book of the chronicles of the kings of *Media* and Persia" (x. 2). The actual work alluded to may perhaps have been a Persian compilation; but the Persian writer would scarcely have ventured to write the "chronicles of the kings of Media," unless he had Median materials to go upon.
[30] Herod. vii. 61. On the scale armor of the Assyrians, see text, vol. i. pp. 254-256, and 260-261. On that of the Egyptians, see Wilkinson in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. iv. p. 65, 2nd edit.
[31] Herod. vii. 86.
[32] See text, vol. i. pp. 261-262; and compare Herod. ix. 62; Xen. *Anab.* i. 8, § 9, &c.
[33] Compare Isaiah xiii. 18; Jerem. l. 9, 29. li. 11, &c.
[34] Strab. xi. 13, § 9.
[35] Xen. *Cyrop.* ii. 1, § 6.
[36] Of course the Medes had always some footmen, but their strength was in their horse. I do not believe in their using chariots. (Nic. D. Fr. 10.)
[37] Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 4, § 4. Compare Strabo, who says (l.s.c.) that the famous Persian educational system was wholly copied from the Median.
[38] The sword is mentioned in connection with the Medes and Persians in Jeremiah l. 35-37. "The bow and the spear" are united in vi. 23, and again in l. 42.
[39] The fame of the Medes as archers passed on to the Persians, and even to the Parthians, who with the tastes inherited the name of the earlier people. Hence the "horribilis Medus" (Hor. *Od.* i. 29, 4) and the "Medi pharetra decori" of Horace (*Od.* ii. 16, 6).
[40] See Vol. I. Pl. CIV.
[41] Compare the Assyrian spear-heads, Vol. I. Pl. CVI.
[42] The lower end of the Persian spears terminated frequently in an apple or pomegranate (Herod. vii. 41; Athen. *Deipn.* xii. p. 514, B). According to Clearchus of Soli, this practice was adopted by the Persians from the Medes and was intended as a reproach to the latter for their unmanly luxury. (Athen. p. 514, D.)
[43] So Xenophon calls the Persian sword, μάχαιραν ἣ κοπίδα. (*Cyrop.* i. 2, § 13.)
[44] Ἐσθὴς Μηδική. Herod. i. 135; vii. 116; Στολὴ Μηδικὴ. Xen. *Cyrop.* viii. 8, § 15; Στολὴ Περσική, Strab. xi. 13, § 9. This, Strabo expressly says, was adopted from the Medes.
[45] Xen. *Cyrop.* viii. 3, § 3. Ἐξέφερε δὴ καὶ ἄλλας Μηδικὰς στολὰς· παμπόλλας γὰρ παρεσκευάσατο, οὐδὲν φειδόμενος, οὔτε πορφυρίδων, οὔτε ὀρφνίνων, οὔτε φοινικίδων οὔτε καρυκίνων ἱματίων. Another kind of Median robe, called *sarapis*, seems to have been striped alternately white and purple. (Compare Pollux, vii. 13, with Hesychius ad voc σάραπις.)
[46] Procop. *De Bell. Pers.* i. 20, p. 106, C. Silken fabrics were manufactured by the Greeks from the middle of the fourth century B.C. (Aristot. *Hist. Ann.* v. 19.) They probably imported the raw silk from Asia, where the material was in use from a very early time. The Parthian standards were of silk (Florus, iii. 11); and there can be little doubt that the looms of China, India, and Cashmere produced rich silken fabrics from a remote period, which were exported into the neighboring countries of Media and Persia.
[47] Justin says of the Parthians: "Vestis olim sui moris; posteaquam accessere opes, *ut Medis, perlucida* ac fluida" (xli. 2).
[48] See Xen. *Anab.* i. 5, § 8, and compare *Cyrop.* i. 3, § 2.
[49] Ποικίλας ἀναξυρίδας. Xen. *Anab.* l.s.c. Compare Strab. xi. 13, § 9.
[50] Strab. l. s. c.; Herod. iii. 12.
[51] Strictly speaking, these words are not synonyms. The name *tiara* was generic, applying to all the tall caps; while *cidaris* or *citaris* was specific, being properly applied to the royal headdress only. (See Brisson, *De Regn. Pers.* ii. pp 309-312.)
[52] Χρώματος ἐντριψις. (Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 3, § 2.)
[53] Κόμαι πρόσθετοι. (Ibid.)
[54] Ὀφθαλμῶν ὑπογραφή. (Ibid.) This practice is ascribed to Sardanapalus (Nic. Dam. Fr. 8; Athen. *Deipn.* xii. 7, p. 529, A.; Diod. Sic. ii. 23); and again to Nanarus the Babylonian (Nic. Dam. Fr. 10). It seems to have been adopted from the Medes by the Persians. (Xen. *Cyrop.* viii. 8, § 20.)
[55] Strab. l. s. c.; Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 3, § 2.
[56] Earrings commonly accompany the Median dress on the Persepolitan sculptures. They are mere plain rings without any pendant. (See Pl. VI. Fig. 2.) Nicolas of Damascus assigns earrings (ἐλλόβια) to Nanarus, a satrap under the Medes. (Fr. 10.)
[57] Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 3, § 3.
[58] Ibid. § 4.

[59] Χειρόμακτρα. (Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 3, § 5.)
[60] Ibid. § 6.
[61] See the description in Xenophon. (*Cyrop.* i. 3, § 12.) Compare the Persian practice. (Herod. i. 133.)
[62] *Cyrop.* i. 3, § 8.
[63] Herod. i. 99. Compare Nic. Dam. Fr. 66. (*Fr. Hist. Gr.* vol. iii. p. 402.)
[64] Strab. l. s. c. Σεβασμὸς θεοπρεπὴς εἰς τοὺς Πέρσας παρὰ Μήδων ἀφίκται.
[65] This, at least, is the account of Herodotus (i. 100). But it may be doubted whether he does not somewhat overstate the degree of seclusion affected by the Median kings. Certainly neither Xenophon in his *Cyropædia*, nor Ctesias in the fragments which remain of his writings, appears to hold such extreme views on the subject as "the Father of History."
[66] Herodotus's account would necessarily imply this. Xenophon furnishes no contradiction; for he does not make the king hunt in person.
[67] See text, pp. 29, 30.
[68] Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 4, § 7. Nicolas of Damascus mentions the wild boars, the stags, and the wild asses. (Fr. 10.)
[69] Xen. *Cyrop.* l. s. c.
[70] See the engraving in Ker Porter's *Travels*, vol. ii. opp. p. 175, or the more carefully drawn representation in Flandin's *Voyage en Perse*, tom. i. pl. 10.
[71] Ker Porter, vol. ii. opp. p. 177; Flandin, tom. i. pl. 12.
[72] Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 4, § 15. Ἔθεᾶτο τοὺς ἀμιλλωμένους ἐπὶ τὰ θηρία, καὶ φιλονεικοῦντας, καὶ διώκοντας, καὶ ἀκοντίζοντας.
[73] Strab. xi. 13, § 11. Compare Nicolas of Damascus, Fr. 66 (*Fr. Hist. Gr.* vol. iii. p. 403).
[74] Strab. l. s. c.
[75] Clearch. Sol. ap. Athen. *Deipn.* xii. 2, p. 514, D.
[76] Nic. Dam. Fr. 66 (*Fr. Hist. Gr.* vol. iii. pp. 398 and 402).
[77] Flandin, *Voyage en Perse*, p. 17., Sir H. Rawlinson is of the same opinion.

CHAPTER IV.

[1] The Zend-Avesta, or sacred volume of the Parsees, which has now been printed both by Westergaard (1852–1854) and Spiegel (1851–1858), and translated into German by the latter, is a compilation for liturgical purposes from various older works which have been lost. It is composed of eight pieces or books, entitled Yaçna, Visporatu or Visparad, Vendidad, Yashts, Nyâyish, Afrigâns, Gâhs, Sirozah. It is written in the old form of Arian speech called the Zend, a language closely cognate to the Sanscrit of the Vedas and to Achæmenian Persian, or the Persian of the Cuneiform inscriptions. A Pehlevi translation of the more important books, made probably under the Sassanidæ (A.D. 235–640) is extant, and a Sanscrit translation of the Yaçna, made about the end of the fifteenth century by a certain Neriosengh. The celebrated Frenchman, Anquetil du Perron, first acquainted the learned of Europe with this curious and valuable compilation. His translation (Paris, 1771), confused in its order, and often very incorrect, is now antiquated; and students unacquainted with Zend will do well to have recourse to Spiegel, who, however, is far from a perfect translator. The best Zend scholars have as yet attempted versions of some portions of the Zendavesta only—as Burnouf of the first and ninth chapters of the Yaçna (*Commentaire sur le Yaçna*, Paris, 1833; and the *Journal Asiatique* for 1844–1846), and Martin Haug of the Gâthâs (2 vols., Leipsic, 1858–1860), and other fragments (*Essays on the Sacred Language, Writings, and Religion of the Parsees*, Bombay, 1862). Professor Westergaard of Copenhagen is understood to be engaged upon a complete translation of the whole work into English. When this version appears, it will probably leave little to be desired. The word "Zend-Avesta," introduced into the languages of Europe by Du Perron, is incorrect. The proper form is "Avesta-Zend," which is the order always used in the Pehlevi books. This word, "Avesta-Zend," is a contraction of *Avesta u Zend*, "Avesta and Zend," *i.e.* Text and Comment. Avesta (*avasthâ*) means "text, scripture;" its Pehlevi form is *apistak*, and it is cognate with the late Sanscrit and Mahratta *pustak*, "book." Zend (*zand*) is "explanation, comment." (See Haug's *Essays*, pp. 120–122; and compare Bunsen's *Egypt*, vol. iii. p. 474, note.)

[2] Haug, *Essays*, pp. 50–116; Bunsen, *Egypt*, vol. iii. p. 476.

[3] It was doubted for some time whether the Gâthâs were really "songs." Brockhaus said in 1850, "Jusqu'ici je n'ai pu découvrir la moindre trace de mesure dans les morceaux que l'on peut regarder comme des Gâthâs." (*Vendidad-Sadé*, p. 357. ad voc. *gâtha*.) But Haug has shown distinctly, not only that they are metrical, but that the metres are of the same nature as those which are found in the Vedic hymns. (*Essays*, pp. 136–138.) And Westergaard has shown by his mode of printing that he regards them as metrical.

[4] *Yaçna* in Zend is equivalent to *yajna* in Sanscrit, and means "sacrifice." The *Yaçna* consists chiefly of prayers, hymns, &c., relating to sacrificial rites, and intended to be used during the performance of sacrifice.

[5] Traditionally, several of the Gâthâs are ascribed to Zoroaster, whose date was anterior to B.C. 2000 according to Berosus, and whom other writers place still earlier. (See Aristot. ap. Diog. Laert. Pref. 6; Plin. *H. N.* xxx. 1; Hermipp. Fr. 79; Xan. Lyd. Fr. 29, &c.) Their style shows them to be considerably anterior to the first Fargard of the Vendidad, which must have been composed before the great migration of the

Medes southward from the Caspian region. Haug is inclined to date the Zoroastrian Gâthâs as early as the time of Moses. (*Essays*, p. 255.)

[6] The Sanscrit *s* is replaced most commonly by *h* in Zend. *Asura* or *ahura* is properly an adjective meaning "living." But it is ordinarily used as a substantive, and means "divine or celestial being."

[7] The word *deva* is clearly cognate to the Latin *Deus*, *Divus*, Lithuanian *diewas*, Greek Ζεύς or Σδεύς, &c. In modern Persian it has become *div*.

[8] *Aramati* is the Sanscrit, *Armaiti* the Zend form.

[9] Haug, *Essays*, pp. 245–247.

[10] Great difference of opinion exists as to the meaning of this name. It has been translated "the great giver of life" (Sir H. Rawlinson's *Persian Vocabulary*, ad voc. *Auramazda*); "the living wise" (Haug, *Essays*, p. 33); "the living Creator of all" (ibid. pp. 256, 257); "the divine much-knowing" (Brockhaus, *Vendidad-Sadé*, pp. 347 and 385); and "the divine much-giving" (ibid.). Both elements of the name were used commonly to express the idea of "a god."

[11] Haug, *Essays*, p. 257

[12] *Yaçna*, xxxi. 7.

[13] Ibid. li. 7.

[14] Ibid. xxxi. 7.

[15] Ibid. xliii. 2.

[16] Ibid. xii 1.

[17] Ibid. xliii. 4, 5.

[18] Ibid. xxxv. 1.

[19] Ibid. xlvi. 2.

[20] Ibid. xliii. 5.

[21] Ibid. xlv. 5.

[22] Ibid. xxxi. 8.

[23] Ibid. xlvii. 1.

[24] Ibid. xliii. 2.

[25] Ibid. xxxv. 1.

[26] Ibid. xxxv. 3.

[27] Haug, *Essays*, p. 257.

[28] *Yaçna*, xxxiv. 1; xlvii. 1, 2, &c.

[29] Ibid. xliii. 4, 5.

[30] Haug, *Essays*, l. s. c.

[31] *Haurvatât* (*Khordâd* in later Persian) is translated indifferently "health," "wholesomeness," "completeness," "prosperity." It is explained to be "the good condition in which every being of the good creation has been created by Ahura-mazda." (Haug, *Essays*, p. 177.)

[32] Ahura-mazda is "true, *lucid*, *shining*, the originator of all the best things, of the spirit in nature, and of the growth in nature, of the luminaries, and of the self-shining brightness which is in the luminaries." (*Yaçna*, xii. 1, Haug's Translation.) He is regarded as the source of light, which most resembles him, and he is called *gâthrô*, "having his own light." (Haug, *Essays*, p. 143, note.)

[33] Isaiah xliv. 28; xlv. 1–4.

[34] 2 Chron. xxxvi. 22, 23; Ezra, i. 1–4; vi. 10, 12.

[35] This is clear from such passages as the following:—"*The Lord God of heaven* hath given me (*i.e.* Cyrus) all the kingdoms of the earth, and he hath charged me to build *him* a house at Jerusalem, which is in Judah. Who is there among you of all his people? His God be with him, and let him go up to Jerusalem, and build the house of *the Lord God of Israel—he is the God*—which is in Jerusalem." (Ezra i. 2, 3.)

[36] See text, Chapter VI., *Fifth Monarchy*.

[37] *Yaçna*, xxxii. 1, 2; xlv. 11; xlvi. 11; &c.

[38] *Journal of the Asiatic Society*, vol. xv. p. 159; Loftus, *Chaldæa and Susiana*, p. 378. On the first erection of statues in honor of Anaitis, see text, Chapter VI., *Fifth Monarchy*.

[39] *Yazatas* or *izeds*.

[40] "While the Amesha Spentas," says Haug, "represent nothing but the qualities and gifts of Ahura-mazda, Sraosha seems to have been considered as a personality." (*Essays*, p. 261.) Haug even regards Armaiti as not really a person (ibid.).

[41] *Yaçna*, xliii. 12, 14; xliv. 1.

[42] Ibid. xliii. 3.

[43] Ibid. xliii. 11 and 16.

[44] Ibid. xliv. 9.

[45] Ibid. xliv. 1 and 9.

[46] Ibid. xliii. 3.

[47] Ibid. xxix. passim, xxxi. 9–10.

[48] So Haug expounds the somewhat ambiguous words of *Yaçna*, xxxi. 9. (*Essays*, p. 144, note.)

[49] *Yaçna*, xxxi. 10.

[50] Ibid. xxxv. 4.

[51] Ibid. xliii. 16, ad fin.

[52] Ibid. l. s. c.

[53] Ibid. xliii. 6.

[54] See the formula by which the ancient Iranians received men into their religious community, given in the 12th chapter of the *Yaçna*, § 1 to § 9.

[55] Literally "soul of the *cow*." In the poetical language of the old Iranians, the earth, which sustains all, was compared to a cow, the earliest sustainer of the family among them. (See Oxford Essays for 1856, p. 17.) Perhaps the Greek γῆ (Dor. γᾶ) is connected etymologically with *go* or *gu*, "cattle."

[56] *Yaçna*, xxix.

[57] Ibid. liv.

[58] See Haug's *Essays*, pp. 193 and 232. In the Vedas *Vitrahâ* is one of the most frequent epithets of Indra, who would thus seem to have retained some votaries among the Iranians. It meant "killer of Vitra," who was a demon.

[59] See *Yaçna*, liii. 6.

[60] *Rig-Veda Sanhita*, vol. i. pp. 5, 6, 34, 35, &c

[61] *Yaçna*, xliii. 9; xlvi. 8; &c.

[62] The Soma ceremony is one of the most striking features of the old Hindoo religion. Wilson (H. H.) speaks of it as "a singular part of their ritual" (Introduction to *Rig-Veda Sanhita*, vol. i. p. xxxvi), and describes it as follows:—

"The expressed and fermented juice of the *Soma* plant was presented in ladles to the deities invoked, in what manner does not exactly appear, although it seems to have been sometimes sprinkled on the fire, sometimes on the ground, or rather on the *Kusa*, or sacred grass, strewed on the floor" (and forming the supposed seat of the deities); "and in all cases the residue was drunk by the assistants" (p. xxiii). "The only explanation," he adds, "of which it is susceptible, is the delight, as well as astonishment, which the discovery of the exhilarating, if not inebriating, properties of the fermented juice of the plant must have excited in simple minds on first becoming acquainted with its effects" (p. xxxvii). Haug says, "The early Indian tribes, as described in the ancient songs of the Vedas, never engaged themselves in their frequent predatory excursions for robbing cows, horses, sheep, &c., without having previously secured the assistance of Indra by preparing for him a solemn Soma feast. The Karapani" (priests) "dressed it in due manner, and the Kavis" (another order of priests) "composed or applied those verses which were best calculated to induce Indra to accept the invitation. The Kavis were believed to recognize by certain marks the arrival of the god. After he had enjoyed the sweet beverage, the delicious honey, and *was supposed to be totally inebriated*, then the Kavis promised victory. The inroads were undertaken headed by those Kavis *who had previously intoxicated themselves*, and they appear to have been in most cases successful." (*Essays*, pp. 247, 248.) These orgies may therefore be compared with those which the Greeks celebrated in honor of Bacchus, and may throw light on the supposed Indian origin of that deity. The Soma plant is said to be the acid Asclepias or *Sarcostema viminalis* (Wilson in *Rig-Veda Sanhita*, vol. i, p. 6, note a). The important part which it holds in the Vedas will be seen by reference to Mr. Wilson's translation of the Rig-Veda, vol. i. pp. 6, 11, 14, 21, 25, &c., and still more by reference to Mr. Stevenson's translation of the Sâma-Veda, which is devoted almost entirely to its praises.

[63] See *Yaçna*, xxxii. 3, and xlviii. 10.

[64] Instead of pouring the liquor on the fire or on the sacred grass, where the gods were supposed to sit, the Iranian priests simply *showed* it to the fire and then drank it. (Haug, *Essays*, p 239.)

[65] The restoration of the modified Soma (Homa) ceremony to the Iranian ritual is indicated in "the younger Yaçna" (chs. ix. to xi.), more especially in the so-called *Homa Yasht*, a translation of which by Burnouf is appended to the *Vendidad-Sadé* of Brockhaus.

[66] There is, of course, no etymological connection between *deva* and "devil." *Deva* and the cognate *diu* are originally "the sky," "the air"—a meaning which *diu* often has in the Vedas. (Compare Lat. *dium*.) From this meaning, while *deva* passed into a general name for god, the form *diu* was appropriated to a particular god. Compare our use of the word "Heaven" in such expressions as "Heaven forbid," "Heaven bless you!" The particular god, the god of the air, appears in Greek as Ζεύς or Σδεύς, in Latin as *Ju*-piter, in old German as *Tius*, whence our *Tuesday*. *Deva* became Lat. *deus*, *divus*, Gr. θεός, Lith. *diewas*, &c. Thus far the word had invariably a good sense. When, however, the Western Arians broke off from their brethren, and rejected the worship of their gods, whom they regarded as evil spirits, the word *deva*, which they specially applied to them, came to have an evil meaning, equivalent to our "fiend" or "devil." "Devil" is of course a mere corruption of διάβολος; Lat. *diabolus*; Ital. *diavolo*; French *diable*; Negro, *debbel*.

[67] *Yaçna*, xii. 4; xxx. 6; xxxii. 5; xliv. 16; &c.

[68] Ibid. xxxii. 4.

[69] Ibid. xxxii. 3.

[70] See especially *Yaçna*, xlv. 2, and compare xxx. 3-6.

[71] See Professor Max Müller's Essay in the *Oxford Essays*, for 1856, pp. 34-37.

[72] The date of the separation between the Eastern and Western Arians is antehistoric, and can only be vaguely guessed at.

[73] The Iranian settlements enumerated in the document extend westward no further than Rhages, or at the utmost to Media Antropatêné, which *may* be indicated by the Varena of § 18. (See Appendix, A.) Thus the Arians, when the document was written, had not yet spread into Media Magna, much less into Persia Proper. It must consequently be anterior to the time of the first Shalmaneser (B.C. 858-823), who found Medes and Persians beyond the Zagros range. (See Vol. I. p. 408.) Dr. Haug thinks that the Fargard is anterior to B.C. 1200, because Bactria occurs in it accompanied by the epithet *erédhwô-drafsha*, "with the tall banner"—an expression indicating that it was the centre of an empire, which Bactria, he thinks, could not be after the rise of Assyria (B.C. 1200, according to him). See Bunsen's *Egypt*, vol. iii. p. 477, 478, E. T. But the Assyrian records render it absolutely certain that Bactria was an independent country, even at the height of the Assyrian power.

[74] The mention of a serpent as the first creation of Angrô-mainyus is curious. Is it a paradisaical reminiscence?

[75] *Vendidad*, Farg. i. § 5.

[76] Haug's *Essays*, p. 260.

[77] Ibid. p. 263. Compare Windischmann's *Zoroastrische Studien*, p. 59,

where the original names are given as Taric and Zaric.

[78] See text, p. 10.

[79] "*Vahista* means originally 'most splendid, beautiful,' but was afterwards used in the general sense of 'best.'" (Haug, *Essays*, p. 261.)

[80] See text, p. 48.

[81] The most exact representative of Haurvatât which the classical languages furnish would seem to be the Greek *εὐεξία*. It is "the good condition in which every being of the good creation has been created by Ahura-mazda." (Haug. p. 177.)

[82] *Yaçna*, xxxiv. 1, xlvii. 1, &c.

[83] Haug, pp. 142 and 258.

[84] For the character of Indra in the Hindoo mythology, see Wilson, *Rig-Veda Sanhita*, Introduction, pp. xxx–xxxii.

[85] Haug, *Essays*, p. 230.

[86] *Yajur-Veda*, xvi. 28.

[87] The name of Shiva does not occur in the Rig-Veda, from which the famous *Trimurtti*, or Trinity of Brahma, Vishnu, and Shiva is wholly absent. (Wilson, in Introduction to *Rig-Veda Sanhita*, vol. i. p. xxvi; Max Müller, *Ancient Sanskrit Literature*, p. 55.)

[88] On the large share which the Aswins occupied in the early Hindoo worship, see Wilson, *Rig-Veda Sanhita*, Introduction, p. xxxv, and compare *Rigy-Veda*, vol. i. pp. 8, 50, 94–97, 127, 306–325, &c.

[89] *Yaçna*, xii. 4.

[90] Ibid. xxx. 6.

[91] See the Serosh Yasht, or hymn in praise of Serosh (*Yaçna*, lvii. 2). The following particulars concerning Serosh are also contained in the hymn. He was the inventor of the *barsom*, and first taught its use to mankind. He made the music for the five earliest Gâthâs, which were called the Gâthâs of Zoroaster. He had an earthly dwelling-place—a palace with 1,000 pillars erected on the highest summit of Elburz (the peak of Demawend?), which was lighted within by its own light, and without was ornamented with stars. One of his employments was to walk round the world, teaching the true religion.

[92] On the triad of thought, word, and act, see *Yaçna*, xii. 8, xxxii. 5, xxxiii. 2, xxxv. 1, xlvii. 1, xlix, 4, &c.; and compare below, note 94.

[93] See *Yaçna*, xxxiii. 3.

[94] "We worship Ahura-mazda, the pure, the master of purity. We worship the Amesha Spentas, the possessors of good, the givers of good. We worship the whole creation of the true spirit, both the spiritual and terrestrial, all that supports the welfare of the good creation and the spread of good mazda-yaçna religion.

"We praise all good thoughts, all good words, all good deeds, which are or shall be; and we likewise keep clean and pure all that is good.

"O Ahura-mazda, thou true, happy being! We strive to think, to speak, and to do only such actions as may be best fitted to promote the two lives" (*i.e.* the life of the body and the life of the soul).

"We beseech the spirit of earth, for the sake of these our best works" (*i.e.* our labors in agriculture), "to grant us beautiful and fertile fields, to the believer as well as to the unbeliever, to him who has riches as well as to him who has no possessions." (*Yaçna*, xxxv. 1–4. See Haug's *Essays*, pp. 162, 163.)

[95] See the Homa Yasht (*Yaçna*, chs. ix. and x.). It has sometimes been supposed that the personal Homa addressed in his Yasht, and appearing elsewhere as an object of worship to the Zoroastrians, represents the Moon-God (*Journal of Asiatic Society*, vol. xv. p. 254); and the author was formerly of this opinion (*Herodotus*, vol. i. p. 349, 2nd edition). But further consideration has convinced him that the Zendic Homa answers to one character only of the Vedic Soma, and not to both. Soma is at once the Moon-God and the Genius of Intoxication. (*Rig-Veda Sanhita*, vol. i. p. 118; vol. ii. p. 311, &c.) Homa is the latter only.

[96] This practice remained among the Persian Fire-worshippers to a late date. It is mentioned as characteristic of the Persians by Xenophon (*Cyrop.* viii. 3, § 24) and Ovid (*Fasti*, i. 385).

[97] *Yaçna*, xliv. 18.

[98] This is evidently the original of Mahomet's famous "way, extended over the middle of Hell, which is sharper than a sword and finer than a hair, over which all must pass." (Pocock, *Spec. Hist. Arab.* p. 278.)

[99] *Vendidad*, Farg. xix. 30.

[100] Haug, *Essays*, p. 156, note.

[101] *Vendidad*, Farg. xix. 31, 32.

[102] Haug, p. 266.

[103] See Diog. Laert. *Proœm.* § 9. Θεόπομπος ἀναβιώσεσθαι κατὰ τοὺς Μάγους φησὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους, καὶ ἔσεσθαι ἀθανάτους. And Æn. Gaz. *Dial. de an. immort.* p. 77: Ὁ δὲ Ζωροάστρης προλέγει, ὡς ἔσται πότε χρόνος ἐν ᾧ πάντων νεκρῶν ἀνάστασις ἔσται· οἶδεν ὁ Θεόπομπος.

[104] And again in the Zemyad Yasht, §§ 89, 90.

[105] Haug, *Essays*, pp. 143 and 266. The expression relied on is *frashem kerenaon ahûm*, which occurs in the *Gâtha ahuvanaiti* (*Yaçna*, xxx. 9), and is translated, "they perpetuate the life"—literally "they make the life lasting." Hence, it is said, was formed the substantive *frashô-kereti*, which in the later Zend books becomes a *verbum usitatum*, designating the entire period of resurrection and palingenesis at the end of time. But this only shows that the later Zoroastrians applied a phrase taken from the older books to their doctrines. It does not prove that the phrase had originally the meaning which they put upon it. In its literal

sense the expression clearly does not go beyond the general notion of a future existence.

[106] With *khshaêta*, the *epithêton usitatum* of Yima, which undoubtedly means "king"—corresponding to the *râjâ*, which is the epithet of Yama in the Vedas—may be compared the Achæmenian *khshayathiya*, which is the commonest term for "king" in the Persian cuneiform inscriptions.

[107] *Vendidad*, Farg. ii. §§ 4 to 41.

[108] Ibid. § 29.

[109] Ibid. § 41.

[110] This identification was first made, I believe, by Burnouf. It rests on the following resemblances. Yama has habitually the title *râjâ* affixed to his name; Yima has the corresponding title *khshaêta*. Yama is the son of *Vivasvat*; Yima, of *Vivanghvat*. Yama is the first Vedic man; Yima is the first Iranic king. Yama reigns over a heavenly, Yima over an earthly paradise.

[111] Haug, *Essays*, p. 234.

[112] *Yashts*, xv. 23; xvii. 33; *Vendidad*, Farg. i. § 18.

[113] The capital of Atropatêné was sometimes called Vera or Baris, whence perhaps Varena. Or Varena may possibly be Ghilan, since "the initial *v* of tho old Iranian usually becomes *g* in modern Persian." (Haug in Bunsen's *Egypt*, vol. iii. p. 487.)

[114] *Yashts*, xv. 8; and so in the Shahnameh (Atkinson's *Abridgment*, pp. 12–49).

[115] *Yaçna*, ix. 6. Burnouf thus translates the passage: "Thraetona . . . . qui a tué le serpent homicide aux trois gueules, aux trois têtes, aux six yeux, aux mille forces, cette divinité cruelle qui détruit la pureté, ce pécheur qui ravage les mondes, et qu'Ahriman a créé le plus ennemi de la pureté dans le monde, existant pour l'anéantissement de la pureté des mondes."

[116] So Haug (*Essays*, p. 235), Roth (*Zeitschrift der D. morgenländischen Gesellschaft*, vol. ii. p. 216), and Lassen (*Indische Alterthumskunde*, additions). Professor H. H. Wilson, on the other hand, rejects the proposed identification. (*Rig-Veda Sanhita*, vol. i. p. 143, note.)

[117] Keresaspa is mentioned in the first Fargard of the Vendidad (§ 10); which has been already shown to be older than the first occupation by the Arians of Media Magna. (See above, note 73.)

[118] *Yaçna*, ix. 7.

[119] A special "glory" or "lustre" (*garenô*), the reflex of Ahura-mazda's inborn brilliancy (*qâthro*), attaches to certain eminent heroes, more especially to Yima and Keresaspa. (*Yashts*, xix. 38.)

[120] The fairy Knathaiti, though originally a creation of Angrô-mainyus (*Vendidad*, Farg. i. 10; xix. 5), "became the protecting genius of heroes, who were indebted to her for their supernatural strength." (Haug in Bunsen's *Egypt*. vol. iii. p. 482.)

[121] *Yashts*, xix. 38–44. Compare *Yaçna*, ix. 8, which is thus translated by Burnouf: "C'est lui (Kereçaçpa) qui tua le serpent agile qui dévorait les chevaux et les hommes, ce serpent vénimeux et vert, sur le corps duquel ruisselait un vert poison de l'épaisseur du pouce. Kereçaçpa fit chauffer au-dessus de lui de l'eau dans un vase d'airain, jusqu'à midi; et le monstre homicide sentait la chaleur, et il siffla. Le vase d'airain, tombant en avant, repandit l'eau faite pour s'écouler. Le serpent, effrayé, s'enfuit; Kereçaçpa, au cœur d'homme, recula."

[122] *Shah-nameh*, pp. 117–122 (Atkinson's *Abridgment*).

[123] See the *Bhagavat Purana*, and compare Burnouf in the *Journal Asiatique*, Avril–Mai 1845, p. 255.

[124] It is not intended to deny that there are some portions of the Greek and Roman, and again of the German and Scandinavian mythology, which are allegorical, and which are best explained as originally expressive of processes of nature; but only to assert that the physical element in those mythologies is so overlaid by the historical or quasi-historical, as to disappear from sight, and be lost, like a drop in the ocean.

[125] It must be remembered that we do not possess the ancient Zendic writings in a complete shape, as we do the Vedas, but only in a curtailed and fragmentary form. (See Haug, *Essays*, p. 219.)

[126] As the *Dabistan* of Mohammed Mohsin Fani, and the *Rauzat-us-Safa* of Mirkhond.

[127] These names occur, I believe, only in the *Yashts*, which Haug assigns, on good grounds, to about B.C. 450–350. (*Essays*, p. 224.)

[128] The cuneiform inscriptions of Armenia, Azerbijan, and Elymais are in Scythic or Turanian dialects. The third column of the trilingual inscriptions of the Zagros range is also Scythic. On the various grounds for regarding the ante-Arian inhabitants of these parts as Scyths, see *Journal of the Asiatic Society*, vol. xv. pp. 235, 236.

[129] See Ker Porter's *Travels*, vol. i. p. 566.

[130] Proofs of this are collected in Sir H. Rawlinson's article "On the Atropatenian Ecbatana" in the *Journal of the Geographical Society*, vol. x. pp. 79 83.

[131] Ctesias called Zoroaster an Armenian (Arnobius, *Adv. Nationes*, i. 52). Moses of Chorene regarded him as a Mede (*Hist. Armen.* i. 16). So Clemens of Alexandria in one place (*Strom.* i. p. 399).

[132] We sometimes find it said that the Magi worshipped fire and water only (Dino, Fr. 9); sometimes that their gods

were fire, water, and earth (Diog. Laert. *Procem.* § 6). But there seems to be no real doubt that their worship was actually paid to all the four elements. (Herod. i. 132; Strab. xv. 3, § 13; Theodoret, *Hist. Eccles.* v. 39; &c.)

133 See this reason assigned in Herod. i. 132.

134 Hence the name Ὑράιθοι borne by the Magi in Cappadocia (Strab. xv. 3, § 15). Compare the *Athrava* of the Zend-avesta, derived from *âtar*, "fire." (See also Strab. xv. 3, § 14; Lucian, *Jov. Trag.* § 42; Clem. Alex. *Protrept.* v. p. 56.

135 Dio. Chrysost. *Orat. Borysth.* p. 449, A.; Amm. Marc. xxiii. 6; Clem. *Recognit.* iv. 29; Agathias, ii. 25.

136 Πῦρ ἄσβεστον φυλάττουσιν οἱ Μάγοι. (Strab. xv. 3, § 15.)

137 Ibid. 14. Ὑφάπτουσιν . . . οὐ φυσῶντες ἀλλὰ ῥιπίζοντες· τοὺς δὲ φυσήσαντας . . . θανατοῦσι.

138 Herod. iii. 16; Strab. l. s. c.; Nic. Dam. Fr. 68, p. 409.

139 Some said that no part of the victim was burnt. (Strab. l. s. c.; Eustath. *Comment. ad Hom. Il.* i.) But Strabo's statement, that a small portion was consumed in the fire, seems trustworthy. Xenophon's "whole burnt-offerings" must be a fiction. (*Cyrop.* viii. 3, § 24.)

140 Strab. l. s. c.

141 Herod. i. 138; Strab. xv. 3, § 16; Agathias, ii. 24, ad fin.

142 Xen. *Cyrop.* l. s. c.

143 See below, note 156.

144 Herod. i. 132. Ἄνευ γὰρ δὴ Μάγου οὐ σφι νόμος ἐστὶ θυσίας ποιέεσθαι. Amm. Marc. xxiii. 6. "Erat piaculum aras adire vel hostiam concrectare antequam Magus conceptis precationibus libamenta diffunderet præcursoria." Strabo implies the same without distinctly stating it. (Strab. xv. 3, § 13.)

145 Strab. xv. 3, §§ 14 and 15. Compare Herod. i. 132.

146 This is implied in the statement of Herodotus (i. 101), that they were a tribe (φῦλον). It is expressly declared by Ammianus Marcellinus (xxiii. 6), Sozomen (*Hist. Eccl.* ii. 8), and others.

147 Herod. vii. 37; Cic. *de Div.* i. 41; Val. Max. i. 6.

148 Herod. i. 107, 108; vii. 19; Cic. *de Div.* i. 23.

149 Dino, Fr. 8; Schol. Nicandr. Ther. 613.

150 Diog. Laert. *Procem.* ἐσθῆς μὲν λευκή.

151 See the picture which Strabo gives of the Magian priests in Cappadocia (xv. 3, § 15)—a picture drawn from his own experience (ταῦτα μὲν οὖν ἡμεῖς ἑωράκαμεν).

152 Haug imagines that the term Magus is Zoroastrian, that it was used from very ancient times among the Arians to designate the followers of the true religion (*Essays*, pp. 160, 247), and that by degrees it came to be applied especially to the priests. For my own part I doubt the identity of the *maga* or *maghava*, which occurs twice, and twice only, in the whole of the Zendavesta (Westergaard, *Introduction to Zendavesta*, p. 17), with the *magush* of the cuneiform inscriptions and the Μάγος of the Greeks.

153 Herod. i. 101. The first real proof that we have of any close connection of the Magi with an Arian race is furnished by the Median history of Herodotus, where we find them a part, but not apparently an original part, of the Median nation. Their position (*fifth*) in the list of tribes, *last of all* except the Budii, who were probably also Scyths, is only to be accounted for, when we consider their high rank and importance, by their having been added on to the nation after the four Arian tribes were constituted.

154 Herod. i. 107, 108.

155 It is in Media (at Behistun) that the sculptor of a Scythic inscription—probably himself a Median Scyth—informs his readers that Ormazd was "the god of the Arians." Remark that he says "Arians"—not "Persians"—thus including the Arian Medes.

156 See the author's *Herodotus*, vol. i. p. 223, note 4, 2nd ed. Round towers of considerable height, without either door or window, are constructed by the Guebres, having at the top a number of iron bars, which slope inwards. The towers are mounted by means of ladders; and the bodies are placed cross-ways upon the bars. The vultures and crows which hover about the towers soon strip the flesh from the bones, and these latter then fall through to the bottom. The Zendavesta contains particular directions for the construction of such towers, which are called *dakhmas*, or "Towers of Silence." (*Vendidad*, Farg. v. to Farg. viii.)

157 Strab. xv. 3, § 20. Τοὺς δὲ Μάγους οὐ θάπτουσιν ἀλλ' οἰωνοβρώτους ἐῶσι. Compare Herod. (i. 140), who, however, seems to think that the bodies were buried after dogs or birds had partially devoured them. In this he was probably mistaken.

158 This appears from the statements made by Herodotus and Strabo as to the actual practice in the passages quoted in the last note. On the other hand, if we refer the composition of the middle portion of the Vendidad (from the fifth to the eighteenth Fargard) to the times of early Magian ascendancy, we must suppose that they wished to put a stop to all burial.

159 Herod. l. s. c. Κατακηρώσαντες τὸν νέκυν Περσαι γῇ κρύπτουσι. Strab. l. s. c. Θάπτουσι κηρῷ περιπλάσαντες τὰ σώματα.

160 Schol. Nic. Ther. 613: Μάγοι δὲ καὶ Σκύθαι μυρικίνῳ μαντεύονται ξύλῳ· καὶ γὰρ ἐν πολλοῖς τόποις ῥάβδοις μαντεύονται. Δείνων δὲ . . . καὶ τοὺς μάντεις φησὶ Μήδους ῥάβδοις μαντεύεσθαι.

161 Herod. iv. 67. The only difference seems to be that the European Scyths used willow wands, the Magi twigs of the tamarisk.

[162] The prophet Hosea evidently refers to this custom when he says (iv. 12), "My people ask counsel at their stocks; and *their staff* declareth unto them." It must therefore have been practised in Western Asia at least as early as B.C. 700. See also Ezek. viii. 17: "And, lo, they put the *branch* to their nose."

[163] *Vendidad*, Farg. xviii. 1-6; Strab. xv. 3, §§ 14 and 15.

[164] *Yaçna*, lvii. 6.

[165] *Vendidad*, l. s. c.

[166] Herodotus had evidently seen Magi pursuing their pious pastime, "killing ants and snakes, and seeming to take a delight in the employment" (i. 140). Though speaking in his usual guarded way of a religious custom, he does not fail to indicate that he was shocked as well as astonished.

[167] Xanthus ap. Clem. Alex. *Strom.* iii. p. 515; Ctesias ap. Tertull. *Apolog.* p. 10, C.; Antisthenes ap. Athen. *Deipn.* v. 63, p. 220, C.; Diog. Laert. *Proœm.* § 7; Strab. xv. 3, § 20; Catull. *Carm.* xc. 3; Lucian. *De Sacrific.* § 5; Philo Judæus, *De decalog.* p. 778; Tertull. *Ad. Nat.* i. 15; Orig. *Cont. Cels.* v. p. 248; Clem. Alex. *Ped.* i. 7, p. 131; Minucius, *Octav.* 31, p. 155; Agathias, ii. 24.

[168] Herod. iii. 31.

[169] See his fragments in C. Müller's *Fragm. Hist. Gr.* vol. i. pp. 36-44; and especially Frs. 11, 12, and 19.

[170] See Müller's Introduction to vol. i. of the *Fragm. Hist. Gr.* pp. xxi. and xxii.

[171] If the Antisthenes quoted by Athenæus is the philosopher, as he was contemporary with Ctesias, he may have been the first to make the charge. But there were at least four Greek writers who bore the name of Antisthenes. (See Diog. Laert. vi. 19.)

[172] Herod. iii. 31. Οἱ βασιλήϊοι δικασταὶ . . . ὑπεκρίνοντο . . . ἐξευρηκέναι νόμον, τῷ βασιλεύοντι Περσέων ἐξεῖναι ποιέειν τὸ ἂν βούληται.

[173] Ker Porter says: "The lower ranks [of Persians], seldom being able to support more than the privileged number of wives, are often *ready to change them on any plea*, when time, or any other cause, has a little sullied their freshness. . . . When matrimonial differences arise, of sufficient magnitude to occasion a *wish* to separate, the grievances are stated by both parties before the judge; and if duly substantiated, and the complainants persist in demanding a divorce, he furnishes both with the necessary certificates." (*Travels*, vol. i. p. 342.)

[174] Xen. *Cyrop.* viii. 3, §§ 11 and 24; Herod. vii. 43.

[175] See the minute directions for escaping or removing impurity, contained in the *Vendidad*, Farg. 8, 9, 10, 11, 16 and 17. All these chapters seem Magian rather than Zoroastrian.

[176] I cannot conclude this chapter without expressing my obligations to Dr. Martin Haug, from whose works I have mainly derived my acquaintance with the real contents of the *Zendavesta*. I have rarely ventured to differ from him in the inferences which he draws from those contents. In one important respect only do I find my views seriously at variance with his. I regard Magism as in its origin completely distinct from Zoroastrianism, and as the chief cause of its corruption, and of the remarkable difference between the earlier and the later of the Zendic books. In this view I am happy to find myself supported by Westergaard, who writes as follows in his "Preface" to the *Zendavesta* (p. 17): "The faith ascribed by Herodotus to the Persians is not the lore of Zoroaster; nor were the Magi in the time of Darius the priests of Ormazd. Their name, Magu, occurs only twice in all the extant Zend texts, and here in a general sense, while Darius opposes his creed to that of the Magi, whom he treated most unmercifully. Though Darius was the mightiest king of Persia, yet his memory and that of his predecessors on the thrones of Persia and Media has long since utterly vanished from the recollections of the people. It was supplanted by the foreign North-Iranian mythology, which terminates with Vishtaspa and his sons; and with these persons the later Persian tradition has connected the Achæmenian Artaxerxes, the Long-Handed, as if he especially had contributed to the propagation and establishment in Western Iran of the Zoroastrian belief. But *this latter would appear early to have undergone some modification, perhaps even from the influence of Magism itself;* and it may have been in this period that the Magi, turning to the faith of their sovereigns" (or, rather, turning their sovereigns to their faith), "became the priests of Ormazd."

CHAPTER V.

[1] See text, p. 36.

[2] Νέαρχος δὲ τὰ πλεῖστα ἔθη καὶ τὴν διάλεκτον τῶν Καρμανιτῶν Περσικά τε καὶ Μηδικὰ εἰρηκε. Strab. xv. 2, § 14.

[3] See his work *On the Antiquity and Genuineness of the Zendavesta.*

[4] *Comment. Soc. Götting.* vol. xi. pp. 112 et seq.

[5] *Asiatic Nations*, vol. i. p. 332, E. T.

[6] See his work *Die heilige Sage und das gesammte Religionssystem der alten Baktrer, Meder und Perser, oder des Zendvolks*, Frankfort, 1820.

[7] Burnouf, *Commentaire sur le Yaçna*, note, p. xciii; Westergaard, Preface to *Zendavesta*, p. 16; Haug, *Essays*, p. 42. Dr. Donaldson appears to have adopted the Median theory after it was generally discarded on the Continent. See the second edition of his *New Cratylus* (published in 1850), where he speaks of the Zend language as "exhibiting some strongly-marked features of the *Median* dialect." (pp. 126, 127).

[8] This view has been maintained by Burnouf and Lassen. It seems to be also held by Haug (*Essays*, pp. 42, 43), and Westergaard (Preface to *Zendavesta*, p. 16).

[9] Max Müller, *Languages of the Seat of War*, p. 32; Bunsen, *Philosophy of History*, vol. iii. pp. 110–115.

[10] If any difference can be pointed out, it is the greater fondness of the Medes for the termination *-ak*, which is perhaps Scythic. (Compare the terminal guttural so common in the primitive Chaldæan, and the Basque *-c* at the end of names, which is said to be a suffixed article.) We have this ending in Deïoces (Dah*ak*), Astyages (Aj-dah*ak*), Arbac-es or Harpag-us, Mandauc-es, Rhambac-as, Spitac-es, &c. And we have it again in *spak*, "dog."

[11] A Median Ariobarzanes is mentioned by Tacitus (*Ann.* ii. 4).

[12] Artabazus is given as a Median name by Xenophon (*Cyrop.* i. 4, § 27).

[13] Artæus appears as a Median king in Ctesias (ap. Diod. Sic. ii. 32, § 6), as a Persian in Herod. (vii. 66).

[14] Herodotus has both a Persian (ix. 122) and a Median Artembares (i. 114), both a Persian (vi. 28) and a Median Harpagus (i. 108). Arbaces is probably the same name. According to Ctesias (ap. Diod. Sic. ii. 32, § 5), it was borne by a Median king; according to Xenophon (*Anab.* vii. 8, § 25), by a Persian satrap.

[15] Tiridates appears as the name of a Mede in Nicolas of Damascus (Fr. 66, p. 402); in Q. Curtius (v. 5, § 2) and Ælian (*Hist. Var.* xii. 1) it is the name of a Persian.

[16] See *Behistun Inscription*, col. iv. par. 14, § 3. For the name of Intaphernes, see Herod. iii. 70

[17] Artynes is one of Ctesias's Royal Median names (Diod. Sic. ii. 34, § 1); Artanes was a brother of Darius Hystaspis (Herod. vii. 224).

[18] According to Ctesias (*Pers. Exc.* § 3), Parmises was a son of Astyages. Parmys, according to Herodotus, was a daughter of Smerdis, the son of Cyrus (iii. 88).

[19] *Behist. Inscr.* col. iv. par. 18, § 4.

[20] See the author's *Herodotus*, vol. iii. p. 451, 2nd edition.

[21] Ibid. p. 453.

[22] Artapatas, a name mentioned by Xenophon (*Anab.* i. 6, § 11, means probably "protected by fire." Artaphernes (Herod. v. 30) means "protecting the fire." So Satropates means "protected by the crown"—Sitrophernes "protecting the crown."

[23] See the Inscriptions, passim. The later ones almost all begin with the formula. *Baga vazarka Auramazda*, "Deus magnus [est] Oromasdes." *Baga* has been well compared with the Slavonic *bog*.

[24] The Greeks having really no *b*, since their β had the sound of *v*, were always inclined to express a real *b* by the nearest labial, *m*. Thus they say Mardus, Merdis, or Smerdis for Bardius, Magæus for Bagæus, Marmaridæ for Berbers, and the like. On their frequent representation of the Persian *Baga* by *Mega*—see the author's *Herodotus*, vol. iii. pp. 450, 451, 2nd ed. *Baga*, however, retains its place sometimes. (See Herod. vii. 75; Ctes. *Pers. Exc.* § 9; Q. Curt. *Vit. Alex.* v. 1.)

[25] Q. Curt. *Vit. Alex.* l. s. c.

[26] Compare the frequent occurrence of Ἵππος, both as an initial and as a terminal element, in the names of the Greeks.

[27] *Dâ* in old Arian has this double meaning, corresponding both to δάω and to δόω (δίδωμι) in Greek.

[28] Herod. i. 125. On the *animal* character of many ethnic names, see the author's *Herodotus*, vol. iii. p. 450.

[29] Ctes. *Pers.* ap. Phot. *Bibliothec.* lxxii. p. 127.

[30] Various explanations have been given of the name Zoroaster. Some writers regard it as Semitic, and make it equal Ziru-Ishtar, "the seed of Ishtar" (*Journal of Asiatic Society*, vol. xv. p. 216). But most take it to be Arian. Burnouf suggests "having yellow camels," from *zarath*, and *ustra;* Brockhaus makes it "golden star," from *zara* and *thustra*. Windischmann inclines to this last explanation (*Zoroastrische Studien*, pp. 46, 47), but still views it as very doubtful indeed (höchst problematisch).

[31] *Behist. Inscr.* col. ii. par. 14, § 6.

[32] Herod. i. 192; vii. 73.

[33] Ibid. iii. 61.

[34] Ibid. vii. 40.

[35] For Bagapates, see Ctes. *Pers. Exc.* § 9; for Pharnapates, see Dio Cass. xlviii. 41.

[36] *Behist. Inscr.* col. ii. par. 5, § 4.

[37] Ctes. *Pers. Exc.* § 2.

[38] Ibid.

[39] The Iranians disliked the combination of the nasal with the dental, and said *Hidush* for *Hendu* (Hindu-stan), *Haetumat* for *Etymandrus*, *çata* for *centum*, &c. So we have frequently, though not always, *spita* for *spenta*.

[40] See above, note 10.

[41] Xen. *Cyrop.* V. iii. § 42.

[42] See text, p. 48. Mirkhond (*History*, p. 123) derives Zohak from *Deh-ak*, "ten vices"—which is hardly a name that a king would choose to bear.

[43] *Behist. Inscr.* col. ii. par. 5, § 2.

[44] See Haug, *Essays*, p. 186. The *fravashi* are called *fravardin* in the Pehlevi, and *frohars* in the modern Persian.

[45] *Behist. Inscr.* col. ii. par. 5, § 4.

[46] Brockhaus, *Vendidad-Sadé*, p. 401.

[47] *Hist. Armen.* i. 29. A recent writer maintains that Astyages is a Greek translation of the Median name, of which Astibaras is "another slightly different rendering." He would derive

the former from ἄστυ and ἄγειν, the latter from ἄστυ and βάρος! (Galloway on *Isaiah*, pp. 383, 384.)

[48] See text, pp. 48, 59.

[49] Herodotus remarks that the Persian names were often significative of some physical excellence (i. 139).

[50] Herod. vii. 88. Several MSS. give the aspirate. See Gaisford, ad loc.

[51] See note 577, Chapter IX., Vol. I., *Second Monarchy*.

[52] Rheomithres is given as a Persian name by Arrian (*Exp. Al.* ii. 11), Siromitras by Herodotus (vii. 79), and Sysimithres by Q. Curtius (*Vit. Alex.* viii 4).

[53] Mandauces is one of Ctesias's Median kings. (See note 44, Chapter VI.)

[54] Or *dahaka* may be considered to have passed from an epithet into a name, and the proper translation may be "serpent-minded."

[55] See above, note 39. The name Parsondas comes to us through Nicolas of Damascus (Fr. 10).

[56] See the author's *Herodotus* (vol. iii. p. 448), where Datis is explained as "liberal."

[57] Æschyl. *Pers.* 939. The foreign names in Æschylus are not always to be depended on. (See Blomfield's note on the *Persæ*, l. 22.) But still many of them are real names.

[58] Herod. vii. 88.

[59] For the termination in -æus, compare Bagæus, Magæus. Mazæus, &c., well-known names of Persians.

[60] See note 577, Chapter IX., Vol. I., *Second Monarchy*.

[61] So Æschylus (*Pers.* 16), Herodotus (i. 98), and Aristophanes (*Acharn.* 64).

[62] Col. ii. par. 13, § 7.

[63] Diod. Sic. ii. 13, § 2. Ὄρος ἱερὸν Δίος.

[64] *Açpa* is a common root in Median local names, as will be seen by reference to the list in Ptolemy (*Geograph.* vi. 2). Besides Aspadana, which Ptolemy places in Persia, we find among his Median towns Pharaspa, Phanaspa and Vesaspa. The whole country was famous for its breed of horses.

[65] Herod. i. 110.

[66] Xen. *Cyrop* i. 3, § 2.

[67] Nic. Dam. Fr. 10, p. 361.

[68] Hesych. ad voc. ἀρτάβη.

[69] Ibid. ad voc. ἀρτάδες and δεύας.

[70] Herod. i. 192; viii. 98.

[71] See the *Glossary* of Brockhaus (*Vendidad-Sadé*, p. 350).

[72] This is beyond a doubt the true reading, and not τοὺς ἀκάκους θεούς, as the text stands in our present copies. On the old Arian notions with regard to the *devas*, see text, p. 50.

[73] See above, note 10.

[74] The nearest representative of *spak* in modern European tongues is the Russian *sobak* or *sabak*.

[75] Herod. i. 123.

[76] Nic. Dam. Fr. 10.

[77] Dan. vi. 9. "Wherefore King Darius signed the writing and the decree."

[78] Dan. vi. 25. "Then King Darius wrote unto all peoples, nations, and languages," &c.

[79] Esther x. 2.

[80] See text, p. 51.

[81] It is generally allowed that the Homeric poems were for a long time handed down in this way. (Wolf, *Prolegomena de op. Homer.*; Payne Knight, *Prolegomena*, pp. 38-100; Matthiæ, *Greek and Roman Literature*, pp. 12-14; Grote, *Hist. of Greece*, vol. i. pp. 524-529, 2nd edition; &c.) The best Orientalists believe the same of the Vedas. The Druidical poems of the ancient Gauls (Cæs. *Bell. Gall.* vi. 13, 14), the Icelandic Skalds, the Basque tales, the Ossianic poems, the songs of the Calmucks, the modern Greeks, and the modern Persians, are all instances of an oral literature completely independent of writing. It is quite possible that the Zendavesta was orally transmitted till the time of Darius Hystaspis—if not even to a later date.

[82] The Armenians may perhaps not have been acquainted with writing when the Medes first reached Zagros. But they became a literary people at least as early as the eighth century B.C., while the Medes were still insignificant.

[83] Before this language had been analyzed, it was conjectured to be Median. But Mr. E. Norris has plainly shown its Scythic or Turanian character (*Journal of the Asiatic Society*, vol. xv.); and it is now generally regarded as the speech of the subject population in Media and Persia.

[84] Sir H. Rawlinson, in the *Journal of the Asiatic Society*, vol. x. p. 33.

[85] See Vol. I. pp. 172, 173.

[86] It is here assumed that the Medes were the originators of the system which was afterwards employed by the Persians. There is no positive proof of this. But all the evidence which we possess favors the notion that the early Persian civilization—and the writing belongs to the time of Cyrus—came to them from the Medes, their predecessors in the empire. See Herod. i. 134, 135; Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 3, § 2; viii. 3, § 1; Strab. xi. 13, § 9.)

[87] These were, of course, sounded broad, as in Italian—the *a* like *a* in "vast;" the *i* like *ee* in "feed;" the *u* like *oo* in "food."

[88] That is, as the Italian *e* and *o* in *aperto*, or as the diphthongs themselves in French, e.g. *fait*, *faux*, &c.

[89] See Sir H. Rawlinson, Analysis of the Persian Alphabet in the *Journal of the Asiatic Society*, vol. x. pp. 153-186.

[90] The cuneiform is a very convenient character for impression upon clay, or inscription upon stone. In the former case, a single touch of the instrument makes each wedge; in the latter, three taps of the chisel with the hammer cause the wedge to fall out. But characters composed of wedges are very awkward to write.

[91] *Journal of the Asiatic Society*, vol. x. pp. 31 and 42.

[92] Frag. 10. See above, note 76.

[93] Ap. Diod. Sic. ii. 32, § 4.

[94] Herod. v. 58.

[95] See Vol. I. pp. 46, 170.

CHAPTER VI.

[1] See the translation of the first Fargard of the *Vendidad* in the Appendix to this "Monarchy." The only other geographic notice of any considerable length which the Zendavesta contains, is in the Mithra Yasht, where the countries mentioned are Aiskata (Sagartia, Asagarta of cuneiform inscriptions?), Pourata (Parthia), Mouru (Meru, Merj, Margiana), Harôyû (Aria or Herat), Gau Sughdha (Sogdiana), and Qâirizem (Chorasmia or Kharesm). Here, again, there is no mention of Media.

[2] Haug, *Essays*, p. 224. In Bunsen's *Egypt* the date suggested is B.C. 1200 (vol. iii. p. 478).

[3] See Vol. I. pp. 408, 416.

[4] The Hellenes were an insignificant Greek race until the Dorian conquests (Herod. i. 58; Thuc. i. 2). The Latins had originally no pre-eminence among the Italic peoples. The Turks for many ages were on a par with other Tartars. The race which is now forming Italy into a kingdom has only recently shown itself superior to Lombards, Tuscans, and Neapolitans.

[5] The Exodus is indeed placed by Bunsen as late as B.C. 1320, and by Lepsius as late as B.C. 1314. But the balance of authority favors a date from 200 to 300 years earlier.

[6] Gen. x. 2.

[7] Kalisch says in his comment on the passage: "Madai—these are *unquestionably* the Medes or inhabitants of Media." (*Commentary on the Old Testament*, vol. i. p. 166.) Note that Gomer, Magog, Javan, Tubal, Meshech, Ashkenaz, Togarmah, Elishah, Tarshish, and Kittim (or Chittim) are all elsewhere through Scripture undoubtedly names of nations or countries. Note, moreover, the plural forms of Kittim and Dodanim (or Rodanim).

[8] Beros. Fr. 11. "Post hos, qui successione inconcussâ regnum obtinuerunt, derepente Medos collectis copiis Babylonem cepisse ait, ibique de suis tyrannos constituisse. Hinc nomina quoque tyrannorum Medorum edisserit octo, annosque eorum viginti quatuor supra ducentos."

[9] See Vol. I. p. 105.

[10] As Bunsen. See his *Egypt*, vol. iii. pp. 583–597.

[11] See Vol. I. p. 41.

[12] As, for instance, the same ideograph—a rude representation of a house—has the three powers of *ê*, *bit*, and *mal*—of which *ê* is Hamitic, *bit* or *beth* Semitic, and *mal* Arian.

[13] Gen. xiv. 1.

[14] Unless perhaps it be the name Arioch, which is Medo-Persic in form, and almost identical with Ariaces (Ἀριάκης), the name of a Mede or Persian in Arrian. (*Exp. Al.* iii. 8.)

[15] Herod. i. 72; v. 52; Hecat. Frs. 188, 189; Xanth. Fr. 3.

[16] Herod. iv. 21, 110–117; Strab. xi. 2, § 15; Diod. Sic. ii. 42, § 6; Plin. *H. N.* vi. 7.

[17] Herod. iv. 123. In the Greek inscriptions found in Scythia the Mæotæ of Herodotus are commonly called Mætæ (Μαῖται).

[18] Thucyd. ii. 98; Strab. vii. 5, § 7; Polyb. x. 11, § 1.

[19] Herod. v. 9.

[20] Ibid. Γειοιτο ἐὰν πᾶν ἐν τῷ μακρῷ χρόνῳ.

[21] The story of the Argonauts seems to have been in its main particulars known to Homer. (See *Il.* vii. 469; *Od.* x. 137–139; xii. 64–72.) To that of Perseus and Andromeda he does not allude; but its character is peculiarly primitive.

[22] The ethnic character of these myths, though (in one instance) vouched for by Strabo (xi. 13, § 10), may perhaps be doubted by some persons. Medea may be derived from μῆδος, "craft," or μήδομαι, "to act craftily"—and Perseus may be, and indeed has been, connected with περᾶν and πέρας, and regarded as a mere Solar epithet. (Eustath. *Comment. ad. Hom. Od.*; Paley, note ad loc.) But then mere accident would have produced an *apparent* combination of Medes with Persians in both myths; for not only is Perseus the husband of Andromeda, but Persé or Perseïs is the mother of Æetes (*Od.* x. 139; Hes. *Theog.* 957). It is a profound remark of Aristotle's Οὐ πάνυ συνδυάζεται τὰ κατὰ συμβεβηκός. (*Eth. Nic.* viii. 4, § 5.)

[23] See Vol. I. pp. 105–107.

[24] Hosea x. 14: "Thy fortresses shall be spoiled, as Shalman spoiled Beth-Arbel in the day of battle." Beth-Arbel is probably Arbela, which was among the cities that joined in the revolt at the end of Shalmaneser's reign (see Vol. I. p. 414), and which may therefore very probably have been sacked when the rebellion was put down.

[25] See Vol. I. p. 408; and compare the Black Obelisk Inscription (*Dublin Univ. Mag.* Oct. 1853, p. 424).

[26] Ctesias gave to his eight Median kings anterior to Aspadas or Astyages a period of 282 years. Assuming his date for Astyages' accession to have been the same, or nearly the same, with that of Herodotus (B.C. 593), we have B.C. 875 for the destruction of the Assyrian empire and rise of the Median under Arbaces.

[27] The "long chronology" of Ctesias was adopted, among the ancients, by Cephalion, Castor, Polybius, Æmilius Sura, Trogus Pompeius, Nicolaus Damascenus, Diodorus Siculus, Strabo, Velleius Paterculus, and others; among the ecclesiastical writers, by Clement of

Alexandria, Eusebius, Augustine, Sulpicius Severus, Agathias, Eustathius, and Syncellus; among the moderns, by Prideaux, Freret, and the French Academicians generally. Scaliger was, I believe, the first to discredit it. He was followed in the last century by the Abbé Sevin and Volney. In the present century the "long chronology" has had few advocates.

[28] Long after the superiority of the scheme of Herodotus was recognized, attempts continued to be made to reconcile Ctesias with him by supposing the list of the latter to be an *eastern* Median dynasty (Heeren's *Manual*, p. 27, E. T.), or to contain a certain number of viceroys (Clinton, *F. H.* vol. i. p. 261).

[29] Compare Vol. I. p. 417.

[30] The Persians paid tribute to Shalmaneser II. (*Black-Obelisk Inscription*, p. 424), and again to Shamas Vul. They seem to have been at this time dwelling in the immediate vicinity of the Medes, probably somewhere within the limits of Media Magna.

[31] See the Inscription of this king in the *Journal of the Asiatic Society*, vol. xix. p. 185.

[32] There are grounds, however, for suspecting that during the obscure period of Assyrian history which divides Vullush III. from Tiglath-Pileser II. (B.C. 781-744), Media became once more independent, and that she was again made tributary by the last-named monarch. That monarch even sent an officer to exercise authority in the country. (Sir H. Rawlinson in the *Athenæum*, No. 1869, p. 246.)

[33] Oppert, *Inscriptions des Sargonides*, p. 25. Compare Vol. I. p. 443.

[34] This is not stated in express terms; but Sargon says in one place that he peopled Ashdod with captives from the extreme East (*Inscriptions*, &c., p. 27), while in another he reckons Media the most eastern portion of his dominions.

[35] 2 Kings xvii. 6; xviii. 11.

[36] Oppert, *Inscriptions*, &c., p. 25.

[37] See text, p. 34.

[38] As Herodotus gives to his four Median kings a period of exactly 150 years, and places the accession of Cyrus 78 years before the battle of Marathon, he really assigns the commencement of the Median monarchy to B.C. 708 (since 480 + 78 + 150 = 708).

[39] Herodotus speaks in one place only (vii. 62) of deriving information from the Medes. He quotes the Persians as his authorities frequently (i. 1-5, 95; iii. 98, &c.).

[40] Fox Talbot, *Journal of the Asiatic Society*, vol. xix. p. 143.

[41] Probably Azer-bijan. See note 56, Chapter I.

[42] Fox Talbot, *Assyrian Texts*, pp. 15, 16; Oppert, *Inscriptions des Sargonides*, p. 57.

[43] The termination *parna* may be compared with the old Persian *frana*, which is found in Vidafrana (Intaphernes). The initial *Sitir* is perhaps *khshatra*, "crown," or possibly *chitra*, "stock." In Zanasana we have the common Medo-Persic termination *-ana* (=Gk. *-ανης*) suffixed to a root which is probably connected with *zan*, "to slay." Ramatiya has for its first element undoubtedly *râman* (acc. *râma*), "pleasant, agreeable." The remainder of the word is perhaps a mere personal suffix. Or the whole word may be a contraction of *râmô-dâitya*, "given to be agreeable." (Brockhaus, *Vendidad-Sadé*, p. 330.)

[44] So Diodorus (ii. 32) and Eusebius (*Chron. Can.* i 15). But Syncellus gives the name as Mandauces (*Chronograph.* p. 372), and so does Moses of Chorêné (*Hist. Armen.* i. 21).

[45] Moses of Chorêné substitutes for Arbianes the entirely different name Cardiceas. (*Hist. Armen.* l. s. c.) Eusebius and Syncellus take only four kings from Ctesias, and then change to the list of Herodotus.

[46] This is manifest from the number of the years which Ctesias assigns to his kings. See the subjoined table.

Ctesias.		Herodotus.	
Kings.	Yrs.	Kings, etc.	Yrs.
Arbaces.....	28 =	Interregnum.	—
Mandauces ...	50 =	Deïoces	53
Sosarmus....	30 =	Interregnum.	—
Artycas.....	50 =	Deïoces	53
Arbianes	22 =	Phraortes....	22
Artæus.....	40 =	Cyaxares	40
Artynes	22 =	Phraortes. ..	22
Astibaras	40 =	Cyaxares	40

The first critic who noted this curious method of duplication, so far as I know, was Volney. (See his *Recherches sur l'Histoire ancienne*, tom. i. pp. 144 et seq.) Heeren glanced at it in the Appendix to his *Manual* (p. 476, E. T.). I myself noted it before I found it in Volney. The only weak point in the case is with respect to the interregnum. I presume that Ctesias supposed Herodotus to reckon the interregnum at a generation—30 years, in round numbers—and introduced the change in the case of Arbaces, from 30 to 28, in order to make the principle of alterations, which pervades his list and furnishes the key to it, less glaring and palpable.

[47] Ctesias shows no great talent or skill in his invention of names. He has not half the fertility of Æschylus. (See the *Persæ*, passim.) In his Median list, Artycas, Artæus, Artynes, are but variants of one and the same name—modifications of the root *artas*, "great." (Hesych. Ἀρτάς, μέγας καὶ λαμπρός.) In his Assyrian list he mixes Greek and

Persian with Semitic names, and in one part flies off to geography for assistance. In his famous story of the joint conspiracy of Arbaces and Belesis he simply took the actual names of the satraps of Media and Assyria during the time of his own residence in Persia. (See Xen. *Anab.* vii. 8, § 25.) This last fact has, I believe, never been noticed.

[48] See Mr. Grote's *History of Greece*, vol. iii. pp. 307, 308.

[49] Herod. i. 102.

[50] It has been supposed by some that the Deïoces of Herodotus is to be identified with a certain chief of the Manni, or Minni, called *Dayaukku*, who was made a prisoner by Sargon, and settled at Hamath, B.C. 715. The close resemblance of the names is certainly remarkable; but there is no reason to regard the Manni as Medes; nor is it likely that a captured chief, settled at Hamath, *in Syria*, B.C. 715, could in B.C. 708 found a great kingdom in Media.

[51] See text, p. 84.

[52] See the *Behistun Inscription* (printed in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii. ad fin.), col. ii. par. 14, § 4.

[53] The name Phraortes in this connection is suspicious. It was borne by a Mede who raised the standard of revolt in the time of Darius Hystaspis; who, however, laid it aside, and assumed the name of Xathrites (*Beh. Inscr.* col. ii. par. 5, § 4). If Phraortes had been a royal name previously, it would scarcely have been made to give way to one which had no great associations attached to it. On the whole, it is very doubtful if the Phraortes of Herodotus ought not to be absolutely retrenched, like his Deïoces. The testimony of Æschylus, who makes Cyaxares found the Medo-Persian empire (*Pers.* 761), and the evidence of the Behistun Inscription that the Medes traced their royal race to him, and not any higher, seem to show that he was really the founder of Median independence. Still, it has not been thought right wholly to discard the authority of Herodotus, where he is not absolutely contradicted by the monuments.

[54] Κατεστρέφετο τὴν Ἀσίην [ὁ Φραόρτης], ἀπ' ἄλλου ἐπ' ἄλλο ἰὸν ἔθνος. (Herod. i. 102.) These wars may have been in other directions also, but they *must* have been in Zagros for Media to have come at the end of them into contact with Assyria. (See the continuation of the passage, ἐς ὃ στρατευσάμενος ἐπὶ τοὺς Ἀσσυρίους, κ.τ.λ.)

[55] Ὁ Φραόρτης αὐτός τε διεφθάρη, καὶ ὁ στρατὸς αὐτοῦ ὁ πολλός. (Herod. l. s. c.)

[56] Compare the case of the Israelites and the old nations of Canaan (Judg. i. 19).

[57] See Vol. I. pp. 269–270.

[58] Herod. i. 103. Herodotus does not mention slingers, but only spearmen and archers. Still, as we find slingers among the Assyrians (see Vol. I. p. 259), and among the Egyptians (Wilkinson's *Ancient Egyptians*, vol. i. p. 316), and as the sling is the natural weapon of mountaineers, we may conclude that the Medes were not without them. That the Persians used slings is well established. (Xen. *Anab.* iii. 3, § 16.)

[59] This was especially the *Persian* name (Herod. vii. 64). It is found throughout the Achæmenian inscriptions, but not in the Assyrian or Babylonian, where the term which replaces it is *Gimiri* or *Kimiri* (apparently "Cimmerians"). In the Zendavesta, *Turiya* (Turanian) is the appellative of the Scythic races.

[60] See the author's *Herodotus*, vol. iv. pp. 163, 169, 188, 204, &c.

[61] See Vol. I. pp. 493–496.

[62] Herodotus says of the Scythians that they marched from Scythia into Media by a roundabout route, ἐν δεξίῃ ἔχοντες τὸ Καυκάσιον ὄρος (i. 104). This description is exactly applicable to the route along the western shores of the Caspian, by Derbend and Bakou.

[63] The Bakou route conducts into the flat Moghan district at the mouth of the combined Kur and Aras, whence it is easy to march to Tabriz and the Urumiyeh country.

[64] Herod. i. 104.

[65] On the Scythian *physique*, see Vol. I. p. 493.

[66] As the Northern Ecbatana (see text, p. 12) and perhaps Rhages.

[67] So Herodotus (i. 103). Strabo gives the name as Madys (i. 3, § 21).

[68] This seems to be the meaning of the somewhat obscure passage, χωρὶς μὲν γαρ τῶν φόρων ἔπρησσον παρ' ἑκάστων τὸ ἑκάστοισι ἐπέβαλλον. (Herod. i. 106.)

[69] See Vol. I. p. 495.

[70] See Gibbon's *Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*, ch. lvii. (vol. v. pp. 655, 656, 4to edition).

[71] The Samnites seem to have had a right of this kind in Campania, which, probably, as much as anything, caused the revolt of the Campanians and their submission to Rome in B.C. 340. (See Arnold, *History of Rome*, vol. ii. pp. 108, 109.) Powerful Arab tribes have sometimes such a right over lands usually in the occupation of inferior tribes.

[72] Herod. i. 105.

[73] Strab. xi. 8, § 4. Σάκαι . . . τῆς Ἀρμενίας κατέκτησαν τὴν ἀρίστην γῆν . . . καὶ μέχρι Καππαδόκων, καὶ μάλιστα τῶν πρὸς Εὐξείνῳ, οὓς Ποντικοὺς νῦν καλοῦσι, προῆλθον.

[74] Herod. l. s. c.

[75] Ibid. i. 106. Herodotus says, rhetorically, in this place, that "most of the Scythians" were destroyed by this stratagem. But he admits afterwards (iv. 1) that the great bulk of the invaders returned into Scythia. It is not clear whether Strabo's notice of the origin of the Σάκαια refers to this occasion or no. After relating the extent of the Scythian ravages (see above, note

73), he says, "the *Persian* generals of the time set upon them by night as they were feasting off their spoils, and completely exterminated them."

[76] The whole struggle is summed up by Herodotus in three words—Ἐξελασθέντες ὑπὸ Μήδων οἱ Σκύθαι κ.τ.λ.

[77] Diod. Sic. ii. 34, § 2.

[78] Zarinæa is the form used by Nicolas of Damascus (Fr. 12); Zarina, by Diodorus (ii. 34, § 3).

[79] Zarina was the wife of Marmareus, the Scythian king, and accompanied him to the war, taking part in all his battles. On one occasion she was wounded, and might have been captured by Stryangæus, son-in law of the king of the Medes; but she begged so earnestly to be allowed to escape, that Stryangæus let her go. Shortly afterwards Stryangæus himself was made prisoner by Marmareus, who was about to put him to death, when Zarina interposed on his behalf, and begged his life in return for her own. Her prayer being refused, in order to save her preserver, she murdered her husband. The pair were by this time in love with one another, and peace having been made between the Sacans and the Medes, Stryangæus went to visit Zarina at her court. There he was most hospitably received; but when, after a while, he revealed the secret of his love, Zarina repulsed him, reminding him of his wife, Rhætæa, whom fame reported much more beautiful than herself, and exhorting him to show his manhood by battling bravely with an unseemly passion. Hereupon Stryangæus retired to his chamber and killed himself, having first written to reproach Zarina with causing his death. (See Nic. Dam. Fr. 12; and compare Demetrius, *De Elocut.* § 219; Tzetz. *Chiliad*, xii. 894; and Anon. *De claris mulieribus*, § 2.)

[80] Diod Sic. ii. 34, § 5.

[81] Herod. iv. 1 and 4.

[82] Scythopolis. See Vol. I. p. 496. Polyhistor considered that Scythopolis was a town of importance in the time of Nebuchadnezzar. (Polyhist. ap. Euseb. *Præp. Ev.* ix. 39.)

[83] Sacassêné, which Strabo says took its name from them (xi. 8, § 4).

[84] Herod. i. 106. Compare iv. 1.

[85] This belief rests primarily on the statements of Abydenus and Polyhistor, which connect the fall of Nineveh with the accession of Nabopolassar (Abyd. ap. Euseb. *Chr. Can.* i. 9; Polyhist. ap. Syncell. *Chronograph.* p. 396)—an event fixed by the Canon of Ptolemy to B.C. 625. The value of these writers depends of course wholly on their representing to us, where they agree, the statements of Berosus. A second ground for believing that the capture was not much later than this is contained in the Lydian war of Cyaxares, which must have been subsequent to it, yet which seems to be best dated as between B.C. 615 and B.C. 610. It is perhaps worth noticing that Eusebius places the capture in B.C. 618, which is (according to him) the twelfth year of Cyaxares. (*Chron. Can.* ii. p. 328.)

[86] Herodotus represents Cyaxares as ascending the throne 153 years before the battle of Marathon, *i.e.* in B.C. 633. He first introduces a new system of discipline, which must take *at least* one year. He then attacks Nineveh, and is recalled by the arming of the Scyths—say in B.C. 632. The massacre is 28 years afterwards, or B.C. 604. Suppose Nineveh attacked for the second time in the very next year, which is unlikely enough, but just possible; it can scarcely have fallen till the year following, or B.C. 602. This is the shortest computation that is at all reasonable. It would be quite fair to claim that two or three years must have been occupied by the organization of the army on a new system; that about the same time would probably elapse between the rejection of the Scythic yoke and the recovery of sufficient strength to attack so great a town as Nineveh; and that the siege may well have occupied two full years, as Diodorus, following Ctesias, makes it. We should then have (633—3—28—2—2 =) B.C. 598 as the Herodotean date of the capture.

[87] It is possible, but not certain, that two chapters of Ezekiel (chs. xxxviii. and xxxix.) refer to the Scythic ravages of this period.

[88] See text, p. 97.

[89] It is *possible* to tabulate the reign of Cyaxares so as to bring these events within the 12 years indicated (see text, pp. 91, 92); but their all happening within so brief a space is most improbable.

[90] Eusebius places the fall of Nineveh in the 12th year of Cyaxares (B.C. 618, according to him). This would imply that the expulsion of the Scyths was at least as early as B.C. 620. He brings the Scyths into Asia in B.C. 631, thus assigning to their domination about eleven years.

[91] Eusebius makes Phraortes reign till B.C. 629, and Cyaxares succeed him in that year. (*Chron. Can.* ii. p. 327.)

[92] See Vol. I. p. 498.

[93] The "turmæ vulgi collecticiæ, quæ à mari adversus Saracum adventabant" (Abyd. ap. Euseb. *Chron. Can.* i. 9) must, I think, have been these two nations. The opportuneness of their attack makes it probable that they acted in concert with Cyaxares.

[94] Abyd. l. s. c.; Polyhist. ap. Syncell. *Chronograph.* p. 396.

[95] "Copias auxiliares misit [Nabopolasarus], videlicet *ut* filio suo Nabuchodrossoro desponderet Amuhiam e filiabus Asdahagis unam." (Polyhist. ap. Euseb. *Chron. Can.* i. 5.) "Ut" seems to mean here ἐφ' ᾧ, "on condition that."

[96] This is implied in his proceedings. Only a king could undertake to treat

with a king, and to propose such a marriage as that above spoken of.

[97] "Misit." Polyhist. ap. Euseb. l.s.c. "Contra Ninivem impetum faciebat." Abyden. ap. eund. (i. 9).

[98] See Diod. Sic. ii. 25–28.

[99] After this capture, Arbaces, according to Ctesias, destroyed Nineveh to its foundations (*τὴν πόλιν εἰς ἔδαφος κατέσκαψεν*).

[100] The danger which the cities on the Tigris run from the spring floods may be illustrated from the recent history of Baghdad. In the year 1849, Mr. Loftus, arriving at that place on May 5, found the whole population "in a state of the utmost alarm and apprehension. . . . The rise in the Tigris had attained the unprecedented height of 22½ feet. . . . Nedjib Pasha had, a few days previously, summoned the population *en masse* to provide against the general danger by raising a strong high mound completely round the walls. Mats of reed were placed outside to bind the earth compactly together. The water was thus restrained from devastating the city—not so effectually, however, but that it filtered through the fine alluvial soil, and stood in the serdabs, or cellars, several feet in depth. It had reached within two feet of the top of the bank! On the river side the houses alone, many of which were very old and frail, prevented the ingress of the flood. It was a critical juncture. Men were stationed night and day to watch the barriers. If the dam or any of the foundations had failed, Baghdad must have been bodily washed away. Fortunately the pressure was withstood, and the inundation gradually subsided." (Loftus, *Chaldæa and Susiana*, p. 7.)

[101] There is nothing improbable in the Medes inducing the Persians to help them, or in the Babylonians getting the assistance of some Arab tribes. (See Vol. I. p. 483.) The Bactrian contingent might be a fresh body of emigrant Medes arrived from those regions.

[102] See Diod. Sic. ii. 32, § 4.

[103] See besides Abydenus and Polyhistor, Tobit xiv. 15, and Josephus (*Ant. Jud.* x. 5, § 1).

[104] The book of Tobit makes Nebuchadnezzar the actual commander.

[105] See the passage quoted at length (note 726, Chapter IX., Vol. I., *Second Monarchy*).

[106] The closest parallel to the conduct of Saracus is the self-destruction of Zimri (1 Kings xvi. 18). The unheroic spirit of the later Persians, not being able to conceive of such an act of self-immolation, ascribed the fire to a thunderbolt. (See the distorted story of the fall of Nineveh in Xenophon, *Anab.* iii. 4, §§ 11, 12; where the Assyrians are called Medes, and the Medes Persians, and where the effeminate Sardanapalus becomes an actual woman—*Μηδία γυνὴ βασιλέως.*)

[107] Nahum ii. 6, 7. The authorized version is followed mainly in this translation; but a few improvements are adopted from Mr. Vance Smith's *Prophecies concerning Nineveh*, pp. 242, 243.

[108] See Vol. I. p. 165.

[109] Mr. Vance Smith argues against this translation of the word נָמַג here, though he allows that מוּג is ordinarily "to melt, dissolve," because (he says) "the raised terraces or platforms were very solid and faced with stone." (*Prophecies*, p. 243, note 6.) But we do not know that they were ever so faced except when they formed part of the external defences of the town.

[110] The dependence of Susiana on Babylon during the Median period is shown by the book of Daniel, where the prophet goes on the king's business to "Shushan the palace in the province of Elam," during the reign of Belshazzar. (Dan. viii. 2 and 27.)

[111] See text, pp. 103, 106.

[112] Herod. i. 103. Οὗτος [Κυαξάρης] *ἐστιν . . . ὁ τὴν Ἅλυος ποταμοῦ ἄνω Ἀσίην πᾶσαν συστήσας ἑωυτῷ.*

[113] We can scarcely suppose that the submission of *Belut-Duri* (see note 640, Chapter IX., Vol. I., *Second Monarchy*) was more than this.

[114] The "Sapeirians" of Herodotus (i. 104; iii. 95; vii. 79).

[115] Herod. iii. 94; vii. 78, 79.

[116] His expression "all Asia above the Halys" (see above, note 112), is ample enough to cover the whole of this district. That he regards it as part of the Median empire, and as devolving upon Persia by her conquest of Media, seems to follow from his making no allusion to the conquest of any part of it by Cyrus or his successors.

[117] Strab. xi. 8, § 4.

[118] See text, p. 101.

[119] It was observed (see text, p. 96), that *primâ facie* the words of Herodotus seem to imply a series of wars. We notice, however, when we look more narrowly at the passage, that the expression used, *συστήσας ἑαυτῷ*, is unusual and ambiguous. It might apply to a violent subjugation, but it does not necessarily imply violence. It would be a suitable expression to use if the nations of this part of Asia came under the power of Cyaxares by *arrangement*, and not on compulsion.

[120] This is especially indicated by the Turanian character of the names of those who bear rule in these regions during the whole period covered by the Assyrian historical inscriptions (ab. B.C. 1230–650). It is further proved by the Turanian character of the language in the cuneiform inscriptions of Armenia. (See Sir H. Rawlinson in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. i. p. 537; vol. iv. p. 206.)

[121] Among Cappadocian names are

Pharnaces, Smerdis, Artamnes, Ariaarathes, Ariaramnes, Orophernes, Ariobarzanes, &c.

[122] According to Diodorus (ap. Phot. *Bibliothec.* p. 1158), Pharnaces, king of Cappadocia (ab. B.C. 650), married Atossa, sister of Cambyses, an ancestor of Cyrus the Great.

[123] The fall of Nineveh has been placed in B.C. 625 or a little later. If the eclipse of Thales is considered to be that of B.C. 610, the commencement of the Lydian war will be B.C. 615. This war could not take place till the frontier had been extended to the Halys.

[124] Three Mermnad kings had reigned 99 years according to Herodotus, 89 according to Eusebius. The Heraclidæ had reigned 505 years according to the former. The Atyadæ, who had furnished several kings (Atys, Lydus, Meles, Moxus, &c.), must be assigned more than a century.

[125] Herod. i. 7–14.

[126] *At least* four Atyadæ (see above, note 124), 22 Heraclidæ (Herod. i. 7), and four Mermnadæ, Gyges, Ardys, Sadyattes, and Alyattes.

[127] Herod. i. 7; vii. 74.

[128] Ibid. ii. 106. Compare ch. 102.

[129] This is the only possible explanation of the mythic genealogy in Herod. i. 7. (See the author's *Herodotus*, vol. i. p. 292, 2nd edition.)

[130] Ἐπὶ Ἄτυος τοῦ Μάνεω βασιλῆος. Herod. i. 94.

[131] Xanth. Lyd. Fr. 23; Nic. Dam. Fr. 26. It is perhaps scarcely necessary to observe that very little confidence can be placed in any of these traditions. They are adduced here merely as helping us to understand the spirit and temper of the people.

[132] The Mermnadæ had, I conceive, been on the throne nearly a century (85 years) when Cyaxares made his attack upon Lydia. The *history* of the Heraclidæ seems to have commenced with Ardys, the fifth ancestor of Candaules (Nic. Dam. Fr. 49), whom Eusebius makes the first king. (*Chron. Can.* i. 15; ii. p. 318, ed Mai.) These five Heraclide reigns would cover a space of about 115 years, at the (very probable) rate of reckoning indicated by Herodotus (i. 7, sub fin.).

[133] See Nic. Dam. Fr. 26. An abstract of the passage has been given by the author in his *Herodotus* (vol. i. p. 295, note 1).

[134] The same names occur in both houses, as Ardys, Sadyattes, and Alyattes (if that is equivalent to Adyattes). Ardys is common to both Mermnads and Heraclides *before* the usurpation of Gyges. (Nic. Dam. l. s. c.)

[135] The date of Herodotus, B.C. 724, is upset by the discovery that Gyges was contemporary with Asshur-banipal. (See note 626, Chapter IX., Vol. I., *Second Monarchy.*) The date of Eusebius is B.C. 698. (*Chron. Can.* ii. p. 323, ed. Mai.)

[136] Gyges was known in his lifetime as ὁ πολύχρυσος. (Archiloch. ap. Arist. *Rhet.* iii. 17.) The epithet attached to him and to his city for ages afterwards. (See Æschyl. *Pers.* 45; Alpheus in *Antholog.* i. 12; Eurip. *Iph. in Aul.* 786; Nicolaus ap. Stob. xiv. p. 87; &c.)

[137] Herod. i. 14.

[138] Ibid.

[139] Xanth. Lyd. Fr. 19; Nic. Dam. p. 50, ed. Orelli. Herodotus does not seem to have been aware of the reduction of this town, which must therefore be regarded as uncertain.

[140] Strab. xiii. 1, § 22.

[141] Archilochus celebrated the wealth of Gyges in the well-known line—οὔ μοι τὰ Γύγεω τοῦ πολυχρύσου μελει (Ar. *Rhet.* iii. 17). Mimnermus described the war between Gyges and the people of Smyrna (Pausan. iv. 21, § 3). The myth of Gyges which we find in Plato (*Republ.* ii. 3) was probably derived from an early Greek poet.

[142] The inscriptions of Asshur-bani-pal show us that the Cimmerian invasion of Asia Minor had commenced before the death of Gyges, whose last year is by no writer placed later than B.C. 662. The Scythic invasion has been already assigned to B.C. 632 or 631. (See text, pp. 91–92.)

[143] On this subject see the author's *Herodotus*, vol. iii. pp. 150–156, 2nd ed.

[144] Herodotus makes them march along the coast, the whole way; but this route is impracticable. Probably they proceeded along the foot of the Caucasus, till they reached the Terek, which they then followed up to its source, where they would come upon the famous Pylæ.

[145] See Vol. I. p. 479.

[146] The surrender of the captives appears to me a real acknowledgment of suzerainty. Asshur-bani-pal himself viewed the presents as "tribute."

[147] On the Cimmerian ravages, see Callinus, Fr. 2; Herod. i. 15; iv. 12; Strab. i. 3, § 21; xiv. 1, § 40; Callimach. *Hymn. ad Dian.* 248–260; Eustath. *Comment. ad. Hom. Od.* xi. 14; Steph. Byz. ad voc. Ἄντανδρος; and Hesych. ad voc. Ἀνύδαμις. Compare the author's *Herodotus*, vol. i. pp. 299–301, 2nd edition, and Mr. Grote's *History of Greece*, vol. ii. pp. 431–434, 2nd edition.

[148] Herod. i. 15 and 18.

[149] Ibid. i. 16; Nic. Dam. p. 52, ed. Orelli.

[150] Herod. l. s. c.

[151] Κιμμερίους ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίης ἐξήλασε. Herod. l. s. c.

[152] On the Cimmerian invasion of Cilicia, see Strab. i. 3, § 21.

[153] According to Herodotus the Cimmerians made a permanent settlement at Sinope (iv. 12); and according to Aristotle (Fr. 190) they maintained them-

selves for a century at Antandros in the Troad. Otherwise they disappear from Asia.

154 Herod. i. 73. Herodotus seems to have imagined that these Scythians were political refugees from his European Scythia.

155 On the richness and fertility of this part of Asia, see Virg. *Æn.* x. 141; Strabo, xiii. 4, § 5; and compare Sir C. Fellows's *Asia Minor*, pp. 16-42.

156 See Herod. i. 93; Soph. *Philoct.* l. 393; Plin. *H. N.* v. 29, 30; &c. Crœsus had also mines, which he worked, near Pergamus. (See Aristot. *Mirab. Auscult.* 52.)

157 Xenoph. Coloph. ap. Polluc. ix. 6, § 83; Herod. i. 94; Eustath. *ad Dionys. Perieg.* 840. The claim of the Lydians to be regarded as the inventors of coining has been disputed by some, among others by the late Col. Leake. (*Num. Hellen.* Appendix: *Journal of Classical and Sacred Philology*, vol. iv. pp. 243, 244.) I have discussed the subject in my *Herodotus* (vol. i. pp. 565, 566, 2nd edition).

158 Most Lydian coins bear the device of a crowned figure about to shoot an arrow from a bow—which seems to be the pattern from which the Persians copied the emblem on their Darics. A few have the head of a lion, or the foreparts of a lion and a bull (as Pl. VII. Fig. 1, which is supposed to have been struck by Crœsus). Both the animal forms are in this case rendered with much spirit.

159 Dice, huckle-bones, ball, &c. (Herod. i. 94.)

160 Πρῶτοι κάπηλοι ἐγένοντο. (Herod. l. s. c.)

161 Pindar related that the *magadis* or *pectis*, a harp with sometimes as many as twenty strings, had been adopted by the Greeks from the Lydians, who used it at their banquets. (Ap. Athen. *Deipn.* xiv. p. 635.) Herodotus speaks of the Lydians using both this instrument, and also the *syrinx* (Pan's pipe), and the double flute, in their military expeditions (i. 17).

162 Plato, *Repub.* iii. 10. Aristotle seems to have entertained an opposite opinion. (*Pol.* viii. 7, ad fin.)

163 Herodotus, speaking of the Lydians, so late as the time of Crœsus, says, Ἦν δὲ τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον ἔθνος οὐδὲν ἐν τῇ Ἀσίῃ οὔτε ἀνδρειότερον οὔτε ἀλκιμώτερον τοῦ Λυδίου (i. 79). They did not change their character till after the Persian conquest.

164 Herod. l. s. c.

165 Nic. Dam. Fr. 49. (*Fragm. Hist. Gr.* vol iii. p. 382).

166 Herod. i. 36-43; Nic. Dam. Fr. 49, p. 384.

167 See Vol. I. pp. 442-443.

168 The evidence of a league is found in the presence of Syennesis, king of Cilicia, at the great battle terminated by the eclipse. (See text, p. 104.) He is manifestly there as an ally of Lydia, just as Labynetus is present as an ally of Media. But if the distant and powerful Cilician monarch joined Alyattes, and fought under him, much more may we be sure that the princes of the nearer and weaker states, Caria, Phrygia, Lycia, Paphlagonia, &c., placed themselves under his protection.

169 Herod. i. 74.

170 Some regard this "*night* engagement" as identical with the battle stopped by the eclipse, when (to use the words of Herodotus) "the day became *night*" (see Bahr, ad loc.). But, strictly taken, the words of Herodotus assign the night engagement to one of the first five years, whereas the eclipse is in the sixth.

171 Διαφέρουσι δέ σφι ἐπ' ἴσης τὸν πόλεμον is the expression of Herodotus (l. s. c.).

172 It has been customary to assume that the eclipse *must have been a total one;* and the enquiries of astronomers have been directed to the resolution of the question—What total eclipses were there in Asia Minor in the 50 years from B.C. 630 to B.C. 580? But, though a total eclipse would seem to be required by the descriptive language of Herodotus, no such phenomenon is requisite for the facts of his tale, which alone can be regarded as historical. If the eclipse was *sufficient to be noticed*, it would produce naturally all the superstitious awe, and so all the other results, which Herodotus relates. It is not the mere darkness, but the portent, that alarms and paralyzes the ignorant Asiatic in such cases.

173 Herod. i. 74. Τῆς μάχης τε ἐπαύσαντο καὶ μᾶλλόν τι ἔσπευσαν καὶ ἀμφότεροι εἰρήνην ἑωυτοῖσι γενέσθαι.

174 The name occurs repeatedly in later Cilician history (Æschyl. *Pers.* 328; Herod. vii. 98; Xen. *Anab.* i. 2, § 23). Apparently it is either a royal title like Pharaoh, or a name which each king assumes when he mounts the throne.

175 If the true date of the eclipse is B.C. 610, it would fall into the reign of Nabopolassar, which covered the space between B.C. 625 and B.C. 604. If it was the eclipse of B.C. 603, of B.C. 597, of B.C. 585, or of B.C. 583, Nabopolassar would be dead, and Nebuchadnezzar would be king of Babylon.

176 Herod. i. 74, ad fin. A practice nearly similar is ascribed to the European Scyths by Herodotus (iv. 70), and to the Armenians and Iberians by Tacitus (*Ann.* xii. 47). One not very different is still found in S. Africa (Livingstone, *Travels*, p. 488). The *rationale* of the custom seems to be, as Dr. Livingstone explains, the notion that by drinking each other's blood the two parties become perpetual friends and *relations*.

177 The subjoined table will illustrate this statement:

Nebuchadnezzar and Crœsus were both brothers-in-law of Astyages.

178 I am still unconvinced by the arguments of Mr. Bosanquet, who regards the eclipse as positively fixed to the year B.C. 585. The grounds of our difference are two-fold. 1. I do not think the eclipse must necessarily have been total. (See above, note 172.) And 2. I do not regard astronomical science as capable of pronouncing on the exact line taken by eclipses which happened more than 2,000 years ago. The motions of the earth and of the moon are not uniform, and no astronomer can say that all the irregularities which may exist are known to him and have been taken into account with exactness in his back calculations. Fresh irregularities are continually discovered; and hence the calculations of astronomers as to the lines of past eclipses are continually changing. (See the long note in Mr. Grote's *History of Greece*, vol. ii. p. 418, edition of 1862.) If, however, Mr. Bosanquet should be right, and the eclipse was really that of B.C. 585, there will be no need of deranging on that account our entire scheme of Oriental chronology. The simple result will be that the battle must be transferred to the reign of *Astyages*, to which Cicero (*De Div.* i. 49), Pliny (*H. N.* ii. 12), and Eusebius (*Chron. Can.* ii. p. 331) assign it.

179 Psammetichus probably became an independent king about B.C. 647, at the time of the revolt of Saûl-Mugina. He was previously governor under Assyria. (See Vol. I. p. 478.)

180 Herodotus, who is the authority for this siege, says that it lasted 29 years (ii. 157), which is most improbable. Such a story, however, would not have arisen unless the siege had been one of unusual length.

181 2 Kings xxiii. 29; 2 Chr. xxxv. 20–23. Compare Herod. ii. 159.

182 2 Kings xxiv. 7; Berosus ap. Joseph. *Ant. Jud.* x. 11.

183 Jerem. xlvi. 2-26.

184 So Polyhistor related (Fr. 24). Like Ctesias, he called the Median monarch Astibares.

185 We cannot suppose Cyaxares to have been much less than thirty years old at his accession—especially if he had previously led into Media a band of emigrants from the Bactrian country. (See text, p. 86.) If he ascended the throne B.C. 633, which is the date of Herodotus, he would consequently be about sixty-seven in B.C. 597, the date of Jehoiakim's captivity.

186 Herod. i. 106. This number is confirmed by Ctesias (ap. Diod. Sic. ii. 34, § 1).

187 The real "Empire" must date, not from the accession of Cyaxares, but from his conquest of Nineveh, which was B.C. 625 at the earliest. From this to B.C. 558—the first year of Cyrus—is 67 years.

188 Eusebius makes Astyages ascend the throne B.C. 597; but he obtains this date by assigning to Cyrus one more year, and to Astyages three more years, than Herodotus gives them. On the former point certainly, on the latter probably, he followed the suspicious authority of Ctesias.

189 Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 3, § 2.

190 Æschyl. *Pers.* 763. *φρένες γὰρ αὐτοῦ θνητοῦ ὠκυστρόφου.*

191 Γενναιότατος. Nic. Dam. Fr. 66, p. 398.

192 Herod. i. 99; Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 3, § 8.

193 Nic. Dam. Fr. 66, pp. 398 and 402.

194 Xen. *Cyrop.* viii. 3, § 3

195 Ibid. i. 3, § 2; ii. 4, § 6, &c.

196 Ibid. i. 3, § 3.

197 Ὀφθαλμὸς βασιλέος. Herod. i. 114.

198 Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 3, § 8. Ὁ . . . *τιμὴν ἔχων προσάγειν τοὺς δεομένους Ἀστυάγους καὶ ἀποκωλύειν οὓς μὴ καιρὸς αὐτῷ δοκοίη εἶναι προσάγειν.* Compare Nic. Dam. p. 402. *Δί εὐνούχου ἐρόμενος τὴν εἴσοδον.*

199 Οἰνοχόος. Nic. Dam. p. 398; Xen. *Cyrop.* l. s. c.

200 Herod. i. 114.

201 Δορυφόροι λυχνοφόροι, θεράποντες, ῥαβδοφόροι, and καλλύνοντες—the last divided into cleaners of the Palace and cleaners of the courts outside the Palace. Nic. Dam. l. s. c.; Dino, Fr. 7.

202 Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 4, §§ 5 and 11.

203 Ibid. i. 4, § 7.

204 Herod. i. 107, 108, and 120.

205 Herodotus makes the Magi say to Astyages—*Σέο ἐνεστεῶτος βασιλῆος καὶ ἄρχομεν τὸ μέρος, καὶ τιμὰς πρὸς σέο μεγάλας ἔχομεν.* (i. 120.)

206 *Chron. Can.* ii. p. 331 ed. Mai. This ascription of the war to Astyages is evidently connected with a belief that the eclipse of Thales was that of B.C. 585.

207 Mos. Chor. *Hist. Armen.* i. 23 28.

208 This is implied in the picture drawn by Herodotus (i. 107-128), and in the brief character given by Æschylus (see above, note 190). It is expressly stated by Aristotle, who says—*Κῦρος Ἀστυάγῃ ἐπιτίθεται καὶ τοῦ βίου καταφρονῶν, καὶ τῆς δυνάμεως· διὰ τὸ τὴν μὲν δύναμιν ἐξηργηκέναι, αὐτὸν δὲ τρυφᾶν.* (*Pol.* v. 8, § 15.)

209 Moses makes Cyrus an independent prince during the reign of Astyages. He and Tigranes are in close alliance. Tigranes, and not Cyrus, attacks and defeats Astyages and kills him. After this Cyrus assists Tigranes to conquer Media and Persia, which become parts of the Armenian king's dominions. Cyrus sinks into insignificance in the narrative of Moses.

210 The Cadusian story is told by Nicolas of Damascus (pp. 399, 400), who (it may be suspected) followed Dino,

the father of Clitarchus, a writer of fair authority.

211 The name, Aphernes or Onophernes, is sufficient evidence of this.

212 Diod. Sic. ii. 33, § 3.

213 The Escurial MS. from which this fragment of Nicolas has been recovered gives both these forms. Each of them occurs once.

214 Herodotus declares this in the most express terms. Astyages, he says, was ἄπαις ἐρσενος γόνου (i. 109); so also Justin (i. 4); Ctesias, on the contrary, gives Astyages a son, Parmises (*Pers. Exc.* § 3), and Xenophon (*Cyrop.* i. 5, § 2) a son, Cyaxares. Moses of Chorêné is still more liberal, and makes him have several sons by his wife Anusia, who all settle in Armenia. (*Hist. Arm.* i. 29.) Here, as in so many other instances, the monuments confirm Herodotus. For when a pretender to the Median throne starts up in the reign of Darius, who wishes to rest his claim on descent from the Median royal house, he does not venture to put himself forward as the son, or even as the descendant, of Astyages, but goes back a generation, and says that he is "of the race of Cyaxares." (*Beh. Inscr.* col. ii. par. 5, § 4.)

215 Mos. Chor. *Hist. Armen.* i. 27 and 29.

216 Herod. i. 107.

217 Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 2, § 1.

218 Ctes. *Pers. Exc.* § 2.

219 Ibid. Compare Nic. Dam. Fr. 66, p. 399.

220 See Atkinson's *Shah-nameh*, pp. 493. 494.

221 See the attempts made to prove that Cambyses was the son of an Egyptian princess (Herod. iii. 2), and other still more wonderful attempts to show that Alexander the Great was the son of Nectanebus. (Mos. Chor. *Hist. Armen.* ii. 12; Syncell. *Chronograph.* p. 487, B.)

222 Herod. iii. 75, vii. 11; *Behist. Inscr.* col. i. par. 2, § 6.

223 Diod. Sic. ap. Phot. *Bibliothec.* p. 1158.

224 Herod. i. 107. Οἰκίη ἀγαθη.

225 Nic. Dam. Fr. 66, p. 399.

226 Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 2, § 1.

227 Ibid. i. 5, §§ 3-5.

228 Mos. Chor. *Hist. Armen.* i. 24, 25.

229 See the *Behistun Inscription*. col. i. par. 4, § 2. "There are eight of my race who have been kings before me. I am the ninth."

230 This inscription has been found on a brick brought from Senkerah. See the author's *Herodotus*, vol. i. p. 200, note 9 (2nd edition).

231 Dino, Fr. 7; Nic. Dam. Fr. 66; Justin, i. 4-6; &c.

232 Xenophon's notion of a voluntary *visit* is quite contrary to all experience, in the East or elsewhere.

233 Compare the policy of Rome as shown with respect to the Parthian and Armenian princes (Tacit. *Ann.* ii. 1-3), and to the Herods (Joseph. *Ant. Jud.* xvi. 1, § 2; &c.).

234 Arist. *Pol.* v. 8, § 15.

235 Ὀρχηστρίδας. Nic. Dam. p. 403.

236 See text, pp. 62, 63.

237 The religious ground is just touched in one or two places by Nicolas. He makes Cyrus assign as a reason for his request to leave Ecbatana a desire to offer sacrifice for the king, which apparently he cannot do anywhere but in his own country (p. 402). And he makes him claim that the gods have stirred him up to undertake his enterprise (p. 404).

238 Herod. i. 120. See above, note 215.

239 Herod. i. 107, 108, 121.

240 The story told by Herodotus is quite undeserving of credit. It is a mere sequel to the romantic tale of Mandané, Cyno, and the Harpagus, which he prefers to three other quite different stories concerning the early life of Cyrus (i. 95). The narrative of Nicolas (Fr. 66), which is followed in the text, does not come to us on very high authority; but it is graphic, thoroughly Oriental, and in its main features probable. I suspect that its chief incidents came not from Ctesias, but from Dino. (Compare Dino, Fr. 7.)

241 Compare the behavior of Darius Hystaspis towards Histiæus (Herod. v. 24).

242 Dino (l. s. c.) made the singer of the song a certain Angares, a professional minstrel. The words of the song, according to him, were the following:—"A mighty beast, fiercer than any wild boar, has been let depart to the marshes; who, if he gain the lordship of the country round, will in a little while be a match for many hunters."

243 It is not unlikely that this "Chaldæan prophecy" had for its basis the declaration of Isaiah (xlv. 1), which would have become known to the Chaldæans by their intercourse with the Jews during the Captivity.

244 Παίσας τὸν μηρόν. This energetic action marks well the inability of the Oriental monarchs to command their feelings. (Compare Herod. iii. 64; vii. 212.)

245 The numbers here are excessive. To bring them within the range of probability, we should strike off a cipher from each.

246 In the narrative of Nicolas, the father of Cyrus is called Atradates; but, as this is certainly incorrect, the name has been altered in the text.

247 Scythed chariots (ἅρματα δρεπανηφόρα), according to Nicolas; which is quite possible, as in later times they were certainly used by the Persians (Xen. *Cyrop.* vi. 1, § 30; viii. 8, § 24.)

248 Peltasts, according to Nicolas: that is, troops whose equipment was halfway between the ordinary heavy and light armed.

249 Κρημνοὶ δὲ πάντη καὶ δρυμῶνες ἀνριέ-

λαιοί τε συνεχεῖς ἦσαν. (Nic. Dam. p. 405.)

250 Χερμάσι. Ibid.

251 Nic. Dam. l. s. c. Compare Justin, i. 6; Plut. *De Virt. Mulier.* p. 246, A.

252 As Strabo, xv. 3, § 8; Diod. Sic. ix. 24, § 2; and Herod. i. 128. There is also a paragraph of Nicolas, after the *lacuna*, which is important (p. 406).

253 If we may credit Diodorus, Astyages laid the blame of his defeat on his generals, whom he cruelly punished with death. This ill-judged severity produced great discontent among the troops, who threatened to mutiny in consequence. (Diod. Sic. l. s. c.)

254 Herodotus, Nicolas, and Justin all agree that Astyages was made prisoner after battle. Ctesias said that he was taken in Ecbatana, where he had attempted to conceal himself in the palace (*Persic. Exc.* § 2). Moses made him fall in battle with Tigranes the Armenian king (*Hist. Armen.* i. 28).

255 Dan. vi. 8. Compare Esther, i. 19.

256 On the high employments filled by Medes under the Persian Kings, see text, *Fourth* and *Fifth Monarchies*, and compare Herod. i. 156, 162; vi. 94; vii. 88; Dan. ix. 1; *Beh. Inscr.* col. ii. par. 14, § 6; col. iv. par. 14, § 6.

257 "Thy kingdom is divided and given *to the Medes* and Persians." Dan. v. 28. Compare the employment of the words ὁ Μῆδος, τὰ Μηδικά, μηδισμός, κ.τ.λ. by the Greek writers, where the reference is really to the Persians.

258 See text, p. 105.

259 Some authorities, as Nicolas, extend the Median Empire much further eastward. According to this writer, not only Hyrcania and Parthia, but Bactria and Sacia (!), were provinces of the Empire governed by satraps, who submitted to the victorious Cyrus. But better authorities tell us that Cyrus had to reduce these countries. (Herod. i. 153; Ctesias, *Persic. Exc.* §§ 2 and 3.)

260 According to Herodotus, Media itself furnished to Persia 450 talents, the Caspians, and their neighbors in the Ghilan country 200, the Armenians 400, the Sapeirians or Iberians 200, the Moschi, Tibareni, and other tribes on the Black Sea, 300. Babylonia and Assyria furnished 1000 talents between them; we may suppose in about equal shares. Allowing 500 talents to Assyria, this would give as the sum annually raised by the Persians from satrapies previously included in Media, 2050 talents. A further sum must be added for Cappadocia (included in Herodotus's third satrapy)—say 200 talents; and finally, something must be allowed for Persia, say 300 talents. We thus reach a total of 2550 talents. The satrapies contained within the Assyrian Empire at its most flourishing period were the 4th (Cilicia), the 5th (Syria), half the 6th (Egypt, Cyrene, &c.), the 8th (Susiana), the 9th (Assyria and Babylonia), and a part (say half) of the 10th (Media). Cilicia gave 500 talents, Syria 350, Cissia 300, Assyria and Babylonia 1000; to which may be added for half Egypt 350, and for half Media 225—total 2725 talents.

261 If we deduct from the sum total of 2725 talents the 350 allowed for half Egypt, there will remain 2375 talents—175 *less* than the amount which accrued to Darius from the tribute of the Median provinces.

262 Fr. 66, pp. 399 and 406.

263 The "princes" appointed by Darius the Mede in Babylon (Dan. vi. 1) were not satraps, but either governors of petty districts in Babylonia, or perhaps "councillors." (See verse 7.)

264 See Vol. I. pp. 500–501.

265 If we can trust Moses, Tigranes was also "king" of Armenia.

266 Such seems to be the meaning of a very obscure passage in Herodotus (i. 134, ad fin.). It may be doubted whether there is much truth in the statement.

267 Compare note 750, Chapter IX. Vol. I., *Second Monarchy*.

268 Compare the case of Persia under Cambyses, Darius, and Xerxes.

269 On the valor of the Medes after the Persian conquest, see Herod. viii. 113, and Diod. Sic. xi. 6, § 3; and compare text, pp. 37–38.

270 See Nic. Dam. Fr. 66; pp. 404 and 406. Cyrus is represented as claiming a divine sanction to his attempt; and Astyages is regarded as having been deprived of his kingdom by a god (ὑπὸ θεῶν του)—query, Ormazd?

NOTES TO THE FOURTH MONARCHY.

CHAPTER I.

[1] See Vol. I. pp. 2-12. The only difference between Babylonia Proper under Nebuchadnezzar, and Chaldæa under Nimrod and Urukh, is the greater size of the former, arising in part from the gradual growth of the alluvium seawards (Vol. I. pp. 3, 4), in part from the extended use of irrigation by Nebuchadnezzar along the south-western or Arabian frontier.

[2] The Susianians appear by their inscriptions to have been a Cushite race, not distantly connected with the dominant race of *ancient* Chaldæa. But they retained their primitive character, while the Babylonians changed theirs and became Semitised.

[3] From the edge of the alluvium to the present coast of the Persian Gulf is a distance of 430 miles. But 80 miles must be deducted from this distance on account of the growth of the alluvium during twenty-four centuries. (See Vol. I. p. 3.)

[4] See text, p. 95.

[5] Jerem. xxvii. 3-7; xlvi. 2-26; xlix. 28-33; lii. 4-30; Dan. ii. 38; iv. 22; viii. 1-27; 2 K. xxiv. 1-7, 10-17; xxv. 1-21; 2 Chr. xxxvi. 6-20.

[6] See especially Dan. viii. 1, 2, 27.

[7] Jerem. xlvi. 2; 2 Chr. xxxv. 20.

[8] Jerem. xxvii. 3-6. Compare Ezek. xxix. 17, 18.

[9] Jerem. xlvi. 13-26; Ezek. xxix. 19, 20.

[10] The name alone is sufficient proof of this. There never was any other powerful king who bore this remarkable appellation. And Nabuchodonosor is the exact rendering of the name which the Hellenistic Jews universally adopted. (See the Septuagint, *passim*; and compare Josephus, *Ant. Jud.* x. 6, § 1; &c.)

[11] Judith, i. 7.

[12] Ibid. verse 1.

[13] Ibid. verse 7.

[14] Ibid. verse 10.

[15] Except in making Nabuchodonosor rule at *Nineveh*, and bear sway over *Persia* and *Cilicia*, the author of the Book of Judith seems to apprehend correctly the extent of his empire. It is even conceivable that, as succeeding to Assyria in the south and west, Nebuchadnezzar may have *claimed* an authority over both the Persians and the Cilicians.

[16] Beros. ap. Joseph. *c. Ap.* 19: Ἀκούσας ὁ Ναβολασσαρος ὁτι ὁ τεταγμενος σατράπης ἐν τε Αἰγυπτῳ και τοις περ. την Συριαν την Κοιλην και την Φοινικην ἀποστατης γεγονει, κ.τ.λ.

[17] Beros. ap. Joseph. *c. Ap.* 19: Κρατῆσαι δε ὁησι τὸν Βαβιλωνιον (sc. Ναβουχοδονοσορον) Αἰγυπτου, Συριας, Φοινικης, Ἀραβίας.

[18] Kinneir's *Persian Empire*, pp. 85-107; *Journal of the Geographical Society*, vol. ix. art. ii.; vol. xvi. art. i.; Loftus, *Chaldæa and Susiana*, pp. 287-315.

[19] Towards the east, between the Jerahi and the Tab or Hindyan river, and again between the Jerahi and the Kuran, the low country consists now in great part of sandy plains and morasses (Kinneir, pp. 85, 86); but a careful system of irrigation, such as anciently prevailed, would at once drain the marshes and spread water over the sandy tracts. Then the whole region would be productive.

[20] See *Journal of the Geographical Society*, vol. ix. pp. 93-97.

[21] Layard, *Nineveh and Babylon*, p. 373; *Geographical Journal*, vol. xvi. p. 50; Loftus, *Chaldæa and Susiana*, p. 308.

[22] *Geograph. Journ.* vol. ix. p. 95.

[23] Ibid. pp. 77-82.

[24] Chesney, *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. pp. 48-53; Ainsworth, *Travels in the Track of the Ten Thousand*, pp. 78, 79.

[25] Compare the description of Xenophon, *Anab.* i. 5, § 1 (quoted in Vol. I. note 47, Chapter I., *Second Monarchy*); and see Ainsworth, *Travels*, &c., pp. 76 and 81.

[26] Numerous remains of aqueducts on both banks of the river above Hit show that in ancient times such efforts were made, and that the life-giving fluid was by these means transported to considerable distances. But the works in question scarcely reach to Babylonian times.

[27] Chesney, vol. i. p. 53.

[28] On the difficulty of obtaining any great amount of pasture in this region see Xen. *Anab.* i. 5, § 5.

[29] Chesney, vol. i. p. 48.

[30] Herod. i. 185, 194; Strab. xvi. 3, § 4; Q. Curt. x. 1.

[31] See Ptolemy, *Geograph.* v. 18.

[32] Strab. xvi. 1, § 23.

[33] See Layard's *Nineveh and Babylon*, pp. 310, 312, &c.

[34] Strab. xvi. 1, § 23.

[35] Chesney, vol. i. p. 49. Compare Layard, *Nin. and Bab.* p. 312.

[36] Layard, l. s. c.

[37] Jerem. xlvi. 2.

[38] On the character of this region see Ainsworth, *Travels in the Track*, pp. 61–65.

[39] Porter, *Handbook of Syria and Palestine*, pp. 609-616.

[40] Cœle-Syria is used in this wide sense by Strabo (xvi. 2, § 21), Polybius (v. 80, § 3), Josephus (*Ant. Jud.* i. 11, § 5), and the Apocryphal writers (1 Esdr. ii. 17. 24; iv. 48; vi. 29, &c.; 1 Mac. x. 69; 2 Mac. iii. 5; iv. 8, &c

[41] This range is now known as the *Jebel Nusairiyeh*.

[42] Porter *Handbook of Syria*, pp. 581–589; Chesney, *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. pp. 387, 388.

[43] Chesney, vol. i. p. 388; Porter, p. 616

[44] This is Cœle-Syria Proper. See the description of Dionysius (*Perieg.* ll. 899, 900)—

Ἣν Κοίλην ἐνέπουσιν ἐπώνυμον, οὕνεκ' ἄρ' αὐτὴν.
Μέσσην καὶ χθαμαλὴν ὀρέων δύο πρῶνες ἔχουσιν.

Compare Stanley, *Sinai and Palestine*, p. 399.

[45] This statement is, of course, to be taken as a general one. Strictly speaking, the valley runs first due south to Apamea (50 miles); then S.S.E. to a little beyond Hamath (25 miles); then again due south nearly to Hems (20 miles); and finally S.S.W. to *Kulut-esh-Shukif* (above 100 miles).

[46] One such screen lies a little north of Baalbek: another a little north of Hems. (See Kiepert's map.).

[47] Stanley, p. 399; Porter, pp. 567, 568; Chesney, vol. i. p. 389.

[48] Mr. Porter says of the lower Orontes valley, or *El Ghab*, "The valley is beautiful, resembling the Bukâ'a; but still more fertile, and more abundantly watered." And again, "The soil is rich and vegetation luxuriant. What a noble cotton-field would this valley make! Two hundred square miles of splendid land is waiting to pour inexhausted wealth into the pocket of some western speculator." (*Handbook*, p. 619.)

[49] Ibid. p. 620.

[50] Mr. Grote estimates the length of Phœnicia at no more than 120 miles (*Hist. of Greece*, vol. ii. p. 445, 2nd edition), which is little more than the distance, as the crow flies, between Antaradus and Tyre. My own inclination is to extend Phœnicia northwards at least as high as Gabala (*Jebeleh*), and southwards at least as low as Carmel. This is a distance, as the crow flies, of full 180 miles. On the different estimates of the Phœnician coast-line, see the author's *Herodotus*, vol. i. p. 478, note 4, 2nd edition.)

[51] Scylax (*Peripl.* p. 99) says of Phœnicia that it was "in places not ten furlongs across." Mr. Grote calls it "never more, and generally much less, than 20 miles in breadth." (*Hist. of Greece*, l. s. c.) Mr. Porter speaks of the "plain of Phœnicia Proper" as having "an average breadth of about a mile." (*Handbook*, p. 396.)

[52] So Stanley (*Sinai and Palestine*, p. 263) and Twistleton (*Biblical Dictionary*, vol. ii. p. 860). Others regard the name as descriptive of the color of the race, and parallel to Edomite, Erythræan, and the like. (Kenrick, *Phœnicia*, p. 35.) On the Phœnician palm-groves, see Stanley, l. s. c.

[53] Stanley, p. 262.

[54] See 1 Kings v. 6; 2 Chr. ii. 8, 16; Ezek. xxvii. 5.

[55] Hom. *Il.* vi. 289; xxiii. 743; *Od.* iv. 614; xiii. 285; xv. 425; Herod. i. 1.

[56] Porter, *Handbook*, pp. 459, 460; Chesney, vol. i. p. 527; Lynch, *Expedition to the Dead Sea*, pp. 319 and 325.

[57] Stanley, *Sinai and Palestine*, p. 102.

[58] Porter, p. 470.

[59] Ibid. p. 465.

[60] Ibid. p. 459.

[61] This ravine is well described by Stanley (*Sinai and Palestine*, pp. 401, 402), and by Porter (*Handbook*, pp. 458, 459).

[62] Porter, pp. 495, 496.

[63] Ezek. xxvii. 18. "Damascus was thy merchant in the multitude of the wares of thy making, for the multitude of all riches; *in the wine of Helbon* and white wool."

[64] Strab. xv. 3, § 22: Οἱ *βασιλεῖς* [*τῶν Περσῶν*] *πυρὸν μὲν ἐξ Ἀσσοῦ τῆς Αἰολίδος μετῃεσαν, οἶνον δ' ἐκ Συρίας τὸν Χαλυβῶνιον.*

[65] The word first occurs in Herodotus, who generally uses it as an adjective (*ἡ Παλαιστίνη Συρίη—Σύροι οἱ Παλαιστῖνοι καλεόμενοι*), and attaches it especially to the coast-tract (ii. 104; iii. 5; vii. 89). It represents the Hebrew Philistim (פְּלִשְׁתִּים) letter for letter. Josephus always calls the Philistines *Παλαιστῖνοι*.

[66] Mr. Grove, in Dr. Smith's *Biblical Dictionary*, vol. ii. p. 663. This writer limits the name of Palestine to the tract west of the Jordan; but the present author prefers the wider sense which is more usual among moderns. (Stanley, pp. 111, 112; Robinson, vol. i., Preface, p. ix. &c.)

[67] On the traces of volcanic action in the neighborhood of the Jordan, see Robinson, vol. iii. p. 313; Stanley, p. 279; Lynch, *Narrative*, pp. 111, 115, &c.

[68] The exact elevation or depression of the several parts of the Jordan valley is perhaps not even yet fully ascertained. According to Van de Velde, the level of Merom is 120 feet above the Mediterranean. According to others it is but 50 feet above that sea. (*Geogr. Journal*, vol. xx. p. 228.)

[69] The surface of the Dead Sea is in an ordinary season about 1300 or 1320 feet below the level of the Mediterranean. Its bed is in places from 1200 to 1300 feet lower.

[70] Compare Stanley, p. 317.

[71] Ibid. p. 292.

[72] "Those who describe Palestine as beautiful," says Dean Stanley, "must either have a very inaccurate notion of what constitutes beauty of scenery, or must have viewed the country through a highly colored medium. . . . The tangled and featureless hills of the Lowlands of Scotland and North Wales are perhaps the nearest likeness, accessible to Englishmen, of the general landscape of Palestine south of the plain of Esdraelon." (*Sinai and Palestine*, p. 136.) Compare Beaufort, *Egyptian Sepulchres and Syrian Shrines*, vol. ii. p. 97; and Russegger, in Ritter's *Erdkunde*, vol. viii. p. 495.

[73] Robinson, *Researches*, vol. ii. pp. 95, 96; Van de Velde, *Syria and Palestine*, vol. i. p. 388; Grove, in Dr. Smith's *Biblical Dictionary*, vol. ii. p. 669.

[74] Stanley, p. 353; Van de Velde, vol. i. p. 386; Robinson, vol. iii. pp. 366–383.

[75] Jebel Jurmuk (in Galilee) is estimated at 4000 feet; Hebron at 3029 feet; Safed (in Galilee) at 2775 feet; the Mount of Olives at 2724 feet; Ebal and Gerizim at 2700; Sinjil at 2685; Neby Samwil at 2650; and Jerusalem at 2610. (*Biblical Dictionary*, vol. ii. p. 665.)

[76] Stanley, *Sinai and Palestine*, p. 314 ("A wide table-land, tossed about in wild confusion of undulating downs"); Porter, *Handbook of Syria*, p. 295; &c.

[77] Porter, pp. 465 and 506.

[78] A recent traveller (Rev. H. B. Tristram) gave strong testimony to this effect at the meeting of the British Association in Bath, September, 1864.

[79] *Ha-Shephêlah*, "the Shephelah" or "depressed plain," (from שָׁפֵל, "to depress,") is the ordinary term applied to this tract in the original. The LXX. generally translate it by τὸ πεδίον or ἡ πεδινή; but sometimes they regard it as a proper name. (See Jerem. xxxii. 44; xxxiii. 14; Obad. 19; 1 Mac. xii. 38.)

[80] Sharon (like Mishor, the term applied to the trans-Jordanic table-land), is derived from יָשָׁר, "just, straightforward," and thence "level." (See Stanley, *Sinai and Palestine*, p. 479, Appendix.)

[81] Strab. xvi. 2, § 27. Εἶτα δρυμὸς μέγας τις.

[82] The modern Arabs call the upper tract of Sharon by the name of Khassab, "the Reedy." (Stanley, p. 256.) In old times the reedy character of the streams was marked by the name of Kanah (from קָנֶה, "a cane"), given to one of them. (Josh. xvi. 8; xvii. 9.)

[83] Kenrick, *Phœnicia*, p. 28: Robinson, *Researches*, vol. ii. pp. 368, 376; Grove, in Smith's *Biblical Dictionary*, vol. ii. p. 672.

[84] Stanley, p. 253.

[85] Thomson, *The Land and the Book*, p. 552; Van de Velde, *Travels*, vol. ii. p. 175; Stanley, *Sinai and Palestine*, p. 254.

[86] "Le grenier de la Syrie." (Duc de Raguse, quoted in the *Biblical Dictionary*, vol. ii. p. 673, note.)

[87] The ordinary route of invaders from the south was along the maritime plain, and either round Carmel (which is easily rounded), or over the shoulder of the hills, into the plain of Esdraelon. Hence the march was either through Galilee to Cœle-Syria, or across the plain to Beth-Shean (Scythopolis), and thence by Apheca (*Fik*) and Neve (*Nawa*) to Damascus. Invaders from the north followed the same line, but in the reverse direction.

[88] Herod. iii. 5.

[89] Num. xiii. 29; Josh. x. 40; &c.

[90] Strab. xvi. 2, § 34. I think it probable that Scylax placed Idumæans between Syria and Egypt; but his work is unfortunately defective in this place. (*Peripl.* p. 102, ed. of 1700.)

[91] See 2 K. xxiv. 7. That the "river of Egypt" here mentioned is not the Nile, but one of the torrent-courses which run from the plateau to the Mediterranean, is indicated by the word used for "river," which is not נָהָר, but נַחַל. Of all the torrent-courses at present existing, the Wady-el-Arish is the best fitted to form a boundary.

[92] Palm trees are found at Akabah (Stanley, p. 22); and again at the Wady-Ghurundel (ib. p. 85).

[93] It is scarcely yet known exactly where the water shed is. Stanley places it about four hours (14 miles) north of the Wady-Ghurundel. (*Syria and Palestine*, l. s. c.)

[94] This tract, which is the original Edom or Idumæa Proper, consists of three parallel ranges. On the west, adjoining the Arabah, are low calcareous hills. To these succeeds a range of igneous rocks, chiefly porphyry, overlaid by red sandstone, which reaches the height of 2000 feet. Further east is a range of limestone, 1000 feet higher, which sinks down gently into the plateau of the Arabian Desert. (*Biblical Dictionary*, vol. i. p. 448.)

[95] Stanley, p. 88.

[96] Chesney, *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 559.

[97] Such, at least, is the common opinion; and the name Tadmor is thought to have had a similar meaning. But both derivations are doubtful. (See Stanley, p. 8, note.)

[98] Chesney, vol. i. pp. 522 and 580.

[99] This authority is proved by the march of Nebuchadnezzar through the region. (Beros. ap. Joseph. *contr. Ap.* i. 20: Αὐτὸς ὁρμήσας ὀλιγοστὸς παρεγένετο διὰ τῆς ἐρήμου εἰς Βαβυλωνα.

[100] See Vol. I. pp. 5–10.

[101] Ibid. pp. 187, 188.

[102] Kinneir, *Persian Empire*, p. 57; Chesney, *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 202.

[103] Kinneir, l. s. c.

[104] Chesney, l. s. c. The Tab was ascended in 1836 by Lieut. Whitelocke, of the Indian Navy.

[105] Kinneir, l. s. c.

[106] Chesney, vol. i. p. 200.

[107] Sir H. Rawlinson, in the *Journal of the Geographical Society*, vol. ix. p. 81.

[108] This name is commonly used in the country. It is unknown, however, to the Arabian geographers.

[109] Chesney, vol. i. p. 201; Kinneir, p. 88.

[110] Three hundred and fifty feet. (Chesney, vol. i. p. 200.)

[111] This was the conclusion of Macdonald Kinneir, who travelled from Bushire to Hindyan, and thence to Dorak. (*Persian Empire*, pp. 56, 57.)

[112] Kinneir, p. 87. This writer goes so far as to say that the Kuran, in its lower course, contains "a greater body of water than either the Tigris or the Euphrates separately considered." (Ib. p. 293.)

[113] Chesney, vol. i. p. 197; *Geographical Journal*, vol. xvi. p. 50

[114] This is the famous "Bund of Shapur," constructed by the conqueror of Valerian. The whole process of construction has been accurately described by Sir H. Rawlinson in the *Geographical Journal*, vol. ix. pp. 73–76.

[115] Hence called the Chahar Dangah (four parts) by the historians of Timur, while the left branch is called the Du Dangah (two parts). See Pétis de la Croix, tom. ii. p. 183.

[116] *Geographical Journal*, vol. ix. p. 74.

[117] Chesney, *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 196; *Geographical Journal*, vol. ix. p. 67.

[118] Bahreïn means "the two rivers."

[119] *Geographical Journal*, l. s. c.

[120] Bandi-kir is erroneously called Bundakeel by Macdonald Kinneir (*Persian Empire*, p. 87), and Benderghil by Mr. Loftus. (*Chaldæa and Susiana*, Map to illustrate journeys.) The word is formed from *kir*, "bitumen," because in the dyke at this place the stones are cemented with that substance. (*Geograph Journal*, l. s. c.)

[121] This is the estimate of Col. Chesney. (*Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 197.)

[122] *Geographical Journal*, vol. xvi. p. 52.

[123] Naturally, the Kuran has a course of its own by which it enters the Persian Gulf. This channel runs south-east from Sablah, nearly parallel to the Bah a-Mishir, and is about 200 yards broad. (Chesney, p. 199.) But almost all the water now passes by the Hafar canal — an artificial cutting — into the Shat-el-Arab.

[124] On the identity of these streams see the author's *Herodotus*, vol. i. p. 260, 2nd edition; and compare Kinneir's *Persian Empire*, pp. 104, 105; Chesney, *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 201; *Geographical Journal*, vol. ix. pp. 87–93; vol. xvi. pp. 91–94; Loftus, *Chaldæa and Susiana*, pp. 425–430.

[125] The course of the Kerkhah was carefully explored by Sir H. Rawlinson in the year 1836, and is accurately laid down in the map accompanying his Memoir. (See *Journal of the Geographical Society*, vol. ix. pp. 49–93, and map opp. p. 120.)

[126] Loftus, *Chaldæa and Susiana*, pp. 424–431.

[127] Ibid. pp. 424, 425.

[128] See an article by the author on this subject in Smith's *Biblical Dictionary*, vol. iii. pp. 1586, 1587, ad voc. ULAI.

[129] Plin. *H. N.* vi. 31.

[130] Arrian, *Exp. Al.* vii. 7.

[131] For a full account of the Sajur, see Chesney, *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 419.

[132] *Anab.* i. 4, § 9.

[133] Ainsworth's *Travels in the Track of the Ten Thousand*, p. 63; Chesney, vol. i. p. 412. Xenophon remarks that the Chalus was "full of large fish" (πλήρης ἰχθύων μεγάλων.)

[134] See Chesney, vol. i. pp. 412, 413, and Porter, *Handbook of Syria*, vol. ii. pp. 610, 611.

[135] See Chesney, vol. i. p. 394, and compare the excellent map in Mr. Porter's *Handbook of Syria*, from which much of the description in the text is taken.

[136] Mr. Porter himself regards this spring as the proper source of the Orontes. (*Handbook*, p. 575.)

[137] *Geographical Journal*, vol. vii. pp. 99, 100; vol. xxvi. p. 53; *Handbook of Syria*, p. 576. Col. Chesney erroneously places this fountain "at the foot of the Anti-Lebanon." (*Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. l. s. c.)

[138] It is called the *Ain el Asy*, or "Fountain of the El Asy" (Orontes), and is perhaps the same with the *Ain* of Numbers xxxiv. 11.

[139] From 200 to 400 feet in depth. (Porter, *Handbook*, l. s. c.)

[140] Chesney, vol. i. p. 395.

[141] Dean Stanley says the scenery here has been compared to that of the Wye (*Sinai and Palestine*, p. 400). Colonel Chesney speaks of "richly picturesque slopes;" "striking scenery;" "steep and wooded hills;" "banks adorned with the oleander, the arbutus, and other shrubs." (*Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 397.) Mr. Porter says, "The

bridle-path along the bank of the Orontes winds through luxuriant shrubberies. Tangled thickets of myrtle, oleander, and other flowering shrubs, make a gorgeous border to the stream." (*Handbook*, p. 602.) Only a little south of the Orontes, in this part of its course, was the celebrated Daphne.

142 Porter, *Handbook*, p. 576.

143 Burckhardt, *Travels in Syria*, p. 143.

144 Porter, p. 603.

145 This is Mr. Porter's explanation. (*Handbook*, p. 576.)

146 So Schwarze, as quoted by Dean Stanley (*Sinai and Palestine*, p. 275).

147 Chesney, *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 395.

148 Porter, *Handbook*, p. 575. The elevation of the watershed above the sea-level is about 3200 feet.

149 Burckhardt, *Travels in Syria*, p. 10; Chesney, *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 398.

150 Porter, p. 571; Robinson, *Later Researches*, p. 423.

151 Ibid. pp. 386, 387.

152 Chesney, *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 398.

153 Porter, p. 557. The elevation of the plain of Zebdany is about 3500 feet.

154 Col. Chesney makes this the proper source of the Barada (*Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 502). Its true character is pointed out by Mr. Porter (*Handbook*, p. 558). Compare Robinson, *Later Researches*, p. 487.

155 Porter, p. 557.

156 On the proofs of this identity see Robinson, *Later Researches*, pp. 480–484.

157 Porter, p. 555; Robinson, p. 476. The quantity of water given out by this fountain considerably exceeds that carried by the Barada above it.

158 See the excellent description in Stanley's *Sinai and Palestine*, p. 402.

159 Porter, in the *Bibliotheca Sacra*, April, 1854, pp. 329–344; Robinson, *Later Researches*, pp. 450, 451.

160 Mr. Porter estimates the course of the Barada, from the place where it leaves the mountains to the two lakes, at 20 miles. (*Handbook*, p. 496.) Its course among the mountains seems to be of about the same length.

161 These sources have been described by many writers. The best description is perhaps that of Stanley (*Sinai and Palestine*, pp. 386–391); but compare Robinson, *Later Researches*, pp. 390 and 406; and Porter, *Handbook*, pp. 436 and 445.

162 Robinson, p. 378; Porter, pp. 451, 452; Lynch, *Narrative of an Expedition to the Dead Sea*, p. 315.

163 Dr. Robinson estimates the volume of the Banias source as double that of the Hasbeiya stream, and the volume of the Tel-el-Kady fountain as double that of the Banias one. *Later Researches*, p. 395.

164 Robinson, *Researches*, vol. iii. p. 340.

165 See Col. Wildenbruch's account in the *Journal of the Geographical Society*, vol. xx. p. 228; and compare Lynch, *Narrative*, p. 311; Porter, *Handbook*, p. 427. Col. Chesney exactly inverts the real facts of the case. (*Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 400.

166 The fall between the lakes of Merom and Tiberias appears to be from 600 to 700 feet. The direct distance is little more than 9 miles. As the river does not here meander much, its entire course can scarcely exceed 13 or 14 miles. According to these numbers, the fall would be between 43 and 54 feet per mile.

167 Col. Wildenbruch, in *Geographical Journal*, vol. xx. p. 228. Compare Porter, *Handbook*, p. 427; Lynch, *Narrative*, p. 311; Petermann, in *Geographical Journal*, vol. xviii. p. 103; &c.

168 The 70 miles of actual length are increased by these multitudinous windings to 200. (*Geographical Journal*, vol. xviii. p. 94, note; Stanley, *Sinai and Palestine*, p. 277.) The remark of the English sailors deserves to be remembered:—"The Jordan is the crookedest river what is." (*Journal of the Asiatic Society*, vol. xviii. p. 113.)

169 Stanley, p. 276.

170 Porter, *Handbook*, p. 321.

171 Ibid. p. 321. Mr. Porter is the authority for this entire notice of the Hieromax. He is far more accurate than Col. Chesney. (*Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 401.)

172 Porter, *Handbook*, p. 310; *Biblical Dictionary*, vol. i. p. 909.

173 Chesney, vol. i. p. 401; Irby and Mangles, p. 304; Burckhardt, *Travels in Syria*, p. 345.

174 Petermann, in the *Journal of the Geographical Society*, vol. xviii. p. 95.

175 Chesney, l. s. c.

176 See Vol. I. p. 11.

177 Ibid. p. 126.

178 So Col. Chesney (*Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 415). Mr. Ainsworth combats the view, and endeavors to show that the Daradax was a branch of the Euphrates. (*Travels in the Track*, pp. 65, 66.)

179 Chesney, l. s. c.

180 Chesney (*Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 413).

181 Only one lake is recognized by the early travellers and map makers. Even Col. Chesney, writing in 1850, knows apparently but of one. (*Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 502.) The *three* lakes were, I believe, first noticed by Mr. Porter, who gave an account of them in the *Journal of the Geographical Society*, vol. xxvi. pp. 43–46, and in the *Journal of Sacred Literature*, vol. iv. pp. 246–259.

182 See Mr. Porter's *Handbook*, p. 497.

183 See the map of Syria attached to

the *Handbook*, and likewise to Dr. Robinson's *Later Researches*, ad fin.

[184] Porter, *Handbook*, p. 496.

[185] Ibid. p. 497.

[186] Great credit is due to the Americans for the spirit which conceived and carried out Captain Lynch's Expedition. The results of the Expedition have been made public partly by means of the *Official Report* published at Baltimore in 1852, but in more detail by Captain Lynch's private *Narrative*, published at London in 1849. An excellent digest of the information contained in these volumes, as well as of the accounts of others, has been compiled by Mr. George Grove, and published in the third volume of Dr. Smith's *Biblical Dictionary*. pp. 1173–1187.

[187] The natives call the peninsula the *Lisan*, comparing its shape with that of the human "tongue."

[188] The passage is narrowed not only by the projecting "tongue," but also by the fact that directly opposite the tongue there is an extensive beach, composed of chalk, marl, and gypsum, which projects into the natural basin of the lake, a distance of two miles, while the tongue projects about six. Thus the channel is reduced to two miles, or in dry seasons to one. (See Irby and Mangles, *Travels*, p. 454.)

[189] Grove, in *Biblical Dictionary*, vol. i. p. 1174. All these measurements are, it must be remembered, liable to a certain amount of derangement according to the time of year and the wetness or dryness of the season. Lines of driftwood have been remarked, showing in places a difference of *several miles* in the water edge at different seasons. (Robinson, *Researches*, vol. ii. pp. 488 and 672.)

[190] Irby and Mangles, *Travels*, passim.

[191] Grove, in *Biblical Dictionary*, vol. i. p. 1174.

[192] Seetzen, *Works*, vol. i. p. 428; vol. ii. p. 358; Lynch, *Narrative*, p. 199; Robinson, *Researches*, vol. ii. p. 235.

[193] Setting aside a single barometrical observation—that of Von Schubert in 1837—all the other estimates, however made, give a depression varying between 1200 and 1450 feet. See Mr. Grove's note, *Biblical Dictionary*, vol. i. p. 1175.)

[194] The lake *Assal*, on the Somauli coast, opposite Aden, is said to be depressed to this extent. (Murchison, in *Geographical Journal*, vol. xiv. p. cxvi.)

[195] Compare *Geographical Journal*, vol. x. p. 7.

[196] The waters of Lake Elton (*Ielton skoë*) contain from 24 to 28 per cent. of solid matter, while those of the "Red Sea" near Perekop contain about 37 per cent. The waters of the Dead Sea contain about 26 per cent.

[197] Porter, *Handbook*, p. 418; Stanley, *Sinai and Palestine*, p. 362.

[198] Lynch, *Narrative*, p. 95.

[199] Porter, in *Biblical Dictionary*, vol. i. p. 676.

[200] Schubert estimated the depression of the Sea of Tiberias at 535 Paris feet (*Reise*, vol. iii. p. 231); Bertou at 230·3 metres, or about 700 feet (*Bulletin de la Société de Géogr.* Oct. 1839). Lynch, in his *Narrative* (ed. of 1852), Preface, p. vii., calls it 312 feet; and hence probably Stanley's estimate of 300 (*Sinai and Palestine*, p. 276). Mr. Porter, in 1860, calls it 700 feet (*Biblical Dictionary*, vol. i. p. 676). Mr. Ffoulkes, in the same year, says it is 653 feet (ibid. p. 1130). It is to be hoped that a scientific survey of the whole of Palestine will be made before many years are over, and this, with other similar questions, finally settled.

[201] Lynch, *Narrative*, p. 96.

[202] This has been generally assumed; but there are really very slight grounds for the assumption. Merom is mentioned but in one passage of Scripture (Josh. xi. 5–7); and then not at all distinctly as a lake. Josephus calls the *Bahr-el-Huleh* the Semechonitis.

[203] See the remarks of Col. Wildenbruch in the *Journal of the Geographical Society*, vol. xx. p. 228.

[204] Dean Stanley gives the dimensions of the lake as 7 miles by 6 (*Sinai and Palestine*, p. 382); Col. Chesney as 7 miles by 3½ (*Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 399, note); Mr. Porter as 4½ miles by 3½ (*Handbook*, p. 435); Dr. Robinson as from 4 to 5 geographical miles by 4 (*Researches*, vol. iii. p. 430); Mr. Grove as 3 miles in each direction (*Biblical Dictionary*, vol. ii. p. 333).

[205] See above, note 164.

[206] Chesney, vol. i. p. 400.

[207] Pocock gives the dimensions of the Lake of Hems as 8 miles by 3 (*Description of the East*, vol. i. p. 140); Col. Chesney makes them 6 miles by 9 (*Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 324). Dr. Robinson says the lake is "two hours in length by one in breadth" (*Later Researches*, p. 549), or about 6 miles by 3.

[208] *Tabulæ Syriæ*, ed. Köhler, p. 157.

[209] Robinson, *Later Researches*, l. s. c.

[210] Chesney, vol. i. p. 396.

[211] These dimensions, given by Rennell (*Illustrations of the Expedition of Cyrus*, p. 65), seem to be approved by Mr. Ainsworth (*Travels in the Track*, p. 62, note), who himself explored the lake.

[212] Chesney, *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 396.

[213] Rennell, *Illustrations of the Expedition of Cyrus*, p. 65.

[214] Ainsworth, *Researches in Mesopotamia*, p. 299.

[215] Chesney, vol. i. p. 397.

[216] Famous for its abundant fish. (Chesney, vol. i. p. 395.)

[217] Robinson, *Later Researches*, p. 548.

[218] *Journal of Asiatic Society*, vol. xvi. p. 8; Lynch, *Official Report*, p. 110. This is probably the ancient Phiale, which was believed to supply the foun-

tain at Banias. (Joseph. *B. J.* iii. 10, § 7.)

[219] See Vol. I. pp. 14, 15.

[220] Herod. i. 189. Xenophon calls it "a great city" (πόλις μεγάλη, *Anab.* ii. 4, § 25). Strabo says it had a considerable trade (xvi. 1, § 9).

[221] Herodotus, Strabo, and Arrian (*Exp. Alex.* vii. 7) place it on the Tigris. Xenophon places it on the Physcus (*Hupuska*) or Diyaleh.

[222] Sir H. Rawlinson in the author's *Herodotus* (vol. i. p. 261, note 5, 2nd edition).

[223] Sitacé is the form commonly used by the Greeks (Xen. *Anab.* ii. 4, § 13; Ælian, *Hist. An.* xvi. 42; &c.); but Stephen of Byzantium has Psittacé. In the cuneiform inscriptions the name is read as *Patsita*, without the Scythic guttural ending.

[224] Sittacênê is made a province of Babylonia by Strabo (xv. 3, § 12). In Ptolemy it is a province of Assyria (*Geograph.* vi. 1).

[225] Abydenus ap. Euseb. *Præv. Ev.* ix. 41.

[226] Damascus, though destroyed by Tiglath-Pileser II., probably soon rose from its ruins, and again became an important city.

[227] For a good description of the situation of Susa see Loftus, *Chaldæa and Susiana*, p. 347. Compare the *Journal of the Geographical Society*, vol. ix. pp. 68–71.

[228] Herod. v. 53. Strabo ascribes the foundation to Tithonus, Memnon's father (xv. 3, § 2).

[229] Diod. Sic. ii. 22; iv. 75; Pausan. x. 31, § 2.

[230] *Geographical Journal*, vol. ix. p. 89.

[231] Herod. i. 188; Plutarch, *De Exsil.* p. 601, D; Athen. *Deipnosoph.* ii. p. 171. Milton's statement—

> "There Susa by Choaspes' amber stream,
> The drink of *none but* kings,"

is an exaggeration; for which, however, there is some classical authority. (Solinus, *Polyhist.* § 41.)

[232] Loftus, *Chaldæa and Susiana*, l. s. c.

[233] Dan. viii. 2.

[234] Ibid. verse 27.

[235] There never was much ground for this identification, since Carchemish, "the fort of Chemosh," is clearly quite a distinct name from Cir-cesium. The latter is perhaps a mode of expressing the Assyrian *Sirki*.

[236] See Vol. I. p. 385.

[237] The importance of Tyre at this time is strongly marked by the prophecies of Ezekiel (xxvi. 3–21; xxvii. 2–36; xxviii. 2–19; &c.), which barely mention Sidon (xxviii. 21–23; xxxii. 30).

[238] The strength of Ashdod, or Azotus, was signally shown by its long resistance to the arms of Psammetichus (Herod. ii. 157). The name is thought to be connected with the Arabic *shedeed*, "strong."

[239] See Vol. I. p. 136.

[240] See text, pp. 93, 95, 96, &c.

[241] Gen. xvi. 12.

[242] Egypt appears to have held Syria during the 18th and 19th dynasties (ab. B.C. 1500–1250), and to have disputed its possession with Assyria from about B.C. 723 to B.C. 670. In later times the Ptolemies, and in still later the Fatimite Caliphs, ruled Syria from Egypt. In our own days the conquest was nearly effected by Ibrahim Pasha.

[243] The Egyptian armies readily crossed it during the 18th and 19th dynasties—the Assyrians under Sargon and his successors—the Persians under Cambyses, Darius, Artaxerxes Longimanus, Mnemon and Artaxerxes Ochus—the Greeks under Alexander and his successors—the Arabians under Amrou and Saladin—the French under Napoleon. As the real desert does not much exceed a hundred miles in breadth, armies can carry with them sufficient food, forage, and water.

[244] See text, p. 134.

[245] For the naval power of Egypt at this time, see Herod. ii. 161 and 182.

CHAPTER II.

[1] See text, pp. 22–25.

[2] See Vol. I. pp. 139, 140.

[3] The average elevation of the Mons Masius is estimated at 1300 feet. (Ainsworth, *Researches in Mesopotamia*, p. 29.) Some of its peaks are of course considerably higher. Amanus is said to obtain an elevation of 5387 feet. (Chesney, *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 284.) The greatest height of Lebanon is 10,200 feet (*Nat. History Review*, No. V. p. 11); its average height being from 6000 feet to 8000. Hermon is thought to be not much less than 10,000. (Porter, *Handbook*, p. 455.)

[4] See Vol. I. pp. 18–20 and 139, 140.

[5] Loftus, *Chaldæa and Susiana*, p. 332. For the great heat of the region in ancient times, see Strabo, xv. 3, § 10.

[6] Loftus, pp. 304, 311, &c.; Kinneir, *Persian Empire*, p. 107.

[7] This is the temperature of the *serdaubs* at Baghdad, when the temperature of the open air is about 120°. (See Vol. I. p. 18.)

[8] Kinneir, l. s. c.

[9] Mr. Loftus says: "The temperature was high, but it was perfectly delightful compared with the furnace we had recently quitted at Mohammerah." (*Chaldæa and Susiana*, p. 307.)

[10] Loftus, pp. 290, 307; Kinneir, p. 106.

[11] Kinneir, p. 107.

[12] Loftus, p. 310; Kinneir, l. s. c.

[13] Kinneir, l. s. c.

[14] "Nowhere," says Mr. Loftus, "have I seen such rich vegetation as that which clothes the verdant plains of Shush" (p. 346). "It was difficult to ride along

the Shapur," writes Sir H. Rawlinson, "for the luxuriant grass that clothed its banks; and all around the plain was covered with a carpet of the richest verdure." (*Journal of the Geographical Society*, vol. ix. p. 71.)

[15] Chesney, *Euphr. Exp.* vol. i. p. 533.

[16] Ibid. p. 534; Robinson, *Researches*, vol. ii. p. 97; Grove, in Smith's *Biblical Dictionary*, vol. ii. p. 692; Josephus, *B. J.* iv. 8, § 3.

[17] Chesney, l. s. c.; Grove, p. 693.

[18] Seetzen, vol. ii. p. 300; *Correspondance de Napoléon*, No. 3993.

[19] Grove, l. s. c.

[20] Robinson, *Researches*, vol. iii. pp. 221, 282, &c.

[21] Grove, l. s. c.; Robinson, vol. ii. p. 99.

[22] Robinson, l. s. c.

[23] Layard, *Nineveh and Babylon*, p. 364.

[24] Chesney, *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 578.

[25] Wildenbruch, as quoted by Mr. Grove in Smith's *Biblical Dictionary*, vol. ii. p. 692.

[26] Kinneir, *Persian Empire*, p. 86; Loftus, *Chaldæa and Susiana*, p. 241.

[27] Beaufort, vol. ii. p. 223.

[28] Loftus, l. s. c.

[29] Kinneir, l. s. c.

[30] See Niebuhr, *Description de l'Arabie*, pp. 7, 8; Burckhardt, *Travels*, p. 191; Chesney, *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. pp. 579, 580.

[31] See the description of Dionysius the geographer at the head of the text of this chapter, and compare Herod. i. 193; Amm. Marc. xxiv. 3; Zosim. iii. pp. 173–179.

[32] Ἔκπυρον καὶ καυματηρόν. Strab. xv. 3, § 10.

[33] Ibid. Τὰς γοῦν σαύρας καὶ τοὺς ὄφεις, θέρους ἀκμάζοντος τοῦ ἡλίου κατὰ μεσημβρίαν διαβῆναι μὴ φθάνειν τὰς ὁδοὺς τὰς ἐν τῇ πόλει ἀλλ' ἐν μέσαις περιφλέγεσθαι.

[34] Bevan, in Smith's *Biblical Dictionary*, vol. i. p. 631; Stanley, *Sinai and Palestine*, p. 121.

[35] See an article on "The Climate of Palestine in Modern compared to Ancient Times," in the *Edinburgh New Philosophical Journal*, April, 1862.

[36] Berosus, Fr. 1, § 2.

[37] See Vol. I. pp. 20–22.

[38] Niebuhr says strikingly on this subject: "Woher also kommt das Getreide? Es ist eine unmittelbare Ausstattung des menschlichen Stammes durch Gott; allen ist etwas gegeben; den Asiaten gab er eigentliches Korn, den Americanern Mais. Dieser Umstand verdient ernstliche Erwägung; er ist eine der handgreiflichen Spuren von der Erziehung des menschlichen Geschlechtes durch Gottes unmittelbare Leitung und Vorsehung." (*Vorträge über alte Geschichte*, vol. i. p. 21.)

[39] Millet, which is omitted by Berosus, is mentioned among Babylonian products by Herodotus (i. 193).

[40] Herod. l. s. c.; Strab. xvi. 1, § 14.

[41] Three hundred fold. (Strab. l. s. c.)

[42] See Vol. I. p. 24.

[43] See Vol. I. p. 23.

[44] Strab. xv. 3, § 11.

[45] Ibid. xvi. 1, § 6.

[46] The sculptures of Asshur-bani-pal, representing his wars in Susiana, contain numerous representations of palm-trees—particularly by towns. See especially Pl. 49 in Layard's *Monuments of Nineveh*, Second Series.

[47] The Assyrian sculptures represent at least two, if not three, other kinds of trees as growing in Susiana. (See the *Monuments*, Second Series, Pls. 45, 46, and 49.)

[48] Loftus, *Chaldæa and Susiana*, pp. 270, 346; Ainsworth, *Researches*, p. 132; *Geograph. Journal*, vol. ix. p. 70.

[49] Ibid. vol. ix. pp. 57, 94, 96, &c.

[50] Strab. xv. 3, 10.

[51] Kinneir, *Persian Empire*, p. 107. Among the fruits expressly mentioned are lemons, oranges, grapes, apricots, melons, cucumbers (Loftus, pp. 313, 314), and the *Arab khozi*, or "Arab nut" (ib. p. 307).

[52] Ainsworth, *Researches*, p. 49.

[53] Ibid. p. 48.

[54] Pocock, *Description of the East*, vol. ii. p. 168.

[55] Chesney, *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 107.

[56] Mr. Porter, speaking of the lower valley of the Orontes, exclaims—"What a noble cotton-field would this valley make!" (*Handbook*, p. 619). And again he says of the tract about the lake of Antioch: "The ground seems adapted for the cultivation of cotton" (ib. p. 609).

[57] See Vol. I. pp. 196, 400, &c.

[58] Mr. Ainsworth speaks of one near Bir as measuring 36 feet in circumference, and of another, in the vicinity of the ancient Daphne, measuring 42 feet. (*Researches*, p. 35.)

[59] See Porter, *Handbook*, pp. 598, 609; Ainsworth, p. 305; Chesney, vol. i. p. 432.

[60] Ibid. pp. 408, 428-430; Porter, p. 602.

[61] Chesney, vol. i. pp. 427, 439; Porter, pp. 616, 617; Ainsworth, p. 292. In ancient times the wine of Laodicea (*Ladikiyeh*) was celebrated, and was exported to Egypt in large quantities. (Strab. xvi. 2, § 9.)

[62] Chesney, vol. i. p. 442.

[63] Porter, p. 615.

[64] Chesney, vol. i. p. 439.

[65] Ibid. p. 469; Porter, p. 403.

[66] Jericho was known as "the city of Palms" (Deut. xxxiv. 3; Judg. i. 16. iii. 13), from the extensive palm-groves which surrounded it. (Strab. xvi. 2, § 41; Joseph. *B. J.* iv. 8, § 3.) Engedi was called Hazazon-Tamar, "the felling of Palms" (Gen. xiv. 7). The palms of Jericho were still flourishing in the days of the Crusaders. (Stanley, *Sinai and Palestine*, p. 143.)

[67] Robinson, *Researches*, vol. ii. p. 265;

Hooker, in Smith's *Biblical Dictionary*, vol. ii. p. 685.

[68] Hooker, in Smith's *Biblical Dictionary*, l. s. c.

[69] Porter, p. 404; Hooker, l. s. c.; Grove, in *Bib. Dic.* vol. ii. p. 668.

[70] Hooker, *B. D.* ii. p. 684; Chesney, vol. i. p. 512.

[71] Hooker, pp. 684-688; Chesney, vol. i. pp. 535-537.

[72] As the *Quercus Cerris*, the *Q. Ehrenbergii* or *castaneæfolia*, the *Q. Toza*, *Q. Libani*, and *Q. mannifera;* the *Juniperus communis*, *J. fœtidissima*, and others. (Hooker, p. 688.)

[73] Ibid. pp. 683, 689.

[74] Ibid. p. 684; Chesney, vol. i. pp. 455, 480, &c.

[75] These springs continue productive to the present day. They have been well described by the late Mr. Rich. (*First Memoir on Babylon*, pp. 63, 64.)

[76] Herod. i. 179. Sir G. Wilkinson believes that he has found a mention of bitumen from Hit as early as the reign of Thothmes III. in Egypt. (See the author's *Herodotus*, vol. i. p. 254, note 5, 2nd edition.)

[77] Herod. vi. 119; *Journal of the Geographical Society*, vol. ix. p. 91.

[78] *Geograph. Journal*, l. s. c.

[79] Strab. xvi. 2, § 42; Tacit. *Hist.* v. 6; Plin. *H. N.* v. 16.

[80] See text, p. 143.

[81] Ibid. pp. 143, 144.

[82] The ridge of Usdum at the south-western extremity of the Dead Sea is a mountain of rock-salt. Robinson, *Researches*, vol. ii. p. 482.) A little further to the north is a natural salt pan, the *Birket el Khulil*, from which the Arabs obtain supplies. The Jews say that the Dead Sea salt was anciently in much request for the Temple service. It was known to Galen under the name of "Sodom salt" (ἅλες Σοδομηνοι, *De Simpl. Med. Facult.* iv. 19). Zephaniah (ab. B.C. 630) mentions "salt-pits" in this neighborhood (ii. 9).

[83] Chesney, vol. i. p. 526. Salt was procurable also from the bitumen-pits at Hit (Ainsworth's *Researches*, p. 85) and Ardericca (Herod. vi. 119).

[84] Balls of nearly pure sulphur are found on the shores of the Dead Sea not unfrequently. (Anderson, in Lynch's *Official Report*, pp. 176, 180, 187, &c.) Nitre is found according to some travellers (Irby and Mangles, pp. 451, 453); but their report is not universally credited. (See Grove, in Smith's *Biblical Dictionary*, vol. iii. p. 1183 *a*.)

[85] Deut. viii. 9. Compare Euseb. *H. E.* viii. 15, 17.

[86] Silver has been found in the Anti-Lebanon in modern times. (See Burckhardt, *Travels*, pp. 33, 34.)

[87] Dionys. *Perieg.* ll. 1073-1077.

[88] Ibid. ll. 1011-1013.

[89] Plin. *H. N.* xxxvii. 7. "Sarda laudatissima circa Babylonem."

[90] Ibid. xxxvii. 9.

[91] Ibid. xxxvii. 10 (§ 54).

[92] See King, *Antique Gems*, p. 45. Some have regarded the cyanus as the sapphire.

[93] Theophrastus, *De Lapid.* 55 (p. 399, ed. Heins.).

[94] As the *Bucardia* (Plin. *H. N.* xxxvii. 10, § 55), the *Mormorion* (ibid. § 63), and the *Sagda* (§ 67).

[95] Ainsworth, *Researches*, pp. 90, 91.

[96] Ib. *Travels in the Track*, p. 82.

[97] See above, Vol. I. pp. 16 and 25.

[98] Xen. *Anab.* i. 5, § 5.

[99] Most of these animals are mentioned in the inscription of Asshur-izirpal, which records the results of his hunting in Northern Syria and the adjacent part of Mesopotamia. (See Vol. I. p. 401.) Those not found in that list are mentioned in Scripture among the animals of Palestine.

[100] Lions are represented in early Babylonian reliefs (Loftus, p. 238). They are found at the present day in Susiana (Loftus, p. 332), in Babylonia (ib. p. 264), on the middle Euphrates and Khabour (Layard, *Nineveh and its Remains*, vol. ii. p. 48; *Nin. and Bab.* p. 295); and in Upper Syria (Chesney, vol. i. p. 442). Anciently they were common in Palestine (Judg. xiv. 5; 1 K. xiii. 24; xx. 36; 2 K. xvii. 25; &c.). Bears were likewise common in Palestine (1 Sam. xvii. 34; 2 K. ii. 24; &c.). They are still found in Hermon (Porter, p. 453), and in all the wooded parts of Syria and Mesopotamia (Ainsworth, in Chesney's *Euphr. Exp.* vol. i. p. 728). The other animals mentioned are still diffused through the whole region.

[101] Xen. *Anab.* i. 5, § 2. The frequent mention of the wild ass by the Hebrew poets (Job vi. 5; xxiv. 5; xxxix. 5; Is. xxxii. 14; Jer. ii. 24; Hos. viii. 9; &c.) seems to imply that the animal came under their observation. This would only be if it frequented the Syrian desert.

[102] As in Susiana (Ainsworth, *Researches*, pp. 86, 137), Babylonia (see Vol. I. p. 26), parts of Mesopotamia (Chesney, vol. i. p. 728), Syria (ibid. p. 536), and Palestine (Lynch, *Narrative*, p. 218).

[103] See Vol. I. pp. 298, 299, 485.

[104] The hare is sometimes represented upon Babylonian cylinders. We see it either lying down, or carried in the hand by the two hind legs, much as we carry hares now-a-days. [Pl. VII. Fig. 3.]

[105] This list is given on the authority of Mr. Ainsworth (*Researches*, pp. 37-42), with the two exceptions of the wild-cat and the badger. These are added on the authority of Sir H. Rawlinson.

[106] The officers of Colonel Chesney's expedition are said to have seen several times some kind of crocodile or alligator which lived in the Euphrates. (Chesney, vol. i. p. 589; Ainsworth's *Re-*

searches, p. 46.) But they failed to procure a specimen.

[107] Ainsworth, in Chesney's *Euphr. Exp.* vol. i. p. 728.

[108] Chesney, vol. i. p. 442; Layard's *Nin. and Bab.* p. 296.

[109] See Mr. Ainsworth's account of the Mesopotamian birds in his *Researches*, pp. 42-45; and compare the list in Col. Chesney's work, Appendix to vol. i. pp. 730, 731.

[110] The capercailzie or cock of the wood, and two kinds of pheasants, frequent the woods of northern Syria, where the green parrot is also found occasionally (Chesney, vol. i. pp. 443 and 731). Eagles are seen on Hermon (Porter, p. 453), Lebanon, and in upper Syria (Chesney, vol. i. p. 731); locust-birds in Upper Syria (ib. p. 443) and Palestine (Robinson, vol. iii. p. 252); the becafico is only a bird of passage (Chesney, vol. i. p. 731); the humming-bird is said to have been seen by Commander Lynch at the southern end of the Dead Sea (*Narrative*, p. 209); but this fact requires confirmation.

[111] Xen. *Anab.* i. 5, § 2. According to Mr. Tristram, the ostrich is still an occasional visitant of the *Belka*, the rolling pastoral country immediately east of the Dead Sea (see his *Report on the Birds of Palestine*, published in the *Proceedings of the London Zoölogical Society*, Nov. 8, 1864).

[112] Mr. Houghton believes the bittern to be intended by the *kippôd* of Scripture, which is mentioned in connection with both Babylon (Is. xxxiv. 11) and Nineveh (Zeph. ii. 14). See Smith's *Biblical Dictionary*, vol. iii. Appendix, p. xxxi.

[113] The bittern was not observed by Col. Chesney or Mr. Ainsworth. Nor is it noticed by either Mr. Loftus or Mr. Layard. Col. H. Smith says he was "informed that it had been seen on the ruins of Ctesiphon" (Kitto, *Biblical Cyclopædia*, ad voc. *Kippôd*); but I find no other mention of it as a habitant of these countries.

[114] See Mr. Vincent Germain's description in Col. Chesney's work, vol. i. pp. 731, 732.

[115] Chesney, vol. i. p. 108.

[116] See Mr. Ainsworth's list in Col. Chesney's work, vol. i. p. 739.

[117] Ainsworth, *Researches*, p. 45.

[118] Chesney, vol. i. p. 444.

[119] Robinson, *Researches*, vol. iii. p. 261. Commander Lynch speaks of five kinds of fish—all good—as produced by this lake (*Narrative*, p. 96); but he can only give their Arabic names.

[120] Chesney, vol. i. pp. 395 and 397.

[121] Ainsworth, *Researches*, p. 46.

[122] Strab. xvi. 1, § 7.

[123] Chesney, vol. i. p. 444.

[124] See the sculptures of Asshur-banipal, which represent his campaigns in Susiana, especially those rendered by Mr. Layard in his *Monuments*, Second Series, Pls. 45 and 46.

[125] Layard, *Nineveh and Babylon*, p. 449, note.

[126] Ibid. p. 472.

[127] Herod. i. 192. Compare the 300 stallions and 30,000 mares, which Seleucus Nicator kept in the Orontes valley, near Apamea. (Strab. xvi. 2, § 10.)

[128] See Pl. XXXIII. Fig. 2, Vol. I.

[129] Cullimore, *Cylinders*, No. 63; Lajard, *Culte de Mithra*, Pls. xvi ——— xxxvii. 2; xxxviii. 1, &c.

[130] Herod. i. s. c.

[131] Ctesias, *Indica*, § 5.

[132] Judg. vii. 12; 1 Sam. xxx. 17.

[133] Gen. xxxvii. 25.

[134] Ibid. xxiv. 61; xxxi. 17.

[135] Isaiah xxi. 7.

[136] Among the beasts hunted by the Assyrian kings are thought to be wild buffaloes. (See Vol. I. pp. 401, 402.)

[137] On the buffaloes of these districts see Loftus, *Chaldæa and Susiana*, pp. 94, 392; Layard, *Nineveh and Babylon*, p. 566; Ainsworth, *Researches*, p. 137.

[138] See above, note 100. The tablet is figured by Mr. Loftus, p. 258.

[139] Cullimore, *Cylinders*, Nos. 36, 91, 92, 138; Lajard, *Culte de Mithra*, Pls. xiii. 7; xvi. 1; xviii. 5; &c.

[140] Cullimore, Nos. 26, 29, 49, 52, &c.; Lajard, Pls. xxxvi. 13; xxxvii. 7; xxxviii. 3, &c.

[141] See text, p. 204.

[142] See the Assyrian Inscriptions, *passim*. Compare Gen. xxix. 3; Job i. 3; xlii. 12.

CHAPTER III.

[1] See Vol. I. pp. 28, 29.

[2] The prophets very rarely use the word "Babylonian." I believe it is only found in Ezek. xxiii. 15 and 17. When the term is used, it designates the people of the capital: the inhabitants of the land generally are "Chaldæans."

[3] See Vol. I. pp. 378, 379.

[4] The settlement of foreigners in Babylonia by the Sargonid kings is not expressly recorded, but may be assumed from their general practice, combined with the fact that they made room for such a population by largely deporting the native inhabitants. (See 2 K. xvii. 24; Ezr. iv. 9; and compare Vol. I. pp. 443, 465, &c.)

[5] Jeremiah speaks of the "mingled people" in the midst of Babylon (l. 37); but the reference is perhaps rather to the crowds of foreigners who were there for pleasure or profit than to the Babylonians themselves.

[6] Note the case of the Hellenic element in Greece—at any rate according to Herodotus—τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν . . . ἐὸν ἀσθενὲς ἀπὸ σμικροῦ τεο τὴν ἀρχὴν ὁρμεώμενον, αὔξηται ἐς πλῆθος τῶν ἐθνέων πολλῶν, μάλιστα προσκεχωρηκότων αὐτῷ καὶ ἄλλων ἐθνέων βαρβάρων συχνῶν.

[7] Herod. i. 106, 178; iii. 92.

[8] The most important work of this kind is the representation of a Babylonian king (probably Merodach-adanakhi) on a black stone in the British Museum [Pl. XVIII.]. Other instances are—1, the warrior and the priest in the tablet from Sir-Pal-i-Zohab [Pl. XXIV. Fig. 1], which, however, is perhaps rather Cushite than Semitic; 2, the man accompanying the Babylonian hound (Layard, *Nin. and Bab.* p. 527); and 3, the imperfect figures on the frieze represented [Pl. XV.].

[9] Layard, *Monuments of Nineveh*, Second Series, Pls. 25, 27, and 28.

[10] See text, p. 162.

[11] For the separate existence in Susiana of Elymæans and Kissians, see Strab. xvi. 1, § 17, and Ptolemy, vi. 3. That the Elymæans were Semitic seems to follow from Gen. x. 22. In the word "Kissian" we have probably a modification of "Cushite."

[12] The sculptures of Asshur-bani-pal exhibit two completely opposite types of Susianian physiognomy—one Jewish, the other approaching to the negro. In the former we have probably the Elamitic countenance. It is comparatively rare, the negro type greatly predominating.

[13] Herod. i. 195.

[14] It will be observed that the Assyrian sculptures, while they gave a peculiar character to the Babylonian hair, do not make it descend below the shoulders. They generally represent it as worn smooth on the top of the head, and depending from the ears to the shoulders in a number of large, smooth, heavy curls. (See Pl. IX.)

[15] Here again the Assyrian artists tone down the Babylonian peculiarity, generally representing the beard as not much longer than their own.

[16] The priests upon the cylinders are always beardless. We cannot suppose them to have been always, if indeed they were ever, eunuchs. Nanarus, a Babylonian prince, is said by Nicolas of Damascus to have been "right well shaven" (κατεξυρημένον εὖ μάλα, Fr. 10, p. 360).

[17] Layard, *Monuments of Nineveh*, Second Series, Pls. 25, 27, and 28.

[18] Loftus, *Chaldæa and Susiana*, p. 285.

[19] Strab. xvi. 1, § 2.

[20] See Vol. I. pp. 64–67.

[21] See Isaiah xlvii. 10: "Thy *wisdom* and thy *knowledge*, it hath perverted thee." Jerem. l. 35: "A sword is upon the Chaldæans, saith the Lord, and upon the inhabitants of Babylon, and upon her princes, and upon her *wise* men." Dan. i. 4: "The *learning* of the Chaldæans."

[22] Herod. ii. 109. It is uncertain, however, if the Semetized Babylonians, or the early Chaldæans, are the people intended by Herodotus.

[23] See the famous passage of Simplicius (ad Arist. *De Cœlo*. ii. p. 123) quoted at length (note 78, Chapter V., Vol. I., *First Monarchy*).

[24] Plin. *H. N.* vii. 56; Diod. Sic. ii. 30, § 2.

[25] Strab. xvi. 1, § 6.

[26] Isaiah xlvii. 13; Dan. ii. 2; Diod. Sic. ii. 29, § 2; Strab. l. s. c.; Vitruv. ix. 4; &c.

[27] Strabo (l. s. c.), after speaking of the Chaldæan astronomers, says: προσποιοῦνται δέ τινες καὶ λενεθλιαλογεῖν, οὓς οὐ καταδέχονται οἱ ἕτεροι. But, in reality, astrology was the rule, pure astronomy the rare exception.

[28] See text, pp. 218, 219.

[29] Ezek. xvii. 4. Compare Isaiah xliii. 14.

[30] Habak. ii. 9; Jerem. li. 13.

[31] Herod. i. 199. See on this custom the remarks of Heeren. (*Asiatic Nations*, vol. ii. p. 199. E. T.)

[32] Herod. i. 196; Nic. Dam. Fr. 131.

[33] Q. Curt. *Hist. Alex.* v. 1 (p. 112, ed. Tauchn.): "Liberos conjugesque cum hospitibus stupro coire, modo pretium flagitii detur, parentes maritique patiuntur."

[34] Isaiah xlvii. 1.

[35] Ibid. ver. 8.

[36] Ibid.

[37] Ezek. xxiii. 15.

[38] Nic. Dam. Fr. 10.

[39] Dan. v. 2; Nic. Dam. Fr. 10, p. 362.

[40] Q. Curt. l. s. c. "Babylonii maxime in vinum, et quæ ebrietatem sequuntur, effusi sunt." Compare Xen. *Cyrop.* vii. 5, § 15; and Habak. ii. 5, 16.

[41] The Babylonian unguents were celebrated by Posidonius (Fr. 30). Compare Herod. i. 195: Μεμυρισμένοι πᾶν τὸ σῶμα.

[42] Nic. Dam. Fr. 10, p. 363.

[43] Habakkuk, i. 6–8.

[44] Isaiah xiv. 6.

[45] Ibid. ver. 16.

[46] Jerem. l. 23. Compare the "Martel" given as a title to Charles the conqueror of the Saracens.

[47] See text, pp. 503, 504.

[48] 2 Kings xx. 18; xxv. 7; Jer. xxxix. 7; lii. 11; Dan. i. 3.

[49] Jer. l. s. c.; 2 Kings xxv. 27.

[50] Jer. lii. 27; 2 Kings xxv. 21.

[51] Jer. xxxix. 6; lii. 10; 2 Kings xxv. 7.

[52] Dan. i. 10.

[53] Ibid. ii. 5–13.

[54] Beros. ap. Joseph. c. *Apion*. i. 20.

[55] Dan. ii. 5; iii. 6, 29.

[56] Ibid.

[57] Habak. ii. 8 and 17. Compare Isaiah xiv. 4–6; Jer. lii. 23, 24.

[58] Dan. iv. 30.

[59] Isaiah xlvii. 8: "Thou sayest *in thine heart*, I am, and none else beside me." Compare ver. 10.

[60] Compare Isaiah xiii. 11; xiv. 13, 14; xlvii. 7; Jer. l. 29, 31, 32; Habak. ii. 5.

[61] See text, p. 191.

[62] Dan. iii. 1; Herod. i. 183; Diod. Sic. ii. 9, §§ 5 and 6.

[63] Herod. i. 181–183; Diod. Sic. ii. 9, §§ 7 and 8.

[64] As Nabu-kuduri-izzir, which means "Nebo is the protector of landmarks;" Bel-shar-izzir, which is "Bel protects the king," and Evil-Merodach (Illu-Merodach), which may be "Merodach is a god."

[65] As Belibus, Belesis, Nergal-sharezer, Shamgar-nebo, Nebu-zar-adan, Nabonidus, &c., &c.

[66] Herod. i. 195.

[67] Dan. v. 4: "They drank wine, and praised the gods of gold, and of silver, of brass, of iron, of wood, and of stone."

[68] Fr. 131. Ἀσκοῦσι δὲ μάλιστα εὐθύτητα καὶ ἀοργησίαν. Nicolas speaks of "Assyrians;" but the context makes it clear that he means "Assyrians of Babylon."

[69] See text, p. 204.

CHAPTER IV.

[1] The tradition is first found in the time of Augustus, in the works of Diodorus and Strabo. Strabo says vaguely that Nineveh was "much larger than Babylon" (πολὺ μεῖζων τῆς Βαβυλῶνος, xvi. i, § 3); Diodorus makes it nearly twice as large. (Compare ii. 3, § 2, with ii. 7, § 3.)

[2] See Vol. I. pp. 161-164.

[3] The two mounds of Koyunjik and Nebbi Yunus cover together an area of 140 acres. (See Vol. I. p. 162.)

[4] See text, p. 182.

[5] See Rich, *First Memoir on Babylon*, p. 7; Ker Porter, vol. ii. pp. 381, 382; Layard, *Nineveh and Babylon*, pp. 491, 492; Loftus, *Chaldæa and Susiana*, p. 15.

[6] M. Oppert. See his *Expédition scientifique en Mésopotamie*, tom. i. ch. viii. pp. 220-234.

[7] This is particularly observable with respect to the French *savant's* "outer wall," which has really no foundation at all in the topography of the country.

[8] A survey of the principal ruins was made and has been published by Capt. Selby; but the more elaborate plans of Captain Jones, which included all the neighboring country, have been mislaid, and are not at present available.

[9] Selby, *Memoir*, p. 3.

[10] On the numerical exaggerations of Herodotus, see the author's Essay prefixed to his *Herodotus*, vol. i. pp. 82, 83, note 4, 2nd edition.

[11] Herod. i. 178.

[12] I think no discerning reader can peruse the account of Babylon and the adjacent region given by Herodotus (i. 178-195), without feeling that the writer means to represent himself as having seen the city and country. Thus the question of whether he was an eye-witness or not depends on his veracity, which no modern critic has impugned.

[13] Ap. Diod. Sic. ii. 7, § 3.

[14] Clitarchus made the circumference 365 stadia (ap. Diod. Sic. l. s. c.); Q. Curtius, 368 (*Hist. Alex.* v. 1); Strabo, perhaps following Nearchus, made it 385 (Strab. xvi. 1, § 5).

[15] Q. Curt. l. s. c. The perfectly clear space, according to this writer, extended for two stades—nearly a quarter of a mile—from the wall.

[16] Ibid. Herodotus, however, represents Labynetus, the last king, as carefully provisioning the city before its siege by Cyrus (i. 190).

[17] Herod. i. 180.

[18] Mannheim, for instance. In Greece this mode of laying out a town was called Ἱπποδάμου νεμησις, from the architect of the Piræus, who laid out the town there, and also the city of Thurii, in this fashion. (See Arist. *Pol.* vii. 10; Hesych. *Lex.* ad voc. Ἱπποδ. νέμ.; Phot. Λεξ. Συναγ. p. 111; Diod. Sic. xii. 10.)

[19] Herod i. 179.

[20] Ibid. 180.

[21] Strab. xvi. 1, § 5.

[22] Strab. l. s. c. Περὶ τοὺς στύλους στρέφοντες ἐκ τῆς καλάμης σχοινία περιτιθέασιν εἶτ' ἐπαλείφοντες χρώμασι καταγράφουσι, κ.τ.λ.

[23] Herod. i. 185.

[24] Ibid. 180.

[25] Ibid. 186.

[26] Diod. Sic. ii. 8, § 2.

[27] Ibid. 9, § 2.

[28] Herod. i. 181. Compare Strab. xvi. 1, § 5, where the temple is called "the tomb of Belus."

[29] Ἦν δὲ πυραμὶς τετράγωνος ἐξ ὀπτῆς πλίνθου. (Strab. l. s. c.)

[30] Herod. l. s. c.

[31] Diod. Sic. ii. 9, § 5.

[32] Ibid. §§ 6-8.

[33] Herod. i. 183. The Chaldæan priests told Herodotus that the gold of the image, table, and stand, weighed altogether 800 talents.

[34] Herod. l. s. c.

[35] The great altar was also that on which a thousand talents' weight of frankincense was offered annually at the festival of the god. (Herod. l. s. c.)

[36] Diod. Sic. ii. 8, § 4. Quintus Curtius knows, however, of only one enclosure, which corresponds to the innermost wall of Diodorus, having a circuit of twenty stades. According to Curtius, this wall was 80 feet high, and its foundations were laid 30 feet below the surface of the soil. (*Hist. Alex. Magn.* v. 1.)

[37] Diod. Sic. ii. 8, § 6.

[38] Ibid. § 7.

[39] Strab. xvi. 1, § 5.

[40] See text, p. 248.

[41] Diod. Sic. ii. 10, § 2.

[42] Ibid. ὥστε τὴν πρόσοψιν εἶναι θεατροειδῆ.

[43] Diod. Sic. ii. 10, § 5. Quintus Curtius says that the trunks of some of the trees were 12 feet in diameter. (*Hist. Alex. Magn.* v. 1.) Strabo relates that some of the piers were made hollow, and filled with earth, for the trees to strike

their roots *down* them. But few trees have a tap-root.

[44] This is the explanation given of Strabo's κοχλίαι, δι' ὧν τὸ ὕδωρ ἀνῆγον εἰς τὸν κῆπον ἀπὸ τοῦ Εὐφράτου συνεχῶς οἱ πρὸς τοῦτο τεταγμένοι (xvi. 1, § 5; compare Diod. Sic. v. 37, § 3). It is more probable that the water was really raised by means of buckets and pulleys. (See Vol. I. p. 240.)

[45] Diod. Sic. ii. 10, § 5.

[46] Strab. l. s. c. Ἡ δ' ἀνωτάτω στέγη προσβάσεις κλιμακωτὰς ἔχει.

[47] Διαῖται βασιλικαί. Diod. Sic. ii. 10, § 6.

[48] Ibid. For representations of Assyrian "hanging gardens," see Vol. I. Pls. XXIX. and CXXXIX. This garden at Babylon must, however, have been far more complicated and more stately.

[49] Diod. Sic. ii. 8, § 7.

[50] Παραταξεις καὶ κυνήγια, Diod. Sic. l. s. c. This statement of the subjects of Babylonian ornamentation is so completely in harmony with the practice of the Assyrians, that we cannot doubt its truth. War scenes and hunting scenes are decidedly those which predominated on the walls of an Assyrian palace. (See Vol. I. p. 213.) It is curious to find the same habits continuing in the same regions as late as the time of the Emperor Julian. See Amm. Marc. xxiv. 6, where we hear of a "diversorium opacum et amœnum, *gentiles picturas* per omnes ædium partes ostendens, Regis bestias multiplici venatione trucidantis:" to which the author adds the remark, "nec enim apud eos pingitur vel fingitur aliud præter varias cædes et bella."

[51] See text, pp. 171, 172.

[52] Strab. xvi. 1, § 5.

[53] The statement of Pliny (*H. N.* vi. 26), which Solinus copies (*Polyhist.* c. 60), may perhaps not rest on data distinct from those of Herodotus. These writers may merely soften down the cubits of Herodotus into feet.

[54] Herod. i. 178.

[55] Strab. l. s. c; Q. Curtius, v. 1.

[56] Ap. Diod. Sic. ii. 7, § 3.

[57] See the passages quoted in note 53. Pliny and Solinus make the royal foot exceed the common one by the same amount (3 fingers' breadth) by which Herodotus regards the royal as exceeding the common cubit.

[58] Philostr. *Vit. Alex. Tyan.* i. 25.

[59] Q. Curt. l. s. c.

[60] Diod. Sic. ii. 7, § 4.

[61] Strab. xvi. 1, § 5.

[62] This is M. Oppert's view. (See his *Expédition scientifique en Mésopotamie*, tom. i. p. 225.) The author of the present work was, he believes, the first to suggest it. (See his article on Babylon in Dr. Smith's *Biblical Dictionary*, vol. i. p. 150.) On the whole, however, the view appears to him not to be tenable.

[63] Without reckoning the late and absurd Orosius, who gave the wall a breadth of 375 feet (*Hist.* ii. 6), or the blundering Scholiast on Juvenal (*Sat.* x. 171), who reversed the numbers of Pliny and Solinus, for the height and breadth, it must be said that there are really four different estimates for the height, and three for the width of the walls. See the subjoined table.

Estimates of Height.		Feet.
Herodotus (200 royal cubits)..	=	335
Ctesias (50 fathoms).....	=	300
Pliny (200 royal feet).....	=	235
Solinus (ditto).....	=	235
Philostratus (3 half-plethra).	=	150
Q. Curtius (100 cubits).....	=	150
Clitarchus (50 cubits).....	=	75
Strabo (ditto).....	=	75

Estimates of Width.	Feet.
.. (50 royal cubits).....	85
.. (unknown)	
.. (50 royal feet).....	60
.. (ditto).....	60
.. (less than a plethron)	
.. (32 feet).....	32
.. (unknown)	
.. (32 feet).....	32

[64] See Arist. *Pol.* iii. 1. Τοιαύτη δ' ἴσως ἐστι καὶ Βαβυλὼν, καὶ πᾶσα ἥτις περιγραφὴν ἔχει μᾶλλον ἔθνους ἢ πόλεως· ἧς γε φασιν ἑαλωκυίας τρίτην ἡμέραν οὐκ αἰσθέσθαι τι μέρος τῆς πόλεως. Compare Jerem. li. 31.

[65] Jerem. li. 58.

[66] Ibid. ver. 53.

[67] Cyrus, Darius, and Xerxes.

[68] So Herodotus (i. 179, ἑλκύσαντες δὲ πλίνθους ἱκανὰς, ὤπτησαν αὐτὰς ἐν καμινίοισι). But we may be tolerably certain that crude brick formed the main material, and that at the utmost the facings were of burnt brick.

[69] See Herodotus's description (l. s. c.)

[70] Q. Curtius says 10 feet (v. 1); Strabo, 10 cubits (xvi. 1, § 5).

[71] Diod. Sic. ii. 7, § 4.

[72] Ibid. § 5.

[73] Herod. l. s. c.

[74] Jerem. li. 58.

[75] Isaiah xiv. 4.

[76] Isaiah xiv. 23.

[77] Ibid. xiii. 19.

[78] Jerem. li. 37. "And Babylon shall become heaps." Compare l. 26.

[79] Layard, *Nineveh and Babylon*, p. 502.

[80] Six thousand yards (nearly 3½ miles), according to Captain Selby. (*Memoir on the Ruins of Babylon*, p. 4.)

[81] This is the Mujelibé ("the overturned") of Rich (*Memoirs on Babylon*, passim), and Ker Porter (*Travels*, vol. ii. pp. 339-349). The Arabs now apply the name Mujelibé to the central or Kasr heap (Layard, *Nin. and Bab.* p. 505).

[82] The final syllable in Babyl-on is a Greek nominatival ending. The real name of the city was *Bab-il*, "the Gate of the God Il," or "the Gate of God." The Jews changed the name to Babel בָּבֶל in derisive reference to the "confusion of tongues."

[83] Oppert, *Expédition scientifique*, tom. i. p. 169.

[84] Rich made the length of the south side of Babil 219 yards (*First Memoir*, p. 28); M. Oppert (l. s. c.) makes it 180 *mètres* (197 yards).

[85] Oppert, l. s. c.

[86] Rich, l. s. c. Compare M. Oppert's plan of the ruin. Ker Porter's 230 feet (*Travels*, vol. ii. p. 340) is an extraordinary misrepresentation.

[87] Rich estimated the height of the S.E. or highest angle at 141 feet. M. Oppert gives the greatest height of the ruin as 40 *mètres*, or 131 feet. (*Expédition*, tom. i. p. 168.)

[88] Layard, *Nineveh and Babylon*, p. 505.

[89] M. Oppert regards the Babil mound as the "Tomb of Belus," which he distinguishes from the Temple of Bel. He gives it the shape of a pyramid, inclined at an angle of about 65 degrees.

[90] Layard, l. s. c.

[91] See the plans of Ker Porter (*Travels*, vol. ii. Pl. 73, opp. p. 340) and Selby. M. Oppert wholly omits this *enceinte*.

[92] Ker Porter, p. 345.

[93] See Pl. XII. Fig. 1, which follows the map of Captain Selby.

[94] Layard, *Nin. and Bab.* p. 508; Loftus, *Chaldæa and Susiana*, p. 17.

[95] "Seven hundred yards both in length and breadth" (Rich, *First Memoir*, p. 22). "Its length is nearly 800 yards, its breadth 600" (Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. ii. p. 355). Captain Selby and M. Oppert agree in giving the ruin an oblong shape.

[96] Ker Porter, p. 355.

[97] Layard, *Nin. and Bab.* p. 505.

[98] Rich, *First Memoir*, pp. 23, 24; Layard, p. 506.

[99] Layard, pp. 505, 506. Compare Rich. p. 25.

[100] Rich, pp. 22 and 61.

[101] Layard, p. 506; Rich, p. 25; Ker Porter, vol. ii. pp. 365, 366.

[102] Layard, p. 507; Oppert, tom. i. p. 148.

[103] As the frieze discovered by Mr. Layard (*Nin. and Bab.* p. 508), of which a representation is given [Pl. XV.], and one or two fragments recovered by the French.

[104] See the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii. p. 480, 2nd edition. Compare Oppert, *Expédition*, tom. i. p. 149.

[105] Layard, p. 507; Oppert, tom. i. p. 148. According to the latter author, the length of the lion is four *mètres*, or 13½ feet, and its height three *mètres*, or 9 feet 10 inches.

[106] Oppert, pp. 147, 148.

[107] Ker Porter, vol. ii. p. 371. M. Oppert calls it a trapezium (p. 157), but his plan is, roughly speaking, a triangle. Rich says it is shaped like a quadrant (p. 21).

[108] Layard, *Nin. and Bab.* p. 509, note.

[109] See the author's article on "Babylon," in Dr. Smith's *Biblical Dictionary*, vol. i. p. 151. Compare Oppert, *Expédition*, tom. i. p. 157.

[110] Rich says the length is 1100 yards, and the greatest breadth 800 (p. 21). M. Oppert calls the greatest length 500 *mètres* (547 yards); but his own plan shows a distance of 600 *mètres* (656 yards). Captain Selby's map agrees nearly with Rich.

[111] See Layard, *Nin. and Bab.* p. 509.

[112] See the plans of Rich, Ker Porter, and Selby, which all mark very distinctly the double line in question. Capt. Selby's survey makes the two lines not quite parallel, and gives both of them a slight leaning to the west of north. M. Oppert's plan represents them very meagrely and untruly.

[113] M. Oppert has only a single line here; but a double line is shown by all the other authorities. The true direction of the line was for the first time given by Captain Selby.

[114] This is the opinion of Sir H. Rawlinson. M. Oppert regards the work as Babylonian.

[115] So Captain Selby. See his Map, Sheet I.

[116] The line has several gaps, more especially one very wide one in the middle; through which no fewer than five canals have passed at some time or other. But the position of the fragments which remain sufficiently indicates that the work was originally continuous.

[117] See Captain Selby's plan, which is the only trustworthy authority for the ruins on the right bank.

[118] Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. ii. p. 353.

[119] Ker Porter, l. s. c. Captain Selby makes the height 65 feet (see his Map, Sheet I.). M. Oppert calls the mound "very lofty" (très-élevé), but he gives no estimate of its height. (*Expédition*, tom. i. p. 183.)

[120] Ker Porter, vol. ii. p. 354.

[121] This embankment is placed too low in the very imperfect chart of the ruins, which the author drew for the first edition of his *Herodotus* (vol. ii. p.

571). He owes an apology to M. Oppert for having found fault with his emplacement of the work. Capt. Selby's survey shows that in this point M. Oppert was perfectly correct.

122 Oppert, *Expédition*, tom. i. p. 184.

123 Isaiah xiii. 19.

124 Dan. iv. 30.

125 As we do not *know* what position in the city the Royal quarter occupied (for we must not press the ἐν μέσῳ of Herodotus), we cannot say with absolute *certainty* that the city contained even such groups as, for instance, those east and north-east of Babil, or again those on the west bank opposite the quay of Nabonidus. It is of course *highly probable* that these and all other neighboring mounds formed a part of the ancient town.

126 See Vol. I. p. 160.

127 Layard, *Nineveh and Babylon*, p. 491:—"Southward of Babel for the distance of nearly three miles there is almost an uninterrupted line of mounds, the ruins of vast edifices, *collected together as in the heart of a great city.*"

128 M. Oppert (*Expédition scientifique*, Maps) calls the whole mass of ruins from Babil to Amran the "cité *royale* de Babylone."

129 Hes. *Op. et. D.* l. 40.

130 Berosus, Fr. 14.

131 According to M. Oppert, several pavement slabs found on the Kasr mound bear the following inscription: "Grand palace of Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon, son of Nabopolassar, king of Babylon, who walked in the worship of the gods Nebo and Merodach, his lords." See the *Expédition scientifique*, tom. i. p. 149.

132 Layard, *Nineveh and Babylon*, p. 506. The bricks are all laid with the inscription *downwards*, a sure sign that they have never been disturbed, but remain as Nebuchadnezzar's builders placed them.

133 Berosus, Fr. 14. Βασίλεια . . . ὧν τὸ μὲν ἀνάστημα καὶ τὴν ἑτέραν πολυτέλειαν περισσὸν ἴσως ἂν εἴη λέγειν.

134 Diod. Sic. ii. 8, § 6.

135 Layard, *Nineveh and Babylon*, p. 507; Oppert, *Expédition scientifique*, tom. i. pp. 143-145. Portions of a lion, of a horse, and of a human face, have been distinctly recognized.

136 M. Oppert agrees on this point with Mr. Layard and Sir Henry Rawlinson (*Expédition*, tom. i. pp. 140-156).

137 M. Oppert (*Expédition*, tom. i. pp. 157-167) argues that the Mound of Amran represents the ancient "hanging gardens." But his own estimate of its area is 15 hectares (37 acres), while the area of the "hanging gardens" was less than four acres according to Strabo (xvi. 1, § 5) and Diodorus (ii. 10, § 2).

138 Beros. l. s. c. Προσκατεσκεύασε τοῖς πατρικοῖς Βασιλείοις ἕτερα Βασίλεια ἐχόμενα αὐτῶν. M. Oppert wholly omits to locate the ancient palace.

139 See *British Museum Series*, vol. i. Pl. iii. No. 7; Pl. xlviii. No. 9.

140 See text, pp. 180, 181.

141 Diod. Sic. ii. 8, § 3; 9, § 2.

142 The bricks of this ruin are stamped with Neriglissar's name. Here too was found his cylinder with the inscription given in the *British Museum Series*, vol. i. Pl. 67.

143 M. Oppert regards the bridge of Diodorus (ii. 8, § 2) as a pure invention (*Exp. scientifique*, tom. i. p. 193). He supposes the real bridge—that of Herodotus and Quintus Curtius—to have been "a little south of Hillah" (ibid.). But this is a mere conjecture.

144 The tunnel is accepted by M. Oppert (l. s. c.).

145 Diod. Sic. ii. 9, § 2.

146 Philostr. *Vit. Apoll. Tyan.* i. 25.

147 Herod. i. 181; Strab. xvi. 1, § 5.

148 Strab. l. s. c. Diod. Sic. ii. 9, § 4. Ὑψηλὸν καθ' ὑπερβολήν.

149 It is more usual in Babylonia for the *angles* of a temple-tower to face the cardinal points. But for the astronomical purposes which the towers subserved (Diod. Sic. l. s. c.) it was indifferent which arrangement was adopted.

150 See text, p. 173.

151 Herod. i. 180, 181.

152 Ibid.

153 This opinion was first put forward by Mr. Rich. See his *First Memoir on Babylon*, pp. 51-56; *Second Memoir*, pp. 30-34. His views were opposed by Major Rennell in an article published in the *Archæologia*, London, 1816. They were reasserted and warmly defended by Sir R. Ker Porter in 1822 (*Travels*, vol. ii. pp. 316-327). Heeren adopted them in 1824, in the fourth edition of his *Reflections* (*Asiatic Nations*, vol. ii. pp. 172-175); and about 1826 Niebuhr spoke favorably of them in his lectures (*Vorträge*, vol. i. p. 30). Recently they have been maintained and copiously illustrated by M. Oppert (*Expédition scientifique*, tom. i. pp. 200-216).

154 So Ker Porter, vol. ii. p. 317; Heeren, *As. Nat.* vol. ii. p. 174; Oppert, in Dr. Smith's *Biblical Dictionary*, vol. iii. p. 1554.

155 Rich, measuring the present ruins, supposed that the dimensions of the Birs would correspond sufficiently with those of the Belus temple (*First Memoir*, p. 49); but Sir H. Rawlinson found, on tunnelling into the mound, that the original base of the Birs tower was a square of only 272 feet. The Belus temple was a square of 606 feet.

156 To meet this argument, M. Oppert has invented the term Bel-Nebo, for which there is absolutely no foundation.

157 See the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii. p. 485, 2nd ed.

158 See Berosus, Fr. 14; Strab. xvi. 1, 7; Arrian. Fr. 20; Justin, xii. 13; Steph. Byz. ad voc. &c.

159 As M. Oppert does. See Pl. XI.

160 M. Oppert endeavors to reconcile

his view with that of the later geographers by saying that though Borsippa was originally within Babylon, *i.e.* within the outer wall, it afterwards, when the outer wall was destroyed by Darius Hystaspis, came to be outside the town and a distinct place. But it is at the time of Cyrus's siege, when all the defences were in the most perfect condition, that Berosus makes Cyrus "march away" from Babylon to the siege of Borsippa.

[161] Ἐν δὲ φάρσει ἑκατέρῳ τῆς πόλιος ἐτετείχιστο ἐν μέσῳ (Herod. i. 181). Compare the expression of Arrian (*Exp. Alex.* vii. 17):—Ὁ γὰρ τοῦ Βήλου νεὼς ἐν μεσῃ τῇ πόλει ἦν τῶν Βαβυλωνίων.

[162] Arrian says by Xerxes (τοῦτον τὸν νεὼν Ξέρξης κατεσκαψεν, l. s. c.). So Strabo (xvi. 1, § 5). But Herodotus seems to have found the building intact; and his visit must have fallen in the reign of Artaxerxes. Xerxes plundered the temple (Herod. i. 183), and may therefore in after times have been thought to have destroyed it, though the destruction was by a later king.

[163] Rich, *First Memoir*, p. 31; Layard, *Nineveh and Babylon*, p. 506; Loftus, *Chaldæa and Susiana*, p. 18.

[164] Strab. l. s. c. Compare Arrian, l. s. c.

[165] Herodotus did not always take notes. He appeals sometimes to his *recollection* of the numbers mentioned to him by his informants. (See ii. 125.)

[166] See Pl. XIV.

[167] Town-gates are named in the East from the places to which they lead. (Rich, *First Memoir*, p. 53.) The Kissian gates led to Susiana, which was towards the east. The Belian probably led to Niffer, the "city of Belus." (See Vol. I. p. 78.) Niffer lies south-east of Babylon.

[168] Herod. iii. 158.

[169] As by Strabo (l. s. c.). When M. Oppert identifies the Babil mound with this tomb, he is really admitting that it was the Belus temple-tower. For there is not the shadow of a doubt that the "tomb of Belus" and the "temple of Belus" are one and the same building. (Compare Strab. xvi. 1, § 5, with Arrian, vii. 17, and both with Herod. i. 183, *ad fin.*)

[170] The hanging gardens were a square of 400 (Greek) feet each way; the Belus tower was a square of 600 feet. The area of the one was 160,000 square feet; that of the other 360,000, or considerably more than double.

[171] Q. Curt. *Hist. Alex.* v. 1:—"*Super arce* vulgatum Græcorum fabulis miraculum pensiles horti sunt." The *arx* of Curtius is the palace.

[172] Strab. xvi. 1, § 5; Diod. Sic. ii. 10, § 1.

[173] See the translation of the Standard Inscription of Nebuchadnezzar, which is given in the Appendix, Note A, p. 260.

[174] See Loftus, *Chaldæa and Susiana*, p. 7.

[175] This is the opinion of Sir H. Rawlinson.

[176] So M. Oppert (*Expédition scientifique*, tom. i. p. 195).

[177] Diod. Sic. ii. 8, §§ 5 and 6.

CHAPTER V.

[1] Herod. i. 93; ii. 109; Diod. Sic. ii. 29, § 2; &c.

[2] The "walls" and the "hanging gardens." (Strab. xvi. 1, § 5.) Compare Q. Curt. *Hist. Alex. Magn.* v. 1, § 32; Hygin. *Fab.* § 223; Cassiodor. *Variar.* vii. 15.

[3] Q. Curtius says of the bridge over the Euphrates, "Hic quoque inter mirabilia Orientis opera numeratus est." (*Hist. Alex. Magn.* v. 1, § 29.)

[4] Diod. Sic. ii. 31. See the passage quoted at the head of text of this chapter.

[5] Hipparchus, who, according to Delambre (*Histoire d'Astronomie ancienne*, tom. i. p. 184), "laid the foundation of astronomy among the Greeks," spoke of the Babylonians as astronomical observers from a fabulously remote antiquity. (Proclus, *in Tim.* p. 31, C.) Aristotle admitted that the Greeks were greatly indebted for astronomical facts to the Babylonians and Egyptians. (*De Cœlo*, ii. 12, § 3.) Ptolemy made large use of the Babylonian observations of eclipses. Sir Cornewall Lewis allows that "the Greeks were in the habit of attributing the invention and original cultivation of astronomy either to the Babylonians or to the Egyptians, and represented the earliest scientific Greek astronomers as having derived their knowledge from Babylonian or from Egyptian priests." (*Astronomy of the Ancients*, p. 256.) He considers, indeed, that in thus yielding the credit of discovery to others, they departed from the truth; but he does not give any sufficient reasons for this curious belief.

[6] Gen. xi. 2-5.

[7] Dan. iv. 30.

[8] Herod. i. 93, 178-183.

[9] See Vol. I. p. 402.

[10] Herod. i. 181.

[11] Herod. iii. 156.

[12] Ibid. i. 181. Δύο σταδίων πάντη, ἐὸν τετράγωνον.

[13] When Herodotus speaks of there being *eight* stages to the tower of the temple of Belus at Babylon, he probably counts the shrine at the top as a stage. Note his words: ἐν δὲ τῷ τελευταίῳ πύργῳ νηὸς ἔπεστι μέγας (l. s. c.).

[14] Diod. Sic. ii. 9, § 4.

[15] Herod. i. 183.

[16] Ibid.

[17] See Rich, *First Memoir*, pp. 34-37; *Second Memoir*, pp. 30-32; Ker Porter, vol. ii. pp. 305-316; Layard, *Nineveh and Babylon*, p. 495; Loftus, *Chaldæa and*

Susiana, p. 27; Oppert, *Expédition scientifique*, tom. i. p. 200.

[18] See the *Journal of the Asiatic Society*, vol. xviii. art. i., where a full account is given by Sir H. Rawlinson of the labors by which he discovered the true plan of the building. M. Oppert's speculations in his *Expédition scientifique* (tom. i. pp. 200–209), which rest upon no original researches, and contradict all the dimensions which Sir H. Rawlinson obtained by laborious tunnelling and careful measurement, are no doubt ingenious; but they can scarcely be regarded as having any scientific value.

[19] M. Oppert believes this "platform" to have been part of a lower stage which would have been found by removing the soil at its base. This is perhaps possible, but at present there is no proof of it.

[20] Sir H. Rawlinson excavated only to the depth of 17 feet. The assignment of 26 feet to this stage rests upon the ascertained fact that both the second and the third stage were exactly of this height. (*Journal of the Asiatic Society*, vol. xviii. p. 19.)

[21] It will be found hereafter that this fourth stage was that of the Sun, and that it was probably covered with thin plates of gold. This would give a reason for the diminution of height at the point, since thereby would be effected a saving of more than two-fifths of this gold.

[22] The upper portion of the Birs is in too ruined a condition to allow of the verification of these estimates. They follow as deductions from the ascertained dimensions of the lower stages, and especially from the proved fact, that the alteration in the height of the fourth stage was not accompanied by any change in the rate of diminution of the square.

[23] Captain Jones's measurement with the theodolite makes the present height of the building above the alluvial plain 153½ feet. If then the plan of the temple assumed in the text be correct, it has lost less than three feet of its original height.

[24] Or "sandal-wood color" (*sandali*, Pers.; σανδαράκινον, Greek). The foundation for this color, as for that of Mars and Venus, was probably the actual hue of the planet.

[25] Herod. i. 98. See text, p. 13.

[26] *Journal of the Asiatic Society*, vol. xviii. p. 12.

[27] Ibid. p. 19.

[28] Ibid. pp. 9 and 20.

[29] These plates of course do not remain *in situ*. The evidence of their original employment is to be found, 1. in the mutilated appearance of the present face of this stage, which is "broken as if with blows of the pick-axe" (*As. Soc. Journ.* p. 20); 2. in statements made by Nebuchadnezzar that the walls of his temples were often "clothed with gold;" 3. in the parallel ornamentation of Ecbatana (Herod. i. 98).

[30] *As. Soc. Journ.* pp. 21, 22.

[31] Ibid. pp. 6, 7. This vitrifaction of the upper portions of the tower has given rise to the belief—as old as Benjamin of Tudela—that it had been struck by lightning, and so destroyed, whence he and others argued that it was the true tower of Babel. But the vitrifaction seems really to have been the work of man, and its object was to produce a blue color.

[32] This is a conjecture, grounded upon the parallel case of Ecbatana (Herod. l. s. c.) and the analogy of the fourth stage. See above, note 29.

[33] Sir H. Rawlinson believes that staircases occupied most of the north-eastern face or true front of the building. (*As. Soc. Journal*, vol. xviii. p. 19.)

[34] Ibid. p. 13. Similar recesses adorn the great Temple-tower at Nimrud (see vol. i. p. 316), and many buildings of Nebuchadnezzar (Loftus, *Chaldæa and Susiana*, p. 246, &c.).

[35] *Journal of the Asiatic Society*, vol. xviii. p. 10.

[36] Sir H. Rawlinson thinks that the upper part of the existing ruin belongs to this shrine.

[37] See Vol. I. pp. 54, 55, 56, &c.

[38] Herod. i. 181.

[39] *Journal of the Asiatic Society*, vol. xviii. p. 19.

[40] 1 Kings vi. 5.

[41] *As. Soc. Journal*, p. 11. Compare p. 19.

[42] Diod. Sic. ii. 10, § 6.

[43] Sir H. Rawlinson, in the *Journal of the As. Society*, vol. xviii. p. 16. M. Oppert thinks differently (*Expédition scientifique*, tom. i. p. 206).

[44] Herod. i. 183.

[45] M. Oppert attempts this restoration (see his Plates, *Essai de Restauration de la tour des sept Planètes*), but accomplishes it in a manner which is very unsatisfactory.

[46] See Vol. I. pp. 179, 180.

[47] See the author's *Herodotus*, vol. iii. pp. 207, 208, 2nd edition. Compare Loftus, *Chaldæa and Susiana*, pp. 343–345.

[48] As the sides of the platform were perpendicular, the only places at which it could be attacked were its staircases.

[49] The square shape of the Kasr mound is very decided. (See Pl. XII. Fig. 2.) Assyrian platforms were in general rectangular (see Pl. XLI. Fig. 1, Vol. I.)

[50] It is difficult to reconcile the statements of different writers as to the height of the Babylonian mounds, which have seldom been ascertained scientifically. Rich estimates the Amran mound at 50 or 60 feet (*First Memoir*, p. 21); M. Oppert at 30 *mètres* (*Expédition*, tom. i. p. 158), or nearly 100 feet. The exact height of the Kasr mound I do not find estimated; but Rich says that

one of its ravines is "40 or 50 feet deep" (*First Memoir*, p. 23). I assume it therefore to be higher than the Amran mound; and I imagine that both attain, in places, an elevation of 80 or 90 feet. Of this height I conceive that at any rate not more than 30 feet can be assigned to the *débris* of the actual palace, and that the remainder must be the height of the mound or platform on which it stood.

[51] Such walls seem to occur wherever the internal structure of the Kasr mound is laid bare. (Rich, *First Memoir*, p. 24; Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. ii. pp. 359, 360; Layard, *Nineveh and Babylon*, p. 506.)

[52] See text, p. 179.

[53] Oppert, *Expédition scientifique*, tom. i. p. 149. These pavement slabs were square, about 20 inches each way.

[54] The existing remains of building are situated towards the centre of the Kasr mound. (See Pl. XII. Fig. 2.)

[55] Rich, p. 25; Ker Porter, vol. ii. p. 360; Layard, *Nineveh and Babylon*, p. 506.

[56] The existing walls of the Kasr are eight feet thick. (Rich, l. s. c.)

[57] Layard, *Nin. and Bab.* l. s. c. "I sought in vain for some clue to the general plan of the edifice." Even M. Oppert, who is seldom stopped by a difficulty, can only venture to represent the building as a huge square covering not quite one-fourth of the mound.

[58] Rich, p. 25; Layard, p. 506.

[59] Layard, p. 508.

[60] Diod. Sic. ii. 8, § 6.

[61] See text, p. 179.

[62] Oppert, *Expédition scientifique*, tom. i. p. 144.

[63] Herod. i. 180.

[64] See Vol. I. pp. 195-197.

[65] The frieze given (Pl. XV.) is the only fragment of stone ornament that has been found.

[66] Diod. Sic. ii. 10, §§ 2–6; Strab. xvi. 1, § 5; Q. Curt. v. 1.

[67] Strabo and Curtius both clearly describe the "Hanging Garden" (τὸν κρεμαστὸν κῆπον) as still existing in their time. Curtius expressly declares,—"Hæc moles inviolata durat."

[68] Ker Porter imagines the Babylonians to have been unacquainted with the arch, and therefore supposes, instead of arches, piers roofed in with long blocks of stone (*Travels*, vol. ii. p. 363). But Sir H. Rawlinson found the internal chamber in the Birs covered in with a vaulted roof (*Journal of As. Society*, vol. xviii. p. 11); and arches have been found even in the early Chaldæan buildings. (See Vol. I. p. 56.)

[69] See Vol. I. pp. 197, 337.

[70] Berosus, Fr. 14; Diod. Sic. l. s. c.; Q. Curt. l. s. c.

[71] This is, I think, the meaning of Diodorus, when he says that the appearance was that of a theatre. (Ἔστι δ' ὁ παράδεισος . . . τὰς οἰκοδομίας ἄλλας ἐξ ἄλλων ἔχων, ὥστε τὴν πρόσοψιν εἶναι θεατροειδῆ.)

[72] Curtius and Diodorus both make the height that of the walls of Babylon, which the former, however, estimates at 150 and the latter at 300 feet. Curtius places the garden on the palace mound ("super arce"), which would imply for the actual structure of the garden a height of not much more than 90 or 100 feet.

[73] M. Oppert attempts a reconstruction of the ground-plan (*Expédition*, maps and plans). He makes the stages nine in number, and each of smaller size than the one below it.

[74] See text, pp. 172, 173, 175–177.

[75] Diod. Sic. ii. 8, § 2.

[76] Herod. i. 180.

[77] Strab. xvi. 1, § 5. See text, p. 514.

[78] See Vol. I. p. 49.

[79] As it was by the early Chaldæans. (See Vol. I. pp. 51, 52.)

[80] The walls of the Kasr, which are eight feet thick (Rich, *First Memoir*, p. 27), are composed of burnt brick throughout their whole breadth.

[81] Rich, p. 61.

[82] Ibid. p. 62. Compare *As. Soc. Journal*, vol. xviii. p. 6, note 3.

[83] *As. Soc. Journal*, vol. xviii. p. 9.

[84] Compare Rich, *First Memoir*, p. 61; Sir H. Rawlinson, in the *Journal of the Asiatic Society*, vol. xviii. p. 8; and M. Oppert, *Expédition*, tom. i. p. 143.

[85] The stamp on Babylonian bricks is always sunk below the surface. It is of a square or rectangular form, and occurs commonly towards the middle of one of the two larger faces. The letters are indented upon the clay, and must consequently have stood out in relief upon the wooden or metal stamp which impressed them. M. Oppert observes that the use of such a stamp was the first beginning of printing ("un commencement d'imprimerie," *Expédition*, p. 142). The stamped face of the brick was always placed downwards.

[86] This arrangement was found by Sir Henry Rawlinson in one of the stages of the Birs-i-Nimrud (*Journal of As. Society*, vol. xviii. p. 10).

[87] Rich, *First Memoir*, p. 62.

[88] At the Birs, the red clay cement used in the third stage has a depth of two inches. (*As. Soc. Journ.* p. 9.)

[89] On the excellence of the Babylonian mortar, see Rich, p. 25; Layard, *Nineveh and Babylon*, p. 505.

[90] See Rich, *First Memoir*, pp. 35, 36. Compare M. Oppert (*Expédition*, tom. i. p. 200), who says: "Le Birs-Nimroud apparaît bientôt après la sortie de Hillah *comme une montagne* que l'on croit pouvoir atteindre immédiatement et qui recule toujours. Mais *l'effet est bien plus saisissant* quand l'atmosphère, et c'est le cas à la pointe de jour et vers le soir, est obscurcie par le brouillard. Alors on ne voit rien pendant une heure et demie; tout-à-coup le brouillard semble se déchirer comme un rideau, et fait entrevoir la masse colossale du Birs-

Nimroud, d'autant plus intéressante que son aspect nous frappe de plus près et d'une manière complètement inattendu."

[91] See text, p. 179.

[92] Ker Porter calls the figure one "of very rude workmanship" (*Travels*, vol. ii. p. 406). Mr. Layard says it is "either so barbarously executed as to show very little progress in art," or else "left unfinished by the sculptor." (*Nineveh and Babylon*, p. 507.) Mr. Loftus speaks of it as "roughly cut." (*Chaldæa and Susiana*, p. 19.) M. Oppert calls it "très-peu digne de Babylone," and speaks of its "valeur minime comme œuvre d'art." (*Expédition*, tom. i. p. 148.)

[93] So, besides Mr. Layard (l. s. c.), M. Thomas, who accompanied M. Fresnel (*Journal asiatique*, Juin, 1853, p. 525), and M. Oppert.

[94] Mr. Claude Clerk, now governor of the Military Prison, Southwark.

[95] *Travels*, vol. ii. Pl. 80. fig. 3.

[96] This [Pl. XVIII. Fig. 2] is engraved on a large black stone brought from Babylon, and now in the British Museum. It probably represents the king Merodach-iddin-akhi, who warred with Tiglath-Pileser I. about B.C. 1120. (See Vol. I. pp. 392, 293.)

[97] The artist has somewhat improved the drawing of the hand [Pl. XVIII. Fig. 2]. In the original more is seen of the fingers; and the thumb does not touch the arrows.

[98] The dog probably represents a constellation or a star—perhaps the Dog-star. The type is a fixed one, and occurs on seals and gems no less than on the "black stones." (See Ker Porter, vol. ii. Pl. 80, fig. 2; Lajard, *Culte de Mithra*. Pl. xlvi. figs. 23 and 24; Pl. liv. B, fig. 15.)

[99] See Pl. XXXIII. Fig. 2, Vol. I. The date of this tablet is uncertain; but Sir H. Rawlinson is on the whole inclined to regard it as Babylonian rather than Proto-Chaldæan.

[100] For the goats and cows, see Pl. IX. Figs. 2 and 4. The exquisite figure of a deer represented [Pl. XIX. Fig. 1], and the quaint drawing of a monkey playing the pipe, are given by M. Lajard (*Culte de Mithra*, Pl. liv. B, No. 8, and Pl. xxix. No. 7) from cylinders in the collections of the Duc de Luynes and the Bibliothèque Royale.

[101] Lajard, Pl. xxxiii. No. 5.

[102] Lajard, Pl. xiii. No. 5.

[103] Lajard, Pl. xxix. No. 1.

[104] The upper line has been omitted, as containing nothing quaint or grotesque.

[105] Ezek. xxiii 14.

[106] Ibid ver. 16. "As soon as she saw them with her eyes she doted upon them."

[107] Diod. Sic. ii. 8, § 6. Ζῶα παντοδαπὰ φιλοτέχνως τοῖς τε χρώμασι καὶ τοῖς τῶν τύπων ἀπομιμήμασι κατεσκευασμένα.

[108] Παρατάξεις καὶ κυνήγια. Diod. Sic. ii. 8, § 7.

[109] See Vol. I. pp. 220, 221.

[110] Layard, *Nineveh and Babylon*, p. 507; Oppert, *Expédition*, tom. i. p. 143.

[111] Oppert, p. 144.

[112] Layard, p. 166. note.

[113] Birch, *Ancient Pottery*, vol. i. p. 148.

[114] Layard, l. s. c.

[115] The French chemists, who analyzed bricks from the Birs towards the close of the last century, found the coloring matter of the blue tint to be cobalt. (Birch, l. s. c.) In the Babylonian bricks analyzed by Sir H. de la Beche and Dr. Percy the blue glaze was oxide of copper.

[116] Layard, l. s. c.

[117] Birch, p. 149.

[118] Id. p. 148.

[119] This statement is made on the authority of M. Oppert. (*Expédition*, tom. i. pp. 144, 145.) No other traveller has remarked an inequality of surface on the enamelled bricks.

[120] M. Thomas, who accompanied M. Oppert as artist, is the author of this theory as to the mode in which these works of art were designed and executed.

[121] The separate painting and enamelling of the bricks is proved by the fact that the coloring matter and the glaze have often run over from the side painted to all the adjoining surfaces. (Oppert, tom. i. p. 145.)

[122] Mr. Birch believes that they were partially baked before the color was applied (*Ancient Pottery*, vol i. p. 128), and returned to the kiln afterwards.

[123] It is difficult in most instances to decide from the cylinders themselves whether they are Babylonian or Assyrian. We must be chiefly guided by the locality where they were found. It is believed that cylinders have been found in Babylonia of all these materials.

[124] See King's *Ant. Gems*, p. 127, note.

[125] See Vol. I. p. 234.

[126] We shall find below that, on astronomical grounds, the possession of lenses by the Babylonians is to be suspected.

[127] The Babylonian mounds are covered with fragments of glass. (Layard, *Nin. and Bab.* p. 507.)

[128] Aristoph. *Nub.* 746–748, ed.

[129] See Daniel, iii. 1; v. 4; Herod. i. 181–183; Diod. Sic. ii. 8, § 7; 9, § 5.

[130] Herod. i. 186; Diod. Sic. ii. 10, § 5.

[131] As in the piers of the great bridge. (Herod. l. s. c.)

[132] Herod. i. 183.

[133] Σφυρήλατα. Diod. Sic. ii. 9, § 5.

[134] See text, p. 192.

[135] Nebuchadnezzar states frequently that the walls of his buildings are "clothed with silver."

[136] Herod. i. 179; Diod. Sic. ii. 8, § 7.

[137] They are said to have been opened by a machine. (Diod. Sic. l. s. c.)

[138] Like those made by Herod the Great for the Temple (Joseph. *Bell. Jud.* v. 5, § 3), which required 20 men to close them (ibid. vi. 5, § 3). We have no certain representations of Babylonian town-gates; but those drawn by the Assyrians are always solid.

[139] This gate and gateway are represented upon a cylinder figured by Lajard. (*Culte de Mithra*, Pl. xli. fig. 5.)

[140] See the figure of a king [Pl. XVIII. Fig. 2]. The bracelets have the almost invariable rosette of the Assyrians [Pl. CXIV. Fig. 3, Vol. I.]. The dagger handles are like those figured [Pl. CVII. Fig. 6, Vol. I.].

[141] Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. p. 425.

[142] See Pls. XVIII. Fig. 1, and Pl. XXI.

[143] See the *Travels*, vol. ii. Pl. 80, fig. 4.

[144] Birch, *Ancient Pottery*, vol. i. p. 144. Compare the specimens of Assyrian pottery represented in the first volume of the present work.

[145] Birch, l. s. c.

[146] See Lajard, Pls. xxxiii. fig. 1; xxxv. fig. 3; and liv. A, fig. 9.

[147] Birch, *Ancient Pottery*, vol. i. p. 148.

[148] See Pl. XX. Fig. 3, where both vases are thus ornamented.

[149] Several small glass bottles were found by Mr. Layard in the mound of Babil. (*Nineveh and Babylon*, p. 503.) Broken glass is abundant in the rubbish of the mounds generally. (Rich, *First Memoir*, p. 29; Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. ii. p. 392.)

[150] Wilkinson, *Ancient Egyptians*, vol. iii. p. 101.

[151] Plin. *H. N.* xxxvii. 5.

[152] Athen. *Deipn.* v. p. 197; Arrian, *Exp. Al.* vi. 29.

[153] Athen. l. s. c.

[154] Arrian, l. s. c.

[155] The "goodly Babylonish garment" coveted by Achan in Palestine shortly after the Exodus of the Jews (Josh. vii. 21) is indicative of the early celebrity of Babylonian apparel.

[156] Strab. xvi. 1, § 7.

[157] Herod. i. 195.

[158] See Plat. *Epinom.* p. 987; Hipparch. ap. Procl. *in Tim.* p. 71, ed. Schneider; Phœnix Coloph. ap. Athen. *Deipn.* xii. p. 530. E; Diod. Sic. ii. 31; Cic. *De Div.* i. 1; Plin. *H. N.* vi. 26; Manil. i. 40-45; &c. The late Sir Cornewall Lewis questioned the truth of this belief, and asserted that "the later Greeks appear to have been wanting in that national spirit which leads modern historians of science to contend for the claims of their own countrymen to inventions and discoveries." But he failed to adduce any sufficient proof of this strange idiosyncrasy of the later Greeks, which in his own mind seems to have rested on a conviction that the lively, intelligent Greeks could not have been so indebted as they said they were to "the obtuse, uninventive, and immovable intellect of Orientals." (*Astronomy of the Ancients*, pp. 290, 291.)

[159] Compare Cic. *De Div.* l. s. c. "Principio, Assyrii, ut ab ultimis auctoritatem repetam, *propter planitiem magnitudinemque regionum quas incolebant*, cum cœlum ab omni parte patens atque apertum intuerentur, trajectiones motusque stellarum observitaverunt."

[160] The cosmogony of the Babylonians, as described by Berosus, has the air of a very high antiquity about it. In this document the "five planets" are distinctly mentioned. (Beros. Fr. 1, § 6.) The planetary character of the five gods, Nin, Merodach, Nergal, Ishtar, and Nebo, belongs even to Proto-Chaldæan times. (See Vol. I. pp. 86–92.)

[161] Excepting certain insignificant portions which intervene between one constellation and another. The stars in these portions are called "unformed stars."

[162] The letters of the Greek alphabet are assigned to the several stars in each constellation; α to the largest, β to the next largest, and so on. Thus astronomers speak of "β Virginis," "γ Piscium," "δ Lyræ," and thereby indicate to each other distinctly the particular star about which they have something to say. (See Fergusson's *Astronomy*, p. 232.)

[163] Sir John Herschel observes that a proper system of constellations is valuable "as an artificial memory." (*Outlines of Astronomy*, p. 181, note.)

[164] Astronomers are said at the present day to "treat lightly or altogether to disregard" the outlines of men and monsters which figure on our celestial globes; and the actual arrangement is said to cause confusion and inconvenience. (Herschel, l. s. c.) But the terminology is still used, and α Leonis, β Scorpii, &c., remain the sole expressions by which the particular stars can be designated.

[165] The stellar character of such monuments [Pl. XXI.] is sufficiently indicated by the central group, where the male and female sun and the crescent moon are clearly represented.

[166] The "Houses of the Moon," or divisions of the lunar Zodiac, are said to have been known also both to the Chinese and the Indians.

[167] Geminus, § 15. The *exact* period is 18 years, 10 days, 7 hours, and 43 minutes.

[168] *Magn. Syntax.* iii. 6.

[169] Ib. iv. 5, 8; v. 14.

[170] Even if we set aside the testimony of Porphyry, recorded by Simplicius (ad Arist. *De Cœlo*, p. 503, A), on account of the exaggerated number of the Greek text (Lewis, *Astronomy of the Ancients*, p. 286), we have still important testimony to the antiquity of the Babylonian observations: 1. in the words of Aristotle, οἱ πάλαι τετηρηκότες ἐκ πλείστων

ἐτῶν. . . . Βαβυλώνιοι (*De Cœlo*, ii. 12, § 3; 2. in those of Diodorus quoted at the head of the text of this chapter; 3. in those of the author of the Platonic Epinomis (§ 9. p. 987), of Pliny, Cicero, and others. (See above, note 158.)

171 *Magn. Syntax.* iii. 6. Εἰς τὴν ἀρχὴν τοῦ Ναβονασσάρου βασιλείας . . . ἀφ' οὗ χρόνου καὶ τὰς παλαιὰς τηρήσεις ἔχομεν ὡς ἐπίπαν μέχρι δεῦρο διασωζομένας.

172 Ap. Syncell. *Chronograph.* p. 207, B. Ἀπὸ δὲ Ναβονασάρου τοὺς χρόνους τῆς τῶν ἀστέρων κινήσεως Χαλδαῖοι ἠκρίβωσαν . . . ἐπειδὴ . . . Ναβονάσαρος συναγαγὼν τὰς πραξεις τῶν πρὸ αὐτοῦ βασιλέων ἠφάνισεν.

173 Scholiast. ad Arat. 752.

174 Aristot. *De Cœlo*, ii. 12, § 3.

175 Herod. ii. 109.

176 See Vince's *Astronomy*, vol. ii. p. 251.

177 Ibid. The exact length of the Chaldæan year is said to have been 365 days, 6 hours, and 11 minutes, which is an excess of two seconds only over the true (sidereal) year.

178 Ibid. l. s. c. Vince quotes Diodorus as his authority, but I have not been able to find the passage.

179 Aristot. *De Cœlo*, l. s. c.

180 Diod. Sic. ii. 31, § 5.

181 The arrangement of the great temple at Borsippa, already described, is a sufficient proof of the statement in the text.

182 The astronomical tablets discovered in Mesopotamia have now for some time occupied the attention of Sir H. Rawlinson. It is to be hoped that he will give to the world, before many months are past, the results of his studies. They cannot fail to be highly interesting.

183 See text, p. 208.

184 See Aristoph. *Acharn.* 653; *Vesp.* 93, 827.

185 Sir G. C. Lewis went so far as to deny to the Babylonians, in general terms, the use of any instruments whatsoever. (*Astronomy of the Ancients*, pp. 277, 278.)

186 See Vol. I. p. 234.

187 Strab. xvi. 1, § 6.

188 See Diod. Sic. ii. 30, § 2; 31, § 1; Cic. *De Div.* i. 1; ii. 42; Clitarch. ap. Diog. Laert. Proem. § 6; Theophrast. ap. Procl. *Comment. in Plat. Tim.* p. 285, F.; and compare Isaiah xlvii. 13, Dan. ii. 2, &c.

189 Strab. l. s. c.; Sext. Empir. *Adv. Math.* v. 27; Vitruv. ix. 4; Cic. *De Div.* ii. 42; &c.

190 Many of the ancient astrologers regarded the moment of conception as the true natal hour, and cast the horoscope in reference to that point of time. (See Letronne, *Observations sur un Zodiaque égyptien*, p. 84, note 2.)

191 Diod. Sic. ii. 31, § 1. Compare Sext. Emp. l. s. c.; Censorin. § 8; Hor. *Od.* ii. 17, 17–22; Juv. *Sat.* xiv. 248.

192 Diod. Sic. ii. 30, § 5. Ποτὲ μὲν γὰρ πνευμάτων μεγέθη δηλοῦν αὐτοὺς (i. e. τοὺς ἀστέρας), ποτὲ δὲ ὄμβρων ἢ καυμάτων ὑπερβολάς. ἔστι δὲ ὅτε κομητῶν ἀστέρων ἐπιτολάς. ἔτι δὲ ἡλίου τε καὶ σελήνης ἐκλείψεις, καὶ σεισμους, καὶ το συνολον πάσας τὰς ἐκ τοῦ περιέχοντος γεννωμένας περιστάσεις ὠφελίμους τε καὶ βλαβερὰς οὐ μόνον ἔθνεσι καὶ τόποις, ἀλλὰ καὶ βασιλεῦσι καὶ τοῖς τυχοῦσιν ἰδιώταις.

193 Lists of these two kinds have been found by Sir H. Rawlinson among the tablets.

194 Columella, xi. 1, § 3.

195 Strab. xvi. 1, § 6.

CHAPTER VI.

1 Herod. i. 195.

2 Ibid. The *mitra* of Herodotus in this passage is generally regarded as a turban, but the monuments make it almost certain that this view is incorrect. Neither in the Assyrian nor in the Babylonian remains is there any representation of a turban. But the head-band or fillet is common. The ordinary meaning of *mitra* is "a fillet."

3 Unless the figure represented (Pl. X. Fig. 1) is that of a mortal, which is somewhat doubtful.

4 See Pl. XXIII. Fig. 5.

5 See Layard, *Nineveh and Babylon*, p. 527; Birch, *Ancient Pottery*, vol. i. p. 147.

6 This cylinder is represented in full by Mr. Layard (*Nineveh and Babylon*, p. 538). Other examples of the simple tunic will be found [Pl. XXIV. Fig. 3]; Cullimore, Pl. vii. No. 36; Pl. viii. No. 39; Pl. xii. No. 64; Pl. xix. No. 98, &c.

7 Lajard, Pl. iii. fig. 1. Compare Cullimore, Pl. viii. No. 39.

8 Lajard, Pl. xxxvi. fig. 13; Pl. xl. fig. 1.

9 See the representation of a king [Pl. XVIII. Fig. 2].

10 Such a boot appears to be worn by the soldier represented [Pl. XXII. Fig. 4].

11 Compare Pl. IV. Fig. 4.

12 Herod. i. 195. Ὑπόδημα ἐπιχώριον.

13 See Ezek. xxiii. 15. (See the passage quoted at the head of text of this chapter.) Girdles are worn in almost every representation of a Babylonian upon the monuments.

14 Herod. i. 195. The seals of the Babylonians have been already described at some length. (See text, p. 202.) They were probably worn on a string round the wrist. (Compare Vol. I. p 68.) No clear trace has been found of Babylonian walking-sticks; but it is observable that the court officers at Persepolis are universally represented with sticks in their hands.

15 See Pl. CXIV. Fig. 4, Vol. I.

16 The artist has not represented this tendency sufficiently. It is nearly as marked on the Black Stone as on the frieze represented [Pl. XV. Fig. 2].

17 The similarity of this head-dress to that worn by the winged bulls and lions

at Khorsabad and Koyunjik, adopted afterwards by the Persians at Persepolis (Flandin, tom. ii. Pls. lxxxi. lxxxii. &c.), is remarkable.

[18] As was the tiara of the Assyrians. (Vol. I. p. 284.)

[19] A necklace is worn by the king represented on the Sir-i Zohab tablet [Pl. XXIV. Fig. 1], but he is thought to be one of the Proto-Chaldæan monarchs.

[20] Fr. 10. See the *Fragm. Hist. Gr.* vol. iii. p. 360.

[21] A sort of collar or necklace is often worn by a god. (Lajard, *Culte de Mithra*, pl. xxxvii. fig. 1; pl. xxxviii. figs. 2 and 3; &c.) But there are only a very few doubtful cases where the worshipper seems to wear one. (See Lajard, pl. xxxv. fig. 4; xxxvii. fig. 7; &c.)

[22] See Pl. CXIV. Fig. 3, Vol. I.

[23] This scarf is only an occasional appendage. Instances of it will be found in Lajard, pl. xii. fig. 16; pl. xviii. fig. 6; pl. xxxviii figs. 3 and 4; &c.

[24] Fig. 3, which follows the representation of Lajard, pl. lvi. fig. 8, gives probably the most correct representation of the head-dress. A similar mitre is represented on the head of the priest in the Sir-i-Zohab tablet. [Pl. XXIV. Fig. 1.]

[25] See Lajard. pl. xxxvii. fig. 7.

[26] Herod. vii. 63.

[27] The shields and helmets of the Babylonians are mentioned by Ezekiel (xxiii. 24), their breast plates by Jeremiah (li. 3), their spears and swords by the same writer (vi. 23; xlvi. 14, 16), while axes are assigned them by Ezekiel (xxxvi. 9).

[28] See Jer. iv. 29; vi. 23; li. 3; &c. And compare Æschyl. *Pers.* 55, where the Babylonians in the army of Xerxes are characterized as "skilled to draw the bow" (*τοξουλκῷ λήματι πιστούς*).

[29] Pl. XVIII. Fig. 2.

[30] Pl. XXII. Fig. 4.

[31] This monument was, I believe, first noticed by Sir H. Rawlinson, who described it in the *Journal of the Geographical Society*, vol. ix. p. 31. The representation [Pl. XXIV. Fig. 1] is from a sketch made on the spot by that traveller.

[32] See Layard, *Monuments of Nineveh*, 2nd Series, Pls. 25 and 27.

[33] Pl. CIV. Fig. 4, Vol. I.

[34] Compare Pl. XXII. Fig. 4.

[35] See Pl. CVII. Fig. 6, Vol. I.

[36] See Loftus, *Chaldæa and Susiana*, p. 258. The tablet is in the British Museum.

[37] See Vol. I. pp. 241-259.

[38] Lajard, *Culte de Mithra*, pl. xxix. fig. 4, and pl. xxxiv. fig. 9.

[39] See Mr. Layard's *Monuments of Nineveh*, Second Series, pl. xlv.

[40] Cullimore, *Cylinders*, pl. i. fig. 6; Lajard, pl. xli. fig. 3.

[41] Liv. v. 41; ix. 40; Dio Cass. xlvii. 40; Cic. *in Ver.* ii. 1, 59.

[42] Habak. i. 7, 8.

[43] Ezek. xxiii. 23.

[44] Jer. iv. 13.

[45] Compare Herod. vii. 63 and 84-87.

[46] *Behist. Inscr.* col. ii. par. 1, § 2.

[47] See Jer. iv. 29; vi. 23; xlvi. 4; l. 37; Ezek. xxvi. 7, 11, &c.

[48] Compare Is. xxii. 6, with Ezek. xxiii. 23.

[49] Jer. iv. 29. "The whole city shall flee for the *noise* of the horsemen and the bowmen." Ezek. xxvi. 10. "Thy walls shall shake at the *noise* of horsemen, and of the wheels, and of the chariots."

[50] Habak. i. 8.

[51] Ezek. iv. 2; xxi. 22. For the use of battering-rams by the Assyrians, see Vol. I. pp. 274, 275.

[52] Habak. i. 10; Jer. vi. 6; xxxii. 24; xxxiii. 4; Ezek. iv. 2; xxi. 22; xxvi. 8.

[53] 2 K. xxv. 1-3; Jer. lii. 4-6.

[54] Joseph. *Ant. Jud.* x. 11, § 2.

[55] Ezek. xxi. 21, 22. "For the king of Babylon stood at the parting of the way, at the head of the two ways, to use divination: he made his arrows bright, he consulted with images, he looked in the liver. At his right hand was the divination for 'Jerusalem,'" &c.

[56] See Diod. Sic. ii. 29-31.

[57] Dan. ii. 12, 14, 24, 27, 48; iv. 6, 18.

[58] The Chaldæans are the spokesmen for the whole body (Dan. ii. 4-11).

[59] Dan. i. 4.

[60] Ibid.

[61] Dan. i. 17; ii. 2-11; iv. 6, 7; v. 7, 8.

[62] Dr. Pusey has successfully shown, against Lengerke, that in Daniel four definite classes of "wise men" are mentioned. (*Lectures on Daniel*, pp. 417-421.) These are the *Casdim* or Chaldæans, the *ashshaphim* or astrologers (compare נְשַׁף "twilight") the *khartummim*, or sacred scribes (from חֶרֶט "stylus"), and the *m'cashshĕphim* (Chaldee, *gazĕrin*) or "soothsayers."

[63] Dan. i. 4, 20.

[64] Ibid. ii. 48; iv. 9; v. 11.

[65] Ibid. ii. 49; iii. 30.

[66] Herod. i. 181. Οἱ Χαλδαῖοι *ἐόντες ἱρέες τούτου τοῦ θεοῦ* (sc. *τοῦ* Βήλου).

[67] Strab. xvi. 1, § 6. *Τοῖς ἐπιχωρίοις φιλοσόφοις τοῖς Χαλδαίοις προσαγορευομένοις, οἳ περὶ ἀστρονομίαν εἰσὶ τὸ πλέον.*

[68] Dan. i. 4; ii. 48. Compare Strab. xvi. 1, § 6. The Greek writers were apt to see castes where no real caste existed. Sir G. Wilkinson has shown that the priests in Egypt did not really form a caste (see the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii. p. 212, note 5, 2nd edition), though the Greeks unanimously teach otherwise. (See Plat. *Tim.* p. 11, A. ed. Stallbaum; Diod. Sic. i. 29; Strab. xvii. 1, § 3; &c.)

[69] The library of Asshur-bani-pal already described (see Vol. I. p. 485) was

mainly composed of treatises in the early (Turanian) dialect.

[70] The tablet literature in the early Turanian tongue is believed to embrace all these subjects.

[71] Strab. l. s. c. Εστι δὲ καὶ τῶν Χαλδαίων τῶν ἀστρονομικῶν γένη πλείω· καὶ γὰρ Ὀρχηνοί τινες προσαγορεύονται καὶ Βορσιππηνοί.

[72] Dan. i. 20; ii. 2; iv. 7; &c.

[73] Berosus speaks of the "chief of the Chaldæans" (τὸν βέλτιστον) as keeping the kingdom for Nebuchadnezzar during the interval between his father's death and his own arrival at Babylon. He must have been a sort of Regent of the Empire. Daniel held not only high ecclesiastical but also high civil office (Dan. ii. 48).

[74] See text, p. 204.

[75] Herod. i. 195.

[76] Ezek. xvii. 4.

[77] Is. xliii. 14. This prophet speaks also of the "merchants" of Babylon (xlvii. 15).

[78] See Vol. I. p. 65.

[79] Æschyl. *Pers.* ll. 52-55. Βαβυλὼν δ' ἡ πολύχρυσος πάμμικτον ὄχλον πέμπει σύρδην, ναῶν τ' ἐπόχους, καὶ τοξουλκῷ λήματι πιστούς.

[80] Herod. i. 183. Compare the report of Nearchus in Arrian's *Indica* (xxxii. 7) with respect to the spice trade between Arabia and *Assyria*.

[81] It is a reasonable conjecture that the cotton and the "wood for walking-sticks," which were grown in the island of Tylos (Theophrast. *Hist. Plant.* iv. 9; v. 6), supplied the Babylonian market (Heeren, *As. Nat.* vol. ii. pp. 237, 238). The pearl fishery of the Persian Gulf is first mentioned by Nearchus (Arr. *Indica*, xxxviii. 3). It was probably known to the Babylonians from a very early date. (See Vol. I. p. 322.)

[82] Herod. i. 192; Ctes. *Indic.* § 5.

[83] Ibid.

[84] Strab. xvi. 3, § 3. Παραπλεύσαντι τῆς Ἀραβίας εἰς δισχιλίους καὶ τετρακοσίους σταδίους ἐν βαθεῖ κόλπῳ κεῖται πόλις Γερρα, Χαλδαίων φυγάδων ἐκ Βαβυλῶνος . . . Πεζέμποροι δ' εἰσὶν οἱ Γερραῖοι τὸ πλέον τῶν Ἀραβίων φορτίων καὶ ἀρωμάτων. Ἀριστόβουλος δὲ τοὐναντίον φησὶ τοὺς Γερραίους τὰ πολλὰ σχεδίαις εἰς τὴν Βαβυλωνίαν ἐμπορεύεσθαι, ἐκείθεν δὲ τῷ Εὐφράτῃ τὰ φορτία ἀναπλεῖν εἰς Θάψακον, εἶτα πεζῇ κομίζεσθαι πάντῃ. Compare Strab. xvi. 4, § 18, and Agathemer. *De Mar. Erythr.* § 87.

[85] Herod. i. 194.

[86] Diodorus relates that Semiramis brought a stone obelisk from Armenia down the Euphrates to Babylon (ii. 11, §§ 4, 5).

[87] See Vol. I. p. 321.

[88] The Greek names of Babylonian musical instruments (Dan. iii. 5) point to an early commerce between Babylonia and Greece, which would naturally follow this line. (Compare Herod. i. 1.) The instruments imported brought their names with them. (See Pusey's *Daniel* p. 26.)

[89] For the existence of this trade see Diod. Sic. ii. 11, § 1. For its probable objects see Heeren's *As. Nat.* vol. ii. pp. 204–213, E. T.

[90] Herod. i. 185.

[91] Diod. Sic. l. s. c.

[92] Strab. xvi. 1, § 9. Βαθεῖα γὰρ ἡ γὴ καὶ μαλακὴ καὶ εὐένδοτος.

[93] Herod. i. 193; Strab. xvi. 1, § 14.

[94] Xen. *Anab.* ii. 4, § 13; Herod. l. s. c.

[95] Herod. l. s. c.; Amm. Marc. xxiv. 3; Zosim. iii. pp. 173–179.

[96] On the excellence of one kind of Babylonian date see Theophrast. *Hist. Plant.* ii. 8, p. 35, ed. Heinsius.

[97] Herod. i. 193. That Herodotus misconceives the means whereby the fructification was effected does not invalidate his testimony as to the fact. Theophrastus corrects his error. (*Hist. Plant.* ii. 9, ad fin.)

[98] Theophrast. *Hist. Plant.* ii. 8.

[99] See notes 45 and 46, Chapter II., Vol. I., *First Monarchy*.

[100] Theophrast. l. s. c.

[101] The plough represented [Pl. XXIV. Fig. 3], which is from a cylinder figured by M. Felix Lajard (*Culte de Mithra*, pl. xxxiv. fig. 15), may be contrasted with the Assyrian implement, of which a representation has been given [Plate CXXXIV. Fig. 2, Vol. I.]. It is of very much lighter structure, but is inferior to the Assyrian in having no apparatus for drilling the seed.

[102] Herod. i. 193; Strab. xvi. 1, § 14.

[103] Rich, *First Memoir on Babylon*, p. 59, note. (See note 84, Chapter II., Vol. I., *First Monarchy*.)

[104] Milking the goat is represented on a cylinder figured by M. Lajard, from which Pl. XXV. Fig. 1, is taken. (*Culte de Mithra*, pl. xli. fig. 5.)

[105] By palm-wine, which is mentioned both by Herodotus and Strabo (ll. s. c.) among the products of Babylonia, is (I think) to be understood the fermented sap of the tree, not the spirit which may be distilled from the fruit. (See Vol. I. p. 23.)

[106] Xen. *Anab.* ii. 3, § 55.

[107] Strab. xvi. 1, § 7. Τὰ Βόρσιππα ἱερὰ πόλις ἐστὶ . . . πληθύουσι δ' ἐν αὐτῇ νυκτερίδες μείζους πολὺ τῶν ἐν ἄλλοις τόποις· ἁλίσκονται δ' εἰς βῶσιν καὶ ταριχεύονται.

[108] Herod. i. 200.

[109] See Vol. I. pp. 26, 27; and compare Pl. V. Vol. I.

[110] For the use of wine, see Dan. i. 5; v. 1; Nic. Dam. Fr. 10, p. 360; Q. Curt. v. 1. On its importation from abroad, see Herod. i. 194.

[111] Q. Curt. l. s. c.

[112] See text, pp. 42, 43.

[113] Nic. Dam. Fr. 10, p. 362.

[114] Herod. i. 195.

[115] Dan. v. 2; Nic. Dam. Fr. 10, p. 363.

[116] See Pl. CXXXII. Fig. 1, Vol. I.; and for the full representation of the entire

scene, see Mr. Layard's *Monuments of Nineveh*, 2nd series, Pls. 48 and 49.

[117] Dan. iii. 5, 7, 10, 15. Compare Ps. cxxxvii 3; and Is. xiv. 11.

[118] Ctes. ap. Athen. *Deipn.* xii. p. 530 B.

[119] Compare Nic. Dam. Fr. 10, p. 362, with the fragment of Ctesias in Athenæus. Nicolas says of the women—*αἱ μὲν ἐκιθάριζον, αἱ δ' ἠύλουν, αἱ δὲ ἔψαλλον.* Ctesias says—*ἔψαλλον δὲ καὶ ᾖδον.*

[120] Compare Septuagint version, which translates the Hebrew מַשְׂרוֹקִיתָא by *σύριγξ*, the קִיתָרוֹס by *κιθάρα*, and the פְּסַנְתֵּרִין by *ψαλτήριον*. *Σύριγξ* is probably used loosely for *αὐλός*. It was the technical name for the mouthpiece of the *αὐλός*. (See Liddell and Scott's *Lexicon*, s. v. *αὐλός*.)

[121] The Hebrew קֶרֶן is generally regarded as the curved horn, in contradistinction to the שׁוֹפָר or straight trumpet. But as the Assyrians seem to have employed the straight horn, and not (so far as we know) the curved one (see Pl. CXXX. Fig. 3, Vol. I.), perhaps the קַרְנָא of Daniel may represent the straight instrument. The LXX. render it by *σάλπιγξ*, which was straight, not curved.

[122] See Pl. CXXVIII. Fig. 1, Vol. I.

[123] Lajard, *Culte de Mithra*, pl. xxxix. fig. 8.

[124] See Pl. CXXVI. Fig. 3.

[125] "Sackbut" is certainly a wrong rendering of *sabka* or *sambuca*, for the sackbut was a wind instrument, whereas the *sambuca* was certainly a kind of harp. (Compare Athen. *Deipn.* iv. p. 175, D; xiv. pp. 633-637; Vitruv. vi. 1; Suidas, ad voc. &c.)

[126] Gesenius regards *santour* as a corruption of *pesanterin*, the Chaldee representation of the *ψαλτήριον* of the Greeks. The resemblance of a (Susianian) instrument, represented on the monuments of Assyria, to the modern *santour*, has been already noticed. (See Vol. I. p. 308; and compare Pusey's *Daniel*, p. 33.)

[127] Gesenius, ad voc. סוּמְפֹנְיָה; Joel Brill, *Comment. in Daniel*, &c.

[128] Ibn Yahia, *Comment. in Dan.* iii. 5. Compare Jerome on Luke xv., where the view is mentioned but combated.

[129] Dan. iii. 5, 7, &c.

[130] Herod. i. 196. Compare Nic. Dam. Fr. 131, and Ælian. *Var. Hist.* iv. 1.

[131] Herod. i. 199. Compare Baruch, vi. 43.

[132] See also Dan. v. 10-12, where the queen enters the banqueting house and gives her advice openly before the lords.

[133] See Pl. XXI. Fig. 3.

[134] Lajard, *Culte de Mithra*, pl. xxviii. fig. 12.

[135] Ibid. pl. xl. fig. 6.

[136] Ibid. pl. xxvii. fig. 7.

[137] See Pl. XVII. Fig. 2.

[138] See Pl. XXIII. Fig. 6.

[139] Lajard, pl. xl. fig. 6.

[140] See Pl. XX. Fig. 3. Stools will be seen in the illustrations [Pl. XIX. Fig. 4, Pl. XXV. Fig. 1].

[141] See Vol. I. pp. 234-237.

[142] Theophrast. *Hist. Plant.* ii. 8. *Τῶν φοινίκων . . . τὸ μὲν κάρπιμον, τὸ δὲ ἄκαρπον· ἐξ ὧν οἱ περὶ Βαβυλῶνα τάς τε κλίνας καὶ τὰ ἄλλα σκευὴ ποιοῦνται.*

[143] Ibid. v. 4 and 7.

CHAPTER VII.

[1] Compare Vol. I. pp. 73-93.

[2] Ibid. pp. 93-96.

[3] Compare the priest on Urukh's cylinder [Pl. XIV. Fig. 2, Vol. I.] with those represented in Pl. XXIII. Fig. 6.

[4] See text, p. 224.

[5] Among the titles given by Nebuchadnezzar to Merodach are the following:—"the great lord," "the first-born of the gods," "the most ancient," "the supporter of sovereignty," "the king of the heavens and the earth."

[6] This may be concluded from the fact that in the time of Cyrus the great temple at Babylon was known uniformly as the temple of Belus. It receives some confirmation from the further fact that Nabonidus gave his eldest son a name (Belshazzar) which placed him under Bel's protection.

[7] See Vol. I. p. 91, and compare the author's *Herodotus*, vol. i. pp. 496, 497, 2nd edition.

[8] This is sufficiently apparent from the native monuments. It is confirmed by the Jewish writers. (See Isaiah xlvi. 1; Jerem. l. 2; li. 44.)

[9] *Nabo*-polassar, *Nebu*-chadnezzar, and *Nabo*-nidus.

[10] *Labo*-rosoarchod, which stands perhaps for *Nabo* rosoarchod, as *Laby*-netus for *Nabo*-nahid or Nabonidus.

[11] See 2 Kings xxv. 8; Jerem. xxxix. 3 and 13.

[12] Abed-nego is a name which admits of no Semitic derivation. It has indeed been explained as equivalent to Ebed-melech (Arab. Abdulmalik), which means "the servant of the king;" but the only ground for this is the Abyssinian *negus*, "king," which became *naga* in Achæmenian Persian, but of which there is no trace in either Babylonian or Assyrian.

[13] The Jews seem often to have played with the names of the heathen gods in a spirit of scorn and contumely. Thus Zir-banît becomes Succoth-benoth, "tents of daughters" (2 K. xvii. 30); Nebo becomes in one place Nibhaz, "the barker" (ibid. verse 31); Anunit becomes Anammelech, to chime with Adrammelech (ibid.), &c. Similarly Tartak may be suspected to be a derisive corruption of Tir, and Nisroch of Nergal, who

was sometimes called simply *Nis* or *Nir*.

[14] See Vol. I. p. 89.

[15] Jerem. xxxix. 3.

[16] The narrative in the Apocryphal Daniel, which forms the first part of our Book of "Bel and the Dragon," though probably not historical, seems to be written by one well acquainted with Babylonian notions. The king in the narrative evidently regards the idol as the eater of the victuals.

[17] Φασι δὲ οἱ αὐτοὶ οὗτοι [οἱ Χαλδαῖοι] τὸν θεὸν αὐτὸν φοιτᾷν ἐς τὸν νηόν, κ.τ.λ. (Herod. i. 182.)

[18] Herod. i. 181.

[19] See the passage of Daniel quoted at the head of the text of this chapter.

[20] This appears to have been the case from the description of the image of Bel in the Apocryphal Daniel. (Οὗτος ἐσωθεν μὲν ἐστι πηλὸς, ἔξωθεν δὲ χαλκός, Apoc. Dan. xiv. 6.) Bronze hammered work, laid over a model made of clay mixed with bitumen, has been found in Assyria. (See Vol. I. p. 224.)

[21] Sir H. Rawlinson in the author's *Herodotus* (vol. i. p. 517, 2nd edition).

[22] See text, pp. 189–193.

[23] According to the Apocryphal Daniel *seventy* priests were attached to the great Temple of Bel at Babylon. Apoc. Dan. xiv. 9.)

[24] Ibid. verses 14, 19, and 20. The fact is implied in Diodorus's statement that the priests were a caste. (Diod. Sic. ii. 29, § 4.)

[25] Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* vii. 16.

[26] The goat is the ordinary sacrificial animal on the cylinders; but occasionally we see an ox following the worshipper. (See Cullimore, pl. xi. No. 60.)

[27] See the figures of priests [Pl. XXIII. Fig. 6].

[28] Herod. i. 183.

[29] See Pl. XXIV. Fig. 2. Compare Macrob. *Sat.* i. 23. "Vehitur enim simulachrum dei Heliopolitani ferculo, uti vehuntur in pompa ludorum Circensium deorum simulachra." The "deus Heliopolitanus" is the Sun-God of Sippara.

[30] Herod. i. 183.

[31] Dan. v. 1–4.

[32] Herod. i. 191. Λέγεται . . . χορεύειν τε τὸν χρόνον τοῦτον καὶ ἐν εὐπαθείῃσι εἶναι.

[33] Herod. i. 199. Compare Baruch vi. 43, and Strabo xvi. 1, § 20.

[34] The statement of Herodotus, that "from that time forth no gift, however great, will prevail with a Babylonian woman," is not repeated by Strabo, and is flatly contradicted by Q. Curtius. (See note 33, Chapter III.)

[35] Herod. i. 198.

[36] Strab. l. s. c.

[37] The Babylonians had a double system of notation, decimal and sexagintal. They wrote in series either 3, 4, 5, 6, or 3, 4, 5, 10. (Sir H. Rawlinson in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. i. p. 500, 2nd edition.)

[38] Ibid. p. 497.

[39] Ibid. p. 521.

[40] Ibid. p. 514.

[41] See Cullimore's *Cylinders*, pl. xviii. Nos. 92 to 95; pl. xxii. Nos. 113 and 115. Compare Lajard, *Culte de Mithra*, pls. xxxv. fig. 3; liv. A, fig. 12; liv. B, fig. 15.

[42] See Vol. I. p. 83, where the same usage is assigned to the early Chaldæans.

[43] Ibid. p 84.

[44] See Pl. XIX. Fig. 4, Vol. I.

[45] See Pl. XIX. Fig. 3, Vol. I.

[46] See Pl. XXI. Figs. 1 and 2. Vol. I.

[47] See Pl. XIX. Fig. 7, Vol. I.

[48] See the engraving of a cylinder [Pl. XXIV. Fig. 3].

[49] The two last-named emblems are uncommon. For the bee see Cullimore, pl. xxii. No. 117, and pl. xxiv. No. 129. For the spearhead, Cullimore, pl. xxvii. No. 147.

[50] Bit-Ana is certainly "the house of the god Anu or Ana," who was worshipped at Erech in conjunction with Beltis. (See Vol. I. p. 75.) Bit-Parra may be "the house of Phˆ Ra," or "the Sun." (Sir H. Rawlinson in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. i. p. 501, note 3, 2nd edition.) The meaning of the other terms has not even (so far as I am aware) been conjectured.

CHAPTER VIII.

[1] See Vol. I. pp. 99, 100.

[2] Compare Vol. I. p. 378.

[3] An account of these wars has been already given in the History of Assyria. (See Vol. I. pp. 381, 382.

[4] Herod. v. 52.

[5] Compare Vol. I. pp. 392, 393.

[6] Compare Vol. I. pp. 393, 394.

[7] Asshur-izir-pal tells us that, about the year B.C. 880, he recovered and rebuilt a city on the Diyaleh, which a Babylonian king named Tsibir had destroyed at a remote period. (See Vol. I. p. 398.)

[8] The passage in Macrobius is curious and seems worth giving at length. "Assyrii quoque," says this writer, "Solem sub nomine Jovis, quem Dia Heliopoliten cognominant, maximis cæremoniis celebrant in civitate quæ Heliopolis nuncupatur. Ejus dei simulacrum sumptum est de oppido Ægypti, quod et ipsum Heliopolis appellatur, regnante apud Ægyptios Senemure, seu idem Senepos nomine fuit, perlatumque est primum in eam per Opiam legatum Deleboris regis Assyriorum sacerdotesque Ægyptios, quorum princeps fuit Partimetis, diuque habitum apud Assyrios postea Heliopolin commigravit." (*Sat.* i. 23.) It is suspected that the Deleboras (or Deboras) here mentioned is identical with the Tsibir who took territory from the Assyrians. (See note 142, Chapter IX. Vol. I. *Second Monarchy*.)

[9] See Vol. I. p. 398.

[10] Ibid. p. 409.

[11] Ibid. pp. 417, 418.

[12] The Zimri of Mount Zagros, the

Aramæans of the middle Euphrates, and the Chaldæans of the south.

[13] It must be allowed to be still doubtful whether Pul was a king of Babylon or no. The Jewish writers call him "king of Assyria." In Berosus he was represented as "Chaldæorum rex." It is possible that he was one of the rebel chiefs against whom Asshur-dayan III. had to contend, that his authority was established in Western Mesopotamia, and that he took the title of "king of Assyria."

[14] Berosus. Fr. 11*a*. Ναβονάσαρος συναγαγὼν τὰς πράξεις τῶν πρὸ αὐτοῦ βασιλέων ἠφάνισεν.

[15] See the "Canon of Ptolemy."

[16] Herod. i. 184. Among those who identify the reigns of Semiramis and Nabonassar, and suppose a close tie of relationship to have existed between them, are Larcher (*Hérodote*, tom. i. p. 468). Clinton (*F. H.* vol. i. p 279, note f), Volney (*Recherches sur l'Histoire ancienne*, part iii. p. 79). Bosanquet (*Journal of Asiatic Society*, vol. xv. p. 280), and Vance Smith (*Prophecies relating to Assyria*, pp. 66, 67).

[17] See Vol. I. pp. 421, 422.

[18] Ibid. p. 422.

[19] One of these princes bears the name of *Nadi'a*, which may have been corrupted into Na-bu-[illegible] (See text, p. 233.)

[20] Bosanquet, *Fall of Nineveh*, p. 40.

[21] Ap. Joseph. *Ant. Jud.* ix. 14, § 2.

[22] See Vol. I. pp. 447, 448.

[23] See text, p. 233.

[24] See Vol. I. p. 436; compare note 411, Chapter IX., *Second Monarchy*.

[25] 2 K. xx. 12; Is. xxxix. 1.

[26] The ingenious explanation which Mr. Bosanquet has given of the going back of the shadow on the dial of Ahaz (*Jour. of Asiatic Society*, vol. xv. pp. 286-295) is probably known to most readers. A way is clearly shown in which the shadow *may* have gone back without any interference with the course of nature.

[27] Isaiah xxxix. 2, 4.

[28] The dependence of Judæa on Egypt during Hezekiah's reign is indicated by the expressions in 2 K. xviii. 21, 24; Is. xxxvi. 6, 9.

[29] See Vol. I. p. 440.

[30] Ibid. p. 148.

[31] An *interregnum* in the canon (ἔτη ἀβασίλευτα) necessarily implies a season of trouble and disorder. It does not show that there was no king, but only that no king reigned a full year.

[32] Polyhist. ap. Euseb. *Chron. Can.* i. 5, § 1. (See the passage quoted at length, note 413, Chapter IX., *Second Monarchy*.)

[33] See note 413, Chapter IX., *Second Monarchy*.

[34] See Vol. I. p. 447.

[35] Ibid. pp. 473 and 477.

[36] See note 689, Chapter IX., *Second Monarchy*.

[37] See Vol. I. pp. 447. 458. 459. 480. 481.

[38] As Susub does not appear in Ptolemy's Canon, it is tolerably certain that neither his first nor his second reign lasted a year. The revolt of Saül-mugina (Saos-duchinus) seems to have been put down within a few months. (See Vol. I. pp. 481-482.)

[39] This remark is true of all the known cases of revolt. It might, however, require some qualification, if the history of the eight years from B.C. 688 to B.C. 680 were recovered. The interregnum of Ptolemy in this place implies either revolt or a rapid succession of viceroys —probably the former.

[40] See Vol. I. pp. 496, 497.

[41] Abden. ad Euseb. *Chron. Can.* i. 9. "Saracus . . . certior factus turmarum vulgi collecticiarum quæ *à mari* adversus se adventarent, continuò Busalussorum militiæ ducem Babylonem mittebat." The *sea* here mentioned can only be the Persian Gulf. There is some reason to think that Bel sum-iskun, the father of Neriglissar (see text, p. 250), assumed the title of king of Babylon at this time. A fragment belonging to the reign of Asshur-emid-illin, the last Assyrian king, seems to speak of his taking possession of the Babylonian throne.

[42] It has been conjectured that the "turmæ vulgi collecticiæ" were a remnant of the Scythic hordes which had recently overrun Western Asia. But we cannot well imagine them advancing *from the sea*, or acting in concert with their special enemies, the Medes.

[43] Syncell. *Chronograph.* p. 210, B. Οὗτος [ὁ Ναβοπολάσαρος] στρατηγὸς ὑπὸ Σαράκου τοῦ Χαλδαίων βασιλέως σταλείς, κατὰ τοῦ αὐτοῦ Σαράκου εἰς Νίνον ἐπιστρατεύει. Compare Abyden. ap. Euseb. l. s. c., where Nabopolassar is called Busalussor (leg. Bupalussor) by the same sort of abbreviation by which Nebuchadnezzar has become Bokht-i-nazar among the modern Arabs.

[44] It is unlikely that any one who was not an Assyrian would have received so high an appointment.

[45] "Sed enim hic, capto rebellandi consilio, Amuhiam Asdahagis Medorum principis filiam nato suo Nabucodrossoro despondebat." Abyden. l. s. c. "Is (Sardanapallus) ad Asdahagem, qui erat Medicæ gentis præses et satrapa, copias auxiliares misit, videlicet ut filio suo Nabucodrossoro desponderet Amuhiam e filiabus Asdahagis unam." Alex. Polyhist. ap. Euseb. *Chron. Can.* i. 5, § 3. Χαλδαίων ἐβασίλευσεν Ναβοπολάσαρος ἔτη κά, ὁ πατὴρ τοῦ Ναβουχοδονόσορ. Τοῦτον ὁ πολυίστωρ Ἀλέξανδρος Σαρδανάπολον καλεῖ, πέμψαντα πρὸς Ἀστυάγην σατράπην Μηδίας, καὶ τὴν θυγατέρα αὐτοῦ Ἀρωΐτην λαβόντα νύμφην εἰς τὸν υἱὸν αὐτοῦ Ναβουχοδονόσορ. Syncell. *Chronograph.* p. 210, A. The marriage of Nebuchadnezzar with a Median princess was attested by Berosus. (Fr. 14.)

[46] That the Medes and Babylonians both took part in the siege is witnessed by Polyhistor (l. s. c.), Josephus (*Ant.*

Jud x. 5, § 1), and the author of the Book of Tobit (xiv. 15). It was also the view of Ctesias (Diod. Sic. ii. 24–28). Herodotus in his extant work speaks only of the Medes (i. 106), while in our fragments of Abydenus the Babylonians alone are distinctly mentioned. There is further considerable discrepancy as to the leaders engaged in the siege. Abydenus and Polyhistor make the Median commander Astyages; the author of Tobit calls him Assuerus (Xerxes). The same writer makes the Babylonian commander Nebuchadnezzar. I have followed in the text what seems to me the balance of authority.

47 See Vol. I. pp. 472, 473.

48 So also Berosus (Fr. 14), and Polyhistor (ap. Euseb. *Chron. Can.* i. 5, § 3).

49 Isaiah xiv. 4.

50 Herod. ii. 151, 152.

51 The only even apparent exception is the siege and capture of Ashdod (Herod. ii. 157), which may have had a defensive object. Egypt needed for her protection a strong fortress in this quarter.

52 Isaiah xlvii. 8.

53 See Herod. i. 74, and compare text, pp. 104, 105.

54 See text, pp. 105, 106.

55 The last year of Josiah was (I think) B.C. 608—not B.C. 609, as Clinton makes it (*F. H.* vol. i. p. 328), nor B.C. 610, as given in the margin of our Bibles.

56 See note 87, Chapter I.

57 2 Chron. xxxv. 21.

58 2 K. xxiii. 29, 30; 2 Chr. xxxv. 23, 24. Compare Herod. ii. 159, where the battle is erroneously placed at Magdolum (Magdala) instead of Megiddo.

59 2 Chr. xxxv. 20; Jer. xlvi. 2.

60 This is evident from what is said of the recovery of this tract by the Babylonians (2 K. xxiv. 17), and from the position of Neco's army in B.C. 605. (Jer. l. s. c.) It agrees also with the statements of Berosus (Fr. 14), except that Neco is there represented as a Babylonian satrap.

61 2 K. xxiii. 33, 34.

62 Herod. ii. 159; Jer. xlvii. 1.

63 The great battle of Carchemish, in which Nebuchadnezzar defeated Neco, was in the *fourth* year of Jehoiakim (Jer. xlvi. 2), whom Neco made king after his first successes.

64 Οὐ δυνάμενος ἔτι κακοπαθεῖν. (Beros. Fr. 14.)

65 Jer. xlvi. 5. Compare the narrative of Berosus. Συμμίξας δὲ Ναβουχοδονόσορος τῷ ἀποστάτῃ καὶ παραταξάμενος αὐτοῦ τε ἐκράτησε καὶ τὴν χώραν ἐκ ταύτης τῆς ἀρχῆς ὑπὸ τὴν αὐτοῦ βασιλείαν ἐποιήσατο. (Fr. 14.)

66 2 K. xxiv. 1.

67 Berosus speaks of Nebuchadnezzar's arranging the affairs of Egypt at this time (l. s. c.).

68 On this occasion Nebuchadnezzar, to save time, traversed the desert with a small body of followers. The troops, the baggage, and the provisions returned by the usual route through Upper Syria. (Beros. l. s. c.)

69 Berosus, l. s. c. Παραλαβὼν δὲ τὰ πράγματα διοικούμενα ὑπὸ τῶν Χαλδαίων, καὶ διατηρουμένην τὴν βασιλείαν ὑπὸ τοῦ βελτίστου αὐτῶν, κ.τ.λ.

70 As Jeremiah, Ezekiel, the authors of Kings and Chronicles, and Josephus. In the valuable fragment which Josephus has preserved from Berosus (*Contr. Ap.* i. 19), we have an account of only one war—that waged by Nebuchadnezzar in his father's lifetime. (See text, p. 241.)

71 A phrase in Berosus seems to imply that Nebuchadnezzar not only had a war with the Arabs, but that he conquered a portion of their country. (Κρατήσαι δὲ φησιν [ὁ Βηρωσσός] τὸν Βαβυλωνίων Αἰγύπτου, Συρίας, Φοινίκης, Ἀραβίας. Fr. 14.) Is this the conquest of the Moabites and Ammonites of which Josephus speaks? (*Ant. Jud.* x. 9, § 7.)

72 Joseph. *Contr. Ap.* i. 21; *Ant. Jud.* x. 11, § 1. Compare Jer. xxvii. 3.

73 2 K. xxiv. 1. The expectation of help from Egypt, which Josephus expressly asserts (*Ant. Jud.* x. 6, § 2), is implied in 2 K. xxiv. 7. We may suspect that the embassy sent ostensibly to claim Urijah (Jer. xxvi. 22) had really for its object to conclude an arrangement with Neco.

74 Alex. Polyhist. Fr. 24. (See text, p. 106.) According to this writer, Nebuchadnezzar's army on this occasion numbered 10,000 chariots (!), 120,000 horse, and 180,000 foot.

75 The grounds for believing that Tyre was invested *before* Jerusalem are given in the author's *Herodotus* (vol. i. p. 422, note 6, 2nd edition).

76 2 Chr. xxxvi. 6; Joseph. *Ant. Jud.* x. 6, § 3.

77 Josephus (l. s. c.) accuses Nebuchadnezzar of a breach of faith on this occasion: but it is most likely that Jehoiakim surrendered without conditions.

78 Joseph. l. s. c. Compare Jer. xxii. 19, "He shall be buried with the burial of an ass, drawn and cast forth beyond the gates of Jerusalem," and xxxvi. 30, "His dead body shall be cast out in the day to the heat and in the night to the frost."

79 Jer. xxvii. 1; Joseph. x. 71, § 1.

80 2 K. xxiv. 8. The number *eight* in the parallel passage of Chronicles (2 Chr. xxxvi. 9) is evidently corrupt. Nebuchadnezzar would not have placed a boy of eight on the throne. Jehoiachin, moreover, had several wives (2 K. xxiv. 15).

81 2 K. xxiv. 10–15; 2 Chr. xxxvi. 10.

82 Joseph. *Contr. Ap.* i. 21. Compare Philostr. ap. Joseph. *Ant. Jud.* x. 11, § 1.

83 2 K. xxv. 1; Jer. xxxix. 1; lii. 4.

[84] The ninth year of Zedekiah was B.C. 588. Uaphris began to reign the same year.

[85] Ezek. xvii. 15. "He rebelled against him in sending his ambassadors into Egypt, that they might give him horses and much people." Compare Joseph. *Ant. Jud.* x. 7, § 3.

[86] Jehoiakim seems to have revolted twice—in his 8th and in his 11th year; Jehoiachin either had revolted or was on the point of revolting when he was deposed. Thus Zedekiah's revolt was the fourth within the space of thirteen years (B.C. 601–588).

[87] 2 K. xxv. 1.

[88] Joseph. *Ant. Jud.* x. 7, § 3. Τὴν χώραν κακώσας αὐτοῦ καὶ τὰ φρούρια λαβών. Compare Jer. xxxiv. 7.

[89] 2 K. l. s. c.; Jer. lii. 4.

[90] Jer. xxxvii. 5.

[91] *Ant. Jud.* l. s. c. Ἀπαντήσας δὲ τοῖς Αἰγυπτίοις καὶ συμβαλὼν αὐτοὺς τῇ μάχῃ νικᾷ.

[92] See Jer. xxxvii. 7.

[93] Joseph. *Ant. Jud.* x. 7, § 4. Προσκαθίσας αὐτῇ μῆνας ὀκτωκαίδεκα ἑπολιόρκει.

[94] It has been a question whether the real Tyre, the island city, actually fell on this occasion (Heeren, *As. Nat.* vol. ii. p. 11, E. T.; Kenrick, *Phœnicia*, p. 390), chiefly because Ezekiel says, about B.C. 570, that Nebuchadnezzar had "received no wages for the service that he served against it." (Ezek. xxix. 18.) But this passage may be understood to mean that he had had no sufficient wages. Berosus expressly stated that Nebuchadnezzar reduced all Phœnicia—ὅτι καὶ τὴν Συρίαν καὶ τὴν Φοινίκην ἁπάσαν ἐκεῖνος κατεστρέψατο. (Ap. Joseph. *Contr. Ap.* i. 20.)

[95] The siege commenced in the 7th year of Nebuchadnezzar, and lasted 13 years, terminating consequently in his 20th year, which was B.C. 585. (Joseph. *Contr. Ap.* i. 21.)

[96] 2 K. xxv. 6, 20, 21; Jer. xxxix. 5; lii. 9. Riblah seems to have been an important fortress at this time (2 K. xxiii. 33). Apparently it had taken the place of Hamath.

[97] Joseph. *Ant. Jud.* x. 9, § 7.

[98] Cambyses conquered Egypt B.C. 525. (See the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii. p. 1, note 1.) Psammenitus (Psammatik III.) had then been on the throne a few months. Amasis, his father, who succeeded Apries, had reigned 44 years. (Herod. iii. 10. Manetho, as represented by Africanus, and the monuments agree.) This would bring the close of the reign of Apries (Uaphris) to B.C. 569.

[99] Herod. ii. 169.

[100] The prophecies of Jeremiah (xlvi. 13–26) and Ezekiel (xxix. 8–20; xxx. 4–26), especially the latter, are very difficult to reconcile with the historical accounts that have come down to us of the condition of Egypt in the reigns of Apries and Amasis. (Herod. ii. 161–182; Diod. Sic. i. 68.) Ezekiel's 40 years' *desolation* of Egypt must (I think) be taken as figurative, marking a time of *degradation*, when independence was lost. Of course such political degradation would be quite consistent with great material prosperity. (See the remarks of Sir G. Wilkinson in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii. p. 325, 2nd edition.) It is never to be forgotten that Berosus distinctly witnessed to the *conquest* of Egypt by Nebuchadnezzar. (Ap. Joseph. *Contr. Ap.* i. 19. Κρατῆσαι δὲ φησὶ τὸν Βαβυλώνιον Αἰγύπτου κ.τ.λ..

[101] Ap. Euseb. *Præp. Ev.* ix. 41. Compare Euseb. *Chron. Can.* i. 10, § 3, and Mos. Chor. *Hist. Armen.* ii. 7.

[102] See Vol. I. pp. 503, 504.

[103] Beros. Fr. 14; 2 K. xxiv. 14–16; xxv. 11; 2 Chr. xxxvi. 20; Ezek. i. 1; Dan. i. 3; &c.

[104] Polyhist. Fr. 24.

[105] Abyden. ap. Euseb. *Chron. Can.* i. 10, § 2; ap. eund. *Præp. Ev.* ix. 41. Nebuchadnezzar, however, in the Standard Inscription, only claims to have repaired the wall.

[106] Taking the height of the wall, that is, at 75 feet, its width at 32 feet, and its circumference at 365 stades, the measurements of Herodotus would raise the cubical contents to more than 5,400,000,000 feet.

[107] Babylonian bricks are about a foot square and from 3 to 4 inches thick.

[108] Berosus. Fr. 14.

[109] Ibid. Compare Diod. Sic. ii. 10, § 1; Q. Curt. i. 5.

[110] Beros. l. s. c. Compare the Standard Inscription. *All* the inscribed bricks hitherto discovered in the Babil mound bear Nebuchadnezzar's legend.

[111] Abyden. ap. Euseb. *Præp. Ev.* ix. 41.

[112] Ibid. This is perhaps the *Chebar* of Ezekiel. In Pliny's time it was called the work of a certain *Gobar*, a provincial governor. (*H. N.* vi. 26.)

[113] Abyden. l. s. c.

[114] See the inscription on the Birs-i-Nimrud cylinders. (*Journal of As. Society*, vol. xviii. pp. 27–32.)

[115] See text, p. 187; and compare the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii. p. 486, 2nd edition.

[116] This embankment is entirely composed of bricks which have never been disturbed, and which bear Nebuchadnezzar's name. (Sir H. Rawlinson's *Commentary*, p. 77, note.)

[117] Ibid. p. 76.

[118] Sir H. Rawlinson in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. i. p. 469, note 7, 2nd edition.

[119] Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* vii. 21. Compare Strab. xvi. 1, § 11.

[120] Compare the Hebrew רֶלֶג, "rivus."

Opa would seem to be a proper name.

[121] Sir H. Rawlinson, l. s. c.

[122] Dan. iii. 2.
[123] Ibid. i. 3, 4.
[124] Ibid. ii. 2; iv. 6, 7.
[125] Ibid. i. 10; ii. 12.
[126] Ibid. ii. 48, 49.
[127] Ibid. iii. 1.
[128] Ibid. ii. 47; iii. 26–29; iv. 2, 34, 37.
[129] Ibid. iii. 14; iv. 8.
[130] Ibid. iii. 4–20.
[131] Ibid. i. 2; iv. 8. Nebuchadnezzar's inscriptions sufficiently show that this favorite god was Bel-Merodach.
[132] Ibid. ii. 12, 48; iii. 20, 26.
[133] Ibid. ii. 46–49; iii. 28–30; iv. 3, 34–37.
[134] Ibid. iv. 30.
[135] See particularly Dan. ch. iv. 34, 35, 37. "I blessed the Most High, and I praised and honored him that liveth for ever, whose dominion is an everlasting dominion, and his kingdom is from generation to generation: and all the inhabitants of the earth are reputed as nothing, and he doeth according to his will in the army of heaven, and among the inhabitants of the earth; and none can stay his hand, or say unto him, What doest thou? Now I, Nebuchadnezzar, praise and extol and honor the king of heaven, all whose works are truth, and his ways judgment: and those that walk in pride he is able to abase."
[136] See above, note 78.
[137] Jer. lii. 10. Compare 2 K. xxv. 7.
[138] Jer. lii. 11.
[139] Ibid. lii. 31.
[140] See note 30, Chapter VI., Vol. I., *Second Monarchy;* text, Vol. I. p. 490.
[141] See text, p. 228.
[142] Beros. Fr. 14. Κατασκευάσας τὸν καλούμενον κρεμαστὸν παράδεισον, διὰ τὸ τὴν γυναῖκα αὐτοῦ ἐπιθυμεῖν τῆς ὀρείας διαθέσεως, τεθραμμένης ἐν τοῖς κατὰ τὴν Μηδίαν τόποις.
[143] Ἀναλήμματα λίθινα ὑψηλά. Beros. l. s. c.
[144] Δένδρεα παντοδαπά. Ibid.
[145] Compare Dan. iv. 22 and 30.
[146] Ibid. verses 10–17.
[147] Ibid. verses 20–26.
[148] See Dr. Pusey's *Lectures on Daniel*, pp. 425–430, and compare the treatise of Welcker entitled *Die Lycanthropie ein Aberglaube und eine Krankheit*, in the 3rd volume of his *Kleine Schriften*, pp. 157 et seq.
[149] Dan. iv. 29.
[150] Ibid. verse 33.
[151] We must not suppose that the afflicted monarch was allowed to range freely through the country. He was no doubt strictly confined to the private gardens attached to the palace.
[152] Dan. iv. 25. The "seven *times*" of this passage would probably, but not necessarily, mean seven years.
[153] Ibid. verse 34. It has been thought that there is a reference to Nebuchadnezzar's malady in the Standard Inscription. But this is now doubted. Perhaps we ought scarcely to expect that a king would formally record such an affliction.
[154] Ibid. verse 36. "My counsellors and my lords sought unto me."
[155] Ch. iv. of Daniel is Nebuchadnezzar's proclamation on his recovery.
[156] Abyden. Fr. 8.
[157] Berosus. Fr. 14. Ἐμπεσὼν εἰς ἀρρωστίαν μετηλλάξατο τὸν βίον. This sober account of the Chaldæan historian contrasts favorably with the marvellous narrative of Abydenus, who makes Nebuchadnezzar first prophesy the destruction of Babylon by the Medes and Persians, and then vanish away out of the sight of men. Ap. Euseb. *Præp. Ev.* ix. 41: p. 456, D.)
[158] If we suppose him 15 when he was contracted to the daughter of Cyaxares (B.C. 625), he would have been 36 at his accession and 79 at his death, in B.C. 561.
[159] Beros. Fr. 14; Polyhist. ap. Euseb. *Chron. Can.* i. 5; Abyden. ap. eund. i. 10.
[160] So the Astronomical Canon and Berosus (l. s. c.). Polyhistor (l. s. c.) gave him 12 years, and Josephus (*Ant. Jud.* x. 11, § 2) 18 years.
[161] "In the year that he began to reign." (2 K. xxv. 27. Compare Jer. lii. 31.)
[162] 2 K. xxv. 28; Jer. lii. 32.
[163] Ἐν τοῖς ἀναγκαιοτάτοις φίλοις εἶχε. (*Ant. Jud.* l. s. c.)
[164] Προστὰς τῶν πραγμάτων ἀνόμως καὶ ἀσελγῶς. (Beros. Fr. 14.)
[165] Jer. xxxix. 3 and 13. The real name of this king, as it appears upon his bricks, was Nergal-sar-uzur, with which the Hebrew Nergal-shar-ezer is clearly identical. This fact, added to the circumstance that the king bore the office of Rab-Mag, makes it almost certain that he is the person mentioned by Jeremiah.
[166] There is no ground for regarding the Babylonian priests as *magi*. By none of the old classical writers are they given the name. None of the terms applied to the "wise men" in Daniel resemble it. There is certainly a remarkable resemblance between the *mag* of Rab-Mag and *magus*. But the resemblance is less in the native language, where Rab-Mag is *Rabu-emga;* and the term *emga* is not used in Babylonian when a Magus is certainly intended. (See *Behist. Ins.* col. i. par. 13, &c.)
[167] See above, note 41.
[168] As the nine months of Laborosoarchod are not counted in the Canon, we have to deduct them from the adjoining reigns—those of Neriglissar and Nabonadius.
[169] See text, p. 183.
[170] Diod. Sic. ii. 8, § 7. Compare text, p. 194.
[171] Laborosoarchod is the form which has most authority, since it occurs both in the Canon of Ptolemy and in Berosus (Fr. 14). Labossoracus or Labesoracus is the form given in the Armenian Euse-

bius. Josephus has Lobosordacus in one place (*Ant. Jud.* x. 11, § 2); Abydenus (ap. Euseb. *Præp. Ev.* ix. 41) Labassoarascus.

172 Παΐς ὤν. Berosus, l. s. c.

173 Διὰ τὸ πολλὰ ἐμφαίνειν κακοήθη. (Beros. Fr. 14.)

174 Ἀπετυμπανίσθη. Ibid. The word means literally "was beaten to death."

175 From the commencement of B.C. 625 to the close of B.C. 556.

176 The name is read as Nabu-nahid in Assyrian and Nabu-induk in Hamitic Babylonian. The former is the groundwork of Nabonnedus (Berosus), Nabonadius (Astr. Can.), and Labynetus (Herod.); the latter of Nabannidochus (Abyden.) and Naboandelus, which should probably be Naboandechus (Josephus).

177 Τούτου (sc. Λαβασσοαράσκου) ἀποθανόντος βιαίῳ μόρῳ, Ναβαννιδοχον ἀποδεικνῦσι βασιλέα, προσήκοντα οἱ οὐδέν. (Abyden. Fr. 9.) Compare Berosus, Fr. 14, who calls Nabonadius Ναβόννηδόν τινα τῶν ἐκ Βαβυλῶνος.

178 On his bricks and cylinders Nabonidus calls himself the son of Nabu-**-dirba, the Rab Mag. (See *British Museum Series*, vol. i. pl. 68.)

179 This has been at all times the usual practice of usurpers in the East. (See Herod. iii. 68, 88; Josephus, *Ant. Jud.*, xiv. 12, § 1; Wilkinson in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii. p. 325; &c.) That it was adopted by Nabonadius seems to follow, 1. from Belshazzar, his son, being regarded in Daniel as a son (descendant) of Nebuchadnezzar (Dan. v. 2, 11, 13, 18, 22), and 2. from his having a son to whom he gave the name of Nebuchadnezzar. (See *Behist. Inscr.* col. i. par. 16, § 10; col. iii. par. 13, § 6.)

180 Herod. i. 77. The author's reasons for placing the fall of Sardis in B.C. 554, and consequently the embassy sent by Crœsus to Nabonadius in B.C. 555, have been fully given in his *Herodotus*, vol. i. pp. 286, 287, 2nd edition.

181 See text, pp. 115, 116.

182 Herodotus represents Crœsus as the aggressor in his war with Cyrus; but it is probable that he was so formally rather than really. Cyrus's attempt to detach the Greeks from Lydia (Herod. i. 76), and his presence in full force *in Cappadocia* as soon as Crœsus invades his territory, are sufficient proof that he was about to attack Crœsus. (See the chapter on the "History of Persia," pp. 429-550.)

183 See above, note 180.

184 Herod. i. 77.

185 The Nitocris of Herodotus still remains one of the dark personages of history. She is unknown to the monuments. No other independent author mentions her. Her very name is suspicious, being Egyptian, not Babylonian. Yet still it is hard to imagine her a mere myth. Herodotus heard of her at Babylon, within little more than a century of the time when she was said to have lived. He heard of her in conjunction with another older queen, Semiramis, who is found to be a historical personage, only a little misplaced. (See text, p. 234.) Again, Nitocris, though not known otherwise as a Babylonian name, was an Egyptian royal name *in use at this period*. (Wilkinson in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii. p. 325, 2nd edition.) Under these circumstances it is perhaps allowable to conjecture, 1. that there was such a person; 2. that she was an Egyptian princess, or at any rate of Egyptian extraction; 3. that she was the wife, or mother, of one of the later Babylonian kings, and was regarded as in some sense reigning conjointly with him. My own *impression* is that she was a daughter of Nebuchadnezzar, born of an Egyptian mother, and married successively to Neriglissar and Nabonadius, who each ruled partly in her right. I regard her as the mother of Belshazzar, whom Herodotus confounds with his father, Nabonadius; and I suspect that she is "the queen who "came into the banqueting-house" at Belshazzar's impious feast, and recommended him to send for Daniel. (Dan. v. 10-12.)

186 The river walls, which Herodotus ascribes to Nitocris (i. 186), were declared expressly by Berosus to have been the work of this king (ἐπι τούτου τὰ περι τὸν ποταμὸν τείχη τῆς Βαβυλωνίας πόλεως ἐξ ὑπτῆς πλίνθου καὶ ἀσφάλτου κατεκοσμήθη. Fr. 14). The bricks of the embankment are found to bear his name.

187 Herod. i. 180. The river walls can scarcely have been built until the embankment was made.

188 Ibid. 185.

189 Grote, *History of Greece*, vol. iii. p. 180, 2nd edition.

190 Xen. *Anab.* ii. 4, § 12.

191 The "Median Wall" rests wholly on Xenophon's authority. It is quite unknown to Herodotus, Strabo, Arrian, and the other historians of Alexander. Excellent reasons have been given for believing that the barrier within which the Ten Thousand penetrated was the old wall of Babylon itself. (See a paper read by Sir H. Rawlinson before the Geographical Society in 1851.)

192 Herod. i. 71.

193 Ibid. 79-86.

194 Ibid. 153 and 177. See the Historical Chapter in the account of the *Fifth Monarchy*, pp. 429-550.

195 Προσεσάξαντο σιτία ἐτέων κάρτα πολλῶν. Herod. i. 190. Ἔχοντες τὰ ἐπιτήδεια πλέον ἢ εἰκοσιν ἐτῶν. Xen. *Cyrop.* vii. 5, § 13.

196 See Pl. XI.

197 Herod. i. 189.

198 Ibid. vii. 40.

199 Ὡς . . . τὸ δεύτερον ἔαρ ὑπέλαμπε. Herod. i. 190. The *two years* seem alluded to in Jer. li. 46.

200 Berosus, Fr. 14. Αἰσθόμενος Νάβόννηδος τὴν ἔφοδον αὐτοῦ (sc. Κύρου), ἀπαντήσας μετὰ τῆς δυνάμεως καὶ παρατεξάμενος,

ἡττηθεὶς τῇ μάχῃ, κ.τ.λ. Compare Polyhistor ap. Euseb. *Chron. Can.* i. 5, § 3. Herodotus does not say who commanded the army.

201 Beros. l. s. c. Φυγὼν ὀλιγοστὸς, συμπεκλείσθη εἰς τὴν Βορσιππηνῶν πόλιν.

202 The proof of this association is contained in the cylinders of Nabonadius found at Mugheir, where the protection of the gods is asked for Nabunadid and his son Bel-shar-uzur, who are coupled together in a way that implies the co-sovereignty of the latter. (*British Museum Series*, vol. i. pl. 68, No. 1.) The date of the association was at the latest B.C. 540, Nabonadius's fifteenth year, since the third year of Belshazzar is mentioned in Daniel (viii. 1). If Belshazzar was (as I have supposed) a son of a daughter of Nebuchadnezzar married to Nabonadius *after he became king*, he could not be more than fourteen in his father's fifteenth year.

203 "The Queen," who "*came into* the banqueting-house," where Belshazzar and *his wives* were already seated (Dan. v. 2, 10), can only be the wife of Nabonadius and mother of Belshazzar. The tone of her address suits well with this view. (Compare Dr. Pusey's *Lectures on Daniel*, p. 449, which I first read after this note was written.)

204 Herod. i. 190.

205 Ibid. 191.

206 According to Herodotus (l. s. c.), Cyrus cut a canal from the Euphrates to the reservoir of Nitocris, which he found nearly empty. According to Xenophon (*Cyrop.* vii. 5, § 10), he cut two canals from a point on the Euphrates above Babylon to another below the town.

207 Xen. *Cyrop.* vii. 5, § 15. This is far more probable than the statement of Herodotus that "it *happened* to be a festival" (τυχεῖν γαρ σφι ἑοῦσαν ὀρτην, i. 191, sub fin.).

208 Dan. v. 1.

209 Χορεύειν τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον καὶ ἐν εὐπαθείησι εἶναι. Herod. l. s. c. Compare Jer. li. 39.

210 The non-closing of the river gates must have been a neglect of this kind. Had the sentries even kept proper watch, the enemy's approach must have been perceived.

211 Dan. v. 4; Xen. *Cyrop.* l. s. c. Xenophon appropriately calls these religious revellers κωμασταί.

212 It is curious that Herodotus does not notice the fact of the attack being *by night*, which is strongly put by Xenophon (*Cyrop.* vii. 5, §§ 15–33). Compare Dan. v. 30: "In that *night* was Belshazzar slain."

213 Ὡς ἐν κύρτῃ. Herod. i. 191.

214 Jer. li. 31.

215 Xen. *Cyrop.* vii. 5, §§ 26–31; Jer. l. 30; li. 4.

216 Jer. l. 43.

217 Dan. v. 5–28.

218 Xen. *Cyrop.* vii. 5, §§ 27–30. The picture is graphic, and may well be true.

219 Jer. l 32; li. 30, 32. 58.

220 Berosus, Fr. 14. Κῦρος δὲ Βαβυγῶνα καταλαβόμενος, καὶ συνταξας τὰ ἐξω τῆς πόλεως τείχη κατασκάψαι, κ.τ λ. Compare Jer. l. 15; li. 44, 58. I have replaced κατασκάψαι by "dismantled," because, whatever the orders of Cyrus may have been, the enormous labor of *demolishing* the wall was certainly not undertaken. The battlements may have been thrown down, and breaches broken in it; but the wall itself existed till the time of Alexander. (Abyden. Fr. 9.)

221 Ἀνεζευξεν ἐπὶ Βόρσιππον, ἐκπολιορκήσων τὸν Ναβοννηδον. Beros. l. s. c.

222 Ibid.

223 Καρμανίης ἡγεμονίην δωρέεται. Fr. 9. Berosus, as reported by Josephus (*Contr. Ap.* i. 21), only says that Cyrus assigned Carmania to Nabonadius as his place of abode (δοὺς οἰκητήριον αὐτῷ Καρμανίαν).

224 See text, p. 244.

225 Herod. ii. 157.

226 Ibid. i. 178.

227 Judging by the taxation of Darius, the resources of the Persians at this time were nearly five times as great as those of the Babylonians. The Persian Empire included the 1st, 2nd. 3rd, 7th, half the 9th, the 10th, 11th, 12th, 13th, 14th, 15th, 16th, 17th, 18th, and 19th satrapies; while the Babylonian Empire consisted of the 5th, the 8th, and half the 9th. The joint revenue furnished to Darius by the satrapies of the first list was 5660 talents; that furnished by the second list was 1150.

228 See the description of the Assyrian Empire in Vol. I. pp. 501–504.

229 This may be concluded from such expressions as "Thou, O king, art a *king of kings*" (Dan. ii. 37). "Thou," (*i.e.* Babylon) "shalt no more be called *The lady of kingdoms*" (Is. xlvii. 5). It is confirmed by the history of the Jews (2 K. xxiv. 1–17), and by the list of Tyrian kings contemporary with the Babylonian Empire preserved in Josephus. (*Contr. Ap.* i. 21.)

230 See text, pp. 242–245.

231 Abyden. Fr. 8.

232 It may be suspected that the Susianians revolted from Babylon before the conclusion of the siege and joined Cyrus. (See Isaiah xxi. 2; xxii. 6.)

APPENDIX B.

1 See Appendix A, Vol. I. pp. 508–512, *Second Monarchy*.

2 Such names as Pul, Porus, Nadius, can scarcely contain more than one element.

3 Of course there may have been other combinations in use besides these; but no others have been as yet distinctly recognized.

4 See Vol. I. p. 447. Another name of

exactly the same type is Shamas ipni. (See note 559, Chapter IX., *Second Monarchy.*)

[5] See note 559, Chapter IX., *Second Monarchy.*

[6] Oppert, *Expédition scientifique*, tom. ii. p. 259.

[7] See text. p. 126.

[8] Or, according to M. Oppert, "Nebo, protect my son." (*Expédition*, tom. ii. p. 258.)

[9] This is decidedly the more correct form, and indeed is probably not far from the Babylonian articulation.

[10] *Expédition*, tom. ii. p. 259.

[11] See text. p. 231.

[12] See Vol. I. p. 481.

[13] 2 K. xxv. 8; Jer. xxxix. 9.

[14] Several such conjectures have been published by M. Oppert (*Expédition scientifique*, tom. ii. pp. 355–357.)

[15] Jer. xxxix. 3.

[16] Sir H. Rawlinson in the *Journal of the Asiatic Society*, vol. xviii. p. 28, note 2.

[17] Jer. l. s. c.

[18] Dan. iv. 8. "At the last Daniel came in before me, whose name was Belteshazzar *after the name of my god*."

[19] See the *Targum* on Prov. xxi. 14.

[20] Dan. iv. 9.

[21] See Appendix A, Vol. I. pp. 511, 512.

[22] See the explanation given of Sarsechim in the text on p. 264.

NOTES TO THE FIFTH MONARCHY.

CHAPTER I.

[1] The boundaries here given belong to the Empire only at the height of its greatness, viz., from about B. C. 506 to B. C. 479. The Strymon and the Danube ceased to be boundaries at least as early as the last-named year.

[2] See text, pp. 133, 134.

[3] It is difficult to measure exactly the dimensions of the Assyrian Empire, from the uncertainty of its boundaries eastward and northward. If we regard it as comprising the whole of the Babylonian Empire, Assyria Proper, one half of Media, and some districts of Armenia, Cappadocia, and Cilicia, we may perhaps allow it an area of from 400,000 to 500,000 square miles.

[4] See text, pp. 124, 125.

[5] See Vol. I. pp. 2–4; text, p. 123.

[6] See Vol. I. pp. 120–129.

[7] See text, pp. 1–5.

[8] Ibid. pp. 18, 19.

[9] See Vol. I. pp. 136–138; text, pp. 19, 20.

[10] See text, pp. 126, 127.

[11] Idid. pp. 127, 128.

[12] Ibid. pp. 129–132.

[13] The name of the country is given as *Parsa* in the cuneiform inscriptions of Darius Hystaspis, which is no doubt the true native orthography. The Hebrews called it *Paras* (פָּרָס), the Greeks Πέρσις, the Romans *Persis* or *Persia*. The modern *Fars* is the ancient *Parsa* softened and abbreviated. *Farsistan* is "the land of the Farsis" or Persians.

[14] Kinneir, *Persian Empire*, pp. 194–201; Pottinger, *Travels*, p. 219; &c.

[15] Herod. i. 125. The later geographers, however, distinguish between the two. (Strab. xv. 3, § 1; Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* vi. 28; &c.)

[16] Kinneir, pp. 54 and 200. Pottinger, p. 221; *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxvii. p. 184.

[17] See text, p. 124.

[18] Pottinger, p. 54; Fraser, *Khorasan*, p. 71; Malcolm, *History of Persia*, p. 3; Kinneir, pp. 54, 70, 81, 201.

[19] Kinneir speaks of crossing "four rivers" between *Bushire* and the *Tab* (p. 57), but of these four two were arms of the *Khisht*, which is the only stream in the district that has the least real pretension to the name of river.

[20] Malcolm says of this tract, that it "bears a greater resemblance in soil and climate to Arabia than to Persia" (p. 2).

[21] Compare text, p. 2.

[22] Valuable contributions towards a map have been made by Mr. Consul Abbott, Lieut.-Gen. Monteith, and the Baron de Bode, which will be found in the thirteenth, twenty-fifth, and twenty-seventh volumes of the *Journal of the Geographical Society*. But much still remains to be done, more especially towards the east and the south-east.

[23] Ker Porter, vol. i. pp. 469, 501, 709; Pottinger, pp. 234, 237; Kinneir, pp. 55, 59; *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xiii. pp. 79, 80, 85; vol. xxv. pp. 33, 47, 76; vol. xxvii. pp. 116, 158, 159, &c.

[24] See especially the descriptions in Fraser, *Khorasan*, pp. 75–79; Chesney, *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 208; *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxvii. p. 174; vol. xxxi. pp. 63, 64.

[25] Compare Kinneir, pp. 55, 195–200; Ker Porter, vol. i. pp. 459, 472, &c.; Morier, *First Journey*, pp. 92, 147, 148; *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxv. pp. 29–78; vol. xxvii. pp. 149–184.

[26] *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xiii. p. 84; vol. xxv. pp. 59, 60; Ker Porter, vol. i. p. 685; Pottinger, pp. 206, 220; Fraser, *Khorasan*, p. 79; Morier, *First Journey*, p. 150.

[27] See text, pp. 27, 28.

[28] See text, pp. 134, 135.

[29] Strab. xv. 3, § 6; Q. Curt. *Hist. Alex.* v. 5.

[30] The names, *Pulwar* and *Khoonazaberni*, are given as the present names on the authority of a recent traveller, Captain Claude Clerk (see *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxxi. pp. 60 and 64). Our earlier travellers generally represent the former river as known by the name of the Kur or Kur-ab (Ker Porter, vol. i. p. 512; Chesney, vol. i. p. 208). Kinneir, however, calls it the *Shamier* (Persian Empire, p. 59), Morier the Sewund (*First Journey*, p. 142). Rivers have often half-a-dozen names in the East, each name really attaching to a certain portion only of the course.

[31] Till recently our travellers and map-makers have called this lake Lake Bakhtigan; but Mr. Consul Abbott assures us that that name is not now known on the spot. (*Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxv. p. 71.)

[32] Strictly speaking the Murg-ab, which flows by Pasargadæ, is a tributary of the Pulwar, and not the main river.

[33] So Morier (*First Journey*, p. 124). Ker Porter speaks of the arches as three only (*Travels*, vol. i. p. 685), while Lieut. Pottinger multiplies them into *nine!* (*Travels*, p. 242).

[34] Pottinger, p. 239. M. Flandin has an engraving of this bridge, which represents it with 13 arches (*Voyage en Perse*, "Planches modernes," pl. xciv.). So also Morier, *Second Journey*, opp. p. 74.

[35] Pottinger. l. s. c.; Kinneir, p. 59.

[36] Fraser, p. 82.

[37] *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxvii. Map opposite p. 109.

[38] Kinneir, p. 57.

[39] Clerk, in *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxxi. p. 64.

[40] Morier, *First Journey*, p. 92; *Second Journey*, p. 49.

[41] Abbott, in *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxvii. p. 151. Comp. Ouseley, *Travels*, vol. ii. pp. 69, 70.

[42] See the description of Mr. Consul Abbott (*Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxv. pp. 72–75).

[43] Kinneir, p. 60.

[44] Abbott, in *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxvii. p. 183.

[45] Of these the most striking are those on the route between Bushire and Shiraz, which have been described by many travellers. (Morier, *First Journey*, pp. 49–54; Fraser, *Khorasan*, pp. 75–79; Monteith, in *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxvii. pp. 115–117; Clerk, in the same, vol. xxxi. pp. 62–64.) Others of nearly equal grandeur were traversed by Mr. Abbott in the more eastern part of the mountain region. (*Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxvii. pp. 174, 175.)

[46] See the plates in Flandin (*Voyage en Perse*, "Planches modernes," pls. xcvi. and xcix.), from one of which Pl. XXVI. is taken.

[47] Monteith, in *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxvii. p. 115.

[48] Pasargadæ was mentioned as the capital of Cyrus by Anaximenes (ap. Steph. Byz. ad voc. Πασσαργάδαι) and Ctesias (*Pers. Exc.* § 9). Either Ctesias or Dino represented it as the capital city of Atradates, the father of the great Cyrus. (See Nic. Dam. Fr. 66.)

[49] Q. Curt. *Hist. Alex.* v. 6; x. 1. Probably the true original form of the name was Parsa-gherd, "the castle of the Persians" (as Stephen of Byzantium explains the name). For the root *gherd* compare the modern Darabgherd, Lasjird, Burujird, &c., and the *certa* of the old Parthian cities, Tigrano-*certa*, Carcathio-*certa*, &c.

[50] It is this tomb, placed at Pasargadæ by Strabo (xv. 3, § 7), Arrian (*Exp. Alex.* vi. 29), and others, which alone certainly fixes the site.

[51] Clerk, in *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxxi. pp. 60, 61.

[52] Kinneir, p. 59; Morier, *Second Journey*, p. 83.

[53] The streams which fertilize the Shiraz plain are rills rather than rivers. The best known is the *Rocknabad*, celebrated by Hafiz.

[54] *Geograph.* vi. 8. Καρμάνη μητρόπολις.

[55] Amm. Marc. xxiii. 6. "Inter civitates nitet Carmana omnium mater."

[56] Pottinger, pp. 221–227; Abbott in *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxv. pp. 29, 30.

[57] Pottinger, p. 206.

[58] Ptol. *Geograph.* vi. 8. This name is evidently the original of the modern Ormuz or Hormuz. The Hormuzians were forced to migrate early in the 13th century. (D'Anville, in the *Mémoires de l'Académie des Sciences*, tom. xxx. p. 141.)

[59] Armuzia or Harmozia appears as a "region" in Pliny (*H. N.* vi. 27), and Arrian (*Hist. Ind.* xxxiii. 1.)

[60] Arrian, *Hist. Ind.* xxxvii. 8.

[61] Ibid. xxxviii. 5. This name, perhaps, remains in the Mount *Asban* of these parts. (Vincent, *Periplus*, p. 381.)

[62] Arrian, xxxviii. 7.

[63] Ibid. xxxix. 3; Ptol. vi. 4.

[64] Arrian, l. s. c.; Strab. xv. 3, § 3.

[65] Ptol. *Geograph.* l. s. c.

[66] Strab. l. s. c. Gabiané, a district of Elymais (according to Strabo), probably took its name from this city. (Strab. xvi. 1, § 18.)

[67] Ptol. *Geograph.* l. s. c.

[68] So Q. Curtius, *Hist. Alex.* iii. 5.

[69] As the Baron de Bode conjectures. (*Geograph. Journal*, vol. xiii. pp. 108–112.)

[70] These four places are mentioned both by Ptolemy (*Geograph.* vi. 4) and by Ammianus (xxiii. 6). The latter places Portospana in Carmania.

[71] Hyrba appears as a Persian town on the borders of Media in a fragment of Nicolas of Damascus. (Fr. 66.)

[72] See text, pp. 17, 18. Ptolemy, however, assigns Parætacênê to Persia (*Geograph.* vi. 4).

[73] Ptol. l. s. c. This writer's Mardyênê seems to be the mountain region extending from Bebahan to Kazerun. That the Mardi were mountaineers appears from Herod. i. 84; Nic. Dam. Fr. 66; Strab. xv. 3, § 1.

[74] Compare Strab. xv. 3, § 3; Arrian, *Hist. Ind.* xxxix. 3; Ptol. *Geograph.* vi. 4.

[75] Plin. *H. N.* vi. 26.

[76] Most of the ancient geographers regard Carmania as a distinct country, lying east of Persia (Strab. xv. 3, § 1; Plin. *H. N.* vi. 24; Ptol. *Geograph.* vi. 4, 6; Arrian, *Hist. Ind.* xxxviii. 1). But it appears from Herodotus that in the early times the Carmanians were considered to be simply a tribe of Persians. (Herod. i. 120. Compare Strab. xv. 2, § 14, ad fin.)

[77] Herod. ix. 122; Plat. *Leg.* iii. 695 A; Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* v. 4.

[78] See text, p. 267.

[79] Fraser, *Khorasan*, pp. 163, 164.

[80] Kinneir, *Persian Empire*, p. 55 Compare *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xiii. pp. 79–84.

[81] Pottinger, *Travels*, p. 237.

[82] Compare Pottinger, pp. 229, 239; Abbott, in *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxv. pp. 34, 74; vol. xxvii. pp. 150, 158, 165, 184; Monteith, in the same, vol. xxvii. p. 116; Morier, *First Journey*, p. 92; *Second Journey*, pp. 83, 122, &c.; Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. pp. 469, 473, 685, 709; Fraser, *Khorasan*, pp. 79, 114, &c.

[83] Fraser, *Khorasan*, p. 169; Abbott, in *Geographical Journal*, vol. xxv. p. 50.

[84] See text, pp. 266, 267.

[85] Fraser, p. 162. This writer's observations gave for the height of different parts of the plateau a minimum of 2500 and a maximum of 4500 feet. Col. Chesney calls the average elevation 5000 feet (*Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 65); but this estimate is in excess of the truth.

[86] Chesney, vol. i. p. 78. This paragraph and the next are repeated from the author's *Herodotus*, where they formed a part of one of the "Essays" appended to the first volume. (See pages 440, 441 of the second edition.)

[87] Especially the Dusee or Punjgur river, which rises near *Nushki* in lat. 29° 40′, long. 65° 5′, and falls into the sea near *Gwattur*, in lat. 25° 10′, long. 61° 30′.

[88] "A monotonous reddish-brown color," says Col. Chesney, "is presented by everything in Iran, including equally the mountains, plains, hills, rocks, animals, and reptiles. For even in the more favored districts, the fields which have yielded an abundant crop are so parched and burnt before midsummer, that, if it were not for the heaps of corn in the villages near them, a passing stranger might conclude that harvest was unknown in that apparently barren region." (*Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 79.)

[89] Chesney, l. s. c.

[90] Kinneir, *Persian Empire*, p. 210.

[91] Chesney, vol. i. ch. viii.; Kinneir, p. 211; Ferrier, *Caravan Journeys*, p. 238.

[92] Pottinger, *Travels*, pp. 132–138; *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xi. pp. 136–156; vol. xiv. pp. 145–179.

[93] Kinneir says: "The sand of the desert is of a reddish color, and so light that when taken into the hand the particles are scarcely palpable. It is raised by the wind into longitudinal waves, which present on the side towards the point from which the wind blows a gradual slope from the base, but on the other side rise perpendicularly to the height of 10 or 20 feet, and at a distance have the appearance of a new brick wall." (*Persian Empire*, p. 222. Compare Fraser, *Khorasan*, p. 252 and Abbott in *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxv. p. 37.)

[94] Kinneir, p. 217; Fraser, l. s. c.

[95] Chesney, vol. i. p. 79; Ferrier, *Caravan Journeys*, p. 403.

[96] See text, p. 21.

[97] Herod. i. 125; iii. 93; Justin, xli. 1; Ptol. *Geogr.* vi. 2; *Behist. Inscr.* col. ii. par. 15.

[98] The term *Atak* is applied to both sides of the range. Mr. Fraser applies it especially to the strip which skirts the mountains along their *northern* base. (*Khorasan*, pp. 245, 251, &c.) On the true country of the Parthians, see the author's *Herodotus*, vol. iv. p. 162; and compare Herod. iii. 93, 117; vii. 66; Isid. Char. *Mans. Parth.* p. 7; Pliny, *H. N.* vi. 25.

[99] Fraser, *Khorasan*, pp. 335, 351, 358, &c.

[100] This people appears as *Haroyu* in the Zendâvesta (see Appendix, p. 120, § 9). In the inscriptions of Darius they are called *Hariva* (*Behist. Inscr.* col. i. par. 6). *Herat* and the *Heri-rud* are clearly continuations of the old name. The Greek Ἄριοι or Ἄρειοι very imperfectly renders the native appellation.

[101] Fraser, *Khorasan*, Appendix, p. 30; Vámbéry, *Travels*, pp. 269, 270; Pottinger, *Travels*, p. 416.

[102] On the position of the Gandarians in the time of the Persian Empire, see the author's *Herodotus*, vol. iv. p. 175, 2nd edition. Pressed upon by the *Yue-Chi*, a Tâtar race, in the fifth or sixth century of our era, they migrated to the south-west, occupying the valley of the Urghand-ab (ancient Arachotus), and impressing on the tract the name which it still bears, of Kandahar.

[103] Chesney, *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. pp. 160–173; Elphinstone, *Kabul*, pp. 86 et seqq.

[104] Chesney, vol. i. p. 171.

[105] Herod. iii. 102; iv. 44. Compare Hecatæus, Fr. 179.

[106] From the accounts which Herodotus gives of the Thamanæans, we could only gather that they dwelt in the neighborhood of the Sarangians, Parthians, and Hyrcanians (iii. 93, 117). The ground for locating them in the tract lying between the Haroot-rud and Ghirisk, is to be found in Isidore of Charax, if we are allowed to read ἐντεῦθεν Θαμαναίων χώρα for ἐντεῦθεν Ἀναύων χώρα, the Anaui being a people otherwise wholly unknown. (See the author's *Herodotus*, vol. iv. p. 173, notes 5 and 6.)

[107] Ferrier, *Caravan Journeys*, pp. 238–255.

[108] The Sarangians (or Zarangians) of Herodotus are undoubtedly the Drangians of later writers. Their position is pretty certainly fixed by the notices in Strabo (xv. 2, §§ 5–10), Pliny (*H. N.* vi. 23), Arrian (*Exp. Alex.* iii. 25; vi. 17), and Ptolemy (*Geograph.* vi. 19).

[109] Ferrier p 426 Compare Christie

in Pottinger's *Travels*, Appendix. p. 407, and Kinneir, *Persian Empire*, pp. 189–193.

[110] Ferrier, p. 427.

[111] See the author's *Herodotus*, vol. iv. p. 174.

[112] This position is plain from Ptolemy (*Geograph.* vi. 18) and Isidore (*Mans. Parth.* § 19). There can be little doubt that in the word *Urghand-ab* we have a corruption of the name *Arachot-us*, which was applied to the chief stream of the district. (Isid. Char. l. s. c.)

[113] Chesney, vol. i. pp. 166–170; Elphinstone, *Kabul*. p. 452.

[114] Herod. iii. 94; vii. 68. The term "Paricanians" is perhaps not ethnic. Probably it means simply "mountaineers."

[115] Pottinger, *Travels*, pp. 24-184, and pp. 249–262.

[116] Ibid. p. 259.

[117] Ibid. p. 261.

[118] See text. pp. 18, 19.

[119] Hence the names "Desert of *Kizil Koum*" (or Red Sand) and "Desert of *Kara Koum*" (or Black Sand).

[120] See M. Vámbéry's *Travels* p. 107. Compare Mouravieff as quoted by De Hell, *Travels in the Steppes*, p. 326. "This country exhibits the image of death, or rather of the desolation left behind by a great convulsion of nature. Neither birds nor quadrupeds are found in it; no verdure nor vegetation cheers the sight, except here and there at long intervals some spots on which there grow a few stunted shrubs." See also Burnes in *Geograph. Journal*, vol. iv. pp. 305–311.

[121] Vámbéry, pp. 102, 107, 111, 112, &c.

[122] Ibid. pp. 113, 114, 157, &c.

[123] Ibid. pp. 114–116. The *Kaflankir* crossed by M. Vámbéry seems to have been an outlying peninsula belonging to the Ust-Urt tract.

[124] This is the case with the Bokhara river, which terminates in Lake *Dengiz*, and with the Shehri-Sebz river, which is evaporated by the *Kul Mohi*. The Murg-ab also ends in a swamp. The rivers of Balkh and Khulm are consumed in irrigation. The Maymene river and the Kizil Deria lose themselves in the sands.

[125] Vámbéry, p. 121.

[126] Ibid. p. 199.

[127] Ibid. p. 214.

[128] Ferrier, *Caravan Journeys*, pp. 197–230; Burnes, *Bokhara*, vol. i. p. 245. Compare Q. Curt. vi. 4, § 26.

[129] A native proverb says: "*Samarkand firdousi manend*"—"Samarkand resembles Paradise." (See Vámbéry, p. 204.)

[130] Ibid. pp. 152–156.

[131] Margiana, the tract about Merv, is reckoned by Darius to Bactria. (*Beh. Inscr.* col. iii. par. 4.)

[132] Chorasmia appears as Qâirizem in the Zendavesta (see Note 1, Chapter VI., *Third Monarchy*), as Uvarazmiya in the Persian cuneiform inscriptions. (*Beh. Inscr.* col. i. par. 6.) The capital city was still called *Kharesm* in the time of Genghis Khan, and hence its name was given to the great Kharesmian Empire. *Kharezm* is still the political name of Khiva. (Vámbéry, p. 126.)

[133] Eratosth. ap. Strab. xi. 8, § 8.

[134] Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* iii. 30; iv. 3; Q. Curt. *Hist. Alex.* vii. 7; Strab. l. s. c.

[135] *Punj-ab*—"Five Rivers," *punj* being the modern form of the Sanscrit *pancha*, "five," and *ab* (or *au*) being an old word for "water" in most Indo-European languages.

[136] Sinde, India, and Hindu-stan, are various representatives of the same native word. *Hindu* is the oldest known form, since it occurs in one of the most ancient portions of the Zendavesta (see Appendix. p. 121, § 19). The Greeks and Romans sometimes called the river *Sindus* instead of Indus. (Plin. *N. H.* vi. 20.)

[137] Great portions of the *doabs* or tracts between the streams are in this condition. In the most western of them there is a large desert of loose sand. (Elphinstone, *Caubul*, vol. i. pp. 32, 33.)

[138] Kinneir, *Persian Empire*, p. 213.

[139] Pottinger, *Travels*, pp. 308–311; *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xiv. p. 198.

[140] See Wood's *Memoir on the Indus*, and compare the *Geograph. Journal*, vol. iii. pp. 113–115; vol. viii. art. 25; and vol. x. p. 530.

[141] Herod. iii. 94; vii. 70.

[142] Nearchus ap. Arr. *Hist. Ind.* xxvi. 2; xxix. 9–16; Strab. xv. 2, §§ 1 and 13; Plin. *H. N.* vi. 23; Solinus, *Polyhist.*, § 67.

[143] Kinneir, p. 203.

[144] Chesney, *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 178; *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxxiii. pp. 183, 187, 195; Arrian, *Hist. Ind.* xxvi. 5.

[145] Kinneir, pp. 203, 204.

[146] Arrian, *Hist. Ind.* xxxii. 3, 4; Kinneir, pp. 194, 201.

[147] *Vehrkana* appears in the Zendavesta as the "ninth best of regions and countries" (see Appendix, p. 120, § 12). The name is given as *Varkana* in the Behistun Inscription (col. ii. par. 16).

[148] Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* iii. 29, 30; Strab. xi. 6, § 1; 7, § 1; Q. Curt. *Hist. Alex.* vi. 4.

[149] Strab. vi. 7, § 2; Ἡ Ὑρκανία σφόδρα εὐδαίμων και πολλη και το πλέον πεδίας. Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* iii. 23; Ἡ Ὑρκανία . . . τῃ μὲν ὄρεσιν ἀπείργεται δασέσι καὶ ὑψηλοις, τῃ δὲ πεδιον αὐτῆς καθῆκει ἔστε ἐπὶ τὴν μεγάλην τὴν ταύτῃ θάλασσαν. See also Q. Curt. vi. 4, and compare the accounts of the moderns (Fraser, *Khorasan*, pp. 599–602; Vámbéry, *Travels*, pp. 47–56).

[150] The Pamir Steppe, which is a continuation of the Bolor range, is called by the natives *Bami-duniya*, or "the Roof of the World." (*Geograph. Journal*, vol. x. p. 535.)

[151] The somewhat doubtful question of

the *habitat* of these Persian Scythians is discussed at more length in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. iv. pp. 168, 169, 2nd edition.

[152] See the Nakhsh-i-Rustam Inscription, par. 3 (ibid. p. 207). Compare Herod. vii. 64, and Hecatæus, Fr. 171.

[153] Herod. vi. 113; vii. 184; viii. 113; Arr. *Exp. Alex.* iii. 13.

[154] Darius unites the Sacæ, at Behistun, with the Gandarians and Sattagydians —at Persepolis with the Gandarians and Mycians—at Nakhsh-i-Rustam with the Gandarians and Indians.

[155] Fraser, *Khorasan*, Appendix, pp. 110–112.

[156] These longitudinal chains are chiefly towards the east. The principal are Mount Massula near the Caspian, Mounts Kibleh and Sehend between the Urumiyeh lake and the basin of the Kizil Uzen, and Mount Zagros or the great Kurdish range, which runs between Urumiyeh and Van, separating those two lake basins.

[157] Chesney, *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 68. Compare Beaufort, *Karamania*, p. 57; Leake, *Asia Minor*, p. 104; Hamilton, *Asia Minor*, vol. ii. p. 305. The last-named writer saw many peaks covered with snow in August, which in this latitude would imply a height of at least 10,000 feet.

[158] Chesney, vol. i. p. 69.

[159] Ibid. p. 97. Comp. Strab. xi. 14, § 4; Hamilton, vol. i. pp. 164–255, and Ker Porter, vol. i. pp. 171–215.

[160] See text, pp. 313, 314.

[161] Strab. xi. 14, § 9. Compare Ezek. xxvii. 14.

[162] The height of Mount Argæus, as obtained from the mean of three observations taken by Mr. Hamilton, was 13,017 feet. (*Researches in Asia Minor*, vol. ii. p. 279.)

[163] Herodotus calls the Phrygians *πολυπροβατωτάτους ἁπάντων καὶ πολυκαρποτάτους* (v. 49). Strabo says of Cappadocia, that it was *ἀγαθὴ καὶ καρποῖς, μάλιστα δὲ σίτῳ καὶ βοσκήμασι παντοδαποῖς* (xii. 2, § 10).

[164] See text, Chapter II.

[165] Herod. iii. 94; iv. 37; vii. 79.

[166] Strab. xi. 3, §§ 1–6; Plin. *H. N.* vi. 10; Ptol. v. 12; Dionys. *Perieg.* 695–699; Eustath. ad Dionys. 19; Pomp. Mel. i. 2, &c. For intermediate forms of the name, see Steph. Byz. ad voc. Σάπειρες; Menand Protect. Frs. 5, 41, 42, &c.; and Etym. Magn. ad voc. Βέχειρ.

[167] The *l* and *r* are scarcely distinguishable in the Old Persian, and the Persian form of Ararat would naturally be *Alarud* or *Alalud*. The Assyrian representation of the word is *Urard*, or *Urarda*. (See Sir H. Rawlinson "On the Alarodians of Herodotus" in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. iv. pp. 203–206, 2nd edition.)

[168] *Geographical Journal*, vol. iii. pp. 34, 35. Compare Strabo, xi. 2, § 17.

[169] Herod. iii. 97; vii. 79.

[170] Except, perhaps, the Mosch. (See the author's *Herodotus*, vol. iv. p. 179, note 1, 2nd edition.)

[171] On this identity, see Hecatæus, Fr. 191; Strab. xii. 3, § 18; Eustath. ad Dionys. 766; Steph. Byz. ad voc. *Μάκρωνες*.

[172] The *exact* position of each of these tribes is considered in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. iv. pp. 179–184.

[173] Herod. i. 28; Ephorus., Fr. 80; Pomp. Mel. i. 21; Scymn. Ch. 938.

[174] Strab. xii. 2, § 4; Scylax, *Peripl.* § 91.

[175] Plin. *H. N.* v. 32.

[176] See Hamilton, *Asia Minor*, vol. i. pp. 158–167; Chesney, *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. pp. 321–332.

[177] Herod. i. 142. *Οἱ δὲ Ἴωνες . . . τοῦ μὲν οὐρανοῦ καὶ τῶν ὡρέων ἐν τῷ καλλίστῳ ἐτύγχανον ἱδρυσάμενοι πόλιας πάντων ἀνθρώπων τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν· οὔτε γὰρ τὰ ἄνω αὐτῆς χωρία τωὐτὸ ποιέει τῇ Ἰωνίῃ, οὔτε τὰ κάτω, οὔτε τὰ πρὸς τὴν ἠῶ, οὔτε τὰ πρὸς τὴν ἑσπερηνήν.*

[178] See Herod. v. 101; Soph. *Philoct.* 393; Strab. xiii. 4, § 5.

[179] Fellows, *Lycia*, pp. 249–251; 256–260.

[180] Strab. xiv. 5, §§ 12–17; Beaufort, *Karamania*, pp. 285–288; Chesney, *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 352.

[181] Strab. xiv. 5, § 1; Ptol. *Geograph.* v. 8.

[182] Chesney, pp. 456–460. Compare Ross, *Reisen nach Kos*, &c. pp. 82–209.

[183] Ap. Strab. xiv. 6, § 5.

[184] Strab. l. s. c. *Εὐοινός ἐστι καὶ ἐνέλαιος, σίτῳ τε αὐτάρκει χρῆται.*

[185] Ibid. See also Plin. *H. N.* xxxiv. 1.

[186] The German *Kupfer*, our own *copper*, the Spanish *cobre*, the Dutch *koper*, and the French *cuivre*, are all derived from the Latin *Cyprium*.

[187] *Κατ' ἀρετὴν οὐδεμίας τῶν νήσων λείπεται.* Strab. l. s. c. *Ὀλβιώτατοι νησιωτῶν οἱ Κύπριοι.* Eustath. ad Dionys. 508.

[188] Herod. iii. 19; vi. 6; vii. 90.

[189] Heeren (*Manual of Ancient History*, i. p. 47, E. T.) reckons Egypt as "equal in its superficial contents to two-thirds of Germany." But this is an enormous over-estimate. Germany contains 250,000 square miles, Egypt certainly not more than 80,000. Italy, without the islands, contains about 90,000 square miles.

[190] The Greeks had a notion that the valley expanded at some little distance above Cairo (Herod. ii. 8, ad fin.), and Scylax even compares its shape to that of a double-headed axe (*Peripl.* § 106). But in reality the valley only varies in width from about seven miles to fifteen during its entire course from the Cataracts to the head of the Delta. (Wilkinson in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii. p. 9, note 1, 2nd edition.)

[191] Herod. ii. 7, 92, 137, 140; Thucyd. i. 110; Diod. Sic. i. 31, § 5; 34, § 3. Compare Wilkinson, *Ancient Egyptians*, vol. iv. p. 115.

192 See Gen. xii. 10; xlii. 57; Herod. iii. 91; Tac. *Hist.* iii. 8, 48; *Ann.* ii. 59; Plin. *Paneg.* § 31; &c. The dependence of the Romans on Egypt for their corn supplies is a well-known fact.

193 Herod. ii. 32; iv. 181.

194 See the description of Herodotus (iv. 168–172).

195 Ibid. iv. 183. The practice which Herodotus mentions still continues. (Hamilton, *Wanderings in N. Africa*, p. 196.)

196 The elevation of the upper plateau is estimated at from 1800 to 2000 feet. (Beechy, *Expedition to N. Coast of Africa*, pp. 434, 435.)

197 Hamilton, pp. 31, 75, 76, 79, 80, &c.

198 Beechy, pp. 434–437.

199 See Herod. iv. 169; Scyl. *Peripl.* § 108; Plin. *H. N.* xxii. 23; Theophrast. *Hist. Pl.* vi. 3; &c.

200 Europe has only four such rivers: the Volga, the Danube, the Dniepr, and the Don.

201 The Euphrates and the Tigris. (See Vol. I. pp. 5–11.)

202 The labors of Speke, Grant, and Baker have not perhaps solved the entire mystery of the Nile sources—for a chain of lakes may communicate with the south-western extremity of the Albert Nyanza, or a great stream, the true infant Nile, may enter that lake from the west—but they have traced the river at any rate southward almost to the equator, and shown that it has a course of *at least* 3000 miles.

203 Sir G. Wilkinson estimates the distance of the old apex of the Delta from the sea by the Sebennytic branch at 110 miles—from that to Thebes by the river at 421 miles—from Thebes to Elephantiné at 124 miles—Total, 655 miles. (See the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii. pp. 8 and 10, notes 6 and 3, 2nd edition.)

204 Herod. ii. 5; Hecatæus, Fr. 279.

205 Herod. ii. 14. Compare Wilkinson, *Ancient Egyptians*, vol. iv. pp. 39–41.

206 The *shadoof* of the modern Egyptians has a near representative upon the monuments. It consists of a long pole working over a cross-bar, with a rope and bucket at one end, and a weight to balance them at the other. [Pl. XXVII. Fig. 2.]

207 Wilkinson, vol. iv. pp. 96, 97.

208 Herod. ii. 15, 17, and 97; Strab. xvii. 1, § 30; Pomp. Mel. i. 9.

209 See the description of Herodotus (ii. 17), who calls the three main branches the Canobic, the Sebennytic, and the Pelusiac. From the Sebennytic, or central stream, there branched out (according to him) two others, which he calls the Saitic (Sanitic?) and the Mendesian. Both these seem to have intervened between the Sebennytic and the Pelusiac mouths. There were also two artificial channels—the Bucolic and the Bolbitine—the former between the Sebennytic and the Mendesian, the latter a branch from the Canobic. Scylax (*Peripl.* § 106) and Strabo (xvii. 1, § 18) have also seven mouths: the Canobic, Bolbotine, Sebennytic, Phatnitic, Mendesian, Tanitic, and Pelusiac.

210 Plin. *H. N.* v. 10.

211 Horner, in *Transactions of the Royal Society*, vol. cxlv. pp. 101–138.

212 See Captain Strachey's paper in the *Geographical Journal*, vol. xxiii. pp. 1–69.

213 See Captain Strachey's Map, and compare Lieut. Macartney's "Memoir" in the second volume of Elphinstone's *Caubul*, pp. 415, 416.

214 At Mittun Kote, after receiving the great stream of the Chenab, which brings with it the waters of all the other Punjab rivers, the Indus is more than a mile wide and never less than 15 feet deep. This width continues till Bukker (lat. 27° 40′). From Bukker to Schwan (lat. 26° 25′) the average width is about three-quarters of a mile. At Hyderabad (lat. 25° 23′) it is 830 yards, while at Tatta it is not more than 700 yards. (*Geograph. Journal*, vol. iii. pp. 125–135.)

215 The *true* Delta, which lies between the *Buggaur* and *Sata* arms, is here spoken of. If we take the Delta in the widest sense of the term, extending it southward to the Koree mouth, which only conveys water during the time of the annual inundation, the size of it will be greatly enlarged. It must then be said to extend along the coast for 125 miles, and inland for above 100. Its area, according to this latter view of its limits, has been estimated at 7000 square miles. (See Burnes, in the *Geograph. Journal*, vol. iii. pp. 115–123, and compare the third volume of his *Bokhara*, pp. 228–240.)

216 Keith Johnston, *Physical Atlas*, "Hydrology," No. 5, p. 14. The estimate of Major Cunningham is 1977 miles. (*Ladak*, p. 90.)

217 Wood's *Memoir on the Indus*, p. 306.

218 *Geograph. Journal*, vol. x. p. 536. The elevation of this lake is estimated at 15,600 feet.

219 Burnes, *Bokhara*, vol. ii. p. 190.

220 Ibid. Compare vol. i. p. 249.

221 Vámbéry, *Travels*, p. 228.

222 The famous bridge of boats, which unites Buda with Pesth, is said to measure 1408 feet. (Murray, *Handbook for S. Germany*, p. 435, 3rd edition.)

223 Burnes, *Bokhara*, vol. ii. p. 190.

224 Vámbéry, p. 147.

225 Burnes, *Bokhara*, vol. ii. p. 189.

226 Keith Johnston, *Physical Atlas*, "Hydrology," No. 5, p. 14.

227 Herod. i. 92; Aristobulus ap. Strab. xi. 7, § 3; Patrocles ap. eund. xi. 11, § 5; Eratosth. ap. eund. xi. 6, § 1; Plin. *H. N.* vi. 17; Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* iii. 29; Dionys. *Perieg.* l. 748; Mela, iii. 5; Ptol. *Geograph.* vi. 14.

228 See Meyendorf, *Voyage à Bokhara*, pp. 239–241; Vámbéry, *Travels*, pp. 106, 115.

229 Burnes, *Bokhara*, vol. ii. p. 192.

230 On the cultivation here, see Vámbéry, pp. 120, 121, and 141.

231 Burnes, l. s. c.

232 For the true source of the Jaxartes, and the real course of its upper branches, see the Map accompanying Mr. J. Michell's paper in vol. xxxi. of the *Geographical Journal*, opp. p. 356.

233 On the course of the lower Jaxartes, see an article in the *Quarterly Review* for October, 1865, pp. 553, 554:—"Watering with its numerous affluents in the upper part of its basin," says the writer, "one of the most fertile and delightful countries in the world, and fringed throughout its course with the richest cultivation, it debouches below the town of Turkistan upon a saline steppe, and its character becomes entirely altered. Where the banks are high, a thin belt of jungle alone separates the river from the desert; where they are low, inundations, forming reedy lagoons and impassable morasses, spread for hundreds of miles over the face of the plain; in the intermediate portions alone, where the banks admit the river over the adjacent lands at the time of flood, but cut off the supply of water at other seasons, is there much cultivation or pasturage. In such positions the lands are said to be exceedingly fertile, the irrigating waters overlaying the surface with a rich alluvial loam, which, in combination with the saline soil, is found to be peculiarly favorable to agriculture. Whether Russian engineering science, by a skilful management of the waters of the river, will be able to conquer the general sterility of the adjoining steppe to any appreciable extent, remains to be seen; but it is certain that in all history the lower basin of the river has been regarded as an irreclaimable desert."

234 Butakoff, in *Geographical Journal*, vol. xxiii. p. 99.

235 Ibid.

236 Keith Johnston, *Physical Atlas*, "Hydrology," No. 5, p. 14.

237 Of these forty streams, no fewer than seventeen have been already described in these volumes—the two Zabs, the Diyaleh, the Belik, and the Khabour (Vol. I. pp. 123–126); most of the remainder, as the Aras (text, pp. 5, 6); the Sefid-rud (text, p. 6); the Zenderud (text, p. 7); the Hindyan or Tab (text, p. 134); the Jerahi (text, p. 135); the Kuran (text, pp. 135, 136); the Kerkhah with its two branches (text, pp. 136, 137); the Orontes (text, pp. 138, 139); the Barada (text, pp. 140, 141), and the Jordan (text, pp. 142, 143). For a description of the Bendamir, see text, pp. 268, 269. For some account of the other streams, see the author's *Herodotus*, vol. i. pp. 315–317, 447, 448, 459–461, 2nd edition.

238 On these lakes, see a paper by Sir G. Wilkinson, in the *Journal of the Geographical Society*, vol. xiii. pp. 113–118.

239 See Vol. I. p. 11, for a description of the Bahr-i-Nedjif; text, pp. 7, 8, for an account of the Urumiyeh, and text, pp. 143–146, for descriptions of the Sabakhah, the Bahr-el-Melak, the Damascus lakes, the Dead Sea, the Sea of Tiberias, Lake Merom, the Lake of Hems, and the Sea of Antioch. Finally, see text, p. 269, for a description of Lake Neyriz.

240 Mr. Brant's observations, made in 1838, showed the elevation of Lake Van to be 5467 feet. (*Geograph. Journal*, vol. x. p. 410.)

241 Lake Van was first correctly laid down by Lieut. Glascott, in the year 1838. The results of his survey were embodied in maps published by the Royal Geographical Society in 1840. (See *Geograph. Journal*, vol. x. Maps opp. pp. 1 and 530.)

242 Shiel in *Geograph. Journal*, vol. viii. p. 63; Brant, in the same, vol. x. p. 391; Layard, *Nineveh and Babylon*, pp. 22–34 and 387–412.

243 Layard, p. 415.

244 Ibid. l. s. c.

245 Brant in *Geograph. Journal*, vol. x. p. 403. Compare vol. iii. p. 50.

246 *Geograph. Journal*, vol. x. p. 299.

247 Hamilton, *Asia Minor*, vol. ii. p. 235.

248 Chesney, *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 346. Mr. Hamilton estimated the circumference at 30 leagues. (*Geograph. Journal*, vol. viii. p. 147.)

249 Chesney, vol. i. p. 347.

250 Hamilton, *Asia Minor*, vol. ii. p. 237. Mr. Ainsworth speaks of the whole lake as "almost entirely dry in summer." (*Geograph. Journal*, vol. x. p. 298.) But this is an exaggeration of the truth.

251 Hamilton, vol. ii. Appendix, p. 388.

252 See note 196, Chapter I., *Fourth Monarchy*.

253 Hamilton, vol. ii. pp. 235–237.

254 Hamilton, in *Geograph. Journal*, vol. viii. p. 147. "The water of the lake," says this traveller, "is so extremely salt that no fish or other animals can live in it; birds dare not even touch the water; their wings become instantly stiff with a thick crust of salt." Mr. Ainsworth (*Geograph. Journal*, vol. x. p. 299) regards what is here said of the birds as a myth, but agrees that neither fish, mollusc, nor shell is to be found in the lake, and that no birds were seen by his party to float on it.

255 Hamilton, *Asia Minor*, vol. ii. p. 235.

256 Ibid. pp. 237, 238.

257 See Ferrier's *Caravan Journeys*, p. 429, with the editor's note.

258 The entire plateau is supposed to have, at least, this elevation. (See Fraser, *Khorasan*, p. 162.)

259 Gen. Ferrier, the only European who has recently visited the Lake of Seistan, calls its shape "a kind of trefoil without a stalk, having the head

very long" (*Caravan Journeys*, p. 430); but the map attached to his work scarcely bears out this description.

260 Gen. Ferrier (i. s. c.) calls the length "25 parasangs" (*i.e.* farsakhs). Reckoning the farsakh at 3½ miles, this would give a length of 87½ miles.

261 Ferrier, p. 430.

262 Ibid. pp. 413, 414, 423, &c.

263 Ibid. p. 420.

264 Herod. ii. 149; Strab. xvii. 1, § 37; Diod. Sic. i. 52, § 3; Plin. *H. N.* xxvi. 12.

265 Herod. l. s. c. So Diodorus (i. 51). Strabo, on the other hand, seems to have regarded the basin as natural.

266 This district was first explored by M. Linant de Bellefonds. A good description of it is given by Mr. Blakesley in his edition of Herodotus (vol. i. pp. 303-308).

267 *Keren*, or *Korn*, is one of the roots which the Semitic and Indo-European languages possess in common. It appears in Hebrew as קֶרֶן, in Arabic as *keroun* or *qorn*, in Greek as κέρας, Latin *cornu*, German and English *horn*, &c.

268 Blakesley, p. 304.

269 Ibid. p. 307, note.

270 Sir Gardner Wilkinson calls the depth 24 feet. (See the author's *Herodotus*, p. 196, note 8, 2nd edition.) M. Linant's calculations imply a depth of only 12 feet.

271 Wilkinson, *Ancient Egyptians*, vol. iii. p. 66.

272 Herod. iii. 90; Diod. Sic. i. 52, §§ 5, 6.

273 For a description of Susa, see text, p. 148.

274 Zadracarta was the capital of Hyrcania (Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* iii. 25). It contained a palace (βασίλεια), no doubt the residence of the satrap. Heeren locates Zadracarta in the neighborhood of Nishapoor (*As. Nat.* vol. i. p. 287, note E. T.); but Hyrcania scarcely extended so far to the east.

275 Artacoana is called the chief city of the Arians by Arrian (*Exp. Alex.* iii. 25). It is mentioned by Pliny (*H. N.* vi. 23), Isidore (*Mans. Parth.* § 15), Strabo (xi. 10, § 1), and Ptolemy (*Geograph.* vi. 17). Its identity with Herat is uncertain, but probable.

276 Herod. iii. 102; iv. 44.

277 Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* v. 8. Τάξιλα . . . πόλιν μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα, τὴν μεγίστην τῶν μεταξὺ Ἰνδοῦ τε ποταμοῦ καὶ Ὑδάσπου. Strab. xv. 1, § 28. Τάξιλα . . . πόλις μεγάλη καὶ εὐνομωτάτη. The identification of Taxila with Attock is generally agreed upon.

278 Heeren, from the resemblance of the name (*As. Nat.* vol. i. p. 270, note), identifies Pura (Πωῦρα, Arr. *Exp. Al.* vi. 24) with the modern *Puhra*, a small village about 15 miles N.E. of Bunpoor. But the argument drawn from the name is weak, since *poor* or *pore* means simply "a fortified place." And Puhra has no signs of antiquity about it, while Bunpoor possesses a most remarkable—probably a very ancient—citadel. (Pottinger, *Travels*, pp. 169 and 176.)

279 See text, p. 271.

280 On the importance of Mazaca, see Strab. xii. 2, §§ 7-9; Plin. *H. N.* vi. 3; Solin. *Polyhist.* § 47: "Mazacam Cappadoces matrem urbium nominant."

281 Herod. iii. 120; Xen. *Hell.* iii. 1, § 10; 2, § 1; iv. 1, § 15; Strab. xii. 8, § 10; Arr. *Exp. Al.* i. 12; &c.

282 On the importance of Gordium, see Arrian, *Exp. Al.* i. 29; Strab. xii. 5, § 3.

283 The modern Daghistan, compared with the rest of the Caucasus, is a low region. The route along the shores of the Caspian, by Derbend and Baku, presents but few difficulties.

284 On the ethnology of the Caucasus region, see Professor Max Müller's *Languages of the Seat of War*, pp. 114-121.

285 For an account of the great invasion of the Scyths, see Vol. I. pp. 491-496.

286 According to Herodotus (iv. 21), the steppe between the Don and the Wolga was in the possession of the Sauromatæ (or Sarmatæ), as early as the reign of Darius Hystaspis.

287 See especially Strabo, xi. 8, § 2. Compare Herod. i. 201-216.

288 Strab. xi. 8, § 4. The Persians seem to have guarded against this danger by establishing along the line of the Jaxartes a number of fortified posts. We hear of seven (Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* iv. 2), the principal being Cyropolis or Cyreschata, a town founded by Cyrus. Similarly at the present day, only with an inversion of the geographical position, Russia guards her frontier against the wild tribes of Turkestan by a line of forts along the Sir-Daria. (*Quarterly Review*, No. 236, p. 553.)

289 Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* v. 25. Γενναῖοι τὰ πολέμια . . . μεγέθει μέγιστοί τε καὶ ἀνδρείᾳ. Heeren considers that it was fear of the military prowess of these Indians rather than mere weariness, which made Alexander's soldiers refuse to follow him to the Ganges. (*As. Nat.* vol. i. p. 320.)

290 Arrian speaks of aristocracies as bearing rule in these parts (l. s. c.); but, if such existed at all, we may at least be sure that regal rule was more common.

291 As Taxilas, Porus, and others. (Arrian, iv. 22; v. 3, 8, 21, &c.)

292 Chesney, *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. ii. p. 448.

293 See text, p. 150.

294 Herod. iii. 6-9 and 97; vii. 69, 86; Xen. *Anab.* i. 5, § 1; vii. 8, § 25.

295 Herod. iii. 18, 23; Diod. Sic. iii. 10; Strabo, xvii. 2, §§ 1-3; Pomp. Mel. iii. 10.

296 Herod. iii. 20, 114; Isaiah xlv. 14.

297 Herod. iii. 100, 137; Diod. Sic. i. 65; Manetho, Frs. 64 and 65.

298 Clinton, *F. H.* vol. ii. p. 471, 3rd edition. This writer calculates that the

entire area of ancient Greece amounted to no more than 22,231 square miles (ib. 473).

[299] Clinton sees grounds for believing that the population was at the rate of 165 persons to the square mile, or equal in density to that of Great Britain in 1821. (*F. H.* vol. ii. p. 474.) He estimates the entire population roughly at 3½ millions.

[300] The present population of the Punjab exceeds 4,000,000. That of Egypt is now only 2½ millions; but anciently it must have been at least double that number.

[301] Herod. iii. 11-15; iv. 44.

[302] Compare Herod. iii. 134 and vii. 9.

CHAPTER II.

[1] The altitude of Mount Demavend in the Elburz range south of the Caspian exceeds 20,000 feet. (See note 6, Chapter I., *Third Monarchy.*) The lower Jordan valley and the shores of the Dead Sea are 1300 feet below the Mediterranean (see note 193, Chapter I., *Fourth Monarchy*).

[2] Nearchus, ap. Arr. *Hist. Ind.* § 40: Τὴν Περσίδα γῆν τριχῇ νενεμῆσθαι τῶν ὡρέων ὁ λόγος κατέχει· τὸ μὲν αὐτῆς πρὸς τῇ Ἐρυθῇ θαλάσσῃ οἰκεόμενον ἀμμώδες τε εἶναι καὶ ἄκαρπον ὑπὸ καύματος· τὸ δὲ ἐπὶ τῇδε ὡς πρὸς ἄρκτον τε καὶ βορέην ἄνεμον ἰόντων καλῶς κεκρᾶσθαι τῶν ὡρέων . . . τὴν δὲ πρόσω ἔτι ἐπ' ἄρκτον ἰόντων χειμερίην τε καὶ νιφετώδεα. Compare Strab. xv. 3, § 1.

[3] Kinneir, *Persian Empire*, p. 54; Morier, *Second Journey*, p. 120; Abbott, in *Geographical Journal*, vol. xxvii. p. 184.

[4] On the character of this climate, which is called the *Ghermsir* ("warm climate"), see Fraser, *Khorasan*, p. 75, and Appendix, p. 133; Morier, *Second Journey*, p. 43; *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxvii. p. 109.

[5] Kinneir calls the climate of Shiraz "one of the finest in the world" (p. 64). Ker Porter says "it is generally esteemed the most moderate climate in the southern division of the empire; its summer noons may be warmer than is pleasant, but the mornings and evenings are delightful; when September commences the weather becomes heavenly, and continues until the end of November, with a perfectly serene atmosphere, of a most balmy and serene temperature." (*Travels*, vol. i. p. 709.)

[6] Fraser, *Khorasan*, p. 55.

[7] Ibid. p. 75; and Appendix, p. 133.

[8] Morier, *Second Journey*, p. 98; Monteith, in *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxvii. p. 115. The highest temperature noted by Mr. Fraser during his stay at Bushire in the year 1821 was 109°.

[9] Morier, p. 43; Monteith, in *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxvii. p. 109. The first-named writer remarks:—"The *sam* wind is hurtful to vegetation; about six years ago there was a *sam* during the summer months, which totally burnt up all the corn."

[10] Fraser, pp. 56, 57.

[11] Morier, *Second Journey*, p. 54; Kinneir, p. 78.

[12] Fraser, Appendix, p. 134.

[13] Morier, *First Journey*, p. 148.

[14] Abbott, in *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxv. p. 53.

[15] Fraser, l. s. c.

[16] See above, note 5, and compare Ker Porter, vol. i. p. 708; Morier, *Second Journey*, p. 113; Fraser, Appendix, p. 134. The highest temperature recorded is 110°.

[17] Morier, *Second Journey*, p. 97.

[18] On the coast of Beloochistan the thermometer in the month of December ranges from 64° to 80° in the daytime. (*Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxxiii. p. 183.)

[19] See Vol. I. pp. 18, 19.

[20] Ibid. pp. 139, 140.

[21] Ibid. p. 140.

[22] Herod. i. 142. Sir C. Fellows says of the climate at the present day:—"During the summer the heat becomes intense as the morning advances, but before noon a land breeze is drawn down from the cold mountain country, which brings a refreshing coolness, with the shade of clouds, and not unfrequently flying showers. In the early part of the evening the heat again becomes oppressive; the dews are very heavy." (*Asia Minor*, p. 301.)

[23] See note 20, Chapter II., *Fourth Monarchy.*

[24] Herod. ii. 22.

[25] Ibid. iii. 10; Diod. Sic. i. 10, § 4; Pomp. Mel. i. : "Terra expers imbrium." (On the occurrence of rain in Egypt see the remarks of Sir G. Wilkinson in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii. p. 338. note 4. 2nd edition.)

[26] Hamilton, *Wanderings in N. Africa*. pp. 93, 94.

[27] Ibid. pp. 92, 145, &c.

[28] Herod. iv. 159: Ἐνθαῦτα ὁ οὐρανὸς τέτρηται.

[29] Burnes, *Travels into Bokhara*, vol. ii. pp. 3, 193, 194; Butakoff, in *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxiii. p. 98; Humboldt, *Aspects of Nature*, vol. i. p. 84.

[30] On the coldness of the nights in these regions, see Morier, *Second Journey*, pp. 55, 97; Fraser, *Khorasan*, p. 114; Burnes, *Travels into Bokhara*, vol. i. p. 253; vol. ii. p. 2. Humboldt observes on this point:—"The high temperature of the air, which makes the day's march so oppressive, renders the coldness of the nights . . . so much the more striking. Melloni ascribes this cold, *produced doubtless by the radiation from the ground*, less to the great purity and serenity of the sky than to the profound calm, the nightly absence of all movement in the atmosphere." (*Aspects of Nature*, vol. i. pp. 117, 118. E. T.)

[31] Burnes, vol. i. pp. 176, 181, 182, &c.; vol. ii. p. 241; Strachey, in *Geograph.*

Journal, vol. xxiii. pp. 58–62; Ferrier, *Caravan Journeys*, pp. 217, 222, &c.; Humboldt, vol. i. pp. 85–99, &c. (Compare Q. Curt. *Hist. Al. Magn.* ii. 3.)

[32] Burnes, *Journey to Bokhara*, vol. iii. pp. 119, 135; *Geograph. Journal*, vol. viii. p. 125.

[33] Burnes, p. 135.

[34] Ibid. p. 254; *Geograph. Journal*, l. s. c.

[35] The swell commences in April, continues to increase till July, and terminates in September. (*Geograph. Journal*, vol. viii. p. 123.)

[36] *Geograph. Journal*, vol. viii. p. 360.

[37] Such is found to be the range in modern times. (See Vol. I. pp. 18, 140, 141; text, pp. 23, 24, 152.) There is no reason to believe that it was either more or less anciently. (See text, pp. 154, 155.)

[38] Morier, *First Journey*, p. 61, notes the longevity of the natives inhabiting the Deshtistan, one of the hottest and most unhealthy parts of the Empire. If any exception is to be made to the statement in the text, it must be to exempt from it some of the damp hot regions, as Mazanderan, and perhaps Balkh.

[39] Arrian, *Hist. Ind* xxxviii. § 6; Strab. xv. 3, § 1: Ἡ παραλία . . . σπανιστη κομιδῆς παρὰ φοινίκων.

[40] Arrian, *H. I.* xxxii. §§ 4, 5; xxxiii. § 2; xxxviii. § 6; xxxix. § 2.

[41] Arr. *H. I.* xl. § 3: Χώρην πρώδεά τε εἶναι καὶ λειμῶνας ὑδρηλούς.

[42] Ib. l. s. c. Strabo says that in Carmania the bunches of grapes were often a yard long. (*Geograph.* xv. ii. § 14:—Ἡ Καρμανία . . . δίπηχυν ἔχει πολλάκις τὸν βότρυν.) Ker Porter observes of the vines grown near Shiraz: "The grapes grow to a size and fulness hardly to be matched in other climates." (*Travels*, vol. i. p. 706.)

[43] Arrian more than once pointedly notes this exception. (*Hist. Ind.* xxxiii. § 2; xl. § 3.)

[44] Plin. *H. N.* xv. 13, 14. The Italians still call the peach "*persica*," and the Russians have a very similar name for it—"*persikie*."

[45] Plin. *H. N.* xii. 3.

[46] Ibid. xix. 3. Assafœtida is still a product of Carmania. (*Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxv. p. 32.)

[47] Plin. *H. N.* xv. p. 22.

[48] As *hestiatoris* (Plin. *H. N.* xxiv. 27), *napy* (ib. xxvii. 13), *theobrotion* (ib. xxiv. 17), and others.

[49] Oaks, generally dwarf, grow in the Bakhtiyari mountains (Morier, *First Journey*, p. 93; *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xiii. pp. 77, 84; vol. xxvii. p. 117); planes, chenars, cypresses, poplars, willows, and konar-trees, are common in all the upper country (Morier, *First Journey*, pp. 81, 92; *Second Journey*, pp. 74, 122; Ouseley, vol. ii. p. 88; *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xiii. p. 84; vol. xxv. pp. 32, 74; vol. xxvii. pp. 151, 157, &c.) The pinaster was observed by Mr. Morier near Ekleed (*Second Journey*, p. 122). Mr. Abbott noticed the acacia, the fan-palm, and the juniper in the district between Kerman and Lake Neyriz. (*Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxv. pp. 52, 54, 59.)

[50] Thickets of box abound near Failyun (*Geograph. Journal*, vol. xiii. p. 79); the tamarisk occurs in Kerman, near Khubbes (ib. vol. xxv. p. 33), and in the low country near Dalaki (Morier, *First Journey*, p. 76; Fraser, p. 71); rhododendrons grow in the mountains between Dalaki and Karezun (ib. pp. 82, 92); wild myrtle is common near Shiraz (*Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxvii. p. 150); the camel's thorn and the liquorice-plant are found on the plateau north of Shiraz (Morier, *Second Journey*, p. 115); the gum tragacanth plant is a product of the region about Fessa (*Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxvii. pp. 152, 157); the caper-bush grows in the Deshtistan (Fraser, p. 71); the *benneh* is common in the Fessa and Darab districts (*Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxvii. p. 159); the blackberry was seen by Mr. Abbott near Khubbes (ib. vol. xxv. p. 32). Wild figs and wild almonds are common in all the upper country.

[51] Pottinger, *Travels*, p. 234; *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxv. pp. 32, 59; vol. xxvii. pp. 169, 184, &c. Compare Ker Porter, p. 709.

[52] *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xiii. p. 80; vol. xxv. p. 74; vol. xxvii. pp. 115, 150, &c.

[53] Pulse and beans are cultivated in Kerman (*Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxv. p. 47), as are also indigo, henna, and madder (ib. pp. 34, 51, 64). Cotton, indigo, and opium are grown in the vicinity of Shiraz (ib. vol. xxvii. p. 150). Sesame is grown near Failyun (ib. vol. xiii. p. 80), at Fessa (ib. vol. xxvii. p. 154), and elsewhere.

[54] Morier, *First Journey*, p. 64; Ker Porter, vol. i. pp. 461, 462, 468, 509; vol. ii. pp. 6, 19; Ouseley, vol. ii. pp. 67, 179, 215; *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xiii. p. 79; vol. xxv. pp. 28, 41, 47, 62, 68, &c. The Baron de Bode heard also of wild buffaloes (*Geograph. Journal*, vol. xiii. p. 82).

[55] Morier, *First Journey*, p. 64; *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xiii. pp. 77, 78.

[56] Ker Porter, vol. i. p. 461; *Geog. Journal*, vol. xxv. p. 68.

[57] Ker Porter, vol. i. p. 460. Compare Ferrier, *Caravan Journeys*, p. 138, and Layard, *Nineveh and Babylon*, p. 270.

[58] Eagles were seen frequently in the mountains between Bushire and Shiraz by Sir W. Ouseley (*Travels*, vol. i. p. 305). A vulture was shot near Darab by one of his party (ib. vol. ii. p. 153).

[59] Cormorants, falcons, bustards, and partridges of more than one kind were noticed by Mr. Morier in the Deshtistan (*First Journey*, p. 64).

[60] *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xiii. p. 79.

[61] Ibid. vol. xxv. pp. 32, 54, 59; vol. xxvii. p. 162.

[62] Ibid. vol. xxv. p. 73; vol. xxvii. p. 150; Morier, *First Journey*, p. 142.

[63] Morier, p. 77.

[64] *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxvii. l. s. c.

[65] Abbott, in *Geographical Journal*, vol. xxv. p. 60.

[66] *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxv. p. 73.

[67] Morier, *First Journey*, pp. 61, 64.

[68] Ker Porter, vol. ii. p. 19.

[69] *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xiii. p. 79.

[70] Ibid. vol. xxv. p. 54; vol. xxvii. p. 162.

[71] The root of Carm-ania (or Germania, Herod. i. 125) would seem to be the ancient Persian *garma* (found in the month *Garmapada*, which is represented by the modern Persian *gherm* — both words being identical with our own "warm."

[72] Though the name of Ichthyophagi is restricted by the ancient writers to the inhabitants of the coast track *outside* the Gulf (Arrian, *Hist. Ind.* xxix. xxxii.; Strab. xv. 2, §§ 1, 2, &c.), yet the fact of dependence on the sea for food had evidently no such limitation. (See Arrian, *Hist. Ind.* xxxvii. 8; xxxviii. 4.)

[73] Nearchus, ap. Arr. *H. I.* xxx. 1-9. Compare Strab. xv. 2, § 2. Whales have been observed by moderns in the Persian Gulf, near Busrah (Vincent, *Periplus*, p. 392, 2nd edition; Ouseley, *Travels*, vol. i. p. 230).

[74] Arr. *H. I.* xxix. 15; xxx. 8; xxxix. 4.

[75] Ibid. xxix. 16; xxx. 9.

[76] Nearchus ap. Arr. *H. I.* xxxix. 5.

[77] Ibid. xxix. 11. Chardin says of the Persian Gulf—"Il n'y a point au monde, comme je crois, de mer si poissonneuse que le Golfe de Perse." *Voyages*, tom. iii. p. 44.) See also Ouseley, *Travels*, vol. i. p. 227.

[78] Arrian, *H. I.* xxix 12.

[79] Ibid. 14; xxxviii. 3; xxxix. 5.

[80] On the excellent quality of the Gulf oysters, see Morier, *First Journey*, p. 55.

[81] As in the Khist river (Ouseley, *Travels*, vol. i. p. 261), in the small stream which flows by Ekleed (ib. p. 446), and elsewhere.

[82] See text, p. 31.

[83] Kinneir, p. 43; Ouseley, vol. ii. p. 216.

[84] Chardin, tom. iii. p. 38. "On dit qu'ils attaquent quelquefois les hommes, et *qu'ils les tuent*."

[85] Ouseley, vol. ii. p. 176, 216; Chardin, l. s. c.; Kinneir, l. s. c.

[86] Chardin, l. s. c.; Ouseley, vol. ii. p. 227.

[87] Ouseley, vol. ii. p. 215.

[88] Tom. iii. p. 38: "Sa morsure est dangereuse, et même mortelle, quand il entrent dans les oreilles."

[89] Compare text, pp. 32, 33, 160.

[90] Chardin, l. s. c.; Ouseley, vol. i. p. 195; vol. ii. p. 213; Morier, *Second Journey*, pp. 43, 44; *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxvii. p. 158, &c.

[91] *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxvii. pp. 118, 159.

[92] Ouseley observes that the Arab population seems to relish the locust, but not so the Persian (*Travels*, vol. i. p. 196). He himself tried the dish, and found it "by no means unpalatable," being "in flavor like lobsters or shrimps."

[93] Abbott, in *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxvii. p. 154.

[94] Ibid. Compare Ouseley, vol. i. p. 196, note.

[95] That is to say, they consist of the camel, the horse, the mule, the ass, the cow, the goat, the sheep, the dog, the cat, and the buffalo. (See text, pp. 160, 161.)

[96] Kinneir, p. 41; Fraser, *Khorasan*, p. 72.

[97] Kinneir, pp. 41, 42; Chardin, tom. iii. p. 37.

[98] See, besides the authorities quoted in the last note, *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxvii. p. 152; Pottinger, *Travels*, p. 238; and Fraser, l. s. c.

[99] Abbott, in *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxvii. p. 159.

[100] Ibid. p. 152.

[101] Pottinger, p. 225.

[102] Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 3. § 3. Ἐν Πέρσαις γὰρ, διὰ τὸ χαλεπὸν εἶναι καὶ τρέφειν ἵππους καὶ ἱππεύειν, ἐν ὀρεινῇ οὔσῃ τῇ χώρᾳ καὶ ἰδεῖν ἵππον πάνυ σπάνιον ἦν.

[103] Herod. i. 136; Nic. Dam. Fr. 66, p. 463, sub. fin.; Strab. xv. 3, § 18; Arrian, *Hist. Ind.* xl. § 4. &c

[104] Camels (Herod. i. 80); sheep and goats (ib. i. 126; Arr. *H. I.* xxxvii. 11); asses (Strab. xv. 2, § 14); oxen (Herod. i. 126; Nic. Dam. Fr. 66, p. 463).

[105] In Nicolas's fragment concerning the early life of Cyrus (Fr. 66), the Persians, including Cyrus himself, are throughout represented as "goat-herds" (αἰπόλοι). So Herodotus, when he mentions the various flocks and herds of Cambyses, the father of Cyrus, assigns the first place to the goats (τά τε αἰπόλια, καὶ τὰς ποίμνας, καὶ τὰ βουκόλια, i. 126).

[106] Strab. xv. 2, § 14; Plin. *H. N.* vi. 23. These mines were in Carmania, where there was also a river (the Hyctanis) whose sands contained gold.

[107] Strabo (l. s. c.) speaks of a "mountain of salt" (ἁλὸς ὄρος) in Carmania. Abbott (*Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxvii. p. 157) uses almost exactly the same expression. He and Ouseley (*Travels*, vol. ii. p. 155) note that the salt is of different colors.

[108] Pottinger, *Travels*, p. 229; Abbott in *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxv. pp. 34, 66.

[109] See text, p. 269.

[110] Pottinger, p. 237.

[111] Ouseley, vol. i. p. 258; Morier, *First Journey*, p. 78; Chesney, *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 75.

[112] See Plin. *H. N.* vi. 23: "Flumen Granis modicarum navium per Susi-

anem fluit; dextra ejus adcolunt Deximontani, *qui bitumen perficiunt.*"

113 Ouseley, vol. i. p. 258; *Geograph. Journal*, vol. i. xxvii. p. 152.

114 Lead is found in Fars, near Neyriz (*Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxv. p. 71), and also in the vicinity of Murgab (Morier, *Second Journey*, p. 120).

115 Arrian, *Hist. Ind.* xxxviii. 3.

116 Plin. *H. N.* ix. 25.

117 Ibid. xxxvii. 9, sub. fin.

118 Ib. xxxvii. 10.

119 Plin. *H. N.* l. s. c.

120 Pliny compares it to the teeth of the hippopotamus (*H. N.* l. s. c.), which are a little more transparent and less white than ivory.

121 "Thelycardios . . Persas, apud quos gignitur, magnopere delectat: *mulc* appellant." (Plin. *H. N.* xxxvii. 10, sub. fin.) The turquoise, which is now the favorite gem of the Persians, and which is found in Kerman (*Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxv. pp 30, 63) as well as at Nishapur, may have been known in the time of the Empire; but there is no evidence that it was so.

122 See text, pp. 154-162.

123 Kinneir, *Persian Empire*, p. 42.

124 Butakoff in *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxiii. p. 95.

125 Burnes, *Journey to Bokhara*, vol. iii. p. 139. Tigers are also said to exist in the high country about Kashgar and Yarkand, east of the Bolor mountain-range.

126 See Wilkinson, *Ancient Egyptians*, vol. v. pp. 176, 177; and Stuart Poole in *Encyclopædia Britannica*, vol. viii. p. 432

127 Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* iv. 22, v. 3, 9, &c. The native country of the elephant is the *peninsula* of Hindustan. Nearchus (ap. Strab. xv. 1, § 43) and even Megasthenes (ap. eund. xv. 1, § 42, and Arr. *Hist. Ind.* xiii. and xiv.) probably derived their accounts of the mode in which wild elephants were taken from hearsay.

128 Herod. ii. 71. Compare Wilkinson, *Ancient Egyptians*, vol. v. pp. 177-181.

129 Herod. ii. 68, 69; Diod. Sic. i. 89.

130 Herod. iv. 44; Burnes, *Bokhara*, vol. iii. p. 303.

131 Wilkinson, *Ancient Egyptians*, vol. v. p. 123. Compare his note in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. iii. p. 141, note 8, 2nd edition.

132 Herod. iv. 192.

133 Ainsworth, *Researches*, p. 46.

134 See text, p. 33.

135 *Encycl. Britannica*, ad voc. MAMMALIA, vol. xiv. p. 211.

136 Ibid. vol. xxi. p. 906.

137 Chesney, vol. i. p. 142.

138 Elphinstone, *Caubul*, vol. i. p. 188.

139 Carless in *Geograph. Journal*, vol. viii. p. 362.

140 Naturalists seem now to doubt whether the elk can live much below the 45th parallel. (*Encycl. Britannica*, vol. xiv. p. 206.)

141 Elphinsfone, l. s. c.

142 Mummies of the cynocephalus are common in the Egyptian tombs, and the same ape is frequently represented on the sculptures. (Wilkinson, vol. v. pp. 128-130.) But it was perhaps only imported into Egypt from Ethiopia. (See Plin. *H. N.* viii. 54.)

143 Wilkinson, vol. v. 174.

144 Xen. *Anab.* i. 5, § 2. See Vol. I. p. 149.

145 Elphinstone, *Caubul*, vol. i. p. 192. The green parrot is found also in Syria. (Chesney, vol. i. pp. 443, 537.)

146 Herod. ii. 75, 76; Diod. Sic. i. 87, § 6; Strab. xvii. 2, § 4.

147 *Geograph. Journal*, vol. viii. p. 362.

148 Ainsworth, in Chesney's *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. Appendix, p. 730. This bird is "equal in size to the condor."

149 Ainsworth, l. s. c,

150 The spoonbill occurs in the Egyptian sculptures. (Wilkinson, vol. iii. p. 51.)

151 The *benno* and the *sicsac* are found only in Egypt. The latter is probably the *trochilus* of Herodotus. (Wilkinson, vol. v. p. 226.)

152 Chesney, *Euphrates Exp.* vol. i. p. 82.

153 Butakoff in *Geograph. Journal*. vol. xxiii. p. 99.

154 Chesney, vol. i. p. 412.

155 Burnes, *Bokhara*, vol. iii. p. 39.

156 See text, p. 303.

157 Arrian, *Hist. Ind.* xxxix. 5; Burnes, vol. iii. p. 65; *Geograph. Journal*, vol. viii. pp. 332, 362, &c.

158 See Vol. I. pp. 27, 150; text, p. 31.

159 The Oxyrinchus is mentioned by Strabo (xvii. 2, § 4), Plutarch (*De Is.* § 2, &c.), Ælian (*Nat. An.* x. 46), and others. It has been recognized in the *Mormyrus oxyrinchus*, or *mizdeh*, of modern Egypt. (Wilkinson, *Ancient Egyptians*, vol. v. p. 249; *Description de l'Egypte*, "Hist. Nat." vol. i. p. 270, and pl. 6, fig. 1.) The *lepidotus* is spoken of by Herodotus (ii. 72) and Strabo (l. s. c.). It is thought to have been the modern *Cyprinus lepidotus*, or *Cyprinus benni*. (*Description*, p. 284; Wilkinson, p. 252. Compare the latter writer's note in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii. p. 101, 2nd edition.) Strabo mentions as fish of the Nile having peculiar characteristics (χαρακτῆρα ἔχοντες ἴδιον καὶ ἐπιχώριον)—besides these two—the *latus*, the *alabes*, the *coracinus*, the *chærus*, the *phagrorius* or *phagrus*, the *silurus*, the *citharus*, the *thrissa*, the *cestreus*, the *lychnus*, the *physa*, and the *bus* (βοῦς). On the whole subject of the fish of the Nile, see the *Description de l'Egypte*, "Hist. Nat." vol. i. pp. 1-52, and pp. 265-340.

160 Wilkinson, *Ancient Egyptians*, vol. iii. p. 6.

161 Herod. iii. 91; Diod. Sic. i. 52.

162 The crocodile and the two monitors, *Lacerta Nilotica*, and *Lacerta scincus*.

163 St. Hilaire in the *Description de l'Egypte*, "Hist. Nat." tom. i. pp. 115–120.

164 For an exact description of the Euphrates turtle see the Appendix to vol. i. of Chesney's *Euphrates Expedition*, pp. 733, 734. (Compare Ollivier, *Voyage en Perse*, tom. iii. 453.)

165 *Encycl. Britannica*, vol. xix. p. 31.

166 *Description de l'Egypte*, "Hist. Nat." tom. i. pp. 125, 126.

167 On the *gecko* see *Description de l'Egypte*, pp. 130–134, and compare *Enc. Britannica*, vol. xix. p. 25.

168 Foskral, *Descript. Anim.* 13.

169 See Mr. Houghton's remarks in Dr. Smith's *Biblical Dictionary*, vol. ii. p. 127.

170 The asp of Egypt has been well described by St. Hilaire in the *Description de l'Egypte* ("Hist. Nat." tom. i. pp. 157–160); by Wilkinson, in his *Ancient Egyptians* (vol. v. pp. 241, 242); and by Mr. Houghton, in Smith's *Biblical Dictionary* (Appendix to vol. i. p. xvii.). The accompanying representation is from the last-named work.

171 Sir G. Wilkinson had an asp six feet long, which was the largest that he saw in Egypt. (*Ancient Egyptians*, vol. v. p. 241; *Herodotus*, vol. ii. p. 105, note 2.) He discredits the account of Ælian (*Nat. An.* vi. 38), that some specimens measured five cubits (7½ feet).

172 This snake is described by Wilkinson (vol. v. pp. 245–247), by St. Hilaire (in the *Description de l'Egypte*, "Hist. Nat." tom. i. pp. 155, 156), and by Mr. Houghton (*Biblical Dictionary*, vol. i. Appendix, p. iv.). It was known to Herodotus (ii. 74), Aristotle (*Hist. Anim.* ii. 1), Diodorus (i. 87), Pliny (*H. N.* viii. 23), Ælian (*Nat. Anim.* xv. 13), and others.

173 On the error of Herodotus in this respect (ii. 74; ὄφιες ἀνθρώπων οὐδαμῶς δηλήμονες), see Wilkinson, in the author's *Herodotus*, note ad loc.

174 The chameleon is perhaps not the animal intended in Lev. xi. 30, though the LXX. so understood the passage. The attention of the Greeks seems to have been first called to it by Democritus, who wrote a special book on the subject. (Plin. *H. N.* xxviii. 8.) By Aristotle's time the creature was so well known as to have become a proverb for changefulness (*Eth. Nic.* i. 10, § 8). Aristotle himself gave a good description of it in his "History of Animals" (ii. 11, § 1). Later writers among the Greeks, as Alexander the Myndian (ap. Æl. *De Nat. Anim.* iv. 33), indulged their fancies on the subject, and invented a number of absurd tales in connection with it. The first Latin writer who speaks of the chameleon is Ovid (*Metaph.* xv. 411). After him Pliny (*H. N.* l. s. c.), Solinus (*Polyhist.* § 43), and Leo Africanus (*Descrip. Afric.* ix. p. 298), treat of the animal, all with much exaggeration.

175 St. Hilaire well observes of these reptiles:—"Ce qui les rend véritablement bien remarquables, c'est la forme bizarre de leur tête, la disposition non moins singulière de leurs yeux presque entièrement recouverts par la peau, et dont l'un peut se mouvoir en sens inverse de l'autre; la structure de leur langue charnue, cylindrique et très-extensible; leur queue prenante; enfin leurs doigts divisés en deux paquets opposables l'un à l'autre." (*Description de l'Egypte*, "Hist. Nat." vol. i. p. 134.)

176 *Encycl. Britann.* vol. xix. p. 37. The author had in his house for some time a specimen lent him by Mr. Frank Buckland. Its color only varied between ashy grey and yellowish olive.

177 As the common unproductive palm, the date-bearing palm, the fan-palm (see text, p. 302), and the branching palm (*Palma Thebaica*) of Upper Egypt. (*Description de l'Egypte*, vol. ii. p. 145.)

178 See Herod. vii. 31; Fellows, *Asia Minor*, pp. 36, 42; Pottinger, *Travels*, p. 238; Ker Porter, vol. i. pp. 469, 712; Ouseley, vol. ii. p. 165; &c.

179 The banyan is a native of the Punjab. (Elphinstone's *Caubul*, vol. i. p. 108.)

180 Strab. xv. 3, § 22.

181 Theophrastus, *Hist. Plant.* ii. 7; p. 67.

182 Plin. *H. N.* xii. 3; Theophrastus, *H. P.* iv. 4; Dioscorid. *De Mat. Med.* i. § 166; Virg. *Georg.* ii. 126–135.

183 See above, note 44.

184 Strab. xv. 2, § 14.

185 Onesicritus ap. Plin. *H. N.* xv. 18; Strab. xi. 7, § 2.

186 Plin. *H. N.* xv. 13. The name "Damascene plum" has been contracted into our "damson."

187 Plin. *H. N.* xv. 25. Here again language is a record of facts in natural history. The word "cherry" represents the Latin *cerasus* (Gk. κερασός), which was the special fruit of Cerasus, one of the Greek cities on the north coast of Asia Minor.

188 Ibid. xxiii. 7, § 70, ed. Sillig.

189 Herod. iv. 169; Scylax. *Peripl.* § 108; Plin. *H. N.* xix. 3.

190 Ezek. xxvii. 18; Strab. xv. 3, § 22.

191 Plin. *H. N.* xxiii. proëm. § 5.

192 Vámbéry, *Travels*, p. 146.

193 Ibid. p. 419.

194 Ibid. p. 283.

195 Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. p. 451; Kinneir, *Persian Empire*, pp. 38 and 110.

196 Morier, *Second Journey*, p. 203; Kinneir, p. 38.

197 Kinneir, p. 115.

198 Fraser, *Khorasan*, p. 75.

199 Τὸ βάττου σίλφιον had become the subject of a proverb as early as the time of Aristophanes (*Plut.* 621). It was assumed as the special emblem of Cyrêné upon coins. From the possession of the treasure the city derived its epithet of *laserpicifera* (Catull. vii. 4). On the

qualities of the drug, see Theophrast. *Hist. Pl.* vi. 3; ix. 2; Plin. *H. N.* xix. 3.

[200] Della Cella, *Narrative*, pp. 126, 127; Pacho, *Voyage dans la Marmarique*, ch. xviii.; Beechey, *Expedition to N. C. of Africa*, pp. 409–420; Hamilton, *Wanderings in N. Africa*, p. 27.

[201] On the subject of the Egyptian papyrus the reader may be referred to Sir G. Wilkinson (in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii. pp. 128, 130, and Mr. Cowan, the writer of the article on "Paper," in the *Encyclopædia Britannica* (vol. xvii. pp. 246–248).

[202] Herod. ii. 92. Theophrastus (*H. P.* iv. 9) says that the root was used as firewood, and that many articles were made from it.

[203] Plin. *H. N.* xiii. 12.

[204] Ibid.

[205] See text, p. 305.

[206] Strab. xv. 2, § 10.

[207] Theophrast. *De Lapid.* § 44; Plin. *H. N.* xxxvi. 7, 22. On the identity of the Greek σμύρις and Roman *Naxium* with our "emery," see King's *Antique Gems*, p. 473.

[208] Herod. iii. 95, 104–106; Megasth. Fr. 30; Arrian, *Hist. Ind.* xv. 5. The fabulous account of the ants does not invalidate the fact that gold was procured from these quarters.

[209] Herod. v. 101; Soph. *Philoct.* 393; Strab. xiii. 4, § 5.

[210] See Ainsworth's *Researches*, p. 278; Elphinstone's *Caubul*, vol. i. p. 194; and Ferrier's *Caravan Journeys*, p. 116. Armenian gold mines are mentioned by Strabo (xi. 14, § 9).

[211] Herod. iii. 90–96. Silver Darics have been found in considerable numbers.

[212] Strab. xv. 2, § 14.

[213] Silver is yielded in considerable quantities by the mines at Kapan Maden near Kharput (Ainsworth's *Researches*, pp. 279–281) and of Denek Maden on the right bank of the Halys between Kaiseriyeh and Angora (*Travels in Asia Minor*, vol. i. p. 153). It is also found in the Elburz (Ferrier, l. s. c.).

[214] Strab. xiv. 6, § 5; Plin. *H. N.* xxxiv. 2.

[215] Strab. xv. 2, § 14.

[216] See Ainsworth's *Researches*, pp. 273–275.

[217] Ibid. p. 285.

[218] Ibid. pp. 57, 276, 285, &c.

[219] Fraser, *Khorasan*, p. 327; Ainsworth, *Researches*, p. 279; Abbott, in *Geograph. Journal*, vol. xxv. p. 64; Elphinstone, *Caubul*, vol. i. p. 194.

[220] Elphinstone, p. 195; Strab. l. s. c.

[221] Ainsworth, *Researches*, p. 279; Elphinstone, p. 194; Morier, *First Journey*, pp. 283, 284.

[222] Ainsworth, pp. 274, 275, 285, 336, &c.

[223] Hamilton, *Wanderings*, pp. 183, 193, &c.; Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. p. 335; Abbott, in *Geographical Journal*, vol. xxv. pp. 34, 66; Pottinger, *Travels*, p. 229; Ainsworth, *Researches*, p. 118.

[224] See text, pp. 29, 157, &c. Compare Herod. vii. 30; and see text, p. 292.

[225] Robinson, *Researches in Palestine*, vol. ii. p. 482; Abbott, in *Geographical Journal*, vol. xxvii. p. 157. Compare Strabo, xv. 2, § 14.

[226] On the "Salt Range" of Northwestern India, see Elphinstone's *Caubul*, vol. i. pp. 48, 49, and 137.

[227] Chesney, *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. i. p. 132.

[228] As at Nimrud (*Journal of the Asiatic Society*, vol. xv. p. 371), at Kerkuk (Ker Porter, vol. ii. pp. 440–442), at Kifri (Rich, *Kurdistan*, vol. i p. 29), and at Hit (Herod. i. 179; Rich, *First Memoir on Babylon*, pp. 63, 64).

[229] On the naphtha pits near Dalaki, see Ouseley, vol. i. p. 258; Clerk, in *Geographical Journal*, vol. xxxi. p. 64.

[230] *Geographical Journal*, vol. ix. p. 94. Compare Herod. vi. 119.

[231] See text, p. 157.

[232] Herod. i. 179; vi. 119; Plin. *H. N.* xxxv. 15.

[233] Herod. vi. 119.

[234] *Geographical Journal*, vol. xxxiii. p. 203.

[235] Ouseley, vol. i. p. 258; *Geographical Journal*, vol. xxvii. p. 152; Kinneir, p. 40; Morier, *First Journey*, p. 284; *Second Journey*, p. 355; Rich, *Kurdistan*, vol. i. p. 374; Lynch, *Official Report*, pp. 176, 180, 187, &c.

[236] On the sulphur mines of Mosul, see Ainsworth, *Researches*, pp. 259, 260.

[237] See Vol. I. p. 145.

[238] Plin. *H. N.* xxxvii. 10.

[239] Xen. *Anab.* i 5, § 5. Compare Ainsworth, *Travels in the Track of the Ten Thousand*, p. 82.

[240] See text, pp. 25, 157, 158.

[241] A good account of these mines is given in Fraser's *Khorasan*, pp. 410–420. Compare Ferrier, *Caravan Journeys*, p. 106.

[242] Ouseley, *Travels*, vol. i. p. 211; *Geographical Journal*, vol. xxv. pp. 30 and 63.

[243] Fraser, *Khorasan*, Appendix, p. 105.

[244] *Mines de l'Orient*, tom. vi. pp. 112–142.

[245] See King's *Antique Gems*, pp. 4, 5. The passage of Theophrastus runs as follows:—Καὶ ἐν Κύπρῳ ἡ Σμάραγδος καὶ ἡ Ἰασπις· οἷς δὲ εἰς τὰ λιθόκολλα χρῶνται ἐκ τῆς Βακτριανῆς εἰσὶ πρὸς τῇ ἐρήμῳ· συλλέγουσι δὲ αὐτοὺς ὑπὸ τοὺς Ἐτησίους ἱππεῖς ἐξιόντες· τότε γὰρ ἐμφανεῖς γίνονται, κινουμένης τῆς ἄμμου διὰ τὸ μέγεθος τῶν πνευμάτων. Εἰσὶ δὲ μικροὶ καὶ οὐ μελάγοι. (*De Lapid.* p. 396.) Mr. King argues that these Bactrian gems must be turquoises, 1. On account of the turquoise having been so much used by the Persians of all ages (?) for setting in their arms and ornaments; and 2. On account of their

small size. But a passage of Pliny makes it clear that he at least understood Theophrastus to mean emeralds. "Proximam laudem habent, sicut et sedem Bactriani (smaragdi): in commissuris saxorum colligere eos dicuntur *etesiis flantibus;* tunc enim tellure deoperta *nitent*, et *quia iis ventus harenæ maxime moventur*" (*H. N.* xxxvii. 5).

246 Plin. l. s. c.; Theophrastus, l. s. c.

247 Mr. King has shown grounds for regarding the "Smaragdi Bactriani" of Pliny, which were dark-colored, free from flaws and extremely hard, as green rubies (*Antique Gems*, p. 29).

248 The *lychnis* of Pliny (*H. N.* xxxvii. 7) is identified by Mr. King with the common ruby (*Antique Gems*, p. 53). This stone was found near Orthosia in Caria. It is yielded now in great abundance by mines in Badakshan (Elphinstone, vol. i. p. 164; Fraser, Appendix, p. 105).

249 Plin. *H. N.* xxxvii. 6 and 9.

250 The "Cyprian diamond" of Pliny (*H. N.* xxvii. 4), which had a bluish tinge and could be bored by means of a true diamond, was most probably a sapphire. (See King, *Antique Gems*, p. 67.)

251 Plin. *H. N.* xxxvii. 9.

252 Ib. 7.

253 Ib. 8. Jaspers are now found near Zenovia on the Euphrates. (Ainsworth, *Researches*, p. 71.)

254 The "sapphirus" of Pliny seems to be the common lapis lazuli. (See text, p. 35.) The best sort came, he says, from Media. (*H. N.* xxxvii. 9.) His "cyanos" is perhaps the *clear* variety of the same stone (King, *Antique Gems*, p. 45.) It was brought from Scythia, Cyprus, and Egypt.

255 Plin. *H. N.* xxxvii. 7. (See text, p. 157.)

256 Dionys. *Perieg.* 1073–1077; Plin. *H. N.* xxxvii. 6. The "sardonyx" of the latter is a species of agate. (King, pp. 8–12.)

257 *H. N.* xxxvii. 8.

258 Herodotus speaks of an emerald pillar in the temple of Hercules at Tyre (ii. 44). So too Theophrastus (*De Lapid.* p. 396), and Pliny (*H. N.* xxxvii. 5). The former of these two writers tells us further of an emerald presented to a king of Egypt by a king of Babylon which was four cubits long and three broad, and of an obelisk made of four emeralds, each of which was *forty cubits* in length!

259 King, p 32; Wilkinson, in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii. p. 63, note 8, 2nd edition.

260 Elphinstone, *Caubul*, vol. i. p. 194.

261 King, pp. 85–87.

262 Plin. *H. N.* xxxvii. 2.

263 "Jet" is a corruption of "*gagates* lapis," a name formed from Gagis. (Plin. *H. N.* xxxvi. 19.)

264 Ainsworth, *Researches*, pp. 55 and 289.

265 Ibid. p. 289.

CHAPTER III.

1 See text, p. 36.

2 In the Zendavesta, "the first best of regions and countries" the original home of Ahura-mazda's peculiar people is *Aryanem vaejo*—"the source of the Arians." According to Herodotus (vii. 62), the Medes of his day were known as "Arians" by all the surrounding nations. The sculptor whom Darius Hystaspis employed at Behistun, explained to the Scythic aborigines of Zagros, in a note of his own, that *Ahura-mazda*, of whom so much was said in the inscription, was "the God of the Arians." (*Beh. Inscr.* col. iv. par. 12.) Darius himself, in another inscription, boasted that he was "a Persian, the son of a Persian, an Arian of Arian descent." (*Nakhsh-i-Rustam Inscription*, par. 2.) Eudemus, the disciple of Aristotle, called the people who had the magi for their priests, "the Arian nation." (Ap. Damasc. *De Princip.* sub init.) Strabo introduced the term "Ariana" into geography, and gave it a sense nearly corresponding to the modern Iran. The Sassanian monarchs divided the world into *Airan* and *Aniran* and claimed to be kings both of the Arian and the un-Arian races. Finally the term Iran remains to the present day the only designation by which the modern Persian knows his country.

3 I have already noticed the remarkable fact that the Medes are unmentioned in the Zendavesta (see text, p. 77). There is the same absolute silence with regard to the Persians.

4 See note 1, Chapter III., *Third Monarchy.*

5 See text, pp. 36–45.

6 See Pl. IV. Fig. 1; Pl. V. Figs. 1 and 2; Pl. VI. Figs 1 and 2.

7 Ker Porter, vol. i. p. 670; Flandin, *Voyage en Perse*, "Planches Antiques," tom. iii. Pl. 156.

8 Herod. iii. 12.

9 See text, pp. 45–57.

10 See text, pp. 379–419.

11 Compare text, pp. 58–60.

12 Herod. vii. 211, ix. 62. Note especially the passage—λήματι μέν νυν καὶ ῥώμῃ οὐκ ἐσσονες ἦσαν οἱ Πέρσαι, ἄνοπλοι δὲ ἐόντες καὶ πρὸς ἀνεπιστήμονες ἦσαν, καὶ οὐχ ὁμοῖοι τοῖσι ἐναντίοισι σοφίην· προσεξαίσσοντες δὲ κατ' ἕνα καὶ δέκα καὶ πλεῦνές τε καὶ ἐλάσσονες συστρεφόμενοι, ἐσέπιπτον ἐς τοὺς Σπαρτιήτας, καὶ διεφθείροντο.

13 Grote, *History of Greece*, vol. iii. p. 513, note 5, edition of 1862.

14 Ἀλκίφρων λαός. Æschyl. *Pers.* 94. Compare Heraclid. Pont. ap. Athen. *Deipn.* xii. p. 512, A.

15 Æsch. *Pers.* 104–110:

> Θεόθεν γὰρ κατὰ μοῖρ' ἐκράτησεν τὸ παλαιὸν, ἐπέσκηψε δὲ Πέρσαις πολέμους πυργοδαίκτους διέπειν, ἱππιοχάρμας τε κλόνους, πολέων τ' ἀναστάσεις.

[16] Herod. vii. 8.

[17] See, besides the passage of Herodotus quoted in the next note, Nic. Dam. Fr. 132; Strab. xv. 3, § 18; Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 6, § 33; and Plat. *Alcib.* i. 122, A.

[18] Herod. i. 136. Παιδεύουσι τοὺς παῖδας τρία μοῦνα, ἱππεύειν καὶ τοξεύειν καὶ ἀληθίζεσθαι.

[19] See text, p. 47. Conversely, "lying" was a leading characteristic of the *devas* or evil spirits (ibid. p. 331).

[20] *Beh. Inscr.* col. iv. pars. 4, 5, 6, 13.

[21] Herod. i. 138. Αἴσχιστον αὐτοῖσι τὸ ψεύδεσθαι τετιμωται.

[22] Ibid. ix. 109.

[23] The only charge of treachery made against the Persians in the earlier times is their treatment of the Barcæans (Herod. iv. 201). But even there we observe an effort to keep the *letter* of the treaty.

[24] Herod. i. 138.

[25] Ibid. 153. Compare Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 2, § 3.

[26] Herod. viii. 99.

[27] Ibid. and ix. 24; Æschyl. *Pers.* 258–285, 547–585, 893–1055.

[28] Mr. Grote observes with much force and truth, that the exaggerated demonstrations of grief, ascribed to Xerxes and Atossa, in the *Persæ* of Æschylus, have been wrongly blamed by critics, since they are quite "in the manner of Orientals of that day." (*History of Greece*, vol. iii. p. 501, note 3, edition of 1862.)

[29] Herod. vii. 8; viii. 99, 102.

[30] See Herod. viii. 118, 119, and the author's comment on the passage in his *Herodotus*, vol. iv. p. 292, note 5, 2nd edition.

[31] Compare the sentiment of Artemisia—Ἢν τὰ ἐναντία τῆς Μαρδονίου γνώμης γένηται, οὐδεμία συμφορὴ μεγάλη ἔσται, σέο τε περιεόντος καὶ ἐκείνων τῶν πραγμάτων περὶ οἶκον τὸν σόν.—Herod. viii. 102.

[32] Herod. iii. 35.

[33] Nic. Dam. Fr. 132. Ἐὰν δὲ τινα προστάξῃ ὁ βασιλεὺς μαστιγῶσαι, εὐχαριστεῖ, ὡς ἀγαθοῦ τυχὼν ὅτι αὐτοῦ ἐμνήσθη ὁ βασιλεύς.

[34] See note 36, Chapter III., *Third Monarchy*.

[35] Εἶχον περι τὸ σῶμα κιθῶνας χειριδωτούς.—Herod. vii. 61.

[36] Ibid. i. 171. In the description of the Persian equipment which Herodotus gives in his seventh book (ch. 61), he adds that the tunics were "embroidered," or "of many colors" (ποικίλους). The predominant hue, according to Xenophon, was scarlet (*Cyrop.* vii. 1, § 2).

[37] See Pl. XXVIII. Fig. 4, and compare the Persepolitan sculptures, *passim*.

[38] Ἀναξυρίδες.—Herod. i. 71; v. 49; vii. 61.

[39] Περὶ τῇσι κεφαλῇσι εἶχον πίλους ἀπαγέας.—Herod. vii. 61.

[40] Ζώνη.—Herod. vii. 61.

[41] So Herodotus (vii. 54). Compare Josephus, *Ant. Jud.* xx. 8, § 10. Polemo (*Epitaph. in Callimach.*), and Horace (*Od.* i. 27, 5) call the weapon—perhaps not incorrectly—Median.

[42] On the shortness of the Persian sword see Josephus (l. s. c.), who calls it ξιφίδιον. Note also that Herodotus in one place (vii. 61) terms it a dagger. (ἐγχειρίδιον). The sculptures give it a length of about 15 or 16 inches.

[43] Q. Curt. *Hist. Alex.* iii. 3. The sculptures also prove this.

[44] Herod. vii. 61.

[45] Αἰχμὴ βραχέα. Herod. v. 49. Comp. vii. 61.

[46] See Polybius, xviii. 12; Ælian. *Tact.* § 14. This length, which was that of the *Sarissa*, or Macedonian spear, was no doubt extraordinary, but a length of 10 or 12 feet would seem to have been common.

[47] Compare the representation [Pl. IV. Fig. 2].

[48] Xen. *Cyrop.* vii. 1, § 2.

[49] See the Persian sculptures, *passim*.

[50] Herod. vii. 41; Heraclid. Cum. Fr. 1.

[51] Herod. vii. 61; Xen. *Anab.* iii. 4, § 17. The latter passage is important, and shows at any rate that the bows of the Persians were larger and more powerful than those used by the Cretans.

[52] See Pl. XXX. Fig. 1; and compare Pl. V. Fig. 1.

[53] See Pl. XIX. Fig. 3.

[54] Herod. vii. 61. Οἵστοὺς εἶχον καλαμίνους.

[55] The feathering is seen very clearly in the Behistun tablet, where the notched ends of the arrows protrude from the quiver, which is borne by one of Darius's attendants. (*As. Soc. Journal*, vol. x. pl. 2; see Pl. XXXIII. Fig. 5.

[56] The representation of Persian arrow-heads [Pl. XXX. Fig. 3] is taken from Morier, who thus figures the specimens which he obtained in the neighborhood of Persepolis. (See Morier, *Second Journey*, pp. 87, 88.)

[57] Compare Pl. CV. Figs. 3, 4, and 5, Vol. I.

[58] Xen. *Cyrop.* viii. 8, § 23.

[59] Q. Curt. *Hist. Alex.* iv. 14; Strab. xv. 3, § 18.

[60] Xen. *Anab.* iii. 3, § 6; 4, § 16.

[61] Ibid. 3, § 17.

[62] Compare Xen. *Cyrop.* l. s. c.; *Anab.* i. 8, § 7; Strab. xv. 3, § 19; Arr. *Exp. Alex.* i. 15. There is some doubt, however, as to the true character of the κοπίς. Mr. Grote regards it as a "scimitar" (*Hist. of Greece*, vol. viii. p. 315, ed. of 1862). Drs. Scott and Liddell consider it to have been "a broad curved knife, similar to our *bill*." (*Lexicon*, ad voc.) This latter view seems preferable, since it agrees with the definition of Q. Curtius. ("Copidas vocant gladios leniter curvatos, *falcibus similes*." *Hist. Alex.* viii. 14.)

[63] Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 2, § 9.

[64] Γέρρον. See Herod. vii. 61; ix. 61; Xen. *Cyrop.* viii 8, § 23; *Anab.* i. 8, § 9; Strab. xv. 3, § 19, &c.

[65] Suidas defines the γέρρον as ξυλίνη καὶ ποδήρης ἀσπίς (ad voc. γερροφόροι). At Persepolis some of the Royal guards are represented with shields of this character. (See Pl. XXX. Fig. 2.)

[66] Compare Pl. CVII. Fig. 2, and Pl. CI Fig. 4, Vol. I.

[67] Herod. ix. 61. A crutch was certainly used in Egypt. (Sir G. Wilkinson, in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. iv. p. 65, note 6, 2nd edition.)

[68] Herod. vii. 61. This protection was worn sometimes inside, sometimes outside the tunic. (Compare Herod. ix. 22 with Xen. *Anab.* i. 8, § 3.) It was not universal in the Persian army even in the time of Xerxes. (Herod. viii. 113.)

[69] Ibid. vii. 61; Strab. l. s. c.

[70] Herod. i. 135. Compare ii. 182, and iii. 47.

[71] Λεπίδος ὄψιν ἰχθυοειδέος.—Herod. i. 61. The common material was iron (ibid.) or bronze (Xen. *Cyrop.* vii. 1, § 2). Gold was of rare occurrence (Herod. ix. 22).

[72] Herod. vii. 84. The only difference was that the horsemen wore sometimes bronze or iron helmets.

[73] Xen. *Anab.* i. 8, § 6.

[74] Ibid. *Cyrop.* viii. 8, § 22; *Anab.* i. 8, §§ 3, 7, 28. Compare Arrian's account of the battle of the Granicus (*Exp. Alex.* i. 15), where the javelin (παλτόν) and the knife (κοπίς) are still the main weapons.

[75] They cannot have used the γέρρον, which is the only Persian shield mentioned by ancient writers. The Parthian cavalry seem occasionally to have worn a round shield. (Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. ii. pl. 62.) It is unfortunate that no representation of a Persian cavalry soldier has come down to us.

[76] Xen. *Cyrop.* vii. i. § 2.

[77] Compare Xen. *Anab.* i. 8, § 3—Κῦρος . . . τὰ παλτὰ εἰς πᾶς χεῖρας ἔλαβε—with Xen. *Equestr.* xii. 12—τὰ κράνεια δύο παλτὰ μᾶλλον ἐπαιτούμεν. Note in both cases the use of the article as indicative of the ordinary practice.

[78] That this was the object of having two is evident from Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 2, § 9; *Equestr.* l. s. c.; Arr. *Exp. Alex.* i. 15, &c.

[79] Arrian, l. s. c. Ἐπλεονέκτουν ἤδη οἱ σὺν Ἀλεξάνδρῳ τῇ τε ἄλλῃ ῥώμῃ καὶ ἐμπειρίᾳ, καὶ ὅτι ξυστοῖς κραμείνοις πρὸς παλτὰ ἐμάχοντο.

[80] Xen. *Equestr.* l. s. c.

[81] Herod. vi. 40; Strab. xi. 13, § 7; Arr. *Exp. Alex.* vii. 13.

[82] Xen. *Cyrop.* vii. 1, § 2; viii. 8, § 22; *Anab.* i. 8, § 6; Q. Curt. iii. 11, p. 43; Heliodor. *Æthiop.* ix. pp. 431-433.

[83] See Pl. XCV. Fig. 3.

[84] Q. Curt. l. s. c. "Equi pariter equitesque Persarum *serie laminarum* graves." Compare iv. 9, p. 79.

[85] "Agmen ægre moliebantur."—Q. Curt. iii. 11.

[86] Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* ii. 11.

[87] See text, Chapter V.

[88] No chariots were brought against the Greeks, either by Darius or by Xerxes. None fought at the Granicus, none at Issus. The only occasions upon which we hear of their use by the Persians are the two great battles of Cunaxa and Arbela.

[89] Æschyl. *Pers.* 86; Herod. vii. 40, 100; Xen. *Anab.* i. 2, § 16; 8, § 3; Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* ii. 11; iii. 15; Diod. Sic. xvii. 34; Q. Curt. *Hist. Alex.* iii. 11; iv. 14 ad fin.—"*Patrio more* curru vehor."

[90] The number of chariots at Cunaxa is not stated. At Arbela they amounted to 200, according to Diodorus (xvii. 53), Q. Curtius (iv. 12), and Arrian (iii. 11).

[91] Arrian, iii. 13; Q. Curt. iv. 9 (p. 79), 14 (p. 97).

[92] Different accounts are given of the mode of arming (Xen. *Anab.* i. 8, § 10; Q. Curt. iv. 9; Diod. Sic. xvii. 53); and of course it is not unlikely that the mode varied at different periods. The scythes seem to have been attached, in the earlier times, to the axles, in the later to both the axles and the yoke. None, however, of the accounts given is quite clear.

[93] Neither at Cunaxa nor at Arbela did the chariots do any important service. (See Xen. *Anab.* i. 8, § 20, and Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* iii. 13.)

[94] That is to say, it is loftier than the early Assyrian chariot. It must have been about the same height as the chariot used by the later Assyrian kings. (See Pl. XCI. Fig. 4, Pl. XCII. Figs. 1 and 2, Vol. I.)

[95] Xen. *Cyrop.* vi. 1, § 29. Τὸν δίφρον τοῖς ἡνιόχοις ἐποίησεν, ὥσπερ πύργον, ἰσχυρῶν ξύλων· ὕψος δὲ τούτων ἐστὶ μέχρι τῶν ἀγκώνων.

[96] The back of the chariot was sometimes, it would seem, closed with doors. (Xen. *Cyrop.* vi. 4, § 10.) But it may be doubted if this was a common arrangement.

[97] Xen. *Cyrop.* vi. 1, § 29.

[98] The Persepolitan sculptures give four examples of chariots, each of which has wheels with twelve spokes, according to the representations of M. Flandin. (*Voyage en Perse*, "Planches Anciennes," tom. ii. pls. 95, 105, and 110.) Ker Porter, who is followed in Pl. XXI. Fig. 1, gives a wheel with eleven spokes only (*Travels*, vol. i. pl. 41); but it may be suspected that he has miscopied his original.

[99] Flandin, tom. ii. pl. 110.

[100] See Pl. XLV. Fig. 2, and Pl. XCII. Fig. 2, Vol. I.

[101] See Pl. XXXI. Fig. 1.

[102] Two is the number represented in each of the four examples at Persepolis. It is also the common number on coins, where, however, we see three in a few instances. (Lajard, *Culte de Mithra*, pl. lxii. figs. 11 and 12; Mionnet, *Description des Médailles*, supplément, tom. viii. p. 427; Gesenius, *Monumenta Phœniciæ*, tab. xxvi. fig. G.)

[103] Xen. *Cyrop.* vi. 1, § 28; Q. Curt. iv. 9; Diod. Sic. xv. ii. 53, § 2.

[104] Xen. *Cyrop.* vi. 4, § 10. An As-

syrian chariot very commonly contains a third person. (See Pl. XCI. Fig. 4, Vol. I.)

[105] Τοὺς ἡνιόχους ἐθωράκισε [Κῦρος] πάντα, πλὴν τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν. Xen. *Cyrop.* vi. 1. § 29.) A Parthian thus protected is represented in one of the sculptures of the Arsacidæ. (Flandin, "Planches Anciennes," tom. i. pl. 8.)

[106] Fifteen elephants are mentioned among the forces of the last Persian king at Arbela. (Arr. *Exp. Alex.* iii. 8.) Nothing, however, is heard of them in the battle.

[107] Xen. *Anab.* i. 8, § 10; Arr. *Exp. Alex.* iii. 11; Diod. Sic. xvii. 58, §12; Q. Curt. iv. 15.

[108] Xen. *Anab.* i. 8, § 9; Arr. *Exp. Alex.* i. 8, sub fin.; iii. 11.

[109] Herod. vii. 81; ix. 31; Xen. *Anab.* i. 8, § 9; Arr. *Exp. Alex.* iii. 11; Q. Curt. *Hist. Alex.* iv. 12.

[110] Ἐν παντὶ τέλει πέμπει ἀνθρώπων ἕκαστον τὸ ἔθνος ἐπορεύετο. Xen. *Anab.* I. s. c.

[111] Arr. *Exp. Alex.* ii. 9; Xen. *Cyrop.* vi. 3, § 24.

[112] Mr. Grote calculates that the depth of the Persian phalanx at Issus was from 16 to 26. (*Hist. of Greece*, vol. viii. p. 346, note 4.) The depth at Marathon must have been about 16. (See the author's *Herodotus*, vol. iii. p. 430, 2nd ed.)

[113] Xen. *Anab.* i. 8, §§ 19, 20; Q. Curt. *Hist. Alex.* iv. 15. The remarks of Mr. Grote on this point (*Hist. of Greece*, vol. viii. p. 382, note 2) are deserving of attention.

[114] Herod. ix. 61. This probably marks the usual practice, though it is not elsewhere noticed. The unwillingness of the Persians, however, to come to close quarters is very apparent in the accounts which we have of almost all their engagements. (See Xen. *Anab.* iii. 4, §§ 14, 25; *Cyrop.* viii. 8, § 22; Arr. *Exp. Alex.* ii. 10 sub. init. &c.)

[115] Grote, *Hist. of Greece*, vol. viii. pp. 348 and 384.

[116] As at Thermopylæ (Herod. vii. 210-218).

[117] As at Cunaxa (Xen. *Anab.* i. 8, § 23)

[118] Herod. vii. 84; Æsch. *Pers.* 26—τοξοδάμαντές τ' ἠδ' ἱπποβάται.

[119] See above note 74.

[120] Herod. ix. 20; Arr. *Exp. Alex.* i. 15; ii. 11; iii. 15.

[121] Xenophon regarded the javelin (παλτόν) and the bill (μάχαιρα or κοπις) as the best weapons for cavalry (*Equestr.* §§ 11, 12).

[122] Ἐξελιγμοῖς τῶν ἵππων ἐχρῶντο. Arrian. *Exp. Alex.* iii. 15. Ἱππεῖς μαλὰ ελαφροὶ καὶ εὔζωνοι. Xen. *Anab.* iii. 3, § 6. Compare Æschyl. *Pers.* 109.

[123] Xen. *Anab.* iii. 3, § 10.

[124] See Virg. *Georg.* iii. 31; Hor. *Od.* i. 19, 11; ii. 13, 16; Plut. *Vit. Crass.* c. 24; Justin. xli. 2; Tac. *Ann.* vi. 35, &c.

[125] See Q. Curt. *Hist. Alex.* iv. 13. Compare Polyæn. *Strat.* iv. 3, 17.

[126] Herod. i. 80.

[127] Compare Herod. i. 191, 211; iii. 156–158; iv. 135, &c.

[128] Xen. *Cyrop.* vi. 1, §§ 53, 54; 3, § 8; vii. 1, § 39, &c.

[129] Considering the frequent references which there are to the use of siege-towers and rams by the Assyrians and Babylonians (Is. xxix. 3; 2 K. xxv. 1; Jer. lii. 4; Ezek. iv. 2; xxi. 22; xxvi. 8, 9), it is most remarkable that we have nothing in Scripture to connect these contrivances with the Medes or Persians. Note particularly the absence of any reference to them from the long prophecies concerning the fall of Babylon in Jer. l. and li.

[130] See Vol. I. pp. 274, 275; text, p. 216.

[131] See Herod. i. 162. Αἱρεε τὰς πόλεις χώμασι.

[132] Ibid. iv. 200. Ὀρύσσοντες ὀρύγματα ὑπόγαια φέροντα ἐς τὸ τεῖχος. Compare vi. 18.

[133] Ibid. i. 191; iii. 13, 151; Xen. *Cyrop.* vii. 5.

[134] As at Athens (Herod. viii. 52).

[135] Two commanders are found (Herod. v. 123, and vi. 94).

[136] Instances of Median commanders-in-chief under the Persian rule are Mazares (Herod i. 156), Harpagus (ib. 162), Tachamaspates (*Beh. Inscr.* col. ii. par. 14), Intaphres (ib. col. iii. par. 14), and Datis (Herod. vi. 94).

[137] Herod. vii. 82, 83, 88.

[138] Compare Herod. vii. 8, § 4, and vii. 19, with Arr. *Exp. Alex.* iii. 8.

[139] Herod. vii. 81.

[140] As Hydarnes, the commander of the "Immortals" in the army of Xerxes. (Herod. vii. 83.)

[141] Xen. *Anab.* i. 8, §§ 21–23; Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* ii. 8, ad fin.; iii. 11.

[142] Xen. *Anab.* I. s. c.

[143] Plutarch, *Vit. Artax.* c. 8.

[144] The cases of Mardonius at Platæa (Herod. ix. 63), of the younger Cyrus at Cunaxa (Xen. *Anab.* i. 9, § 31), and of Darius Codomannus, first at Issus (Arr. *Exp. Alex.* ii. 11) and then at Arbela (ib. iii. 14), may be cited as instances.

[145] See Herod. vii. 186, with the author's note on the passage (*Herodotus*, vol. iv. pp. 127–129, 2nd edition), and compare Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* iii. 8.

[146] Herod. vii. 61–81; Xen. *Anab.* i. 8, § 9; Arrian *Exp. Alex.* iii. 11; Q. Curt. *Hist. Alex.* iv. 12, &c.

[147] Xen. *Cyrop.* vii. 1, § 2. Τὰ ὅπλα ἐκέχριστο τῷ χρυσοειδεῖ χρώματι.

[148] Ibid. Χιτῶσι φοινικοῖς. Compare Herod. ix. 22.

[149] Herod. vii. 69.

[150] Ibid. 71.

[151] Ibid. 65.

[152] Ibid. 79.

[153] See Pl. CXLVI. Fig. 3. Vol. I. Compare the author's *Herodotus*, vol. iii. pp. 34, 35.

154 Herod. vii. 64.
155 Ibid. ch. 63.
156 Ibid. chs. 65, 67, 71, 74, &c.
157 Ibid. ch. 76.
158 Ibid. ch. 75.
159 Ibid. chs. 72, 78, 79; Xen. *Anab.* v. 4, § 13.
160 Herod. vii. 70.
161 Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* iii. 8.
162 Herod. i. 80; vii. 83, 87; Q. Curt. iii. 3.
163 Herod. vii. 86.
164 Ibid. 85.
165 See Vol. I. p. 270.
166 Ἅμα τῷ ἔαρι. Herod. vi. 43; vii. 37. Compare Herod. i. 190.
167 Herod. vii. 40. I regard this account, which is followed through nearly all the remainder of the paragraph, as indicating the usual Persian practice. Of course there would be numerous small differences between one expedition and another.
168 See Q. Curt. *Hist. Alex.* iii. 3, pp. 26, 27.
169 Herod. vii. 40.
170 Q. Curt. l. s. c. "Dextra lævaque regem ducenti ferme nobilissimi propinquorum comitabantur."
171 Compare Herod. vii. 41 with 83.
172 Q. Curt. iii. 3, p. 28.
173 Xen. *Anab.* i. 7, § 11; Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* ii. 8.
174 Herod. vii. 121.
175 Ibid. Compare ch. 124.
176 Q. Curt. *Hist. Alex.* iii. 3. "Patrio more Persarum traditum est, orto sole demum procedere."
177 Xen. *Anab.* iii. 4, § 34.
178 The power of movement which a Persian army possessed is best seen by the account which Xenophon gives of the proceedings of the younger Cyrus, from the time that he finally threw off the mask to that when he had reason to suspect the near presence of his enemy—in other words, from Thapsacus to Pylæ. During this period, when it was his object to advance as rapidly as possible, the rate of journeying averaged six and a half parasangs (about 22½ miles) a day. (See Xen. *Anab.* i. 4, 19, 5, §§ 1 and 5.)
179 On the journey from Thapsacus to Pylæ, performed in twenty-seven marching days, Cyrus was compelled to halt his army twice—each time for three days. (*Anab.* i. 4, § 19; 5, § 4.)
180 Herod. i. 80—Σιτοφόροι τε καὶ σκευοφόροι κάμηλοι. iii. 153—σιτοφόροι ἡμίονοι. iv. 129—ὄνοι καὶ ἡμίονοι. vii. 83—σῖτα . . . κάμηλοί τε καὶ ὑποζύγια ἦγον. On the use of carts, see the passage of Xenophon quoted in note 22.
181 Herod. vii. 83; Q. Curt. iii. 3, p. 28.
182 Herod. vii. 187; Q. Curt. iii. 12, p. 45.
183 Πλῆθος πολυδαπάνου παρασκευῆς καὶ γυναικείου κόσμου. Diod. Sic. xvii. 35, § 4.
184 Xen. *Anab.* i. 2, § 5.
185 See the graphic description of Xenophon (*Anab.* i. 5, §§ 7, 8).
186 Herod. i. 190, 208.
187 Xen. *Anab.* i. 5, § 7. The vicinity of fodder for the horses was also greatly desired.
188 Xen. *Cyrop.* iii. 3, § 26. Sometimes the Persians defended their camp not only with a ditch and mound, but also with a stockade. (See Herod. ix. 15, 65.) To such a rampart they gave the further protection of towers (ib. ix. 70).
189 Vegetius, iii. 10.
190 Xen. *Cyrop.* viii. 5, § 11. This arrangement is so probable that it may be accepted on the mere authority of the *Cyropædia*.
191 Ibid. § 8.
192 Ibid. § 2.
193 Ibid. § 3.
194 Xen. *Anab.* iii. 4, § 35; *Cyrop.* iii. 3, § 27.
195 Xen. *Anab.* iii. 4, § 34.
196 Xen. *Anab.* l. s. c. Οὗ ποτε μεῖον ἀπεστρατοπεδεύοντο οἱ βάρβαροι τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ ἑξήκοντα σταδίων.
197 Herod. vii. 131.
198 Ibid. iv. 83, 85, 89; vii. 24, 36.
199 Ibid. 21, 23.
200 See above, note 180.
201 Herod. iv. 97; vi. 44; vii. 186, 191.
202 Ibid. 25.
203 Ibid. 119.
204 Ibid. chs. 118–120. The provision included, besides meats of various kinds, poultry and water-fowl, a complete service for the table, including much gold and silver plate, which was all carried away by the guests at the end of the meal.
205 The cost of a banquet is said to have been 400 silver talents, or nearly 100,000*l.*! (Herod. vii. 118.)
206 Ibid. iii. 25.
207 See the chapter on the "History" of the Persian Empire, p. 429.
208 See Herod. iii. 13. Compare Thucyd. i. 128–130.
209 Beros. ap. Euseb. *Chron. Can.* i. 11, § 5; Abyden. ap. eund. i. 10, § 3; Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 4, ad fin.
210 As Crœsus. (Herod. i. 153, 207; iii. 36.)
211 Ibid. v. 17; vi. 119; Strab. xvi. 25; Q. Curt. iv. 12, p. 89.
212 As the Thebans taken prisoners at Thermopylæ (Herod. vii. 233). The Persians would regard these persons as rebels, since Thebes had formally submitted itself to the Persian yoke by giving "earth and water." (Ibid. vii. 132.) The Greek captives who met Alexander after Arbela, some of whom had been branded and others mutilated (Diod. Sic. xvii. 69, §§ 3 and 4; Q. Curt. v. 5, p. 123), *may* have been Greeks of Asia convicted of some act of rebellion.
213 Herod. iii. 159.
214 See the *Behistun Inscription*, col. ii. par. 13, § 8; col. iii. par. 8, § 2; par. 11, § 5; par. 14, § 10. Compare Herod. iii.

15 with iii. 28, ad fin.; and see also iv. 202.

215 *Behist. Inscript.* col. ii. par. 13, § 7; par. 14, § 16; col. iii. par. 8, § 2; par. 14, § 10

216 Ibid. col. ii. par. 13, § 5; par. 14, § 14.

217 Herod. vii. 233.

218 Ibid. iv. 204; vi 20; Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 9; Arr. *Exp. Alex.* iii. 48.

219 As from B.C. 525 to B.C. 480; and again from B.C. 354 to B.C. 332.

220 From the battle of the Eurymedon (B.C. 466) to the "peace of Callias" (B.C. 449) the Levant or Eastern Mediterranean was in the power of Athens By the "peace of Callias" Persia recovered possession of it.

221 Thucyd. i. 13.

222 The Corcyræans and the Sicilian Greeks made the trireme their chief ship of war about B.C. 490. (Thucyd. i. 14.) The Egyptians had fleets of them considerably earlier. (Herod. ii. 159.) The Ionian Greeks had adopted them before B.C. 500. (Herod. vi. 8.) When Xerxes collected his naval force against Greece, the trireme was the ordinary war-ship, not only of the Egyptians and the Asiatic Greeks, but also of the Phœnicians, the Cyprians, the Cilicians, the Pamphylians, the Lycians, and the Carians. (Herod. vii. 89 93.)

223 Ibid. vi. 95; vii. 89, 97; Arr. *Exp. Alex.* ii. 2.

224 Herod. vii. 184.

225 The exact proportion of the rowers to the rest of the crew is uncertain. It seems, however, probable that both the bireme and the trireme grew out of the triaconter—the bireme being twice the triaconter's length and height, and thus employing 120 rowers, while the trireme, keeping the length of the bireme, added a tier to the height, the rowers being thus raised to 180.

226 Böckh, *Urkunden über das Seewesen des attischen Staates*, pp. 103, et seqq

227 Τροπὸς or τροπωτήρ. Thucyd. ii. 93. Compare Æschyl. *Pers.* 377: ναυβάτης τ' ἀνὴρ ἑτροποῦτο κώπην σκαλμοῖι ἀμφ' εὐήρετμον.

228 The representation of Phœnician vessels in the Assyrian sculptures agree in this respect with those of their own triremes left us by the Greeks. The sails are, however, in the Assyrian sculptures generally represented as closely reefed. (See Pl. CXXXIII. Vol. I.)

229 Schmitz, in Dr. Smith's *Dictionary of Greek and Roman Antiquities*, p. 785. 2nd edition.

230 Herod. vii. 97.

231 This appears especially from such representations as those given in Pl. XXXI.

232 Plin. *H. N.* vii. 56.

233 "Cercurus navis est *Asiana* prægrandis." (Non. Marc. p. 533.)

234 Herod. vi. 48.

235 In one place (vii. 16), Herodotus calls the corn-ships in the fleet of Xerxes σιταγωγοὶ ἄκατοι.

236 Xen. *Anab.* i. 2, § 5; 4, § 18; ii. 4, §§ 13 and 24.

237 The width of the Dardanelles is about a mile. That of the Bosphorus is less—probably under three-quarters of a mile. The width of the Euphrates is sometimes as much as 700 yards, or nearly half a mile.

238 See Herod. vii. 36. Compare iv. 87, 88; and see also Æschyl. *Pers.* 65-73.

239 Herod. vii. 36.

240 The bridge of Darius over the Bosphorus was broken up as soon as his troops had crossed it (Herod. iv. 89). That of Xerxes over the Hellespont was left standing, in order that the army might return into Asia by it (ibid. viii. 108, 117).

241 Herod. vii. 36.

242 Ibid. viii 117.

243 Ibid. vii. 89 95.

244 On this appearance, see text, pp. 328, 329.

245 Herod. vii. 184. On the quasi-identity of the Medes and Persians, see text, p. 315, and compare text, pp. 36, 37.

246 Herod. iii. 13; iv. 89; vi. 43, &c.

247 Xerxes was the real commander of the fleet which accompanied his expedition against Greece; but he gave the actual direction of it to four officers. (Herod. vii. 97.)

248 See ibid. iv. 167 and 203.

249 Ibid. viii. 16.

250 Ibid. 7; Æsch. *Pers.* 370.

251 Herod. viii. 89. Æschylus says the line was three ships deep at Salamis (*Pers.* 368).

252 See the graphic descriptions of Herodotus (viii. 15 and 84-90). Compare Æschyl. *Pers.* 410-415.

253 Herod. viii. 16, 89; Æschyl. *Pers.* 415-418.

254 Herod. vi. 44, sub fin.; viii. 89.

255 Ibid. ix. 97.

256 Ibid. vii. 89-95.

257 Ibid. loc. cit.

258 In the fleet of Xerxes the united Greek contingents made up a grand total of 307 ships. The Phœnicians, together with the Syrians of Palestine, furnished 300, the Egyptians 200, the Cypriots 150, the Cilicians 100, the Carians 70, the Lycians 50, and the Pamphylians 30. (Herod. loc. cit.)

259 Ibid. vii. 96. Compare chs. 44 and 100.

260 Phœnicians only are mentioned in Thucyd. i. 110; viii. 46, 81, 87, 109; Xen. *Hell.* iii. 4; Arrian, *Exp. Al.* ii. 2; Phœnicians and Cilicians in Thucyd. i. 112; Phœnicians, Cilicians, and Cypriots in Diod. Sic. xi. 60, § 5.

261 See Vol. I. pp. 283–340; text, pp. 40–45.

262 Compare Vol. I. p. 283.

263 The identity of the *candys* with the "Median robe" is not universally admitted (Brisson, *De Regno Persico*, i. pp. 46-50); but it seems to be almost cer-

tain. The *candys* was the usual outer garment, both in peace and war (Xen. *Anab.* i. 5, § 8; *Cyrop.* viii. 3, § 10), and is assigned by Xenophon to all the horse immediately after he has mentioned the general adoption by the Persian nobles of the στολὴ Μηδική. That it was the ordinary Median outer garment in the opinion of Xenophon appears from *Cyrop.* i. 3, § 2.

264 Procop. *De Bell. Pers.* i. 20, p 106, C. Compare notes 46 and 47, Chapter III., *Third Monarchy.*

265 Xenophon says of Cyrus: Στολὴν εἵλετο τὴν Μηδικήν . . . αἰτηγαρ αὐτῷ συγκρύπτειν ἐδόκει, εἴ τίς τι ἐν τῷ σώματι ἐνδεὲς ἔχοι, καὶ καλλίστους καὶ μεγίστους ἐπιδεικνύναι τοὺς φοροῦντας. *Cyrop.* viii. 1, § 40.

266 Ὁλοπόρφυρον. Xen. *Cyrop.* viii. 3. § 13.

267 Χλαῖναν ἀλουργῆ τε καὶ χρυσοπαστον. Themist. *Orat.* xxiv. p. 306. "Vestem auream purpureamque." Justin. xii. 3. "Pallam auro distinctam." Q Curt. iii. 3. p. 27. According to the last, the robe of Darius Codomannus had a golden embroidery representing hawks fighting one another with their bills. Philostratus (*Imag.* ii. 32) makes the embroidery consist of the forms of monsters. According to Plutarch (*Vit. Artaxerxis*, c. 24, the entire dress of a Persian king was worth 12,000 talents (2,925,000*l.*).

268 See Pl. XXXII. Fig. 1.

269 On this tunic, see Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 3, § 2; viii. 3, § 13; *Anab.* i. 5, § 8; Diod. Sic. xvii. 77, § 5; Strab. xv. 3, § 19. The passage of Diodorus is important, as clearly showing that the *candys* was not this tunic.

270 Strab. l. s. c.

271 Χιτὼν χειριδωτός. Strab. l. s. c. In one figure at Persepolis the sleeve appears below that of the *candys*, tightly fitting the wrist. (See Ker Porter, vol. i. pl. 37.)

272 Χιτῶνα πορφυροῦν μεσόλευκον. Xen. *Cyrop.* viii. 3, § 13. Χιτῶνα διάλευκον. Plutarch, *Vit. Alex.* c. 51; Diod. Sic. l.s.c. Compare Q. Curt. iii. 3: "Purpureæ tunicæ medium album intextum erat.

273 Ἀναξυρίδες ὑσγινοβαφεῖς. Xen. *Cyrop.* l. s. c.

274 See Pl XXXII Fig. 1, and compare Pl. V. Fig. 2.

275 Æsch *Pers.* 661. Κροκόβαπτος εὐμαρις.

276 Κίδαρις is the form used by Philo (*Vit. Moys.* iii. p. 155), Arrian (*Exp. Alex.* iv. 7), Curtius (*Hist. Alex.* iii. 3, p. 27), Hesychius (ad voc.), and others. Κίταρις is preferred by Plutarch (*Vit. Artax.* c. 28). Strabo (xi. 12, § 9) and Pollux (vii. § 58) give both forms. The word was probably taken by the Greeks from the Semitic form כִּידָר (used Esth. i. 11; ii. 17), which seems to have been intended to represent the Persian *khshatram*, "corona, imperium"—the common word for "crown" or "kingdom" in the Inscriptions—whence *khshatrapa*, "satrap," literally "crown-protector."

277 See Pl. XXXII. Fig. 2 which represents the head-dress always assigned to the Persian kings at Persepolis. The same type may be traced on some of the Darics, where the fillet, or "diadem" proper, is occasionally very conspicuous. (See Pl. XXXI. Fig. 5.)

278 Q. Curt. *Hist. Alex.* iii. 3. "Cærulea fascia albo distincta." On the relation of the "diadem" to the *kidaris*, or royal tiara, see Xen. *Cyrop.* viii. 3, § 13, and Dion Cass. xxxvi. 35.

279 See the representations, Pl. XXVIII. Fig. 4. Pl. XXIX. Fig. 2. Pl. XXXVI. Fig. 1. Pl. XXXVIII. Fig. 2. On the marked difference between the *kidaris* and the ordinary *tiara* of the Persians, see Xen. *Cyrop.* viii. 3, § 13; *Anab* ii. 5, § 23; Aristoph. *Av.* 461, 462, &c.

280 Yates, in Dr Smith's *Dict of Gk. and Rom. Antiquities*, p. 1136 (2nd edit.), ad voc. TIARA.

281 The only authority quoted by Mr. Yates is Æsch. *Pers.* 668, where the Persian *kidaris* is termed βασιλείου τιάρας φάλαρον. But, whatever may be here the exact meaning of φάλαρον, I am at a loss to see how either gold or jewels can be implied in it.

282 The *kidaris* is called a πῖλος by Pollux (vii. 13), Hesychius (ad voc.), and Suidas (ad voc.) and a πῖλος was properly of felt. Some writers of low authority speak of a linen *kidaris*. (Apoc. Esdras, book i. ch. iii.; Joseph. *Ant. Jud.* xi. 4.)

283 Themist. *Orat.* xxiv. p. 306.

284 On the Persian cylinders the monarch is frequently represented as wearing a head-dress like that of the Medes (Pl. VI. Fig. 1). There is also sometimes assigned him a crown, not very unlike a modern one. (See Pl. XXXII. Fig. 4.)

285 The curious custom connected with the golden sceptre, which is mentioned in Esth. iv. 11, v. 2, and viii. 4, will be referred to later in the text of this chapter.

286 See Pl. XXXII Fig. 1, and compare Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. pls. 48, 49, 50; and Flandin, *Voyage en Perse*, "Planches Anciennes," tom. iii. pls. 146, 151, 155 and 156. Xenophon mentions the golden sceptre (*Cyrop.* viii. 7, § 13), but gives no description of it.

287 See Pl. CXVI. Fig. 1. Vol. I.

288 Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. pl. 48. Compare Plutarch, *Vit. Them.* c. 16.

289 See Pl. LXXXIV. Fig. 3, Pl. LXXXV. Fig. 1.

290 This feature, which was inherited from Assyria (Vol. I. p. 236), is noticed by some of the ancient writers. (Diod. Sic. xvii. 66, § 3; Q. Curt. v. 2, p. 115.)

291 See Vol. I. pp. 185, 254–256. Compare 1 Kings, vii. 29, for the Hebrew,

and the author's *Herodotus* (vol. i. pp. 566, 567, 2nd edit.) for the Lydian use of the same imagery.

[292] Solomon's throne was supported on either side by the complete figure of a lion. (1 K. x. 19.)

[293] Athen. *Deipn.* p. 514. C.; Philostrat. *Imag.* ii. 32; Tzetz. *Chiliad.* i. 32.

[294] Demosth. *Adv. Timocr.* 741, 7; Suidas ad voc. ἀργυρόπους.

[295] The throne of Cyrus the younger, which was probably an imitation of the royal throne, is expressly said to have been in part gold, and in part silver. (ἀργυροῦν καὶ χρυσοῦν. Xen. Hell. i. 5, § 3.)

[296] Golden earrings, with precious stones set in them (ἐνώτια χρυσοῦ τε καὶ λιθων κολλητά), were found in the tomb of Cyrus at Pasargadæ (Arr. *Exp. Alex.* vi. 29), where they no doubt represented a part of the royal costume. The sculptured representations of the Persian kings have seldom any earrings visible. Where they have, the ornament is of the simplest character. (See Pl. XXXIII. Fig. 1.)

[297] Ψέλια (Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 3, § 2; Herod. iii. 20). These are frequently to be seen in the sculptures. (Ker Porter, vol. i. pl. 17; vol. ii. pl. 60; Flandin, *Voyage en Perse*, "Planches Anciennes," pls. 164, 167, 178.)

[298] Στρεπτοί (Xen *Cyrop.* l. s. c.; Herod. l. s. c.; Arr. *Exp. Alex.* l. s. c.).

[299] Q. Curt. *Hist. Alex.* iii. 3, p. 27.

[300] This appears by the Behistun sculpture. (Ker Porter, vol. ii. pl. 60; *Journal of the Asiatic Society*, vol. x. pl. 2.)

[301] In the sculptures the king wears no collar. Collars, however, of the sort above described, are common on the necks, of the courtiers. (Ker Porter, vol. i. pls. 37 to 43.) An example has been given in a former volume. (See Pl. VI. Fig. 2.)

[302] On the large size of these stones in ancient Persia, see text, p. 314.

[303] Ker Porter, vol. i. p. 656. The cloth, however, which this attendant carried, was probably rather a napkin or a towel than a handkerchief.

[304] Our representations of the royal charioteer are unsatisfactory on account of their minuteness, which may have caused the artist to omit details for want of room. They occur only on cylinders and coins.

[305] The charioteer of Xerxes was "Patiramphes, the son of Otanes" (Herod. vii. 40)—perhaps the son of that Otanes who was one of the chief conspirators against the Pseudo-Smerdis.

[306] Διφροφόρος. Athen. *Deipn.* xii. p. 511. A.

[307] Herod. vii. 41.

[308] The bow-bearer of Darius was "Godbryas the Patischorian," as we learn from an inscription in his honor on that monarch's tomb (*Journal of the Asiatic Society*, vol. xii., Appendix, p. xix.). There is no reason to doubt his identity with the conspirator, the father of the famous Mardonius.

[309] This is the position both at Nakhsh-i-Rustam and at Behistun. (See Ker Porter, vol. ii. pl 60.)

[310] The quiver-bearer of Darius, Aspachana by name, has a special inscription in his honor at Nakhsh-i-Rustam. He is represented by Herodotus as likewise one of the conspirators (Herod. iii. 70); but this seems to have been a mistake.

[311] *I.e.*, at Behistun. (See Pl. XXXIII. Fig. 5.)

[312] The parasol-bearer is represented frequently at Persepolis, and uniformly in the same costume.

[313] Plutarch. *Vit. Themistocl.* c. 16.

[314] See Pl. XXXII. Fig. 1.

[315] *Travels*, vol. i. pl. 47.

[316] Athenæus, *Deipn.* xii. p. 514, A.

[317] Plin. *H. N.* xiii. 1 (§ 2). "Unguentum Persarum gentis esse debet."

[318] Plin. l. s. c.; Plut. *Vit. Alex.* c. 20; Plat. *Alcix.* i. p. 122 Compare Esther, ii. 12; Herod. iii. 20, 22; and Parmen. ap. Athen. *Deipn.* xiii. p. 608, A.

[319] Plin. *H. N.* xxiv. 17 (§ 165).

[320] Ibid. xiii. 1, § 2.

[321] Ibid. 2, § 18. "Constat myrobalano, costo, amomo, cinnamo, comaco, cardamomo, nardi spica, maro, murra, casia, styrace, ladano, opobalsamo, calamo juncoque Syriis, œnanthe, malobathro, serichato, cypro, aspalatho, panace, croco, cypiro, amaraco, loto, melle, vino."

[322] Herod. iii. 97. ad fin.

[323] See Pl. V. Fig. 2.

[324] Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. pl. 49; Flandin, *Voyage en Perse*, "Planches Anciennes," tom. iii. pl. 154. On the actual use of frankincense at the Court, see Philostr. *Imag.* ii. 20.

[325] This may be concluded from Herod. iii. 20.

[326] See text, p. 313.

[327] Sir G. Wilkinson, in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii. p. 348, note 3, 2nd edition.

[328] Athen. *Deipn.* xv. p. 686, C; Alexis ap. eund. v. p. 691, E; Aristoph. *Lysistr.* 882; Schol. ad Aristoph. *Acharn.* 986, &c.

[329] It is a reasonable conjecture that the alabaster vases found at Nimrud, inscribed with the name of Sargon, were "used for holding some ointment or cosmetic" (Layard, *Nineveh and Babylon*, p. 197).

[330] See Mr. Birch's paper in Mr. Newton's *Halicarnassus*, pp. 667-670; and compare Pl. XXXIV. Fig. 3.

[331] Μελεδωνὸς τῶν οἰκίων. Herod. iii. 61.

[332] Ἱπποκόμος. Ib. iii. 85, 88.

[333] Esther. ii. 3.

[334] These quaint titles are frequently mentioned by the Greeks, whose sense of the ridiculous was provoked by them.

See Aristoph. *Acharn.* 92; Herod. i. 114; Xen. *Cyrop.* viii. 2, § 10; Æschyl. Pers. 960; Anon. *De Mundo*, c. 6; &c.

335 Γραμματεῖς or γραμματισταί. Herod. vii. 100; viii. 90.

336 Esther, iii. 12; viii. 9. The "Royal Scribes" were also, it is probable, the writers of the "book of records." (Ib. vi. 1.)

337 Ἀγγελιαφόρος. (Anon. *De Mundo*, c. 6; Zon. iv. 2, p. 172, A.) Compare Herod. iii. 34, 77.

338 Ἐσαγγελεῖς. Herod. iii. 84. The chief of these officers seems to have borne a title which the Greeks rendered by Chiliarch. (Ælian, *Hist. Var.* i. 21.)

339 Ἐδέατροι. Phylarch. Fr. 43; Suidas ad voc.

340 Οἰνοχόοι. Herod. iii. 34; Xen. *Hell* vii. 1, § 38; Nehem. i. 11.

341 Κατακοιμισταί or κατευνασταί. Diod. Sic. xi. 69, § 1; Plut. *Apophthegm.* p. 173, D; *De Luc. Ignorant.* p. 780, C.

342 Μούσουργοι. Parmen. ap. Athen. *Deipn.* xiii. p. 608, A; Suidas ad voc.

343 Xen. *Hell.* i. s. c. Ἀπηγγειλε ὅτι βασιλευς ἀρτοκόπους μὲν καὶ ὀψοποιοὺς καὶ οἰνοχόους καὶ θυρωρους παμπληθεῖς ἔχοι. Compare the picture drawn in the eighth book of the *Cyropædia*, which, though we can place small dependence on its details, is probably correct enough in its general features. See also Parmen. ap. Athen. *Deipn.* l. s. c.

344 Ctesias ap. Athen. *Deipn.* iv. p. 146, C; Dino ap. eund.

345 This is probably a mere reproduction of the statement of Herodotus, that 400 talents was the estimated value of the banquet given to Xerxes by the Thasians (vii. 118). It must be an enormous over-estimate of the cost, or even of the value, of a day's consumption of food at the Persian court, since it would make that item of expense alone exceed thirty-five millions of our money annually.

346 Heraclid. Cum. ap. Athen. *Deipn.* iv. p. 145, F.

347 Ibid. With this list of animals eaten by the Persians, compare Herod. i. 133.

348 Athen. *Deipn.* iv. p. 145, A.

349 Ibid. The Queen-mother also shared these private repasts (Plut. *Vit. Artaxerxis*, c. 5); and some monarchs admitted to them their brothers (ibid.).

350 Esther, v. 6.

351 Athenæus, l. s. c.

352 Ibid. l. s. c.

353 On this festival, see Herod. ix. 110, and compare i. 133.

354 Athenæus, l. s. c.; Esther, i. 5-21.

355 Esther, i. 6.

356 Ibid. ver. 7.

357 Athenæus, l. s. c.

358 Esther, i. 6.

359 Athenæus tells us that carpets from the looms of Sardis (ψιλοταπίδες Σαρδιανοι) were spread in some of the courts for the king to walk on: (*Deipn.* xii. p. 514, C.)

360 Esther, i. 7.

361 Æschyl. *Pers.* 161; Philostrat. *Imag.* ii. 32.

362 Chares Mytilen. ap. Athen. *Deipn.* l. s. c.; Plut. *Vit. Alex.* c. 37.

363 Esther, i. 6.

364 A description of the golden vine was given by Amyntas (Athen. *Deipn.* xii. p. 514, F), and another, still more minute, by Phylarchus (ibid. p. 539, D). The vine itself is mentioned by Herodotus (vii. 27) as a present from Pythius the Lydian to Darius Hystaspis. It is said to have been the work of Theodore by Himerius (*Eccl.* xxxi. 8).

365 They are generally mentioned together (Herod. l. s. c.; Phylarch. ap. Athen. l. s. c.; Plin. *H. N.* xxxiii. 10; Tzetz. *Chiliad.* i. 22; &c.)

366 Antioch. ap. Xen. *Hell.* vii. 1, § 38.

367 Amyntas ap. Athen. *Deipn.* xii. p. 515, A.

368 Four is the number of wives assigned to Darius Hystaspis by Herodotus (iii. 88). Three wives only of Cambyses are mentioned (ib. 31, ad fin., and 68). He may, however, have had more.

369 Esther, i. 11; ii. 17.

370 Ibid. Compare Plut. *Vit. Lucull.* c. 18.

371 Dino ap. Athen. *Deipn.* xiii. p. 556, B.

372 Esther, i. 9.

373 Herod. ii. 98; Plat. *Alcib.* i. 123, B; Athen. *Deipn.* i. p. 33, F.

374 Ælian. *Hist. Var.* xii. 1; Arr. *Exp. Alex.* ii. 12.

375 Athen. xiii. p. 556, B; Esther, iv. 16.

376 As intruding on him when not summoned (Esther, v. 1), inviting him to a banquet (ib. v. 4), using his guards to inflict punishments (Herod. ix. 112), &c.

377 Herodotus says of one Queen-Consort: ἡ γὰρ Ἄτοσσα εἶχε τὸ πᾶν κράτος (vii. 3, ad fin.). On the actual influence of such persons, see Herod. ix. 111; Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* §§ 5, 49, 50, 53.

378 Herod. iii. 84. *By law* the king could only marry into six families besides his own. He could of course break through this law if he pleased. But generally the kings seem to have observed it.

379 Herod. iii. 69.

380 Esther, ii. 14. The "first house" must have been that where the virgins were kept before admission to the king's presence. (See Esther, ii. 9.)

381 Ibid. ii. 8.

382 Ibid. ii. 2-4; Herod. vi. 32; Max. Tyr. *Serm.* xxxiv. 4; Ælian. *Var. Hist.* xii. 1, p. 148.

383 Esther, ii. 14.

384 Parmen. ap. Ath. *Deipn.* xiii. p. 608, A.

385 Q. Curt. *Hist. Alex.* iii. 3, p. 28.

386 See the passages above quoted from Q. Curtius and Athenæus. The statement of Curtius might be thought a mere rhetorical flourish; but the letter of Parmenio has the air of a dry statistical document.

387 Athen. *Deipn.* xii. p. 514, C.

388 Ibid.

389 Heraclid. Cum. ap. eund. iv. p. 145, E.

390 Esther, v. 1. Compare the position of the harem at Khorsabad. (See Vol. I. p. 190.)

391 See Esther, ch. ii. Compare verses 8 and 14.

392 This seems to be the meaning of Plato's statement (*Alcib.* i. p. 121, C), that the Queen of the Persians was "unwatched." The eunuchs were under, not over, her. (Compare Esther. iv. 5.)

393 This seems distinctly implied in Alexander's message to Statira and Sysigambis (Arr. *Exp. Alex.* ii. 12): τὴν θεράπειαν αὐταῖς ξυγχωρεῖ τὴν βασιλικὴν, καὶ τὸν ἄλλον κόσμον, καὶ καλεῖσθαι βασιλίσσας.

394 On the power of the Queen-Mother see Herod. vii. 114; Ctes *Exc. Pers.* §§ 8, 42, 43, &c.; Plut. *Vit. Artax.* c. 14, 17, 19, &c.

395 Plut. *Vit. Artax.* c. 5.

396 Ibid. c. 17.

397 Plutarch argues that Cyrus the younger could not have wanted for money when he commenced his rebellion, since Parysatis would have supplied him amply from her own resources. (Ibid. c. 4.)

398 Herod. l. s. c.; Plut. *Artax.* c. 14.

399 Xen. *Anab.* i. 1, § 3; Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 40.

400 Plut. *Artax.* c. 19.

401 Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* §§ 42, 43, 59, 61; Plut. *Artax.* c. 14, 17, 19, &c.

402 The word translated "chamberlain" in our version of Esther (i. 10, 12; ii. 3, 14, &c.) is סָרִיס, which properly means "a eunuch."

403 Esther, i. 10; ii. 21; vi. 14; vii. 9; Ctes. *Pers.* § 14; &c.

404 Ibid. §§ 20, 29, 39, 45, 49, &c.

405 Ibid §§ 27, 50.

406 Plat. *Alcib.* i. p. 121, D.

407 I cannot accept as authentic the accounts of Ctesias (*Exc. Pers.* §§ 5–13), which place all the Persian kings upon a par, and extend to the times of Cyrus and Cambyses the disorders prevalent in the reign of Artaxerxes Mnemon. The silence of Herodotus outweighs with me the assertion of the later writer.

408 The Assyrian sculptures, it will be remembered, abound with representations of eunuchs, who evidently fill many of the highest positions about the Court. (See Vol. I. pp. 288, 289, 291, &c.)

408 Esther, i. 12.

410 Plutarch, *Vit. Artax.* c. 27. Compare Diod. Sic. xi. 56, § 7.

411 Plut. *Artax.* c. 5.

412 This is evident from the story of Phædima's communications with her father Oatanes (Herod. iii. 68, 69), which had to be transacted by messengers. Mordecai's personal communication with Esther (Esther, ii. 11, 32; viii. 7) is to be accounted for by the fact of his being a eunuch. (See Dr. Smith's *Biblical Dictionary*, ii. p. 420.)

413 Herod. iii. 84.

414 Esther, i. 14: "The seven princes of Persia and Media, which saw the king's face." Ezra, vii. 14: "The king, and his seven counsellors."

415 Esther, l. s. c.

416 Herod. iii. 84, 118.

417 Ezra, l. s. c.; Esther, i. 16–21.

418 See the representations of Ker Porter. (*Travels*, vol. i. pls. 38–43.)

419 Ibid. pls. 48–50. Compare Pl. XXXII. Fig. 1.

420 These particulars are gathered mainly from the sculptures. The material of the earrings and collars is derived from the accounts given by the Greeks of the ordinary Persian ornaments. (Herod. ix. 80; Xen. *Anab.* i. 2, § 27; Amm. Marc. xxxiii. 6; &c.)

421 Xen. *Cyrop.* viii. 3, § 3.

422 See Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. pl. 37.

423 Herod. iii. 77, 84, 118.

424 Herod. vii. 136; Justin, vi. 2; Plut. *Vit. Artax.* c. 22; Ælian, *Var. Hist.* i. 21.

425 This was probably the real custom which Xenophon represents as a law requiring *all* persons to keep their hands covered by their sleeves in the king's presence (*Cyrop.* viii. 3, § 10). It is certain from the sculptures that the king's ordinary attendants were not required to keep their hands covered.

426 Athen. *Deipn.* xii. p. 514, C.

427 Esther, iv. 11; Joseph. *Ant. Jud.* xi. 6.

428 Q. Curt. *Hist. Alex.* viii. 4, § 17; Val. Max. v. 1; Frontin. *Strateg.* iv. 6, § 3. Compare Herod. vii. 16, § 1

429 This is implied in the story of Tiribazus, as told by Plutarch. (*Vit. Artax.* c. 5.)

430 Justin. i. 9; Anon. *De Mundo*, c. 6 (p. 637).

431 Heraclid. Cum. ap. Ath. *Deipn.* iv. p. 145.

432 Athen. *Deipn.* xii. p. 514, C.

433 Dan. vi. 15; Esther, viii. 11.

434 Herod. ix. 109.

435 Strab. xv. 3, § 22.

436 As from the Nile (Plut. *Vit. Alex.* c. 37; Athen. *Deipn.* ii. p. 67, B) and the Danube (Plut. l. s. c.)

437 Herod. i. 188; Ctes. *Pers.* Fr. 49.

438 Dino ap. Athen. *Deipn.* ii. p. 67, B.

439 Herod. iii. 129. According to Strabo, Darius claimed the merit of being a first-rate hunter in the epitaph which he had inscribed upon his tomb (xv. 3, § 8): but the epitaph itself does not bear out the statement.

440 This signet cylinder, the chief part of which is represented on Pl. XXXVI. Fig. 2, has a trilingual inscription upon it, which reads—"Darius, the Great King."

441 See Herod. i. 192; Ctes. *Ind.* § 5.

442 Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 40; Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 2. § 9.

443 Ctes. l. s. c. Artaxerxes Longimanus is said to have allowed his companions in the chase to neglect the observance of this law. (Plut. *Apophth.* p. 173, D.)

444 As Megabyzus did. (Ctes. l. s. c.)

445 Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 4, § 7.

446 Xen. *Anab.* i. 5. § 2.

447 On these "paradises" see Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 3, § 14; 4, §§ 5, 11; *Anab.* i. 2, § 7; *Hellen.* i. 4, § 15; *Œconom.* iv. 13, 21.

448 The javelin seems to have been the favorite weapon (Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 4, §§ 8–10, 15).

449 Plutarch, *Vit. Artax.* c. 17.

450 Ælian, *Var. Hist.* xiv. 12.

451 Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 12, ad fin.

452 Seneca calls the Persian kings "barbaros, quos nulla eruditio, nullus literarum cultus, instruxerat." (*De Ira*, iii. 7.)

453 Esther, vi. 1.

454 It is open to doubt whether a Persian monarch could ordinarily either read or write. Neither Plato (*Alcib.* i. pp. 121, 122) nor Xenophon (*Cyrop.* i. 3, 4) mention letters in the accounts which they give of the education of a Persian prince.

455 Esther, iii. 12; viii. 9.

456 This appears from the signet-cylinder of Darius, of which mention has been already made. (See text, pp. 351, 352.)

457 See Esther, viii. 8; Herod. iii. 128.

458 Herod. vii. 8–11, 13.

459 Xen. *Œconom.* iv. 6.

460 Herod. v. 25; vii. 194.

461 Ibid. iii. 140; Xen. *Œcon.* iv. 15; Esther, vi. 3–11.

462 Joseph. *Ant. Jud.* xi. 3. Usually, no doubt, the hearing of causes was delegated to the "Royal Judges" (*βασιλεῖοι δικασταί*). See the passages quoted in note 460.

463 Xen. *Œconom.* iv. 4-12.

464 Herodotus denies that the Persians had any temples at all (Herod. i. 131); but reasons will hereafter be shown for rejecting this statement. (See text, Chapter VI.)

465 Text, Chapter V.

466 Nehem. ii. 3; Ælian, *Var. Hist.* i. 32.

467 We are expressly told that Darius Hystaspis constructed his own sepulchre while his father and mother were still living (Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 15).

468 See text, p. 63.

469 Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* vi. 29; Strab. xv. 3, § 7. We only *know* that this was the mode of entombment practised in the case of Cyrus. But it seems probable that the later kings would be entombed with at least equal magnificence. And coffins of the kind described might easily have rested in the stone niches, or cells, which are found in the rock-tombs. (See Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. p. 523.)

470 See the description of the tomb of Cyrus, text, pp. 404, 405.

471 This fashion seems to have been observed by all the kings later than Cyrus.

472 This was evidently the case with the rock-tombs, where the holes which received the fastenings of the blocks are still visible (Ker Porter, l. s. c.) It may be suspected that it was also the case with the tomb of Cyrus, and that when Aristobulus blocked up the doorway of that tomb with stone and plaster (Arrian, l. s. c.), he was but restoring it to its primitive condition.

473 Aristobul. ap. Arrian, l. s. c.; Strab. xv. 3, § 7.

474 Out of eight royal tombs which have been discovered, only one has at present any inscription. This is the tomb of Darius Hystaspis, which has a long inscription, and two shorter ones, engraved on the external face of the rock. According to the historians of Alexander, the tomb of Cyrus at Pasargadæ had an inscription, when first seen by the Greeks (Plut. *Vit. Alex.* c. 69; Arr. *Exp. Alex.* vi. 29; Strab. l. s. c.); but of this no traces exist at present. No inscriptions have as yet been found inside a tomb.

475 Aristobul. ap. Arrian, l. s. c.

476 Ibid. Even the rock-tombs, though so difficult of access, were guarded, as appears from Ctesias. (*Exc. Pers.* § 19.)

477 Aristobulus stated that the Magi at Pasargadæ sacrificed a horse once a month to Cyrus. (Arrian, l. s. c.) Strabo, better acquainted with Magian customs, avoids a repetition of the statement.

478 Herod. i. 125.

479 Great part of Persia is only suited for nomades; and the Ilyat population of the present day holds the same position in the country which belonged in ancient times to the Mardi, Dropici, &c.

480 See Pl. XXVIII. Fig. 2, and compare Herod. i. 71.

481 Strab. xv. 3, § 19. *Ῥάκος σινδόνιόν τι.*

482 Ibid. *Χιτὼν ἑως μεσοκνημίου.*

483 Strab. l. s. c. *Ἱμάτιον πορφυροῦν ἢ ἀνθινόν.* Compare the *πορφυροῦς κάνδυς* of Xenophon (*Anab.* i. 5, § 8).

484 Strab. l. s. c.

485 Xen. l. s. c. *Ποικίλας ἀναξυρίδας.*

486 *Τιάραι παραπλήσιαι ταῖς των Μάγων.* The tiara intended is probably the high fluted cap which accompanies the Median robe at Persepolis. (See Pl. XXIX. Fig. 3, and Pl. XXX. Fig. 1.)

487 See Pl. IV. Fig. 4.

488 Xen. *Cyrop.* viii. 8, § 18. *Χειρίδας δασείας και δακτυλήθρας*—"thick gloves and finger-sheaths." To the Greeks this seemed the extreme of effeminacy; but we can well imagine that such protection was necessary in the intensely cold winters of the high plains and mountains. (See text, p. 299.)

[489] Drawers (two pairs), shirts, and socks are probably intended by Strabo where he speaks of ἀναξυρὶς τριπλῆ . . . χιτῶν διπλοῦς, ὁ ὑπενδύτης λευκός . . . and ὑπόδημα κοίλον διπλοῦν (xv. 3, § 19).

[490] Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 3, § 2; *Anab.* i. 5, § 8; 8, § 29.

[491] Herod. ix. 80; Xen. *Anab.* i. 8, § 29.

[492] The common use of earrings among the officers of the Persian Court is proved by the Persepolitan sculptures.

[493] Herod. ix. 80; Dionys. *Perieg.* 1, 1060; Q. Curt. iii. 13. From Pl. XXXVIII. Fig. 1. we may see how other parts of the bridle might have been of gold. The twisted portions have all the appearance of metal.

[494] Chares Mytil. ap. Athen. *Deipn.* iii. p. 93, D.

[495] Strab. xv 3, § 18.

[496] Herodotus (ix. 80, 81) speaks of κλίνας ἐπιχρύσους καὶ ἐπαργύρους, and again of κλ. χρυσέας καὶ ἀργυρέας εὖ ἐστρωμένας, and τραπέζας χρυσέας καὶ ἀργυρέας, as found among the plunder of the Persian camp at Platea. These, as being the mere camp equipage, would certainly not be more splendid than the furniture left at home.

[497] Xen. *Cyrop.* viii. 8, § 16.

[498] Ἐκπώματα. See Xen. *Cyrop.* viii. 8, § 18; Herod. ix. 80; Strab. xv. 3, § 19.

[499] Compare Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 2, §§ 8, 11, with Strab. xv. 3, § 18. The romance-writer has omitted the meat and the salt.

[500] Herod. i. 80; Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 2, § 8; Strab. l. s. c.

[501] Xen. *Cyrop.* viii. 8, § 9.

[502] Nicolas of Damascus makes the Medes call the Persians in contempt τερμινθοφάγους (Fr. 66; p. 404). Strabo (l. s. c.) mentions acorns and wild pears among the articles of food on which boys were brought up. Ælian (*Var. Hist.* i. 31) says the poorer class lived on milk, dates, cheese, and wild fruits. The custom of a king's partaking at his coronation of a cake of figs, some of the fruit of the terebinth-tree, and a cup of acidulated milk (Plut. *Vit. Artax.* c. 3), was probably a memorial of the time when these things formed the food of the nation.

[503] Xen. *Cyrop.* l. s. c.

[504] Herod. i. 133.

[505] Ibid.; Xen. *Cyrop.* viii. 8, § 10.

[506] Fr. 13.

[507] Herod. i. 133, ad fin.; Strab. xv. 3, § 20.

[508] Herod. l. s. c.; Heraclid. Cum. ap. Athen. *Deipn.* iv. p. 145, F.

[509] Strab. xv. 3, § 18.

[510] Heraclid. Cum. ap. Ath. *Deipn.* l. s. c.

[511] Xen. *Anab.* i. 5, § 3.

[512] Heraclid. Cum. l. s. c.

[513] Arrian, *Hist. Ind.* xxix. 14; xxxviii. 3; xxxix. 5.

[514] Herod. i. 134. Strabo's account (xv. 3, § 20) is slightly different. According to him, when the two who met were nearly but not quite equal, the inferior offered his cheek and the superior kissed it.

[515] The passage in Herodotus which seems to contradict this (v. 18) is not his own statement, but one which he puts into the mouths of certain Persians, who had a motive for wishing it to be believed that Persian wives had greater liberty. On the real seclusion in which such persons lived, see Brisson, *De Regno Pers.* ii. pp. 273-276.

[516] Heracl. Cum. ap. Athen. *Deipn.* iv. p. 145; Plut. *Sympos.* i. 1; Joseph. *Ant. Jud.* xi. 6.

[517] Herod. i. 135; Strab. xv. 3, § 17.

[518] Herod. i. 136. On the continuance of this feeling in modern times, see the author's *Herodotus*, vol. i. note ad loc.

[519] Herod. l. s. c.; Strab. l. s. c.

[520] Xen. *Anab.* i. 10, §§ 2, 3; Ath. *Deipn.* xiii. p. 576. D. Compare Herod. ix. 76, where another Persian has a Greek concubine; and see also Ælian (*Var. Hist.* xii. 1), where *four* Greek concubines of the younger Cyrus are mentioned.

[521] That wives were left at home—at any rate in the earlier times—appears from the *Persæ* of Æschylus (ll. 63, 125, 135-141, &c.). That concubines were taken to the wars is certain from Herod. vii. 83; ix. 76; Xen. *Anab.* l. s. c.; Max. Tyr. *Serm.* xiv. sub fin.; Athen. *Deipn.* xiii. p. 608, A.; &c. Wives accompanied the army in the later period of the monarchy. (See Q. Curt. iii. 3 and 13.)

[522] Herod. vii. 86; Diod. Sic. xvii. 35, § 5.

[523] Herod. ix. 76.

[524] Herodotus, Plato, and Strabo agree, as to the main facts, with Xenophon. In the account of the education given in the text, a small part only rests upon the unsupported authority of the Athenian romancer.

[525] Herod. i. 136. Strabo fixes the limit at four years instead of five (xv. 3, § 17).

[526] Herod. l. s. c.; Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 2, § 8; Strab. xv. 3, § 18.

[527] Plat. *Alcib.* i. p. 121, E.

[528] Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 2, § 10; viii. 8, § 12.

[529] Strab. l. s. c.; Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 2, § 11.

[530] Strab. l. s. c. Compare Xen. *Cyrop.* viii. 8, § 14.

[531] Herod. l. s. c. and i. 138; Plat. *Alcib.* i. p. 122, A.; Strab. l. s. c. Compare Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 6, § 33.

[532] Strab. l. s. c. Compare Dino ap. Ath. *Deipn.* xiv. p. 633. D.

[533] Herod. i. 136. Strabo prolongs the period of education to the 24th, and Xenophon to the 26th year.

[534] The chase of the stag, wild-boar, and antelope are represented on cylinders (Lajard, *Culte de Mithra*, pl. xlii. fig. 1, and pl. liii. fig. 8); that of the boar is also mentioned by Strabo. For the chase of the bear and the lion, see Xen. *Anab.* i. 9, § 6, and Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 40.

535 Xen. *Cyrop.* viii. 8, § 12; *Anab.* i. s. c.; Plut. *Vit. Artax.* c. 5.
536 Strab. xv. 3, § 19.
537 Herod. vii. 40, 41, 83.
538 See text, pp. 48, 49, 55, 56. Compare Ælian, *Var. Hist.* i. 31.
539 This is allowing a population of 20 to the square mile, which, considering the large amount of desert in the region, is as much as is at all probable. The population of modern Persia is said to be 18 to the square mile.
540 Herod. iii. 91.
541 Ibid. vii. 1, 7; Thucyd i. 104, 109, 110; Diod. Sic. xv. 9, § 3; 42–44; 90–93; xvi. 40; &c.
542 See particularly Herod. v. 101, 102, 108, 116–123; ix. 96; Diod. Sic. xi. 61, § 1; and Xen. *Hell.* i. 2, § 6.
543 The close connection of the Hyrcanians with the Medes and Persians is apparent from Xen. *Cyrop.* iv. 2, § 8:—Καὶ νῦν ἔτι ἰδεῖν ἔστιν Ὑρκανίους καὶ πιστευομένους καὶ ἀρχὰς ἔχοντας, ὥσπερ καὶ Περσῶν καὶ Μήδων οἳ ἂν δοκῶσιν ἄξιοι εἶναι.
544 Herod. i. 153; ii. 167.
545 Strab. xv. 3, § 19. Οὔτε πωλοῦσιν οὔτ' ὠνοῦνται.
546 Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 2, § 3.
547 Herod. i. 153.
548 Q. Curt. *Vit. Alex.* iii.
549 On the other hand, the Persian women sometimes affected manly amusements. Roxane, the daughter of Idernes, and half-sister of Terituchmes, is noted as thoroughly well skilled in the use of the bow and the javelin. (Τοξεύειν καὶ ἀκοντίζειν ἐμπειροτάτη. Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 54.)
550 See text, pp. 357, 358.
551 Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 3, § 2. False beards and mustachios were also known to the Persians, and were assumed by eunuchs who wished to conceal their condition. (Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 53.)
552 Xen. l. s. c. and viii. 8, § 20. Compare also Plin. *H. N.* xxiv. 17 (§ 165).
553 Xen. i. 3, § 2.
554 Ibid. viii. 8, § 20.
555 Ibid. § 16; Æsch. *Pers.* 545. Εὐνὰς ἁβροχίτωνας.
556 Xen. *Hellen.* iv. 1, § 30.
557 Xen. *Cyrop.* viii. 8, § 19.
558 Ibid. § 16.
559 Athen. *Deipn.* iv. p 144, F.
560 Xen. *Cyrop.* viii. 1, § 20. Xenophon enumerates θυρωροὺς, σιτοποιοὺς, ὀψοποιοὺς, οἰνοχοούς, λουτροχόους, παρατιθέντας, ἀναιρουύντας, κατακοιμιζοντας, ἀνιστάντας, and κοσμητάς.
561 Herod. i. 136.
562 Ibid. 131. Compare 199.
563 See Herod. vii. 35.
564 Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 59; Plut. *Vit. Artax.* c. 14, 15.
565 Herod. ix. 108–112.
566 Ib. i. 137.
567 Ib. loc. cit. and vii. 194.
568 Ib. iii. 35.
569 Ib. iv. 84; vii. 90; ix. 113; Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* §§ 46, 51, 52, &c.
570 Herod. ix. 111, 112; Ctes. §§ 51, 59, &c.
571 Plut. *Vit. Artaxerxis*, c. 14 and c. 16.
572 Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* §§ 46, 51, &c.
573 Ib. §§ 48, 52; Val. Max. ix. 2, § 7.
574 Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 57.
575 Herod. vii. 114.
576 Ib. iii. 35.
577 Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 59. Compare Plut. *Vit. Artax.* c. 17.
578 Herod. l. s. c.
579 This punishment is almost too horrible to set before the reader. It consisted in placing the sufferer's body between two boats in such a way that only his head and hands projected at one end and his feet at the other, and keeping him in this position till he died miserably from the loathsome effects of the confinement. Persons might linger on under this punishment as much as seventeen days. (See Plut. *Vit. Artax.* c. 16, where all the details are given with quite revolting minuteness.)
580 Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* §§ 57. 61. Compare Plut. *Vit. Artax.* c. 19. On the prevalence of poisoning in Persia in the time of Artaxerxes Mnemon, see Xen. *Cyrop.* viii. 8, § 14.
581 Ctes. § 40.
582 Herod. ix. 112.
583 Ctes. § 55.
584 Ibid. l. s. c.
585 Herod. v. 25; vii. 194.
586 Ibid. iii. 118, 119; Esther, iv. 11.
587 Plut. *Vit. Artax.* c. 27.
588 Val. Max. xxvi. 16; Frontin. *Strat.* iv. 6.
589 Plut. *Vit. Artax.* c. 19.
590 Herod. iii. 159; iv. 43; *Beh. Ins.* col. ii. par. 14; col. iii. par. 8.
591 See Plut. *Vit. Artax.* c. 16.
592 Herod. vii. 114. Περσικὸν τὸ ζῶντας κατορύσσειν.
593 Xen. *Anab.* i. 9, § 13.
594 *Beh. Ins.* col. ii. pars. 13 and 14.
595 Q. Curt. *Hist. Alex.* v. 5; Diod. Sic. xvii. 69, § 3.
596 Nic. Dam. Fr. 132.
597 Herod. iii. 119; Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* §§ 42, 60; *Beh. Ins.* col. ii. pars. 13 and 14.
598 Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 40. The small islands in the Persian Gulf were the Persian penal settlements. (Ctes. l.s.c.; Herod. iii. 93.)

CHAPTER IV.

1 See text, pp. 67–70.
2 The dialectic form ἴκκος connects *equus* with ἵππος.
3 Herod. i. 139. Herodotus confines his remark on this subject to the Persian *names*. But it is only true of them in the same sense that it is true of all Persian *nouns*.
4 The termination *s* has the same force in Sanscrit, Gothic, and Lithuanian (see Bopp's *Comparative Grammar*, vol. i. § 134). It represents probably the old pronoun of the third person singular masculine, *sa*, "he," "this."

[5] This mode of accounting for the omission of the sibilant in the case of masculine roots in *-â* is suggested by Spiegel (*Altpersische Keilinschriften*, p. 153) and seems worthy of acceptance.

[6] *Api*, "water," is perhaps an exception, since we find *api-shim parâbara*, "the water destroyed them," in the Behistun Inscription (col. i. par. 19); but even here it is possible that *api-shim* is an abbreviation of the fuller form *apish-shim*. (Sir H. Rawlinson in the *Journal of the Asiatic Society*, vol. x. p. 214.)

[7] Some writers, as Spiegel, regard the cases as seven rather than six, adding to those named (text, p. 368) an "instrumental" case. But there is really no such distinct case in Old Persian, where sometimes the genitive, sometimes the ablative, has an instrumental meaning.

[8] Or *-ιο*, since Bopp is probably right in regarding the first ο of οιο as belonging to the root. (*Grammar*, vol. i. § 189.) Masculines in *-â* formed the genitive by adding *-ha*, as *Aurumazdâ*, gen. *Auramazdâha*.

[9] As *pitar*, "father," gen. *pitra*.

[10] So also in Zend and Sanscrit. In Lithuanian the *m* is replaced by *u*, in Gothic by *-na*. (See Bopp, § 149.)

[11] Spiegel, *Altpersische Keilinschriften*, p. 154.

[12] So, in Sanscrit, themes in *-i* and *-u* form the locative in *-âu*. The Old Persian, in each form of the locative, strengthened the case vowel with its cognate consonant (*i* with *y*, and *u* with *v*).

[13] Compare the ordinary Sanscrit termination *-âs*, the Zendic *-âo*, *-ô*, the Greek *-αι* (*-οι*), the Latin *æ* (*-i*), &c.

[14] Spiegel regards the *n* here as "euphonic," like the *n* in the Sanscrit genitive plural (*Altpersische Keilinschriften*, p. 156); but, as no genitive plural in the Old Persian has been found without the *n*, it would seem to be an essential part of the inflection. Probably the Old Persian *-nâm* is the equivalent of the Zendic *-añm*, rather than of the Sanscrit *-n-âm*.

[15] The original sign of the accusative plural seems to have been *-ns*. (Bopp, § 236.) Of this complex form, which appears in the Gothic (e.g. *vulfans*, *gastins*, *sununs*) and in the Zend occasionally, Sanscrit retained only the *n*, while Greek, Latin, and Lithuanian kept only the *s*. The Zend (generally) and the Old Persian evaporated both the consonants, and replaced them by a vowel, which in Zend was *-ô*, in Old Persian *-â*.

[16] The Latin *-ibus* is of course a cognate form to the Sanscrit *-bhyas* and the Zendic *-byo*. The Greek *-φι* (*-φιν*) is probably the same inflection.

[17] Compare the Sanscrit *-su* or *-shu*, which is replaced in Zend by *-hva* or *-shva*. The Greek locative ending *-σι* (e.g. Ἀθήνησι) is also cognate.

[18] See Bopp, § 291. In Zend, the inflections were respectively *-tara* and *-tema*. The comparative form *-tara* is represented in Greek by *-τερον*, and in Latin by *-terus* (e.g. *posterus*); the superlative *-tama* (*-tema*) may be traced in the Gothic *-tuma* and the Latin *-timus* (e.g. *optimus*, *ultimus*, *intimus*, &c.).

[19] The Sanscrit has a superlative in *-istha*, which comes from a comparative in *-îyas*. (Bopp, § 298.)

[20] The following are the forms of these ordinals in the chief varieties of Indo-European speech, as given by Bopp in his *Comparative Grammar* (§ 323):—

Sanscrit.	*Zend.*	*Dor. Greek.*	*Latin.*	*Gothic.*	*Lithuanian.*	*Old Sclavonic.*
prathamâ	fratheĭma	πρώτα	prima	fruma	pirmà	perva-ya
dvitiyâ	bitya	δευτέρα	altera	anthara	antrà	vtora-ya
tritiyâ	thritya	τριτα	tertia	thridivô	tréchià	treti-ya
navamâ	nâuma	ἐννάτα	nona	niundô	dewintà	devyata-ya

[21] *Adam*, "I," which has its nearest equivalent in the Zendic *azem*, is undoubtedly cognate with the Sanscrit *aham*, and thus with the Greek ἐγώ (ἐγών), the Latin *ego*, the German *ich*, and so with our "I." *Manâ*, *mâm*, *maiya*, and *ma* are modifications of a root which is common to Sanscrit, Zend, Greek, Latin, German, Lithuanian, and Sclavonic, and which appears in English as "me." The plural *vayam* is a rarer form, having near correspondents only in Sanscrit (*vayam*), Zend (*vaem*), and Gothic (*veis*). *Amâkham* differs but slightly from the Zendic *ahmâkem* and Sanscrit *asmâkam*, which have the same meaning. It implies a root *asma*, *ahma*, or *ama*, which has given birth to the Greek ἄμμες (ἡμεῖς), and perhaps to *uns* and *unser*.

[22] The original form of the cuneiform *hauva* was probably *hau*, which appears in *haushaiya* (*Persep. Inscr.* H, line 3). This *hau* is identical with the Zend *hô*, which is itself the exact equivalent of the Sanscrit सो, *sô*. *Sô* itself seems to be a corruption of the original nominatival *sas*, being for *sa-u*, where the *u* was a softened form of the case-ending *s*. (Bopp. § 347; Rawlinson, *Vocabulary*, p. 51, note 1.)

[23] Bopp, § 341. The Greek and Latin reflexives (*σφέ*, *ἕ*, *se*) are forms of the same base.

[24] The Sanscrit has identically the same forms in the acc. masc. and the nom. and acc. fem. of the singular. The nom. masc. is *ayam* (compare *iyam*), the gen. fem. is *asyâs* (compare *ahyâyâ*), and the instrumental masc. is *anena* (compare *anâ*). Only in the neuter is there a radical difference, the Sanscrit

using *idam* in the place of *ima*. Here, however, the Old Persian accorded closely with the Zend, which had *ima* for the nom. and *imat* for the accusative neuter.

[25] The form is the same both in Zend and Sanscrit. (Bopp, § 387.) We may

Zend.	*Sanscrit.*	*Dor. Greek.*
ahmi	asmi	ἐμμί
ahi	asi	ἐσσί
asti	asti	ἐστί
hmahi	'smas	ἐσμές
stha	'sthâ	ἐστέ
henti	santi	ἐντι

compare with it the Latin *quis*, *quce*, *quid*, and the Gothic *hvas*, *hvô*, *hva*. The Greek had probably once an interrogative κός, κή, κό, of which traces exist in κοῖος, κόσος, κότε, κῶς, and the like.

[26] Compare with this the following set of forms:—

Latin.	*Lithuanian.*	*Old Sclavonic.*
sum	esmi	yesme
es	essi	yesi
est	esti	yesto
sumus	esmi	yesmo
estis	este	yeste
sunt	esti	somte

[27] *Niya* may be compared with the Sanscrit *nih*, the Latin *ne* (in *nefandum*, *nego* and the like) the Greek νη (in νημερτής, κ. τ. λ.), the Gothic, Lithuanian, and old Sclavonic *ni*, &c.

[28] *Mâ* has exactly the same force both in Sanscrit and in Zend.

[29] Namely, *hachâ*, *hadha*, *paiti*, *anu*.

[30] *Hama* is to be connected with the Sanscrit *sam*, the Zendic *hañm*, the Greek σύν, the Lithuanian *san*, and perhaps even the Latin *cum*. (See Bopp, § 1016.) *Tara* corresponds to *tirâs* in Sanscrit, *tarô* in Zend, *trans* in Latin, *thairh* in Gothic, *durch* in Mod. German, and to our own "through." (Ibid. § 1018.)

[31] Compare the Sanscrit *parâ*, which has exactly this meaning. (Bopp, § 1011.) The Greek παρά and even the Latin *per* are probably the same word.

[32] See the remarks of Spiegel (*Altpersische Keilinschriften*, pp. 172, 173).

[33] The exceptions are verbs and adjectives, which seem never to take a pronominal suffix.

[34] Compare the Sanscrit. (Williams, *Sanscrit Grammar*, § 839.)

[35] Far the most important of these is the great rock-inscription at Behistun, first published by Sir H. Rawlinson in the year 1846 (*Journal of the Asiatic Society*, vol. x. part i.), and since edited by Spiegel (*Altpersisch. Keilinschrift*, pp. 2–45). Next to this may be placed the inscriptions on the tomb of Darius at Nakhsh-i-Rustam, edited by Sir H. Rawlinson in the *Asiatic Society's Journal* (vol. xi. pp. 291–313; vol. xii. App. pp. xix-xxi), one of which had been previously published by Lassen (*Zeitschrift des Morgenlandes*, vol. vi. pp. 81 et seqq.). In the third rank come the two inscriptions of Darius and Xerxes near the foot of Mount Elwend, in the vicinity of the town of Hamadan. These inscriptions were first edited by Burnouf (*Mémoire sur deux Inscriptions cunéiformes trouvées près d'Hamadan*, *Juin*, 1836.) They are given very incorrectly by M. Flandin (*Voyage en Perse*, "Planches Anciennes," tom. i. pls. 26 and 27). Lastly may be named the short rock inscription of Xerxes at Van (Lassen in the *Zeitschrift*, vol. vi. pp. 145 et seqq.; Rawlinson in *As. Soc. Journ.* vol. xi. pp. 331–336).

[36] The most important of these are 1. A short legend of Cyrus, several times repeated, at *Murghab* (Pasargadæ). This was first copied by Sir W. Ouseley (*Travels*, vol. ii. pl. xlix. fig. 5). It was recognized as containing the name of Cyrus by Grotefend. (See Heeren's *Asiatic Nations*, vol. ii. p. 362, E. T.) 2. Numerous legends of Darius and Xerxes, together with one of Artaxerxes Ochus, at Persepolis. These have been edited by Lassen, by Sir H. Rawlinson, and by Spiegel. 3. Two legends of Artaxerxes Mnemon at Susa, discovered by Mr. Loftus in 1851–2, and edited by Mr. Norris in the *Journal of the Asiatic Society*, vol. xv. pp. 157–162. 4. A mutilated legend of Darius on a stone near Suez, first copied by M. DeRozière, and published in the *Description de l'Egypte* (vol. i. pp. 265–275; Planches, vol. v. pl. 29, figs. 1 to 4). This legend has been corrected and restored by Sir H. Rawlinson (*Journal of As. Society*, vol. xi. p. 313).

[37] The vase inscriptions are the following:—1. One of Xerxes on the vase of Caylus, which is accompanied by transcripts in the Scythic, Babylonian, and Egyptian languages. (See Caylus, *Recueil d'Antiquités*, tom. v. pl. xxx.; and compare *As. Soc. Journal*, vol. xi. p. 339.) 2. A duplicate of this on a vase discovered at Halicarnassus by Mr. Newton. (See Birch in Newton's *Halicarnassus*, vol. ii. pp. 667–670.) 3. A legend of Xerxes on several fragments of vases discovered at Susa by Mr. Loftus (Loftus, *Chaldæa and Susiana*, p. 409). And 4. An inscription of an Artaxerxes (Ochus ?) on a porphyry vase in the treasury of St. Mark's at Venice (*Journal of Asiatic Society*, vol. xi. p. 347). This inscription is accompanied by an Egyptian transcript.

[38] There are two legends on cylinders. One is on the signet-cylinder of Darius (Pl. XXXVI. Fig. 2). The other is on the seal of a certain Arsaces, the son of Athiyabusanes. (See Lajard's *Culte de Mithra*, p. xxxii. fig. 1.)

[39] Caylus, *Recueil d'Antiquités*, tom. v. p. 81.

[40] See the remarks of Sir H. Rawlin-

son in the *Journal of the Asiatic Society*, vol. xi. pp. 342-346.

[41] Compare text, pp. 76, 77.

[42] Ap. Diod. Sic. ii. 32, § 4. Compare Nic. Dam. Fr. 10.

[43] Herod. iii. 128, 130; v. 14; vii. 100; Thucyd. i. 129; &c.

[44] Sir H. Rawlinson in the *Journal of the Asiatic Society*, vol. x. p. 51.

CHAPTER V.

[1] See Herod. i. 93, 178-187; Xen. *Anab.* iii. 4, §§ 6-10.

[2] If Herodotus visited Susa (as is generally supposed), he must have seen the palace which was there erected by Darius Hystaspis (Loftus, *Chaldæa and Susiana*, pp. 364-378). But it may well be questioned whether his travels extended so far.

[3] Diod. Sic. ii. 32, § 4; Tzetz. *Chiliad.* i. 82-85.

[4] Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* iii. 18; Strab. xv. 3, § 6.

[5] See especially Polyb. x. 27; and Strab. xv. 3, §§ 3, 6.

[6] Chardin's work (*Voyage en Perse*, 2 vols. 4to) was published in 1674, Le Brun's (*Voyage au Levant*) in 1704, the elder Niebuhr's (*Reise nach Arabien*, 2 vols.) in 1765, Ouseley's (*Travels*, 3 vols. 4to) between 1814 and 1823, and Ker Porter's (*Travels in Georgia, Persia, &c.* 2 vols. 4to) in 1821.

[7] *Description de l'Arménie, de la Perse, et de la Mésopotamie*, 2 vols. folio, Paris, Didot, 1842-1852.

[8] This magnificent work, the product of a French Government Commission under the celebrated Eugene Burnouf, is entitled simply "*Voyage en Perse.*" It is in six volumes, folio, one volume containing the "Travels," and the other five being devoted to plates. It bears no date, but was published, I believe, between 1845 and 1850.

[9] See especially the beautiful plate (No. 112) with which the third volume of the *Voyage en Perse* closes.

[10] Mr. James Fergusson, author of the *History of Architecture*, the *Palaces of Nineveh and Persepolis Restored*, &c. To Mr. Fergusson's kindness the writer of this work was also indebted for several of the illustrations of Assyrian architecture contained in the first volume.

[11] The statement of Herodotus to this effect (i. 130), echoed by Strabo (xv. 3, § 13), is rendered, to say the least, very doubtful by the Behistun Inscription, where Darius (according to the best cuneiform scholars) states that he "rebuilt temples which Gomates had destroyed." (*Beh. Ins.* col. i. par. 14, § 5.)

[12] See Berosus, Fr. 16. Compare Polyb. x. 27, § 12.

[13] Herod. v. 53; Æschyl. *Pers.* 3, 4, 161; Strab. xv. 3, §§ 3, 6, &c.

[14] Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 15; Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* iii. 22; Diod. Sic. xvii. 71, § 7.

[15] Mr. Fergusson holds that the ruins near Istakr, commonly regarded as the royal palace of the Persian kings, cannot have been the place where they resided, since the buildings there were, he thinks, quite unfit for a residence. He calls them "temple-palaces," or "palace-temples," and regards them as little more than high altars for the fire-worship. (See his *Palaces of Nineveh and Persepolis*, pp. 186-196.)

[16] See text, p. 112.

[17] Loftus, *Chaldæa and Susiana*, pp. 364-378.

[18] Flandin, *Voyage en Perse*, pp. 69, 70. Compare "Planches Anciennes," tom. ii. pls. 58 and 61.

[19] Fergusson, *Handbook of Architecture*, vol. i. p. 188.

[20] See Vol. I. pp. 179, 180; text, pp. 193 194.

[21] It is uncertain whether the whole platform is artificial, or whether the natural rock was not levelled and made use of to some extent. MM. Flandin and Coste are of opinion that the site was chosen on account of its presenting a sort of natural platform, which only required a certain amount of levelling and squaring to become what it is.

[22] Lead and iron were the materials used for clamping stones together at Babylon (Herod. i. 186; Diod. Sic. ii. 8, § 2). The shape of the clamps at Persepolis was like a solid ⧗, consisting of two nearly equilateral triangles united at the apex. (See Pl. XLII.) All the metal has been ruthlessly plundered.

[23] M. Flandin speaks of there being many blocks ranging from 15 to 17 mètres (49 to 55 feet) in length, and from two to three mètres (6½ to 9⅞ feet broad. (*Voyage en Perse*, p. 77.)

[24] The early travellers thought that the original height of the platform was 10 or 20 feet more (Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. p. 585). But MM. Flandin and Coste found reason to think that the height had never been much more than it is now.

[25] Ker Porter gives as the length of the platform 1425 feet, and as its greatest breadth 926 feet. M. Flandin makes the measures respectively 1519 and 938 feet (463 and 286 *mètres*). Mr. Fergusson assumes the length to be 1500, and the greatest breadth 950 feet.

[26] Here I follow MM. Flandin and Coste, whose accurate survey corrected the vague impressions of former travellers.

[27] This spur was never entirely removed. Remains of it are still to be seen at the N.W. corner of the platform, both inside and outside the boundary wall. (See the plan, Flandin, *Voyage en Perse*, pl. 67.)

[28] See Vol. I. p. 180.

[29] M. Flandin says of the effect produced by these irregularities:—"Elles *rompent la monotonie* que n'aurait pas manqué de produire à l'œil la grande

muraille, si elle eût suivi une ligne droite." (*Voyage*, p. 76.)

[30] Fergusson, *Palaces*, p. 97; Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. pp. 583, 584.

[31] Fergusson, l. s. c.

[32] Mr. Fergusson prefers to speak of the Central Terrace as extending, like the others, the entire width of the platform (*Palaces*, p. 97); but he allows that in reality the high level stops at the eastern edge of the platform on which stands the *Chehl Minar*, or "Forty Columns," the great building beyond (his "Hall of a Hundred Columns") being on the level of the Northern Terrace (p. 98).

[33] In the Assyrian palaces the ascents were sometimes by inclined planes. (See note 39, Chapter VI. Vol. I., *Second Monarchy*.

[34] Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. p. 585; Flandin, *Voyage en Perse*, p. 77.

[35] Heeren, *Asiatic Nations*, vol. i. p. 147, E. T.

[36] Fergusson, *Palaces*, pp. 102, 103.

[37] These measures are taken from Ker Porter (*Travels*, vol. i. p. 594). They agree nearly with those of MM. Flandin and Coste. (*Voyage en Perse*, p. 85.)

[38] Flandin, p. 86.

[39] Flandin, pls. 91, 100, and 101. Ker Porter makes the number only seven. (*Travels*, p. 595.)

[40] Ker Porter, vol. i. p. 604.

[41] Representations of the sculptures on this staircase are given by Sir R. Ker Porter (vol. i. pls. 37 to 43), and by MM. Flandin and Coste (*Voyage en Perse*, "Planches Anciennes," tom. ii. pls. 91 to 110). A small portion of the sculpture on the left-hand side is represented [Pl. LV. Fig. 2].

[42] Rich, *Journey to Persepolis*, p. 253; Flandin, pl. 90. (The inscription itself is given, pl. 111, but is engraved *upside down!*)

[43] It is thus described by Ker Porter (*Travels*, vol. i. p. 665), Flandin (*Voyage en Perse*, p. 110), and Mr. Fergusson, (*Palaces*, p. 101); but one of M. Flandin's plates represents the flights as triple, the landing-place between the two main flights being divided into two portions by an ascent of three or four steps placed at right angles to the principal stairs. ("Planches Anciennes," tom. iii. pl. 137.)

[44] The lion and bull combat was four times repeated. The guardsmen were chiefly at the sides of the staircase, where it projected in front of the terrace. (Flandin, pls. 132, 133.)

[45] Flandin, pl. 137. In Pl. XLIV. these attendants are incorrectly represented as guards.

[46] There were ten guards armed with spears, quivers, and bows, and three inscriptions on the façade of these stairs, with the lion and bull combat on either spandril. The parapet wall bore figures of attendants. (Flandin, pl. 136.)

[47] Ibid. pl. 120.

[48] *Journal of the Asiatic Society*, vol. x. pp. 341, 342.

[49] Flandin, pls. 115 and 121 *bis*. See Pl. XLVI. Fig. 1.)

[50] An inscription of Artaxerxes Ochus, taken from this staircase, is given by Rich in his *Journey to Persepolis* (pl. xxiii.), and by Flandin—very incorrectly—in his *Voyage* ("Planches Anciennes," tom. iii. pl. 129); where there is a representation also of the scanty remains of the staircase.

[51] Rich, *Journey to Persepolis*, p. 255.

[52] Ker Porter made this palace measure 170 feet by 95 (*Travels*, vol. i. p. 640); but M. Flandin, who traced out the foundation walls on all sides, found the length to be 41¼ mètres (135 feet) by 29¾ (97½ feet). (See the *Voyage en Perse*, p. 102.)

[53] Fergusson, *Palaces*, p. 98.

[54] The depth of the portico is 30 feet. (Ker Porter, p. 644; Flandin, p. 102.)

[55] The positions of these rooms on either side of the original sole entrance to the palace would sufficiently indicate their purpose. It is, however, further marked by the sculptures on the jambs of the doorways, each of which consists of two gigantic guardsmen armed with spears. (Flandin, *Voyage en Perse*, p. 106.)

[56] Flandin makes the dimensions of the guard-rooms 7 mètres 20 centimètres by 4 mètres (*Voyage en Perse*, pl. 113).

[57] Fergusson, *Palaces*, p. 117. Ker Porter says 48 feet. (*Travels*, vol. i. p. 643.) M. Flandin gives the breadth as 15 m. 50 centim. (nearly 51 feet), and the depth as 15 m. 15 centim. (49 ft. 8 in.).

[58] The corner doorway in the left-hand wall was a later alteration, made probably by Artaxerxes Ochus. (See text, p. 391.)

[59] Flandin, *Voyage*, pl. 117.

[60] Ibid. p. 106.

[61] Ibid. pp. 107, 108.

[62] Flandin, *Voyage*, pp. 108, 109. Compare pl. 135.

[63] Mr. Fergusson supposes that every pillared hall supported a second story, and that the pillars were intended for this purpose. He finds a representation of the second story in the curious structure whereon the kings are represented as standing in the sculptures upon their tombs. (*Palaces*, pp. 124–131.) His arguments are, as usual, ingenious, but they have failed to convince me. I think the absence of any trace of stairs, which he admits (p. 119), and the non-discovery in the ruins of any fragment of such a sculptured upper story as he imagines universal, quite outweigh the supposed analogy drawn from the representations on the tombs.

[64] The actual height of one of the *antæ* is 22 feet. (Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. p. 644.) It is evident, from the marks of the place where the architrave was inserted, that not very much of the *anta* is worn away.

[65] The entire area covered by the Palace of Darius, even if we include the portico, is little more than 13,000 square feet. The area covered by the Palace of Sargon seems to have been about 20,000 feet; that covered by the palace of Sennacherib at Nineveh was 40,000 square yards, or 360,000 feet.

[66] M. Flandin, in his restoration of the ground-plan of this palace, makes the number of rooms fifteen (pl. 121); but his plan of the actual ruins (pl. 113) shows thirteen apartments only.

[67] The area of Darius's hall is about 2500 feet; three halls in the palace of Sargon exceeded 3000 feet. (See Vol. I. pp. 181, 187, 188.)

[68] Rich speaks of this building as having an *écrasé* appearance, which he explains as "stuffed and heavy." (*Journey to Persepolis*, p. 247.)

[69] The non-discovery of any fragment of a pillar after all the researches made is strong evidence that the pillars were not of stone. That those at Ecbatana were mainly of wood plated with gold and silver, we know from Polybius. (See text, p. 11; and for the large employment of wood in the Persepolitan interiors, see Q. Curt. v. 7. Compare also on the whole subject Fergusson, *Palaces*. pp. 151, 152.)

[70] Polyb. x. 27, § 10.

[71] Æschyl. *Pers.* 161; Philostr. *Imag.* ii. 32.

[72] Esther, i. 7.

[73] Ibid. ii. 6.

[74] Athen. *Deipn.* xii. p. 514, C.

[75] Ibid.

[76] The separation of the Gynæceum from the rest of the palace is apparent from Esther, ii. 13; v. 1.

[77] *Voyage en Arabie*, tom. ii. p. 111. This is the building marked F on his plan (pl. xviii.). M. Flandin also marks these ruins. (*Voyage en Perse*, pl. 67, No. 74.) They have been accidentally omitted in the Plan, Pl. XLI.

[78] Mr. Fergusson suggests that it was done "to bring the orientation of this building, so far as was possible, into accordance with that of the other buildings on the platform." (*Palaces*, p. 116.) But it is difficult to see how a staircase on the western side of a building could make it harmonize with edifices whose only staircase was towards the north.

[79] Of the staircase to this palace I have already spoken. (See text, pp. 387, 388.) The other remains are a few walls and the bases of some nineteen columns, of which four seem to belong to a portico of sixteen pillars in two rows of eight each, directly behind the staircase, while the remaining fifteen belonged to a hall of sixteen columns, arranged in four rows of four each, which lay behind the western part of the portico. (See the General Plan, and compare Flandin, pl. 129.)

[80] Flandin, *Voyage en Perse*, tom. i. p. 113.

[81] See text, p. 388.

[82] Flandin, *Voyage*, "Planches Anciennes," pl. 131.

[83] These pillars were placed, as usual, towards the middle of the apartment, and were arranged in a square. (See the Plan, Pl. XLI.)

[84] Room was left here for just a narrow strip of pavement, on which opened out a door from the great hall, and from which two narrow sets of steps led eastward and westward to the southern terrace. On this terrace were probably placed the apartments of the attendants, officers of the Court, guards, &c.

[85] Flandin, *Voyage en Perse*, p. 113. Representations of this kind occupy the jambs of the three back doors towards the southern steps, and those of all the windows in the building. The inner doors of the side apartments represent servants with towels and perfumes. The doors leading from the side apartments into the great hall have the king under the parasol. The same representation occurs on the two front doors leading out into the portico. The side doors leading on to the portico have guards. Numerous inscriptions in various parts of the building ascribe its construction to Xerxes.

[86] Called the "South-eastern Edifice" on the Plan.

[87] See the remarks of Mr. Fergusson (*Palaces*, pp. 131–133).

[88] Rich, *Journey to Persepolis*, p. 250; Flandin, *Voyage*, pp. 115, 116.

[89] Mr. Fergusson supposed the porch of Darius's palace to be deeper than that of this ancient edifice, and considered that the extra depth had been given on account of the southern aspect of the later building; but M. Flandin's measurements show that the two porches, like the two halls, were as nearly as possible of the same size.

[90] The Palace of Sargon (exclusive of its temple) was a rectangle of 500 by 400 feet. (See Pl. XXIV. Vol. I.)

[91] See Flandin's *Voyage en Perse*, pl. 73; Fergusson, *Palaces*, p. 107.

[92] Ker Porter gives the height as nearly 50 feet (*Travels*, vol. i. p. 590). M. Flandin makes it 16 mètres 58 centimètres (*Voyage*, p. 83), which is a little more than 54 feet. Mr. Fergusson allows for the height only 46 feet 9 inches. (*Palaces*, p. 108.)

[93] See the General Plan, Pl. XLI. I agree with Mr. Fergusson (*Palaces*, p. 107), that the three doorways of this building of which traces remain must have been connected by walls. The rough faces of the great piers on the sides opposite to the doorways prove this. See Pl. XLVII. Fig. 1.

[94] Flandin, p. 78.

[95] See Pl. XLIII. Fig. 1.

[96] This is the case generally with the walls of the Persepolitan buildings, which have vanished, leaving only the great blocks which formed the sides of

doorways and windows. Mr. Fergusson conjectures that their entire disappearance is due to the fact that their material was mere sun-dried brick (*Palaces*, p. 125). But the hypothesis of the text is at least as probable.

[97] The chamber here spoken of was 51 feet square instead of 82 (Flandin, *Voyage*, pl. 145). The height of the doorways was about 20 feet, and the width 6 feet 6 inches (ibid. tom. i. p. 116.)

[98] The entire structure cannot be reproduced; for there are traces of walls and colonnades beyond the limits of the square chamber, which show that this edifice had peculiarities distinguishing it from the other buildings of the same general character upon the platform.

[99] This mound has been supposed to mark the site of the banqueting-hall burnt by Alexander (Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. pp. 646–650). It has been hitherto unexamined. If it is really a heap of ruins, and not a natural elevation of the soil, it must be well worth the most careful exploration.

[100] Two of the gateways of this edifice —those facing the north and the south—bear sculptures of the monarch on the throne of state, supported by figures representative of the nations under his sway, which are almost duplicates of those on the back doors of the "Hall of a Hundred Columns." (See Pl. XLVIII.)

[101] Nothing remains but the foundations of one portal—that facing the south—and the base of a single pillar. (Flandin, *Voyage*, pl. 161.)

[102] Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. p. 655; Flandin, *Voyage*, p. 110.

[103] In the propylæa, the distance between the pillars and the outer walls is always almost exactly that of the intercolumniations. The width of the portals is a little less.

[104] Mr. Fergusson says of the *Chehl Minar*, or "Great Hall of Xerxes"—"We have no cathedral in England that at all comes near it in dimensions; nor indeed in France or Germany is there one that covers so much ground. Cologne comes nearest to it . . . ; but, of course, the comparison is hardly fair, as these buildings had stone roofs, and were far higher. But in linear horizontal dimensions the only edifice of the middle ages that come up to it is Milan Cathedral, which covers 107,800 feet, and (taken all in all) is perhaps the building that resembles it most both in style and the general character of the effect it must have produced on the spectator." (*Palaces*, pp. 171, 172. Compare the same writer's *Handbook of Architecture*, vol. i. p. 197.)

[105] Fergusson, *Palaces*, p. 175.

[106] The evidence on the point is unfortunately very incomplete, since, out of the 116 pillar bases which the hall and porch are supposed to have contained, *eight only*—six in the hall, and two in the porch—have been discovered. Seven of the eight, moreover, are in one line. Still, as the positions of the eight pillar bases discovered are exactly such as they would have been if the whole of the hall and portico had been spaced out equally with 116 pillars, and as all the other large rooms on the platform are thus spaced out, it seems best to accept the conclusions of M. Flandin and Mr. Fergusson with respect to the edifice.

[107] Not a single one of the pillars is now standing, nor has it been found possible, though the ground is covered with fragments, to obtain the height of one by actual measurement. The height is therefore calculated *from the diameter*, which is so small that, according to Mr. Fergusson, they could not have exceeded 35 (*Palaces*, p. 177), or, according to M. Flandin, 37 feet. (*Voyage*, pl. 168 *bis*.)

[108] Flandin, *Voyage en Perse*, pl. 149. Ker Porter made the dimensions somewhat less. According to him, the building is a square of 210 feet. (*Travels*, vol. i. p. 662.)

[109] So Flandin (pl. 149). Mr. Fergusson says that the front wall was thicker than the others. (*Palaces*, p. 176.)

[110] M. Flandin thought (*Voyage*, p. 121) that the front wall had contained three windows only (all in the space between the two doorways) and six niches. But Ker Porter, who visited the ruins thirty years earlier, distinguished seven windows. (*Travels*, l. s. c.)

[111] Ker Porter, vol. i. p. 667.

[112] Fergusson, *Palaces*, pp. 177, 178. The writer's main arguments are the absence of (visible) windows on the eastern, western, and southern sides of the building, and the analogy derived from the other edifices. It must be admitted that the sculptures on the side doorways are identical with those which led into apartments in the Palace of Darius.

[113] See Flandin, *Voyage en Perse*, p. 123, and pl. 154; Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. pl. 49.

[114] Two rows of figures only are seen. (See Pl. XLVIII.) The accumulation of rubbish at the base of the monument conceals the figures of the third or lowest row.

[115] See the representation of M. Flandin (*Voyage*, pl. 112).

[116] It is generally allowed that the windows of Solomon's temple (1 K. vi. 4) were in the upper part of the wall, above the point reached by the surrounding chambers (verses 5–10). On the high position of windows in the buildings represented by the Assyrians, see Vol. I. p. 196.

[117] Mr. Fergusson, as well as M. Flandin, brings light into this hall from the roof (*Palaces*, p. 178); but by a more complicated and (I think) less probable arrangement.

[118] Flandin, *Voyage en Perse*, pls. 158 and 159. Compare the Plan [Pl. XLI.,] where the spaces on which the light would have fallen are indicated by dotted lines.

[119] See Pl. XLVII. Fig. 1.

[120] Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. p. 662; Flandin, *Voyage*, p. 120. Compare pls. 148 and 148 *bis*. The bulls are terribly mutilated, and it is even doubtful whether they were of the human-headed or the purely animal type. M. Flandin's general views of the ruins favor the former, while his restorations (pls. 151 and 159) adopt the latter, view.

[121] Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. p. 662 and pl. 51.

[122] I follow here the measurements of M. Flandin, who makes the distance from the extreme eastern to the extreme western pillars 105 mètres 98 centimètres (*Voyage*, pl. 90), and that from the extreme northern to the extreme southern ones 75 mètres.

[123] The side of the square is said to be 43½ mètres (Flandin, p. 100), or about 142½ feet. The area would consequently be 20,306¼ square feet.

[124] Ker Porter says 60 feet (*Travels*, vol. i. p. 636); but M. Flandin made the distance 22 mètres 50 centimètres in the case of the side groups, and 22 mètres 83 centimètres in the case of the front one. These measurements, however, were made from centre to centre of the pillar bases. (See pl. 90.)

[125] Flandin, *Voyage*, p. 99.

[126] Flandin, l. s. c. and pl. 168 *bis*.

[127] Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. p. 633.

[128] Flandin, *Voyage*, p. 100. Compare pl. 93.

[129] Ibid. pl. 92.

[130] These were sometimes double, like those of the capital represented [Pl. XLIX. Fig. 3], while sometimes they were single, as in Pl. XLIX. Fig. 1.

[131] Mr. Fergusson questions the existence of this member of the capital, which, being the uppermost, has fallen away from all the standing pillars. (See his *Palaces*, pp. 160–162.) But M. Flandin's belief, gathered from his researches at Persepolis, has been confirmed by the labors of Mr. Loftus at Susa, where attention was specially directed to the point. (See Loftus, *Chaldæa and Susiana*, pp. 369, 370.)

[132] The pillars of the central cluster have, on the contrary, a very rude and clumsy base, consisting merely of two rough steps, or gradines (see Pl. XLIX. Fig. 2). It is thought that these cannot have been intended to be seen, and consequently that the area under the centre pillars must have had a raised floor, probably of wood, level with the top of the upper step. (See Fergusson, *Palaces*, p. 165.)

[133] The existence of this cramp now often proves fatal to the columns, which are thrown down by the natives for the sake of it. (See Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. p. 680.)

[134] Flandin, *Voyage en Perse*, pls. 92 and 93.

[135] The distance from pillar to pillar is not more than 28 feet, considerably less than that of the Assyrian halls, which (as has been shown, Vol. I. p. 196) were probably roofed in by beams laid horizontally from side to side. Ker Porter supposes that stone *epistylia* of this length may have been used (*Travels*, vol. i. p. 634), and certainly blocks of a length even exceeding this occur in the platform (see above, note 33: but, if they had been employed in the pillared buildings, their remains would probably have been found.

[136] See Pl. XXXVII. Fig. 1; and compare Pl. LII. Fig. 1.

[137] The entablature may have been occasionally richer, as in the attempted restoration (Pl. XLVI. Fig. 2), which follows the pattern of the two tombs immediately behind the Great Palace platform.

[138] This is the theory of Mr. Fergusson (*Palaces of Nineveh and Persepolis*, pp. 144–146; *Handbook of Architecture*, vol. i. p. 195).

[139] Like that at the south-west corner of Darius's Palace (see Pl. XLVI. Fig. 1), or rather four times the size.

[140] Flandin, *Voyage en Perse*, p. 99; Texier, pl. 93. Compare the General Plan [Pl. XLI].

[141] *Palaces*, p. 145.

[142] Still, even here there is a suspicious circumstance. The positions are not the usual ones for doors under porticoes, being too near together. It is usual to have three windows between the two doors. Here, if there were doors, they could have had one window only between them.

[143] Mr. Fergusson supposes that the great chamber had five other doors (see the Plan, Pl. L. Fig. 1), none of which have left a trace.

[144] *Voyage en Perse*, p. 99. Compare plate 112, where the idea is carried out.

[145] As that isolated statues of bulls, or indeed of anything else, are not known to have been in use among the Persians.

[146] See *Palaces*, pp. 146, 147.

[147] These drains are marked on the General Plan. (See Pl. XLI.)

[148] See text, p. 299.

[149] It may be objected to this, that enamelled bricks were found at Susa, in near proximity to the palace of Darius. (Loftus, *Chaldæa and Susiana*, p. 396.) But there was nothing to connect these bricks with Achæmenian times. Probably they belonged to the old palace (Dan. viii. 2), whereto Darius merely made additions.

[150] See Vol. I. pp. 227–230; text, pp. 200, 201.

[151] Esther, i. 6. (See text, p. 345.)

[152] The General Plan of the Susian building was identical with that of the Persepolitan. Its size, proportions, and ornamentation were almost exactly the same, excepting that (so far as appears) the Susian hall had no sculptured staircase. Mr. Loftus made careful search at Susa for any indication of walls, but found no trace of them whatsoever. (*Chaldæa and Susiana*, p. 374.)

[153] *Buts* (בּוּץ), translated "fine linen" in the authorized version, probably means simply "white" here, as in Exod. xxvi. 31.

[154] Loftus, *Chaldæa and Susiana*, p. 375.

[155] M. Flandin (*Voyage*, pl. 112) confines the hangings to the main apartment; but it is quite possible that the detached colonnades may have been similarly protected.

[156] M. Flandin boldly calls them "salles de pas perdus." (*Voyage*, p. 98.)

[157] For a near view of these hills, see Flandin, pl. 62, and for their effect from the platform compare pl. 114.

[158] Flandin, p. 159. Compare the plan [Pl. XLIX. Fig. 5].

[159] Rich, *Journey to Persepolis*, p. 240. Some of the blocks in the older buildings on the Persepolitan platform are lightened in a similar way (ibid. p. 248).

[160] As seems to have been the case at Ecbatana. (See text, p. 11.) I suspect that such a colonnade also surrounded the "Tomb of Cyrus." (Pl. LI. Fig. 3.)

[161] So M. Flandin (*Voyage*, p. 160). Mr. Fergusson, following apparently the guess of Ker Porter (*Travels*, vol. i. p. 489), calls the height "nearly 50 feet." (*Palaces*, p. 212.)

[162] Flandin, l. s. c. Mr. Morier made the circumference 10 ft. 5 in. (*First Journey*, p. 144), which comes, within an inch, to the same.

[163] The blocks were clamped together in exactly the same way as those on the great platform. (See above, note 22.)

[164] *Three* rows of pillars is no doubt a very strange and unusual arrangement; but M. Flandin's measurements seem absolutely to preclude a fourth row (see the plan, Pl. XLIX.). It may be remarked, that Solomon's "House of the forest of Lebanon" seems to have three rows of pillars only, with fifteen in each. (1 Kings, vii. 3.)

[165] Flandin, pl. 197.

[166] The distances here are, respectively, 25 ft. 10 in. and 18 ft. 4 in. (Flandin, pl. 197.)

[167] See Flandin (l. s. c.), from whom Pl. L. Fig. 2. is taken.

[168] This figure has been noticed by most travellers. (See Morier, *Second Journey*, p. 118; Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. p. 492; Rich, *Journey to Persepolis*, p. 241; Flandin, *Voyage en Perse*, p. 160, and pl. 198; &c.) A representation of it is given [Pl. LIX.].

[169] Flandin, p. 161, and pl. 200. This building is an almost exact duplicate of one at Nakhsh-i-Rustam, which will be fully described presently.

[170] See Pl. L. Fig. 3. Mr. Rich says that one block which he measured was 14 feet 2 inches long (*Journey to Persepolis*, p. 241). M. Flandin speaks of there being among the blocks some which are 10 mètres (32 feet 9 inches) in length. (*Voyage en Perse*, p. 162.)

[171] Fergusson, *Palaces*, p. 211.

[172] Flandin, *Voyage*, p. 70 and pl. 58.

[173] See text, p. 398.

[174] The height of the Istakr columns was 25 ft. 7 inches. The shortest of the columns found at Persepolis exceeded 37 feet. (Flandin, pl. 168, *bis*.)

[175] See Loftus, *Chaldæa and Susiana*, pp. 365–376.

[176] See text, pp. 397–402.

[177] See above, note 14.

[178] On the tomb of Cyrus, see Morier, *First Journey*, pp. 144–146; Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. pp. 498–500; Rich, *Journey to Persepolis*, pp. 239–244; Texier, *Description*, tom. ii. pp. 152–156; and Flandin, *Voyage en Perse*, pp. 157–159. On the other tombs of the kings, see Ker Porter, vol. i. pp. 516–524; Rich, pp. 255, 256; Flandin, pp. 128–132, and 140–141.

[179] Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* vi. 29. Compare Strabo, xv. 3. § 7.

[180] Ker Porter, p. 499.

[181] Most writers speak of six steps only, but MM. Flandin and Coste uncovered a seventh (*Voyage*, p. 157; pls. 195 and 196). Mr. Fergusson suggests that the seven steps represented the seven planets. (*Palaces*, p. 214.)

[182] The lowest step or real base of the monument—that which was first uncovered by MM. Flandin and Coste—is only 13 inches high; the second is 5 ft. 5 in.; the third and fourth are 3 ft. 5 in. each; the fifth, sixth, and seventh measure each 1 ft. 10 inches. (See Flandin, *Voyage*, pl. 195.) The measures of Ker Porter (*Travels*, vol. i. p. 499) and Mr. Rich (*Persepolis*, p. 243) agree nearly with these, in no case differing more than two inches.

[183] There can really be no doubt of this. (See Ker Porter, vol. i. pl. 14; Flandin, pls. 195 and 196.) Yet Mr. Rich did not see it, but imagined that the roof had been arched! (*Persepolis*, p. 242.)

[184] Flandin, pls. 195, 196; Rich, p. 243.

[185] Arrian, l. s. c.; Strab. l. s. c.

[186] There is some Arabic writing and ornamentation in the interior of the tomb (Rich, p. 243; Ker Porter, p. 501), but nothing of an earlier date than the Mahometan conquest.

[187] Flandin, *Voyage*, p. 197. Compare pl. 195.

[188] Ibid. pl. 196. These measures considerably exceed those of former travellers, who, when the lowest step was covered up, necessarily took the dimensions of the lowest step but one.

[189] Ker Porter, p. 499; Rich, p. 244. The Baron Texier's plan makes the pillars on each side eight. (*Description*, tom. ii. pl. 82.)

[190] See Pl. LII. Fig. 1, and compare the illustration taken from a photograph [Pl. XXXVII. Fig. 1].

[191] It must be understood that the portico is apparent only, not real. The columns are not pillars, but pilasters adhering to the face of the rock.

[192] The only important exception is the ruined tomb to the south of the Persepolitan platform, which, unlike the others, is situated nearly at the level of the plain, and shows one compartment only of the three commonly seen. (Flandin, pls. 162 and 167.)

[193] In some of what seem to be the earliest tombs, there is no arch. Both the internal chamber and the recess are squared at top. This is the case in the tomb of Darius Hystaspis. (Flandin, pls. 170 and 171.)

[194] See Flandin, pl. 165.

[195] The other tombs contain three, six, or nine sarcophagi. (Flandin, pls. 163, 165, and 169.)

[196] These tombs are both at Nakhsh-i-Rustam. Their plans are given by Flandin (pls. 170 and 171).

[197] Flandin, pls. 164 and 166.

[198] Flandin, *Voyage en Perse*, p. 141. Ker Porter made the width 22 feet 8 inches, and guessed the height at 35 feet. (*Travels*, vol. i. p. 562.)

[199] There is a curious conflict of testimony with respect to these markings. Ker Porter speaks of them as "blocks of marble which project" (*Travels*, vol. i. p. 563); and Mr. Fergusson, following him, speaks of "projecting facets" (*Palaces*, p. 206). But Mr. Morier saw "oblong perpendicular *incisions*" (*First Journey*, p. 129); M. Flandin "*refouillements*" (*Voyage*, p. 142); and Baron Texier "trous" (*Description*, tom. ii. p. 199).

[200] M. Flandin imagined that he saw traces of a flight of steps (*Voyage*, p. 141). But perhaps the ruined appearance of the wall below the doorway is rather the result of an attempt to penetrate the building and discover a second chamber.

[201] Flandin, l. s. c. Ker Porter guessed the height at 15 or 16 feet. (*Travels*, p. 562.)

[202] See Pl. LIII. Fig. 3.

[203] See Pl. LI. Fig. 2.

[204] See text, pp. 382, 402, 403. Compare Flandin, pl. 197.

[205] Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. p. 56. "This portal is five feet wide and six high. The grooves for the pivots of its doors are deeply cut, both at the bottom and the top, where they were fastened to the sides of the wall; so that the ponderous stone divisions must have met in the middle and shut close. The circling marks of their movement are strongly worn in the marble floor.

[206] Mr. Fergusson speaks of this gateway as "a building so monolithic in its character, and so simple and grand in its proportions, that it is impossible to ascribe it to any period subsequent to the days of the Achæmenidæ; indeed," he says, "so simply grand is it that it might almost be supposed to be older, had we any knowledge of any race capable of executing such a work before their time." (*Palaces*, p. 205.)

[207] Fergusson, l. s. c.; Flandin, pp. 70, 71; Texier, pl. 137.

[208] Such were the "Pylæ Ciliciæ" (Xen. *Anab.* i. 2, § 21; Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* ii. 4); the "Pylæ Caspiæ" (Arr. iii. 20); the "Pylæ Syriæ" (Xen. *Anab.* i. 4, § 4; Arr. *Exp. Alex.* ii. 5); the Pylæ Amanicæ (Polyb. xii. 17, § 2); and others. Xenophon (*Anab.* i. 4, § 4) is conclusive on the point of there being an actual gateway and gates.

[209] Sir R. K. Porter is the only traveller who seems to have distinctly recognized the true character of this "Gate." (*Travels*, vol. i. p. 515.)

[210] As in the chambers surrounding the pillared hall in the palace of Darius. (See the General Plan, Pl. XLI.)

[211] As in the west doorway and staircase of the same palace.

[212] Rich, *Persepolis*, p. 244.

[213] The pillars of the Great Temple at Karnac slightly exceeded in height those of the Grand Hall at Persepolis, measuring 70 feet, whereas the Persepolitan ones were only a little more than 67 feet. The columns of the Temple of Diana at Ephesus — the most magnificent structure ever raised by the Greeks —measured no more than 60 feet.

[214] As at Babylon (see text, p. 389) and at Rome (Liv. xxi. 62).

[215] See the general remarks of Mr. Fergusson on the Persian Architecture. (*Handbook of Architecture*, vol. i. pp. 190–197.)

[216] Rich, *Persepolis*, p. 247.

[217] Mr. Fergusson remarks that he does not know any instance of this out of Persia. (*Palaces*, p. 183.)

[218] See text, p. 409.

[219] As the thickness of walls, the absence of passages, and the position of doors. (See Vol. I. pp. 183, 184.)

[220] See, Vol. I. pp. 194, 195, 207.

[221] Ibid. pp. 208, 209; text, p. 197.

[222] On the origin of the Persian columnar architecture, see note 79, Chapter I., *Third Monarchy*.

[223] It has been shown in a former volume that the reverse of this was the rule with the Assyrians, (See Vol. I. pp. 195, 196.)

[224] The statement made in vol. i. (p. 541, note 53), that the Persian buildings "had no solid walls at all," must be limited to the main buildings—the great columnar edifices in which the Persian architecture culminated.

[225] See text, pp. 11, 12.

[226] See text, pp. 301, 302.

[227] That earthquakes have caused certain displacements at Persepolis is suggested by M. Flandin. (*Voyage en Perse*, p. 104.)

[228] The Egyptian pillar represents a stone pier from which the angles have been removed; the Persian is a substitute for a wooden post. The proportion of the diameter to the height in Egypt was, at least, double of that which prevailed in Persia.

[229] Mr. Fergusson, who derives the Doric column of the Greeks from Egypt, allows that they received the Ionic from Asia. (*Handbook of Architecture*, vol. i. p. 265.)

[230] The clay images of a goddess, found by Mr. Loftus at Susa (*Chaldæa and Susiana*, pp. 378, 379), appear to me not so much Persian as primitive Susianian. They were found at the bottom of a trench 22 feet deep.

[231] The following is Sir R. K. Porter's estimate of these figures:—"The proportions of these animals are admirable; and, though the manner of their execution be *sec*, yet there is a corresponding grandeur in their forms which perfectly accords with the prodigious scale on which all around them is designed." (*Travels*, vol. i. p. 586.)

[232] See Pl. XLVII. Fig. 1.

[233] The peculiar mode of dressing the beard observable in these figures is found only in representations of the monarch, and of gods or genii. It occurs in the figures of Oromasdes, in all those certainly representing the king, and in the human-headed bulls, but not elsewhere.

[234] Supra, Pl. XLVII. Fig. 1.

[235] See Flandin, *Voyage en Perse*, pp. 107, 108, and pl. 123.

[236] Ker Porter, *Travels*, pl. 52; Flandin, *Voyage*, pl. 152.

[237] See Pl. LXIV. Figs. 1 and 2; Pl. LXV. Fig. 2; Pl. CXLIII. Fig. 1.

[238] See Layard, *Nineveh and Babylon*, pp. 606, 607.

[239] See Pl. LX. Fig. 4, and compare Lajard, *Culte de Mithra*, pl. xiii. fig. 8; pl. xix. fig. 7; pl. xxv. fig. 1; pl. li. figs. 2, 3, 7, &c.

[240] As on the great staircase in front of the *Chehl Minar*. (Ker Porter, vol. i. pl. 37.)

[241] As in the representations on the jambs of the front doors in the "Hall of a Hundred Columns." (Ker Porter, pl. 49.)

[242] The only important want of proportion is in the size of the heads, which is decidedly too great. This is a *general* though far from being a universal fault in the Persian sculptures.

[243] Note particularly the figure on the extreme right in the upper row of Ker Porter's 37th plate (opp. p. 601), the body of which faces the spectator, while the head and legs are in profile, *fronting different ways!*

[244] See Flandin, *Voyage en Perse*, pls. 119, 136, and 137.

[245] See Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. pls. 38 to 43; Flandin, *Voyage*, pls. 95 to 110.

[246] See Pl. III. Fig. 4, Pl. XXI. Fig. 1.

[247] It must at the same time be admitted that the proportion of the animal figures to the human is not very well kept. The camel, the horses, and two oxen are decidedly too small.

[248] The origin of these caryatidæ is traceable to Assyria, where we find them used in the decoration of the throne itself. (See Pl. LXXXIV. Fig. 3, Pl. LXXXV. Fig. 1, Vol. I.) In Persia they uphold a sort of platform on which the throne is placed. (Ker Porter, pl. 50; See Pl. XLVIII.) Unlike the Greek caryatids, they support their burthens with the hands as well as with the head.

[249] See Pl. LII. Fig. 1.

[250] A representation of this figure is given, Pl. XXIX. Fig. 1.

[251] See Flandin, pl. 155; and compare his remarks, tom. i. p. 126.

[252] Compare, however, the equally bold drawing of an Assyrian artist. (Pl. LXXI. Vol. I.).

[253] Flandin, pls. 154, 155, 156, 164, *bis*, 166. Compare Pl. XXXV.

[254] In one case (Flandin, pl. 135), perhaps in more, the sitting lion was replaced by a sphinx.

[255] The type was, however, known in Media, where the only representation of a lion that has been found had exactly this attitude. (See Pl. VI. Fig. 3.)

[256] Layard, *Nineveh and Babylon*, p. 607; King, *Antique Gems*, p. 129; Lajard, *Culte de Mithra*, pp. 1–26, &c. A careful examination of the last-named work will show that the favorite stone of the Persian gem-engravers was the chalcedony—a semi-transparent white quartz, the blue variety of which is known as the sapphirine.

[257] See Pls. XXXVI., XXXVII.

[258] Herod. vii. 64. Compare the illustrations in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. iii. p. 58; vol. iv. p. 53.

[259] See the author's *Herodotus*, vol. iii. p. 34.

[260] See Lajard, *Culte de Mithra*, pl. xxv. fig. 6; pl. li fig. 2.

[261] See Pl. XXXVI. Fig. 2.

[262] King, *Antique Gems*, p. 149, and p. lx. of the "Introduction," note 4.

[263] Lajard, *Culte de Mithra*, pl. lxiii. figs. 7 and 10; Mionnet, *Description des Médailles*, Supplement, tom. viii. pl. xix. fig. 6.

[264] Mionnet, pl. xix. fig. 3.

[265] Lajard, pl. lxiii. fig. 8.

[266] Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. ii. pl. 79, fig. 1; Lajard, pl. lxiii. figs. 4 and 5; pl. lxiv. fig. 5; Mionnet, pl. xix. fig. 4.

[267] Lajard, pl. lxiii. figs. 11, 12, 14; pl. lxiv. fig. 6; Mionnet, *Description*, pl. lxi. fig. 1; Ker Porter, pl. 79, fig. 2; Gesenius, *Monumenta Phœniciæ*, pl. xxxvi. fig. G.

[268] Lajard, pl. lxiii. fig. 14.

[269] See Pl. XXXII. Fig. 1.

[270] See Pl. XXXIV. Fig. 2.

[271] Ker Porter, vol. i. pls. 38, 41, and 42.

[272] A form of bracelet with the ends fashioned like the head of an animal, which was common in Assyria (see Pl. CXIV. Fig. 1), is sometimes seen among the offerings brought to the Persian court by tributaries. (Ker Porter, pl. 41.) But it never adorns the arms of any figure in the sculptures. Was its use confined to *females?*

[273] See Pl. XXXVI. Fig. 1.

[274] Herod. vii. 41. Compare Pl. XXIX. Fig. 3.

[275] See Pl. LXXXIV. Fig. 3; Pl. LXXXVI. Fig. 2; Pl. LXXXVII.; Pl. CXIII. Fig. 2; Pl. CXV. Fig. 3; Pl. CXVIII. Fig. 2; Pl. CXVIII. Fig. 3, Vol. I.; Pl. XVII. Fig. 2.

[276] See Ctes. *Indica*, § 21.

[277] Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* vi. 29.

[278] Athen. *Deipnos.* xii. p. 514, C.

[279] Ælian, *Nat. Anim.* iv. 46. Compare the arguments of Heeren. (*As. Nat.* vol. i. pp. 286, 288, E. T.)

[280] Strabo, xvi. 1, § 7.

[281] Herod. ii. 182; iii. 47; Ezekiel, xxvii. 7.

[282] See text, pp. 345, 346.

[283] Amos, iii. 12.

[284] See text, p. 204.

[285] Ezek. xxvii. 16; 2 Chr. ii. 14.

[286] Thales, Anaximander, and Anaximenes were Persian subjects. On the schools of Orchoë and Borsippa, see Strabo, xvi. 1, § 6.

CHAPTER VI.

[1] See text, pp. 45–60.

[2] Ibid. pp. 60–66.

[3] 2 Chr. xxxvi. 23; Ezra, i. 2. Compare vi. 10.

[4] See text, pp. 377, 378. The same phrase occurs repeatedly.

[5] Note the opening words of the decree of Cyrus ("The Lord God of Heaven hath given me all the kingdoms of the earth," Ezra, i. 2), and compare them with the oft-recurring formula at the beginning of inscriptions:—"*Baga vazarka Auramazdâ, hya imâm bumim adâ, hya avam asmânam adâ . . . hya Dâryavum hkshâyathiyam akunaush.*"

[6] See the inscription on the tomb of Darius. (*Journal of the Asiatic Society*, vol. xi. p. 310.)

[7] *Journal of the Asiatic Society*, vol. xi. pp. 273 and 319.

[8] Ibid. p. 324, l. 18; 327, ll. 28, 29; p. 337. l. 15, &c.

[9] Ibid. p. 275, ll. 14, 22, 24.

[10] See Herod. i. 131, ad fin.

[11] Compare text, p. 49; and note that though none of the early kings mention Mithra, yet his emblem appears on all the known royal tombs, except that of Cyrus. (See below, note 32.) Note also the occurrence of the name Mithridates, "given to" or "by Mithra," in the reign of Cyrus (Ezra i. 8).

[12] The true reading and interpretation of the famous passage of the Behistun inscription (col. iv. par. 4), where some scholars have thought they saw a mention of "the God of lies," is still doubtful. Spiegel's translation (*Keilinschriften*, pp. 31, 33) is far from satisfactory.

[13] See text, p. 360.

[14] See text, pp. 55–57.

[15] Col. i. par. 14. See the remarks of Spiegel on the word *ayadanâ* (*Keilinschriften*, p. 83); and note that the corresponding expression in the Babylonian transcript is "*biti sa ilui*," "the houses of the Gods." (*As. Soc. Journal*, vol. xiv. p. lxxvi.)

[16] See text, pp. 403–407.

[17] Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. pp. 562–564; Rich, *Journey to Persepolis*, p. 258.

[18] The larger of the two is only 12 feet square by 18 high. (See text, p. 407.)

[19] I venture to suggest that the buildings were treasuries, which are known to have existed both at Pasargadæ and Persepolis. (Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* iii. 18.) Their solid character, their size, their difficulty of access, and the massiveness of their stone doors (see Pl. LIV. Fig. 1) are all explained by this hypothesis.

[20] See Pl. XXXVII. Fig. 1, and Pl. LII. Fig. 1.

[21] On some of the Persian cylinders a second form of altar, more resembling one known to the Assyrians (see Pl. CXLIII. Figs. 2 and 3), appears. This is a tall and narrow structure, evidently of a portable character, crowned with a globe of fire, like that on altars of the more solid type. [Pl. LVIII. Fig. 6.]

[22] Herod. vii. 113; Xen. *Cyrop.* viii. 3, § 24; Ovid, *Fasti*, i. 385. Compare *Yaçna*, xliv. 18.

[23] Herodotus speaks of two occasions on which, within his knowledge, human sacrifices had been offered by Persians (vii. 114). The facts *may* have occurred as he has stated them; but they are certainly *exceptional*, and are far from proving that these sacrifices were "often resorted to by the Persians" (Grote, *History of Greece*, vol. iii. p. 395, ed. of 1862).

[24] See text, p. 56.

[25] Herod. i. 131 (quoted in the heading of the text to this chapter).

[26] On the readiness of the Persians to adopt foreign costumes, even religious ones, see Herod. i. 131 and 135.

[27] See Vol. I. pp. 341–357.

[28] See Pl. XLV. Fig. 1; Pl. XLVI. Fig. 2; Pl. LII. Fig. 1.

[29] See Pl. LVIII. Fig. 7; and compare Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. pl. 50; Texier, *Description*, tom. ii. pls. 111 and 111 *bis*.

[30] For examples of this head-dress, see Pl. XXIX. Fig. 3; and compare Pl. V. Figs. 1 and 2; Pl. VI. Figs. 1 and 2. For instances of its application to the emblem of Ormazd, see Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. pl. 17; Lajard, *Culte de Mithra*, pl. ii. figs. 18, 19, 22, 23, 24, 28; pl. xxv. fig. 6, &c.

[31] See Pl. CXLII. Figs. 2 and 3, Vol. I.

[32] Flandin, *Voyage*, pls. 164 *bis*, 166, and 173–176. Compare Pl. LII. Fig. 1.

[33] *Vendidad*, Farg. xix. 30.

[34] See Ker Porter, *Travels*, vol. i. pl. 13; Texier, *Description*, tom. ii. pl. 84; and Flandin, *Voyage*, pl. 198.

[35] The chief modification is in the different shape of the wings, which, in the Persian specimens, have a graceful curve that is wanting in the Assyrian. (Compare Pl. XLVII. Fig. 1, with the Assyrian forms given in Pl. XIX. Figs. 6 and 7; Pl. XLIII. Fig. 1, Vol. I.

[36] See text, p. 393.

[37] See Pl. LV. Fig. 1.

[38] Compare the cylinders given by Lajard (*Culte de Mithra*, Pl. xiii. fig. 8; pl. l. fig. 6) with Pl. LX. Fig. 3, No. 1.

[39] See Layard, *Nin. and Bab.* p. 607; Lajard, *Culte de Mithra*, pl. xxv. fig. 1; pl. li. fig. 2.

[40] Lajard's great work furnishes numerous specimens besides those given in Pl. LX. Fig. 4. (See pl. xix. fig. 8; pl. xlix. fig. 6; pl. lvi. fig. 5, &c.)

[41] Herod. vi. 19, 96, 101; viii. 33, 53; Cic. *De Leg.* ii. 10; Strab. xiv. 1, § 5. That *Greek* temples were not exceptionally treated is evident from Herod. iii. 25, among other places.

[42] Herod. i. 183; iii. 37.

[43] Ibid. i. 183; iii. 27 and 29.

[44] Ibid. iii. 29.

[45] Ibid. i. 187; iii. 16 and 37; Diod. Sic. x. 13, § 2.

[46] Herod. iii. 29.

[47] Strab. l. s. c.; Pausan. x. 35, § 2.

[48] Herod. iii. 16, 27–29, and 37.

[49] Ezra, i. 2, 3. Note especially the phrase, הוּא הָאֱלֹהִים—"He is *the* God."

[50] Isaiah, xliv. 28.

[51] Ezra, vi. 1–12.

[52] Joseph., *Ant. Jud.* xi. 8, § 3.

[53] Herod. iii. 61. Contrast with the favor thus shown to the Magi the treatment which they had expected to receive, should the Persians supersede the Medes in power (Herod. i. 120—ἀλλοτριοῦται ἡ ἀρχὴ ἐς τὸν παῖδα τοῦτον περιοῦσα ἑόντα Πέρσην, καὶ ἡμεῖς, ἐόντες Μῆδοι, δουλούμεθα καὶ λόγου οὐδενος γινόμεθα πρὸς Περσέων).

[54] In the Behistun inscription, Darius says:—"When Cambyses had proceeded to Egypt, *then* the state became wicked; *then* the lie" (his name for the Magian heresy) "became abounding in the land." (Col. i. par. 10.) But it is clear that, if within three years of Cambyses' departure matters had gone so far that an actual change of the state-religion could be thought feasible, a considerable part of the nation must have undergone conversion before he set out.

[55] See the Historical Chapter, pp. 329–550.

[56] See text, p. 66.

[57] See the accounts of the Persian religion in Herodotus (i. 131, 132, 140) and Strabo (xv. 3, §§ 13–16), which are predominantly—the latter almost exclusively—Magian.

[58] Μαγεία Ζωροάστρου. See the passage of the First Alcibiades quoted at the head of the text of this chapter.

[59] See text, pp. 60–62.

[60] Strab. xv. 3, § 15.

[61] See the authorities quoted in note 135, Chapter IV., Third Monarchy.

[62] Σηκός. (Strab. l. s. c.)

[63] This seems to be Strabo's meaning (xv. 3, §§ 14, 15); but it is expressed with some ambiguity.

[64] Herod. i. 132.

[65] Strab. xv. 3, § 13.

[66] Herod. vii. 19, 113, 191. I do not feel justified in rejecting this testimony, though it must be admitted that Æschylus, writing soon after Salamis, seems not aware of any priestly Magians having accompanied the expedition.

[67] Herod. vii. 114.

[68] Herod. vi. 45. The exact position of the Brygi is uncertain; but they cannot have dwelt very far from the Strymon. (See Herod. vii. 185.)

[69] Compare their conduct towards the Naxians (Herod. vi. 96).

[70] Herod. i. 131.

[71] Ibid. i. 199; iii. 8; Diod. Sic. ii. 9, § 5; Plutarch, *Vit. Artax.* c. 23. As the Babylonians themselves confused Nana (or Ishtar) with Beltis (see text, Vol. I. p. 90), there was some excuse for the hesitancy of the Greeks.

[72] The form "Nanæa" is found in 2 Maccab. i. 13, 15, and on coins of the Sassanian monarchs. "Anæa" is used by Strabo (xvi. 1, § 4); "Anaitis," or Aneitis, by the same writer (xv. 3, § 15), and also by Pausanias (iii 16) and Plutarch (*Artax.* c. 27). Polybius calls the goddess "Æna" (x. 27, § 12); Clemens of Alexandria (*Protrept.* 5) calls her "Tanais." The true Persian form of the name seems to have been Tanata. (*Journal of the Asiatic Society*, vol. xv. p. 161.)

[73] Plutarch, *Vit. Artax.* c. 23.

[74] Berosus ap. Clem. Alex. l. s. c. The passage of Berosus has received important confirmation by recent excavations on the site of Susa, where an inscription of Mnemon has been found, alluding to his erection of the image of Tanata in a temple at that place. (Loftus, *Chaldæa and Susiana*, p. 372.)

[75] Compare text, pp. 228, 229.

[76] See Loftus, l. s. c. Mnemon is the first of the Persian kings who invokes Mithra to be his protector. His example in this respect is followed by Ochus. (*Journal of the Asiatic Society*, vol. x. p. 342.)

[77] See Pl. XXIX. Fig. 2; and for the connection of the symbol with the Mithraitic cult, see Lajard, *Culte de Mithra*, pls. lxxv.; lxxviii. fig. 2; lxxx. fig. 1; lxxxii. fig. 1; lxxxiii., &c.

[78] Hyde, *De Vet. Persarum Religione*, c. 4, p. 114.

[79] See text, pp. 53, 54.

[80] Strab. xv. 13, § 15. On the identification of the Omanus and Anadatus of Strabo with Bah-man and Amerdat, see

the author's Herodotus, vol. i. p. 537, 2nd edition.

[51] Strab. l. s. c. and xi. 8, § 4.

[52] Ξόανον τοῦ Ὁμάνου πομπεύει. (Strabo.)

[53] The temple of Anaitis at Ecbatana is described by Polybius (x. 27, § 12) as having its pillars gilt (κεχρυσωμένους), and many of its tiles and bricks of solid silver, while a few of the latter were of gold. The wealth of the temple of the same goddess at Elymais appears from 1 Mac. vi. 2.

[54] According to Plutarch, the Magi of his time addressed themselves, in some of the rites which they performed, to Ahriman, seeking thereby to avert his anger. (*De Isid. et Osir*, p. 369, E.) And, if we regard the story told by Herodotus of the sacrifice of Amestris (vii. 114) as deserving of implicit belief, we must allow the first beginning of this corruption to have been still earlier; for Herodotus calls the sacrifice "a thank-offering to the god who dwells underneath the earth"—an expression that, according to the Persian system, must mean Ahriman. But Herodotus is scarcely, I think, to be accepted as a competent interpreter of the true motive of an act, of which he can only have heard by rumor long after he quitted Asia.

[55] See the passage quoted from Diogenes Laertius, and placed as the heading to the chapter on the Religion of the Medes (text, p 45); and compare with it the following fragment of Eudemus, the favorite disciple of Aristotle:—"Μάγοι δὲ καὶ πᾶν τὸ Ἄρειον γένος, οἱ μὲν τόπον, οἱ δὲ χρόνον καλοῦσι τὸ νοητὸν ἅπαν καὶ ἠνωμένον, ἐξ οὗ καὶ διακριθῆναι καὶ θεὸν ἀγαθὸν καὶ δαίμονα κακὸν, καὶ φῶς καὶ σκότος πρὸ τούτων, ὡς ἑνίους λέγειν· οὗτοι δὲ καὶ αὐτοὶ μετὰ τὴν ἀδιάκριτον φύσιν διακρινομένην ποιοῦσι τὴν οἰκτρὰν συστοιχίαν τῶν κρειττόνων· τῆς μὲν ἡγεῖσθαι τὸν Ὡρομάσδην, τῆς δὲ τὸν Ἀρειμάνιον." (Ap. Damasc. *De Princip.* given in Wolf's *Anecdota Græca*, vol. iii. p. 259.)

CHAPTER VII.

[1] See text, p. 110.

[2] Compare Vol. I. pp. 101–105, 375–378, and text, pp. 81–86, 230–236.)

[3] *Behistun Inscription*, col. i. par. 4.

[4] Gen. x. 2.

[5] It was usual among our old commentators to identify Elam (Gen. x. 22) with Persia; but Elam is really Elymais, or (as it was sometimes called from its capital) Susiana. (See Dan. viii. 2.) Persia (פָּרַס) is not mentioned till the times of the Captivity. (Ezek. xxxviii. 5; Dan. v. 28; &c.)

[6] See note 244, Chapter IX. Vol. I., *Second Monarchy*.

[7] See Vol. I. pp. 417–419.

[8] Persia Proper, now called by a slight corruption *Farsistan*, or "the land of the Persians." (See note 13, Chapter I.)

[9] See text, pp. 85, 86.

[10] Darius reckoned eight kings before himself, of whom Cyrus the Great, his son Cambyses, and the true Smerdis were probably three. He placed therefore five kings before Cyrus. Allowing to these average reigns of 20 years each, we have B.C. 658 for the traditional commencement of the monarchy.

[11] Darius Codomannus, who, according to some writers, was not a member of the royal clan. (See Strab. xv. 3, § 24.)

[12] *E. g.* the names "Jew," "Israelite," "Midianite," "Moabite," "Ammonite," "Levite," &c.

[13] I think it may be said with truth that there are no *heroës eponymi* in the Zendavesta, and none in any genuine Persian tradition. The Perses from whom the Greeks derived the nation (Herod. vii. 61), or their kings (Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 2, § 1; Plat. *Alcib.* i. p. 120, E; Apollod. ii. 4, § 5), was no real Persian hero. Neither the Zendavesta, nor even the Shahnameh, has a trace of him.

[14] See *Behistun Inscription*, col. i. p. 2; and *Detached Inscriptions*, No. 1. It has been argued that these authorities are valueless, because Darius, though he might know the names of his father and his grandfather, would not be likely to have any trustworthy knowledge of ancestors more remote than these. (*Edinburgh Review*, No. 255, p. 155.) But the force of this reasoning rests wholly on the assumption that the Persians had no historical documents belonging to the times before Cyrus. To me it seems probable that the Persians formed their alphabet soon after they settled in Zagros, and began at once to use it for historical purposes.

[15] *Behistun Inscription*, col. i. par. 2; Herod. vii. 11.

[16] A gap between Teispes and Cyrus, the grandfather of Cyrus the Great (Herod. i. 111), is filled conjecturally, rather than on any sure grounds, by a supposed Cambyses.

[17] Diod. Sic. xxxi. 19, § 1. Diodorus himself appears to suppose that the tradition refers to Cambyses, the father of the Great Cyrus, who was the fourth king after Teispes. But the genealogy which he gives would seem rather to imply an earlier monarch. (See the author's *Herodotus*, vol. iv. p. 209, 2nd edition.)

[18] Herod. i. 102.

[19] In the *Behistun Inscription* Darius says—"There are eight of my race who have been kings before me; I am the ninth. For a length of time we have been kings;"—words which imply nine similar, and consequently nine independent, monarchs. Cyrus the Great, on a brick found at Senkereh, calls himself "the powerful king, son of *Cambyses the powerful king*."

[20] *Cyrop.* i. 2, § 1.

[21] See notes 232 and 233, Chapter VI., *Third Monarchy.*

[22] Nic. Dam. Fr. 66; p. 402.

[23] He is king, according to Xenophon (*Cyrop.* l. s. c.); satrap, according to Nicolaüs (pp. 399, 405).

[24] *Cyrop.* l. s. c.

[25] Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 2.

[26] See note 240, Chapter VI., *Third Monarchy.*

[27] See text, pp. 112–115.

[28] See Æschyl. *Pers.* 758. Τιμὴν Ζεὺς ἄναξ τήνδ' ὤπασεν, ἓν' ἄνδρα πάσης Ἀσίδος μηλοτρόφου ταγεῖν, ἔχοντα σκῆπτρον εὐθυντήριον.

[29] Nic. Dam. Fr. 66. p. 406. Οἱ ἄνθρωποι ἀφίσταντο καὶ τὰ ἔθνη . . . ὥστε σπουδὴν εἶναι ἑκάστου τὸν ἕτερον φθῆναι θέλοντος.

[30] Nicolaüs (l. s. c.) makes even the Parthians, the Bactrians, and the Sacæ submit at once. But Ctesias (*Exc. Pers.* §§ 2, 3) and Herodotus (i. 153) both contradict him.

[31] Ap. Cic. *De Div.* i. 23.

[32] Nahum, ii. 9.

[33] *Exc. Pers.* l. s. c.

[34] Herod. i. 153; ii. 1.

[35] Compare text, pp. 102–105.

[36] Herod. i. 26–28.

[37] See text, pp. 104, 105. Compare Herod. i. 74.

[38] Herod. i. 28.

[39] Ibid. i. 29.

[40] Ibid. i. 46.

[41] Ibid. i. 69, 70.

[42] Ibid. i. 77. The alliance with Amasis was made before that with the Spartans,—probably as early as B.C. 557. That with Labynetus cannot have been made till B.C. 555, since it was not till that year that he became King of Babylon.

[43] Ibid. i. 76. Herodotus distinctly states that these envoys were sent into Asia Minor, before the army of Cyrus began its march.

[44] Probably within ten or twelve years; certainly within fourteen, since the earliest possible date for their conquest is the first year of Crœsus. (Herod. i. 26.)

[45] See text, p. 282.

[46] Hamilton, *Asia Minor*, vol. i. pp. 342–411; Herod. v. 52.

[47] Herod. l. s. c.

[48] Ibid. i. 76. Mr. Grote calls Pteria a city (*History of Greece*, vol. iii. p. 164, ed. of 1862); but the only authority for this is Stephen of Byzantium, who wrote towards the close of the 5th century after Christ.

[49] Herodotus speaks of Pteria as "near to Sinope" (l. s. c.), and Stephen expresses himself almost in the same way. It must therefore have lain on or near the coast.

[50] Herod. i. 77.

[51] Ibid. i. 77.

[52] Ibid. i. 79.

[53] Herodotus locates the battle in the great plain below Sardis towards the *west* (i. 80). But this is incompatible with the direction of Cyrus's march. He must certainly have approached Sardis down the valley of the Hermus, or of its tributary, the Cogamus; and the battle must have been fought either under the walls of the city, or else a few miles to the east, at the junction of the Cogamus with the Hermus. Here the valley "widens" (Fellows' *Asia Minor*, p. 289), and there is a plain, "wide, beautiful, and cultivated" (Chandler, *Travels*, vol. i. p. 289). Strabo probably meant this spot by his "plain of Cyrus" (xiii. 4, §§ 5 and 15).

[54] Herod. i. 79, sub fin.

[55] Herod. i. 80; Xen. *Cyrop.* vii. 1, § 47. The Turks in their wars with the Servians are said on one occasion to have contemplated having recourse to this same stratagem. (*Frontier Lands of the Christian and the Turk*, vol. ii. p. 330.)

[56] Herod. i. 81.

[57] Tradition said that one of the concubines of King Meles gave birth to a lion, and the Telmessian soothsayers predicted, that if the monstrous birth were carried round the city, Sardis would be impregnable. Meles, therefore, had the lion taken round the defences, but gave orders to omit one part where the rock was so steep that he thought the spell superfluous. (Herod. i. 84.) Here it was that the Persians mounted.

[58] Herodotus says that on this side the citadel was "wholly unguarded" (οὐδεὶς ἐτέτακτο φύλακος); but the very fact that a soldier dropped his helmet over the precipice shows that some of the garrison were located in this quarter.

[59] Herod. i. 86.

[60] Ibid. i. 85.

[61] The tale in Herodotus (i. 86, 87), amplified by Nicolas of Damascus (Fr. 68) is rightly rejected by historians on account of its improbability. (See Thirlwall, *History of Greece*, vol. ii. p. 167; Grote, *History of Greece*, vol. iii. p. 165.) But, as Ctesias agrees with Herodotus in stating that Crœsus was at first severely treated (*Exc. Pers.* § 4), we must regard the stories of his ill-usage as having some foundation.

[62] See below, note 187.

[63] Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 4, ad fin.; Justin, i. 9. This statement is so probable that we may accept it upon somewhat weak authority.

[64] The most probable date of the fall of Sardis is B.C. 554. Crœsus was in Egypt with Cambyses at least as late as B.C. 523. (Herod. iii. 36.)

[65] See text, pp. 435, 436.

[66] Herod. i. 171.

[67] Ibid. i. 152, 153. It is perhaps doubtful whether we ought to believe this story. As the Spartans had clearly not the slightest intention of interfering by

force of arms in Asia, they are not very likely to have made a threat which could have no effect but to exasperate the conqueror. The anecdotical details of Herodotus have rarely much historical value.

[68] Ἥ τε Βαβυλών οἱ ἦν ἐμπόδιος, καὶ τὸ Βάκτριον ἔθνος, καὶ Σάκαι τε, καὶ Αἴγυπτιοι. (Herod. i. 153, ad fin.)

[69] Herod. i. 154.

[70] Ibid. i. 161.

[71] Ibid. i. 156, 157.

[72] Charon Lampsac. Fr. 1; Herod. i. 157.

[73] This is all that can be regarded as historical in the story told by Herodotus (i. 155, 156) of the advice which Cræsus gave to Cyrus on this occasion, and of the latter's adoption of it. (See the remarks of Mr Grote, *History of Greece*, vol. iii. p. 171, ed. 1862.)

[74] Herod. i. 158–160. According to Herodotus, the Chians were bribed by the gift of a tract of land, known as the Atarnean plain, situated on the coast of Asia Minor, opposite Lesbos.

[75] Ibid. i. 161.

[76] Ibid. i. 162.

[77] Αἱρεε τὰς πόλιας χώμασι (ibid.). See above, p. 185.

[78] Herod. i. 164 and 168. The Phocæans and the Teians fled respectively to Alalia and Abdera.

[79] Herod. i. 169.

[80] Ibid. i. 143.

[81] Ibid. i. 169.

[82] Ibid. 141, 143, and 169.

[83] Ibid. i. 14, 15, 17–22.

[84] This seems to be the true meaning of the somewhat obscure passage of Herodotus (i. 170)—τὰς δὲ ἄλλας πόλιας οἰκεομένας μηδὲν ἧσσον νομιζέσθω εἶναι, κατάπερ εἰ δῆμοι εἶεν, which is so understood both by Schweighæuser and by Dindorf.

[85] These were Miletus, Myus, Priēné, Ephesus, Colophon, Lebedus, Teos, Clazomenæ, Phocæa, Samos, Chios, Erythræ, and Smyrna. (Herod. i. 142, 150.)

[86] Herod. i. 171.

[87] The only Carian people who gave Harpagus any serious trouble were the Pedasians, who defended themselves for some time in the mountain-range of Lida (ib. i. 175).

[88] Ibid. i. 176, ad fin. Mr. Grote is wrong in stating that "neither Carians *nor Kaunians* offered any serious resistance." (*History of Greece*, vol. iii. p. 178.)

[89] This is evident from the researches made in this part of Asia Minor, particularly by Sir C. Fellows, which have shown that "from the ancient Caunus in the west, as far as Cape Caledonia in the east, is to be traced the same art, sculpturing the rocks, building the tombs, inscribing the same language, and using the same mythology." (Fellows, *Essay on the relative Dates of the Lycian Monuments*, p. 5.)

[90] The Lycian language remains a puzzle to philologists, who can say little more than that it is Indo-European in its grammar, while in its vocabulary it stands quite by itself, having scarcely any analogies to any known tongue.

[91] Herodotus expressly tells us that the Lycians were not subjected by Cræsus (i. 28). He also omits the Caunians from the list of that monarch's conquests.

[92] Herod. i. 176. It was probably the remembrance of this desperate deed that nerved the Xanthians of five centuries later to act in almost exactly the same way when besieged by Brutus. (See Plutarch, *Vit. Brut.* c. 31. Ξάνθιοι μὲν οὖν διὰ πολλῶν χρόνων ὥσπερ εἱμαρμένην περίοδον διαφθορᾶς ἀποδιδόντες, τὴν τῶν προγόνων ἀνενεώσαντο τῇ τόλμῃ τύχην.)

[93] Compare Herod. i. 153 and 177.

[94] See Appendix, § 7, pp. 119, 120.

[95] Justin. i. 2; Cephalion, Fr. 1; Amm. Marc. xxiii. 6; Arnob. *adv. Gent.* i. 52.

[96] See Vol. I. pp. 500, 501; text, p. 116.

[97] Strab. xi. 11, § 3; Q. Curt. *Hist. Alex.* iv. 15, § 18.

[98] The Bactrians in the army of Xerxes carried only bows and spears of no great length. (Herod. vii. 64.)

[99] Herod. viii. 113; Arrian, *Peripl. Mar. Erythr.* p. 27; Diod. Sic. ii. 5, § 3.

[100] Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* iii. 13; Strab. xi. 11, § 1.

[101] Ctesias, *Exp. Pers.* § 2.

[102] Herod. i. 177.

[103] The marriage of Cyrus with Amytis, a daughter of Astyages, which Ctesias asserts, has probably no better foundation than that of his father with Mandané, another daughter of the same king, which Ctesias denies. The two stories are merely two different modes of connecting the great Persian conqueror with the line of Median kings, composed with the object of soothing the national vanity of the Medes. (See text, p. 109.)

[104] Since there is really no reason to believe that Bactria had formed any part of the Median Empire.

[105] See Herod. i. 153; vii. 64; ix. 113; Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* §§ 2, 3; Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* iii. 8; Strab. xi. 8, § 4.

[106] See text, p. 280.

[107] Herod. vi. 113; vii. 184; viii. 113; Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 3; Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* iii. 13.

[108] Herod. vii. 64.

[109] Herod. l. s. c.; Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* iii. 8.

[110] Ctesias makes the men amount to 300,000, and the women to 200,000. (*Exc. Pers.* l. s. c.)

[111] Herod. iii. 93. Compare the Inscriptions of Darius.

[112] Τὰ ἄνω τῆς Ἀσίης Κῦρος ἀνάστατα ἐποίεε, πᾶν ἔθνος καταστρεφόμενος καὶ οὐδὲν παριείς. (Herod. i. 177.)

[113] Several notices of nations belonging to this part of Asia are quoted by different writers from Ctesias, more especially from his tenth book, which

seem to have belonged to his account of the campaigns of Cyrus in these regions. (See Apollon. *Hist. Mirab.* 20; Steph. Byz. ad voc. Δυρβαῖοι and Χωράνιοι; Ælian, *Nat. An.* xvii. 34; &c.)

114 Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* iv. 3. Compare Strab. xi. 11, § 4; and Q. Curt. vii. 6.

115 Plin. *H. N.* vi. 23. Compare Arrian, *Hist. Ind.* i. 2, where the reduction of the entire tract between the Cabul River and the Indus—the modern Kohistan and Kaferistan—is ascribed to Cyrus.

116 Strab. xv. 2, § 10; Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* iii. 27; Diod. Sic. xvii. 81, § 1; Q. Curt. vii. 3.

117 The Persian word was probably that which Herodotus represents by Orosangæ. (See Herod. viii. 85.)

118 Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* vi. 24; Strab. xv. 1, § 5. This latter writer regards the tradition as worthless. ('Ημῖν δὲ τίς ἂν δικαία γένοιτο πίστις ἐκ τῆς τοιαύτης στρατείας τοῦ Κύρου; Ibid. § 6.)

119 The reduction of the north-eastern provinces occupied Alexander from B.C. 330 to 326. His entire career of conquest was included between B.C. 334 and B.C. 325.

120 The absence of an Oriental monarch from his capital for more than one, or at the most two years, produces almost certainly a revolution. (See text, p. 452.)

121 See Vol. I. p. 270.

122 See text, pp. 253–257.

123 Herod. i. 178. Throughout his work Herodotus regards the Babylonians as "Assyrians" (i. 106, 188, 193; iii. 155; vii. 63).

124 Is. xiii. 19.

125 Jerem. li. 41.

126 Herod. i. 190. Λόγον εἶχον τῆς πολιορκίας οὐδένα. Compare Dan. v. 1–4.

127 Jerem. li. 37.

128 Dan. iii. 1–29.

129 Herod. i. 183; Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* iii. 16.

130 See text. p. 426.

131 Isa. xivi. 1.

132 Jerem. l. 2.

133 Ibid. li. 52.

134 2 Chron. xxxvi. 22; Ezra, i. 1–11. Compare Isa. xliv. 28; xlv. 1–4.

135 Nehem. xiii. 4, 16, 23; Zech. ii. 11; vii. 2; viii. 22, 23. Compare Döllinger, *Gentile and Jew*, vol. ii. pp. 294–296 (Darnell's translation).

136 Mr. Grote supposes that Phœnicia, as well as Judæa, yielded to Cyrus. (*History of Greece*, vol. iii. p. 184, edit. of 1862.) But the statement which Herodotus (iii. 34) puts into the mouth of Crœsus—"that Cambyses excelled his father, since he possessed all his father's territories, and had added to them Egypt *and the sea*"—is sufficient to show that Herodotus at any rate regarded the submission of Phœnicia as made to Cambyses. (See Dahlmann's *Life of Herodotus*, p. 113, E. T.)

137 See text, p. 244.

138 Ezra iii. 3. The expression at the close of this verse—"according to the grant that they had of Cyrus, king of Persia"—refers, not to any grant from Cyrus of Phœnician timber, but to the *money* grant which enabled the Jews to purchase it. (Compare Ezra vi. 4.)

139 Herod. i. 153.

140 Thirlwall, *History of Greece*, vol. ii. p. 173.

141 Herod. i. 201. Ὡς τῷ Κύρῳ τοῦτο τὸ ἔθνος κατέργαστο, ἐπεθύμησε Μασσαγέτας ὑπ' ἑωυτῷ ποιήσασθαι.

142 Herod. i. 208–214.

143 Ctesias, *Exc. Pers.* § 6.

144 Ibid. § 7.

145 Ibid. § 8. Ἐτελεύτησε τρίτῃ ὕστερον ἀπὸ τοῦ τραύματος ἡμέρᾳ.

146 Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* vi. 29; Strab. xv. 3, § 7; Q. Curt. x. 1. Compare text, p. 405.

147 As Tiberius (Tacit. *Ann.* ii. 6–26), Probus, Julian the Apostate, and others.

148 The Derbices of Ctesias, who are in direct contact with Sacia and India, must belong to the region between the Upper Oxus and the Upper Indus.

149 Herod. i. 80, 186, 211; Nic. Dam. Fr. 66, p. 403.

150 Herod. i. 126; iii. 89.

151 Ibid. ix. 122.

152 Ibid. i. 126, 127, 141, 153, &c. Plut. *Apophth.* p. 172, E. F.

153 The best of the sayings ascribed to Cyrus is the following: When the Ionian Greeks, who a little before had refused his overtures, came after the fall of Sardis to offer their submission, Cyrus replied to them:—"A fisherman wanted the fish to dance for him, so he played a tune on his flute, but the fish kept still. Then he took his net and drew them out on the shore, and they all began to leap and dance. But the fisherman said, 'A truce to your dancing now, since you would not dance when I wanted you.'"

154 Beros. 14, ad fin.; Herod. i. 130, 208, 213; Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 2.

155 Herod. i. 155, 156.

156 Ibid. i. 87–90, 155, 209.

157 Ibid. iii. 89; Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 2, § 1; Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* vi. 29; &c.

158 Plut. *Apophth.* p. 172, E.; *Polit.* p. 821, E.

159 Herod. i. 153. (See text, pp. 437, 438.)

160 Dan. v. 31; ix. 1. These passages clearly imply that "Darius the Mede" ruled with a delegated authority. Hence he did not occur in the list of Babylonian kings.

161 Ezra v. 14; Haggai i. 1, 14; ii. 2.

162 Ctesias, *Exc. Pers.* §§ 3 and 7.

163 See text, pp. 402–405.

164 See Pl. LIX.

165 Ælian represents Cyrus as the founder of the Persepolitan palace. (*Hist. An.* i. 59.) It has been already observed that there are edifices on the platform having the appearance of being considerably more ancient than

those which the inscriptions prove to have been constructed by Darius Hystaspis. (See pp. 392, 393.) The short reign of Cambyses can hardly have sufficed for the erection of these antique edifices, which are therefore, in all probability, the work of Cyrus. These buildings are the Great Central Propylæa, the South-Eastern Palace, and the Hall of a Hundred Columns.

166 Herod. ii. 1; iii. 2. Pharnaspes was also (according to Herodotus) the father of Otanes the conspirator (ib. iii. 68).

167 Ibid. iii. 30; *Behistun Inscr.* col. i. par. 10. § 5.

168 Herod. iii. 31 and 88.

169 Ibid. ii. 1.

170 Ibid. i. 208; Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 8; Xen. *Cyrop.* viii. 7. § 11.

171 So Ctesias and Xenophon, who, however, differ entirely as to the provinces assigned to Smerdis.

172 The Behistun inscription shows that Smerdis was put to death before Cambyses started for Egypt. (See col. i. par 10.)

173 This is the account of the matter which Herodotus deliberately prefers, after weighing the different versions of the story (iii. 1). It is recommended by its internal probability no less than by his authority. To make it thoroughly consistent with likelihood, we have only to suppose that Nitetis was the granddaughter rather than the daughter of Apries. For other versions of the story, see Herod. iii. 2, 3; and Dino, Fr. 11. Ctesias, according to Athenæus (*Deipn.* xiii. 10; p. 560, D.), agreed with Herodotus.

174 The desert has never proved an obstacle of any importance to an invading army. It was frequently crossed and recrossed by the Egyptians themselves, by the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Greeks under Alexander, the Seleucidæ, the Ptolemies, the Romans, and the Arabs, no less than by the Persians. In modern times it has been passed by armies under Napoleon I. and Ibrahim Pacha.

175 Compare the long resistance to Artaxerxes (text, pp. 503, 504), when the sea-communication was kept open by the Athenian fleet.

176 Herod. iii. 7.

177 Ibid. iii. 19 and 34.

178 Cyprus. (Compare Herod. ii. 182 with iii. 19.) On the naval strength of Cyprus, see Herod. vi. 6, vii. 90.

179 Herod. iii. 13.

180 This date depends upon the nearly concurrent testimony of Diodorus (i. 68), Eusebius (*Chron. Can.* ii. p. 334), and Manetho (ibid. i. 20; p. 105).

181 Manetho called this king Psammicherites (Fr. 66); Ctesias (*Exc. Pers.* § 9) called him Amyrtæus. He was probably a Psamatik, who took the title of Neit-se—"son of Neith"—like his father.

182 Herod. iii. 11.

183 Ibid.

184 Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 9; Herod. l. s. c.

185 Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* l. s. c.

186 The occupation of the Nile by the Persian fleet during the whole period of Cambyses' stay in Egypt is indicated sufficiently by Herod. iii. 13 and 25, ad fin.

187 Herod. iii. 15. Ctesias says he was removed to Susa (*Exc. Pers.* § 9); but this is incompatible with his subsequent revolt and execution.

188 Herod. l. s. c.

189 Ibid. iii. 13; iv. 165; Diod. Sic. x. 14. The latter writer says that both Libyans and Cyrenæans had previously fought on the Egyptian side against Cambyses.

190 Herod. iii. 17.

191 See note 297, Chapter I.

192 Herod. i. 46.

193 Herodotus speaks only of the fleet (iii. 19); but Cambyses must have been well aware that a fleet alone could not reduce such a place as Carthage.

194 Herod. l. s. c.

195 Ibid. iii. 25, 26. Compare Diod. Sic. x. 13, § 3.

196 It is clear that the disasters which Herodotus relates (iii. 25) took place in the passage of the Nubian desert between lat. 23° and 19°, where the Nile makes its great bend to the west. Cambyses followed the ordinary caravan route, which quits the Nile at Korosko in lat. 22° 44′, and rejoins it at Abu Hamed in lat. 19° 10′—the route taken by Burckhardt in 1814, by Bruce in 1772, and by Sir S. Baker in 1861. (See Burckhardt, *Travels in Nubia*, part i. p. 171; Baker, *Albert Nyanza*, vol. i. p. 4.)

197 Πολλοὺς ἀπολέσας τοῦ στρατοῦ (Herod. iii. 25). The loss could not have been very great, or the revolt, which the Egyptians attempted, would not have been unsuccessful. Nor would a portion of the Ethiopians have been, as they were, subdued (ib. iii. 97).

198 Herod. iii. 27. The priests could no doubt declare an incarnation of Apis whenever they pleased, since they were the sole judges of the "signs" by which the presence of the god was known. (Ibid. ch. 28.)

199 Ibid. iii. 15.

200 Ibid. ch. 27.

201 Ibid. ch. 29. Compare Plut. *De Is. et Osir.*, who says that Cambyses killed the Apis calf and gave it to the dogs.

202 Herod. iii. 37.

203 Ibid.

204 Ibid. iii. 62. The particular part of Syria cannot be fixed. Herodotus says it was a town called Ecbatana, which Stephen of Byzantium identifies with Batanea or Bashan; but this is quite out of the usual route. Pliny (*H. N.* v. 19) says that there was a town on Mount Carmel called Acbatana, which, as far as the situation goes, is suitable; but we have no other evidence of the existence of such a place.

205 Herodotus regards the idea as sug-

gested by the fact that this Magus was really named Smerdis; but this, which in itself would be very unlikely, is disproved by the Behistun Inscription, which tells us (col. i. par. 11, § 2) that his real name was Gomates.

[206] *Behist. Inscr.* col. i. par. 11, § 10. The term "*uvamarshiyush*" seems to be correctly explained by Spiegel as "von selbst sterbend." (See his Glossary, *Keilinschriften*, p. 190.)

[207] I follow the authority of Herodotus (iii. 64–66) in these details, merely adding the fact stated by Darius in the Behistun Inscription, that the self-inflicted wound was intentional. The account of Ctesias, that Cambyses died from a wound which he gave himself accidentally as he was carving wood for his amusement at Babylon (Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 12), shows how the event was softened down in the later traditions of the Persians.

[208] Compare the remark of Heeren (*Manual of Ancient History*, ii. § 8; p. 94, E. T.)—"We ought to be particularly on our guard against all the evil that is related of Cambyses, inasmuch as our information respecting that prince is derived entirely from his enemies, the Egyptian priests."

[209] Atossa, who survived Salamis (Æschyl. *Pers. passim*) was actually in part contemporary with Herodotus, who can scarcely be supposed ignorant of the main facts of her history. She married, according to him, first Cambyses, then the Pseudo-Smerdis, and finally Darius. (Herod. iii. 31, 68, and 88.)

[210] Ibid. iii. 36.

[211] Ibid. ch. 35.

[212] Ibid. l. s. c.

[213] Ibid. iii. 89.

[214] See text, pp. 425, 426. Many of his troops were probably Medes, and therefore open professors of Magism.

[215] Suicides at the last moment, when there was an immediate prospect of falling into the enemy's hands, were not uncommon in the East. (See note 738, Chapter IX., *Second Monarchy*, and compare text, p. 440). But suicide when no danger pressed, and the chance of battle had not even been tried, was, to say the least, exceedingly rare.

[216] Ὀλίγωρος. Herod. iii. 89. Ὑπερήφανος. Diod. Sic. x. 13, § 1.

[217] Herod. iii. 34–36.

[218] Ibid. ch. 25.

[219] The execution of Smerdis may have been a political necessity; but it was, at any rate, indicative of a stern temper, which did not allow the domestic affections to interfere with strict justice. The measures of repression whereby revolt was stopped in Egypt were severe almost to cruelty. The command said to have been given to the troops sent against the Ammonians, that they should enslave the entire nation (Herod. iii. 25; Diod. Sic. x. 13, § 3), had nothing to justify it, and must be pronounced (if it be regarded as a reality) most barbarous. Cambyses was, no doubt, rightly called by the Persians χαλεπός—whether he deserves the ὠμὸς of Diodorus (l. s. c.) is, perhaps, open to question.

[220] Herod. iii. 34. Moderns re-echo the charge. (Thirlwall, *History of Greece*, vol. ii. p. 177; Niebuhr, *Vorträge über alte Geschichte*, vol. i. p. 153.)

[221] See text, p. 357.

[222] Herod. iii. 30. Καμβύσης δὲ, ὡς λέγουσι Αἰγύπτιοι, αὐτίκα διὰ τοῦτο τὸ ἀδίκημα ἐμάνη.

[223] Ibid. iii. 89; *Behist. Inscr.* col. i. par. 10.

[224] Mr. Grote accepts the madness of Cambyses as an established fact. (*History of Greece*, vol. iii. pp. 188, 189.) Bishop Thirlwall, with more judgment, suggests that "the actions ascribed to him are not more extravagant than those recorded of other despots whose minds were only disturbed by the possession of arbitrary power." (*History of Greece*, l. s. c.) If "the actions ascribed to him" are compatible with real sanity, much more may we conclude that his actual conduct was that of a sane person. (See above, note 208.)

[225] See text, pp. 425, 426.

[226] Herod. iii. 67.

[227] Ibid. ch. 97.

[228] See text, p. 360.

[229] Herod. iii. 68.

[230] 2 Sam. xvi. 22; Herod. iii. 88; Ockley, *History of the Saracens*, p. 436, &c.

[231] Herod. iii. 68.

[232] Ibid. ch. 69.

[233] See *Behist. Inscr.* col. i. par. 14, §§ 5 and 6. The destruction of the temples is clearly asserted. About the prohibition of the worship there is some doubt. (See Spiegel, *Keilinschriften*, pp. 83, 84.)

[234] The vengeance taken on the Magi generally at his death (Herod. iii. 79) implies this.

[235] *Behist. Inscr.* col. i. par. 13.

[236] The Samaritans, it must be admitted, had first proposed to unite with the Jews in building the temple (Ezra, iv. 2). It was when this overture—which was thought dangerous to the purity of religion—was rejected, that they became the implacable enemies of the Jews.

[237] Ezra iv. 6.

[238] Ibid. verses 7–22.

[239] Ibid. verse 23.

[240] Herod. iii. 68.

[241] Ibid. ch. 67.

[242] This is probably the sole truth contained in the view, suggested by a few casual expressions in Herodotus and strongly favored by many modern historians (Heeren, *As. Nat.* i. p. 346, E. T.; Niebuhr, *Vorträge über alte Geschichte*, i. p. 157; Grote, *History of Greece*, iii. p. 192, ed. of 1862), that the reign of the Pseudo-Smerdis had a Median character, and was in fact a recovery of their old political supremacy by the

Medes. Herodotus himself is not consistent in the maintenance of this view, which is at variance with his statements in i. 130. The great inscription of Darius is quite fatal to it, since it shows, first, that Gomates was a Persian by birth, being a native of Pissiachada, near Parga (*Fahraj*) in the country between Shiraz and Kerman; and second, that Persia took the most prominent part in establishing his rule. The ground of the mistake in moderns lies in their supposition that all Magi were Medes, which is a complete misconception. The Magi were spread from Cappadocia (Strab. xv. 3, § 15) to the borders of Kerman (*Behist. Inscr.* col. i. 11, § 3), being everywhere the priest-caste of the pre-Arian inhabitants. The only peculiarity of their position in Media was that there they had been adopted into the national tribes, and had become the priests of the conquering nation.

243 Bactria, Sogdiana, Chorasmia, Aria, Zarangia, Sattagydia, Gandaria, remain faithful to Darius through all the subsequent troubles. In this region, the original seat of the religion, a sympathy with the Zoroastrian champion is shown that we look for elsewhere in vain.

244 *Behist. Inscr.* col. i. par. 13, §§ 3-5.

245 Herod. iii. 70.

246 *Behist. Inscr.* col. i. par. 13, § 6; Herod. l. s. c.

247 Herod. vii. 11; *Behist. Inscr.* col. i. par. 1.

248 Herod. i. 209, 210.

249 Herodotus says he was about twenty (*ἡλικίην ἐς εἰκοσί κου μάλιστα ἔτεα*) at the time of the expedition against the Massagetæ (B.C. 529). This would make him about twenty-eight in B.C. 522.

250 Herod. iii. 70; Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 15; *Behist. Inscr.* col. ii. par. 16.

251 I am compelled to use this vague phrase from the impossibility of determining what the capital city of the Pseudo-Smerdis was. Herodotus imagines it to be Susa; but the palace there seems to have been founded by Darius. (Plin. *H. N.* vi. 27, § 133; Loftus, *Chaldæa and Susiana*, p. 372.) I incline to think that Cyrus, Cambyses, and the Pseudo-Smerdis all held their court principally or solely at Ecbatana.

252 Herod. iii. 71-76.

253 Ibid. iii. 77-79; Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 14. The particulars of the struggle are related quite differently by the two writers.

254 See text, pp. 8, 9.

255 *Behist. Inscr.* col. i. par. 13, §§ 9, 10.

256 *Behist. Inscr.* col. iv. par. 18. Ctesias (*Exc. Pers.* l. s. c.), Herodotus (iii. 70-79), and Plato (*Leg.* iii. p. 695. C.), agree on this point with the inscription.

257 *Behist. Inscr.* col. i. par. 13, § 9.

258 Herod. iii. 79.

259 Ibid. Compare Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 15.

260 Herod. iii. 80-87.

261 Ibid. iii. 80; vi. 43.

262 The supposition of Heeren (*As. Nat.* i. p. 348) and Niebuhr (*Vorträge über alte Geschichte*, i. p. 348) that the Seven already occupied this position, though receiving no confirmation from the inscriptions, is entitled to consideration. The following are arguments in its favor:—1. Herodotus calls the Seven *ἄνδρας τοὺς Περσέων πρώτους* before the death of the Pseudo-Smerdis (iii. 77) 2. The inter-marriage law, supposed by Herodotus to have dated from the accession of Darius, appears to have prevailed previously. At least, all the known marriages of the earlier period would have come under it—*e.g.*, Atossa and Pharnaces, an ancestor of Otanes, (Diod. Sic. xxxi. 26, § 1); Cyrus and Cassandané, a sister of Otanes (Herod. ii. 1; iii. 68); Cambyses and Phædima, a daughter of Otanes (ib iii. 68); Darius and a sister of Gobryas (ib. vii. 2).

263 *Behist. Inscr.* col. i. par. 13, § 9.

264 Herod. iii. 84, 118.

265 Ibid. ch. 83. It is uncertain what exactly we are to understand by this; but there can be no doubt that it involved some real privileges.

266 Ibid. ch. 84. *Ἐσθῆτά τε Μηδικὴν ἔτεος ἑκάστου, καὶ τὴν πᾶσαν δωρεὴν, ἢ γίνεται ἐν Πέρσῃσι τιμιωτάτη.*

267 *Behist. Inscr.* col. i. par. 14, §§ 5, 6.

268 Darius does not say that he persecuted; but he exhorts his successors, in the strongest terms, to put to death all "liars" (*Behist. Inscr.* col. iv. par. 5, § 3; par. 14, §§ 2, 3); by which he seems to mean all renegades from the Zoroastrian faith.

269 Ezra v. 2; Haggai i. 14. According to Jewish modes of reckoning, the "four-and-twentieth day of the sixth month of the second year of Darius" would be September, B.C. 521 — eight and a half months after Darius's accession.

270 Ezra vi. 8, 9.

271 Ezra vi. 10.

272 See Vol. I. pp. 501, 502.

273 Herod. iii. 126; iv. 166. Compare text, pp. 464, 465.

274 This seems to be implied in the moral reflections which Darius appends to his account of the revolts and their suppression, where the crime against which he protests is not rebellion, but "lying"—*i.e.*, false religion. (*Behist. Inscr.* col. iv. *passim.*)

275 The two revolts of Babylon, for instance, must have been wholly unconnected with Magism.

276 *Behist. Inscr.* col. i. par. 16, §§ 2-7

277 Ibid. §§ 8-13. I suspect that Nabonidus had actually a son of this name, borne him by Nitocris, and named after his grandfather, the great Nebuchadnez-

zar. (See note 185, Chapter VIII., *Fourth Monarchy*; and compare text, pp. 463, 464.)

278 *Behist. Inscr.* col. i. par. 19; col. ii. par. 1. As this was the only siege of Babylon conducted by Darius in person, it should have been the occasion of the romantic incidents related by Herodotus towards the close of his Third Book (chs. 150–159), if those incidents had been historical; but there is every reason to believe that they belong to Oriental romance. (See the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii. p. 441, note 1, 2nd edition.)

Incidents probably consequent upon this siege are the opening of the tomb of Nitocris, and the attempted plunder of the image of Bel, related by Herodotus in his First Book (chs. 183 and 187).

279 *Behist. Inscr.* col. i. par. 17.

280 Ibid. col. ii. par. 3.

281 The name assumed by Martes is expressed in the Persian by *Imanish* (Imanes). This is probably a representation of the old *Umman*, which is found in so many royal Susianian names towards the close of the Assyrian Empire. (See note 630, Chapter IX., Vol. I., *Second Monarchy*.

282 *Behist. Inscr.* col. ii. par. 4.

283 Herod. iii. 70; Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 14; *Behist. Inscr.* col. iv. par. 18, § 7.

284 *Behist. Inscr.* col. ii. par. 6 to par. 11.

285 Ibid. col. ii. par. 16.

286 Ibid. col. ii. par. 12.

287 Μῆδοι . . . ἀπέστησαν ἀπὸ Δαρείου, ἀποστάντες δὲ ὀπίσω κατεστράφθησαν μάχῃ νικηθέντες.—Herod. i. 130.

288 *Behist. Inscr.* col. ii. par. 13.

289 So far as any substratum of historical truth is to be discerned in the Book of Judith, the allusion would be to this rebellion, its suppression, and its further consequences. Arphaxad, who dwelt at Ecbatana, and was taken at Rhages, represents Xathrites, whose real name was Phraortes; Nabuchodonosor is Darius. The notes of time (iv. 3 and 5) suit this period.

290 *Behist. Inscr.* col. ii. par. 16.

291 Ibid. col. iii. par. 1 and 2.

292 Ibid. col. ii. par. 14. It is curious to find that Arbela, which had been a favorite city for executions under the Assyrian monarchs, retained the same character under the Persians, while under the Parthians it became a place of royal sepulture. (Dio Cass. lxxviii. 1.)

293 *Behist. Inscr.* col. iii. par. 3 and 4.

294 Ibid. col. iii. par. 5.

295 It is possible that the second Pseudo-Smerdis, like the first, favored Magism. There was undoubtedly a party amongst the Persians themselves to whom the Zoroastrian zeal of Darius was distasteful.

296 *Behist. Inscr.* col. iii. par. 6.

297 Ibid. col. iii. par. 9 to par. 12.

298 Ibid. par. 8. Compare text, pp. 363, 462, 463.

299 *Behist. Inscr.* par. 13 and 14.

300 Herod. iii. 120–125. For the alliance between Cambyses and Polycrates, see Herod. iii. 44.

301 Ibid. iii. 126.

302 Ibid. l. s. c.

303 Ibid. iii. 128.

304 It is doubtful whether the affair of Aryandes ought to be placed as early as this. Probability is in favor of his having assumed his quasi-sovereignty during the time of general disturbance; but his revolt, or at any rate its punishment, is made to fall by Herodotus (iv. 145) after Darius's Scythian expedition, which cannot well be placed before B.C. 510; but the authority of Herodotus for the date of an outlying event in the earlier part of the reign of Darius is not very great.

305 Herod. iv. 166.

306 Persian coins have been found bearing on one side a legend which has been read as AYQA or ΔWAYQA. (See the author's *Herodotus*, vol. iv. p. 25, note 1, 2nd edition.)

307 Herod. iv. 166.

308 See col. v. of the Inscription.

309 The evidence is that of the monthly dates given throughout the Inscription, which indicate to one acquainted with the ancient Persian calendar the lapse of some five or six years. (See *Journal of the Asiatic Society*, vol. xi. pp. 189–191.)

310 See Vol. I. p. 374.

311 Thirlwall, *History of Greece*, vol. ii. p. 185. (Compare Niebuhr, *Vorträge über alte Geschichte*, vol. i. p. 159.)

312 The word *khshatrapâ*, or *khshatrapâva* (Spiegel), is found twice in the inscriptions of Darius. *Behist. Inscr.* col. iii. par. 3, § 4; par. 9, § 2.) The Greeks adopted it from the Persians. (Herod. iii. 89.)

313 Herodotus says the number of satrapies was twenty, including therein India (iii. 84–94). Darius, in the Behistun Inscription, makes the provinces twenty-three, without India, but including Persia. In an inscription at Persepolis, where India occurs but Persia is omitted, he makes them either twenty-three or twenty-four. Finally, in the legend upon his tomb, which was no doubt later, he enumerates twenty-nine.

314 No doubt they were generally persons of high rank, and Persians; but the case of Xenagoras, the Halicarnassian Greek, shows that members of the subject nations might be appointed. (Herod. ix. 107.)

315 Ibid. iii. 128; Thucyd. i. 129; Xen. *Hell.* iii. 4, § 25.

316 Xen. *Anab.* i. 2, § 7; *Hell.* iv. 1, § 15.

317 Herod. iii. 127.

318 Xen. *Hell.* iv. 1, § 15; *Œcon.* iv. 20, *Cyrop.* viii. 6, § 12.

319 Ælian, *Var. Hist.* xii. 1; Xen. *Hell.* iii. 1. § 10.

320 Xen. *Anab.* i. 1, § 7; Herod. vi. 4. This, of course, implied the power of inflicting the minor punishment of mutilation. (Xen. *Anab.* i. 9, § 13.)

321 Xen. *Hell.* iii. 1, §§ 10-12; Ælian. *Var. Hist.* l. s. c.

322 Xen. *Anab.* i. 9. § 22; *Hell.* l. s. c.

323 Ibid. *Ages.* iii. § 3. Ælian (l. s. c.) speaks of fathers as *often* compelled by satraps to yield their daughters to be inmates of the satrapial harems (τυράννων βιασαμένων ἢ σατραπῶν πολλάκις).

324 On occasion of a great war, offensive or defensive, a levy *en masse* of the subject populations was called for. (Herod. vii. 19, 21, 61, *et seqq.*; Æsch. *Pers.* 12-64; Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* iii. 8.)

325 Or perhaps Persians, Medes, and Hyrcanians. (See note 513, Chapter III.)

326 As Memphis (Herod. iii. 91), Sardis (ib. v. 101), and Babylon (ib. i. 192).

327 See Herod. vii. 98; Æsch. *Pers.* 328; Xen. *Anab.* i. §§ 12-27.

328 Xen. *Hell.* iv. 1, § 1; Theopomp. Fr. 198.

329 Herod. vii. 98.

330 As the Pisidians (Xen. *Anab.* i. 1, § 11) and the Uxians (Arr. *Exp. Alex.* iii. 17).

331 Strabo enumerates under this category the five tribes of the Mardians, the Uxians, the Cyrnaeans, the Cossæans, and the Paretaceni (xi. 13, § 6). Some of them were said even to have levied a "black-mail" upon the Persian monarch. (Nearch. ap. eund. l. s. c.)

332 Herod. iii. 97.

333 Ælian, *Var. Hist.* i. 31; Herod. l. s. c.

334 Ælian, l. s. c.

335 Nic. Dam. Fr. 66; p. 406.

336 Herod. iii. 90-94.

337 Ibid. ch. 95.

338 Ibid. i. 192. The proportion is so enormous that we may well suspect the statement of error. Perhaps Babylonia paid one-third of the *corn* required from the provinces.

339 Ibid. iii. 91.

340 Strab. xi. 13, § 8; 14, § 9.

341 This seems to be the fact somewhat obscurely intimated by Herodotus (iii. 90).

342 Herod. iii. 92.

343 Ibid. v. 42.

344 There is no positive proof of this, but it is the usual custom in the East; and if the Persian system had been different, we should probably have had some indication of it.

345 This is probably about the present population of the countries included in the old Persian Empire. It gives an average of twenty to the square mile, which is less than we now find in any country in Europe except Norway.

346 Mr. Grote's estimate of the money tribute (*History of Greece*, vol. iii. p. 201) at a little more than four and a quarter millions sterling (4,254,000*l.*) is a high one. No one probably would regard the tribute in kind as exceeding the value of the money tribute.

347 I should myself incline to estimate the population of the empire at fifty millions, and the money tribute at about three and a half millions. I should suppose the value of the tribute in kind to have been somewhat less—say two and a half millions. This would make the average taxation less than two shillings and fivepence a head.

348 Herod. iii. 117, *ad fin.*

349 Ibid. A similar practice prevails in modern Persia. (See Chardin, *Voyage en Perse*, tom. iii. p. 100; Chesney, *Euphrates Expedition*, vol. ii. p. 660.)

350 Herod. ii. 149; iii. 91.

351 Heeren, *Asiatic Nations*, vol. i. p. 411, E. T. (Compare Herod. i. 192.)

352 The oppression under which modern Persia suffers is attributable in a great measure to the revenue not being fixed. The monarch is thus interested in the exactions of his officers, and is very unlikely to check or punish them. (See Chardin, *Voyage*, tom. ii. pp. 300, 308, and 309.)

353 That this was the original idea of satrapial government is asserted very positively by Xenophon. (*Cyrop.* viii. 6, § 3.) A modified continuation of the system to his own day is implied in Xen. *Œcon.* iv. 9, 10. The narrative of Herodotus is, I think, on the whole, in favor of the view that the commandants were independent under Darius. (See particularly v. 25, 116-122; vi. 42, 43, 94.) Bishop Thirlwall, however, seems to doubt if the separation of the civil from the military power was ever carried out in act. (*History of Greece*, vol. ii. pp. 187, 188.)

354 On the office of secretary, see Herod. iii. 128. It has its counterpart in modern Persia. (Chardin, tom. ii. p. 302.)

355 See note 334, Chapter III.

356 *Cyrop.* viii. 6, § 16. Xenophon says the system continued to his day (ἔτι καὶ νῦν διαμένει).

357 Herod. iii. 70; v. 25; vi. 94; vii. 7, 72, 82; ix. 113; *Behist. Inscr.* col. iii. par. 16; Thucyd. i. 115; Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 38; Xen. *Anab.* i. 9, § 7; Diod. Sic. xi. 69, § 2, &c.

358 Herod. v. 116; vi. 43; vii. 73; Xen. *Hell.* v. 1, § 28; Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* i. 16. Compare the proposal of Pausanias (Thucyd. i. 128).

359 As in the Lydian and Phrygian satrapies, which were exposed to attacks from the Greeks, and in Egypt, where the sullen temper of the natives continually threatened rebellion.

360 See Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* iii. 8; and compare Xen. *Œcon.* iv. § 11.

361 Some writers ascribe to Darius a "system of roads" (Grote, *History of Greece*, vol. iii. p. 204), or at any rate the construction of a "high road" between

Sardis and Susa (Thirlwall, *History of Greece*, vol. ii. p. 185); but this is a mode of speech very liable to misconception. Roads, in our sense of the term, are still scarcely existent in Western Asia, where lines of route, marked merely by the footprints of travellers, take their place. No material has been laid down along these routes, nor have even the spade and pickaxe been used excepting where the routes cross the mountains.

[362] This seems to be the meaning of the ἡμερησίη ὁδὸς of Herodotus (viii. 98), which is better explained by Xenophon (*Cyrop.* viii. 6, § 17). It was not the distance a horse ridden gently could accomplish in the entire day, but the distance that he could bear to be galloped once a day. From the account which Herodotus gives of the post-route between Sardis and Susa (v. 52), we may gather that the Persians fixed this distance at about fourteen miles.

[363] *Cyrop.* viii. 7, § 18.

[364] Καταλύσιες κάλλισται. (Herod. v. 52.)

[365] See text, p. 468. Herodotus (l. s. c.) expressly assures his readers that the route from Sardis to Susa was "safe."

[366] Mr. Grote assumes this (*History of Greece*, l. s. c.); but it is not implied in Herod. iv. 166.

[367] The derivation from *dara*, a supposed old Persian word for "king," falls with the discovery that the Achæmenian Persians had no such word. The theory of derivation from an earlier Darius has only the weak authority of a Scholiast to support it. (Schol. ad Aristoph. *Eccles.* 598.)

[368] How large the scale was may be seen by the story of Pythius, who had nearly four millions of darics in his possession shortly after the accession of Xerxes. (Herod. vii. 28.)

[369] Herod. iv. 166.

[370] The only darics that can be assigned to the reign of Darius Hystaspis are those that have the figure of a king with a bow and javelin on one side, and an irregular depression, or *quadratum incusum*, on the other. (See Pl. LVII. Fig. 4.)

[371] See text, p. 465.

[372] Herod. vii. 194.

[373] Plin. *H. N.* vi. 27; Loftus, *Chaldæa and Susiana*, p. 372.

[374] See the arguments of Sir H. Rawlinson to this effect in the *Journal of the Asiatic Society*, vol. xi. p. 321.

[375] *Journal of the Asiatic Society*, vol. xi. pp. 272, 273.

[376] See Pl. XLVI. Fig. 2.

[377] Ctesias, *Exc. Pers.* § 15.

[378] *Journal of the Asiatic Society*, vol. xi. p. 193.

[379] Ibid. pp. 279–282.

[380] *I.e.* Cyrus. See the authorities quoted in note 474, Chapter III.

[381] See Clinton, *Fasti Hellenici*, vol. ii. p. 379. Mr. Grote's date of B.C. 516–515 for the Scythian expedition, for which he alleges Thucyd. vi. 59, appears to me improbable.

[382] Κάπυλος. (Herod. iii. 89.)

[383] Herod. iii. 134.

[384] An insignificant expedition had been sent against Samos, probably as early as B.C. 517. The island was reduced and barbarously treated. (Herod. iii. 141–149.)

[385] See text, pp. 441, 442.

[386] Herod. iii. 102; viii. 113; Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* iv. 25; v. 17, &c.

[387] The approximate date of the Indian expedition is gathered from a comparison of the three lists of Persian provinces contained in the inscriptions of Darius. In the earliest, that of Behistun, India does not appear at all. It was, therefore, not conquered by B.C. 516. In the second, that of Persepolis, India appears, a solitary addition to the earlier list. In the third, that of Nakhsh-i-Rustam, India is mentioned, together with a number of new provinces, among which is "Scythia beyond the sea." We see by this that the Indian preceded the Scythian expedition. If that took place B.C. 508, the Indian must have fallen between B.C. 515 and B.C. 509.

[388] Herod. iv. 44. This exploration was conducted by a certain Scylax, a native of Caryanda in Caria, who is said to have written an account of his voyage in Greek. A few fragments of this work, perhaps, remain.

[389] I regard the conquest and annexation of Scinde as implied in the continued "use of the sea in those parts" whereof Herodotus speaks (τῇ θαλάσσῃ ταύτῃ ἐχρᾶτο, iv. 44, *sub fin.*). A trade could not have been permanently established between the mouths of the Indus and the Persian Gulf unless the Indus itself had been under Persian control; and the command of such a river implies the submission of the natives along its banks.

[390] Herod. iii. 94–96.

[391] Ib. iv. 44. Compare above, note 389.

[392] See Herod. vii. 85, and the remark of Blakesley on the passage.

[393] Herod. i. 153; Diod. Sic. ix. 36. See text, p. 438.

[394] Herod. iii. 136–138.

[395] As by the story which Athenæus tells of a Crotoniat custom which grew up out of the circumstances of the escape. (*Deipn.* xii. p. 522, A.)

[396] Thirlwall, *History of Greece*, vol. ii. p. 193.

[397] Maps appear to have been invented before this time, by Anaximander (Strab. i. 1, § 11; Agathem. i. 1; Diog. Laert. ii. 1).

[398] If this remark requires any qualification it would be with respect to the extreme east. The possession of the Punjab opens the way to the valley of the Ganges, and thence to the conquest of the entire Indian peninsula. Darius

might conceivably have made the attempt which the soldiers of Alexander declined and those of Baber effected; but the Persian possession of the Punjab was too recent for that country to have been a convenient basis of operations.

399 See text, pp. 294, 295; and compare Vol. I. pp. 491–496.

400 As Mr. Grote regards it. (*History of Greece*, vol. iii. p. 224.) The sound judgment of Bp. Thirlwall has seen the matter in a far truer light (*History*, vol. ii. pp. 198, 199.

401 Thirlwall, l. s. c.

402 Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 16. The fleet consisted of thirty penteconters, which would convey about 2000 men.

403 Herod. iv. 87.

404 Ibid. ch. 89. Τὸ ναυτικὸν ἦγον Ἰωνές τε καὶ Αἰολέες καὶ Ἑλλησπόντιοι.

405 Herodotus calls the number 700,000 (iv. 87), Ctesias 800,000 (*Exc. Pers.* § 17).

406 Herod. iv. 88.

407 Ibid. ch. 93.

408 On the line of route followed by Darius, see a paper in the *Journal of the Geographical Society*, vol. xxiv. pp. 45 et seqq.

409 Herod. iv. 93.

410 Ibid. ch. 97.

411 Ibid. ch. 120.

412 See text, p. 332.

413 Herod. iv. 98, 136.

414 Ibid. ch. 130. Herodotus supposes that the Scythians *allowed* Darius to make these captures; but it is far more probable that they took place in spite of their efforts to place all their cattle out of his reach.

415 Ibid. chas. 122 and 140.

416 Herod. ch. 123.

417 Ibid. chs. 135 and 136. Ctesias, however, made the loss of Darius amount to 80,000 men. (*Exc. Pers.* § 17.)

418 Herod. iv. 133, 136–140.

419 *Nakhsh-i-Rustam Inscr.*, par. 3, § 7.

420 Herod. iv. 143.

421 Herod. v. 2.

422 Ibid. v. 10. Compare vii. 110.

423 Ibid. v. 15.

424 Darius had seen a Pæonian woman of great beauty at Sardis, who bore a pitcher of water, led a horse, and span at the same time. His admiration of the sight induced him, we are told, to require the transportation of the whole people into Asia Minor. (Herod. v. 12–14.)

425 Compare the expressions in Herod. v. 2, ad fin., and v. 10, ad fin. The latter passage qualifies the former.

426 Ibid. v. 17.

427 Ibid. v. 18–20.

428 Ibid. v. 21; viii. 136.

429 Herod. v. 23.

430 Ibid. v. 25.

431 Ibid. chs. 26 and 27.

432 Ibid. ch. 25. Compare chs. 49 and 52.

433 By Strabo's time Susiana had become an actual part of Persia. (Strab. xv. 3. § 2. Σχεδόν δέ τι καὶ ἡ Σουσὶς μέρος γεγένηται τῆς Περσίδος.)

434 Niebuhr, *Vorträge*, vol. i. pp. 375–377; Thirlwall, vol. ii. pp. 207–209; Grote, vol. iii. pp. 241–244.

435 Herod. v. 11, 24; Thucyd. vi. 59.

436 Herod. iv. 137; v. 11. Bp. Thirlwall seems to me to go too far when he says that the tyrants had been "forced upon the Ionians by the Persians" (vol. ii. p. 210). Despotic government grew up among the Ionian states quite independently of the Persians (Herod. i. 20; iii. 39); and indeed seems to have been the only form of government for which they were as yet fitted (ib. iii. 143).

437 No such union of their forces had ever taken place before. From it the Greeks themselves may have first learnt their own strength, while at the same time they acquired the habit of acting together.

438 Herod. iv. 137–142.

439 As son-in-law of Histiæus. Aristagoras would naturally sympathize with the tyrants.

440 See Herod. v. 36, where Hecatæus represents pure reason apart from passion.

441 Ibid. v. 37.

442 Ibid. v. 37, 38.

443 Ibid. ch. 51. It is scarcely conceivable that Aristagoras should really have proposed to the Spartans a march against Susa. He may, however, have suggested an attack on Sardis.

444 Ibid. ch. 97. Οἱ Μιλήσιοι τῶν Ἀθηναίων εἰσὶ ἄποικοι. Compare i. 146; Strab. xiv. 1, § 3.

445 Herod. v. 99.

446 Ibid. ch. 97.

447 Ibid. ch. 99.

448 Ibid. chs. 100–103.

449 As the Perinthians, Selymbrians, and Byzantines. (Ibid. vi. 33.)

450 Ibid. v. 103.

451 Ibid. ch. 104. The revolt of Cyprus was especially important, as implying disaffection on the part of a people mainly Phœnician in race (Scylax, *Peripl.* § 103; Theopomp. Fr. 111; Apollodor. iii. 14, § 3), and with strong Phœnician sympathies (Herod iii. 19). When Cyprus revolted, the allegiance of Phœnicia must have hung trembling in the balance.

452 The date of this inroad is fixed by Herod. vi. 40 to B.C. 495 or 496. The burning of Sardis was in B.C. 499.

453 Herod. vii. 140.

454 Herodotus blames the Athenians for taking any part in the insurrection (v. 97). They are far more open to blame for having withdrawn their support on the first check. Had Athens had the wisdom to give the war a hearty support, she might have saved the soil of European Greece from invasion.

455 Herod. v. 112.

456 Ibid. ch. 116.

457 Ibid. chs. 118–121.

458 Ibid. ch. 122.

459 Ibid. ch. 123.

460 Ibid. chs. 124-126; Thucyd. iv. 102.

461 Herod. vi. 6.

462 Ibid. ch. 8. The details are here interesting, as showing the relative naval strength of the several states. Chios sent the largest contingent, viz., 100 ships; Miletus sent 80; Lesbos, 70; Samos, 60; Teos, 17; Priêne, 12; Erythræ, 8; Myus and Phocæa, 3 each. Total, 353. The number of ships on the Persian side was 600.

463 Ibid. chs. 11 and 12.

464 Ibid. ch. 13. It must be remarked, in mitigation of the Samian treachery, that it followed on the insubordination and laziness, which would alone have ruined the cause.

465 Ibid. chs. 14 and 15.

466 Ibid. ch. 18.

467 Ibid. ch. 20.

468 Herod. ch. 32. Παῖδας τοὺς εὐειδεστάτους ἐξέταμνον, καὶ ἐποίευν ἀντὶ ἐνορχίων εἶναι εὐνούχους, καὶ παρθένους τὰς καλλιστευούσας ἀνασπαστοὺς παρὰ βασιλέα.

469 Ibid. ch. 31.

470 Ibid. ch. 33. This is probably the burning mentioned by Strabo (xiii. 1, § 22), which some supposed to have been a measure of precaution against a possible invasion of Asia Minor by the Scythians.

471 Herod. vi. 41.

472 Ibid. v. 105; vi. 94.

473 Ibid. vi. 43.

474 Ibid. Herodotus does not actually state that Mardonius was instructed to act as he did; but I cannot conceive that he could have ventured on making such a change without the royal sanction.

475 See text, p. 481.

476 Herod. vi. 46, 47; Arrian, Fr. 11; Eustath. ad. Dionys. Perieg. l. 528.

477 Herod. vi. 44, 45.

478 Ibid. vi. 94, 95. According to Herodotus, this line of attack had been pointed out to the Persians by Aristagoras. (Ibid. v. 31.)

479 Ibid. vi. 101.

480 It has been thought unnecessary to give the details of this expedition, which may be found in every history of Greece, and are known to most persons. For some interesting points connected with the battle itself, the reader is referred to the author's *Herodotus*, vol. iii. pp. 426-436, 2nd edition.

481 Herod. vi. 118. According to Ctesias, Datis was killed at Marathon, and the Athenians refused to give up his body. (*Exc. Pers.* § 18.) It seems almost impossible that this could have happened without Herodotus becoming aware of it.

482 Herod. vii. 1.

483 Ibid.

484 Ibid. vii. 2.

485 Ibid. chs. 2-4.

486 This is implied in the statement of Herodotus (i. 209), that Darius was 20 years of age in the last year of Cyrus, which was B.C. 529. Ctesias, however, made Darius live 72 years, and reign 31. (*Exc. Pers.* § 19.)

487 See particularly Mure, *Literature of Greece*, vol. iv. p. 476.

488 Such as Megabazus, Otanes, Hymeas (Herod. v. 116, 122), Mardonius, and others.

489 See especially the *Behistun Inscription*, col. ii. par. 6 to par. 12.

490 Herod. vii. 2, 4.

491 See the anecdotes told of him by Herodotus (iii. 160; iv. 143).

492 Ibid. iii. 140; v. 11; vi. 30.

493 Ibid. iv. 204; vi. 20, 119.

494 See the cases of Intaphernes (Herod. iii. 119); Orœtes (iii. 127, 128); Œobazus (iv. 84); Aryandes (iv. 166); and Sandoces (vii. 194), which last instance illustrates at once the severity and the clemency of the monarch.

495 Herod. vii. 2. Compare i. 208.

496 One of the main objects of the law was probably to secure the succession to an adult, competent to govern. As Darius did not marry Atossa till B.C. 521 (Herod. iii. 88), and the Scythian expedition was at latest in B.C. 507, Xerxes could not at that time have been more than 13 years old.

497 Herod. vii 2.

498 Ἡ γὰρ Ἄτοσσα εἶχε τὸ πὰν κράτος. Herod. vii. 3.

499 *I.e.* The eldest son born to Darius after he became king.

500 Herod. vii. 5.

501 See text, pp. 484, 485.

502 Herod. vii. 6.

503 Ibid. Herodotus assigns considerable weight to the influence of Onesicritus, an oracle-monger, whom the Pisistratidæ had brought with them to Susa: but it is not likely that Xerxes would have put much faith in the oracles of idolaters.

504 Demaratus is not mentioned among those who encouraged the expedition; but he probably hoped something from it. (See Herod. vii. 235.)

505 Ibid. vii. 18, 19. If there is any truth in the story told by Herodotus of Xerxes' dreams, and the vision seen by Artabanus (vii. 12-18), they must have been the result of contrivance—a contrivance which would imply that the officers about the court favored the expedition.

506 Τοῦτο ἐφρόντιζον, ὅκως μὴ λείψομαι τῶν πρότερον γενομένων ἐν τίμῃ τῆδε, μηδὲ ἐλάσσω προσκτήσομαι δύναμιν Πέρσῃσι. (Herod. vii. 8, § 1.)

507 Ibid. § 2. Compare chs. 5, 9, and 11.

508 Ibid. ch. 7.

509 Ctesias, *Exc. Pers.* §§ 21, 22.

510 Ibid. § 22. Compare Herod. i. 183; Strab. xvi. 1, § 5; Arrian, *Exp Alex.* vii. 17; Ælian, *Var. Hist.* xiii. 3. Arrian places the destruction of the Babylonian temples after the expedition to Greece (ὅτε ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ὀπίσω ἀνενόστησεν); but Ctesias outweighs this late authority.

511 Herod. vii. 20. Ἐπὶ τέσσερα ἔτεα πλήρεα παραρτέετο στρατιήν τε καὶ τὰ πρόσφορα τῇ στρατιῇ.

512 Ibid. ch. 4.

513 Ibid. Compare chs. 19 and 26.

514 Ibid. ch. 21.

515 Æschyl. *Pers.* 343–345; Herod. vii. 83.

516 Herod. vii. 97, ad fin.

517 Ibid. ch. 25.

518 Thirlwall, *History of Greece*, vol. ii. pp. 251, 252; Herod. vii. 24.

519 See text, p. 477; Herod. iv. 88.

520 See text, pp. 335, 336.

521 Papyrus and hemp intermixed, in the proportion of two strands of the former to one of the latter. (Herod. vii. 36.)

522 The ordinary Persian river-bridges were single. (Xen. *Anab.* i. 2, § 5; ii. 4, § 24.) So were the bridges of Darius across the Bosphorus (Herod. iv. 87, 88) and the Danube (ibid. ch. 97). The only double bridge which I find mentioned beside this across the Hellespont was thrown by Xerxes' orders at this same time over the Strymon. (Herod. vii. 24 and 114.)

523 Φραγμὸς ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν. (Herod. vii. 36.)

524 Æschyl. *Pers.* 71. Πολύγομφον δέσμα.

525 This would have been "easy" in the opinion of Bishop Thirlwall, who can scarcely have realized to himself what the task of embarking and disembarking a million of men, with the necessary accompaniment of baggage, and with 200,000 or 300,000 animals—horses, mules, asses, and camels—would really have been.

526 A delay of three or four weeks in one place would almost certainly have bred a pestilence, from the accumulation of offal and excrement. Great armies are under a necessity of constant movement.

527 Herod. vii. 56.

528 The story of the Hellespontian Greek who, on witnessing the passage of the army over the bridge, addressed Xerxes as "Zeus," is perhaps not true; but it expresses very forcibly the effect on men's minds of the grand way in which everything was done.

529 Leake, *Northern Greece*, iii. p. 145; Bowen, *Mount Athos*, p. 58.

530 See a paper by Captain Spratt in the *Journal of the Geographical Society*, vol. xvii., from which the chart (see Pl. LXI.) representing the present state of the canal and the adjacent country is taken.

531 Herod. vii. 24.

532 The practice of dragging ships across isthmuses, with or without an artificial run or groove, became common in Greece about 50 or 60 years later (Thucyd. iii. 81; iv. 8; &c.); but there is no evidence that it had commenced at this period.

533 See Herod. vii. 35; and compare the remarks of Mr. Grote (*History of Greece*, vol. iii. pp. 372, 373). The subject will be recurred to hereafter.

534 Herod. vii. 37.

535 Ibid. ch. 36.

536 Mr. Grote (iii. p. 387) makes the nations forty-six, and professes to enumerate them, but gives only forty names. Herodotus gave 49, and now gives 48. One name (vii. 76, ad init.) is lost; and one (Caspeiri, vii. 86) is probably corrupt. The remaining 47 are the following: Persians, Medes, Cissians, Hyrcanians, Assyrians, Chaldæans, Bactrians, Sacæ, Indians, Arians, Parthians, Chorasmians, Sogdians, Gandarians, Dadicæ, Caspians, Sarangians, Pactyes, Utians, Mycians, Paricanians, Arabs, Ethiopians of Africa, Ethiopians of Asia, Libyans, Paphlagonians, Matienians, Ligyes, Mariandynians, Cappadocians, Phrygians, Armenians, Lydians, Mysians, Asiatic Thracians, Cabalians, Milyans, Moschians, Tibarenians, Macronians, Mosynœcians, Mares, Colchians, Alarodians, Sapeirians, Erythræan Islanders, and Sagartians. (Herod. vii. 61–80, and 85.)

537 Herod. vii. 184.

538 Ibid. ch. 60.

539 See text, pp. 328, 329.

540 The 47 nations, who, according to Herodotus, furnished the foot, were marshalled in 28 bodies, under 28 commanders.

541 Herod. vii. 40, 41.

542 Ibid. ch. 83.

543 Herod. ch. 42.

544 Ibid. ch. 43.

545 Ibid. vii. 58, 108, 127, 196, &c.

546 On the possibility of streams like the Scamander proving insufficient to supply the host with drinkable water, see Mr. Grote's *History of Greece*, vol. iii. p. 384.

547 Herod. vii. 43, ad fin.

548 Ibid. ch. 44.

549 The conversation between Xerxes and Artabanus given by Herodotus (vii. 46–52) has no claim to be regarded as historical.

550 Æschyl. *Pers.* 72, 73. Ζυγὸν ἀμφιβαλὼν αὐχένι πόντου.

551 Herod. vii. 44. On the superiority of the Sidonian ships, see also chs. 99 and 100.

552 Ibid. ch. 54.

553 Ibid. ch. 55.

554 Ibid. ch. 56.

555 Ibid. ch. 121.

556 See text, p. 332; and compare Herod. vii. 118–120.

557 Herod. vii. 110, 115, 122, 123, &c.

558 Col. Mure has denied that the animals intended could be really lions, and has suggested that they were "some species of lynx or wild-cat." (*Literature of Greece*, vol. iv. p. 402.) But Aristotle, who belonged to this district, and was an excellent naturalist, makes the lion a

native of the tract (*Hist. An.* vi. 31; viii. 28); and Pliny repeats his statement (*H. N.* viii. 17).

559 Herod. vii. 131.

560 The visit of Xerxes to the pass of Tempé (Herod. vii. 128, 130) was probably connected with a desire to reconnoitre.

561 Ἡμέρας συχνάς. (Herod. vii. 131.)

562 Herod. vii. 32.

563 Ibid. vii. 132.

564 Ibid. chs. 128–130.

565 Ibid. chs. 196–201.

566 Ibid. chs. 172–174.

567 Mr. Grote suggests that it might perhaps have been possible to defend both entrances into Thessaly (*History of Greece*, vol. iii. p. 418). But the heights of Olympus were in the hands of the Macedonians, and those once gained the host could have descended by half a dozen different routes.

568 The usual retinue seems to have been seven helots to each Spartan (Herod. ix. 10.) If this was the proportion observed at Thermopylæ, the helots there would have amounted to 2100. Herodotus, while mentioning the presence of helots (vii. 229, viii. 25), omits them from his list of troops (chs. 202, 203).

569 Isocrat. *Paneg.* xxv. § 90. Compare Diod. Sic. xi. 4, § 5, where the Lacedæmonians are reckoned at 1000.

570 Herod. vii. 202.

571 Ibid. ch. 203; Diod. Sic. xi. 4, § 7. φωκέων οὐ πολὺ λειπόμενοι τῶν χιλίων.

572 Diod. Sic. l. s. c. Herodotus says the Locrians of Opus came with all their force (παντρατιῇ): and Pausanias makes their contingent 6000 (x. 20, § 2).

573 Herod. vii. 202. Diodorus adds 1000 Malians (l. s. c.).

574 Herod. vii. 176, 200. The chart (see Pl. LXII.) exhibits at one view both the ancient and the modern condition of the pass.

575 Herodotus represents the delay as arising from an expectation on the part of Xerxes that the Greeks would retreat (vii. 210). But it is more probable that he waited for his fleet, which, if it had been present, might either have galled the Greeks with missiles on their unguarded flank, or have landed a force in their rear.

576 Herod. vii. 210, 211. Diodorus says the first attack was made by Medes, Cissians, *and Sacæ* (xi. 7, § 2).

577 Herod. vii. 211.

578 Diod. Sic. xi. 7, § 3.

579 Herod. vii. 212; Diod. Sic. xi. 8.

580 Herod. vii. 216. No sufficient data exists for laying down the *exact* line of this path. In the accompanying chart Col. Leake's views are, generally speaking, followed.

581 Ibid. ch. 175.

582 Ibid. ch. 217. The chief error of Leonidas at Thermopylæ appears to have been the insufficient defence of this pathway. Two or three thousand men could probably have defended the pass below as well as 9000, so that 6000 or 7000 might have been spared for the heights.

583 Herod. vii. 218.

584 Ibid. ch. 219.

585 The number which remained was probably between 4000 and 5000, consisting of the Spartans, Lacedæmonians, Helots, Thespians, Thebans, and perhaps the Mycenæans. (See Pausan. l. s. c.)

586 Herod. vii. 223–225, and 233.

587 Ibid. viii. 24.

588 The entire population of Greece, including the parts already conquered by Persia, is estimated by Clinton at little more than 3½ millions. (*F. H.* vol. ii. p. 524.) That of the Persian empire cannot have been less than forty millions.

589 Herod. vii. 188–193.

590 Herod. viii. 6.

591 Ibid. ch. 7.

592 Ibid. chs. 10–17.

593 Herodotus, strangely enough, makes the reinforcements received between Cape Sepias and Salamis counterbalance the whole loss both by storm and battle (viii. 66). But as the loss amounted to 650 ships at the least, it is quite impossible that he can have been correctly informed. The only additions the fleet received were from a few cities on the Euripus, from Carystus, and from some of the western Cyclades, as Andros and Tenos. The contribution thus obtained must have been insignificant. (See the author's *Herodotus*, vol. iv. p. 256, note 4, 2nd edition.)

594 Herod. viii. 21, 40.

595 Ibid. chs. 31–34, and 50. During this march (Herod. viii. 35–39), or possibly the next year (Ctesias, *Exc. Pers.* § 27), a detachment was sent to plunder the temple of Apollo at Delphi, which was roughly handled by the Delphians, and forced to retire.

596 Herod. viii. 41.

597 Ibid. chs. 51–54. The oracle which bade Athens "trust in her wooden walls" was thought by some to intend the palisade which surrounded the Acropolis.

598 Herod. vii. 5, 8; viii. 68, § 1, sub fin.

599 Ibid. viii. 66.

600 Ibid. ch. 71.

601 Ibid. chs. 56–63, and 74.

602 There can be no doubt that the views which Herodotus makes Artemisia express (viii. 68. § 2) were perfectly sound. Whether she really expressed them or no is perhaps uncertain.

603 See the threat of Themistocles: εἰ δὲ ταῦτα μὴ ποιήσεις, ἡμεῖς μὲν . . . κομιεύμεθα ἐς Σίριν τὴν ἐν Ἰταλίᾳ. (Herod. viii. 62.) Compare the actual conduct of the Phocæans (Herod. i. 165) and the Teians (ib. i. 168); and the proposal of Aristagoras (ib. v. 124).

604 Napoleon I. (See Fouché, *Mémoires*, tom. i. p. 293; Las Casas, *Mémorial de Sainte-Hélène*, tom. iii. p. 248.)

605 Herod. viii. 69.

606 Ibid. ch. 70.

607 Diod. Sic. xi. 17, § 2; Æschyl. *Pers.* l. 370.

608 Herod. viii. 75; Æschyl. *Pers.* ll. 357–362. The intelligence is said to have been sent by Themistocles.

609 Herod. viii. 76. On the real character of the movements which preceded the battle of Salamis, see the author's *Herodotus*, vol. iv. p. 263, note 10, 2nd edition.

610 Æschyl. *Pers.* ll. 376–385; Herod. viii. 78–83.

611 Herod. viii. 84. Ἀναγομένοισι δὲ σφι αὐτίκα ἐπεκέατο οἱ βάρβαροι.

612 Æschylus made the number 1207. (*Pers.* ll. 343–345.) So Herodotus, by implication (viii. 66, compared with vii. 89). Ctesias said it exceeded a thousand. (*Exc. Pers.* § 26.)

613 Æsch. *Pers.* l. 368.

614 Herod. viii. 84; Æsch. *Pers.* ll. 411–413.

615 Herod. l. s. c. On the importance of this story, as indicating the hesitation of the Greeks at first, see Mr. Grote's *History of Greece*, vol. iii. p. 473.

616 Æsch. *Pers.* ll. 414, 415. Τὰ πρῶτα μὲν δὴ ῥεῦμα Περσικοῦ στράτου ἀντείχεν. Compare Diod. Sic. xi. 19, §§ 1, 2.

617 Æsch. *Pers.* ll. 417, 418.

618 Herod. viii. 89, ad fin.

619 Æsch. *Pers.* ll. 419, 420.

620 Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 26. Diodorus says "above 200" (xi. 19, § 3.)

621 Herod. viii. 87.

622 Æsch. *Pers.* ll. 426–428.

623 Herod. viii. 97.

624 Ibid. ch. 107.

625 Ibid. ch. 113.

626 Πλῆθος ἔκκριτον στρατοῦ. Æsch. *Pers.* l. 799. Herodotus tells us that Mardonius selected the entire contingents of the Persians, Medes, Sacæ, Bactrians, and Indians, while from the remainder of the troops he chose out certain individuals.

627 Herod. viii. 115. Æschylus adds to this that there was a great disaster at the passage of the Strymon, which the army attempted to cross upon the newly formed ice. (*Pers.* ll. 498–509.)

628 For two accounts of the return, see Herod. viii. 117–120. Compare Justin, ii. 13; Juvenal, x. 185.

629 Herod. viii. 117.

630 Ibid. ch. 100, ad fin.

631 The 40,000 were a portion of the troops selected by Mardonius (see above, note 626), which had served as an escort to Xerxes as far as the Hellespont. (Herod. viii. 126.)

632 Ibid. ch. 129. Compare ix. 1.

633 Ibid. viii. 136, 140–144.

634 Ibid. ix. 3.

635 Ibid. ch. 12.

636 Ibid. ch. 11.

637 See the remarks of Bp. Thirlwall on the probable time of the death of Cleombrotus. (*History of Greece*, vol. ii. p. 328, note, and p. 330.)

638 Herod. ix. 11.

639 Ibid. chs. 10 and 28.

640 Ibid. chs. 19 and 28. The Peloponnesian troops at Platæa, exclusive of the Spartans, amounted to 27,200.

641 Sixteen thousand Athenians (with 1200 Platæans) and six thousand Megarians made up a total of 23,200.

642 Herod. ix. 13–15. This movement was judicious. It placed the Persians in a friendly country, abounding with forage, gave them a plain and gentle slopes on which to manœuvre, and put the strong town of Thebes close in their rear.

643 Herod. ix. 19. Ἐωὶ τῆς ὑπωρείης τοῦ Κιθαιρῶνος.

644 Ibid. ch. 30.

645 Besides his 300,000 native troops, Mardonius had the services of perhaps 50,000 Greek auxiliaries. (Herod. ix. 32, sub fin.)

646 See the author's *Herodotus*, vol. iii. pp. 430–432.

647 Herod. ix. 20–23, 39, 40, 49.

648 Ibid. ch. 50.

649 Ibid. ch. 52. The Tegeatæ, who alone remained firm, must be regarded as forming almost a part of the Spartan force.

650 Amompharetus. (See Herod. ix. 53–57.)

651 Ibid. chs. 59, 60.

652 Ibid. chs. 61 to 70.

653 Æschyl. *Pers.* ll. 812–814; Herod. ix. 70. It is impossible, however, to believe the statement of this latter writer, that of the 300,000 Asiatics only 43,000 survived the battle. Diodorus, who puts the slain at "something more than 100,000" (xi. 32, § 5), taxes our credulity quite sufficiently.

654 Herod. ix. 66.

655 Fifty thousand Spartans, Lacedæmonians, and Helots, 3000 Tegeatæ, and 16,000 Athenians. Total, 69,000.

656 Byzantium till B.C. 478 (Thucyd. i. 94); Eion till B.C. 477 (ib. i. 98); Doriscus, apparently till B.C. 450, or even later. (Herod. vii. 106.)

657 Doriscus was to the Persians under Xerxes and Artaxerxes what Calais was to England from the time of Henry VI. to that of Mary,—the sign of past and the supposed means of future conquest.

658 Herod. ix. 90–106; Thucyd. i. 89.

659 Mr. Grote maintains (*History of Greece*, vol. iv. p. 87, note) that Athens undertook this protection from the date of the confederacy of Delos (B.C. 477), and that the maritime *continental* Greeks, or at least those of the Hellespont, Æolis, and Ionia, were detached from the Persian empire from that year. He meets the statement of Herodotus, that the continental cities of Ionia continued to be taxed in his day according to the taxing of Artaphernes (vi. 42) by supposing that "rating" and not "payment" is intended—a very forced explanation; while he entirely fails to meet the decisive statement of Thucydides (i. 138), that Themistocles was assigned by

Artaxerxes the revenues of Myus and Lampsacus, two maritime towns, in B.C. 465.

660 See text, p. 505.

661 Herod. vii. 107; Thucyd. i. 98; Plut. *Vit. Cim.* c. 7.

662 Herod. vii. 106.

663 Plutarch makes the number 200 (*Vit. Cim.* c. 12); but he may be corrected from Diodorus (xi. 60, § 3), whose account is more circumstantial.

664 Diod. Sic. xi. 60, § 5.

665 The number is variously stated: at 600 by Phanodemus (ap. Plut. *Vit. Cim.* l. s. c.); at 350 by Ephorus (ibid.); and by Diodorus (xi. 60, § 6) at 340.

666 Thucyd. i. 100; Plut. *Vit. Cim.* c. 12, 13. Diodorus strangely places the seafight at Cyprus.

667 Thucyd. l. s. c. Plutarch says 200 were taken, and many others destroyed. (*Vit. Cim.* c. 12.)

668 Plut. *Vit. Cim.* c. 13.

669 Diod. Sic. xi. 60, § 7; 62. § 1. The number of vessels in the second passage (340) is evidently an exaggeration.

670 The later Greek writers confuse the battles of the Eurymedon (B.C. 466) and of Cyprus (B.C. 449) in a way that is truly perplexing. Plutarch makes the peace of Callias follow on the Eurymedon battle (*Vit. Cim.* c. 13). Diodorus places half the Eurymedon battle at Cyprus (see above, note 666), and applies to it an inscription which must certainly have referred to the later victory (xi. 62, § 3. Οὐδὲ γὰρ ἐν Κύπρῳ Μήδους πολλοὺς ὀλέσαντες, κ. τ. λ.) Thucydides and probability are our best guides.

671 Herod. ix. 109. Ἀμηστρις ἡ Ξέρξεω γυνή. Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 20.

672 Herodotus makes her the daughter of Otanes (vii. 61), Ctesias, of Onophas (Anaphes), the son of Otanes (*Exc. Pers.* § 20).

673 See the story (told with full details by Herodotus, ix. 108–113), which ends with the death of Masistes, Xerxes' brother, and a number of his sons, Xerxes' nephews.

674 Amytis, wife of Megabyzus, the grandson of Megabyzus the Conspirator (Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 28).

675 On the power of the eunuchs under Xerxes, see Herod. viii. 104, 105; Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* §§ 20, 27, 29.

676 Diod. Sic. xi. 69, § 1; Plut. *Vit. Themist.* c. 27. According to Diodorus, Artabanus was a *Hyrcanian*. (See note 543, Chapter III., *Fifth Monarchy.*)

677 Κατακοιμιστής. Diod. Sic. l. s. c. (Compare note 341, Chapter III.)

678 Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 29; Diod. Sic. xi. 69, § 2.

679 Herod. vii. 105, 237; viii. 69.

680 Ibid. vii. 136.

681 Ibid. vii. 5–7, 12, 18; ix. 109.

682 Ibid. vii. 35, 45, 212, 238; viii. 90.

683 See text, pp. 487–489.

684 Both the propylæa and the staircase bear inscriptions of Xerxes (see text, pp. 385, 386, and 393).

685 The inscription of Artaxerxes Mnemon expressly ascribes the erection of the Susian palace to Darius (see text, p. 474); and the *exact* resemblance of the chief building there to the Chehl Minar at Persepolis makes it almost certain that they are both of the same date.

686 Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 20. Compare Diod. Sic. xi. 69, § 2, who, however, makes Hystaspes the youngest of the three sons. Justin knows of two sons only, Darius and Artaxerxes (iii. 1).

687 Diod. Sic. l. s. c.

688 Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 29; Diod. Sic. xi. 69, §§ 3–5.

689 Euseb. *Chron. Can.* ii. p. 338; Syncell. p. 162, C.

690 According to Diodorus he assaulted Artaxerxes with a drawn sword, and actually wounded him (xi. 69, § 5).

691 Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 30. This writer, small as is his claim to either honesty or critical acumen, becomes henceforth our best authority. He is approaching now to times contemporary with his own, and is freed from the temptation to contradict Herodotus and Thucydides.

692 Ibid. l. s. c.

693 Ctesias perversely calls the satrap of Bactria "another Artapanus" (§ 31). But we can scarcely be wrong in connecting the Bactrian revolt with the fact related by Diodorus, that Hystaspes held the Bactrian satrapy. Diod. Sic. xi. 69, § 2.)

694 Diodorus connects the revolt of Egypt with the disturbances consequent on the death of Darius (xi. 71, § 3); but it did not break out till five years later.

695 Inarus was the son of a *Psamatik* (Thucyd. i. 104).

696 Ctesias does not name Amyrtæus, but probably intends him by the "Egyptian who prepared the revolt in conjunction with Inarus" (Ἰνάρου Λιβύου ἀνδρὸς καὶ ἑτέρου Αἰγυπτίου τὴν ἀπόστασιν μελετήσαντος, § 32).

697 Herod. vii. 7. Ctesias (l. s. c.) makes Artaxerxes *send* Achæmenes (whom he calls Achæmenides) to put down the revolt; but I gather from Herodotus that he was resident satrap of Egypt when the revolt commenced. Diodorus (xi. 74) follows Ctesias.

698 Herod. iii. 12, ad fin.

699 Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 32.

700 Ibid. Compare Thuycd. i. 104. Τοῦ ποταμοῦ κρατοῦντες.

701 Thucyd. l. s. c.; Diod. Sic. xi. 74, § 4.

702 Thucyd. i. 109; Diod. Sic. xi. 74, § 5.

703 Ctesias estimates the army of Megabyzus at 500,000 men—300,000 of whom he found in Egypt on his arrival, while 200,000 accompanied him into the country (§ 33). Diodorus makes the force which Megabyzus took with him exceed 300,000 (xi. 75, § 1). He also gives him 300 triremes (§ 2).

704 Herod. iii. 160; Thucyd. i. 109.

705 Thucyd. l. s. c.

706 Herod. ii. 41.

707 Thucyd. i. 109; Diod. Sic. xi. 77, § 2.

708 Thucyd. i. 110.

709 Ibid.

710 Προδοσιᾳ ληφθείς. Thucyd. l. s. c. It is difficult to reconcile with this the statement of Ctesias, that Inarus surrendered upon terms to Megabyzus; but perhaps, had we a full account of the facts, we should find that they embraced both incidents.

711 Herod. ii. 140; Thucyd. l. s. c.

712 Thucyd. i. 112.

713 Ibid. l. s. c.; Diod. Sic xii. 3, § 1; Plut. *Vit. Cim.* c. 18.

714 Plut. *Vit. Cim.* c. 19.

715 Diod. Sic. xii. 3, § 2.

716 Ibid. § 3. Compare the inscription on the spoils (Diod. Sic. xi. 62, § 3), which must certainly have been those from this battle.

717 Thucyd. i. 112; Diod. Sic. xii. 3, § 4.

718 See the arguments of Mr. Grote on the reality of the "Peace of Callias" (*History of Greece*, vol. iv. pp. 85–90), which has been impugned by Thirlwall (*History of Greece*, vol. iii. pp. 37, 38), Dahlmann (*Ueber den kimonischen Frieden*), Manso (*Sparta*, vol. iii. p. 471), and others.

719 Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* §§ 37–39.

720 See text. pp. 464, 465.

721 Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 41.

722 Thucyd. i. 115, 116. If the Phœnician fleet had come to the aid of the Samians, a rupture between Athens and Persia must of necessity have taken place. It seems, however, that the fleet never made its appearance.

723 Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 43. Compare Herod. iii. 160.

724 Plut. *Vit. Artax.* c. l.; Diod. Sic. ix. 71, §§ 1, 2.

725 Justin says that he was *quite a boy*, "puer admodum" (iii. 1).

726 Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 36.

727 Ibid. §§ 28 and 42.

728 See especially his behavior to Nehemiah, who was his cupbearer (Nehem. ii. 2–8). Compare Ezra vii. 11–26.

729 The only Persian building with which we can at all connect this Artaxerxes (Longimanus) is the palace at Susa, which he is said in an inscription (if the passage is rightly rendered) to have "repaired." (Loftus, *Chaldæa and Susiana*, p. 372.)

730 Herod. vii. 114; Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* §§ 36, 42, and 43.

731 See text, p. 501.

732 Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 44.

733 Ibid. l. s. c.

734 Ibid. § 45. Secydianus is the form used by Ctesias. Diodorus gives Sogdianus (xii. 71.) So also Manetho (ap. Euseb. *Chron. Can.* i. 21).

735 Six months and fifteen days. (Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 48, ad fin.)

736 Ibid. § 49. Ochus was mentioned under the name of Darius Ochus by Manetho. (Clem. Alex. *Cohort. ad Gent.* § 5.)

737 Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 44.

738 Ibid. Compare Plut. *Vit. Artax.* c. 1.

739 Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* §§ 50 and 51.

740 Tissaphernes first appears as satrap of Lydia, in B.C. 413 (Thucyd. viii. 5). That Pissuthnes had not very long been removed may be conjectured from the position occupied by his son Amorges (ibid.).

741 He was satrap before B.C. 440. (Thucyd. i. 115.)

742 The royal names are rarely, if ever, borne by persons not belonging to the reigning family.

743 Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 52.

744 Thucyd. viii. 5, 19, and 28. He was captured by Tissaphernes and the Peloponnesian Greeks in B.C. 412.

745 See Thucyd. viii. 5, 6.

746 Ibid. viii. 18. The subsequent treaties (ibid. chs. 37 and 58) very slightly modified the original agreement.

747 See especially Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* i. 14.

748 Compare some good remarks of Mr. Grote (*History of Greece*, vol. v. p. 357).

749 Pharnabazus had begun to trim the scales and incline towards Athens before the appearance of Cyrus. (Xen. *Hellen.* i. 3, §§ 8–13.)

750 See Thirlwall, *History of Greece*, vol. iv. p. 106. Mr. Grote, on the contrary, regards Cyrus as free at this time from personal views, and as honestly bent on ruining Athens, because she was the great enemy of Persia. (*History of Greece*, vol. v. p. 472.)

751 Xen. *Hell.* ii. 1, §§ 10–12.

752 The suspicion that some of the Athenian generals at Ægos-Potami were bribed by Lysander to betray their trust (Grote, vol. v. p. 546) can neither be proved nor refuted. I myself incline to believe in their guilt.

753 Xen. *Hell.* i. 5, § 3; ii. 1, § 14.

754 See text, p. 514.

755 Heeren, *Manual of Ancient History*, ii. § 38, p. 106, E. T.; Clinton, *Fasti Hellenici*, vol. ii. p. 87.

756 Euseb. *Chron. Can.* ii. p. 342.

757 Ap. Euseb. *Chron. Can.* i. 20, p. 106. By assigning to Darius Nothus, as king of Egypt, the full term of 19 years, Manetho fixes the revolt to B.C. 405.

758 The six years' reign of Amyrtæus, which constitutes Manetho's 28th dynasty, lasted probably from B.C. 460 to B.C. 455, or from B.C. 455 to B.C. 450—being thus a reign contemporary with a portion of the 27th dynasty. It is Manetho's wont thus to exhibit contemporary reigns. The Old Chronicle, on the other hand, which is more strictly chronological, omits the reign of Amyrtæus. (See the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii. p. 342, note 6, 2nd edition.)

759 Diodorus has a notice of Egyptian

troubles in the year B.C. 410 (xiii. 46, § 6). He has also a king Psammetichus in B.C. 400 (xiv. 35, § 3), a descendant of the old Psamatiks, who is unknown to Manetho. It may be conjectured that the rebellion of Egypt was now, as usual, accompanied by disintegration, and that different kings reigned in different parts of the country.

760 Xen. *Hell.* i. 2, § 19.

761 The authority for the story is Ctesias (*Exc. Pers.* §§ 52-57), who was at the Persian court within a few years of the occurrences.

762 Idernes is the form which Ctesias uses instead of the Hydarnes of Herodotus. (See *Exc. Pers.* § 14.) Persian names were apt to be hereditary; and we know that the Great Hydarnes had a son, Hydarnes. (Herod. vii. 83.)

763 Terituchmes is said to have killed 37 of his assailants with his own hand. (Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 54.)

764 Ibid. § 56. Compare Plut. *Vit. Artax.* c. 2.

765 Ibid. § 57.

766 Artaxares. See Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 53.

767 Ibid. § 49. Ἐχρῆτο δὲ συμβούλῳ μάλιστα τῇ γυναικί.

768 Ibid. § 56.

769 Ibid. §§ 53 and 57.

770 Not only was each satrap now, as a matter of course, made commandant (see text, p. 472), but satrapies were united, and two or three committed to a single governor. (See Xen. *Anab.* i. 9, § 7.)

771 As the execution, by Cyrus, of his cousins Autobœsaces and Mitræus, simply because they did not observe in his presence the forms due to royalty. (Xen. *Hell.* ii. 1, § 8.)

772 Xen. *Cyrop.* viii. 8, § 12.

773 Xen. *Anab.* i. 1, § 2; Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 50; Thucyd. viii. 25.

774 Plut. *Vit. Artax.* c. 2.

775 This claim had been put forward in the case of Xerxes (see text, p. 486), but rather as a pretext than as a real ground of preference.

776 See above, note 771.

777 Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 57; Plut. *Vit. Artax.* c. 2, ad fin.

778 Plut. *Vit. Artax.* c. 3; Xen. *Anab.* i. 1, § 3.

779 Plut. l. s. c. Ὃς ἐν παῖσι Κύρου τῆς νομιζομένης ἀγωγῆς ἐπιστάτης γενόμενος, καὶ διδάξας μαγεύειν αὐτόν, κ. τ. λ.

780 *Vit. Artax.* c. 6. ποῦ νῦν αἱ πίστεις ἐκεῖναι.

781 Xen. *Anab.* i. 1, § 4.

782 Ibid. i. 1, §§ 6, 7, 11.

783 Ibid. i. 1, §§ 9, 10.

784 Ibid. i. 1, § 11; 2, § 1; &c. Plutarch sums up these various devices in a few words: ἀλλαχόθι ἄλλους ἐπι πολλαῖς προφάσεσι ξενλογοῦντας εἶχε. (*Vit. Artax.* c. 4.)

785 Xen. *Anab.* i. 2, § 9.

786 Ibid. § 4; Plut. *Vit. Artax.* c. 6.

787 Plutarch (l. s. c.) makes him have a party among the Persians at home, no less than among those of his province. But it may be questioned whether he has any historical grounds for his assertion.

788 Xen. *Anab.* i. 9. §§ 7-31.

789 Plut. *Vit. Artax.* chs. 4 and 5.

790 Ἦν δέ τις καὶ μέλλησις ἐν τῇ φύσει τοῦ βασιλέως. (Ibid. c. 4.)

791 Ibid. c. 5.

792 Herod. vii. 26, 31.

793 Xen. *Anab.* i. 2, § 9.

794 Ibid. i. 7, § 10.

795 Ibid. i 2, § 12.

796 Ibid. § 20.

797 Xen. *Hell.* iii. 1, § 1; *Anab.* i. 2, § 21; 4, § 2.

798 Menon lost about a hundred men in crossing the Taurus by the western pass—probably the route between Karaman and Kara Hissar; but Cyrus lost none in his passage by the Gates. (See *Anab.* i. 2. §§ 22 and 25.)

799 Herod. v. 50.

800 Xen. *Anab.* i. 3, § 1.

801 Ibid. i. 3, § 20.

802 Ibid. i. 4. § 5.

803 Ainsworth, *Travels in the Track of the Ten Thousand*, pp. 58-61.

804 Xen. *Anab.* i. 4, §§ 1-11. The 29 days comprised 19 days of march and 10 days of rest. The distance traversed was somewhat more than 360 miles.

805 Ibid. i. 4, § 5.

806 This seems to me to follow from the statement of Xenophon (*Anab.* i. 7, § 12), that Abrocomas arrived *from Phœnicia* five days after the battle.

807 Xen. *Anab.* i. 4, § 13.

808 This was probably the truth which the Thapsacenes exaggerated into a miraculous subsidence of the water at the approach of Cyrus. (Xen. *Anab.* i. 4, 4, § 18.) July, the month in which Cyrus probably crossed the river, is the month when the subsidence commences, and when the height is consequently most variable.

809 Ibid. i. 5, § 9. Δῆλος ἦν Κῦρος σπεύδων πᾶσαν τὴν ὁδόν. Compare note 178, Chapter III.

810 Ainsworth, *Travels in the Track*, &c., pp. 74-81.

811 Ibid. pp. 76-81. Compare Xen. *Anab.* i. 5, §§ 1, 5, and 7.

812 Xen. *Anab.* i. 5, 6. Antelopes, wild asses, and bustards abound in this country, and were obtained by hunting. The failing baggage-animals were probably also eaten.

813 Ibid. i. 7, § 12; Plut. *Vit. Artax.* c. 7. Ctesias made the number no more than 400,000. (Ibid. c. 13.)

814 Xen. *Anab.* i. 6, § 1.

815 Ibid. i. 7, § 1.

816 Ibid. §§ 1-4.

817 Ibid. §§ 14-16; Plut. *Vit. Artax.* c. 7.

818 Xen. *Anab.* i. 7, §§ 19, 20.

819 Ibid. i. 8, §§ 1-4.

820 The announcement was made ἀμφι ἀγορὰν πλήθουσαν, or about ten or eleven

o'clock; but it was afternoon (δείλη), or about two o'clock, before the enemy appeared.

821 Xen. *Anab.* i. 8, § 8.

822 See text, p. 322.

823 Xen. *Anab.* i. 8, § 9.

824 Ibid. i. 8, § 13.

825 Ibid. § 23.

826 Ctesias ap. Plut. *Vit. Artax.* c. 11; Dino ap. eund. c. 10.

827 Xen. *Anab.* i. 8, § 24. Compare i. 7, § 11.

828 Xen. *Anab.* i. 8, § 10. Cyrus had 20 similar chariots (ib. i. 7, § 10); but their position in the battle is not mentioned.

829 Ibid. i. 8, § 5.

830 Ibid.

831 Ibid. i. 8, §§ 6, 7. Compare text, p. 323.

832 Xen. *Anab.* i. 8, § 12.

833 It is clear that Cyrus saw and understood that his order was not being obeyed, and that he suffered Clearchus to have his own way.

834 Xen. *Anab.* i. 8, § 18. Compare the charge at Marathon. (Herod. vi. 112.)

835 Xen. *Anab.* i. 8, § 20. Mr. Grote says another was wounded by not getting out of the way of the chariots (*History of Greece*, vol. vi. p. 221); but I understand Xenophon to mean that, though in great peril, the man escaped unharmed (οὐδὲ τοῦτον παθεῖν ἐφασαν).

836 Xen. *Anab.* i. 8, c.

837 Ibid. § 19.

838 Ibid. i. 10, § 4.

839 Ibid. i. 8, 24

840 Plut. *Vit. Artax.* c. 9.

841 Ibid. Compare Xen. *Anab.* i. 8, § 24, ad fin.

842 Xen. *Anab.* i. 8, § 26; Ctes. ap. Plut. *Vit. Artax.* c 11.

843 Some said a Carian. (Dino, l. s. c.) But Ctesias assigned the wound under the eye to the weapon of a certain Mithridates, a young Persian.

844 Xen. *Anab.* i. 8, § 27.

845 Ibid. § 25.

846 Ibid. i. 10, § 1.

847 Ibid. § 7.

848 Ibid. § 3.

849 Xenophon says his *left* (*Anab.* i. 10, § 9), because this wing had been the left when the battle began.

850 Mr. Grote understands Xenophon to mean that Clearchus executed this movement. (*History of Greece*, vol. vi. p. 224.) But the imperfect ἐδόκει, and the whole phrase, ἐν ᾧ δὲ τοῦτο ἐβουλεύοντο, forbid this rendering. Bp. Thirlwall has correctly understood the passage. (*Hist. of Greece*, vol. iv. p. 309.)

851 Xen. *Anab.* i. 10, § 11.

852 Probably one of the many artificial heaps which dot the Babylonian plains. (See Ainsworth, *Travels in the Track*, &c., p. 97.)

853 Xen. *Anab.* i. 10, §§ 13–15.

854 Ibid. i. 4, §§ 7–9; 6, §§ 6. 7.

855 Ibid. i. 1, § 5; 8, § 28; 9, § 29; Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* § 58.

856 Xen. *Anab.* i. 6, § 3.

857 Grote, *History of Greece*, vol. vi, p. 227. Mr. Grote has, I think, overrated the character and ability of Cyrus. He gives it as his opinion, that, "had he dethroned his brother and become king, the Persian empire would have acquired under his hand *such a degree of strength as might probably have enabled him to forestall the work afterwards performed by the Macedonian kings*, and to make the Greeks in Europe as well as those in Asia his dependents" (ibid. p. 226). I cannot see that Cyrus showed any such power of organization as this view implies.

858 The French proverb is coarse but expressive: "Grattez le Russe, et vous trouverez le Tartare."

859 Xen. *Hellen.* ii. 1, § 8.

860 Xen. *Anab.* i. 5, § 11.

861 Ibid. i. 8, § 26.

862 Ibid. i. § 9, 15. It may be observed that Cyrus did not subdue either the Mysians or the Pisidians, whose reduction should have been the first object of a good governor.

863 Xen. *Anab.* i. 2, § 11. Compare Plutarch, *Vit. Artax.* c. 4, ad init., whence it appears that some persons regarded the poverty of Cyrus as the cause of his expedition.

864 Xen. *Anab.* i. 8, § 21. Καὶ γὰρ ᾔδει αὐτὸν, ὅτι μέσον ἔχοι τοῦ Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος.

865 See the author's *Herodotus*, vol. iii. p. 434.

866 That the Ten Thousand might have remained, had they chosen so to do, in the very centre of the empire, was felt by the Persians themselves. (Xen. *Anab.* ii. 4, § 22.)

867 Herod. v. 50.

868 See some good remarks of Mr. Grote, *History of Greece*, vol. vi. pp. 343, 344.

869 How entirely ignorant of the map of Asia even the Greek leaders were, is evident from the speech of Clearchus (Xen. *Anab.* ii. 4, § 6. Ποταμὸς δὲ εἰ μέν τις καὶ ἄλλος ἆρα ἡμῖν ἐστὶ διαβατέος, ἐγὼ μὲν οὐκ οἶδα).

870 Xen. *Anab*, ii. 5, § 32.

871 The review at Cerasus showed a total of 8600 heavy-armed (ibid. v. 3, § 3) and near upon 1400 light-armed (ib. v. 7, § 9), out of the total of 12,900 mustered at Cunaxa (ib. i. 7, § 10).

872 As the Carduchi or Kurds. (Xen. *Anab.* iv. 1, § 8.)

873 Herod. iii. 94.

874 Xen. *Anab.* vii. 7, § 25. Compare iv. 6, § 5; 7, §§ 1, 15, 18; 8, § 1; &c.

875 Ibid. iv. 4. § 18.

876 Xen. *Anab.* vii. 6, § 1; 8, § 24; *Hellen.* iii. 1, § 6.

877 Xen. *Hellen.* iii. 4, § 26.

878 Xen. *Anab.* i. 1, § 11; 2, § 1; 6, § 7; 9, § 14.

879 Xen. *Hellen.* iii. 2, § 2.

880 Ibid. i. 4, § 3. Compare *Anab.* v. 6,

§ 8; *Ages.* iii. 4; Ælian, *Var. Hist.* i. 27; Corn. Nep. *Vit. Datam.* § 2.

881 Xen. *Hellen.* iii. 5, § 1.

882 Ibid. iv. 2, § 2.

883 By the battle of Cnidus, B.C. 394. (Ibid. iv. 3, §§ 10–12.)

884 Ibid. iv. 8, § 7.

885 Ibid. § 8.

886 Ibid. §§ 8–12.

887 Xen. *Hellen.* iv. 8; §§ 12–15.

888 Mr. Grote notes with reason the insulting form of the document on which the "Peace of Antalcidas" was founded. (*History of Greece*, vol. vii. pp. 2 5.) It was a mandate issued by the court of Susa, to which obedience was required. (See Xen. *Hellen.* v. 1, § 31.)

889 Athens was allowed to retain Scyros, Lemnos, and Imbrus.

890 On the difficulties of the chronology see Clinton, *F. H.* vol. ii., Appendix, c. 12; Grote, *History of Greece*, vol. vii. pp. 18–20.

891 Xen. *Hellen.* iv. 8, § 24; v. 1, § 10.

892 Diod. Sic. xv. 2, § 2.

893 Ibid. § 3.

894 Isocrat. *Orat.* ix. §§ 75, 76.

895 The "Arabian king" who sent aid to Evagoras (Diod. Sic. xv. 2, § 3, ad fin.) probably belonged to this country.

896 Theopomp. Fr. 111.

897 Diod. Sic. xv. 2, § 1. The army was commanded by Orontes, a relation of Artaxerxes, the fleet by Tiribazus.

898 Isocrat. *Orat.* ix. § 77.

899 Diod. Sic. xv. 8, § 3; 9, § 2.

900 Plut. *Vit. Artax.* c. 24.

901 According to Cornelius Nepos (*Datam*, § 1), many thousands of the royal troops were slain, and the army was only saved from greater disasters by the military talent of Datames.

902 Diod. Sic. xv. 8, § 4.

903 Plut. *Vit. Artax.* l. s. c. The Cadusians were under two kings, who occupied separate camps. Tiribazus persuaded each that the other was engaged in secret negotiations with Artaxerxes, and trying to make a separate peace. Deceived by these representations, both sent embassies.

904 Plut. l. s. c. Οὔτε γὰρ χρυσὸς οὔτε κάνδυς, . . . ἐκεῖνον ἀπεκώλυε πονεῖν καὶ ταλαιπωρεῖν, ὥσπερ οἱ τυχόντες· ἀλλὰ τὴν τε φαρέτραν ἐνημμένος καὶ τὴν πέλτην φέρων αὐτὸς, ἐβάδιζε, πρῶτος ὁδοὺς ὀρεινὰς καὶ προσάντειε ἀπολιπὼν τὸν ἵππον, κ. τ. λ.

905 Isocrat. *Orat.* iv., §§ 142, 156, 190.

906 Ibid. xv. § 118; Corn. Nep. *Timoth.* § 1.

907 Corn. Nep. *Iphicr.* § 2; Diod. Sic. xv. 29, §§ 3, 4.

908 Diod. Sic. xv. 41, § 3. This writer estimates the Persian army under Pharnabazus at 200,000, and the Greek mercenaries under Iphicrates at 20,000. Nepos gives the number of the mercenaries as 12,000.

909 Diod. Sic. xv. 43, §§ 1, 2.

910 Xen. *Hell.* vi. 3, § 12; Diod. Sic. xv. 50.

911 Xen. *Hell.* vii. 1, § 33 to § 38; Plut. *Vit. Artax.* c. 22; *Vit. Pelop.* c. 30.

912 Dem. *De Fals. Leg.* § 150, p. 384; *De Halonn.* § 30, p. 84.

913 Xen. *Agesil.* ii 26.

914 Corn. Nep. *Datam.* § 4.

915 Ibid. § 5.

916 Ibid. §§ 7–11; Diod. Sic. xv. 91.

917 Diod. Sic. xv. 90, § 3.

918 Ibid. § 2.

919 Ibid. xv. 91, § 1; 92, § 1.

920 Ibid. xv. 92, § 2; Xen. *Ages.* ii. § 28.

921 Diod. Sic. xv. 92, § 3.

922 Xen. *Ages.* ii. § 30, ad fin.; Diod. Sic. xv. 92, §§ 3, 4; Plut. *Vit. Agesil.* c. 37.

923 Diodorus says 43 (xv. 93. § 1); but the Astronomical Canon is a better authority. (See Clinton, *F. H.* vol. ii. pp. 381, 382.)

924 Plut. *Vit. Artax.* c. 30, ad fin.

925 Ibid. c. 2.

926 Ibid. c. 6.

927 Plut. *Vit. Artax.* c. 4.

928 As the Carian said to have had a part in killing Cyrus (ib. c. 14, ad fin.), Mithridates the Persian, who certainly wounded him (ib. c. 15), Mesabates the eunuch, who cut off his head and his hand (ib. c. 17), and Tissaphernes, who informed Artaxerxes of the intended attack (ib. c. 23).

929 Ibid. c. 19.

930 Ibid. c. 23.

931 Plut. *Vit. Artax.* c. 26; Justin, x. 1.

932 Plut. *Vit. Artax.* l. s. c.

933 Ibid. c. 29; Justin, x. 2.

934 Plut. *Vit. Artax.* c. 30.

935 Justin, l. s. c. "Morbo ex dolore contracto decedit." Plut. l. s. c. Ὑπὸ λύπης καὶ δυσθυμίας ἀπεσβέσθη.

936 Πρῶτος. Plut. l. s. c.

937 See the anecdotes told by Plutarch, *Vit. Artax.* c. 4 and 5. Compare c. 25.

938 Ibid. c. 2, 19, 30.

939 He banished Parysatis to Babylon for murdering Statira (Plut. *Vit. Artax.* c. 19), but within a short time repented of his severity, recalled her to Susa, and held her in more regard than ever (ibid. c. 23).

940 See text, p. 526.

941 Ὠμότητι καὶ μιαιφονίᾳ πάντας ὑπερβαλλόμενος. Plut. *Vit. Artax.* ad fin. Compare Diod. Sic. xvii. 5, § 3.

942 Justin, x. 3. "Regiam cognatorum cæde et strage principum replet, nulla non sanguinis, *non sexus*, non ætatis misericordia permotus."

943 The rebellion of Artabazus appears to have followed closely on the accession of Ochus. Heeren places it in B.C. 358 (*Manual*, ii. 46; p. 110, E. T.) Mr. Schmitz (*Biograph. Dict.* ad voc. ARTABAZUS) in B.C. 356.

944 Artabazus was at first supported by the Athenians under Chares (Diod. Sic. xvi. 22; Dem. *Philipp.* i. § 28, p. 46). When this support was withdrawn, it was replaced by help from Thebes (Diod.

Sic. xvi. 34, § 2). Thus assisted, Artabazus maintained his independence against the attacks of Artaxerxes' satraps, at any rate till B.C. 353. But soon afterwards he was overpowered and forced to fly to Europe. A refuge was given to him by Philip of Macedon (ibid. xvi. 52, § 3).

945 Ibid. xvi. 48, § 3.

946 We have no details of this war. Its general results are stated by Diodorus (xvi. 40, § 3; 44, § 1; 48, §§ 1, 2) and glanced at by Isocrates (*Orat.* iv. *Philipp.* § 118).

947 Diod. Sic. xvi. 41.

948 Ibid. xvi. 42, §§ 3–5.

949 I agree generally with Mr. Grote as to these dates, and as to the mistake committed by Diodorus. (See his *History of Greece*, vol. viii. p. 173, note 3, ed. of 1862.)

950 Diod. Sic. xvi. 42, § 6.

951 See text, p. 525.

952 Diod. Sic. xvi. 42, § 1.

953 Ibid. xvi. 46.

954 Ibid. xvi. 42, § 2.

955 Ibid. xvi. 44, §§ 5, 6. They are said to have surrounded their city with a triple ditch, to have greatly increased the height of its walls, and to have collected a fleet of a hundred ships—triremes and quinqueremes.

956 Three hundred thousand foot, and 30,000 horse (Diod. xvi. 40, § 6).

957 Ibid. xvi. 45, §§ 2, 3.

958 Κατηκόντισε. Diod. l. s. c.

959 Ibid. § 4.

960 Οἱ Σιδώνιοι πρὸ μὲν τῆς παρουσιας τοῦ βασιλέως ἐνέπρησαν ἁπάσας τὰς ναῦς. (Diod. l. s. c.) Mr. Grote has misplaced this event. (*History of Greece*, vol. viii. p. 172.)

961 Diod. Sic. xvi. 45, § 5. The purchasers expected to repay themselves by the discovery of gold and silver in the ruins from the personal ornaments and utensils of the former inhabitants.

962 Mr. Grote states the number at 10,000 (*History of Greece*, vol. viii. p. 172), omitting to notice that the contingent of Mentor was added to the original ten thousand after the fall of Sidon. (Compare Diod. Sic. xvi. 47, § 4—Μέντωρ ἔχων τους προϋπάρχοντας αὐτῷ μισθοφόρους—with xvi. 44, §§ 2–4.)

963 Diod. Sic. xvi. 47, § 1.

964 Ibid. xvi. 44, § 3.

965 Ibid. xvi. 47, § 6. Sixty thousand Egyptians, 20,000 Libyans, and 20,000 mercenary Greeks.

966 Εἶχε . . . πλοίων ποταμίων πρὸς τὰς κατὰ τὸν Νεῖλον μάχας καὶ συμπλοκὰς εὐθετων ἄπιστον πλῆθος. Diod. l. s. c.

967 Diod. Sic. xvi. 47, § 7.

968 Ibid. xvi. 48, § 2.

969 Ibid. § 7.

970 Ibid. xvi. 49 and 50.

971 Ibid. xvi. 51, § 1.

972 Ibid. § 2. According to Ælian, he not only destroyed the temples, but, like Cambyses, stabbed the existing Apis calf. (*Var. Hist.* iv. 8; vi. 8.) He also carried off the sacred books, which Bagôas afterwards sold to the priests at a high price. (Diod. l. s. c.)

973 Grote, *History of Greece*, vol. viii. p. 173.

974 Diod. Sic. xvi. 50, §§ 7, 8. According to Diodorus, Mentor and Bagôas, who had not been on very good terms during the Egyptian expedition, swore at its close an eternal friendship, and thenceforth mutually supported one another.

975 Ibid. xvi. 52. Hermeias, the friend of Aristotle, who held the fortress of Atarneus opposite Lesbos, was the chief of these.

976 Ibid. xvi. 50, § 8.

977 I can see no grounds for the assertion that Ochus, after the reduction of Egypt, "withdrew to his seraglio, where he passed his days in sensual pleasures." (*Biogr. Dict.* ad voc. ARTAXERXES), or even for the statement that "Mentor and Bagôas held him in complete dependence." (Heeren, *Manual*, ii. § 48, p. 110, E. T.) Diodorus represents him as having great confidence in Bagôas, but as continuing to rule savagely and harshly to the last (xvii. 5, § 3).

978 Diod. Sic. xvi. 75, § 1. Ὁ βασιλεύς ὑφορώμενος την Φιλίππου δύναμιν, ἔγραψε πρὸς τοὺς ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ σατράπας, κ. τ. λ.

979 This must be the meaning of the words in the letter of Alexander to Codomannus—εις Θρ κην, ἣν ἡμεῖς ἤρχομεν, δύναμιν ἔπεμψεν Ὦχος. (Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* ii. 14.)

980 Arrian, l. s. c.; Diod. Sic. xvi. 75, 76; Demosth. *Ep. ad Philipp.* p. 153; Pausan. i. 29, § 7.

981 Diod. Sic. xvii. 5, § 3. Μισουμένου δ' αὐτοῦ διὰ την χαλεπότητα τῶν τρόπων, κ. τ. λ.

982 Diod. l. s. c.; Ælian, *Var. Hist.* vi. 8.

983 Diodorus calls him μειράκιον (xvii. 5, § 4); but as he had several children in the third year of his reign (ibid.), he cannot have been less than 13 or 14 at his accession.

984 Φανεροῦ καθεστῶτος ὅτι τιμωρήσεται τὸν αὐθέντην τῶν ἀνομημάτων. (Diod. l. s. c.)

985 Diod. l. s. c. The assassination of Arses by Bagôas is also noticed by Arrian (*Exp. Alex.* ii. 14), Strabo (xv. 3, § 24), and Q. Curtius (*Hist. Alex.* vi. 3, p. 154).

986 According to Strabo, Darius Codomannus was not of the royal house (οὐκ ὄντα τοῦ γένους τῶν βασιλέων, l. s. c.). According to Diodorus (xvii. 5, § 5), he was the grandson of Ostanes, a brother of Artaxerxes Mnemon. Some said that before he became king he was a mere courier. (Plut. *Vit. Alex.* c. 18.)

987 It is scarcely necessary to vindidate Codomannus from the charge of having stimulated Pausanias by bribes to murder Philip. Mr. Grote has seen the improbability of such a transaction. (*Hist. of Greece*, vol. viii. p. 239.)

988 Diod. Sic. xvii. 6, § 2. The accession of Codomannus a little preceded that of Alexander (ibid. xvii. 7, § 1), which fell in July. (Clinton, *F. H.* ii. p. 166.)

989 Plat. *Ep.* v. Πλάτων ὄψε ἐν τῇ πατριδι γέγονε.

990 Diod. Sic. xvii. 6; Justin, x. 3. The war intended can scarcely be that which occurred more than forty years earlier, under Artaxerxes Mnemon (see text, p. 503). We must consequently suppose that there had been another struggle with the same people under Ochus, of which nothing has been recorded but the gallantry displayed by Codomannus.

991 Plut. *Vit. Alex.* c. 21. Ἀνδρῶν κάλλιστος καὶ μέγιστος.

992 Diod. Sic. xvii. 7, §§ 1, 2; 39, § 4, &c.

993 Arrian (iii. 22), and Mr. Grote following him, have (I think) underrated the military capacity of Codomannus. He scarcely deserves to be called ἀνὴρ τὰ πολέμια, εἴ τις ἄλλος, μαθακός τε καὶ οὐ φρενήρης.

994 Diod. Sic. xvi. 91, § 2.

995 Ibid. xvii. 7, § 1.

996 Ibid. § 2.

997 The army which fought at the Granicus comprised Medes, Hyrcanians, and Bactrians (ib. xvii. 19), as well as Paphlagonians, Cappadocians, and native Persians.

998 The mercenaries at the Granicus numbered 20,000. (Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* i. 14.)

999 Arrian. ii. 4.

1000 Diod. Sic. xvii. 7, § 3.

1001 Ibid. xvii. 7, §§ 8–10.

1002 Xen. *Hell.* iii. 1, §§ 4–7; 4, § 5 et seqq.

1003 Arrian makes Alexander bring into Asia "rather more than 30,000 foot and *above* 5000 horse" (*Exp. Alex.* i. 11). Diodorus (xvii. 17) gives the foot as 30,000 exactly, the horse as 4500. Other writers have the following numbers:—

Justin.....	32,000 foot.	4500 horse.
Callisthenes.....	40,000 "	4500 "
Anaximenes ...	43,000 "	5500 "

Plutarch (ii. p. 327) tells us that the eye-witnesses, Ptolemy and Aristobulus, agreed that the foot was 30,000, but differed as to the horse: which the latter made 4000, while the former made it 5000.

1004 See text, pp. 515, 516.

1005 Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* i. 18. The Persian fleet, which consisted chiefly of Cyprian and Phœnician vessels, is reckoned by Arrian at 400 ships. The fleet of Alexander consisted of 160.

1006 Diod. Sic. xvii. 18, §§ 3, 4.

1007 Ibid. l. s. c.; Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* i. 12.

1008 Diod. Sic. xvii. 18, § 2.

1009 Ἀνάξια τῆς Περσῶν μεγαλοψυχίας. Diod. Sic. xvii. 18, § 2.

1010 As Mr. Grote does (*History of Greece*, vol. viii. p. 311).

1011 According to Diodorus (xvii. 19, § 4), the cavalry was mainly composed of Medes, Bactrians, Hyrcanians, and Paphlagonians.

1012 See Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* i. 14. Περσῶν δὲ ἱππεῖς μὲν ἦσαν ἐς δισμυρίους, ξένοι δὲ πεζοὶ μισθοφόροι, ὀλίγον ἀποδέοντες δισμυρίων. Diodorus reduces the horse to 10,000, while he raises the infantry to 100,000 (xvii. 19, §§ 4, 5). Justin (xi. 6) estimates the entire Persian force at 600,000!

1013 Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* i. 16, sub fin.; Plut. *Vit. Alex.* c. 16.

1014 Plut. *Vit. Alex.* l. s. c.; Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* i. 13.

1015 Πολλὰ βαθέα. (Arrian, l. s. c.)

1016 Ὄχθαι ὑπερύψηλοι καὶ κρημνώδεις. (Ibid.)

1017 Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* i. 14.

1018 Ibid. i. 15.

1019 Among these were Mithridates, the son-in-law of Darius, and Rhœsaces, one of the generals. (Arr. l. s. c. Compare Plut. *Vit. Alex.* c. 16.)

1020 Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* i. 15, ad fin.

1021 Ibid. i. 15 and 16.

1022 Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* i. 16, § 1. Οἱ Πέρσαι παιόμενοι τε πανταχόθεν ἤδη ἐς τὰ πρόσωπα αὐτοί τε καὶ οἱ ἵπποι τοῖς ξυστοῖς. The almost complete armor which protected the heavy cavalry, horse and man alike, left little more than the face of the man and the head of the horse exposed. (See text, pp. 322, 323).

1023 Arrian, l. s. c. Ἐγκλίνουσι ταύτῃ πρῶτον, ἢ Ἀλέξανδρος προεκινδύνευεν.

1024 So Arrian (l. s. c.). Diodorus makes the number killed 2000 (xvii. 21, § 6), Plutarch (*Vit. Alex.* c. 16) 2500.

1025 Compare Arrian (i. 16) with Plut. l. s. c. The latter writer particularly notices the obstinacy of the resistance.

1026 So Arrian. Plutarch slays the whole 20,000. Diodorus, on the contrary, limits the slain to 10,000, and gives 20,000 as the number of the prisoners. Here, as elsewhere, Arrian's moderation is strongly in favor of his veracity.

1027 Arrian, i. 15, 16; Diod. Sic. xvii. 21, § 3.

1028 Ap. Plutarch, *Vit. Alex.* c. 16. Mr. Grote regards Aristobulus as speaking only of the immediate "companions of Alexander" (*Hist. of Greece*, vol. viii. p. 317, note 4); but the context of the passage in Plutarch shows that the entire number of those slain on Alexander's side in the battle is intended.

1029 *Exp. Alex.* i. 16. The number was made up of 25 "Companion" cavalry, *above* 60 ordinary cavalry, and 30 infantry.

1030 Grote (*History of Greece*, vol. viii. p. 317).

1031 At Marathon the number of those slain on the Greek side was no more than 192, though the centre was broken and pursued, or at any rate forced to give ground. (Herod. vi. 117.) The loss in the real battle of Platæa was but 159 (ibid. ix. 70, ad fin.).

1032 Compare Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* i. 17–

29 with Diod. Sic. xvii. 22-28. The siege of Marmareis, omitted by Arrian, is related at length by the Sicilian writer.

1033 Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* i. 29.

1034 Ibid. ii. 1; Diod. Sic. xvii. 29, § 4.

1035 Diod. Sic. xvii. 30, § 1.

1036 Arrian, ii. 2; Q. Curt. iii. 3.

1037 Arrian makes the number of Darius' forces at Issus 600,000 (*Exp. Alex.* ii. viii.), Diodorus 500,000 (xvii. 31, § 2). Q. Curtius, who alone enters into details, says that the foot was 250,000 and the horse 61,300, making a grand total of 311,300. (*Hist. Alex.* iii. 24.) According to him, the troops were counted in the rough manner employed by Xerxes. (See text, p. 490.)

1038 The plain of Sochi must (I think) have been that of Umk, north and east of the Lake of Antioch, which is described as "level and marshy" (Ainsworth, *Travels in the Track*, p. 62). Both the passes over Amanus lead to this tract, which is the only extensive plain in the neighborhood. Mr. Grote in his chart places Sochi much too far to the north.

1039 Plutarch, *Vit. Alex.* c. 20.

1040 Arrian, ii. 4; Plut. *Vit. Alex.* c. 19.

1041 Arrian, ii. 5.

1042 Ibid. ii. 7, § 1.

1043 Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* ii. 7, § 1; Q. Curt. *Hist. Alex.* iii. 8.

1044 Arrian, ii. 6.

1045 Ibid. ii. 7. Compare Q Curt. l. s. c. These unfortunates were (it would seem) mutilated before they were put to death (*τούτους χαλεπῶς αἰκισάμενος ἀπέκτεινεν*—Arrian).

1046 These scouts were sent by sea in a triaconter. (Arrian, l. s. c.).

1047 Callisthenes ap. Polyb. xii. 17.

1048 Mr. Grote, allowing a pace to a man, reckons the front rank at less than 3500 men. (*History of Greece*, vol. viii. p. 316, note 4.)

1049 *Τοῖς δὲ ἀχρεῖον τὸ πλῆθος.* (Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* ii. 7.)

1050 *Ὁ θεὸς ὑπὲρ σφῶν στρατηγεῖ ἄμεινον, ἐπὶ νοῦν Δαρείῳ ἀγαγὼν καθείρξαι τὴν δύναμιν ἐκ τῆς εὐρυχωρίας ἐς τα στενόπορα.* (Ibid.)

1051 Ibid. ii. 8.

1052 Arrian makes this force consist of 30,000 horse and 20,000 foot, which must certainly be an exaggeration.

1053 Mr. Grote supposes that they must have been twenty-six deep (*History*, l. s. c.).

1054 Arrian, l. s. c.; Q. Curt. iii. 9.

1055 *Κάρδακες* (Arrian). Strabo explains the term *κάρδα* whence he derives *Κάρδακες*, as *τὸ ἀνδρῶδες καὶ πολεμικόν.* (Strab. xv. 3, § 18.)

1056 Compare above, note 626.

1057 Arrian, ii. 8.

1058 Ibid. ii. 9, ad init.

1059 Ibid. sub fin.

1060 *Οἱ κατ' Ἀλέξανδρον καὶ αὐτὸς Ἀλέξανδρος . . . δρόμῳ ἐς τὸν ποταμὸν ἐνέβαλλον.* (Arrian, ii. 10.)

1061 Q. Curt. *Hist. Alex.* iii. 11, § 1.

1062 Arrian, ii. 11; Diod. Sic. xvii. 33, § 6.

1063 See text, p. 517.

1064 Arrian, ii. 10.

1065 *Χάρακι.* (Ibid.)

1066 Arrian, ii. 11, § 1; Plut. *Vit. Alex.* c. 20.

1067 *Exp. Alex.* ii. 11. *Ξὺν τοῖς πρώτοις ἔφευγε.*

1068 Q. Curt. *Hist. Alex.* iii. 11, p. 43; Diod. Sic. xvii. 34

1069 "In eo [prœlio] uterque rex vulneratur." (Justin, xi. 9.)

1070 See text, p. 533; and compare Diod. Sic. xvii. 6, § 1 (*Παρὰ τοῖς Πέρσαις τὸ πρωτεῖον τῆς ἀνδρείας ἀπηνέγκατο*) and Justin, x. 3 ("Bellum cum Alexandro *magna virtute* gessit").

1071 The identity of Sochi with the plain of *Umk*," which has been already asserted (see above, note 1038), is confirmed by Q. Curt. iv. 1, where a place which seems to be Sochi is called *Unchæ*.

1072 Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* ii. 13.

1073 *Οὐ μεῖον ἀπ' ἀλλήλων καταπατούμενοι ἢ πρὸς τῆς διώξεως τῶν πολεμίων ἐβλάπτοντο.* (Ibid. ii. 11.)

1074 This is Arrian's estimate. Diodorus (xvii. 36, § 6) and Q. Curtius (iii. 11, ad fin.) raise the loss in infantry to 100,000, thus making the total loss 110,000. This total is also given by Plutarch (*Vit. Alex.* c. 20). Justin, while agreeing as to the number of cavalry that fell, reduces the loss in infantry to 61,000 (xi. 9).

1075 Arrian, l. s. c.

1076 So Arrian. Diodorus gives the name as Tasiaces (xvii. 34, § 5).

1077 Arrian, l. s. c. The remainder of the females, who had accompanied the army from Babylon, including 329 concubines of Darius, had been placed for greater security at Damascus, where they were taken by Parmenio subsequently. (Arr. *Exp. Alex.* ii. 11, sub fin.; Q. Curt. *Hist. Alex.* iii. 13; Parmen. ap. Athen. *Deipn.* xiii. p. 608 A.)

1078 Arrian, l. s. c.

1079 The highest estimate is that of Diodorus, who says that 300 foot were killed and 150 horse (xvii. 36, § 6); the lowest that of Q. Curtius (iii. 11, ad fin.), who agrees as to the horse, but makes the footmen slain no more than 32. Justin makes the total loss 280—130 foot and 150 horse (xi. 9).

1080 Q. Curt. *Hist. Alex.* l. s. c.

1081 Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* ii. 13, § 1; Plut. *Vit. Alex.* c. 20. (Some said the wound was given by Darius himself; but this is very improbable.)

1082 Diod. Sic. xvii. 53, § 1.

1083 Diod. Sic. xvii. 39, §§ 3, 4.

1084 Clinton, F. H. vol. ii. p. 168. Compare Arrian, ii. 11, ad fin.

1085 Arrian, iii. 7, § 1.

1086 The siege of Tyre occupied seven months. (Plut. *Vit. Alex.* c. 24; Diod. Sic. xvii. 46, § 5.) It was taken in July, B.C. 332. (Arrian, ii. 24.) Full details of the siege are given by Arrian (ii. 18-24),

Diodorus (xvii. 40-46), and Q. Curtius (iv. 2, 3).

[1087] This siege lasted two months (Diod. Sic. xvii. 48, § 7). For an account of it, see Arrian, ii. 26, 27.

[1088] Alexander passed the winter of B.C. 332-331 in Egypt, arriving about October, and leaving about February.

[1089] Arrian, ii. 17.

[1090] When Agesilaus was forced to quit Asia and return to defend his country, he said that the Persian king had driven him away by means of 30,000 "archers" (τόξοται), alluding to the ordinary device upon the daric. (See Pl. LVII. Fig. 4.)

[1091] Diod. Sic. xvii. 39, § 1.

[1092] Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* ii. 15. Diodorus (l. s. c.) makes Darius on this first occasion offer to cede to Alexander Asia Minor west of the Halys, and to pay a large sum as ransom for his family. But Arrian's account is probably the true one.

[1093] Arrian, ii. 25.

[1094] So Curtius (*Hist. Alex.* iv. 5, § 1). The idea is consonant with Eastern notions.

[1095] Arrian, ii. 12; Plut. *Vit. Alex.* c. 2; Q. Curt. iii. 12; Diod. Sic. xvii. 38. On the undue praise bestowed upon Alexander for his treatment of these captives, see Mr. Grote's *History of Greece*, vol. viii. p. 376. note 1.

[1096] Diod. Sic. xvii. 39, § 3; Q. Curt. iv. 9.

[1097] Diod. xvii. 53, § 1.

[1098] Ibid. Compare Q. Curt. l. s. c.

[1099] Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* iii. 8. Εἵποντο καὶ Σάκαι . . . οὐχ ὑπήκοοι . . . ἀλλὰ κατὰ συμμαχίαν τὴν Δαρείου.

[1100] So Arrian. These twenty-five nations were the following:—The Persians, the Medes, the Babylonians, the Susianians, the Sitaceni, the Armenians, the Cadusians, the Albanians, the Sacesinæ, the Cappadocians, the Cœle-Syrians, the Syrians of Mesopotamia, the Tapyri, the Hyrcanians, the Parthians, the Arians, the Bactrians, the Sogdians, the Sacæ, the Indians, the Daans, the Arachosians, the tribes along the "Red Sea" coast, the Mardians, and the transplanted Carians. (Arrian, iii. 8 and 11.) To this list Q. Curtius adds the Massagetæ, the Caspians, the Cossæans, the Belitæ, the Gortyæ, the Phrygians, and the Cataonians. (*Vit. Alex.* iv. 11.) Darius had also in his army a number of mercenary Greeks.

[1101] Arrian's estimate (iii. 8) is 1,000,000 foot and 40,000 horse; Plutarch's (*Vit. Alex.* c. 31) 1,000,000 altogether; Diodorus's (xvii. 39, § 4) also 1,000,000—800,000 foot and 200,000 horse. Justin halves the numbers of Diodorus (xi. 12, § 5). Curtius has a still lower estimate (*Hist. Alex.* iv. 12). The Latin writers evidently aim at bringing the recorded numbers within what they think the limits of probability.

[1102] Arrian, iii. 8, sub fin. The elephants said to have been lent by the Indians to the Derbices, in their war with the great Cyrus (see text, p. 445), resting on the weak authority of Ctesias, can scarcely be regarded as historical.

[1103] Alexander might have marched upon Babylon by the route of the Younger Cyrus (see text, pp. 514-516); but in that case his army would have had to endure great hardships.

[1104] Diodorus says—Ἔσπευδε περὶ τὴν Νίνον ποιήσασθαι τὴν παράταξιν (xvii. 53, § 4).

[1105] See the description of Curtius: "Opportuna explicandis copiis regio erat, equitabilis et vasta planities. Ne stirpes quidem et brevia virgulta operiunt solum." (*Hist. Alex.* iv. 9.)

[1106] Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* iii. 8.

[1107] Q. Curt. *Hist. Alex.* iv. 14, sub fin.

[1108] Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* iii. 6, 7.

[1109] Τὴν ἑτέραν ἰόντι εὐπορώτερα τὰ ξύμπαντα τῷ στρατῷ ἦν, καὶ χιλὸς τοῖς ἵπποις, καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐκ τῆς χώρας λαμβάνειν. (Arr. iii. 7.)

[1110] Arrian, l. s. c.; Diod. Sic. xvii. 55; Q. Curtius, iv. 9.

[1111] Arrian, iii. 7, sub fin.

[1112] Q. Curt. l. s. c.; Diod. Sic. xvii. 53; § 4. Hence the name popularly given to the battle, which should rather have been called the battle of Gaugamela.

[1113] Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* iii. 8; Plut. *Vit. Alex.* c. 31.

[1114] Arrian, iii. 11.

[1115] See text, pp. 328, 520. Compare Arrian, ii. ad fin.

[1116] Arrian, iii. 11 and 13.

[1117] As especially the position of the spiked balls intended to damage his cavalry, which he was thus enabled to avoid on the day of battle. (See Q. Curt. iv. 13, sub fin.)

[1118] Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* iii. 7, sub fin.; 9, ad init.

[1119] Parmenio alone recommended delaying till next day. (Arrian, iii. 9.)

[1120] Ibid. 12, ad fin.

[1121] The account here followed is that of Arrian (iii. 12). Curtius (iv. 13), and Diodorus (xvii. 57) agree in the main.

[1122] Arrian, iii. 13; Q. Curt. iv. 15, § 1.

[1123] Arrian, l. s. c.

[1124] Id. iii. 14.

[1125] Ἦγε δρόμῳ τε καὶ ἀλαλαγμῷ. (Arrian. l. s. c.)

[1126] Arrian, l. s. c. Οἵ τε ἱππεῖς οἱ ἀμφ' Ἀλέξανδρον καὶ αὐτὸς Ἀλεξανδρος εὐρώστως ἐνέκειντο, ὠθισμοῖς τε χρώμενοι, καὶ τοῖς ξυστοῖς τὰ πρόσωπα τῶν Περσῶν κοπτοντες, ἥ τε φάλανξ ἡ Μακεδονικὴ πυκνὴ καὶ ταῖς σαρίσσαις περικυΐα ἐμβεβληκεν ἤδη αὐτοῖς, κ. τ. λ.

[1127] So Diodorus (xvii. 60, § 2). Curtius (iv. 15) mentions the death of the charioteer, but does not assign the blow to any individual. I cannot think that Arrian's silence throws any serious doubt on the fact thus attested.

[1128] Τῆς ἑτέρας πλευρᾶς παραγυμνωθείσης τῶν συναγωνιζομένων. (Diod. Sic. xvii. 60, § 3.)

1129 The discomfiture of the left wing was nearly simultaneous with the danger and flight of Darius. (Arrian, iii. 14.)

1130 Ibid. 15; Q. Curt. iv. 16; v. 1.

1131 Id. iv. 15.

1132 Diod. Sic. xvii. 59, § 5; 60, § 6; Q. Curt. iv. 16. Arrian touches very slightly indeed on the difficulties of the left wing.

1133 Arrian, iii. 14.

1134 Ibid. 15; Q. C. iv. 16.

1135 Arrian, l. s. c. Diod. Sic. xvii. 60, § 8. Two episodes of the battle have been omitted in the text, but deserve a cursory notice. When the phalanx divided, part staying to assist Parmenio in his difficulties, and part accompanying Alexander in the pursuit, a body of Median and Persian cavalry dashed through the gap thus left in the Macedonian line, and hastening to the rear attacked the camp and baggage. After a partial success, the second Macedonian line turned against them and beat them off. (Arrian, iii. 15. Compare Diod. Sic. xvii. 59, §§ 5–8; Q. Curt. iv. 15.)

The other episode was the following. As Alexander returned to assist Parmenio, he met face to face a considerable body of Persian, Parthian, and Median cavalry which was just quitting the field. A sharp conflict ensued (ἱππομαχια αὕτη καρτερωτάτη τοῦ παντος ἔργου ξυνεστη. Arrian, iii. 15). Sixty of the "Companions" were slain. Hephæstion, Cœnus, and Menidas were wounded; and most of the fugitives succeeded in cutting their way through. As Arrian observes, these men fought for their lives, and not merely to gain a victory for another.

1136 Arrian, *Exp. Alex.* iii. 15, sub fin.

1137 Diodorus makes the loss "upwards of 90,000" (xvii. 61, § 3); Curtius puts it at 40,000 (iv. 16).

1138 Especially by Mr. Grote (*History of Greece*, vol. viii. p. 384).

1139 Ibid. p. 383. It is true that Mr. Grote has in his favor Arrian's *words* (πρῶτος αὐτὸς ἐπιστρεψας ἐφευγεν); but I question whether he has rightly apprehended Arrian's meaning. Arrian is not, I think, contrasting Darius's conduct with that of those about him, but merely speaking of the part of the army in which the Persian flight began. Darius *with the centre* fled first; then, just afterwards, the horse upon the left was defeated by Aretas, and put to flight also. This mode of understanding Arrian (which is, I think, what the context requires) brings him into harmony with Curtius and Diodorus, whom Mr. Grote is compelled wholly to discard. (See his note 3, pp. 383, 384.)

1140 Daniel viii. 5–7.

Page 90 of vol III

Date Due

Library Bureau Cat. no. 1137

Denison University Libraries
3 5108 00278 8677

93940

D
57
.R3
v.2